Developer Guide

AWS SDK for .NET (V3)

Copyright © 2026 Amazon Web Services, Inc. and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

AWS SDK for .NET (V3): Developer Guide

Copyright © 2026 Amazon Web Services, Inc. and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Amazon's trademarks and trade dress may not be used in connection with any product or service that is not Amazon's, in any manner that is likely to cause confusion among customers, or in any manner that disparages or discredits Amazon. All other trademarks not owned by Amazon are the property of their respective owners, who may or may not be affiliated with, connected to, or sponsored by Amazon.

Table of Contents

xiii

What is the AWS SDK for .NET 1

About this version 1

Maintenance and support for SDK major versions 2

Common use cases 2

Additional topics in this section 2

Related AWS tools 3

Tools for Windows PowerShell and Tools for PowerShell Core 3

Toolkit for VS Code 3

Toolkit for Visual Studio 3

Toolkit for Azure DevOps 4

Supported platforms 4

.NET Core 4

.NET Standard 2.0 4

.NET Framework 4.5 4

.NET Framework 3.5 5

Portable Class Library and Xamarin 5

Unity support 5

More information 6

SDKs and Tools Reference 6

Revision history 6

What's new 6

Additional resources 9

Get started 11

Install and configure your toolchain 11

Cross-platform development 12

Windows with Visual Studio and .NET Core 12

Next step 13

Configure SDK authentication 13

Login using console credentials 13

Enable and configure IAM Identity Center 14

Configure the SDK to use IAM Identity Center. 15

Start an AWS access portal session 16

Additional information 17

Take a quick tour ... 17
Simple cross-platform app ... 18
Simple Windows-based app ... 23
Next steps ... 29
Start a new project ... 29
Configure the AWS Region ... 31
Create a service client with a particular Region ... 31
Specify a Region for all service clients ... 32
Region resolution ... 33
Special information about the China (Beijing) Region ... 34
Special information about new AWS services ... 34
Install AWSSDK packages with NuGet ... 34
Using NuGet from the Command prompt or terminal ... 35
Using NuGet from Visual Studio Solution Explorer ... 35
Using NuGet from the Package Manager Console ... 36
Install AWSSDK assemblies without NuGet ... 37
Credential and profile resolution ... 38
Profile resolution ... 39
Using federated user account credentials ... 40
Specifying roles or temporary credentials ... 40
Using proxy credentials ... 41
Users and roles ... 41
Users and permission sets ... 41
Service roles ... 42
Advanced configuration ... 43
AWSSDK.Extensions.NETCore.Setup and IConfiguration ... 43
Configuring Other Application Parameters ... 48
Configuration Files Reference for AWS SDK for .NET ... 56
Using legacy credentials ... 68
Important warnings and guidance for credentials ... 69
Using the shared AWS credentials file ... 70
Using the SDK Store (Windows only) ... 73
SDK features ... 77
Asynchronous APIs ... 77
Retries and timeouts ... 79
Retries ... 79

Timeouts ... 81
Paginators ... 83
Where do I find paginators? ... 84
What do paginators give me? ... 84
Synchronous vs. asynchronous pagination ... 84
Example ... 84
Additional considerations for paginators ... 88
Observability ... 89
Additional resources ... 89
Configure a `TelemetryProvider` ... 90
Metrics ... 91
Telemetry providers ... 93
Additional tools ... 95
AWS Deploy Tool ... 95
AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET ... 95
Integrations with .NET Aspire ... 95
Advanced auth ... 96
Single sign-on ... 96
Prerequisites ... 97
Setting up an SSO profile ... 97
Generating and using SSO tokens ... 99
Additional resources ... 103
Tutorials ... 104
Tutorial: .NET application only ... 104
Tutorial: AWS CLI and .NET application ... 113
Deploy to AWS ... 122
Deploy from the .NET CLI ... 122
Deploy from the IDE toolkits ... 122
Use cases ... 123
ASP.NET Core apps ... 123
.NET Console apps ... 124
Blazor WebAssembly apps ... 125
AWS Lambda projects ... 125
Prerequisites ... 126
Available Lambda commands ... 126
Steps to deploy ... 127

Migrate your project **128**
Migrating to Version 3 128
About the AWS SDK for .NET Versions 128
Architecture Redesign for the SDK 128
Breaking Changes 128
Migrating to version 3.5 130
What's changed for version 3.5 130
Migrating synchronous code 132
Migrating to version 3.7 133
Migrating from .NET Standard 1.3 133
Work with AWS services **135**
Code examples with guidance 135
CloudFormation 136
Amazon Cognito 140
DynamoDB 148
Amazon EC2 178
IAM 239
Amazon S3 259
Amazon SNS 269
Amazon SQS 273
AWS Lambda 306
APIs 306
Prerequisites 306
Additional information 306
Topics 306
Lambda Annotations 307
High-level libraries and frameworks 308
Message Processing Framework 309
Integrating AWS with .NET Aspire 329
Other services and configuration 330
Code examples **331**
ACM 333
Actions 333
API Gateway 337
Scenarios 338
AWS community contributions 338

Aurora 339
Scenarios 338
Auto Scaling 340
Actions 333
Scenarios 338
Amazon Bedrock Runtime 392
Get started 392
Scenarios 338
Amazon Nova 410
Amazon Nova Canvas 430
Stable Image Core 432
CloudWatch Logs 434
Actions 333
Amazon Cognito Identity Provider 448
Actions 333
Scenarios 338
Amazon Comprehend 471
Actions 333
Scenarios 338
Amazon DocumentDB 483
Serverless examples 484
DynamoDB 487
Actions 333
Scenarios 338
Serverless examples 484
AWS community contributions 338
Amazon EC2 554
Basics 554
Actions 333
Scenarios 338
Amazon ECS 676
Actions 333
Scenarios 338
Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 688
Actions 333
Scenarios 338

EventBridge 745
Get started 392
Basics 554
Actions 333
EventBridge Scheduler 785
Get started 392
Actions 333
Scenarios 338
Amazon Glacier 815
Get started 392
Actions 333
AWS Glue 824
Get started 392
Basics 554
Actions 333
IAM 856
Get started 392
Basics 554
Actions 333
Scenarios 338
Amazon Keyspaces 952
Get started 392
Basics 554
Actions 333
Kinesis 979
Actions 333
Serverless examples 484
AWS KMS 997
Actions 333
Lambda 1009
Get started 392
Basics 554
Actions 333
Scenarios 338
Serverless examples 484
AWS community contributions 338

MediaConvert 1060
Get started 392
Actions 333
Amazon MSK 1070
Serverless examples 484
Organizations 1072
Actions 333
Partner Central 1090
Actions 333
Amazon Pinpoint 1097
Actions 333
Amazon Polly 1103
Actions 333
Scenarios 338
Amazon RDS 1116
Get started 392
Basics 554
Actions 333
Scenarios 338
Serverless examples 484
Amazon RDS Data Service 1154
Scenarios 338
Amazon Rekognition 1155
Actions 333
Scenarios 338
Route 53 domain registration 1187
Get started 392
Basics 554
Actions 333
Amazon S3 1213
Actions 333
Scenarios 338
Serverless examples 484
SageMaker AI 1354
Get started 392
Actions 333

Scenarios 338
Secrets Manager 1388
Actions 333
Amazon SES 1391
Actions 333
Scenarios 338
Amazon SES API v2 1405
Actions 333
Scenarios 338
Amazon SNS 1444
Get started 392
Actions 333
Scenarios 338
Serverless examples 484
Amazon SQS 1489
Get started 392
Actions 333
Scenarios 338
Serverless examples 484
Step Functions 1533
Get started 392
Basics 554
Actions 333
AWS STS 1560
Actions 333
Support 1563
Get started 392
Basics 554
Actions 333
Amazon Textract 1590
Scenarios 338
Amazon Transcribe 1591
Actions 333
Amazon Translate 1603
Actions 333
Scenarios 338

Security 1617
Data protection 1617
Identity and Access Management 1618
Audience 1619
Authenticating with identities 1619
Managing access using policies 1621
How AWS services work with IAM 1622
Troubleshooting AWS identity and access 1623
Compliance Validation 1624
Resilience 1625
Infrastructure Security 1625
Enforcing a minimum TLS version 1626
.NET Core 1626
.NET Framework 1627
AWS Tools for PowerShell 1628
Xamarin 1629
Unity 1630
Browser (for Blazor WebAssembly) 1630
S3 Encryption Client Migration (V1 to V2) 1630
Migration Overview 1631
Update Existing Clients to V1-transitional Clients to Read New Formats 1631
Migrate V1-transitional Clients to V2 Clients to Write New Formats 1632
Update V2 Clients to No Longer Read V1 Formats 1635
S3 Encryption Client Migration (V2 to V4) 1636
Understanding V4 Concepts 1636
Update Existing Clients to Read V4 Formats 1638
Migrate to V4 Clients 1639
Additional Configuration Examples 1643
Special considerations 1645
Obtaining AWSSDK assemblies 1645
Download and extract ZIP files 1645
Accessing credentials and profiles in an application 1646
Examples for class CredentialProfileStoreChain 1647
Examples for classes SharedCredentialsFile and AWSCredentialsFactory 1648
Unity support 1649
Xamarin support 1650

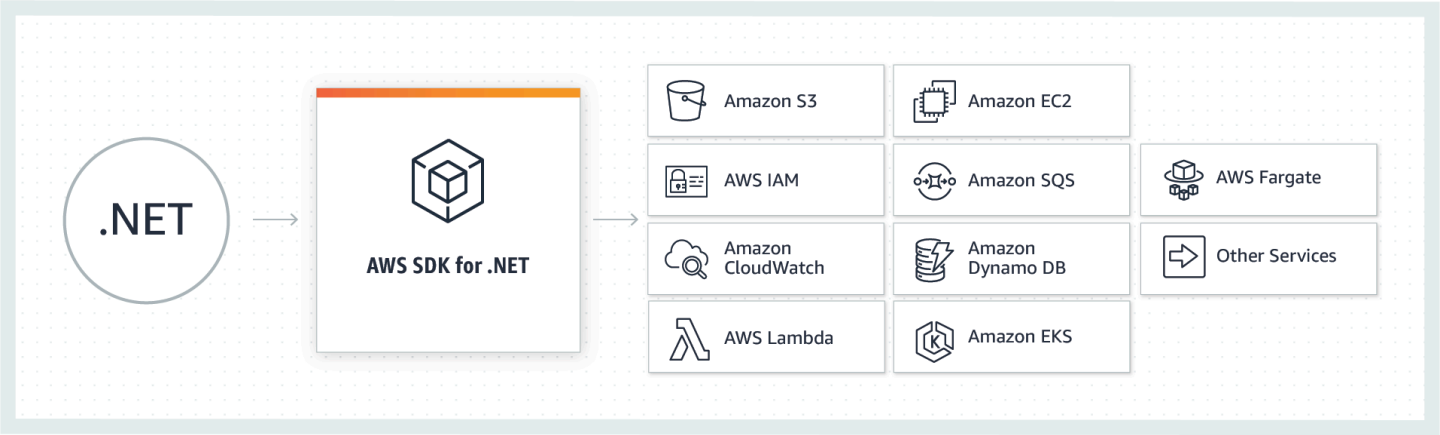
API reference **1651**
About API reference versions 1651
Document history **1653**

The AWS SDK for .NET V3 has reached end-of-support.

We recommend that you migrate to AWS SDK for .NET V4. For additional details and information on how to migrate, please refer to our end-of-support announcement.

What is the AWS SDK for .NET

The AWS SDK for .NET makes it easier to build .NET applications that tap into cost-effective, scalable, and reliable AWS services such as Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) and Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2). The SDK simplifies the use of AWS services by providing a set of libraries that are consistent and familiar for .NET developers.



(**OK, got it!** I'm ready to set up and take a quick tour.)

About this version

Current and past documentation

This documentation is for version 3 (V3) of the AWS SDK for .NET. V3 isn't latest version of the SDK. For the latest version of the SDK, see the AWS SDK for .NET (V4) Developer Guide. This documentation is mostly centered around .NET Core and ASP.NET Core, but also contains information about .NET Framework and ASP.NET 4.*x*. In addition to Windows and Visual Studio, it gives equal consideration to cross-platform development.
For information about migrating from earlier versions of the SDK, see Migrate your project.
To find deprecated content for earlier versions of the SDK, see the following item(s):

- AWS SDK for .NET (version 2, deprecated) Developer Guide
- Deprecated API references for the AWS SDK for .NET

Maintenance and support for SDK major versions

For information about maintenance and support for SDK major versions and their underlying dependencies, see the following in the AWS SDKs and Tools Reference Guide:

- AWS SDKs and tools maintenance policy
- AWS SDKs and tools version support matrix

Common use cases

The AWS SDK for .NET helps you realize several compelling use cases, including the following:

- Manage users and roles with AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM).
- Access Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) to create buckets and store objects.
- Manage Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) HTTP subscriptions to topics.
- Use the S3 transfer utility to transfer files to Amazon S3 from your Xamarin applications.
- Use Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) to process messages and workflows between components in a system.
- Perform efficient Amazon S3 transfers by sending SQL statements to Amazon S3 Select.
- Create and launch Amazon EC2 instances, and configure and request Amazon EC2 spot instances.

Additional topics in this section

- AWS tools related to the AWS SDK for .NET
- Platforms supported by the AWS SDK for .NET
- AWS SDKs and Tools Reference Guide
- Revision history
- What's new in the AWS SDK for .NET
- Additional resources

AWS tools related to the AWS SDK for .NET

Tools for Windows PowerShell and Tools for PowerShell Core

The AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell and AWS Tools for PowerShell Core are PowerShell modules that are built on the functionality exposed by the AWS SDK for .NET. The AWS PowerShell tools enable you to script operations on your AWS resources from the PowerShell prompt. Although the cmdlets are implemented using the service clients and methods from the SDK, the cmdlets provide an idiomatic PowerShell experience for specifying parameters and handling results.

To get started, see AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell.

Toolkit for VS Code

The AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio Code is a plugin for the Visual Studio Code (VS Code) editor. The toolkit makes it easier for you to develop, debug, and deploy applications that use AWS.

With the toolkit, you can do such things as the following:

- Create serverless applications that contain AWS Lambda functions, and then deploy the applications to an AWS CloudFormation stack.
- Work with Amazon EventBridge schemas.
- Use IntelliSense when working with Amazon ECS task-definition files.
- Visualize an AWS Cloud Development Kit (AWS CDK) application.

Toolkit for Visual Studio

The AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio is a plugin for the Visual Studio IDE that makes it easier for you to develop, debug, and deploy .NET applications that use Amazon Web Services. The Toolkit for Visual Studio provides Visual Studio templates for services such as Lambda and deployment wizards for web applications and serverless applications. You can use the AWS Explorer to manage Amazon EC2 instances, work with Amazon DynamoDB tables, publish messages to Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) queues, and more, all within Visual Studio.

To get started, see Setting up the AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio.

Toolkit for Azure DevOps

The AWS Toolkit for Microsoft Azure DevOps adds tasks to easily enable build and release pipelines in Azure DevOps and Azure DevOps Server to work with AWS services. You can work with Amazon S3, AWS Elastic Beanstalk, AWS CodeDeploy, Lambda, AWS CloudFormation, Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS), and Amazon SNS. You can also run commands using the Windows PowerShell module and the AWS Command Line Interface (AWS CLI).

To get started with the AWS Toolkit for Azure DevOps, see the AWS Toolkit for Microsoft Azure DevOps User Guide.

Platforms supported by the AWS SDK for .NET

The AWS SDK for .NET provides distinct groups of assemblies for developers to target different platforms. However, not all SDK functionality is the same on each of these platforms. This topic describes the differences in support for each platform.

.NET Core

The AWS SDK for .NET supports applications written for .NET Core (.NET Core 3.1, .NET 5, .NET 6, and so on). AWS service clients only support asynchronous calling patterns in .NET core. This also affects many of the high level abstractions built on top of service clients, like the Amazon S3 `TransferUtility`, which will only support asynchronous calls in the .NET Core environment.

.NET Standard 2.0

Non-Framework variations of the AWS SDK for .NET comply with .NET Standard 2.0. The AWS SDK for .NET provides only asynchronous methods for applications written against .NET Standard.

.NET Framework 4.5

> **Warning**
>
> Starting August 15th, 2024, the AWS SDK for .NET will end support for .NET Framework 3.5 and will change the minimum .NET Framework version to 4.7.2. For more information, see the blog post Important changes coming for .NET Framework 3.5 and 4.5 targets of the AWS SDK for .NET.

This version of the AWS SDK for .NET is compiled against .NET Framework 4.5 and runs in the .NET 4.0 runtime. AWS service clients support synchronous and asynchronous calling patterns and use the async and await keywords introduced in C# 5.0.

.NET Framework 3.5

> **Warning**
>
> Starting August 15th, 2024, the AWS SDK for .NET will end support for .NET Framework 3.5 and will change the minimum .NET Framework version to 4.7.2. For more information, see the blog post Important changes coming for .NET Framework 3.5 and 4.5 targets of the AWS SDK for .NET.

This version of the AWS SDK for .NET is compiled against .NET Framework 3.5, and runs in either the .NET 2.0 or .NET 4.0 runtime. AWS service clients support synchronous and asynchronous calling patterns and use the older Begin and End pattern.

> **Note**
>
> The AWS SDK for .NET is not Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) compliant when used by applications built against version 2.0 of the CLR. For details on how you can substitute a FIPS compliant implementation in that environment, refer to CryptoConfig on the Microsoft blog and the CLR Security team's HMACSHA256 class (HMACSHA256Cng) in Security.Cryptography.dll.

Portable Class Library and Xamarin

The AWS SDK for .NET also contains a Portable Class Library implementation. The Portable Class Library implementation can target multiple platforms, including Universal Windows Platform (UWP) and Xamarin on iOS and Android. See the Mobile SDK for .NET and Xamarin for more details. AWS service clients only support asynchronous calling patterns.

Unity support

For information about Unity support, see Special considerations for Unity support.

More information

Migrating to version 3.5 of the AWS SDK for .NET

AWS SDKs and Tools Reference Guide

The AWS SDKs and Tools Reference Guide contains information that's relevant and important for many of the AWS SDKs and toolkits and the AWS CLI. The following are some examples of the information that the reference contains:

- Information about the shared AWS `config` and `credentials` files and their location.
- Setting up AWS accounts, users, and roles
- Configuration and authentication settings reference
- AWS Common Runtime (CRT) libraries
- AWS SDKs and tools maintenance policy
- AWS SDKs and tools version support matrix

Revision history

To find out what has changed in various releases, see the following:

- SDK change logs
- What's new in the AWS SDK for .NET
- Document history

What's new in the AWS SDK for .NET

For high-level information about new developments related to the AWS SDK for .NET see the product page at https://aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-net/ and the SDK change logs.

The following is what's new in the AWS SDK for .NET.

October 17, 2025: Version 2.0 of the AWS Deploy Tool

Version 2.0 of the AWS Deploy Tool for .NET CLI has been released. For information about the Deploy Tool, see Deploy applications to AWS. For information about version 2.0 of the Deploy Tool, see the blog post What’s New in the AWS Deploy Tool for .NET.

August 21, 2025: Upcoming end-of-support for version 3 of the AWS SDK for .NET

The end-of-support for this version (V3) of the AWS SDK for .NET has been announced. See the V4 migration guide to migrate your V3 applications and avoid disruptions. For more information, see the blog post Announcing the end-of-support for the AWS SDK for .NET v3.

May 5, 2025: General availability of the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET

The AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET is generally available! The framework is an AWS-native framework that simplifies the development of .NET message-processing applications that use AWS services such as Amazon Simple Queue Service (SQS), Amazon Simple Notification Service (SNS), and Amazon EventBridge.

April 28, 2025: Version 4 of the AWS SDK for .NET

Version 4 of the AWS SDK for .NET is generally available! For more information, see the AWS SDK for .NET (V4) Developer Guide, especially the topic for Migrating to version 4.

February 15, 2025: Integrations with .NET Aspire

Integrations with .NET Aspire to improve the inner dev loop have been released. For information, see Integrating AWS with .NET Aspire in the AWS SDK for .NET.

February 10, 2025: GA release for observability

Observability is the extent to which a system's current state can be inferred from the data it emits. Observability has been added to the AWS SDK for .NET, including an implementation of a telemetry provider. For more information, see Observability in this guide and the blog post Announcing the general availability of AWS .NET OpenTelemetry libraries.

January 15, 2025: New default behavior for integrity protection

Beginning with version 3.7.412.0 of the AWS SDK for .NET, the SDK provides default integrity protections by automatically calculating a CRC32 checksum for uploads. For more information, see the announcement on GitHub at https://github.com/aws/aws-sdk-net/issues/3610. The SDK also provides global settings for data integrity protections that you can set externally, which you can read about in Data Integrity Protections in the AWS SDKs and Tools Reference Guide.

November 15, 2024: Blog post for preview 4 release for version 4

Preview 4 of the AWS SDK for .NET Version 4 was released on November 15, 2024. For more information about this preview, see the blog post Preview 4 of AWS SDK for .NET V4.

August 16, 2024: Blog post for preview 1 release for version 4

The AWS SDK for .NET Version 4 was released as a first preview on August 16, 2024. For more information about this preview, see the blog post Preview 1 of AWS SDK for .NET V4.

February 23, 2024: Added support for .NET 8

Support for .NET 8 was added to the AWS SDK for .NET. Use the latest NuGet packages or the assemblies that support .NET 8 and later. You can find additional information about this support, including support for Lambda in the blog post .NET 8 Support on AWS.

February 18, 2024: Upcoming changes to .NET Framework support

Starting August 15th, 2024, the AWS SDK for .NET will end support for .NET Framework 3.5 and will change the minimum .NET Framework version to 4.7.2. For more information, see the blog post Important changes coming for .NET Framework 3.5 and 4.5 targets of the AWS SDK for .NET.

2023-07-17: The AWS Lambda Annotations framework has been released for general availability

The AWS Lambda Annotations framework makes the experience of writing Lambda functions in C# feel more natural for .NET developers by using C# source generator technology. It is now generally available.

2023-07-15: The Distributed Cache Provider for DynamoDB has been released in preview

The Distributed Cache Provider library enables Amazon DynamoDB to be used as the storage for ASP.NET Core's distributed cache framework. For more information, see the blog post Introducing the AWS .NET Distributed Cache Provider for DynamoDB (Preview) and the GitHub repository.

2022-07-13: The AWS Deploy Tool has been released

The AWS Deploy Tool has been released. This tool is an interactive tooling for the .NET CLI and the AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio that helps deploy .NET applications with minimum AWS knowledge, and with the fewest clicks or commands. For more information, see Deploy applications to AWS.

2020-08-24: Version 3.5 of the SDK has been released

- Standardized the .NET experience by transitioning support for all non-Framework variations of the SDK to .NET Standard 2.0. See Migrating to version 3.5 for more information.
- Added paginators to many service clients, which make pagination of API results more convenient. For more information, see Paginators.

Additional resources

Supported services

The AWS SDK for .NET supports most AWS infrastructure products, and more services are added frequently. For a list of the AWS services supported by the SDK, see the SDK README file.

Home page for the AWS SDK for .NET

For more information about the AWS SDK for .NET, see the home page for the SDK at https://aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-net/.

SDK reference documentation

The SDK reference documentation gives you the ability to browse and search across all code included with the SDK. It provides thorough documentation and usage examples. For more information, see the AWS SDK for .NET API Reference.

AWS re:Post (formerly AWS forums)

Visit AWS re:Post, specifically the topic for the AWS SDK for .NET, to ask questions or provide feedback about AWS. Each documentation page has a **Try AWS re:Post** link at the bottom of the page that takes you to the associated re:Post topic. AWS engineers monitor the topics and respond to questions, feedback, and issues.

If you're signed in to re:Post, you can also follow a topic. To follow the topic for the AWS SDK for .NET, go to the **All Topics** page, find ".NET on AWS", and select the **Follow** button.

Toolkits

- AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio: If you use the Microsoft Visual Studio IDE, you should check out the AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio User Guide.
- AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio Code: If you use the Microsoft Visual Studio IDE, you should check out the AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio Code User Guide.

Helpful libraries, extensions and tools

Visit the aws/dotnet and aws/aws-sdk-net repositories on the GitHub website for links to libraries, tools, and resources you can use to help build .NET applications and services on AWS.

The following are some examples:

- AWS .NET Configuration Extension for Systems Manager
- AWS Extensions .NET Core Setup
- AWS Logging .NET
- Amazon Cognito Authentication Extension Library
- AWS X-Ray SDK for .NET

Other resources

The following are other resources that might prove useful:

- Developer net
- .NET Development Environment on the AWS Cloud - Quick Start Reference Deployment
- Hello, Cloud! blog
- AWS Whitepaper: Developing and Deploying .NET Applications on AWS
- AWS Microservice Extractor for .NET
- Porting Assistant for .NET
- AWS SDKs and Tools Reference Guide

Get started with the AWS SDK for .NET

To use the AWS SDK for .NET, you need to install your toolchain and configure a number of essential things that your application needs to access AWS services. These include:

- An appropriate user account or role
- Authentication information for that user account or to assume that role
- Specification of the AWS Region
- AWSSDK packages or assemblies

Some of the topics in this section provide information about how to configure these essential things.

Other topics in this section and other sections provide information about more advanced ways that you can configure your project.

Topics

- Install and configure your toolchain
- Configure SDK authentication with AWS
- Take a quick tour of the AWS SDK for .NET
- Start a new project
- Configure the AWS Region
- Install AWSSDK packages with NuGet
- Install AWSSDK assemblies without NuGet
- Credential and profile resolution
- Additional information about users and roles
- Advanced configuration for your AWS SDK for .NET project
- Using legacy credentials

Install and configure your toolchain

To use the AWS SDK for .NET, you must have certain development tools installed.

Cross-platform development

The following are required for cross-platform .NET development on Windows, Linux, or macOS:

- Microsoft .NET Core SDK, version 2.1, 3.1, or later, which includes the .NET command line interface (CLI) (**`dotnet`**) and the .NET Core runtime.

- A code editor or integrated development environment (IDE) that is appropriate for your operating system and requirements. This is typically one that provides some support for .NET Core.

  Examples include Microsoft Visual Studio Code (VS Code), JetBrains Rider, and Microsoft Visual Studio.

- (Optional) An AWS toolkit if one is available for the editor you chose and your operating system.

  Examples include the AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio Code, AWS Toolkit for JetBrains, and AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio.

Windows with Visual Studio and .NET Core

The following are required for development on Windows with Visual Studio and .NET Core:

- Microsoft Visual Studio

- Microsoft .NET Core 2.1, 3.1 or later

  This is typically included by default when installing a recent version of Visual Studio.

- (Optional) The AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio, which is a plugin that provides a user interface for managing your AWS resources and local profiles from Visual Studio. To install the toolkit, see Setting up the AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio.

  For more information, see the AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio User Guide.

Next step

Configure SDK authentication with AWS

Configure SDK authentication with AWS

You must establish how your code authenticates with AWS when developing with AWS services. There are different ways in which you can configure programmatic access to AWS resources, depending on the environment and the AWS access available to you.

To see various methods of authentication for the SDK, see Authentication and access in the *AWS SDKs and Tools Reference Guide*.

This topic assumes that a new user is developing locally, has not been given a method of authentication by their employer, and will be using AWS IAM Identity Center to obtain temporary credentials. If your environment doesn't fall under these assumptions, some of the information in this topic might not apply to you, or some of the information might have already been given to you.

Configuring this environment requires several steps, which are summarized as follows:

1. Login using console credentials
2. Enable and configure IAM Identity Center
3. Configure the SDK to use IAM Identity Center.
4. Start an AWS access portal session

Login using console credentials

You can use your existing AWS Management Console sign-in credentials for programmatic access to AWS services. After a browser-based authentication flow, AWS generates temporary credentials that work across local development tools like the AWS CLI, AWS Tools for PowerShell and the AWS SDK for .NET v3.

With this process, you can authenticate using root credentials created during initial account set up, an IAM user, or a federated identity from your identity provider, and AWS CLI or AWS Tools for PowerShell automatically manages the temporary credentials for you. This approach enhances security by eliminating the need to store long-term credentials locally.

When you run the `aws login` command from AWS CLI, you can select from your active console sessions, or sign in through the browser-based authentication flow and this will automatically generate temporary credentials. The temporary credential token will expire in 15 minutes, but the AWS SDK for .NET v3 automatically refresh the token when needed during your requests.

> **Warning**
>
> This feature is not supported for .NET Framework targets.

> **Important**
>
> If you're using the console credentials for authentication, your application must reference the following NuGet packages so that AWS Signin resolution can work:
>
> - **AWSSDK.Signin**
>
> Failure to reference these packages will result in a runtime exception.

- Login using console credentials using AWS CLI.

The `config` file would look like this once you've login following the steps given above the AWS CLI.

```
[default]
login_session = arn:aws:iam::0123456789012:user/username
region = us-east-1

[my-dev-profile]
login_session = arn:aws:iam::0123456789012:user/username
region = us-east-1
```

Enable and configure IAM Identity Center

To use IAM Identity Center, it must first be enabled and configured. To see details about how to do this for the SDK, look at **Step 1** in the topic for IAM Identity Center authentication in the *AWS*

SDKs and Tools Reference Guide. Specifically, follow any necessary instructions under **I do not have established access through IAM Identity Center**.

Configure the SDK to use IAM Identity Center.

Information about how to configure the SDK to use IAM Identity Center is in **Step 2** in the topic for IAM Identity Center authentication in the *AWS SDKs and Tools Reference Guide*. After you complete this configuration, your system should contain the following elements:

- The AWS CLI, which you use to start an AWS access portal session before you run your application.
- The shared AWS `config` file that contains a `[default]` profile with a set of configuration values that can be referenced from the SDK. To find the location of this file, see Location of the shared files in the *AWS SDKs and Tools Reference Guide*. The AWS SDK for .NET uses the profile's SSO token provider to acquire credentials before sending requests to AWS. The `sso_role_name` value, which is an IAM role connected to an IAM Identity Center permission set, should allow access to the AWS services used in your application.

  The following sample `config` file shows a default profile set up with SSO token provider. The profile's `sso_session` setting refers to the named `sso-session` section. The `sso-session` section contains settings to initiate an AWS access portal session.

```
[default]
sso_session = my-sso
sso_account_id = 111122223333
sso_role_name = SampleRole
region = us-east-1
output = json

[sso-session my-sso]
sso_region = us-east-1
sso_start_url = https://provided-domain.awsapps.com/start
sso_registration_scopes = sso:account:access
```

> **Important**
>
> If you're using AWS IAM Identity Center for authentication, your application must reference the following NuGet packages so that SSO resolution can work:

- `AWSSDK.SSO`
- `AWSSDK.SSOOIDC`

Failure to reference these packages will result in a *runtime* exception.

Start an AWS access portal session

Before running an application that accesses AWS services, you need an active AWS access portal session for the SDK to use IAM Identity Center authentication to resolve credentials. Depending on your configured session lengths, your access will eventually expire and the SDK will encounter an authentication error. To sign in to the AWS access portal, run the following command in the AWS CLI.

```
aws sso login
```

Since you have a default profile setup, you do not need to call the command with a `--profile` option. If your SSO token provider configuration is using a named profile, the command is `aws sso login --profile` *`named-profile`*.

To test if you already have an active session, run the following AWS CLI command.

```
aws sts get-caller-identity
```

The response to this command should report the IAM Identity Center account and permission set configured in the shared `config` file.

> **Note**
>
> If you already have an active AWS access portal session and run `aws sso login`, you will not be required to provide credentials.
> The sign-in process might prompt you to allow the AWS CLI access to your data. Because the AWS CLI is built on top of the SDK for Python, permission messages may contain variations of the `botocore` name.

Additional information

- For additional information about using IAM Identity Center and SSO in a development environment, see Single sign-on in the Advanced auth section. This information includes alternative and more advanced methods, as well as tutorials that show you how to use these methods.
- For more options on authentication for the SDK, such as the use of profiles and environment variables, see the configuration chapter in the *AWS SDKs and Tools Reference Guide*.
- To learn more about best practices, see Security best practices in IAM in the *IAM User Guide*.
- To create short-term AWS credentials, see Temporary Security Credentials in the *IAM User Guide*.
- To learn about other credential providers, see Standardized credential providers in the *AWS SDKs and Tools Reference Guide*.

Take a quick tour of the AWS SDK for .NET

This section provides basic tutorials for developers who are new to the AWS SDK for .NET.

> **Note**
>
> Before you use these tutorials, you must have first installed your toolchain and configured SDK authentication.

For information about developing software for specific AWS services along with code examples, see Work with AWS services. For additional code examples, see SDK for .NET code examples.

Topics

- Simple cross-platform application using the AWS SDK for .NET
- Simple Windows-based application using the AWS SDK for .NET
- Next steps

Simple cross-platform application using the AWS SDK for .NET

This tutorial uses the AWS SDK for .NET and .NET Core for cross-platform development. The tutorial shows you how to use the SDK to list the Amazon S3 buckets that you own and, optionally, create a bucket.

You'll perform this tutorial using cross-platform tools such as the .NET command line interface (CLI). For other ways to configure your development environment, see Install and configure your toolchain.

Required for cross-platform .NET development on Windows, Linux, or macOS:

- Microsoft .NET Core SDK, version 2.1, 3.1, or later, which includes the .NET command line interface (CLI) (`dotnet`) and the .NET Core runtime.

- A code editor or integrated development environment (IDE) that is appropriate for your operating system and requirements. This is typically one that provides some support for .NET Core.

  Examples include Microsoft Visual Studio Code (VS Code), JetBrains Rider, and Microsoft Visual Studio.

> **Note**
>
> Before you use these tutorials, you must have first installed your toolchain and configured SDK authentication.

Steps

- Create the project
- Create the code
- Run the application
- Cleanup

Create the project

1. Open the command prompt or terminal. Find or create an operating system folder under which you can create a .NET project.
2. In that folder, run the following command to create the .NET project.

```
dotnet new console --name S3CreateAndList
```

3. Go to the newly created `S3CreateAndList` folder and run the following commands:

```
dotnet add package AWSSDK.S3
dotnet add package AWSSDK.SecurityToken
dotnet add package AWSSDK.SSO
dotnet add package AWSSDK.SSOOIDC
```

The preceding commands install the NuGet packages from the NuGet package manager. Because we know exactly what NuGet packages we need for this tutorial, we can perform this step now. It's also common that the required packages become known during development. When this happens, a similar command can be run at that time.

Create the code

1. In the `S3CreateAndList` folder, find and open `Program.cs` in your code editor.
2. Replace the contents with the following code and save the file.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

// NuGet packages: AWSSDK.S3, AWSSDK.SecurityToken, AWSSDK.SSO, AWSSDK.SSOOIDC
using Amazon.Runtime;
using Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;
using Amazon.SecurityToken;
using Amazon.SecurityToken.Model;

namespace S3CreateAndList
{
    class Program
    {
```

```
        // This code is part of the quick tour in the developer guide.
        // See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-net/v3/developer-guide/quick-
start.html
        // for complete steps.
        // Requirements:
        // - An SSO profile in the SSO user's shared config file with sufficient
 privileges for
  //   STS and S3 buckets.
        // - An active SSO Token.
        //    If an active SSO token isn't available, the SSO user should do the
 following:
        //    In a terminal, the SSO user must call "aws sso login".

        // Class members.
        static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Get SSO credentials from the information in the shared config file.
            // For this tutorial, the information is in the [default] profile.
            var ssoCreds = LoadSsoCredentials("default");

            // Display the caller's identity.
            var ssoProfileClient = new AmazonSecurityTokenServiceClient(ssoCreds);
            Console.WriteLine($"\nSSO Profile:\n {await
 ssoProfileClient.GetCallerIdentityArn()}");

            // Create the S3 client is by using the SSO credentials obtained
 earlier.
            var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client(ssoCreds);

            // Parse the command line arguments for the bucket name.
            if (GetBucketName(args, out String bucketName))
            {
                // If a bucket name was supplied, create the bucket.
                // Call the API method directly
                try
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"\nCreating bucket {bucketName}...");
                    var createResponse = await s3Client.PutBucketAsync(bucketName);
                    Console.WriteLine($"Result:
 {createResponse.HttpStatusCode.ToString()}");
                }
                catch (Exception e)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Caught exception when creating a bucket:");
```

```
                    Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
                }
            }

            // Display a list of the account's S3 buckets.
            Console.WriteLine("\nGetting a list of your buckets...");
            var listResponse = await s3Client.ListBucketsAsync();
            Console.WriteLine($"Number of buckets: {listResponse.Buckets.Count}");
            foreach (S3Bucket b in listResponse.Buckets)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(b.BucketName);
            }
            Console.WriteLine();
        }

        //
        // Method to parse the command line.
        private static Boolean GetBucketName(string[] args, out String bucketName)
        {
            Boolean retval = false;
            bucketName = String.Empty;
            if (args.Length == 0)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("\nNo arguments specified. Will simply list your
Amazon S3 buckets." +
                  "\nIf you wish to create a bucket, supply a valid, globally
unique bucket name.");
                bucketName = String.Empty;
                retval = false;
            }
            else if (args.Length == 1)
            {
                bucketName = args[0];
                retval = true;
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("\nToo many arguments specified." +
                  "\n\ndotnet_tutorials - A utility to list your Amazon S3 buckets
and optionally create a new one." +
                  "\n\nUsage: S3CreateAndList [bucket_name]" +
                  "\n - bucket_name: A valid, globally unique bucket name." +
                  "\n - If bucket_name isn't supplied, this utility simply lists
your buckets.");
```

```
                Environment.Exit(1);
            }
            return retval;
        }

        //
        // Method to get SSO credentials from the information in the shared config
 file.
        static AWSCredentials LoadSsoCredentials(string profile)
        {
            var chain = new CredentialProfileStoreChain();
            if (!chain.TryGetAWSCredentials(profile, out var credentials))
                throw new Exception($"Failed to find the {profile} profile");
            return credentials;
        }
    }

    // Class to read the caller's identity.
    public static class Extensions
    {
        public static async Task<string> GetCallerIdentityArn(this
 IAmazonSecurityTokenService stsClient)
        {
            var response = await stsClient.GetCallerIdentityAsync(new
 GetCallerIdentityRequest());
            return response.Arn;
        }
    }
}
```

Run the application

1. Run the following command.

```
dotnet run
```

2. Examine the output to see the number of Amazon S3 buckets that you own, if any, and their names.
3. Choose a name for a new Amazon S3 bucket. Use "dotnet-quicktour-s3-1-cross-" as a base and add something unique to it, such as a GUID or your name. Be sure to follow the rules for bucket names, as described in Rules for bucket naming in the Amazon S3 User Guide.

4. Run the following command, replacing *amzn-s3-demo-bucket* with the name of the bucket that you chose.

```
dotnet run amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

5. Examine the output to see the new bucket that was created.

Cleanup

While performing this tutorial, you created some resources that you can choose to clean up at this time.

- If you don't want to keep the bucket that the application created in an earlier step, delete it by using the Amazon S3 console at https://console.aws.amazon.com/s3/.
- If you don't want to keep your .NET project, remove the `S3CreateAndList` folder from your development environment.

Where to go next

Go back to the quick-tour menu or go straight to the end of this quick tour.

Simple Windows-based application using the AWS SDK for .NET

This tutorial uses the AWS SDK for .NET on Windows with Visual Studio and .NET Core. The tutorial shows you how to use the SDK to list the Amazon S3 buckets that you own and optionally create a bucket.

You'll perform this tutorial on Windows using Visual Studio and .NET Core. For other ways to configure your development environment, see Install and configure your toolchain.

Required for development on Windows with Visual Studio and .NET Core:

- Microsoft Visual Studio

- Microsoft .NET Core 2.1, 3.1 or later

  This is typically included by default when installing a recent version of Visual Studio.

> **Note**
>
> Before you use these tutorials, you must have first installed your toolchain and configured SDK authentication.

Steps

- Create the project
- Create the code
- Run the application
- Cleanup

Create the project

1. Open Visual Studio and create a new project that uses the C# version of the **Console App** template; that is, with description: "...for creating a command-line application that can run on .NET...". Name the project `S3CreateAndList`.

   > **Note**
   >
   > Don't choose the .NET Framework version of the console app template, or, if you do, be sure to use .NET Framework 4.7.2 or later.

2. With the newly created project loaded, choose **Tools**, **NuGet Package Manager**, **Manage NuGet Packages for Solution**.
3. Browse for the following NuGet packages and install them into the project: `AWSSDK.S3`, `AWSSDK.SecurityToken`, `AWSSDK.SSO`, and `AWSSDK.SSOOIDC`

   This process installs the NuGet packages from the NuGet package manager. Because we know exactly what NuGet packages we need for this tutorial, we can perform this step now. It's also common that the required packages become known during development. When this happens, follow a similar process to install them at that time.
4. If you intend to run the application from the command prompt, open a command prompt now and navigate to the folder that will contain the build output. This is typically something

like `S3CreateAndList\S3CreateAndList\bin\Debug\net6.0`, but will depend on your environment.

Create the code

1. In the `S3CreateAndList` project, find and open `Program.cs` in the IDE.
2. Replace the contents with the following code and save the file.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

// NuGet packages: AWSSDK.S3, AWSSDK.SecurityToken, AWSSDK.SSO, AWSSDK.SSOOIDC
using Amazon.Runtime;
using Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;
using Amazon.SecurityToken;
using Amazon.SecurityToken.Model;

namespace S3CreateAndList
{
    class Program
    {
        // This code is part of the quick tour in the developer guide.
        // See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-net/v3/developer-guide/quick-
start.html
        // for complete steps.
        // Requirements:
        // - An SSO profile in the SSO user's shared config file with sufficient
 privileges for
  //   STS and S3 buckets.
        // - An active SSO Token.
        //    If an active SSO token isn't available, the SSO user should do the
 following:
        //    In a terminal, the SSO user must call "aws sso login".

        // Class members.
        static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Get SSO credentials from the information in the shared config file.
            // For this tutorial, the information is in the [default] profile.
            var ssoCreds = LoadSsoCredentials("default");
```

```
            // Display the caller's identity.
            var ssoProfileClient = new AmazonSecurityTokenServiceClient(ssoCreds);
            Console.WriteLine($"\nSSO Profile:\n {await
ssoProfileClient.GetCallerIdentityArn()}");

            // Create the S3 client is by using the SSO credentials obtained
earlier.
            var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client(ssoCreds);

            // Parse the command line arguments for the bucket name.
            if (GetBucketName(args, out String bucketName))
            {
                // If a bucket name was supplied, create the bucket.
                // Call the API method directly
                try
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"\nCreating bucket {bucketName}...");
                    var createResponse = await s3Client.PutBucketAsync(bucketName);
                    Console.WriteLine($"Result:
{createResponse.HttpStatusCode.ToString()}");
                }
                catch (Exception e)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Caught exception when creating a bucket:");
                    Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
                }
            }

            // Display a list of the account's S3 buckets.
            Console.WriteLine("\nGetting a list of your buckets...");
            var listResponse = await s3Client.ListBucketsAsync();
            Console.WriteLine($"Number of buckets: {listResponse.Buckets.Count}");
            foreach (S3Bucket b in listResponse.Buckets)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(b.BucketName);
            }
            Console.WriteLine();
        }

        //
        // Method to parse the command line.
        private static Boolean GetBucketName(string[] args, out String bucketName)
        {
```

```
            Boolean retval = false;
            bucketName = String.Empty;
            if (args.Length == 0)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("\nNo arguments specified. Will simply list your
Amazon S3 buckets." +
                  "\nIf you wish to create a bucket, supply a valid, globally
unique bucket name.");
                bucketName = String.Empty;
                retval = false;
            }
            else if (args.Length == 1)
            {
                bucketName = args[0];
                retval = true;
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("\nToo many arguments specified." +
                  "\n\ndotnet_tutorials - A utility to list your Amazon S3 buckets
and optionally create a new one." +
                  "\n\nUsage: S3CreateAndList [bucket_name]" +
                  "\n - bucket_name: A valid, globally unique bucket name." +
                  "\n - If bucket_name isn't supplied, this utility simply lists
your buckets.");
                Environment.Exit(1);
            }
            return retval;
        }

        //
        // Method to get SSO credentials from the information in the shared config
file.
        static AWSCredentials LoadSsoCredentials(string profile)
        {
            var chain = new CredentialProfileStoreChain();
            if (!chain.TryGetAWSCredentials(profile, out var credentials))
                throw new Exception($"Failed to find the {profile} profile");
            return credentials;
        }
    }

    // Class to read the caller's identity.
    public static class Extensions
```

```
    {
        public static async Task<string> GetCallerIdentityArn(this
 IAmazonSecurityTokenService stsClient)
        {
            var response = await stsClient.GetCallerIdentityAsync(new
 GetCallerIdentityRequest());
            return response.Arn;
        }
    }
}
```

3. Build the application.

> **Note**
>
> If you're using an older version of Visual Studio, you might get a build error similar to the following:
> "Feature 'async main' is not available in C# 7.0. Please use language version 7.1 or greater."
> If you get this error, set up your project to use a later version of the language. This is typically done in the project properties, **Build**, **Advanced**.

Run the application

1. Run the application with no command line arguments. Do this either in the command prompt (if you opened one earlier) or from the IDE.
2. Examine the output to see the number of Amazon S3 buckets that you own, if any, and their names.
3. Choose a name for a new Amazon S3 bucket. Use "dotnet-quicktour-s3-1-winvs-" as a base and add something unique to it, such as a GUID or your name. Be sure to follow the rules for bucket names, as described in Rules for Bucket Naming in the Amazon S3 User Guide.
4. Run the application again, this time supplying the bucket name.

   In the command line, replace *amzn-s3-demo-bucket* in the following command with the name of the bucket that you chose.

   ```
   S3CreateAndList amzn-s3-demo-bucket
   ```

Or, if you are running the application in the IDE, choose **Project**, **S3CreateAndList Properties**, **Debug** and enter the bucket name there.

5. Examine the output to see the new bucket that was created.

Cleanup

While performing this tutorial, you created some resources that you can choose to clean up at this time.

- If you don't want to keep the bucket that the application created in an earlier step, delete it by using the Amazon S3 console at https://console.aws.amazon.com/s3/.
- If you don't want to keep your .NET project, remove the `S3CreateAndList` folder from your development environment.

Where to go next

Go back to the quick-tour menu or go straight to the end of this quick tour.

Next steps

Be sure to clean up any leftover resources that you created while performing these tutorials. These might be AWS resources or resources in your development environment such as files and folders.

Now that you've toured the AWS SDK for .NET, you might want to start your project.

Start a new project

There are several techniques you can use to start a new project to access AWS services. The following are some of those techniques:

- If you're new to .NET development on AWS or at least new to the AWS SDK for .NET, you can see complete examples in Take a quick tour. It gives you an introduction to the SDK.

- You can start a basic project by using the .NET CLI. To see an example of this, open a command prompt or terminal, create a folder or directory and navigate to it, and then enter the following.

```
dotnet new console --name [SOME-NAME]
```

An empty project is created to which you can add code and NuGet packages. For more information, see the .NET Core guide.

To see a list of project templates, use the following: `dotnet new --list`

- The AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio includes C# project templates for a variety of AWS services. After you install the toolkit in Visual Studio, you can access the templates while creating a new project.

  To see this, go to Working with AWS services in the AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio User Guide. Several of the examples in that section create new projects.

- If you develop with Visual Studio on Windows but without the AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio, use your typical techniques for creating a new project.

  To see an example, open Visual Studio and choose **File**, **New**, **Project**. Search for ".net core" and choose the C# version of the **Console App (.NET Core)** or **WPF App (.NET Core)** template. An empty project is created to which you can add code and NuGet packages.

You can find some examples of how to work with AWS services in Code examples with guidance.

> **Important**
>
> If you're using AWS IAM Identity Center for authentication, your application must reference the following NuGet packages so that SSO resolution can work:
>
> - `AWSSDK.SSO`
> - `AWSSDK.SSOOIDC`
>
> Failure to reference these packages will result in a *runtime* exception.

Configure the AWS Region

AWS Regions allow you to access AWS services that physically reside in a specific geographic region. This can be useful for redundancy and to keep your data and applications running close to where you and your users will access them.

To view the current list of all supported Regions and endpoints for each AWS service, see Service endpoints and quotas in the *AWS General Reference*. To view a list of existing Regional endpoints, see AWS service endpoints. To see detailed information about Regions, see Specify which AWS Regions your account can use.

You can create an AWS service client that goes to a particular Region. You can also configure your application with a Region that will be used for all AWS service clients. These two cases are explained next.

Create a service client with a particular Region

You can specify the Region for any of the AWS service clients in your application. Setting the Region in this way takes precedence over any global setting for that particular service client.

Existing Region

This example shows you how to instantiate an Amazon EC2 client in an existing Region. It uses defined RegionEndpoint fields.

```
using (AmazonEC2Client ec2Client = new AmazonEC2Client(RegionEndpoint.USWest2))
{
  // Make a request to EC2 in the us-west-2 Region using ec2Client
}
```

New Region using RegionEndpoint class

This example shows you how to construct a new Region endpoint by using RegionEndpoint.GetBySystemName.

```
var newRegion = RegionEndpoint.GetBySystemName("us-west-new");
using (var ec2Client = new AmazonEC2Client(newRegion))
{
  // Make a request to EC2 in the new Region using ec2Client
```

```
}
```

New Region using the service client configuration class

This example shows you how to use the `ServiceURL` property of the service client configuration class to specify the Region; in this case, using the AmazonEC2Config class.

This technique works even if the Region endpoint doesn't follow the regular Region endpoint pattern.

```
var ec2ClientConfig = new AmazonEC2Config
{
    // Specify the endpoint explicitly
    ServiceURL = "https://ec2.us-west-new.amazonaws.com"
};

using (var ec2Client = new AmazonEC2Client(ec2ClientConfig))
{
  // Make a request to EC2 in the new Region using ec2Client
}
```

Specify a Region for all service clients

There are several ways you can specify a Region for all of the AWS service clients that your application creates. This Region is used for service clients that aren't created with a particular Region.

The AWS SDK for .NET looks for a Region value in the following order.

Profiles

Set in a profile that your application or the SDK has loaded. For more information, see Credential and profile resolution.

Environment variables

Set in the `AWS_REGION` environment variable.

On Linux or macOS:

```
export AWS_REGION='us-west-2'
```

On Windows:

```
set AWS_REGION=us-west-2
```

> **Note**
>
> If you set this environment variable for the whole system (using `export` or `setx`), it affects all SDKs and toolkits, not just the AWS SDK for .NET.

AWSConfigs class

Set as an AWSConfigs.AWSRegion property.

```
AWSConfigs.AWSRegion = "us-west-2";
using (var ec2Client = new AmazonEC2Client())
{
  // Make request to Amazon EC2 in us-west-2 Region using ec2Client
}
```

Region resolution

If none of the methods described above are used to specify an AWS Region, the AWS SDK for .NET attempts to find a Region for the AWS service client to operate in.

Region resolution order

1. Application configuration files such as `app.config` and `web.config`.
2. Environment variables (`AWS_REGION` and `AWS_DEFAULT_REGION`).
3. A profile with the name specified by a value in `AWSConfigs.AWSProfileName`.
4. A profile with the name specified by the `AWS_PROFILE` environment variable.
5. The `[default]` profile.
6. Amazon EC2 instance metadata (if running on an EC2 instance).

If no Region is found, the SDK throws an exception stating that the AWS service client has no configured Region.

Special information about the China (Beijing) Region

To use services in the China (Beijing) Region, you must have an account and credentials that are specific to the China (Beijing) Region. Accounts and credentials for other AWS Regions won't work for the China (Beijing) Region. Likewise, accounts and credentials for the China (Beijing) Region won't work for other AWS Regions. For information about endpoints and protocols that are available in the China (Beijing) Region, see Beijing Region Endpoints.

Special information about new AWS services

New AWS services can be launched initially in a few Regions and then supported in other Regions. In these cases you don't need to install the latest SDK to access the new Regions for that service. You can specify newly added Regions on a per-client basis or globally, as shown earlier.

Install AWSSDK packages with NuGet

NuGet is a package management system for the .NET platform. With NuGet, you can install the AWSSDK packages, as well as several other extensions, to your project. For additional information, see the aws/dotnet repository on the GitHub website.

NuGet always has the most recent versions of the AWSSDK packages, as well as previous versions. NuGet is aware of dependencies between packages and installs all required packages automatically.

> **Warning**
>
> The list of NuGet packages might include one named simply "AWSSDK" (with no appended identifier). Do NOT install this NuGet package; it is legacy and should not be used for new projects.

Packages installed with NuGet are stored with your project instead of in a central location. This enables you to install assembly versions specific to a given application without creating compatibility issues for other applications. For more information about NuGet, see the NuGet documentation.

> **Note**
>
> If you can't or aren't allowed to download and install NuGet packages on a per-project basis, you can obtain the AWSSDK assemblies and store them locally (or on premises). If this applies to you and you haven't already obtained the AWSSDK assemblies, see Obtaining AWSSDK assemblies. To learn how to use the locally stored assemblies, see Install AWSSDK assemblies without NuGet.

Using NuGet from the Command prompt or terminal

1. Go to the AWSSDK packages on NuGet and determine which packages you need in your project; for example, **AWSSDK.S3**.
2. Copy the .NET CLI command from that package's webpage, as shown in the following example.

   ```
   dotnet add package AWSSDK.S3 --version 3.3.110.19
   ```

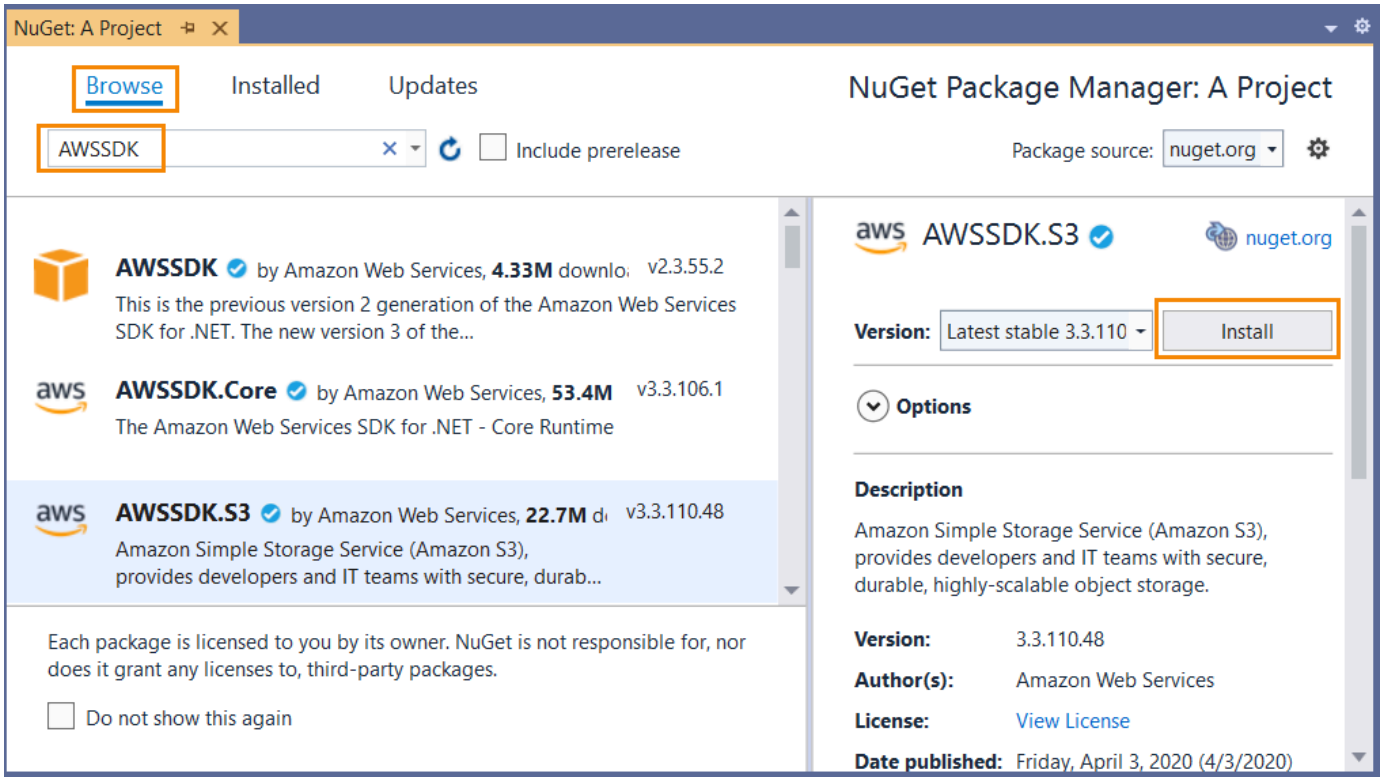
3. In your project's directory, run that .NET CLI command. NuGet also installs any dependencies, such as AWSSDK.Core.

> **Note**
>
> If you want only the latest version of a NuGet package, you can exclude version information from the command, as shown in the following example.
> `dotnet add package AWSSDK.S3`

Using NuGet from Visual Studio Solution Explorer

1. In **Solution Explorer**, right-click your project, and then choose **Manage NuGet Packages** from the context menu.
2. In the left pane of the **NuGet Package Manager**, choose **Browse**. You can then use the search box to search for the package you want to install. NuGet also installs any dependencies, such as AWSSDK.Core.

   The following figure shows installation of the **AWSSDK.S3** package.



Using NuGet from the Package Manager Console

In Visual Studio, choose **Tools**, **NuGet Package Manager**, **Package Manager Console**.

You can install the AWSSDK packages you want from the Package Manager Console by using the **`Install-Package`** command. For example, to install AWSSDK.S3, use the following command.

```
PM> Install-Package AWSSDK.S3
```

NuGet also installs any dependencies, such as AWSSDK.Core.

If you need to install an earlier version of a package, use the `-Version` option and specify the package version you want, as shown in the following example.

```
PM> Install-Package AWSSDK.S3 -Version 3.3.106.6
```

For more information about Package Manager Console commands, see the PowerShell reference in Microsoft's NuGet documentation.

Install AWSSDK assemblies without NuGet

This topic describes how you can use the AWSSDK assemblies that you obtained and stored locally (or on premises) as described in Obtaining AWSSDK assemblies. This is **not** the recommended method for handling SDK references, but is required in some environments.

> **Note**
>
> The recommended method for handling SDK references is to download and install just the NuGet packages that each project needs. That method is described in Install AWSSDK packages with NuGet.

To install AWSSDK assemblies

1. Create a folder in your project area for the required AWSSDK assemblies. As an example, you might call this folder `AwsAssemblies`.
2. If you haven't already done so, obtain the AWSSDK assemblies, which places the assemblies in some local download or installation folder. Copy the DLL files for the required assemblies from that download folder into your project (into the `AwsAssemblies` folder, in our example).

   Be sure to also copy any dependencies. You can find information about dependencies on the GitHub website.
3. Make reference to the required assemblies as follows.

   Cross-platform development

   1. Open your project's `.csproj` file and add an `<ItemGroup>` element.
   2. In the `<ItemGroup>` element, add a `<Reference>` element with an `Include` attribute for each required assembly.

      For Amazon S3, for example, you would add the following lines to your project's `.csproj` file.

      On Linux and macOS:

```
<ItemGroup>
  <Reference Include="./AwsAssemblies/AWSSDK.Core.dll" />
  <Reference Include="./AwsAssemblies/AWSSDK.S3.dll" />
```

```
</ItemGroup>
```

On Windows:

```
<ItemGroup>
  <Reference Include="AwsAssemblies\AWSSDK.Core.dll" />
  <Reference Include="AwsAssemblies\AWSSDK.S3.dll" />
</ItemGroup>
```

3. Save you project's `.csproj` file.

Windows with Visual Studio and .NET Core

1. In Visual Studio, load your project and open **Project**, **Add Reference**.
2. Choose the **Browse** button on the bottom of the dialog box. Navigate to your project's folder and the subfolder that you copied the required DLL files to (`AwsAssemblies`, for example).
3. Select all the DLL files, choose **Add**, and choose **OK**.
4. Save your project.

Credential and profile resolution

The AWS SDK for .NET searches for credentials in a certain order and uses the first available set for the current application.

Credential search order

1. Credentials that are explicitly set on the AWS service client, as described in Accessing credentials and profiles in an application.

> **Note**
>
> That topic is in the Special considerations section because it isn't the preferred method for specifying credentials.

2. A credentials profile with the name specified by a value in AWSConfigs.AWSProfileName.
3. A credentials profile with the name specified by the `AWS_PROFILE` environment variable.

4. The `[default]` credentials profile.
5. SessionAWSCredentials that are created from the `AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID`, `AWS_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY`, and `AWS_SESSION_TOKEN` environment variables, if they're all non-empty.
6. BasicAWSCredentials that are created from the `AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID` and `AWS_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY` environment variables, if they're both non-empty.
7. The container credential provider.
8. Amazon EC2 instance metadata.

If your application is running on an Amazon EC2 instance, such as in a production environment, use an IAM role as described in Granting access by using an IAM role. Otherwise, such as in prerelease testing, store your credentials in a file that uses the AWS credentials file format that your web application has access to on the server.

Profile resolution

With two different storage mechanisms for credentials, it's important to understand how to configure the AWS SDK for .NET to use them. The AWSConfigs.AWSProfilesLocation property controls how the AWS SDK for .NET finds credential profiles.

AWSProfilesLocation	Profile resolution behavior
null (not set) or empty	Search the SDK Store if the platform supports it, and then search the shared AWS credentials file in the default location. If the profile isn't in either of those locations, search `~/.aws/config` (Linux or macOS) or `%USERPROFILE%\.aws\config` (Windows).
The path to a file in the AWS credentials file format	Search *only* the specified file for a profile with the specified name.

Using federated user account credentials

Applications that use the AWS SDK for .NET (AWSSDK.Core version 3.1.6.0 and later) can use federated user accounts through Active Directory Federation Services (AD FS) to access AWS services by using Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML).

Federated access support means users can authenticate using your Active Directory. Temporary credentials are granted to the user automatically. These temporary credentials, which are valid for one hour, are used when your application invokes AWS services. The SDK handles management of the temporary credentials. For domain-joined user accounts, if your application makes a call but the credentials have expired, the user is reauthenticated automatically and fresh credentials are granted. (For non-domain-joined accounts, the user is prompted to enter credentials before reauthentication.)

To use this support in your .NET application, you must first set up the role profile by using a PowerShell cmdlet. To learn how, see the AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell documentation.

After you set up the role profile, reference the profile in your application. There are a number of ways to do this, one of which is by using the AWSConfigs.AWSProfileName property in the same way you would with other credential profiles.

The *AWS Security Token Service* assembly (AWSSDK.SecurityToken) provides the SAML support to obtain AWS credentials. To use federated user account credentials, be sure this assembly is available to your application.

Specifying roles or temporary credentials

For applications that run on Amazon EC2 instances, the most secure way to manage credentials is to use IAM roles, as described in Granting access by using an IAM role.

For application scenarios in which the software executable is available to users outside your organization, we recommend that you design the software to use *temporary security credentials*. In addition to providing restricted access to AWS resources, these credentials have the benefit of expiring after a specified period of time. For more information about temporary security credentials, see the following:

- Temporary security credentials
- Amazon Cognito identity pools

Using proxy credentials

If your software communicates with AWS through a proxy, you can specify credentials for the proxy by using the `ProxyCredentials` property of the `Config` class of a service. The `Config` class of a service is typically part of the primary namespace for the service. Examples include the following: AmazonCloudDirectoryConfig in the Amazon.CloudDirectory namespace and AmazonGameLiftConfig in the Amazon.GameLift namespace.

For Amazon S3, for example, you could use code similar to the following, where `SecurelyStoredUserName` and `SecurelyStoredPassword` are the proxy user name and password specified in a NetworkCredential object.

```
AmazonS3Config config = new AmazonS3Config();
config.ProxyCredentials = new NetworkCredential(SecurelyStoredUserName,
 SecurelyStoredPassword);
```

> **Note**
>
> Earlier versions of the SDK used `ProxyUsername` and `ProxyPassword`, but these properties are deprecated.

Additional information about users and roles

For doing .NET development on AWS or for running .NET applications on AWS, you need to have some combination of users, permission sets, and service roles that are appropriate for these tasks.

The specific users, permission sets, and service roles that you create, and the way in which you use them, will depend on the requirements of your applications. The following is some additional information about why they might be used and how to create them.

Users and permission sets

Although it's possible to use an IAM user account with long-term credentials to access AWS services, this is no longer a best practice and should be avoided. Even during development, it is a best practice to create users and permission sets in AWS IAM Identity Center and use temporary credentials provided by an identity source.

For development, you can use the user that you created or were given in Configure SDK authentication. If you have appropriate AWS Management Console permissions, you can also create different permission sets with least privilege for that user or create new users specifically for development projects, providing permission sets with least privilege. The course of action you choose, if any, depends on your circumstances.

For more information about these users and permissions sets and how to create them, see Authentication and access in the *AWS SDKs and Tools Reference Guide* and Getting started in the *AWS IAM Identity Center User Guide*.

Service roles

You can set up an AWS service role to access AWS services on behalf of users. This type of access is appropriate if multiple people will be running your application remotely; for example, on an Amazon EC2 instance that you have created for this purpose.

The process for creating a service role varies depending on the situation, but is essentially the following.

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the IAM console at https://console.aws.amazon.com/iam/.
2. Choose **Roles**, and then choose **Create role**.
3. Choose **AWS service**, find and select **EC2** (for example), and then choose the **EC2** use case (for example).
4. Choose **Next: Permissions**, and select the appropriate policies for the AWS services that your application will use.

   > **Warning**
   >
   > Do ***NOT*** choose the **AdministratorAccess** policy because that policy enables read and write permissions to almost everything in your account.

5. Choose **Next: Tags** and enter any tags you want.

   You can find information about tags in Control access using AWS resource tags in the IAM User Guide.
6. Choose **Next: Review** and provide a **Role name** and **Role description**. Then choose **Create role**.

You can find high-level information about IAM roles in Identities (users, groups, and roles) in the IAM User Guide. Find detailed information about roles in that guide's IAM roles topic.

Additional information about roles

- Use IAM roles for tasks for Amazon Elastic Container Service (Amazon ECS) tasks.
- Use IAM roles for applications that are running on Amazon EC2 instances.

Advanced configuration for your AWS SDK for .NET project

The topics in this section contain information about additional configuration tasks and methods that might be of interest to you.

Topics

- Using AWSSDK.Extensions.NETCore.Setup and the IConfiguration interface
- Configuring Other Application Parameters
- Configuration Files Reference for AWS SDK for .NET

Using AWSSDK.Extensions.NETCore.Setup and the IConfiguration interface

(This topic was formerly titled, "Configuring the AWS SDK for .NET with .NET Core")

One of the biggest changes in .NET Core is the removal of `ConfigurationManager` and the standard `app.config` and `web.config` files that were used with .NET Framework and ASP.NET applications.

Configuration in .NET Core is based on key-value pairs established by configuration providers. Configuration providers read configuration data into key-value pairs from a variety of configuration sources, including command-line arguments, directory files, environment variables, and settings files.

> **Note**
>
> For further information, see Configuration in ASP.NET Core.

To make it easy to use the AWS SDK for .NET with .NET Core, you can use the AWSSDK.Extensions.NETCore.Setup NuGet package. Like many .NET Core libraries, it adds extension methods to the `IConfiguration` interface to make getting the AWS configuration seamless.

The source code for this package is on GitHub at https://github.com/aws/aws-sdk-net/tree/aws-sdk-net-v3.7/extensions/src/AWSSDK.Extensions.NETCore.Setup.

Using AWSSDK.Extensions.NETCore.Setup

Suppose that you create an ASP.NET Core Model-View-Controller (MVC) application, which can be accomplished with the **ASP.NET Core Web Application** template in Visual Studio or by running `dotnet new mvc ...` in the .NET Core CLI. When you create such an application, the constructor for `Startup.cs` handles configuration by reading in various input sources from configuration providers such as `appsettings.json`.

```
public Startup(IConfiguration configuration)
{
    Configuration = configuration;
}
```

To use the `Configuration` object to get the *AWS* options, first add the `AWSSDK.Extensions.NETCore.Setup` NuGet package. Then, add your options to the configuration file as described next.

Notice that one of the files added to your project is `appsettings.Development.json`. This corresponds to an `EnvironmentName` set to **Development**. During development, you put your configuration in this file, which is only read during local testing. When you deploy an Amazon EC2 instance that has `EnvironmentName` set to **Production**, this file is ignored and the AWS SDK for .NET falls back to the IAM credentials and Region that are configured for the Amazon EC2 instance.

The following configuration settings show examples of the values you can add in the `appsettings.Development.json` file in your project to supply AWS settings.

```
{
  "AWS": {
    "Profile": "local-test-profile",
    "Region": "us-west-2"
  },
```

```
  "SupportEmail": "TechSupport@example.com"
}
```

To access a setting in a *CSHTML* file, use the `Configuration` directive.

```
@using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration
@inject IConfiguration Configuration

<h1>Contact</h1>

<p>
    <strong>Support:</strong> <a
 href='mailto:@Configuration["SupportEmail"]'>@Configuration["SupportEmail"]</a><br />
</p>
```

To access the AWS options set in the file from code, call the `GetAWSOptions` extension method added to `IConfiguration`.

To construct a service client from these options, call `CreateServiceClient`. The following example shows how to create an Amazon S3 service client. (Be sure to add the AWSSDK.S3 NuGet package to your project.)

```
var options = Configuration.GetAWSOptions();
IAmazonS3 client = options.CreateServiceClient<IAmazonS3>();
```

You can also create multiple service clients with incompatible settings by using multiple entries in the `appsettings.Development.json` file, as shown in the following examples where the configuration for `service1` includes the `us-west-2` Region and the configuration for `service2` includes the special endpoint *URL*.

```
{
  "service1": {
    "Profile": "default",
    "Region": "us-west-2"
  },
  "service2": {
    "Profile": "default",
    "ServiceURL": "URL"
  }
}
```

You can then get the options for a specific service by using the entry in the JSON file. For example, to get the settings for `service1` use the following.

```
var options = Configuration.GetAWSOptions("service1");
```

Allowed values in appsettings file

The following app configuration values can be set in the `appsettings.Development.json` file. The field names must use the casing shown. For details on these settings, see the `AWS.Runtime.ClientConfig` class.

- Region
- Profile
- ProfilesLocation
- SignatureVersion
- RegionEndpoint
- UseHttp
- ServiceURL
- AuthenticationRegion
- AuthenticationServiceName
- MaxErrorRetry
- LogResponse
- BufferSize
- ProgressUpdateInterval
- ResignRetries
- AllowAutoRedirect
- LogMetrics
- DisableLogging
- UseDualstackEndpoint

ASP.NET Core dependency injection

The *AWSSDK.Extensions.NETCore.Setup* NuGet package also integrates with a new dependency injection system in ASP.NET Core. The `ConfigureServices` method in your application's

`Startup` class is where the MVC services are added. If the application is using Entity Framework, this is also where that is initialized.

```
public void ConfigureServices(IServiceCollection services)
{
    // Add framework services.
    services.AddMvc();
}
```

> **Note**
>
> Background on dependency injection in .NET Core is available on the .NET Core documentation site.

The `AWSSDK.Extensions.NETCore.Setup` NuGet package adds new extension methods to `IServiceCollection` that you can use to add AWS services to the dependency injection. The following code shows you how to add the AWS options that are read from `IConfiguration` to add Amazon S3 and DynamoDB to the list of services. (Be sure to add the AWSSDK.S3 and AWSSDK.DynamoDBv2 NuGet packages to your project.)

```
public void ConfigureServices(IServiceCollection services)
{
    // Add framework services.
    services.AddMvc();

    services.AddDefaultAWSOptions(Configuration.GetAWSOptions());
    services.AddAWSService<IAmazonS3>();
    services.AddAWSService<IAmazonDynamoDB>();
}
```

Now, if your MVC controllers use either `IAmazonS3` or `IAmazonDynamoDB` as parameters in their constructors, the dependency injection system passes in those services.

```
public class HomeController : Controller
{
    IAmazonS3 S3Client { get; set; }

    public HomeController(IAmazonS3 s3Client)
    {
```

```
        this.S3Client = s3Client;
    }

    ...

}
```

Configuring Other Application Parameters

> **Note**
>
> The information in this topic is specific to projects based on .NET Framework. The `App.config` and `Web.config` files are not present by default in projects based on .NET Core.

Open to view .NET Framework content

There are a number of application parameters that you can configure:

- `AWSLogging`
- `AWSLogMetrics`
- `AWSRegion`
- `AWSResponseLogging`
- `AWS.DynamoDBContext.TableNamePrefix`
- `AWS.S3.UseSignatureVersion4`
- `AWSEndpointDefinition`
- AWS Service-Generated Endpoints

These parameters can be configured in the application's `App.config` or `Web.config` file. Although you can also configure these with the AWS SDK for .NET API, we recommend you use the application's `.config` file. Both approaches are described here.

For more information about use of the `<aws>` element as described later in this topic, see Configuration Files Reference for AWS SDK for .NET.

AWSLogging

Configures how the SDK should log events, if at all. For example, the recommended approach is to use the `<logging>` element, which is a child element of the `<aws>` element:

```
<aws>
  <logging logTo="Log4Net"/>
</aws>
```

Alternatively:

```
<add key="AWSLogging" value="log4net"/>
```

The possible values are:

`None`

Turn off event logging. This is the default.

`log4net`

Log using log4net.

`SystemDiagnostics`

Log using the `System.Diagnostics` class.

You can set multiple values for the `logTo` attribute, separated by commas. The following example sets both `log4net` and `System.Diagnostics` logging in the `.config` file:

```
<logging logTo="Log4Net, SystemDiagnostics"/>
```

Alternatively:

```
<add key="AWSLogging" value="log4net, SystemDiagnostics"/>
```

Alternatively, using the AWS SDK for .NET API, combine the values of the LoggingOptions enumeration and set the AWSConfigs.Logging property:

```
AWSConfigs.Logging = LoggingOptions.Log4Net | LoggingOptions.SystemDiagnostics;
```

Changes to this setting take effect only for new AWS client instances.

AWSLogMetrics

Specifies whether or not the SDK should log performance metrics. To set the metrics logging configuration in the `.config` file, set the `logMetrics` attribute value in the `<logging>` element, which is a child element of the `<aws>` element:

```
<aws>
  <logging logMetrics="true"/>
</aws>
```

Alternatively, set the `AWSLogMetrics` key in the `<appSettings>` section:

```
<add key="AWSLogMetrics" value="true">
```

Alternatively, to set metrics logging with the AWS SDK for .NET API, set the AWSConfigs.LogMetrics property:

```
AWSConfigs.LogMetrics = true;
```

This setting configures the default `LogMetrics` property for all clients/configs. Changes to this setting take effect only for new AWS client instances.

AWSRegion

Configures the default AWS region for clients that have not explicitly specified a region. To set the region in the `.config` file, the recommended approach is to set the `region` attribute value in the `aws` element:

```
<aws region="us-west-2"/>
```

Alternatively, set the *AWSRegion* key in the `<appSettings>` section:

```
<add key="AWSRegion" value="us-west-2"/>
```

Alternatively, to set the region with the AWS SDK for .NET API, set the AWSConfigs.AWSRegion property:

```
AWSConfigs.AWSRegion = "us-west-2";
```

For more information about creating an AWS client for a specific region, see AWS Region Selection. Changes to this setting take effect only for new AWS client instances.

AWSResponseLogging

Configures when the SDK should log service responses. The possible values are:

`Never`

Never log service responses. This is the default.

`Always`

Always log service responses.

`OnError`

Only log service responses when an error occurs.

To set the service logging configuration in the `.config` file, the recommended approach is to set the `logResponses` attribute value in the `<logging>` element, which is a child element of the `<aws>` element:

```
<aws>
  <logging logResponses="OnError"/>
</aws>
```

Alternatively, set the *AWSResponseLogging* key in the `<appSettings>` section:

```
<add key="AWSResponseLogging" value="OnError"/>
```

Alternatively, to set service logging with the AWS SDK for .NET API, set the AWSConfigs.ResponseLogging property to one of the values of the ResponseLoggingOption enumeration:

```
AWSConfigs.ResponseLogging = ResponseLoggingOption.OnError;
```

Changes to this setting take effect immediately.

AWS.DynamoDBContext.TableNamePrefix

Configures the default `TableNamePrefix` the `DynamoDBContext` will use if not manually configured.

To set the table name prefix in the `.config` file, the recommended approach is to set the `tableNamePrefix` attribute value in the `<dynamoDBContext>` element, which is a child element of the `<dynamoDB>` element, which itself is a child element of the `<aws>` element:

```
<dynamoDBContext tableNamePrefix="Test-"/>
```

Alternatively, set the `AWS.DynamoDBContext.TableNamePrefix` key in the `<appSettings>` section:

```
<add key="AWS.DynamoDBContext.TableNamePrefix" value="Test-"/>
```

Alternatively, to set the table name prefix with the AWS SDK for .NET API, set the AWSConfigs.DynamoDBContextTableNamePrefix property:

```
AWSConfigs.DynamoDBContextTableNamePrefix = "Test-";
```

Changes to this setting will take effect only in newly constructed instances of `DynamoDBContextConfig` and `DynamoDBContext`.

AWS.S3.UseSignatureVersion4

Configures whether or not the Amazon S3 client should use signature version 4 signing with requests.

To set signature version 4 signing for Amazon S3 in the `.config` file, the recommended approach is to set the `useSignatureVersion4` attribute of the `<s3>` element, which is a child element of the `<aws>` element:

```
<aws>
  <s3 useSignatureVersion4="true"/>
</aws>
```

Alternatively, set the `AWS.S3.UseSignatureVersion4` key to `true` in the `<appSettings>` section:

```
<add key="AWS.S3.UseSignatureVersion4" value="true"/>
```

Alternatively, to set signature version 4 signing with the AWS SDK for .NET API, set the AWSConfigs.S3UseSignatureVersion4 property to `true`:

```
AWSConfigs.S3UseSignatureVersion4 = true;
```

By default, this setting is `false`, but signature version 4 may be used by default in some cases or with some regions. When the setting is `true`, signature version 4 will be used for all requests. Changes to this setting take effect only for new Amazon S3 client instances.

AWSEndpointDefinition

Configures whether the SDK should use a custom configuration file that defines the regions and endpoints.

To set the endpoint definition file in the `.config` file, we recommend setting the `endpointDefinition` attribute value in the `<aws>` element.

```
<aws endpointDefinition="c:\config\endpoints.json"/>
```

Alternatively, you can set the *AWSEndpointDefinition* key in the `<appSettings>` section:

```
<add key="AWSEndpointDefinition" value="c:\config\endpoints.json"/>
```

Alternatively, to set the endpoint definition file with the AWS SDK for .NET API, set the AWSConfigs.EndpointDefinition property:

```
AWSConfigs.EndpointDefinition = @"c:\config\endpoints.json";
```

If no file name is provided, then a custom configuration file will not be used. Changes to this setting take effect only for new AWS client instances. The endpoint.json file is available from https://github.com/aws/aws-sdk-net/blob/aws-sdk-net-v3.7/sdk/src/Core/endpoints.json.

AWS Service-Generated Endpoints

Some AWS services generate their own endpoints instead of consuming a region endpoint. Clients for these services consume a service Url that is specific to that service and your resources. Two

examples of these services are Amazon CloudSearch and AWS IoT. The following examples show how you can obtain the endpoints for those services.

Amazon CloudSearch Endpoints Example

The Amazon CloudSearch client is used for accessing the Amazon CloudSearch configuration service. You use the Amazon CloudSearch configuration service to create, configure, and manage search domains. To create a search domain, create a CreateDomainRequest object and provide the `DomainName` property. Create an AmazonCloudSearchClient object by using the request object. Call the CreateDomain method. The CreateDomainResponse object returned from the call contains a `DomainStatus` property that has both the `DocService` and `SearchService` endpoints. Create an AmazonCloudSearchDomainConfig object and use it to initialize `DocService` and `SearchService` instances of the AmazonCloudSearchDomainClient class.

```
// Create domain and retrieve DocService and SearchService endpoints
DomainStatus domainStatus;
using (var searchClient = new AmazonCloudSearchClient())
{
    var request = new CreateDomainRequest
    {
        DomainName = "testdomain"
    };
    domainStatus = searchClient.CreateDomain(request).DomainStatus;
    Console.WriteLine(domainStatus.DomainName + " created");
}

// Test the DocService endpoint
var docServiceConfig = new AmazonCloudSearchDomainConfig
{
    ServiceURL = "https://" + domainStatus.DocService.Endpoint
};
using (var domainDocService = new AmazonCloudSearchDomainClient(docServiceConfig))
{
    Console.WriteLine("Amazon CloudSearchDomain DocService client instantiated using
 the DocService endpoint");
    Console.WriteLine("DocService endpoint = " + domainStatus.DocService.Endpoint);

    using (var docStream = new FileStream(@"C:\doc_source\XMLFile4.xml",
 FileMode.Open))
    {
        var upload = new UploadDocumentsRequest
        {
```

```
            ContentType = ContentType.ApplicationXml,
            Documents = docStream
        };
        domainDocService.UploadDocuments(upload);
    }
}

// Test the SearchService endpoint
var searchServiceConfig = new AmazonCloudSearchDomainConfig
{
    ServiceURL = "https://" + domainStatus.SearchService.Endpoint
};
using (var domainSearchService = new
 AmazonCloudSearchDomainClient(searchServiceConfig))
{
    Console.WriteLine("Amazon CloudSearchDomain SearchService client instantiated using
 the SearchService endpoint");
    Console.WriteLine("SearchService endpoint = " +
 domainStatus.SearchService.Endpoint);

    var searchReq = new SearchRequest
    {
        Query = "Gambardella",
        Sort = "_score desc",
        QueryParser = QueryParser.Simple
    };
    var searchResp = domainSearchService.Search(searchReq);
}
```

AWS IoT Endpoints Example

To obtain the endpoint for AWS IoT, create an AmazonIoTClient object and call the DescribeEndPoint method. The returned DescribeEndPointResponse object contains the `EndpointAddress`. Create an AmazonIotDataConfig object, set the `ServiceURL` property, and use the object to instantiate the AmazonIotDataClient class.

```
string iotEndpointAddress;
using (var iotClient = new AmazonIoTClient())
{
    var endPointResponse = iotClient.DescribeEndpoint();
    iotEndpointAddress = endPointResponse.EndpointAddress;
}
```

```
var ioTdocServiceConfig = new AmazonIotDataConfig
{
    ServiceURL = "https://" + iotEndpointAddress
};
using (var dataClient = new AmazonIotDataClient(ioTdocServiceConfig))
{
    Console.WriteLine("AWS IoTData client instantiated using the endpoint from the
 IotClient");
}
```

Configuration Files Reference for AWS SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> The information in this topic is specific to projects based on .NET Framework. The `App.config` and `Web.config` files are not present by default in projects based on .NET Core.

Open to view .NET Framework content

You can use a .NET project's `App.config` or `Web.config` file to specify AWS settings, such as AWS credentials, logging options, AWS service endpoints, and AWS regions, as well as some settings for AWS services, such as Amazon DynamoDB, Amazon EC2, and Amazon S3. The following information describes how to properly format an `App.config` or `Web.config` file to specify these types of settings.

> **Note**
>
> Although you can continue to use the `<appSettings>` element in an `App.config` or `Web.config` file to specify AWS settings, we recommend you use the `<configSections>` and `<aws>` elements as described later in this topic. For more information about the `<appSettings>` element, see the `<appSettings>` element examples in Configuring Your AWS SDK for .NET Application.

Note

Although you can continue to use the following `AWSConfigs` class properties in a code file to specify AWS settings, the following properties are deprecated and may not be supported in future releases:

- `DynamoDBContextTableNamePrefix`
- `EC2UseSignatureVersion4`
- `LoggingOptions`
- `LogMetrics`
- `ResponseLoggingOption`
- `S3UseSignatureVersion4`

In general, we recommend that instead of using `AWSConfigs` class properties in a code file to specify AWS settings, you should use the `<configSections>` and `<aws>` elements in an `App.config` or `Web.config` file to specify AWS settings, as described later in this topic. For more information about the preceding properties, see the `AWSConfigs` code examples in Configuring Your AWS SDK for .NET Application.

Topics

- Declaring an AWS Settings Section
- Allowed Elements
- Elements Reference

Declaring an AWS Settings Section

You specify AWS settings in an `App.config` or `Web.config` file from within the `<aws>` element. Before you can begin using the `<aws>` element, you must create a `<section>` element (which is a child element of the `<configSections>` element) and set its `name` attribute to `aws` and its `type` attribute to `Amazon.AWSSection, AWSSDK.Core`, as shown in the following example:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<configuration>
  ...
  <configSections>
```

```
    <section name="aws" type="Amazon.AWSSection, AWSSDK.Core"/>
  </configSections>
  <aws>
    <!-- Add your desired AWS settings declarations here. -->
  </aws>
  ...
</configuration>
```

The Visual Studio Editor does not provide automatic code completion (IntelliSense) for the `<aws>` element or its child elements.

To assist you in creating a correctly formatted version of the `<aws>` element, call the `Amazon.AWSConfigs.GenerateConfigTemplate` method. This outputs a canonical version of the `<aws>` element as a pretty-printed string, which you can adapt to your needs. The following sections describe the `<aws>` element's attributes and child elements.

Allowed Elements

The following is a list of the logical relationships among the allowed elements in an AWS settings section. You can generate the latest version of this list by calling the `Amazon.AWSConfigs.GenerateConfigTemplate` method, which outputs a canonical version of the `<aws>` element as a string you can adapt to your needs.

```
<aws
  endpointDefinition="string value"
  region="string value"
  profileName="string value"
  profilesLocation="string value">
  <logging
    logTo="None, Log4Net, SystemDiagnostics"
    logResponses="Never | OnError | Always"
    logMetrics="true | false"
    logMetricsFormat="Standard | JSON"
    logMetricsCustomFormatter="NameSpace.Class, Assembly" />
  <dynamoDB
    conversionSchema="V1 | V2">
    <dynamoDBContext
      tableNamePrefix="string value">
      <tableAliases>
        <alias
          fromTable="string value"
          toTable="string value" />
```

```
      </tableAliases>
      <map
        type="NameSpace.Class, Assembly"
        targetTable="string value">
        <property
          name="string value"
          attribute="string value"
          ignore="true | false"
          version="true | false"
          converter="NameSpace.Class, Assembly" />
      </map>
    </dynamoDBContext>
  </dynamoDB>
  <s3
    useSignatureVersion4="true | false" />
  <ec2
    useSignatureVersion4="true | false" />
  <proxy
    host="string value"
    port="1234"
    username="string value"
    password="string value" />
</aws>
```

Elements Reference

The following is a list of the elements that are allowed in an AWS settings section. For each element, its allowed attributes and parent-child elements are listed.

Topics

- alias
- aws
- dynamoDB
- dynamoDBContext
- ec2
- logging
- map
- property
- proxy

- s3

alias

The `<alias>` element represents a single item in a collection of one or more from-table to to-table mappings that specifies a different table than one configured for a type. This element maps to an instance of the `Amazon.Util.TableAlias` class from the `Amazon.AWSConfigs.DynamoDBConfig.Context.TableAliases` property in the AWS SDK for .NET. Remapping is done before applying a table name prefix.

This element can include the following attributes:

`fromTable`

The from-table portion of the from-table to to-table mapping. This attribute maps to the `Amazon.Util.TableAlias.FromTable` property in the AWS SDK for .NET.

`toTable`

The to-table portion of the from-table to to-table mapping. This attribute maps to the `Amazon.Util.TableAlias.ToTable` property in the AWS SDK for .NET.

The parent of the `<alias>` element is the `<tableAliases>` element.

The `<alias>` element contains no child elements.

The following is an example of the `<alias>` element in use:

```
<alias
  fromTable="Studio"
  toTable="Studios" />
```

aws

The `<aws>` element represents the top-most element in an AWS settings section. This element can include the following attributes:

`endpointDefinition`

The absolute path to a custom configuration file that defines the AWS regions and endpoints to use. This attribute maps to the `Amazon.AWSConfigs.EndpointDefinition` property in the AWS SDK for .NET.

`profileName`

The profile name for stored AWS credentials that will be used to make service calls. This attribute maps to the `Amazon.AWSConfigs.AWSProfileName` property in the AWS SDK for .NET.

`profilesLocation`

The absolute path to the location of the credentials file shared with other AWS SDKs. By default, the credentials file is stored in the `.aws` directory in the current user's home directory. This attribute maps to the `Amazon.AWSConfigs.AWSProfilesLocation` property in the AWS SDK for .NET.

`region`

The default AWS region ID for clients that have not explicitly specified a region. This attribute maps to the `Amazon.AWSConfigs.AWSRegion` property in the AWS SDK for .NET.

The `<aws>` element has no parent element.

The `<aws>` element can include the following child elements:

- `<dynamoDB>`
- `<ec2>`
- `<logging>`
- `<proxy>`
- `<s3>`

The following is an example of the `<aws>` element in use:

```
<aws
  endpointDefinition="C:\Configs\endpoints.xml"
  region="us-west-2"
  profileName="development"
```

```
  profilesLocation="C:\Configs">
  <!-- ... -->
</aws>
```

dynamoDB

The `<dynamoDB>` element represents a collection of settings for Amazon DynamoDB. This element can include the *conversionSchema* attribute, which represents the version to use for converting between .NET and DynamoDB objects. Allowed values include V1 and V2. This attribute maps to the `Amazon.DynamoDBv2.DynamoDBEntryConversion` class in the AWS SDK for .NET. For more information, see DynamoDB Series - Conversion Schemas.

The parent of the `<dynamoDB>` element is the `<aws>` element.

The `<dynamoDB>` element can include the `<dynamoDBContext>` child element.

The following is an example of the `<dynamoDB>` element in use:

```
<dynamoDB
  conversionSchema="V2">
  <!-- ... -->
</dynamoDB>
```

dynamoDBContext

The `<dynamoDBContext>` element represents a collection of Amazon DynamoDB context-specific settings. This element can include the *tableNamePrefix* attribute, which represents the default table name prefix the DynamoDB context will use if it is not manually configured. This attribute maps to the `Amazon.Util.DynamoDBContextConfig.TableNamePrefix` property from the `Amazon.AWSConfigs.DynamoDBConfig.Context.TableNamePrefix` property in the AWS SDK for .NET. For more information, see Enhancements to the DynamoDB SDK.

The parent of the `<dynamoDBContext>` element is the `<dynamoDB>` element.

The `<dynamoDBContext>` element can include the following child elements:

- `<alias>` (one or more instances)
- `<map>` (one or more instances)

The following is an example of the `<dynamoDBContext>` element in use:

```
<dynamoDBContext
  tableNamePrefix="Test-">
  <!-- ... -->
</dynamoDBContext>
```

ec2

The `<ec2>` element represents a collection of Amazon EC2 settings. This element can include the *useSignatureVersion4* attribute, which specifies whether signature version 4 signing will be used for all requests (true) or whether signature version 4 signing will not be used for all requests (false, the default). This attribute maps to the `Amazon.Util.EC2Config.UseSignatureVersion4` property from the `Amazon.AWSConfigs.EC2Config.UseSignatureVersion4` property in the AWS SDK for .NET.

The parent of the `<ec2>` element is the element.

The `<ec2>` element contains no child elements.

The following is an example of the `<ec2>` element in use:

```
<ec2
  useSignatureVersion4="true" />
```

logging

The `<logging>` element represents a collection of settings for response logging and performance metrics logging. This element can include the following attributes:

`logMetrics`

Whether performance metrics will be logged for all clients and configurations (true); otherwise, false. This attribute maps to the `Amazon.Util.LoggingConfig.LogMetrics` property from the `Amazon.AWSConfigs.LoggingConfig.LogMetrics` property in the AWS SDK for .NET.

`logMetricsCustomFormatter`

The data type and assembly name of a custom formatter for logging metrics. This attribute maps to the `Amazon.Util.LoggingConfig.LogMetricsCustomFormatter` property from the `Amazon.AWSConfigs.LoggingConfig.LogMetricsCustomFormatter` property in the AWS SDK for .NET.

`logMetricsFormat`

The format in which the logging metrics are presented (maps to the `Amazon.Util.LoggingConfig.LogMetricsFormat` property from the `Amazon.AWSConfigs.LoggingConfig.LogMetricsFormat` property in the AWS SDK for .NET).

Allowed values include:

`JSON`

Use JSON format.

`Standard`

Use the default format.

`logResponses`

When to log service responses (maps to the `Amazon.Util.LoggingConfig.LogResponses` property from the `Amazon.AWSConfigs.LoggingConfig.LogResponses` property in the AWS SDK for .NET).

Allowed values include:

`Always`

Always log service responses.

`Never`

Never log service responses.

`OnError`

Only log service responses when there are errors.

`logTo`

Where to log to (maps to the `LogTo` property from the `Amazon.AWSConfigs.LoggingConfig.LogTo` property in the AWS SDK for .NET).

Allowed values include one or more of:

`Log4Net`

Log to log4net.

None

Disable logging.

SystemDiagnostics

Log to System.Diagnostics.

The parent of the `<logging>` element is the `<aws>` element.

The `<logging>` element contains no child elements.

The following is an example of the `<logging>` element in use:

```
<logging
  logTo="SystemDiagnostics"
  logResponses="OnError"
  logMetrics="true"
  logMetricsFormat="JSON"
  logMetricsCustomFormatter="MyLib.Util.MyMetricsFormatter, MyLib" />
```

map

The `<map>` element represents a single item in a collection of type-to-table mappings from .NET types to DynamoDB tables (maps to an instance of the `TypeMapping` class from the `Amazon.AWSConfigs.DynamoDBConfig.Context.TypeMappings` property in the AWS SDK for .NET). For more information, see Enhancements to the DynamoDB SDK.

This element can include the following attributes:

targetTable

The DynamoDB table to which the mapping applies. This attribute maps to the `Amazon.Util.TypeMapping.TargetTable` property in the AWS SDK for .NET.

type

The type and assembly name to which the mapping applies. This attribute maps to the `Amazon.Util.TypeMapping.Type` property in the AWS SDK for .NET.

The parent of the `<map>` element is the `<dynamoDBContext>` element.

The `<map>` element can include one or more instances of the `<property>` child element.

The following is an example of the `<map>` element in use:

```
<map
  type="SampleApp.Models.Movie, SampleDLL"
  targetTable="Movies">
  <!-- ... -->
</map>
```

property

The `<property>` element represents a DynamoDB property. (This element maps to an instance of the Amazon.Util.PropertyConfig class from the `AddProperty` method in the AWS SDK for .NET) For more information, see Enhancements to the DynamoDB SDK and DynamoDB Attributes.

This element can include the following attributes:

`attribute`

The name of an attribute for the property, such as the name of a range key. This attribute maps to the `Amazon.Util.PropertyConfig.Attribute` property in the AWS SDK for .NET.

`converter`

The type of converter that should be used for this property. This attribute maps to the `Amazon.Util.PropertyConfig.Converter` property in the AWS SDK for .NET.

`ignore`

Whether the associated property should be ignored (true); otherwise, false. This attribute maps to the `Amazon.Util.PropertyConfig.Ignore` property in the AWS SDK for .NET.

`name`

The name of the property. This attribute maps to the `Amazon.Util.PropertyConfig.Name` property in the AWS SDK for .NET.

`version`

Whether this property should store the item version number (true); otherwise, false. This attribute maps to the `Amazon.Util.PropertyConfig.Version` property in the AWS SDK for .NET.

The parent of the `<property>` element is the `<map>` element.

The `<property>` element contains no child elements.

The following is an example of the `<property>` element in use:

```
<property
  name="Rating"
  converter="SampleApp.Models.RatingConverter, SampleDLL" />
```

proxy

The `<proxy>` element represents settings for configuring a proxy for the AWS SDK for .NET to use. This element can include the following attributes:

host

The host name or IP address of the proxy server. This attributes maps to the `Amazon.Util.ProxyConfig.Host` property from the `Amazon.AWSConfigs.ProxyConfig.Host` property in the AWS SDK for .NET.

password

The password to authenticate with the proxy server. This attributes maps to the `Amazon.Util.ProxyConfig.Password` property from the `Amazon.AWSConfigs.ProxyConfig.Password` property in the AWS SDK for .NET.

port

The port number of the proxy. This attributes maps to the `Amazon.Util.ProxyConfig.Port` property from the `Amazon.AWSConfigs.ProxyConfig.Port` property in the AWS SDK for .NET.

username

The user name to authenticate with the proxy server. This attributes maps to the `Amazon.Util.ProxyConfig.Username` property from the `Amazon.AWSConfigs.ProxyConfig.Username` property in the AWS SDK for .NET.

The parent of the `<proxy>` element is the `<aws>` element.

The `<proxy>` element contains no child elements.

The following is an example of the `<proxy>` element in use:

```
<proxy
  host="192.0.2.0"
  port="1234"
  username="My-Username-Here"
  password="My-Password-Here" />
```

s3

The `<s3>` element represents a collection of Amazon S3 settings. This element can include the *useSignatureVersion4* attribute, which specifies whether signature version 4 signing will be used for all requests (true) or whether signature version 4 signing will not be used for all requests (false, the default). This attribute maps to the `Amazon.AWSConfigs.S3Config.UseSignatureVersion4` property in the AWS SDK for .NET.

The parent of the `<s3>` element is the `<aws>` element.

The `<s3>` element contains no child elements.

The following is an example of the `<s3>` element in use:

```
<s3 useSignatureVersion4="true" />
```

Using legacy credentials

The topics in this section provide information about using long-term or short-term credentials without using AWS IAM Identity Center.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

> **Note**
>
> The information in this topic is for circumstances where you need to obtain and manage short-term or long-term credentials manually. For additional information about short-

term and long-term credentials, see Other ways to authenticate in the *AWS SDKs and Tools Reference Guide*.
For best security practices, use AWS IAM Identity Center, as described in Configure SDK authentication.

Important warnings and guidance for credentials

Warnings for credentials

- ***Do NOT*** use your account's root credentials to access AWS resources. These credentials provide unrestricted account access and are difficult to revoke.
- ***Do NOT*** put literal access keys or credential information in your application files. If you do, you create a risk of accidentally exposing your credentials if, for example, you upload the project to a public repository.
- ***Do NOT*** include files that contain credentials in your project area.
- Be aware that any credentials stored in the shared AWS `credentials` file, are stored in plaintext.

Additional guidance for securely managing credentials

For a general discussion of how to securely manage AWS credentials, see AWS security credentials in the AWS General Reference and Security best practices and use cases in the IAM User Guide. In addition to those discussions, consider the following:

- Create additional users, such as users in IAM Identity Center, and use their credentials instead of using your AWS root user credentials. Credentials for other users can be revoked if necessary or are temporary by nature. In addition, you can apply a policy to each user for access to only certain resources and actions and thereby take a stance of least-privilege permissions.
- Use IAM roles for tasks for Amazon Elastic Container Service (Amazon ECS) tasks.
- Use IAM roles for applications that are running on Amazon EC2 instances.
- Use temporary credentials or environment variables for applications that are available to users outside your organization.

Topics

- Using the shared AWS credentials file
- Using the SDK Store (Windows only)

Using the shared AWS credentials file

(Be sure to review the important warnings and guidance for credentials.)

One way to provide credentials for your applications is to create profiles in the *shared AWS credentials file* and then store credentials in those profiles. This file can be used by the other AWS SDKs. It can also be used by the AWS CLI, the AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell, and the AWS toolkits for Visual Studio, JetBrains, and VS Code.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

> **Note**
>
> The information in this topic is for circumstances where you need to obtain and manage short-term or long-term credentials manually. For additional information about short-term and long-term credentials, see Other ways to authenticate in the *AWS SDKs and Tools Reference Guide*.
>
> For best security practices, use AWS IAM Identity Center, as described in Configure SDK authentication.

General information

By default, the shared AWS credentials file is located in the `.aws` directory within your home directory and is named `credentials`; that is, `~/.aws/credentials` (Linux or macOS) or `%USERPROFILE%\.aws\credentials` (Windows). For information about alternative locations, see Location of the shared files in the *AWS SDKs and Tools Reference Guide*. Also see Accessing credentials and profiles in an application.

The shared AWS credentials file is a plaintext file and follows a certain format. For information about the format of AWS credentials files, see Format of the credentials file in the *AWS SDKs and Tools Reference Guide*.

You can manage the profiles in the shared AWS credentials file in several ways.

- Use any text editor to create and update the shared AWS credentials file.
- Use the Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement namespace of the AWS SDK for .NET API, as shown later in this topic.
- Use commands and procedures for the AWS Tools for PowerShell and the AWS toolkits for Visual Studio, JetBrains, and VS Code.
- Use AWS CLI commands; for example, `aws configure set aws_access_key_id` and `aws configure set aws_secret_access_key`.

Examples of profile management

The following sections show examples of profiles in the shared AWS credentials file. Some of the examples show the result, which can be obtained through any of the credential-management methods described earlier. Other examples show how to use a particular method.

The default profile

The shared AWS credentials file will almost always have a profile named *default*. This is where the AWS SDK for .NET looks for credentials if no other profiles are defined.

The `[default]` profile typically looks something like the following.

```
[default]
aws_access_key_id = AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE
aws_secret_access_key = wJalrXUtnFEMI/K7MDENG/bPxRfiCYEXAMPLEKEY
```

Create a profile programmatically

This example shows you how to create a profile and save it to the shared AWS credentials file programmatically. It uses the following classes of the Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement namespace: CredentialProfileOptions, CredentialProfile, and SharedCredentialsFile.

```
using Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement;
...
```

```
// Do not include credentials in your code.
WriteProfile("my_new_profile", SecurelyStoredKeyID, SecurelyStoredSecretAccessKey);
...

void WriteProfile(string profileName, string keyId, string secret)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Create the [{profileName}] profile...");
    var options = new CredentialProfileOptions
    {
        AccessKey = keyId,
        SecretKey = secret
    };
    var profile = new CredentialProfile(profileName, options);
    var sharedFile = new SharedCredentialsFile();
    sharedFile.RegisterProfile(profile);
}
```

Warning

Code such as this generally shouldn't be in your application. If you include it in your application, take appropriate precautions to ensure that plaintext keys can't possibly be seen in the code, over the network, or even in computer memory.

The following is the profile that's created by this example.

```
[my_new_profile]
aws_access_key_id=AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE
aws_secret_access_key=wJalrXUtnFEMI/K7MDENG/bPxRfiCYEXAMPLEKEY
```

Update an existing profile programmatically

This example shows you how to programmatically update the profile that was created earlier. It uses the following classes of the Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement namespace: CredentialProfile and SharedCredentialsFile. It also uses the RegionEndpoint class of the Amazon namespace.

```
using Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement;
...

AddRegion("my_new_profile", RegionEndpoint.USWest2);
```

```
...

void AddRegion(string profileName, RegionEndpoint region)
{
    var sharedFile = new SharedCredentialsFile();
    CredentialProfile profile;
    if (sharedFile.TryGetProfile(profileName, out profile))
    {
        profile.Region = region;
        sharedFile.RegisterProfile(profile);
    }
}
```

The following is the updated profile.

```
[my_new_profile]
aws_access_key_id=AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE
aws_secret_access_key=wJalrXUtnFEMI/K7MDENG/bPxRfiCYEXAMPLEKEY
region=us-west-2
```

> **Note**
>
> You can also set the AWS Region in other locations and by using other methods. For more information, see Configure the AWS Region.

Using the SDK Store (Windows only)

(Be sure to review the important warnings and guidelines.)

On Windows, the *SDK Store* is another place to create profiles and store encrypted credentials for your AWS SDK for .NET application. It's located in `%USERPROFILE%\AppData\Local\AWSToolkit\RegisteredAccounts.json`. You can use the SDK Store during development as an alternative to the shared AWS credentials file.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

> **Note**
>
> The information in this topic is for circumstances where you need to obtain and manage short-term or long-term credentials manually. For additional information about short-term and long-term credentials, see Other ways to authenticate in the *AWS SDKs and Tools Reference Guide*.
>
> For best security practices, use AWS IAM Identity Center, as described in Configure SDK authentication.

General information

The SDK Store provides the following benefits:

- The credentials in the SDK Store are encrypted, and the SDK Store resides in the user's home directory. This limits the risk of accidentally exposing your credentials.
- The SDK Store also provides credentials to the AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell and the AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio.

SDK Store profiles are specific to a particular user on a particular host. You can't copy them to other hosts or other users. This means that you can't reuse SDK Store profiles that are on your development machine for other hosts or developer machines. It also means that you can't use SDK Store profiles in production applications.

You can manage the profiles in the SDK Store in the following ways:

- Use the graphical user interface (GUI) in the AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio.
- Use the Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement namespace of the AWS SDK for .NET API, as shown later in this topic.
- Use commands from the AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell; for example, `Set-AWSCredential` and `Remove-AWSCredentialProfile`.

Examples of profile management

The following examples show you how to programmatically create and update a profile in the SDK Store.

Create a profile programmatically

This example shows you how to create a profile and save it to the SDK Store programmatically. It uses the following classes of the Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement namespace: CredentialProfileOptions, CredentialProfile, and NetSDKCredentialsFile.

```
using Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement;
...

// Do not include credentials in your code.
WriteProfile("my_new_profile", SecurelyStoredKeyID, SecurelyStoredSecretAccessKey);
...

void WriteProfile(string profileName, string keyId, string secret)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Create the [{profileName}] profile...");
    var options = new CredentialProfileOptions
    {
        AccessKey = keyId,
        SecretKey = secret
    };
    var profile = new CredentialProfile(profileName, options);
    var netSdkStore = new NetSDKCredentialsFile();
    netSdkStore.RegisterProfile(profile);
}
```

> **Warning**
>
> Code such as this generally shouldn't be in your application. If it's included in your application, take appropriate precautions to ensure that plaintext keys can't possibly be seen in the code, over the network, or even in computer memory.

The following is the profile that's created by this example.

```
"[generated GUID]" : {
    "AWSAccessKey" : "01000000D08...[etc., encrypted access key ID]",
    "AWSSecretKey" : "01000000D08...[etc., encrypted secret access key]",
    "ProfileType"  : "AWS",
    "DisplayName"  : "my_new_profile",
}
```

Update an existing profile programmatically

This example shows you how to programmatically update the profile that was created earlier. It uses the following classes of the Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement namespace: CredentialProfile and NetSDKCredentialsFile. It also uses the RegionEndpoint class of the Amazon namespace.

```
using Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement;
...

AddRegion("my_new_profile", RegionEndpoint.USWest2);
...

void AddRegion(string profileName, RegionEndpoint region)
{
    var netSdkStore = new NetSDKCredentialsFile();
    CredentialProfile profile;
    if (netSdkStore.TryGetProfile(profileName, out profile))
    {
        profile.Region = region;
        netSdkStore.RegisterProfile(profile);
    }
}
```

The following is the updated profile.

```
"[generated GUID]" : {
    "AWSAccessKey" : "01000000D08...[etc., encrypted access key ID]",
    "AWSSecretKey" : "01000000D08...[etc., encrypted secret access key]",
    "ProfileType"  : "AWS",
    "DisplayName"  : "my_new_profile",
    "Region"       : "us-west-2"
}
```

> **Note**
>
> You can also set the AWS Region in other locations and by using other methods. For more information, see Configure the AWS Region.

Features of the AWS SDK for .NET

This section provides information about features of the AWS SDK for .NET that you might need to consider when creating your applications.

Be sure you have set up your project first.

For information about developing software for specific AWS services along with code examples, see Work with AWS services. For additional code examples, see SDK for .NET code examples.

Topics

- AWS asynchronous APIs for .NET
- Retries and timeouts
- Paginators
- Observability
- Additional tools

AWS asynchronous APIs for .NET

The AWS SDK for .NET uses the *Task-based Asynchronous Pattern (TAP)* for its asynchronous implementation. To learn more about the TAP, see Task-based Asynchronous Pattern (TAP) on docs.microsoft.com.

This topic gives you an overview of how to use TAP in your calls to AWS service clients.

The asynchronous methods in the AWS SDK for .NET API are operations based on the `Task` class or the `Task<TResult>` class. See docs.microsoft.com for information about these classes: Task class, Task<TResult> class.

When these API methods are called in your code, they must be called within a function that is declared with the `async` keyword, as shown in the following example.

```
static async Task Main(string[] args)
{
  ...
  // Call the function that contains the asynchronous API method.
  // Could also call the asynchronous API method directly from Main
```

```
  //  because Main is declared async
  var response = await ListBucketsAsync();
  Console.WriteLine($"Number of buckets: {response.Buckets.Count}");
  ...
}

// Async method to get a list of Amazon S3 buckets.
private static async Task<ListBucketsResponse> ListBucketsAsync()
{
  ...
  var response = await s3Client.ListBucketsAsync();
  return response;
}
```

As shown in the preceding code snippet, the preferred scope for the `async` declaration is the `Main` function. Setting this `async` scope ensures that all calls to AWS service clients are required to be asynchronous. If you can't declare `Main` to be asynchronous for some reason, you can use the `async` keyword on functions other than `Main` and then call the API methods from there, as shown in the following example.

```
static void Main(string[] args)
{
  ...
  Task<ListBucketsResponse> response = ListBucketsAsync();
  Console.WriteLine($"Number of buckets: {response.Result.Buckets.Count}");
  ...
}

// Async method to get a list of Amazon S3 buckets.
private static async Task<ListBucketsResponse> ListBucketsAsync()
{
  ...
  var response = await s3Client.ListBucketsAsync();
  return response;
}
```

Notice the special `Task<>` syntax that's needed in `Main` when you use this pattern. In addition, you must use the **`Result`** member of the response to get the data.

You can see full examples of asynchronous calls to AWS service clients in the Take a quick tour section (Simple cross-platform app and Simple Windows-based app) and in Code examples with guidance.

Retries and timeouts

The AWS SDK for .NET enables you to configure the number of retries and the timeout values for HTTP requests to AWS services. If the default values for retries and timeouts are not appropriate for your application, you can adjust them for your specific requirements, but it is important to understand how doing so will affect the behavior of your application.

To determine which values to use for retries and timeouts, consider the following:

- How should the AWS SDK for .NET and your application respond when network connectivity degrades or an AWS service is unreachable? Do you want the call to fail fast, or is it appropriate for the call to keep retrying on your behalf?
- Is your application a user-facing application or website that must be responsive, or is it a background processing job that has more tolerance for increased latencies?
- Is the application deployed on a reliable network with low latency, or is it deployed at a remote location with unreliable connectivity?

Retries

Overview

The AWS SDK for .NET can retry requests that fail due to server-side throttling or dropped connections. There are two properties of service configuration classes that you can use to specify the retry behavior of a service client. Service configuration classes inherit these properties from the abstract Amazon.Runtime.ClientConfig class of the AWS SDK for .NET API Reference:

- `RetryMode` specifies one of three retry modes, which are defined in the Amazon.Runtime.RequestRetryMode enumeration.

  The default value for your application can be controlled by using the `AWS_RETRY_MODE` environment variable or the *retry_mode* setting in the shared AWS config file.

- `MaxErrorRetry` specifies the number of retries allowed at the service client level; the SDK retries the operation the specified number of times before failing and throwing an exception.

  The default value for your application can be controlled by using the `AWS_MAX_ATTEMPTS` environment variable or the *max_attempts* setting in the shared AWS config file.

Detailed descriptions for these properties can be found in the abstract Amazon.Runtime.ClientConfig class of the AWS SDK for .NET API Reference. Each value of `RetryMode` corresponds by default to a particular value of `MaxErrorRetry`, as shown in the following table.

RetryMode	Corresponding MaxErrorRetry (Amazon DynamoDB)	Corresponding MaxErrorRetry (all others)
Legacy	10	4
Standard	10	2
Adaptive (experimental)	10	2

Behavior

When your application starts

When your application starts, default values for `RetryMode` and `MaxErrorRetry` are configured by the SDK. These default values are used when you create a service client unless you specify other values.

- If the properties aren't set in your environment, the default for `RetryMode` is configured as *Legacy* and the default for `MaxErrorRetry` is configured with the corresponding value from the preceding table.
- If the retry mode has been set in your environment, that value is used as the default for `RetryMode`. The default for `MaxErrorRetry` is configured with the corresponding value from the preceding table unless the value for maximum errors has also been set in your environment (described next).
- If the value for maximum errors has been set in your environment, that value is used as the default for `MaxErrorRetry`. Amazon DynamoDB is the exception to this rule; the default DynamoDB value for `MaxErrorRetry` is always the value from the preceding table.

As your application runs

When you create a service client, you can use the default values for `RetryMode` and `MaxErrorRetry`, as described earlier, or you can specify other values. To specify other

values, create and include a service configuration object such as AmazonDynamoDBConfig or AmazonSQSConfig when you create the service client.

These values can't be changed for a service client after it has been created.

Considerations

When a retry occurs, the latency of your request is increased. You should configure your retries based on your application limits for total request latency and error rates.

Timeouts

The AWS SDK for .NET enables you to configure request timeouts at the service client level and per method call. There are two mechanisms for configuring timeouts, which are covered in subsequent sections:

- If you are using asynchronous calls, you can use the `CancellationToken` parameter of the method.
- If you are using synchronous calls in .NET Framework, you can use the `Timeout` and `ReadWriteTimeout` properties of the abstract Amazon.Runtime.ClientConfig class.

Using the `CancellationToken` parameter for timeouts

The AWS SDK for .NET enables you to configure request timeouts on asynchronous calls by using the `CancellationToken` parameter. The following code snippet shows an example. The code throws `System.Threading.Tasks.TaskCanceledException` if the request isn't completed within 10 seconds.

```
string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
string path = "pathToBucket";
using (var amazonS3Client = new AmazonS3Client(new AmazonS3Config()))
{
    // Cancel request after 10 seconds
    CancellationTokenSource cancellationTokenSource = new
 CancellationTokenSource(TimeSpan.FromMilliseconds(10000));
    CancellationToken cancellationToken = cancellationTokenSource.Token;
    ListObjectsV2Request listRequestV2 = new()
    {
        BucketName = bucketName,
        Prefix = path,
```

```
    };

    ListObjectsV2Response listResponseV2 = await
 amazonS3Client.ListObjectsV2Async(listRequestV2, cancellationToken);
}
```

Using the `Timeout` and `ReadWriteTimeout` properties for timeouts

> **Note**
>
> The `Timeout` property doesn't impact asynchronous calls. If you are using asynchronous calls see Using the `CancellationToken` parameter for timeouts instead.

The AWS SDK for .NET enables you to configure the request timeout and socket read/write timeout values at the service client level. These values are specified in the `Timeout` and `ReadWriteTimeout` properties of the abstract Amazon.Runtime.ClientConfig class. These values are passed on as the `Timeout` and `ReadWriteTimeout` properties of the HttpWebRequest objects created by the AWS service client object. By default, the `Timeout` value is 100 seconds and the `ReadWriteTimeout` value is 300 seconds.

When your network has high latency, or conditions exist that cause an operation to be retried, using long timeout values and a high number of retries can cause some SDK operations to seem unresponsive.

> **Note**
>
> The version of the AWS SDK for .NET that targets the portable class library (PCL) uses the HttpClient class instead of the `HttpWebRequest` class, and supports the Timeout property only.

The following are the exceptions to the default timeout values. These values are overridden when you explicitly set the timeout values.

- `Timeout` and `ReadWriteTimeout` are set to the maximum values if the method being called uploads a stream, such as AmazonS3Client.PutObjectAsync(), AmazonS3Client.UploadPartAsync(), AmazonGlacierClient.UploadArchiveAsync(), and so on.

- The versions of the AWS SDK for .NET that target .NET Framework set `Timeout` and `ReadWriteTimeout` to the maximum values for all AmazonS3Client and AmazonGlacierClient objects.
- The versions of the AWS SDK for .NET that target the portable class library (PCL) and .NET Core set `Timeout` to the maximum value for all AmazonS3Client and AmazonGlacierClient objects.

The following example shows you how to specify *Standard* retry mode, a maximum of 3 retries, a timeout of 10 seconds, and a read/write timeout of 10 seconds (if applicable). The AmazonS3Client constructor is given an AmazonS3Config object.

```
var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client(
  new AmazonS3Config
  {
    Timeout = TimeSpan.FromSeconds(10),
    // NOTE: The following property is obsolete for
    //       versions of the AWS SDK for .NET that target .NET Core.
    ReadWriteTimeout = TimeSpan.FromSeconds(10),
    RetryMode = RequestRetryMode.Standard,
    MaxErrorRetry = 3
  });
```

Paginators

Some AWS services collect and store a large amount of data, which you can retrieve by using the API calls of the AWS SDK for .NET. If the amount of data you want to retrieve becomes too large for a single API call, you can break the results into more manageable pieces through the use of *pagination*.

To enable you to perform pagination, the request and response objects for many service clients in the SDK provide a *continuation token* (typically named `NextToken`). Some of these service clients also provide paginators.

Paginators enable you to avoid the overhead of the continuation token, which might involve loops, state variables, multiple API calls, and so on. When you use a paginator, you can retrieve data from an AWS service through a single line of code, a `foreach` loop's declaration. If multiple API calls are needed to retrieve the data, the paginator handles this for you.

Where do I find paginators?

Not all services provide paginators. One way to determine whether a service provides a paginator for a particular API is to look at the definition of a service client class in the AWS SDK for .NET API Reference.

For example, if you examine the definition for the AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient class, you see a `Paginators` property. This is the property that provides a paginator for Amazon CloudWatch Logs.

What do paginators give me?

Paginators contain properties that enable you to see full responses. They also typically contain one or more properties that enable to you access the most interesting portions of the responses, which we will call the *key results*.

For example, in the `AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient` mentioned earlier, the `Paginator` object contains a `Responses` property with the full DescribeLogGroupsResponse object from the API call. This `Responses` property contains, among other things, a collection of the log groups.

The Paginator object also contains one key result named `LogGroups`. This property holds just the log groups portion of the response. Having this key result enables you to reduce and simplify your code in many circumstances.

Synchronous vs. asynchronous pagination

Paginators provide both synchronous and asynchronous mechanisms for pagination. Synchronous pagination is available in .NET Framework 4.7.2 (or later) projects. Asynchronous pagination is available in .NET Core projects (.NET Core 3.1, .NET 5, and so on).

Because asynchronous operations and .NET Core are recommended, the example that comes next shows you asynchronous pagination. Information about how to perform the same tasks using synchronous pagination and .NET Framework 4.7.2 (or later) is shown after the example in Additional considerations for paginators.

Example

The following example shows you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to display a list of log groups. For contrast, the example shows how to do this both with and without paginators. Before looking at the full code, shown later, consider the following snippets.

Getting CloudWatch log groups without paginators

```
    // Loop as many times as needed to get all the log groups
    var request = new DescribeLogGroupsRequest{Limit = LogGroupLimit};
    do
    {
      Console.WriteLine($"Getting up to {LogGroupLimit} log groups...");
      var response = await cwClient.DescribeLogGroupsAsync(request);
      foreach(var logGroup in response.LogGroups)
      {
        Console.WriteLine($"{logGroup.LogGroupName}");
      }
      request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
    } while(!string.IsNullOrEmpty(request.NextToken));
```

Getting CloudWatch log groups by using paginators

```
    // No need to loop to get all the log groups--the SDK does it for us behind the
scenes
    var paginatorForLogGroups =
      cwClient.Paginators.DescribeLogGroups(new DescribeLogGroupsRequest());
    await foreach(var logGroup in paginatorForLogGroups.LogGroups)
    {
      Console.WriteLine(logGroup.LogGroupName);
    }
```

The results of these two snippets are exactly the same, so the advantage in using paginators can clearly be seen.

> **Note**
>
> Before you try to build and run the full code, be sure you have set up your environment and project.
> You might also need the Microsoft.Bcl.AsyncInterfaces NuGet package because asynchronous paginators use the `IAsyncEnumerable` interface.

Complete code

This section shows relevant references and the complete code for this example.

SDK references

NuGet packages:

- AWSSDK.CloudWatch

Programming elements:

- Namespace Amazon.CloudWatch

  Class AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient
- Namespace Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model

  Class DescribeLogGroupsRequest

  Class DescribeLogGroupsResponse

  Class LogGroup

Full code

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

namespace CWGetLogGroups
{
  class Program
  {
    // A small limit for demonstration purposes
    private const int LogGroupLimit = 3;

    //
    // Main method
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
      var cwClient = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();
      await DisplayLogGroupsWithoutPaginators(cwClient);
      await DisplayLogGroupsWithPaginators(cwClient);
    }
```

```
   //
   // Method to get CloudWatch log groups without paginators
   private static async Task DisplayLogGroupsWithoutPaginators(IAmazonCloudWatchLogs
cwClient)
   {
     Console.WriteLine("\nGetting list of CloudWatch log groups without using
paginators...");

Console.WriteLine("-------------------------------------------------------------------");

     // Loop as many times as needed to get all the log groups
     var request = new DescribeLogGroupsRequest{Limit = LogGroupLimit};
     do
     {
       Console.WriteLine($"Getting up to {LogGroupLimit} log groups...");
       DescribeLogGroupsResponse response = await
cwClient.DescribeLogGroupsAsync(request);
       foreach(LogGroup logGroup in response.LogGroups)
       {
         Console.WriteLine($"{logGroup.LogGroupName}");
       }
       request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
     } while(!string.IsNullOrEmpty(request.NextToken));
   }


   //
   // Method to get CloudWatch log groups by using paginators
   private static async Task DisplayLogGroupsWithPaginators(IAmazonCloudWatchLogs
cwClient)
   {
     Console.WriteLine("\nGetting list of CloudWatch log groups by using
paginators...");

Console.WriteLine("-------------------------------------------------------------");

     // Access the key results; i.e., the log groups
     // No need to loop to get all the log groups--the SDK does it for us behind the
scenes
     Console.WriteLine("\nFrom the key results...");
     Console.WriteLine("------------------------");
     IDescribeLogGroupsPaginator paginatorForLogGroups =
       cwClient.Paginators.DescribeLogGroups(new DescribeLogGroupsRequest());
```

```
      await foreach(LogGroup logGroup in paginatorForLogGroups.LogGroups)
      {
        Console.WriteLine(logGroup.LogGroupName);
      }

      // Access the full response
      // Create a new paginator, do NOT reuse the one from above
      Console.WriteLine("\nFrom the full response...");
      Console.WriteLine("-------------------------");
      IDescribeLogGroupsPaginator paginatorForResponses =
        cwClient.Paginators.DescribeLogGroups(new DescribeLogGroupsRequest());
      await foreach(DescribeLogGroupsResponse response in
 paginatorForResponses.Responses)
      {
        Console.WriteLine($"Content length: {response.ContentLength}");
        Console.WriteLine($"HTTP result: {response.HttpStatusCode}");
        Console.WriteLine($"Metadata: {response.ResponseMetadata}");
        Console.WriteLine("Log groups:");
        foreach(LogGroup logGroup in response.LogGroups)
        {
          Console.WriteLine($"\t{logGroup.LogGroupName}");
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Additional considerations for paginators

- **Paginators can't be used more than once**

  If you need the results of a particular AWS paginator in multiple locations in your code, you must not use a paginator object more than once. Instead, create a new paginator each time you need it. This concept is shown in the preceding example code in the `DisplayLogGroupsWithPaginators` method.

- **Synchronous pagination**

  Synchronous pagination is available for .NET Framework 4.7.2 (or later) projects.

> **Warning**
>
> Starting August 15th, 2024, the AWS SDK for .NET will end support for .NET Framework 3.5 and will change the minimum .NET Framework version to 4.7.2. For more information, see the blog post Important changes coming for .NET Framework 3.5 and 4.5 targets of the AWS SDK for .NET.

To see this, create a .NET Framework 4.7.2 (or later) project and copy the preceding code to it. Then simply remove the `await` keyword from the two `foreach` paginator calls, as shown in the following example.

```
/*await*/ foreach(var logGroup in paginatorForLogGroups.LogGroups)
{
  Console.WriteLine(logGroup.LogGroupName);
}
```

Build and run the project to see the same results you saw with asynchronous pagination.

Observability

Observability is the extent to which a system's current state can be inferred from the data it emits. The data emitted is commonly referred to as telemetry.

The AWS SDK for .NET can provide two common telemetry signals, metrics and traces, as well as logging. You can wire up a TelemetryProvider to send telemetry data to an observability backend (such as AWS X-Ray or Amazon CloudWatch) and then act on it.

By default, telemetry signals are disabled in the SDK. This topic explains how to enable and configure telemetry output.

Additional resources

For more information about enabling and using observability, see the following resources:

- OpenTelemetry
- The blog post Enhancing Observability in the AWS SDK for .NET with OpenTelemetry.

- The blog post Announcing the general availability of AWS .NET OpenTelemetry libraries.
- Exporters for OpenTelemetry
- For examples of observability in the AWS Tools for PowerShell, see Observability in the Tools for PowerShell User Guide.

Configure a `TelemetryProvider`

You can configure a `TelemetryProvider` in your application globally for all service clients or for individual clients, as shown in the following examples. The the section called "Telemetry providers" section contains information about telemetry implementations, including information about implementations that are provided with the SDK.

Configure the default global telemetry provider

By default, every service client attempts to use the globally available telemetry provider. This way, you can set the provider once, and all clients will use it. This should be done only once, before you create any service clients.

The following code snippet shows you how to set the global telemetry provider. It then creates an Amazon S3 service client and tries to perform an operation that fails. The code adds both tracing and metrics to the application. This code uses the following NuGet packages: `OpenTelemetry.Exporter.Console` and `OpenTelemetry.Instrumentation.AWS`.

> **Note**
>
> If you're using AWS IAM Identity Center for authentication, be sure to also add `AWSSDK.SSO` and `AWSSDK.SSOOIDC`.

```
using Amazon.S3;
using OpenTelemetry;
using OpenTelemetry.Metrics;
using OpenTelemetry.Resources;
using OpenTelemetry.Trace;

Sdk.CreateTracerProviderBuilder()
    .ConfigureResource(e => e.AddService("DemoOtel"))
    .AddAWSInstrumentation()
```

```
    .AddConsoleExporter()
    .Build();

Sdk.CreateMeterProviderBuilder()
    .ConfigureResource(e => e.AddService("DemoOtel"))
    .AddAWSInstrumentation()
    .AddConsoleExporter()
    .Build();

var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();

try
{
    var listBucketsResponse = await s3Client.ListBucketsAsync();
    // Attempt to delete a bucket that doesn't exist.
    var deleteBucketResponse = await s3Client.DeleteBucketAsync("amzn-s3-demo-bucket");
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
}

Console.Read();
```

Configure a telemetry provider for a specific service client

You can configure an individual service client with a specific telemetry provider (other than the global one). To do so, use the `TelemetryProvider` class of the Config object of a service client constructor. For example, see AmazonS3Config and look for the `TelemetryProvider` property. See the section called "Telemetry providers" for information about custom telemetry implementations.

Topics

- Metrics
- Telemetry providers

Metrics

The following table lists the telemetry metrics that the SDK emits. Configure a telemetry provider to make the metrics observable.

What metrics are emitted?

Metric name	Units	Type	Attributes	Description
client.call.duration	s	Histogra	rpc.service, rpc.method	Overall call duration (including retries and time to send or receive request and response body)
client.uptime	s	Histogra	rpc.service	The amount of time since a client was created
client.call.attempts	{attempt	Monotor Counter	rpc.service, rpc.method	The number of attempts for an individual operation
client.call.errors	{error}	Monotor Counter	rpc.service, rpc.method, exception.type	The number of errors for an operation
client.call.attempt_duration	s	Histogra	rpc.service, rpc.method	The time it takes to connect to the service, send the request, and get back HTTP status code and headers (including time queued waiting to be sent)
client.call.resolve_endpoint_duration	s	Histogra	rpc.service, rpc.method	The time it takes to resolve an endpoint (endpoint resolver, not DNS) for the request
client.call.serialization_duration	s	Histogra	rpc.service, rpc.method	The time it takes to serialize a message body
client.call.deserialization_duration	s	Histogra	rpc.service, rpc.method	The time it takes to deserialize a message body
client.call.auth.signing_duration	s	Histogra	rpc.service, rpc.method	The time it takes to sign a request

Metric name	Units	Type	Attributes	Description
client.call.auth.resolve_identity_duration	s	Histogra	rpc.service, rpc.method	The time it takes to acquire an identity (such as AWS credentials or a bearer token) from an Identity Provider
client.http.bytes_sent	By	Monotor Counter	server.address	The total number of bytes sent by the HTTP client
client.http.bytes_received	By	Monotor Counter	server.address	The total number of bytes received by the HTTP client

Following are the column descriptions:

- **Metric name**–The name of the emitted metric.
- **Units**–The unit of measure for the metric. Units are given in the UCUM case sensitive ("c/s") notation.
- **Type**–The type of instrument used to capture the metric.
- **Attributes**–The set of attributes (dimensions) emitted with the metric.
- **Description**–A description of what the metric is measuring.

Telemetry providers

The SDK provides an implementation of OpenTelemetry as a telemetry provider, which is described in the next section.

If you have specific telemetry requirements, already have a telemetry solution in mind, or need fine-grained control over how telemetry data is captured and processed, you can also implement your own telemetry provider.

Register your own implementation with the TelemetryProvider class. The following is a simple example of how to register your own `TracerProvider` and `MeterProvider`.

```
using Amazon;
using Amazon.Runtime.Telemetry;
```

```
using Amazon.Runtime.Telemetry.Metrics;
using Amazon.Runtime.Telemetry.Tracing;

public class CustomTracerProvider : TracerProvider
{
    // Implement custom tracing logic here
}
public class CustomMeterProvider : MeterProvider
{
    // Implement custom metrics logic here
}

// Register custom implementations
AWSConfigs.TelemetryProvider.RegisterTracerProvider(new CustomTracerProvider());
AWSConfigs.TelemetryProvider.RegisterMeterProvider(new CustomMeterProvider());
```

Topics

- Configure the OpenTelemetry-based telemetry provider

Configure the OpenTelemetry-based telemetry provider

The AWS SDK for .NET includes an implementation of an OpenTelemetry-based telemetry provider. For details about how to set this provider as the global telemetry provider, see Configure a `TelemetryProvider`. To use this telemetry provider, you need the following resources in your project:

- The OpenTelemetry.Instrumentation.AWS NuGet package.
- A telemetry exporter such as OTLP or Console. For more information, see Exporters in the OpenTelemetry documentation.

The OpenTelemetry implementation included with the SDK can be configured to reduce the amount of tracing for HTTPS requests, credentials, and compression. To do so, set the `SuppressDownstreamInstrumentation` option to `true`, similar to the following:

```
Sdk.CreateTracerProviderBuilder()
    .ConfigureResource(e => e.AddService("DemoOtel"))
    .AddAWSInstrumentation(options => options.SuppressDownstreamInstrumentation = true)
    .AddConsoleExporter()
    .Build();
```

For additional information about this provider, see the blog post Enhancing Observability in the AWS SDK for .NET with OpenTelemetry.

Additional tools

The following are some additional tools that you can use to ease the work of developing, deploying, and maintaining your .NET applications.

AWS Deploy Tool

After you've developed your cloud-native .NET Core application on a development machine, you can use the AWS Deploy Tool for the .NET CLI to more easily deploy your application to AWS.

For more information, see Deploy applications to AWS.

AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET

If you're using services such as Amazon SQS, Amazon SNS or Amazon EventBridge, you might be able to take advantage of the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET. For more information, see AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET.

Integrations with .NET Aspire

You can take advantages of integrations with .NET Aspire to improve the inner dev loop. For more information, see Integrating AWS with .NET Aspire in the AWS SDK for .NET.

Advanced authentication and authorization with the AWS SDK for .NET

The topics in this section provide information about advanced techniques for authentication and authorization in your AWS SDK for .NET application.

Topics

- Single sign-on with the AWS SDK for .NET

Single sign-on with the AWS SDK for .NET

AWS IAM Identity Center is a cloud-based single sign-on (SSO) service that makes it easy to centrally manage SSO access to all of your AWS accounts and cloud applications. For full details, see the IAM Identity Center User Guide.

If you're unfamiliar with how an SDK interacts with IAM Identity Center, see the following information.

High-level pattern of interaction

At a high level, SDKs interact with IAM Identity Center in a manner similar to the following pattern:

1. IAM Identity Center is configured, typically through the IAM Identity Center console, and an SSO user is invited to participate.
2. The shared AWS `config` file on the user's computer is updated with SSO information.
3. The user signs in through IAM Identity Center and is given short-term credentials for the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) permissions that have been configured for them. This sign-in can be initiated through a non-SDK tool like the AWS CLI, or programmatically through a .NET application.
4. The user proceeds to do their work. When they run other applications that are using SSO, they don't need to sign in again to open the applications.

The rest of this topic provides reference information for setting up and using AWS IAM Identity Center. It provides supplemental and more advanced information than the basic SSO setup in Configure SDK authentication. If you're new to SSO on AWS, you might want to look at that topic first for fundamental information, and then at the following tutorials to see SSO in action:

- Tutorial: .NET application only
- Tutorial: AWS CLI and .NET application

This topic contains the following sections:

- Prerequisites
- Setting up an SSO profile
- Generating and using SSO tokens
- Additional resources
- Tutorials

Prerequisites

Before using IAM Identity Center, you must perform certain tasks, such as choosing an identity source and configuring the relevant AWS accounts and applications. For additional information, see the following:

- For general information about these tasks, see Getting started in the *IAM Identity Center User Guide*.
- For specific task examples, see the list of tutorials at the end of this topic. However, be sure to review the information in this topic before trying out the tutorials.

Setting up an SSO profile

After IAM Identity Center is configured in the relevant AWS account, a named profile for SSO must be added to the user's shared AWS `config` file. This profile is used to connect to the *AWS access portal*, which returns short-term credentials for the IAM permissions that have been configured for the user.

The shared `config` file is typically named `%USERPROFILE%\.aws\config` in Windows and `~/.aws/config` in Linux and macOS. You can use your preferred text editor to add a new profile for SSO. Alternatively, you can use the `aws configure sso` command. For more information about this command, see Configuring the AWS CLI to use IAM Identity Center in the *AWS Command Line Interface User Guide*.

The new profile is similar to the following:

```
[profile my-sso-profile]
sso_start_url = https://my-sso-portal.awsapps.com/start
sso_region = us-west-2
sso_account_id = 123456789012
sso_role_name = SSOReadOnlyRole
```

The settings for the new profile are defined below. The first two settings define the AWS access portal. The other two settings are a pair that, taken together, define the permissions that have been configured for a user. All four settings are required.

`sso_start_url`

The URL that points to the organization's AWS access portal. To find this value, open the IAM Identity Center console, choose **Settings**, and find **portal URL**.

`sso_region`

The AWS Region that contains the access portal host. This is the Region that was selected as you enabled IAM Identity Center. It can be different from the Regions that you use for other tasks.

For a complete list of the AWS Regions and their codes, see Regional Endpoints in the *Amazon Web Services General Reference*.

`sso_account_id`

The ID of an AWS account that was added through the AWS Organizations service. To see the list of available accounts, go to the IAM Identity Center console and open the **AWS accounts** page. The account ID that you choose for this setting will correspond to the value that you plan to give to the `sso_role_name` setting, which is shown next.

`sso_role_name`

The name of an IAM Identity Center permission set. This permission set defines the permissions that a user is given through IAM Identity Center.

The following procedure is one way to find the value for this setting.

1. Go to the IAM Identity Center console and open the **AWS accounts** page.
2. Choose an account to display its details. The account you choose will be the one that contains the SSO user or group that you want to give SSO permissions to.

3. Look at the list of users and groups that are assigned to the account and find the user or group of interest. The permission set that you specify in the `sso_role_name` setting is one of the sets associated with this user or group.

When giving a value to this setting, use the name of the permission set, not the Amazon Resource Name (ARN).

Permission sets have IAM policies and custom-permissions policies attached to them. For more information, see Permission sets in the *IAM Identity Center User Guide*.

Generating and using SSO tokens

To use SSO, a user must first generate a temporary token and then use that token to access appropriate AWS applications and resources. For .NET applications, you can use the following methods to generate and use these temporary tokens:

- Create .NET applications that generate a token first, if necessary, and then use the token.
- Generate a token with the AWS CLI and then use the token in .NET applications.

These methods are described in the following sections and demonstrated in the tutorials.

> **Important**
>
> Your application must reference the following NuGet packages so that SSO resolution can work:
>
> - `AWSSDK.SSO`
> - `AWSSDK.SSOOIDC`
>
> Failure to reference these packages will result in a *runtime* exception.

.NET application only

This section shows you how to create a .NET application that generates a temporary SSO token, if necessary, and then uses that token. For a full tutorial of this process, see Tutorial for SSO using only .NET applications.

Generate and use an SSO token programmatically

In addition to using the AWS CLI, you can also generate an SSO token programmatically.

To do this, your application creates an `AWSCredentials` object for the SSO profile, which loads temporary credentials if any are available. Then, your application must cast the `AWSCredentials` object to an `SSOAWSCredentials` object and set some Options properties, including a callback method that is used to prompt the user for sign-in information, if necessary.

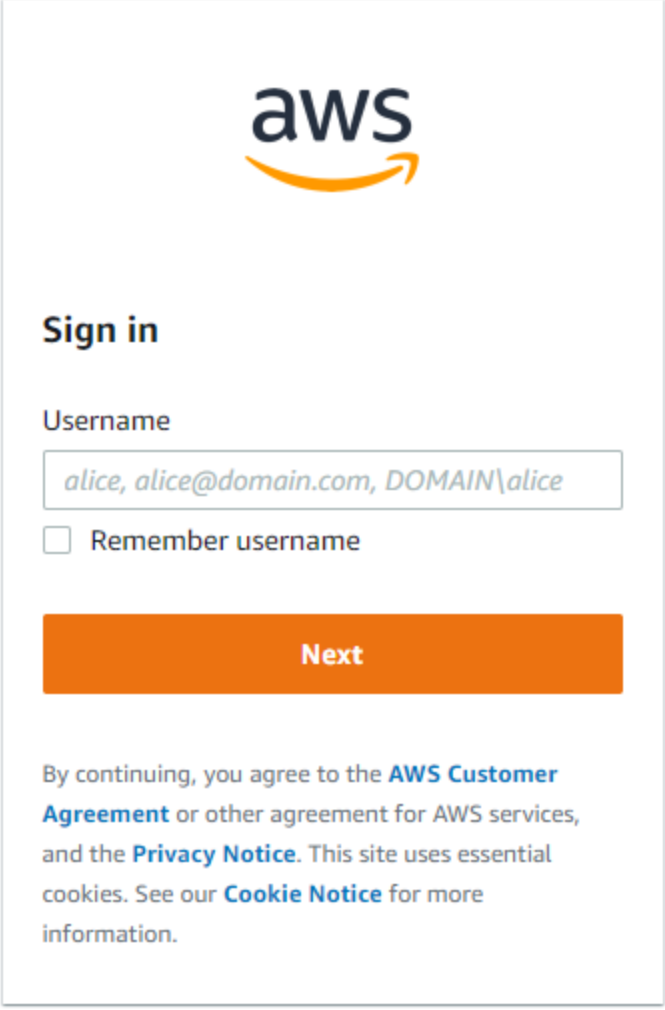
This method is shown in the following code snippet.

> **Important**
>
> Your application must reference the following NuGet packages so that SSO resolution can work:
>
> - `AWSSDK.SSO`
> - `AWSSDK.SSOOIDC`
>
> Failure to reference these packages will result in a *runtime* exception.

```
static AWSCredentials LoadSsoCredentials()
{
    var chain = new CredentialProfileStoreChain();
    if (!chain.TryGetAWSCredentials("my-sso-profile", out var credentials))
        throw new Exception("Failed to find the my-sso-profile profile");

    var ssoCredentials = credentials as SSOAWSCredentials;

    ssoCredentials.Options.ClientName = "Example-SSO-App";
    ssoCredentials.Options.SsoVerificationCallback = args =>
    {
        // Launch a browser window that prompts the SSO user to complete an SSO sign-
in.
        // This method is only invoked if the session doesn't already have a valid SSO
 token.
        // NOTE: Process.Start might not support launching a browser on macOS or Linux.
 If not,
        //       use an appropriate mechanism on those systems instead.
```

```
        Process.Start(new ProcessStartInfo
        {
            FileName = args.VerificationUriComplete,
            UseShellExecute = true
        });
    };

    return ssoCredentials;
}
```

If an appropriate SSO token isn't available, the default browser window is launched and the appropriate sign-in page is opened. For example, if you're using IAM Identity Center as the **Identity source**, the user sees a sign-in page similar to the following:



> **Note**
>
> The text string that you provide for `SSOAWSCredentials.Options.ClientName` can't have spaces. If the string does have spaces, you'll get a *runtime* exception.

Tutorial for SSO using only .NET applications

AWS CLI and .NET application

This section shows you how to generate a temporary SSO token by using the AWS CLI, and how to use that token in an application. For a full tutorial of this process, see Tutorial for SSO using the AWS CLI and .NET applications.

Generate an SSO token by using the AWS CLI

In addition to generating a temporary SSO token programmatically, you use the AWS CLI to generate the token. The following information shows you how.

After the user creates an SSO-enabled profile as shown in a previous section, they run the `aws sso login` command from the AWS CLI. They must be sure to include the `--profile` parameter with the name of the SSO-enabled profile. This is shown in the following example:

```
aws sso login --profile my-sso-profile
```

If the user wants to generate a new temporary token after the current one expires, they can run the same command again.

Use the generated SSO token in a .NET application

The following information shows you how to use a temporary token that has already been generated.

> **Important**
>
> Your application must reference the following NuGet packages so that SSO resolution can work:
>
> - `AWSSDK.SSO`
> - `AWSSDK.SSOOIDC`

Failure to reference these packages will result in a *runtime* exception.

Your application creates an `AWSCredentials` object for the SSO profile, which loads the temporary credentials generated earlier by the AWS CLI. This is similar to the methods shown in Accessing credentials and profiles in an application and has the following form:

```
static AWSCredentials LoadSsoCredentials()
{
    var chain = new CredentialProfileStoreChain();
    if (!chain.TryGetAWSCredentials("my-sso-profile", out var credentials))
        throw new Exception("Failed to find the my-sso-profile profile");

    return credentials;
}
```

The `AWSCredentials` object is then passed to the constructor for a service client. For example:

```
var S3Client_SSO = new AmazonS3Client(LoadSsoCredentials());
```

> **Note**
>
> Using `AWSCredentials` to load temporary credentials isn't necessary if your application has been built to use the `[default]` profile for SSO. In that case, the application can create AWS service clients without parameters, similar to "`var client = new AmazonS3Client();`".

Tutorial for SSO using the AWS CLI and .NET applications

Additional resources

For additional help, see the following resources.

- What is IAM Identity Center?
- Configuring the AWS CLI to use IAM Identity Center
- Using IAM Identity Center credentials in the AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio

Tutorials

Topics

- Tutorial for SSO using only .NET applications
- Tutorial for SSO using the AWS CLI and .NET applications

Tutorial for SSO using only .NET applications

This tutorial shows you how to enable SSO for a basic application and a test SSO user. It configures the application to generate a temporary SSO token programmatically instead of using the AWS CLI.

This tutorial shows you a small portion of SSO functionality in the AWS SDK for .NET. For full details about using IAM Identity Center with the AWS SDK for .NET, see the topic with background information. In that topic, see especially the high-level description for this scenario in the subsection called .NET application only.

> **Note**
>
> Several of the steps in this tutorial help you configure services like AWS Organizations and IAM Identity Center. If you've already performed that configuration, or if you're only interested in the code, you can skip to the section with the example code.

Prerequisites

- Configure your development environment if you haven't already done so. This is described in sections like Install and configure your toolchain and Get started.
- Identify or create at least one AWS account that you can use to test SSO. For the purposes of this tutorial, this is called the *test AWS account* or simply *test account*.
- Identify an *SSO user* who can test SSO for you. This is a person who will be using SSO and the basic applications that you create. For this tutorial, that person might be you (the developer), or someone else. We also recommend a setup in which the SSO user is working on a computer that is not in your development environment. However, this isn't strictly necessary.
- The SSO user's computer must have a .NET framework installed that's compatible with the one you used to set up your development environment.

Set up AWS

This section shows you how to set up various AWS services for this tutorial.

To perform this setup, first sign in to the test AWS account as an administrator. Then, do the following:

Amazon S3

Go to the Amazon S3 console and add some innocuous buckets. Later in this tutorial, the SSO user will retrieve a list of these buckets.

AWS IAM

Go to the IAM console and add a few IAM users. If you give the IAM users permissions, limit the permissions to a few innocuous read-only permissions. Later in this tutorial, the SSO user will retrieve a list of these IAM users.

AWS Organizations

Go to the AWS Organizations console and enable Organizations. For more information, see Creating an organization in the AWS Organizations User Guide.

This action adds the test AWS account to the organization as the *management account*. If you have additional test accounts, you can invite them to join the organization, but doing so isn't necessary for this tutorial.

IAM Identity Center

Go to the IAM Identity Center console and enable SSO. Perform email verification if necessary. For more information, see Enable IAM Identity Center in the IAM Identity Center User Guide.

Then, perform the following configuration.

Configure IAM Identity Center

1. Go to the **Settings** page. Look for the **"access portal URL"** and record the value for later use in the `sso_start_url` setting.
2. In the banner of the AWS Management Console, look for the AWS Region that was set when you enabled SSO. This is the dropdown menu to the left of the AWS account ID. Record the Region code for later use in the `sso_region` setting. This code will be similar to `us-east-1`.
3. Create an SSO user as follows:

a. Go to the **Users** page.

b. Choose **Add user** and enter the user's **Username**, **Email address**, **First name**, and **Last name**. Then, choose **Next**.

c. Choose **Next** on the page for groups, then review the information and choose **Add user**.

4. Create a group as follows:

a. Go to the **Groups** page.

b. Choose **Create group** and enter the group's **Group name** and **Description**.

c. In the **Add users to group** section, select the test SSO user that you created earlier. Then, select **Create group.**

5. Create a permission set as follows:

a. Go to the **Permission sets** page and choose **Create permission set**.

b. Under **Permission set type**, select **Custom permission set** and choose **Next**.

c. Open **Inline policy** and enter the following policy:

JSON

```
{
    "Version":"2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Sid": "VisualEditor0",
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
                "iam:ListUsers"
            ],
            "Resource": "*"
        }
    ]
}
```

d. For this tutorial, enter `SSOReadOnlyRole` as the **Permission set name**. Add a **Description** if you want and then choose **Next**.

e. Review the information and then choose **Create**.

f. Record the name of the permission set for later use in the `sso_role_name` setting.

6. Go to the **AWS accounts** page and choose the AWS account that you added to the organization earlier.
7. In the **Overview** section of that page, find the **Account ID** and record it for later use in the `sso_account_id` setting.
8. Choose the **Users and groups** tab and then choose **Assign users or groups**.
9. On the **Assign users and groups** page, choose the **Groups** tab, select the group that you created earlier, and choose **Next**.
10. Select the permission set that you created earlier and choose **Next**, then choose **Submit**. The configuration takes a few moments.

Create example applications

Create the following applications. They will be run on the SSO user's computer.

List Amazon S3 buckets

Include NuGet packages `AWSSDK.SSO` and `AWSSDK.SSOOIDC` in addition to `AWSSDK.S3` and `AWSSDK.SecurityToken`.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using System.Diagnostics;


// NuGet packages: AWSSDK.S3, AWSSDK.SecurityToken, AWSSDK.SSO, AWSSDK.SSOOIDC
using Amazon.Runtime;
using Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;
using Amazon.SecurityToken;
using Amazon.SecurityToken.Model;

namespace SSOExample.S3.Programmatic_login
{
    class Program
    {
        // Requirements:
        // - An SSO profile in the SSO user's shared config file.

        // Class members.
```

```
        private static string profile = "my-sso-profile";

        static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Get SSO credentials from the information in the shared config file.
            var ssoCreds = LoadSsoCredentials(profile);

            // Display the caller's identity.
            var ssoProfileClient = new AmazonSecurityTokenServiceClient(ssoCreds);
            Console.WriteLine($"\nSSO Profile:\n {await
ssoProfileClient.GetCallerIdentityArn()}");

            // Display a list of the account's S3 buckets.
            // The S3 client is created using the SSO credentials obtained earlier.
            var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client(ssoCreds);
            Console.WriteLine("\nGetting a list of your buckets...");
            var listResponse = await s3Client.ListBucketsAsync();
            Console.WriteLine($"Number of buckets: {listResponse.Buckets.Count}");
            foreach (S3Bucket b in listResponse.Buckets)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(b.BucketName);
            }
            Console.WriteLine();
        }

        // Method to get SSO credentials from the information in the shared config
file.
        static AWSCredentials LoadSsoCredentials(string profile)
        {
            var chain = new CredentialProfileStoreChain();
            if (!chain.TryGetAWSCredentials(profile, out var credentials))
                throw new Exception($"Failed to find the {profile} profile");

            var ssoCredentials = credentials as SSOAWSCredentials;

            ssoCredentials.Options.ClientName = "Example-SSO-App";
            ssoCredentials.Options.SsoVerificationCallback = args =>
            {
                // Launch a browser window that prompts the SSO user to complete an SSO
login.
                //  This method is only invoked if the session doesn't already have a
valid SSO token.
                // NOTE: Process.Start might not support launching a browser on macOS
or Linux. If not,
```

```
                //       use an appropriate mechanism on those systems instead.
                Process.Start(new ProcessStartInfo
                {
                    FileName = args.VerificationUriComplete,
                    UseShellExecute = true
                });
            };

            return ssoCredentials;
        }

    }

    // Class to read the caller's identity.
    public static class Extensions
    {
        public static async Task<string> GetCallerIdentityArn(this
 IAmazonSecurityTokenService stsClient)
        {
            var response = await stsClient.GetCallerIdentityAsync(new
 GetCallerIdentityRequest());
            return response.Arn;
        }
    }
}
```

List IAM users

Include NuGet packages `AWSSDK.SSO` and `AWSSDK.SSOOIDC` in addition to `AWSSDK.IdentityManagement` and `AWSSDK.SecurityToken`.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using System.Diagnostics;


// NuGet packages: AWSSDK.IdentityManagement, AWSSDK.SecurityToken, AWSSDK.SSO,
 AWSSDK.SSOOIDC
using Amazon.Runtime;
using Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement;
using Amazon.IdentityManagement;
using Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model;
using Amazon.SecurityToken;
```

```
using Amazon.SecurityToken.Model;

namespace SSOExample.IAM.Programmatic_login
{
    class Program
    {
        // Requirements:
        // - An SSO profile in the SSO user's shared config file.

        // Class members.
        private static string profile = "my-sso-profile";

        static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Get SSO credentials from the information in the shared config file.
            var ssoCreds = LoadSsoCredentials(profile);

            // Display the caller's identity.
            var ssoProfileClient = new AmazonSecurityTokenServiceClient(ssoCreds);
            Console.WriteLine($"\nSSO Profile:\n {await
 ssoProfileClient.GetCallerIdentityArn()}");

            // Display a list of the account's IAM users.
            // The IAM client is created using the SSO credentials obtained earlier.
            var iamClient = new AmazonIdentityManagementServiceClient(ssoCreds);
            Console.WriteLine("\nGetting a list of IAM users...");
            var listResponse = await iamClient.ListUsersAsync();
            Console.WriteLine($"Number of IAM users: {listResponse.Users.Count}");
            foreach (User u in listResponse.Users)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(u.UserName);
            }
            Console.WriteLine();
        }

        // Method to get SSO credentials from the information in the shared config
 file.
        static AWSCredentials LoadSsoCredentials(string profile)
        {
            var chain = new CredentialProfileStoreChain();
            if (!chain.TryGetAWSCredentials(profile, out var credentials))
                throw new Exception($"Failed to find the {profile} profile");

            var ssoCredentials = credentials as SSOAWSCredentials;
```

```
            ssoCredentials.Options.ClientName = "Example-SSO-App";
            ssoCredentials.Options.SsoVerificationCallback = args =>
            {
                // Launch a browser window that prompts the SSO user to complete an SSO
 login.
                //  This method is only invoked if the session doesn't already have a
 valid SSO token.
                // NOTE: Process.Start might not support launching a browser on macOS
 or Linux. If not,
                //       use an appropriate mechanism on those systems instead.
                Process.Start(new ProcessStartInfo
                {
                    FileName = args.VerificationUriComplete,
                    UseShellExecute = true
                });
            };

            return ssoCredentials;
        }

    }

    // Class to read the caller's identity.
    public static class Extensions
    {
        public static async Task<string> GetCallerIdentityArn(this
 IAmazonSecurityTokenService stsClient)
        {
            var response = await stsClient.GetCallerIdentityAsync(new
 GetCallerIdentityRequest());
            return response.Arn;
        }
    }
}
```

In addition to displaying lists of Amazon S3 buckets and IAM users, these applications display the user identity ARN for the SSO-enabled profile, which is `my-sso-profile` in this tutorial.

These applications perform SSO sign-in tasks by providing a callback method in the Options property of an SSOAWSCredentials object.

Instruct SSO user

Ask the SSO user to check their email and accept the SSO invitation. They are prompted to set a password. The message might take a few minutes to arrive in the SSO user's inbox.

Give the SSO user the applications that you created earlier.

Then, have the SSO user do the following:

1. If the folder that contains the shared AWS `config` file doesn't exist, create it. If the folder does exist and has a subfolder called `.sso`, delete that subfolder.

   The location of this folder is typically `%USERPROFILE%\.aws` in Windows and `~/.aws` in Linux and macOS.

2. Create a shared AWS `config` file in that folder, if necessary, and add a profile to it as follows:

```
[default]
region = <default Region>

[profile my-sso-profile]
sso_start_url = <user portal URL recorded earlier>
sso_region = <Region code recorded earlier>
sso_account_id = <account ID recorded earlier>
sso_role_name = SSOReadOnlyRole
```

3. Run the Amazon S3 application.
4. In the resulting web sign-in page, sign in. Use the user name from the invitation message and the password that was created in response to the message.
5. When sign-in is complete, the application displays the list of S3 buckets.
6. Run the IAM application. The application displays the list of IAM users. This is true even though a second sign-in wasn't performed. The IAM application uses the temporary token that was created earlier.

Cleanup

If you don't want to keep the resources that you created during this tutorial, clean them up. These might be AWS resources or resources in your development environment such as files and folders.

Tutorial for SSO using the AWS CLI and .NET applications

This tutorial shows you how to enable SSO for a basic .NET application and a test SSO user. It uses the AWS CLI to generate a temporary SSO token instead of generating it programmatically.

This tutorial shows you a small portion of SSO functionality in the AWS SDK for .NET. For full details about using IAM Identity Center with the AWS SDK for .NET, see the topic with background information. In that topic, see especially the high-level description for this scenario in the subsection called AWS CLI and .NET application.

> **Note**
>
> Several of the steps in this tutorial help you configure services like AWS Organizations and IAM Identity Center. If you've already performed those configurations, or if you're only interested in the code, you can skip to the section with the example code.

Prerequisites

- Configure your development environment if you haven't already done so. This is described in sections like Install and configure your toolchain and Get started.
- Identify or create at least one AWS account that you can use to test SSO. For the purposes of this tutorial, this is called the *test AWS account* or simply *test account*.
- Identify an *SSO user* who can test SSO for you. This is a person who will be using SSO and the basic applications that you create. For this tutorial, that person might be you (the developer), or someone else. We also recommend a setup in which the SSO user is working on a computer that is not in your development environment. However, this isn't strictly necessary.
- The SSO user's computer must have a .NET framework installed that's compatible with the one you used to set up your development environment.

- Be sure that the AWS CLI version 2 is installed on the SSO user's computer. You can check this by running `aws --version` in a command prompt or terminal.

Set up AWS

This section shows you how to set up various AWS services for this tutorial.

To perform this setup, first sign in to the test AWS account as an administrator. Then, do the following:

Amazon S3

Go to the Amazon S3 console and add some innocuous buckets. Later in this tutorial, the SSO user will retrieve a list of these buckets.

AWS IAM

Go to the IAM console and add a few IAM users. If you give the IAM users permissions, limit the permissions to a few innocuous read-only permissions. Later in this tutorial, the SSO user will retrieve a list of these IAM users.

AWS Organizations

Go to the AWS Organizations console and enable Organizations. For more information, see Creating an organization in the AWS Organizations User Guide.

This action adds the test AWS account to the organization as the *management account*. If you have additional test accounts, you can invite them to join the organization, but doing so isn't necessary for this tutorial.

IAM Identity Center

Go to the IAM Identity Center console and enable SSO. Perform email verification if necessary. For more information, see Enable IAM Identity Center in the IAM Identity Center User Guide.

Then, perform the following configuration.

Configure IAM Identity Center

1. Go to the **Settings** page. Look for the **"access portal URL"** and record the value for later use in the `sso_start_url` setting.
2. In the banner of the AWS Management Console, look for the AWS Region that was set when you enabled SSO. This is the dropdown menu to the left of the AWS account ID. Record the Region code for later use in the `sso_region` setting. This code will be similar to `us-east-1`.
3. Create an SSO user as follows:

    a. Go to the **Users** page.

    b. Choose **Add user** and enter the user's **Username**, **Email address**, **First name**, and **Last name**. Then, choose **Next**.

c. Choose **Next** on the page for groups, then review the information and choose **Add user**.

4. Create a group as follows:

   a. Go to the **Groups** page.

   b. Choose **Create group** and enter the group's **Group name** and **Description**.

   c. In the **Add users to group** section, select the test SSO user that you created earlier. Then, select **Create group.**

5. Create a permission set as follows:

   a. Go to the **Permission sets** page and choose **Create permission set**.

   b. Under **Permission set type**, select **Custom permission set** and choose **Next**.

   c. Open **Inline policy** and enter the following policy:

      JSON

```
{
    "Version":"2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Sid": "VisualEditor0",
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
                "iam:ListUsers"
            ],
            "Resource": "*"
        }
    ]
}
```

   d. For this tutorial, enter `SSOReadOnlyRole` as the **Permission set name**. Add a **Description** if you want and then choose **Next**.

   e. Review the information and then choose **Create**.

   f. Record the name of the permission set for later use in the `sso_role_name` setting.

6. Go to the **AWS accounts** page and choose the AWS account that you added to the organization earlier.

7. In the **Overview** section of that page, find the **Account ID** and record it for later use in the `sso_account_id` setting.
8. Choose the **Users and groups** tab and then choose **Assign users or groups**.
9. On the **Assign users and groups** page, choose the **Groups** tab, select the group that you created earlier, and choose **Next**.
10. Select the permission set that you created earlier and choose **Next**, then choose **Submit**. The configuration takes a few moments.

Create example applications

Create the following applications. They will be run on the SSO user's computer.

List Amazon S3 buckets

Include NuGet packages `AWSSDK.SSO` and `AWSSDK.SSOOIDC` in addition to `AWSSDK.S3` and `AWSSDK.SecurityToken`.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

// NuGet packages: AWSSDK.S3, AWSSDK.SecurityToken, AWSSDK.SSO, AWSSDK.SSOOIDC
using Amazon.Runtime;
using Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;
using Amazon.SecurityToken;
using Amazon.SecurityToken.Model;

namespace SSOExample.S3.CLI_login
{
    class Program
    {
        // Requirements:
        // - An SSO profile in the SSO user's shared config file.
        // - An active SSO Token.
        //    If an active SSO token isn't available, the SSO user should do the
 following:
        //    In a terminal, the SSO user must call "aws sso login --profile my-sso-
profile".

        // Class members.
```

```
        private static string profile = "my-sso-profile";
        static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Get SSO credentials from the information in the shared config file.
            var ssoCreds = LoadSsoCredentials(profile);

            // Display the caller's identity.
            var ssoProfileClient = new AmazonSecurityTokenServiceClient(ssoCreds);
            Console.WriteLine($"\nSSO Profile:\n {await
 ssoProfileClient.GetCallerIdentityArn()}");

            // Display a list of the account's S3 buckets.
            // The S3 client is created using the SSO credentials obtained earlier.
            var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client(ssoCreds);
            Console.WriteLine("\nGetting a list of your buckets...");
            var listResponse = await s3Client.ListBucketsAsync();
            Console.WriteLine($"Number of buckets: {listResponse.Buckets.Count}");
            foreach (S3Bucket b in listResponse.Buckets)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(b.BucketName);
            }
            Console.WriteLine();
        }

        // Method to get SSO credentials from the information in the shared config
 file.
        static AWSCredentials LoadSsoCredentials(string profile)
        {
            var chain = new CredentialProfileStoreChain();
            if (!chain.TryGetAWSCredentials(profile, out var credentials))
                throw new Exception($"Failed to find the {profile} profile");
            return credentials;
        }
    }

    // Class to read the caller's identity.
    public static class Extensions
    {
        public static async Task<string> GetCallerIdentityArn(this
 IAmazonSecurityTokenService stsClient)
        {
            var response = await stsClient.GetCallerIdentityAsync(new
 GetCallerIdentityRequest());
            return response.Arn;
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

List IAM users

Include NuGet packages `AWSSDK.SSO` and `AWSSDK.SSOOIDC` in addition to `AWSSDK.IdentityManagement` and `AWSSDK.SecurityToken`.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

// NuGet packages: AWSSDK.IdentityManagement, AWSSDK.SecurityToken, AWSSDK.SSO,
 AWSSDK.SSOOIDC
using Amazon.Runtime;
using Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement;
using Amazon.IdentityManagement;
using Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model;
using Amazon.SecurityToken;
using Amazon.SecurityToken.Model;

namespace SSOExample.IAM.CLI_login
{
    class Program
    {
        // Requirements:
        // - An SSO profile in the SSO user's shared config file.
        // - An active SSO Token.
        //    If an active SSO token isn't available, the SSO user should do the
 following:
        //    In a terminal, the SSO user must call "aws sso login --profile my-sso-
profile".

        // Class members.
        private static string profile = "my-sso-profile";
        static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Get SSO credentials from the information in the shared config file.
            var ssoCreds = LoadSsoCredentials(profile);

            // Display the caller's identity.
            var ssoProfileClient = new AmazonSecurityTokenServiceClient(ssoCreds);
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"\nSSO Profile:\n {await
 ssoProfileClient.GetCallerIdentityArn()}");

            // Display a list of the account's IAM users.
            // The IAM client is created using the SSO credentials obtained earlier.
            var iamClient = new AmazonIdentityManagementServiceClient(ssoCreds);
            Console.WriteLine("\nGetting a list of IAM users...");
            var listResponse = await iamClient.ListUsersAsync();
            Console.WriteLine($"Number of IAM users: {listResponse.Users.Count}");
            foreach (User u in listResponse.Users)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(u.UserName);
            }
            Console.WriteLine();
        }

        // Method to get SSO credentials from the information in the shared config
 file.
        static AWSCredentials LoadSsoCredentials(string profile)
        {
            var chain = new CredentialProfileStoreChain();
            if (!chain.TryGetAWSCredentials(profile, out var credentials))
                throw new Exception($"Failed to find the {profile} profile");
            return credentials;
        }
    }

    // Class to read the caller's identity.
    public static class Extensions
    {
        public static async Task<string> GetCallerIdentityArn(this
 IAmazonSecurityTokenService stsClient)
        {
            var response = await stsClient.GetCallerIdentityAsync(new
 GetCallerIdentityRequest());
            return response.Arn;
        }
    }
}
```

In addition to displaying lists of Amazon S3 buckets and IAM users, these applications display the user identity ARN for the SSO-enabled profile, which is `my-sso-profile` in this tutorial.

Instruct SSO user

Ask the SSO user to check their email and accept the SSO invitation. They are prompted to set a password. The message might take a few minutes to arrive in the SSO user's inbox.

Give the SSO user the applications that you created earlier.

Then, have the SSO user do the following:

1. If the folder that contains the shared AWS `config` file doesn't exist, create it. If the folder does exist and has a subfolder called `.sso`, delete that subfolder.

   The location of this folder is typically `%USERPROFILE%\.aws` in Windows and `~/.aws` in Linux and macOS.

2. Create a shared AWS `config` file in that folder, if necessary, and add a profile to it as follows:

```
[default]
region = <default Region>

[profile my-sso-profile]
sso_start_url = <user portal URL recorded earlier>
sso_region = <Region code recorded earlier>
sso_account_id = <account ID recorded earlier>
sso_role_name = SSOReadOnlyRole
```

3. Run the Amazon S3 application. A runtime exception appears.
4. Run the following AWS CLI command:

```
aws sso login --profile my-sso-profile
```

5. In the resulting web sign-in page, sign in. Use the user name from the invitation message and the password that was created in response to the message.
6. Run the Amazon S3 application again. The application now displays the list of S3 buckets.
7. Run the IAM application. The application displays the list of IAM users. This is true even though a second sign-in wasn't performed. The IAM application uses the temporary token that was created earlier.

Cleanup

If you don't want to keep the resources that you created during this tutorial, clean them up. These might be AWS resources or resources in your development environment such as files and folders.

Deploy applications to AWS

After you've developed your cloud-native .NET Core application or service on a development machine, you'll want to deploy it to AWS. You can do this by using the AWS Management Console or certain services like CloudFormation or AWS Cloud Development Kit (AWS CDK). You can also use AWS tools that have been created for the purpose of deployment. By using these tools, you can do the following.

Deploy from the .NET CLI

You can use the following AWS tools for .NET CLI to deploy your applications to AWS:

- AWS Deploy Tool for .NET CLI - Supports deployments to AWS App Runner, Amazon Elastic Container Service (Amazon ECS) , and AWS Elastic Beanstalk.
- AWS Lambda Tools for .NET CLI - Supports deployments of AWS Lambda projects.

Deploy from the IDE toolkits

You can use AWS toolkits to deploy your applications directly from the IDE of your choice:

- **AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio**

  > **Note**
  >
  > The "Publish to AWS" feature in the toolkit exposes the same functionality as the AWS Deploy Tool for .NET CLI. To learn more, go to Publish to AWS in the *AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio User Guide*.

- **AWS Toolkit for JetBrains**

  See Work with AWS Serverless Applications and Work with AWS App Runner.

- **AWS Toolkit for VS Code**

  See Working with serverless applications and Using AWS App Runner.

- **AWS Toolkit for Azure DevOps**

Use cases

The following sections contain use case scenarios for certain types of applications, including information about how you would use the .NET CLI to deploy those applications.

- ASP.NET Core apps
- .NET Console apps
- Blazor WebAssembly apps
- AWS Lambda projects

ASP.NET Core apps

The AWS Deploy Tool for the .NET CLI helps you deploy your ASP.NET applications and guides you through a deployment process. It's an interactive tooling for the .NET CLI that helps deploy .NET applications with minimum AWS knowledge.

The Deploy Tool has the following capabilities:

- **Compute recommendations for your application** - Get the compute recommendations and learn which AWS compute is best suited for your application.
- **Dockerfile generation** - The tool generates a Dockerfile if needed, or uses an existing Dockerfile.
- **Auto packaging and deployment** – The tool builds the deployment artifacts, provisions the infrastructure by using a generated AWS CDK deployment project, and deploys your application to the chosen AWS compute.
- **Repeatable and shareable deployments** – You can generate and modify AWS CDK deployment projects to fit your specific use case. You can also version control your projects and share them with your team for repeatable deployments.
- **Help with learning AWS CDK for .NET** - The tool helps you gradually learn the underlying AWS tools that it is built on, such as the AWS CDK.

The AWS Deploy Tool supports deploying ASP.NET Core applications to the following AWS services:

- **Amazon ECS Service using AWS Fargate** - Supports deployments of web applications to Amazon Elastic Container Service (Amazon ECS) with compute power managed by an AWS Fargate serverless compute engine.

- **AWS App Runner** - Supports deployments to a fully managed service that makes it easy for developers to deploy containerized web applications and APIs at scale. No prior infrastructure experience is required.
- **AWS Elastic Beanstalk** - Supports deployments to a service that makes it easy for developers to deploy web applications and APIs to a fully managed environment at scale. No prior infrastructure experience is required.

To learn more, see the tool overview. To get started from there, navigate to **Documentation**, **Getting started**, and choose **How to install** for installation instructions.

.NET Console apps

The AWS Deploy Tool for the .NET CLI helps you deploy your .NET Console applications as a service or a scheduled task as a container image on Linux and guides you through a deployment process. If your application doesn't have a Dockerfile, the tool automatically generates it. Otherwise, an existing Dockerfile is used.

The Deploy Tool has the following capabilities:

- **Compute recommendations for your application** - Get the compute recommendations and learn which AWS compute is best suited for your application.
- **Dockerfile generation** - The tool generates a Dockerfile if needed, or uses an existing Dockerfile.
- **Auto packaging and deployment** – The tool builds the deployment artifacts, provisions the infrastructure by using a generated AWS CDK deployment project, and deploys your application to the chosen AWS compute.
- **Repeatable and shareable deployments** – You can generate and modify AWS CDK deployment projects to fit your specific use case. You can also version control your projects and share them with your team for repeatable deployments.
- **Help with learning AWS CDK for .NET** - The tool helps you gradually learn the underlying AWS tools that it is built on, such as the AWS CDK.

The AWS Deploy Tool supports deploying .NET Console applications to the following AWS services:

- **Amazon ECS Service using AWS Fargate** - Supports deployments of .NET applications as a service (for example, a background processor) to Amazon Elastic Container Service (Amazon ECS) with compute power managed by AWS Fargate serverless compute engine.

- **Amazon ECS Scheduled Task using AWS Fargate** - Supports deployments of .NET applications as a scheduled task (for example, end-of-day process) to Amazon ECS with compute power managed by AWS Fargate serverless compute engine.

To learn more, see the tool overview. To get started from there, navigate to **Documentation**, **Getting started**, and choose **How to install** for installation instructions.

Blazor WebAssembly apps

The AWS Deploy Tool for the .NET CLI helps you host your Blazor WebAssembly application in Amazon S3, using Amazon CloudFront for content network delivery. Your app is deployed to an S3 bucket for web hosting. The tool creates and configures an S3 bucket, and then uploads your Blazor application to the bucket.

The Deploy Tool has the following capabilities:

- **Auto packaging and deployment** – The tool builds the deployment artifacts, provisions the infrastructure by using a generated AWS CDK deployment project, and deploys your application to the chosen AWS compute.
- **Repeatable and shareable deployments** – You can generate and modify AWS CDK deployment projects to fit your specific use case. You can also version control your projects and share them with your team for repeatable deployments.
- **Help with learning AWS CDK for .NET** - The tool helps you gradually learn the underlying AWS tools that it is built on, such as the AWS CDK.

To learn more, see the tool overview. To get started from there, navigate to **Documentation**, **Getting started**, and choose **How to install** for installation instructions.

AWS Lambda projects

AWS Lambda is a compute service that lets you run code without provisioning or managing servers. It runs your code on a high availability compute infrastructure and performs all of the administration of the compute resources. For more information about Lambda, see What is AWS Lambda? in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

You can deploy Lambda functions by using the .NET command line interface (CLI).

Topics

- Prerequisites
- Available Lambda commands
- Steps to deploy

Prerequisites

Before you start using the .NET CLI to deploy Lambda functions, you must meet the following prerequisites:

- Confirm that you have the .NET CLI installed. For example: `dotnet --version`. If needed, go to https://dotnet.microsoft.com/download to install it.
- Set up the .NET CLI to work with Lambda. For a description of how to do so, see .NET Core CLI in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*. In that procedure, the following is the deployment command:

  ```
  dotnet lambda deploy-function MyFunction --function-role role
  ```

  If you're not sure how to create an IAM role for this exercise, don't include the `--function-role role` part. The tool will help you create a new role.

Available Lambda commands

To list the Lambda commands that are available through the .NET CLI, open a command prompt or terminal and enter `dotnet lambda --help`. The command output will be similar to the following:

```
Amazon Lambda Tools for .NET applications
Project Home: https://github.com/aws/aws-extensions-for-dotnet-cli, https://github.com/
aws/aws-lambda-dotnet

Commands to deploy and manage AWS Lambda functions:

        deploy-function         Command to deploy the project to AWS Lambda
        ...
        (etc.)

To get help on individual commands execute:
```

```
        dotnet lambda help <command>
```

The output lists all the commands that are currently available.

Steps to deploy

The following instructions assume that you've created an AWS Lambda .NET project. For the purposes of this procedure, the project is named `DotNetCoreLambdaTest`.

1. Open a command prompt or terminal, and navigate to the folder containing your .NET Lambda project file.
2. Enter `dotnet lambda deploy-function`.
3. If prompted, enter the AWS Region (the Region to which your Lambda function will be deployed).
4. When prompted, enter the name of the function to deploy, for example, `DotNetCoreLambdaTest`. It can be the name of a function that already exists in your AWS account or one that hasn't been deployed there yet.
5. When prompted, select or create the IAM role that Lambda will assume when executing the function.

After successful completion, the message **New Lambda function created** is displayed.

```
Executing publish command
...
(etc.)
New Lambda function created
```

If you deploy a function that already exists in your account, the deploy function asks only for the AWS Region (if necessary). In this case, the command output ends with `Updating code for existing function`.

After your Lambda function is deployed, it's ready to use. For more information, see Examples of How to Use AWS Lambda.

Lambda automatically monitors Lambda functions for you and reports metrics through Amazon CloudWatch. To monitor and troubleshoot your Lambda function, see Monitoring and troubleshooting Lambda applications.

Migrate your project for the AWS SDK for .NET

This section provides information about migration tasks that might apply to you, and instructions about how to perform those tasks.

Topics

- Migrating to Version 3 of the AWS SDK for .NET
- Migrating to version 3.5 of the AWS SDK for .NET
- Migrating to version 3.7 of the AWS SDK for .NET
- Migrating from .NET Standard 1.3

Migrating to Version 3 of the AWS SDK for .NET

This topic describes changes in version 3 of the AWS SDK for .NET and how to migrate your code to this version of the SDK.

About the AWS SDK for .NET Versions

The AWS SDK for .NET, originally released in November 2009, was designed for .NET Framework 2.0. Since that release, .NET has improved with .NET Framework 4.0 and .NET Framework 4.5, and added new target platforms: WinRT and Windows Phone.

AWS SDK for .NET version 2 was updated to take advantage of the new features of the .NET platform and to target WinRT and Windows Phone.

AWS SDK for .NET version 3 has been updated to make the assemblies modular.

Architecture Redesign for the SDK

The entire version 3 of the AWS SDK for .NET is redesigned to be modular. Each service is now implemented in its own assembly, instead of in one global assembly. You no longer have to add the entire AWS SDK for .NET to your application. You can now add assemblies only for the AWS services your application uses.

Breaking Changes

The following sections describe changes to version 3 of the AWS SDK for .NET.

AWSClientFactory Removed

The `Amazon.AWSClientFactory` class was removed. Now, to create a service client, use the constructor of the service client. For example, to create an `AmazonEC2Client`:

```
var ec2Client = new Amazon.EC2.AmazonEC2Client();
```

Amazon.Runtime.AssumeRoleAWSCredentials Removed

The `Amazon.Runtime.AssumeRoleAWSCredentials` class was removed because it was in a core namespace but had a dependency on the AWS Security Token Service, and because it has been obsolete in the SDK for some time. Use the `Amazon.SecurityToken.AssumeRoleAWSCredentials` class instead.

SetACL Method Removed from S3Link

The `S3Link` class is part of the `Amazon.DynamoDBv2` package and is used for storing objects in Amazon S3 that are references in a DynamoDB item. This is a useful feature, but we didn't want to create a compile dependency on the `Amazon.S3` package for DynamoDB. Consequently, we simplified the exposed `Amazon.S3` methods from the `S3Link` class, replacing the `SetACL` method with the `MakeS3ObjectPublic` method. For more control over the access control list (ACL) on the object, use the `Amazon.S3` package directly.

Removal of Obsolete Result Classes

For most services in the AWS SDK for .NET, operations return a response object that contains metadata for the operation, such as the request ID and a result object. Having a separate response and result class was redundant and created extra typing for developers. In version 2 of the AWS SDK for .NET, we put all the information in the result class into the response class. We also marked the result classes obsolete to discourage their use. In version 3 of the AWS SDK for .NET, we removed these obsolete result classes to help reduce the SDK's size.

AWS Config Section Changes

It is possible to do advanced configuration of the AWS SDK for .NET through the `App.config` or `Web.config` file. You do this through an `<aws>` config section like the following, which references the SDK assembly name.

```
<configuration>
```

```
  <configSections>
    <section name="aws" type="Amazon.AWSSection, AWSSDK"/>
  </configSections>
  <aws region="us-west-2">
    <logging logTo="Log4Net"/>
  </aws>
</configuration>
```

In version 3 of the AWS SDK for .NET, the `AWSSDK` assembly no longer exists. We put the common code into the `AWSSDK.Core` assembly. As a result, you will need to change the references to the `AWSSDK` assembly in your `App.config` or `Web.config` file to the `AWSSDK.Core` assembly, as follows.

```
<configuration>
  <configSections>
    <section name="aws" type="Amazon.AWSSection, AWSSDK.Core"/>
  </configSections>
  <aws region="us-west-2">
    <logging logTo="Log4Net"/>
  </aws>
</configuration>
```

You can also manipulate the config settings with the `Amazon.AWSConfigs` class. In version 3 of the AWS SDK for .NET, we moved the config settings for DynamoDB from the `Amazon.AWSConfigs` class to the `Amazon.AWSConfigsDynamoDB` class.

Migrating to version 3.5 of the AWS SDK for .NET

Version 3.5 of the AWS SDK for .NET further standardizes the .NET experience by transitioning support for all non-Framework variations of the SDK to .NET Standard 2.0. Depending on your environment and code base, to take advantage of version 3.5 features, you might need to perform certain migration work.

This topic describes the changes in version 3.5 and possible work that you might need to do to migrate your environment or code from version 3.

What's changed for version 3.5

The following describes what has or hasn't changed in the AWS SDK for .NET version 3.5.

.NET Framework and .NET Core

Support for .NET Framework and .NET Core has not changed.

Xamarin

Xamarin projects (new and existing) must target .NET Standard 2.0. See .NET Standard 2.0 Support in Xamarin.Forms and .NET implementation support.

Unity

Unity apps must target .NET Standard 2.0 or .NET 4.x profiles using Unity 2018.1 or later. For more information, see .NET profile support. In addition, if you're using **IL2CPP** to build, you must disable code stripping by adding a *link.xml* file, as described in Referencing the AWS SDK for .NET Standard 2.0 from Unity, Xamarin, or UWP. After you port your code to one of the recommended code bases, your Unity app can access all of the services offered by the SDK.

Because Unity supports .NET Standard 2.0, the **AWSSDK.Core** package of the SDK version 3.5 no longer has Unity-specific code, including some higher-level functionality. To provide a better transition, all of the ***legacy*** Unity code is available for reference in the aws/aws-sdk-unity-net GitHub repository. If you find missing functionality that impacts your use of AWS with Unity, you can file a feature request at https://github.com/aws/dotnet/issues.

Also see Special considerations for Unity support.

Universal Windows Platform (UWP)

Target your UWP application to version 16299 or later (Fall Creators update, version 1709, released October 2017).

Windows Phone and Silverlight

Version 3.5 of the AWS SDK for .NET does not support these platforms because Microsoft is no longer actively developing them. For more information, see the following:

- Windows 10 Mobile end of support
- Silverlight end of support

Legacy portable class libraries (profile-based PCLs)

Consider retargeting your library to .NET Standard. For more information, see Comparison to Portable Class Libraries from Microsoft.

Amazon Cognito Sync Manager and Amazon Mobile Analytics Manager

High-level abstractions that ease the use of Amazon Cognito Sync and Amazon Mobile Analytics are removed from version 3.5 of the AWS SDK for .NET. AWS AppSync is the preferred replacement for Amazon Cognito Sync. Amazon Pinpoint is the preferred replacement for Amazon Mobile Analytics.

If your code is affected by the lack of higher-level library code for AWS AppSync and Amazon Pinpoint, you can record your interest in one or both of the following GitHub issues: https://github.com/aws/dotnet/issues/20 and https://github.com/aws/dotnet/issues/19. You can also obtain the libraries for Amazon Cognito Sync Manager and Amazon Mobile Analytics Manager from the following GitHub repositories: aws/amazon-cognito-sync-manager-net and aws/aws-mobile-analytics-manager-net.

Migrating synchronous code

Version 3.5 of the AWS SDK for .NET supports both .NET Framework and .NET Standard (through .NET Core versions like .NET core 3.1, .NET 5, and so on). Variations of the SDK that comply with .NET Standard provide only asynchronous methods, so if you want to take advantage of .NET Standard, you must change synchronous code so that it runs asynchronously.

The following code snippets show how you might change synchronous code into asynchronous code. The code in these snippets is used to display the number of Amazon S3 buckets.

The original code calls ListBuckets.

```
private static ListBucketsResponse MyListBuckets()
{
  var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();
  var response = s3Client.ListBuckets();
  return response;
}

// From the calling function
ListBucketsResponse response = MyListBuckets();
```

```
Console.WriteLine($"Number of buckets: {response.Buckets.Count}");
```

To use version 3.5 of the SDK, call ListBucketsAsync instead.

```
private static async Task<ListBucketsResponse> MyListBuckets()
{
  var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();
  var response = await s3Client.ListBucketsAsync();
  return response;
}


// From an **asynchronous** calling function
ListBucketsResponse response = await MyListBuckets();
Console.WriteLine($"Number of buckets: {response.Buckets.Count}");

// OR From a **synchronous** calling function
Task<ListBucketsResponse> response = MyListBuckets();
Console.WriteLine($"Number of buckets: {response.Result.Buckets.Count}");
```

Migrating to version 3.7 of the AWS SDK for .NET

As of version 3.7, the AWS SDK for .NET no longer supports .NET Standard 1.3.

For information about migrating from .NET Standard 1.3, see Migrating from .NET Standard 1.3.

Migrating from .NET Standard 1.3

On June 27 2019 Microsoft ended support for .NET Core 1.0 and .NET Core 1.1 versions. Following this announcement, AWS ended support for .NET Standard 1.3 on the AWS SDK for .NET on December 31, 2020.

AWS continued to provide service updates and security fixes on the AWS SDK for .NET targeting .NET Standard 1.3 until October 1, 2020. After that date, the .NET Standard 1.3 target went into Maintenance mode, which meant that no new updates were released; AWS applied critical bug fixes and security patches only.

On December 31, 2020, support for .NET Standard 1.3 on the AWS SDK for .NET came to its end of life. After that date no bug fixes or security patches were applied. Artifacts built with that target remain available for download on NuGet.

What you need to do

- If you're running applications using .NET Framework, you're not affected.
- If you're running applications using .NET Core 2.0 or higher, you're not affected.
- If you're running applications using .NET Core 1.0 or .NET Core 1.1, migrate your applications to a newer version of .NET Core by following Microsoft migration instructions. We recommend a minimum of .NET Core 3.1.
- If you're running business critical applications that cannot be upgraded at this time, you can continue using your current version of AWS SDK for .NET.

If you have questions or concerns, contact AWS Support.

Work with AWS services in the AWS SDK for .NET

The following sections contain examples, tutorials, tasks, and guides that show you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to work with AWS services. These examples and tutorials rely on an API that the AWS SDK for .NET provides. To see what classes and methods are available in the API, see the AWS SDK for .NET API Reference.

If you're new to the AWS SDK for .NET, you might want to check out the Take a quick tour topic first. It gives you an introduction to the SDK.

You can find more code examples in the AWS Code Examples Repository and the awslabs repository on GitHub.

Before you begin, be sure you have set up your environment and project. Also review the information in SDK features.

Topics

- Code examples with guidance for the AWS SDK for .NET
- Using AWS Lambda for compute service
- High-level libraries and frameworks for the AWS SDK for .NET
- Support for other AWS services and configuration

Code examples with guidance for the AWS SDK for .NET

The following sections contain code examples and provide guidance for the examples. They can help you learn how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to work with AWS services.

If you're new to the AWS SDK for .NET, you might want to check out the Take a quick tour topic first. It gives you an introduction to the SDK.

Before you begin, be sure you have set up your environment and project. Also review the information in SDK features.

Topics

- Accessing CloudFormation with the AWS SDK for .NET
- Authenticating users with Amazon Cognito

- Using Amazon DynamoDB NoSQL databases
- Working with Amazon EC2
- Accessing AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) with the AWS SDK for .NET
- Using Amazon Simple Storage Service Internet storage
- Sending Notifications From the Cloud Using Amazon Simple Notification Service
- Messaging using Amazon SQS

Accessing CloudFormation with the AWS SDK for .NET

The AWS SDK for .NET supports AWS CloudFormation, which creates and provisions AWS infrastructure deployments predictably and repeatedly.

APIs

The AWS SDK for .NET provides APIs for CloudFormation clients. The APIs enable you to work with CloudFormation features such as templates and stacks. This section contains a small number of examples that show you the patterns you can follow when working with these APIs. To view the full set of APIs, see the AWS SDK for .NET API Reference (and scroll to "Amazon.CloudFormation").

The AWS CloudFormation APIs are provided by the AWSSDK.CloudFormation package.

Prerequisites

Before you begin, be sure you have set up your environment and project. Also review the information in SDK features.

Topics

Topics

- Listing AWS resources using AWS CloudFormation

Listing AWS resources using AWS CloudFormation

This example shows you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to list the resources in CloudFormation stacks. The example uses the low-level API. The application takes no arguments, but simply gathers information for all stacks that are accessible to the user's credentials and then displays information about those stacks.

SDK references

NuGet packages:

- AWSSDK.CloudFormation

Programming elements:

- Namespace Amazon.CloudFormation

  Class AmazonCloudFormationClient
- Namespace Amazon.CloudFormation.Model

  Class ICloudFormationPaginatorFactory.DescribeStacks

  Class DescribeStackResourcesRequest

  Class DescribeStackResourcesResponse

  Class Stack

  Class StackResource

  Class Tag

```
using Amazon.CloudFormation;
using Amazon.CloudFormation.Model;
using Amazon.Runtime;

namespace CloudFormationActions;

public static class HelloCloudFormation
{
    public static IAmazonCloudFormation _amazonCloudFormation;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Create the CloudFormation client
        _amazonCloudFormation = new AmazonCloudFormationClient();
        Console.WriteLine($"\nIn Region:
 {_amazonCloudFormation.Config.RegionEndpoint}");
```

```
        // List the resources for each stack
        await ListResources();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Method to list stack resources and other information.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> ListResources()
    {
        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Getting CloudFormation stack information...");

            // Get all stacks using the stack paginator.
            var paginatorForDescribeStacks =
                _amazonCloudFormation.Paginators.DescribeStacks(
                    new DescribeStacksRequest());
            await foreach (Stack stack in paginatorForDescribeStacks.Stacks)
            {
                // Basic information for each stack

Console.WriteLine("\n-----------------------------------------------");
                Console.WriteLine($"\nStack: {stack.StackName}");
                Console.WriteLine($"  Status: {stack.StackStatus.Value}");
                Console.WriteLine($"  Created: {stack.CreationTime}");

                // The tags of each stack (etc.)
                if (stack.Tags.Count > 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("  Tags:");
                    foreach (Tag tag in stack.Tags)
                        Console.WriteLine($"    {tag.Key}, {tag.Value}");
                }

                // The resources of each stack
                DescribeStackResourcesResponse responseDescribeResources =
                    await _amazonCloudFormation.DescribeStackResourcesAsync(
                        new DescribeStackResourcesRequest
                        {
                            StackName = stack.StackName
                        });
                if (responseDescribeResources.StackResources.Count > 0)
```

```
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("  Resources:");
                    foreach (StackResource resource in responseDescribeResources
                                 .StackResources)
                        Console.WriteLine(
                            $"    {resource.LogicalResourceId}:
{resource.ResourceStatus}");
                }
            }

            Console.WriteLine("\n-----------------------------------------------");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonCloudFormationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Unable to get stack information:\n" + ex.Message);
            return false;
        }
        catch (AmazonServiceException ex)
        {
            if (ex.Message.Contains("Unable to get IAM security credentials"))
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                Console.WriteLine("If you are usnig SSO, be sure to install" +
                                  " the AWSSDK.SSO and AWSSDK.SSOOIDC packages.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                Console.WriteLine(ex.StackTrace);
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (ArgumentNullException ex)
        {
            if (ex.Message.Contains("Options property cannot be empty: ClientName"))
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                Console.WriteLine("If you are using SSO, have you logged in?");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
```

```
                Console.WriteLine(ex.StackTrace);
            }

            return false;
        }
    }
```

Authenticating users with Amazon Cognito

> **Note**
>
> The information in this topic is specific to projects based on .NET Framework and the AWS SDK for .NET version 3.3 and earlier.

Using Amazon Cognito Identity, you can create unique identities for your users and authenticate them for secure access to your AWS resources such as Amazon S3 or Amazon DynamoDB. Amazon Cognito Identity supports public identity providers such as Amazon, Facebook, Twitter/Digits, Google, or any OpenID Connect-compatible provider as well as unauthenticated identities. Amazon Cognito also supports developer authenticated identities, which let you register and authenticate users using your own backend authentication process, while still using Amazon Cognito Sync to synchronize user data and access AWS resources.

For more information on Amazon Cognito, see the Amazon Cognito Developer Guide.

The following code examples show how to easily use Amazon Cognito Identity. The Credentials provider example shows how to create and authenticate user identities. The CognitoAuthentication extension library example shows how to use the CognitoAuthentication extension library to authenticate Amazon Cognito user pools.

Topics

- Amazon Cognito credentials provider
- Amazon CognitoAuthentication extension library examples

Amazon Cognito credentials provider

> **Note**
>
> The information in this topic is specific to projects based on .NET Framework and the AWS SDK for .NET version 3.3 and earlier.

`Amazon.CognitoIdentity.CognitoAWSCredentials`, found in the AWSSDK.CognitoIdentity NuGet package, is a credentials object that uses Amazon Cognito and the AWS Security Token Service (AWS STS) to retrieve credentials to make AWS calls.

The first step in setting up `CognitoAWSCredentials` is to create an "identity pool". (An identity pool is a store of user identity information that is specific to your account. The information is retrievable across client platforms, devices, and operating systems, so that if a user starts using the app on a phone and later switches to a tablet, the persisted app information is still available for that user. You can create a new identity pool from the Amazon Cognito console. If you are using the console, it will also provide you the other pieces of information you need:

- Your account number- A 12-digit number, such as 123456789012, that is unique to your account.
- The unauthenticated role ARN- A role that unauthenticated users will assume. For example, this role can provide read-only permissions to your data.
- The authenticated role ARN- A role that authenticated users will assume. This role can provide more extensive permissions to your data.

Set up CognitoAWSCredentials

The following code example shows how to set up `CognitoAWSCredentials`, which you can then use to make a call to Amazon S3 as an unauthenticated user. This enables you to make calls with just a minimum amount of data required to authenticate the user. User permissions are controlled by the role, so you can configure access as you need.

```
CognitoAWSCredentials credentials = new CognitoAWSCredentials(
    accountId,        // Account number
    identityPoolId,   // Identity pool ID
    unAuthRoleArn,    // Role for unauthenticated users
    null,             // Role for authenticated users, not set
    region);
```

```
using (var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client(credentials))
{
    s3Client.ListBuckets();
}
```

Use AWS as an unauthenticated user

The following code example shows how you can start using AWS as an unauthenticated user, then authenticate through Facebook and update the credentials to use Facebook credentials. Using this approach, you can grant different capabilities to authenticated users via the authenticated role. For instance, you might have a phone application that permits users to view content anonymously, but allows them to post if they are logged on with one or more of the configured providers.

```
CognitoAWSCredentials credentials = new CognitoAWSCredentials(
    accountId, identityPoolId,
    unAuthRoleArn,    // Role for unauthenticated users
    authRoleArn,      // Role for authenticated users
    region);
using (var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client(credentials))
{
    // Initial use will be unauthenticated
    s3Client.ListBuckets();

    // Authenticate user through Facebook
    string facebookToken = GetFacebookAuthToken();

    // Add Facebook login to credentials. This clears the current AWS credentials
    // and retrieves new AWS credentials using the authenticated role.
    credentials.AddLogin("graph.facebook.com", facebookAccessToken);

    // This call is performed with the authenticated role and credentials
    s3Client.ListBuckets();
}
```

The `CognitoAWSCredentials` object provides even more functionality if you use it with the `AmazonCognitoSyncClient` that is part of the AWS SDK for .NET. If you're using both `AmazonCognitoSyncClient` and `CognitoAWSCredentials`, you don't have to specify the `IdentityPoolId` and `IdentityId` properties when making calls with the `AmazonCognitoSyncClient`. These properties are automatically filled in from `CognitoAWSCredentials`. The next code example illustrates this, as well as an event that notifies you whenever the `IdentityId` for `CognitoAWSCredentials` changes. The `IdentityId` can

change in some cases, such as when changing from an unauthenticated user to an authenticated one.

```
CognitoAWSCredentials credentials = GetCognitoAWSCredentials();

// Log identity changes
credentials.IdentityChangedEvent += (sender, args) =>
{
    Console.WriteLine("Identity changed: [{0}] => [{1}]", args.OldIdentityId,
 args.NewIdentityId);
};

using (var syncClient = new AmazonCognitoSyncClient(credentials))
{
    var result = syncClient.ListRecords(new ListRecordsRequest
    {
        DatasetName = datasetName
        // No need to specify these properties
        //IdentityId = "...",
        //IdentityPoolId = "..."
    });
}
```

Amazon CognitoAuthentication extension library examples

> **Note**
>
> The information in this topic is specific to projects based on .NET Framework and the AWS SDK for .NET version 3.3 and earlier.

The CognitoAuthentication extension library, found in the Amazon.Extensions.CognitoAuthentication NuGet package, simplifies the authentication process of Amazon Cognito user pools for .NET Core and Xamarin developers. The library is built on top of the Amazon Cognito Identity provider API to create and send user authentication API calls.

Using the CognitoAuthentication extension library

Amazon Cognito has some built-in `AuthFlow` and `ChallengeName` values for a standard authentication flow to validate username and password through the Secure Remote Password

(SRP). For more information about authentication flow, see Amazon Cognito User Pool Authentication Flow.

The following examples require these `using` statements:

```
// Required for all examples
using System;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.CognitoIdentity;
using Amazon.CognitoIdentityProvider;
using Amazon.Extensions.CognitoAuthentication;
using Amazon.Runtime;
// Required for the GetS3BucketsAsync example
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;
```

Use basic authentication

Create an AmazonCognitoIdentityProviderClient using AnonymousAWSCredentials, which do not require signed requests. You do not need to supply a region, the underlying code calls `FallbackRegionFactory.GetRegionEndpoint()` if a region is not provided. Create `CognitoUserPool` and `CognitoUser` objects. Call the `StartWithSrpAuthAsync` method with an `InitiateSrpAuthRequest` that contains the user password.

```
public static async void GetCredsAsync()
{
    AmazonCognitoIdentityProviderClient provider =
        new AmazonCognitoIdentityProviderClient(new
 Amazon.Runtime.AnonymousAWSCredentials());
    CognitoUserPool userPool = new CognitoUserPool("poolID", "clientID", provider);
    CognitoUser user = new CognitoUser("username", "clientID", userPool, provider);
    InitiateSrpAuthRequest authRequest = new InitiateSrpAuthRequest()
    {
        Password = "userPassword"
    };

    AuthFlowResponse authResponse = await
 user.StartWithSrpAuthAsync(authRequest).ConfigureAwait(false);
    accessToken = authResponse.AuthenticationResult.AccessToken;

}
```

Authenticate with challenges

Continuing the authentication flow with challenges, such as with NewPasswordRequired and Multi-Factor Authentication (MFA), is also simpler. The only requirements are the CognitoAuthentication objects, user's password for SRP, and the necessary information for the next challenge, which is acquired after prompting the user to enter it. The following code shows one way to check the challenge type and get the appropriate responses for MFA and NewPasswordRequired challenges during the authentication flow.

Do a basic authentication request as before, and `await` an `AuthFlowResponse`. When the response is received loop through the returned `AuthenticationResult` object. If the `ChallengeName` type is `NEW_PASSWORD_REQUIRED`, call the `RespondToNewPasswordRequiredAsync` method.

```
public static async void GetCredsChallengesAsync()
{
    AmazonCognitoIdentityProviderClient provider =
        new AmazonCognitoIdentityProviderClient(new
 Amazon.Runtime.AnonymousAWSCredentials());
    CognitoUserPool userPool = new CognitoUserPool("poolID", "clientID", provider);
    CognitoUser user = new CognitoUser("username", "clientID", userPool, provider);
    InitiateSrpAuthRequest authRequest = new InitiateSrpAuthRequest(){
        Password = "userPassword"
    };

    AuthFlowResponse authResponse = await
 user.StartWithSrpAuthAsync(authRequest).ConfigureAwait(false);

    while (authResponse.AuthenticationResult == null)
    {
        if (authResponse.ChallengeName == ChallengeNameType.NEW_PASSWORD_REQUIRED)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Enter your desired new password:");
            string newPassword = Console.ReadLine();

            authResponse = await user.RespondToNewPasswordRequiredAsync(new
 RespondToNewPasswordRequiredRequest()
            {
                SessionID = authResponse.SessionID,
                NewPassword = newPassword
            });
            accessToken = authResponse.AuthenticationResult.AccessToken;
```

```
        }
        else if (authResponse.ChallengeName == ChallengeNameType.SMS_MFA)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Enter the MFA Code sent to your device:");
            string mfaCode = Console.ReadLine();

            AuthFlowResponse mfaResponse = await user.RespondToSmsMfaAuthAsync(new
 RespondToSmsMfaRequest()
            {
                SessionID = authResponse.SessionID,
                MfaCode = mfaCode

            }).ConfigureAwait(false);
            accessToken = authResponse.AuthenticationResult.AccessToken;
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Unrecognized authentication challenge.");
            accessToken = "";
            break;
        }
    }

    if (authResponse.AuthenticationResult != null)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("User successfully authenticated.");
    }
    else
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Error in authentication process.");
    }

}
```

Use AWS resources after authentication

Once a user is authenticated using the CognitoAuthentication library, the next step is to allow the user to access the appropriate AWS resources. To do this you must create an identity pool through the Amazon Cognito Federated Identities console. By specifying the Amazon Cognito user pool you created as a provider, using its poolID and clientID, you can allow your Amazon Cognito user pool users to access AWS resources connected to your account. You can also specify different roles to enable both unauthenticated and authenticated users to access different resources. You can

change these rules in the IAM console, where you can add or remove permissions in the **Action** field of the role's attached policy. Then, using the appropriate identity pool, user pool, and Amazon Cognito user information, you can make calls to different AWS resources. The following example shows a user authenticated with SRP accessing the different Amazon S3 buckets permitted by the associated identity pool's role

```
public async void GetS3BucketsAsync()
{
    var provider = new AmazonCognitoIdentityProviderClient(new
 AnonymousAWSCredentials());
    CognitoUserPool userPool = new CognitoUserPool("poolID", "clientID", provider);
    CognitoUser user = new CognitoUser("username", "clientID", userPool, provider);

    string password = "userPassword";

    AuthFlowResponse context = await user.StartWithSrpAuthAsync(new
 InitiateSrpAuthRequest()
    {
        Password = password
    }).ConfigureAwait(false);

    CognitoAWSCredentials credentials =
        user.GetCognitoAWSCredentials("identityPoolID", RegionEndpoint.<
 YourIdentityPoolRegion >);

    using (var client = new AmazonS3Client(credentials))
    {
        ListBucketsResponse response =
            await client.ListBucketsAsync(new
 ListBucketsRequest()).ConfigureAwait(false);

        foreach (S3Bucket bucket in response.Buckets)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(bucket.BucketName);
        }
    }
}
```

More authentication options

In addition to SRP, NewPasswordRequired, and MFA, the CognitoAuthentication extension library offers an easier authentication flow for:

- Custom - Initiate with a call to `StartWithCustomAuthAsync(InitiateCustomAuthRequest customRequest)`
- RefreshToken - Initiate with a call to `StartWithRefreshTokenAuthAsync(InitiateRefreshTokenAuthRequest refreshTokenRequest)`
- RefreshTokenSRP - Initiate with a call to `StartWithRefreshTokenAuthAsync(InitiateRefreshTokenAuthRequest refreshTokenRequest)`
- AdminNoSRP - Initiate with a call to `StartWithAdminNoSrpAuthAsync(InitiateAdminNoSrpAuthRequest adminAuthRequest)`

Call the appropriate method depending on the flow you want. Then continue prompting the user with challenges as they are presented in the `AuthFlowResponse` objects of each method call. Also call the appropriate response method, such as `RespondToSmsMfaAuthAsync` for MFA challenges and `RespondToCustomAuthAsync` for custom challenges.

Using Amazon DynamoDB NoSQL databases

> **Note**
>
> The programming models in these topics are present in both .NET Framework and .NET (Core), but the calling conventions differ, whether synchronous or asynchronous.

The AWS SDK for .NET supports Amazon DynamoDB, which is a fast NoSQL database service offered by AWS. The SDK provides three programming models for communicating with DynamoDB: the *low-level* model, the *document* model, and the *object persistence* model.

The following information introduces these models and their APIs, provides examples for how and when to use them, and gives you links to additional DynamoDB programming resources in the AWS SDK for .NET.

Low-Level Model

The low-level programming model wraps direct calls to the DynamoDB service. You access this model through the Amazon.DynamoDBv2 namespace.

Of the three models, the low-level model requires you to write the most code. For example, you must convert .NET data types to their equivalents in DynamoDB. However, this model gives you access to the most features.

The following examples show you how to use the low-level model to create a table, modify a table, and insert items into a table in DynamoDB.

Creating a Table

In the following example, you create a table by using the `CreateTable` method of the `AmazonDynamoDBClient` class. The `CreateTable` method uses an instance of the `CreateTableRequest` class that contains characteristics such as required item attribute names, primary key definition, and throughput capacity. The `CreateTable` method returns an instance of the `CreateTableResponse` class.

```
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model;

var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();

Console.WriteLine("Getting list of tables");
List<string> currentTables = client.ListTables().TableNames;
Console.WriteLine("Number of tables: " + currentTables.Count);
if (!currentTables.Contains("AnimalsInventory"))
{
    var request = new CreateTableRequest
    {
        TableName = "AnimalsInventory",
        AttributeDefinitions = new List<AttributeDefinition>
      {
        new AttributeDefinition
        {
          AttributeName = "Id",
          // "S" = string, "N" = number, and so on.
          AttributeType = "N"
        },
        new AttributeDefinition
        {
          AttributeName = "Type",
          AttributeType = "S"
        }
      },
```

```
        KeySchema = new List<KeySchemaElement>
      {
        new KeySchemaElement
        {
          AttributeName = "Id",
          // "HASH" = hash key, "RANGE" = range key.
          KeyType = "HASH"
        },
        new KeySchemaElement
        {
          AttributeName = "Type",
          KeyType = "RANGE"
        },
      },
        ProvisionedThroughput = new ProvisionedThroughput
        {
            ReadCapacityUnits = 10,
            WriteCapacityUnits = 5
        },
    };

    var response = client.CreateTable(request);

    Console.WriteLine("Table created with request ID: " +
      response.ResponseMetadata.RequestId);
}
```

Verifying That a Table is Ready to Modify

Before you can change or modify a table, the table has to be ready for modification. The following example shows how to use the low-level model to verify that a table in DynamoDB is ready. In this example, the target table to check is referenced through the `DescribeTable` method of the `AmazonDynamoDBClient` class. Every five seconds, the code checks the value of the table's `TableStatus` property. When the status is set to `ACTIVE`, the table is ready to be modified.

```
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model;

var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
var status = "";

do
{
```

```
  // Wait 5 seconds before checking (again).
  System.Threading.Thread.Sleep(TimeSpan.FromSeconds(5));

  try
  {
    var response = client.DescribeTable(new DescribeTableRequest
    {
      TableName = "AnimalsInventory"
    });

    Console.WriteLine("Table = {0}, Status = {1}",
      response.Table.TableName,
      response.Table.TableStatus);

    status = response.Table.TableStatus;
  }
  catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
  {
    // DescribeTable is eventually consistent. So you might
    //   get resource not found.
  }

} while (status != TableStatus.ACTIVE);
```

Inserting an Item into a Table

In the following example, you use the low-level model to insert two items into a table in DynamoDB. Each item is inserted through the `PutItem` method of the `AmazonDynamoDBClient` class, using an instance of the `PutItemRequest` class. Each of the two instances of the `PutItemRequest` class takes the name of the table that the items will be inserted in, with a series of item attribute values.

```
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model;

var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();

var request1 = new PutItemRequest
{
  TableName = "AnimalsInventory",
  Item = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
  {
    { "Id", new AttributeValue { N = "1" }},
```

```
    { "Type", new AttributeValue { S = "Dog" }},
    { "Name", new AttributeValue { S = "Fido" }}
  }
};

var request2 = new PutItemRequest
{
  TableName = "AnimalsInventory",
  Item = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
  {
    { "Id", new AttributeValue { N = "2" }},
    { "Type", new AttributeValue { S = "Cat" }},
    { "Name", new AttributeValue { S = "Patches" }}
  }
};

client.PutItem(request1);
client.PutItem(request2);
```

Document Model

The document programming model provides an easier way to work with data in DynamoDB. This model is specifically intended for accessing tables and items in tables. You access this model through the Amazon.DynamoDBv2.DocumentModel namespace.

Compared to the low-level programming model, the document model is easier to code against DynamoDB data. For example, you don't have to convert as many .NET data types to their equivalents in DynamoDB. However, this model doesn't provide access to as many features as the low-level programming model. For example, you can use this model to create, retrieve, update, and delete items in tables. However, to create the tables, you must use the low-level model. Compared to the object persistence model, this model requires you to write more code to store, load, and query .NET objects.

For more information about the DynamoDB document programming model, see .NET: Document model in the Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide.

The following sections provide information about how to create a representation of the desired DynamoDB table, and examples about how to use the document model to insert items into tables and get items from tables.

Create a representation of the table

To perform data operations using the document model, you must first create an instance of the `Table` class that represents a specific table. There are two primary ways to do this.

LoadTable method

The first mechanism is to use one of the static `LoadTable` methods of the `Table` class, similar to the following example:

```
var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
Table table = Table.LoadTable(client, "Reply");
```

> **Note**
>
> While this mechanism works, under certain conditions, it can sometimes lead to additional latency or deadlocks due to cold-start and thread-pool behaviors. For more information about these behaviors, see the blog post Improved DynamoDB Initialization Patterns for the AWS SDK for .NET.

TableBuilder

An alternative mechanism, the `TableBuilder` class, was introduced in version 3.7.203 of the AWSSDK.DynamoDBv2 NuGet package. This mechanism can address the behaviors mentioned above by removing certain implicit method calls; specifically, the `DescribeTable` method. This mechanism is used in a manner similar to the following example:

```
var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
var table = new TableBuilder(client, "Reply")
    .AddHashKey("Id", DynamoDBEntryType.String)
    .AddRangeKey("ReplyDateTime", DynamoDBEntryType.String)
    .AddGlobalSecondaryIndex("PostedBy-Message-index", "Author",
 DynamoDBEntryType.String, "Message", DynamoDBEntryType.String)
    .Build();
```

For more information about this alternative mechanism, see again the blog post Improved DynamoDB Initialization Patterns for the AWS SDK for .NET.

Inserting an item into a table

In the following example, a reply is inserted into the Reply table through the `PutItemAsync` method of the `Table` class. The `PutItemAsync` method takes an instance of the `Document` class; the `Document` class is simply a collection of initialized attributes.

```
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.DocumentModel;

// Create a representation of the "Reply" table
//  by using one of the mechanisms described previously.

// Then, add a reply to the table.
var newReply = new Document();
newReply["Id"] = Guid.NewGuid().ToString();
newReply["ReplyDateTime"] = DateTime.UtcNow;
newReply["PostedBy"] = "Author1";
newReply["Message"] = "Thank you!";

await table.PutItemAsync(newReply);
```

Getting an item from a table

In the following example, a reply is retrieved through the `GetItemAsync` method of the `Table` class. To determine the reply to get, the `GetItemAsync` method uses the hash-and-range primary key of the target reply.

```
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.DocumentModel;

// Create a representation of the "Reply" table
//  by using one of the mechanisms described previously.

// Then, get a reply from the table
//  where "guid" is the hash key and "datetime" is the range key.
var reply = await table.GetItemAsync(guid, datetime);
Console.WriteLine("Id = " + reply["Id"]);
Console.WriteLine("ReplyDateTime = " + reply["ReplyDateTime"]);
Console.WriteLine("PostedBy = " + reply["PostedBy"]);
Console.WriteLine("Message = " + reply["Message"]);
```

The preceding example implicitly converts the table values to strings for the `WriteLine` method. You can do explicit conversions by using the various "As[type]" methods of the `DynamoDBEntry` class. For example, you can explicitly convert the value for `Id` from a `Primitive` data type to a GUID through the `AsGuid()` method:

```
var guid = reply["Id"].AsGuid();
```

Object Persistence Model

The object persistence programming model is specifically designed for storing, loading, and querying .NET objects in DynamoDB. You access this model through the Amazon.DynamoDBv2.DataModel namespace.

Of the three models, the object persistence model is the easiest to code against whenever you are storing, loading, or querying DynamoDB data. For example, you work with DynamoDB data types directly. However, this model provides access only to operations that store, load, and query .NET objects in DynamoDB. For example, you can use this model to create, retrieve, update, and delete items in tables. However, you must first create your tables using the low-level model, and then use this model to map your .NET classes to the tables.

For more information about the DynamoDB object persistence programming model, see .NET: Object persistence model in the Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide.

The following examples show you how to define a .NET class that represents a DynamoDB item, use an instance of the .NET class to insert an item into a DynamoDB table, and use an instance of the .NET class to get an item from the table.

Defining a .NET class that represents an item in a table

In the following example of a class definition, the `DynamoDBTable` attribute specifies the table name, while the `DynamoDBHashKey` and `DynamoDBRangeKey` attributes model the table's hash-and-range primary key. The `DynamoDBGlobalSecondaryIndexHashKey` attribute is defined so that a query for replies by a specific author can be constructed.

```
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.DataModel;

[DynamoDBTable("Reply")]
public class Reply
{
```

```
    [DynamoDBHashKey]
    public string Id { get; set; }

    [DynamoDBRangeKey(StoreAsEpoch = false)]
    public DateTime ReplyDateTime { get; set; }

    [DynamoDBGlobalSecondaryIndexHashKey("PostedBy-Message-Index",
        AttributeName ="PostedBy")]
    public string Author { get; set; }

    [DynamoDBGlobalSecondaryIndexRangeKey("PostedBy-Message-Index")]
    public string Message { get; set; }
}
```

Creating a context for the object persistence model

To use the object persistence programming model for DynamoDB, you must create a context, which provides a connection to DynamoDB and enables you to access tables, perform various operations, and run queries.

Basic context

The following example shows how to create the most basic context.

```
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.DataModel;

var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
var context = new DynamoDBContext(client);
```

Context with DisableFetchingTableMetadata property

The following example shows how you might additionally set the `DisableFetchingTableMetadata` property of the `DynamoDBContextConfig` class to prevent implicit calls to the `DescribeTable` method.

```
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.DataModel;

var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
var context = new DynamoDBContext(client, new DynamoDBContextConfig
{
```

```
    DisableFetchingTableMetadata = true
});
```

If the `DisableFetchingTableMetadata` property is set to `false` (the default), as shown in the first example, you can omit attributes that describe the key and index structure of table items from the `Reply` class. These attributes will instead be inferred through an implicit call to the `DescribeTable` method. If `DisableFetchingTableMetadata` is set to `true`, as shown in the second example, methods of the object persistence model such as `SaveAsync` and `QueryAsync` rely entirely on the attributes defined in the `Reply` class. In this case, a call to the `DescribeTable` method doesn't occur.

> **Note**
>
> Under certain conditions, calls to the `DescribeTable` method can sometimes lead to additional latency or deadlocks due to cold-start and thread-pool behaviors. For this reason, it is sometimes advantageous to avoid calls to that method.
> For more information about these behaviors, see the blog post Improved DynamoDB Initialization Patterns for the AWS SDK for .NET.

Using an instance of the .NET class to insert an item into a table

In this example, an item is inserted through the `SaveAsync` method of the `DynamoDBContext` class, which takes an initialized instance of the .NET class that represents the item.

```
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.DataModel;

// Create an appropriate context for the object persistence programming model,
//  examples of which have been described earlier.

// Create an object that represents the new item.
var reply = new Reply()
{
    Id = Guid.NewGuid().ToString(),
    ReplyDateTime = DateTime.UtcNow,
    Author = "Author1",
    Message = "Thank you!"
};
```

```
// Insert the item into the table.
await context.SaveAsync<Reply>(reply, new DynamoDBOperationConfig
{
    IndexName = "PostedBy-Message-index"
});
```

Using an instance of a .NET class to get items from a table

In this example, a query is created to find all the records of "Author1" by using the `QueryAsync` method of the `DynamoDBContext` class. Then, items are retrieved through the query's `GetNextSetAsync` method.

```
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.DataModel;

// Create an appropriate context for the object persistence programming model,
//  examples of which have been described earlier.

// Construct a query that finds all replies by a specific author.
var query = context.QueryAsync<Reply>("Author1", new DynamoDBOperationConfig
{
    IndexName = "PostedBy-Message-index"
});

// Display the result.
var set = await query.GetNextSetAsync();
foreach (var item in set)
{
    Console.WriteLine("Id = " + item.Id);
    Console.WriteLine("ReplyDateTime = " + item.ReplyDateTime);
    Console.WriteLine("PostedBy = " + item.Author);
    Console.WriteLine("Message = " + item.Message);
}
```

Additional information about the object persistence model

The examples and explanations shown above sometimes include a property of the `DynamoDBContext` class called `DisableFetchingTableMetadata`. This property, which was introduced in version 3.7.203 of the AWSSDK.DynamoDBv2 NuGet package, allows you to avoid certain conditions that might cause additional latency or deadlocks due to cold-start and thread-pool behaviors. For more information, see the blog post Improved DynamoDB Initialization Patterns for the AWS SDK for .NET.

The following is some additional information about this property.

- This property can be set globally in your `app.config` or `web.config` file if you're using .NET Framework.
- This property can be set globally by using the `AWSConfigsDynamoDB` class, as shown in the following example.

```
// Set the DisableFetchingTableMetadata property globally
// before constructing any context objects.
AWSConfigsDynamoDB.Context.DisableFetchingTableMetadata = true;

var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
var context = new DynamoDBContext(client);
```

- In some cases, you can't add DynamoDB attributes to a .NET class; for example, if the class is defined in a dependency. In such cases, it's possible to still take advantage of the `DisableFetchingTableMetadata` property. To do so, use the `TableBuilder` class in addition to the `DisableFetchingTableMetadata` property. The `TableBuilder` class was also introduced in version 3.7.203 of the AWSSDK.DynamoDBv2 NuGet package.

```
// Set the DisableFetchingTableMetadata property globally
// before constructing any context objects.
AWSConfigsDynamoDB.Context.DisableFetchingTableMetadata = true;

var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
var context = new DynamoDBContext(client);

var table = new TableBuilder(client, "Reply")
    .AddHashKey("Id", DynamoDBEntryType.String)
    .AddRangeKey("ReplyDateTime", DynamoDBEntryType.String)
    .AddGlobalSecondaryIndex("PostedBy-Message-index", "Author",
 DynamoDBEntryType.String,
        "Message", DynamoDBEntryType.String)
    .Build();

// This registers the "Reply" table we constructed via the builder.
context.RegisterTableDefinition(table);

// Now operations like this will work,
// even if the Reply class was not annotated with this index.
var query = context.QueryAsync<Reply>("Author1", new DynamoDBOperationConfig()
{
```

```
    IndexName = "PostedBy-Message-index"
});
```

More information

Using the AWS SDK for .NET to program DynamoDB, information and examples

- DynamoDB APIs
- DynamoDB Series Kickoff
- DynamoDB Series - Document Model
- DynamoDB Series - Conversion Schemas
- DynamoDB Series - Object Persistence Model
- DynamoDB Series - Expressions
- Using Expressions with Amazon DynamoDB and the AWS SDK for .NET
- JSON support in Amazon DynamoDB

Low-Level model, information and examples

- Working with Tables Using the AWS SDK for .NET Low-Level API
- Working with Items Using the AWS SDK for .NET Low-Level API
- Querying Tables Using the AWS SDK for .NET Low-Level API
- Scanning Tables Using the AWS SDK for .NET Low-Level API
- Working with Local Secondary Indexes Using the AWS SDK for .NET Low-Level API
- Working with Global Secondary Indexes Using the AWS SDK for .NET Low-Level API

Document model, information and examples

- DynamoDB Data Types
- DynamoDBEntry
- .NET: Document Model

Object persistence model, information and examples

- .NET: Object Persistence Model

Other useful information

- See Integrating AWS with .NET Aspire for information about developing with Amazon DynamoDB local through .NET Aspire.

Topics

- Using Expressions with Amazon DynamoDB and the AWS SDK for .NET
- JSON support in Amazon DynamoDB

Using Expressions with Amazon DynamoDB and the AWS SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> The information in this topic is specific to projects based on .NET Framework and the AWS SDK for .NET version 3.3 and earlier.

The following code examples demonstrate how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to program DynamoDB with expressions. *Expressions* denote the attributes you want to read from an item in a DynamoDB table. You also use expressions when writing an item, to indicate any conditions that must be met (also known as a *conditional update*) and how the attributes are to be updated. Some update examples are replacing the attribute with a new value, or adding new data to a list or a map. For more information, see Reading and Writing Items Using Expressions.

Topics

- Sample Data
- Get a Single Item by Using Expressions and the Item's Primary Key
- Get Multiple Items by Using Expressions and the Table's Primary Key
- Get Multiple Items by Using Expressions and Other Item Attributes
- Print an Item
- Create or Replace an Item by Using Expressions
- Update an Item by Using Expressions
- Delete an Item by Using Expressions
- More Info

Sample Data

The code examples in this topic rely on the following two example items in a DynamoDB table named `ProductCatalog`. These items describe information about product entries in a fictitious bicycle store catalog. These items are based on the example provided in Case Study: A ProductCatalog Item. The data type descriptors such as `BOOL`, `L`, `M`, `N`, `NS`, `S`, and `SS` correspond to those in the JSON Data Format.

```
{
  "Id": {
    "N": "205"
  },
  "Title": {
    "S": "20-Bicycle 205"
  },
  "Description": {
    "S": "205 description"
  },
  "BicycleType": {
    "S": "Hybrid"
  },
  "Brand": {
    "S": "Brand-Company C"
  },
  "Price": {
    "N": "500"
  },
  "Gender": {
    "S": "B"
  },
  "Color": {
    "SS": [
      "Red",
      "Black"
    ]
  },
  "ProductCategory": {
    "S": "Bike"
  },
  "InStock": {
    "BOOL": true
  },
  "QuantityOnHand": {
```

```
    "N": "1"
  },
  "RelatedItems": {
    "NS": [
      "341",
      "472",
      "649"
    ]
  },
  "Pictures": {
    "L": [
      {
        "M": {
          "FrontView": {
            "S": "http://example/products/205_front.jpg"
          }
        }
      },
      {
        "M": {
          "RearView": {
            "S": "http://example/products/205_rear.jpg"
          }
        }
      },
      {
        "M": {
          "SideView": {
            "S": "http://example/products/205_left_side.jpg"
          }
        }
      }
    ]
  },
  "ProductReviews": {
    "M": {
      "FiveStar": {
        "SS": [
          "Excellent! Can't recommend it highly enough! Buy it!",
          "Do yourself a favor and buy this."
        ]
      },
      "OneStar": {
        "SS": [
```

```
          "Terrible product! Do not buy this."
        ]
      }
    }
  }
},
{
  "Id": {
    "N": "301"
  },
  "Title": {
    "S": "18-Bicycle 301"
  },
  "Description": {
    "S": "301 description"
  },
  "BicycleType": {
    "S": "Road"
  },
  "Brand": {
    "S": "Brand-Company C"
  },
  "Price": {
    "N": "185"
  },
  "Gender": {
    "S": "F"
  },
  "Color": {
    "SS": [
      "Blue",
      "Silver"
    ]
  },
  "ProductCategory": {
    "S": "Bike"
  },
  "InStock": {
    "BOOL": true
  },
  "QuantityOnHand": {
    "N": "3"
  },
  "RelatedItems": {
```

```
    "NS": [
      "801",
      "822",
      "979"
    ]
  },
  "Pictures": {
    "L": [
      {
        "M": {
          "FrontView": {
            "S": "http://example/products/301_front.jpg"
          }
        }
      },
      {
        "M": {
          "RearView": {
            "S": "http://example/products/301_rear.jpg"
          }
        }
      },
      {
        "M": {
          "SideView": {
            "S": "http://example/products/301_left_side.jpg"
          }
        }
      }
    ]
  },
  "ProductReviews": {
    "M": {
      "FiveStar": {
        "SS": [
          "My daughter really enjoyed this bike!"
        ]
      },
      "ThreeStar": {
        "SS": [
          "This bike was okay, but I would have preferred it in my color.",
       "Fun to ride."
        ]
      }
```

```
    }
  }
}
```

Get a Single Item by Using Expressions and the Item's Primary Key

The following example features the `Amazon.DynamoDBv2.AmazonDynamoDBClient.GetItem` method and a set of expressions to get and then print the item that has an `Id` of `205`. Only the following attributes of the item are returned: `Id`, `Title`, `Description`, `Color`, `RelatedItems`, `Pictures`, and `ProductReviews`.

```
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model;

var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
var request = new GetItemRequest
{
  TableName = "ProductCatalog",
  ProjectionExpression = "Id, Title, Description, Color, #ri, Pictures, #pr",
  ExpressionAttributeNames = new Dictionary<string, string>
  {
    { "#pr", "ProductReviews" },
    { "#ri", "RelatedItems" }
  },
  Key = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
  {
    { "Id", new AttributeValue { N = "205" } }
  },
};
var response = client.GetItem(request);

// PrintItem() is a custom function.
PrintItem(response.Item);
```

In the preceding example, the `ProjectionExpression` property specifies the attributes to be returned. The `ExpressionAttributeNames` property specifies the placeholder `#pr` to represent the `ProductReviews` attribute and the placeholder `#ri` to represent the `RelatedItems` attribute. The call to `PrintItem` refers to a custom function as described in Print an Item.

Get Multiple Items by Using Expressions and the Table's Primary Key

The following example features the `Amazon.DynamoDBv2.AmazonDynamoDBClient.Query` method and a set of expressions to get and then print the item that has an `Id` of `301`, but only if the value of `Price` is greater than `150`. Only the following attributes of the item are returned: `Id`, `Title`, and all of the `ThreeStar` attributes in `ProductReviews`.

```
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model;

var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
var request = new QueryRequest
{
  TableName = "ProductCatalog",
  KeyConditions = new Dictionary<string,Condition>
  {
    { "Id", new Condition()
      {
        ComparisonOperator = ComparisonOperator.EQ,
        AttributeValueList = new List<AttributeValue>
        {
          new AttributeValue { N = "301" }
        }
      }
    }
  },
  ProjectionExpression = "Id, Title, #pr.ThreeStar",
  ExpressionAttributeNames = new Dictionary<string, string>
  {
    { "#pr", "ProductReviews" },
    { "#p", "Price" }
  },
  ExpressionAttributeValues = new Dictionary<string,AttributeValue>
  {
    { ":val", new AttributeValue { N = "150" } }
  },
  FilterExpression = "#p > :val"
};
var response = client.Query(request);

foreach (var item in response.Items)
{
  // Write out the first page of an item's attribute keys and values.
```

```
  // PrintItem() is a custom function.
  PrintItem(item);
  Console.WriteLine("=====");
}
```

In the preceding example, the `ProjectionExpression` property specifies the attributes to be returned. The `ExpressionAttributeNames` property specifies the placeholder `#pr` to represent the `ProductReviews` attribute and the placeholder `#p` to represent the `Price` attribute. `#pr.ThreeStar` specifies to return only the `ThreeStar` attribute. The `ExpressionAttributeValues` property specifies the placeholder `:val` to represent the value `150`. The `FilterExpression` property specifies that `#p` (`Price`) must be greater than `:val` (`150`). The call to `PrintItem` refers to a custom function as described in Print an Item.

Get Multiple Items by Using Expressions and Other Item Attributes

The following example features the `Amazon.DynamoDBv2.AmazonDynamoDBClient.Scan` method and a set of expressions to get and then print all items that have a `ProductCategory` of `Bike`. Only the following attributes of the item are returned: `Id`, `Title`, and all of the attributes in `ProductReviews`.

```
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model;

var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
var request = new ScanRequest
{
  TableName = "ProductCatalog",
  ProjectionExpression = "Id, Title, #pr",
  ExpressionAttributeValues = new Dictionary<string,AttributeValue>
  {
    { ":catg", new AttributeValue { S = "Bike" } }
  },
  ExpressionAttributeNames = new Dictionary<string, string>
  {
    { "#pr", "ProductReviews" },
    { "#pc", "ProductCategory" }
  },
  FilterExpression = "#pc = :catg",
};
var response = client.Scan(request);

foreach (var item in response.Items)
```

```
{
  // Write out the first page/scan of an item's attribute keys and values.
  // PrintItem() is a custom function.
  PrintItem(item);
  Console.WriteLine("=====");
}
```

In the preceding example, the `ProjectionExpression` property specifies the attributes to be returned. The `ExpressionAttributeNames` property specifies the placeholder `#pr` to represent the `ProductReviews` attribute and the placeholder `#pc` to represent the `ProductCategory` attribute. The `ExpressionAttributeValues` property specifies the placeholder `:catg` to represent the value `Bike`. The `FilterExpression` property specifies that `#pc` (`ProductCategory`) must be equal to `:catg` (`Bike`). The call to `PrintItem` refers to a custom function as described in Print an Item.

Print an Item

The following example shows how to print an item's attributes and values. This example is used in the preceding examples that show how to Get a Single Item by Using Expressions and the Item's Primary Key, Get Multiple Items by Using Expressions and the Table's Primary Key, and Get Multiple Items by Using Expressions and Other Item Attributes.

```
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model;

// Writes out an item's attribute keys and values.
public static void PrintItem(Dictionary<string, AttributeValue> attrs)
{
  foreach (KeyValuePair<string, AttributeValue> kvp in attrs)
  {
    Console.Write(kvp.Key + " = ");
    PrintValue(kvp.Value);
  }
}

// Writes out just an attribute's value.
public static void PrintValue(AttributeValue value)
{
  // Binary attribute value.
  if (value.B != null)
  {
    Console.Write("Binary data");
  }
```

```
// Binary set attribute value.
else if (value.BS.Count > 0)
{
  foreach (var bValue in value.BS)
  {
    Console.Write("\n  Binary data");
  }
}
// List attribute value.
else if (value.L.Count > 0)
{
  foreach (AttributeValue attr in value.L)
  {
    PrintValue(attr);
  }
}
// Map attribute value.
else if (value.M.Count > 0)
{
  Console.Write("\n");
  PrintItem(value.M);
}
// Number attribute value.
else if (value.N != null)
{
  Console.Write(value.N);
}
// Number set attribute value.
else if (value.NS.Count > 0)
{
  Console.Write("{0}", string.Join("\n", value.NS.ToArray()));
}
// Null attribute value.
else if (value.NULL)
{
  Console.Write("Null");
}
// String attribute value.
else if (value.S != null)
{
  Console.Write(value.S);
}
// String set attribute value.
else if (value.SS.Count > 0)
```

```
  {
    Console.Write("{0}", string.Join("\n", value.SS.ToArray()));
  }
  // Otherwise, boolean value.
  else
  {
    Console.Write(value.BOOL);
  }

  Console.Write("\n");
}
```

In the preceding example, each attribute value has several data-type-specific properties that can be evaluated to determine the correct format to print the attribute. These properties include `B`, `BOOL`, `BS`, `L`, `M`, `N`, `NS`, `NULL`, `S`, and `SS`, which correspond to those in the JSON Data Format. For properties such as `B`, `N`, `NULL`, and `S`, if the corresponding property is not `null`, then the attribute is of the corresponding non-`null` data type. For properties such as `BS`, `L`, `M`, `NS`, and `SS`, if `Count` is greater than zero, then the attribute is of the corresponding non-zero-value data type. If all of the attribute's data-type-specific properties are either `null` or the `Count` equals zero, then the attribute corresponds to the `BOOL` data type.

Create or Replace an Item by Using Expressions

The following example features the `Amazon.DynamoDBv2.AmazonDynamoDBClient.PutItem` method and a set of expressions to update the item that has a `Title` of `18-Bicycle 301`. If the item doesn't already exist, a new item is added.

```
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model;

var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
var request = new PutItemRequest
{
  TableName = "ProductCatalog",
  ExpressionAttributeNames = new Dictionary<string, string>
  {
    { "#title", "Title" }
  },
  ExpressionAttributeValues = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
  {
    { ":product", new AttributeValue { S = "18-Bicycle 301" } }
  },
```

```
  ConditionExpression = "#title = :product",
  // CreateItemData() is a custom function.
  Item = CreateItemData()
};
client.PutItem(request);
```

In the preceding example, the `ExpressionAttributeNames` property specifies the placeholder `#title` to represent the `Title` attribute. The `ExpressionAttributeValues` property specifies the placeholder `:product` to represent the value `18-Bicycle 301`. The `ConditionExpression` property specifies that `#title` (`Title`) must be equal to `:product` (`18-Bicycle 301`). The call to `CreateItemData` refers to the following custom function:

```
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model;

// Provides a sample item that can be added to a table.
public static Dictionary<string, AttributeValue> CreateItemData()
{
  var itemData = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
  {
    { "Id", new AttributeValue { N = "301" } },
    { "Title", new AttributeValue { S = "18\" Girl's Bike" } },
    { "BicycleType", new AttributeValue { S = "Road" } },
    { "Brand" , new AttributeValue { S = "Brand-Company C" } },
    { "Color", new AttributeValue { SS = new List<string>{ "Blue", "Silver" } } },
    { "Description", new AttributeValue { S = "301 description" } },
    { "Gender", new AttributeValue { S = "F" } },
    { "InStock", new AttributeValue { BOOL = true } },
    { "Pictures", new AttributeValue { L = new List<AttributeValue>{
      { new AttributeValue { M = new Dictionary<string,AttributeValue>{
        { "FrontView", new AttributeValue { S = "http://example/
products/301_front.jpg" } } } } },
      { new AttributeValue { M = new Dictionary<string,AttributeValue>{
        { "RearView", new AttributeValue {S = "http://example/
products/301_rear.jpg" } } } } },
      { new AttributeValue { M = new Dictionary<string,AttributeValue>{
        { "SideView", new AttributeValue { S = "http://example/
products/301_left_side.jpg" } } } } }
    } } },
    { "Price", new AttributeValue { N = "185" } },
    { "ProductCategory", new AttributeValue { S = "Bike" } },
    { "ProductReviews", new AttributeValue { M = new Dictionary<string,AttributeValue>{
      { "FiveStar", new AttributeValue { SS = new List<string>{
        "My daughter really enjoyed this bike!" } } },
```

```
      { "OneStar", new AttributeValue { SS = new List<string>{
        "Fun to ride.",
        "This bike was okay, but I would have preferred it in my color." } } }
    } } },
    { "QuantityOnHand", new AttributeValue { N = "3" } },
    { "RelatedItems", new AttributeValue { NS = new List<string>{ "979", "822",
 "801" } } }
  };

  return itemData;
}
```

In the preceding example, an example item with sample data is returned to the caller. A series of attributes and corresponding values are constructed, using data types such as BOOL, L, M, N, NS, S, and SS, which correspond to those in the JSON Data Format.

Update an Item by Using Expressions

The following example features the `Amazon.DynamoDBv2.AmazonDynamoDBClient.UpdateItem` method and a set of expressions to change the `Title` to `18" Girl's Bike` for the item with `Id` of `301`.

```
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model;

var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
var request = new UpdateItemRequest
{
  TableName = "ProductCatalog",
  Key = new Dictionary<string,AttributeValue>
  {
     { "Id", new AttributeValue { N = "301" } }
  },
  ExpressionAttributeNames = new Dictionary<string, string>
  {
    { "#title", "Title" }
  },
  ExpressionAttributeValues = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
  {
    { ":newproduct", new AttributeValue { S = "18\" Girl's Bike" } }
  },
  UpdateExpression = "SET #title = :newproduct"
};
```

```
client.UpdateItem(request);
```

In the preceding example, the `ExpressionAttributeNames` property specifies the placeholder `#title` to represent the `Title` attribute. The `ExpressionAttributeValues` property specifies the placeholder `:newproduct` to represent the value `18" Girl's Bike`. The `UpdateExpression` property specifies to change `#title` (`Title`) to `:newproduct` (`18" Girl's Bike`).

Delete an Item by Using Expressions

The following example features the `Amazon.DynamoDBv2.AmazonDynamoDBClient.DeleteItem` method and a set of expressions to delete the item with `Id` of `301`, but only if the item's `Title` is `18-Bicycle 301`.

```
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model;

var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
var request = new DeleteItemRequest
{
  TableName = "ProductCatalog",
  Key = new Dictionary<string,AttributeValue>
  {
     { "Id", new AttributeValue { N = "301" } }
  },
  ExpressionAttributeNames = new Dictionary<string, string>
  {
    { "#title", "Title" }
  },
  ExpressionAttributeValues = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
  {
    { ":product", new AttributeValue { S = "18-Bicycle 301" } }
  },
  ConditionExpression = "#title = :product"
};
client.DeleteItem(request);
```

In the preceding example, the `ExpressionAttributeNames` property specifies the placeholder `#title` to represent the `Title` attribute. The `ExpressionAttributeValues` property specifies the placeholder `:product` to represent the value `18-Bicycle 301`. The `ConditionExpression` property specifies that `#title` (`Title`) must equal `:product` (`18-Bicycle 301`).

More Info

For more information and code examples, see:

- DynamoDB Series - Expressions
- Accessing Item Attributes with Projection Expressions
- Using Placeholders for Attribute Names and Values
- Specifying Conditions with Condition Expressions
- Modifying Items and Attributes with Update Expressions
- Working with Items Using the AWS SDK for .NET Low-Level API
- Querying Tables Using the AWS SDK for .NET Low-Level API
- Scanning Tables Using the AWS SDK for .NET Low-Level API
- Working with Local Secondary Indexes Using the AWS SDK for .NET Low-Level API
- Working with Global Secondary Indexes Using the AWS SDK for .NET Low-Level API

JSON support in Amazon DynamoDB

> **Note**
>
> The information in this topic is specific to projects based on .NET Framework and the AWS SDK for .NET version 3.3 and earlier.

The AWS SDK for .NET supports JSON data when working with Amazon DynamoDB. This enables you to more easily get JSON-formatted data from, and insert JSON documents into, DynamoDB tables.

Topics

- Get Data from a DynamoDB Table in JSON Format
- Insert JSON Format Data into a DynamoDB Table
- DynamoDB Data Type Conversions to JSON
- More Info

Get Data from a DynamoDB Table in JSON Format

The following example shows how to get data from a DynamoDB table in JSON format:

```
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.DocumentModel;

var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
var table = Table.LoadTable(client, "AnimalsInventory");
var item = table.GetItem(3, "Horse");

var jsonText = item.ToJson();
Console.Write(jsonText);

// Output:
//   {"Name":"Shadow","Type":"Horse","Id":3}

var jsonPrettyText = item.ToJsonPretty();
Console.WriteLine(jsonPrettyText);

// Output:
//   {
//     "Name" : "Shadow",
//     "Type" : "Horse",
//     "Id"   : 3
//   }
```

In the preceding example, the `ToJson` method of the `Document` class converts an item from the table into a JSON-formatted string. The item is retrieved through the `GetItem` method of the `Table` class. To determine the item to get, in this example, the `GetItem` method uses the hash-and-range primary key of the target item. To determine the table to get the item from, the `LoadTable` method of the `Table` class uses an instance of the `AmazonDynamoDBClient` class and the name of the target table in DynamoDB.

Insert JSON Format Data into a DynamoDB Table

The following example shows how to use JSON format to insert an item into a DynamoDB table:

```
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
// using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.DocumentModel;

var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
var table = Table.LoadTable(client, "AnimalsInventory");
```

```
var jsonText = "{\"Id\":6,\"Type\":\"Bird\",\"Name\":\"Tweety\"}";
var item = Document.FromJson(jsonText);

table.PutItem(item);
```

In the preceding example, the `FromJson` method of the `Document` class converts a JSON-formatted string into an item. The item is inserted into the table through the `PutItem` method of the `Table` class, which uses the instance of the `Document` class that contains the item. To determine the table to insert the item into, the `LoadTable` method of the `Table` class is called, specifying an instance of the `AmazonDynamoDBClient` class and the name of the target table in DynamoDB.

DynamoDB Data Type Conversions to JSON

Whenever you call the `ToJson` method of the `Document` class, and then on the resulting JSON data you call the `FromJson` method to convert the JSON data back into an instance of a `Document` class, some DynamoDB data types will not be converted as expected. Specifically:

- DynamoDB sets (the `SS`, `NS`, and `BS` types) will be converted to JSON arrays.
- DynamoDB binary scalars and sets (the `B` and `BS` types) will be converted to base64-encoded JSON strings or lists of strings.

  In this scenario, you must call the `DecodeBase64Attributes` method of the `Document` class to replace the base64-encoded JSON data with the correct binary representation. The following example replaces a base64-encoded binary scalar item attribute in an instance of a `Document` class, named `Picture`, with the correct binary representation. This example also does the same for a base64-encoded binary set item attribute in the same instance of the `Document` class, named `RelatedPictures`:

  ```
  item.DecodeBase64Attributes("Picture", "RelatedPictures");
  ```

More Info

For more information and examples of programming JSON with DynamoDB with the AWS SDK for .NET, see:

- DynamoDB JSON Support
- Amazon DynamoDB Update - JSON, Expanded Free Tier, Flexible Scaling, Larger Items

Working with Amazon EC2

The AWS SDK for .NET supports Amazon EC2, which is a web service that provides resizable computing capacity. You use this computing capacity to build and host your software systems.

APIs

The AWS SDK for .NET provides APIs for Amazon EC2 clients. The APIs enable you to work with EC2 features such as security groups and key pairs. The APIs also enable you to control Amazon EC2 instances. This section contains a small number of examples that show you the patterns you can follow when working with these APIs. To view the full set of APIs, see the AWS SDK for .NET API Reference (and scroll to "Amazon.EC2").

The Amazon EC2 APIs are provided by the AWSSDK.EC2 NuGet package.

Prerequisites

Before you begin, be sure you have set up your environment and project. Also review the information in SDK features.

About the examples

The examples in this section show you how to work with Amazon EC2 clients and manage Amazon EC2 instances.

The EC2 Spot Instance tutorial shows you how to request Amazon EC2 Spot Instances. Spot Instances enable you to access unused EC2 capacity for less than the On-Demand price.

Topics

- Working with security groups in Amazon EC2
- Working with Amazon EC2 key pairs
- Seeing your Amazon EC2 Regions and Availability Zones
- Working with Amazon EC2 instances
- Amazon EC2 Spot Instance tutorial

Working with security groups in Amazon EC2

In Amazon EC2, a *security group* acts as a virtual firewall that controls the network traffic for one or more EC2 instances. By default, EC2 associates your instances with a security group that allows

no inbound traffic. You can create a security group that allows your EC2 instances to accept certain traffic. For example, if you need to connect to an EC2 Windows instance, you must configure the security group to allow RDP traffic.

To read more about security groups see Amazon EC2 security groups in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.

> **Warning**
>
> EC2-Classic was retired on August 15, 2022. We recommend that you migrate from EC2-Classic to a VPC. For more information, see the blog post EC2-Classic Networking is Retiring – Here's How to Prepare.

For information about the APIs and prerequisites, see the parent section (Working with Amazon EC2).

Topics

- Enumerating security groups
- Creating security groups
- Updating security groups

Enumerating security groups

This example shows you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to enumerate security groups. If you supply an Amazon Virtual Private Cloud ID, the application enumerates the security groups for that particular VPC. Otherwise, the application simply displays a list of all available security groups.

The following sections provide snippets of this example. The complete code for the example is shown after that, and can be built and run as is.

Topics

- Enumerate security groups
- Complete code
- Additional considerations

Enumerate security groups

The following snippet enumerates your security groups. It enumerates all groups or the groups for a particular VPC if one is given.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
//
// Method to enumerate the security groups
private static async Task EnumerateGroups(IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, string vpcID)
{
  // A request object, in case we need it.
  var request = new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest();

  // Put together the properties, if needed
  if(!string.IsNullOrEmpty(vpcID))
  {
    // We have a VPC ID. Find the security groups for just that VPC.
    Console.WriteLine($"\nGetting security groups for VPC {vpcID}...\n");
    request.Filters.Add(new Filter
    {
      Name = "vpc-id",
      Values = new List<string>() { vpcID }
    });
  }

  // Get the list of security groups
  DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse response =
    await ec2Client.DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync(request);

  // Display the list of security groups.
  foreach (SecurityGroup item in response.SecurityGroups)
  {
    Console.WriteLine("Security group: " + item.GroupId);
    Console.WriteLine("\tGroupId: " + item.GroupId);
    Console.WriteLine("\tGroupName: " + item.GroupName);
    Console.WriteLine("\tVpcId: " + item.VpcId);
    Console.WriteLine();
  }
}
```

Complete code

This section shows relevant references and the complete code for this example.

SDK references

NuGet packages:

- AWSSDK.EC2

Programming elements:

- Namespace Amazon.EC2

  Class AmazonEC2Client
- Namespace Amazon.EC2.Model

  Class DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest

  Class DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse

  Class Filter

  Class SecurityGroup

The Code

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon.EC2;
using Amazon.EC2.Model;

namespace EC2EnumerateSecGroups
{
  class Program
  {
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
      // Parse the command line
       string vpcID = string.Empty;
      if(args.Length == 0)
```

```
      {
        Console.WriteLine("\nEC2EnumerateSecGroups [vpc_id]");
        Console.WriteLine("  vpc_id - The ID of the VPC for which you want to see
security groups.");
        Console.WriteLine("\nSince you specified no arguments, showing all available
security groups.");
      }
      else
      {
        vpcID = args[0];
      }

      if(vpcID.StartsWith("vpc-") || string.IsNullOrEmpty(vpcID))
      {
        // Create an EC2 client object
        var ec2Client = new AmazonEC2Client();

        // Enumerate the security groups
        await EnumerateGroups(ec2Client, vpcID);
      }
      else
      {
        Console.WriteLine("Could not find a valid VPC ID in the command-line
arguments:");
        Console.WriteLine($"{args[0]}");
      }
    }


    //
    // Method to enumerate the security groups
    private static async Task EnumerateGroups(IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, string vpcID)
    {
      // A request object, in case we need it.
      var request = new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest();

      // Put together the properties, if needed
      if(!string.IsNullOrEmpty(vpcID))
      {
        // We have a VPC ID. Find the security groups for just that VPC.
        Console.WriteLine($"\nGetting security groups for VPC {vpcID}...\n");
        request.Filters.Add(new Filter
        {
          Name = "vpc-id",
```

```
            Values = new List<string>() { vpcID }
          });
        }

        // Get the list of security groups
        DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse response =
          await ec2Client.DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync(request);

        // Display the list of security groups.
        foreach (SecurityGroup item in response.SecurityGroups)
        {
          Console.WriteLine("Security group: " + item.GroupId);
          Console.WriteLine("\tGroupId: " + item.GroupId);
          Console.WriteLine("\tGroupName: " + item.GroupName);
          Console.WriteLine("\tVpcId: " + item.VpcId);
          Console.WriteLine();
        }
      }
    }
  }
```

Additional considerations

- Notice for the VPC case that the filter is constructed with the `Name` part of the name-value pair set to "vpc-id". This name comes from the description for the `Filters` property of the DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest class.

- To get the complete list of your security groups, you can also use DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync with no parameters.

- You can verify the results by checking the list of security groups in the Amazon EC2 console.

Creating security groups

This example shows you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to create a security group. You can provide the ID of an existing VPC to create a security group for EC2 in a VPC. If you don't supply such an ID, the new security group will be for EC2-Classic if your AWS account supports this.

If you don't supply a VPC ID and your AWS account doesn't support EC2-Classic, the new security group will belong to the default VPC of your account.

> **Warning**
>
> EC2-Classic was retired on August 15, 2022. We recommend that you migrate from EC2-Classic to a VPC. For more information, see the blog post EC2-Classic Networking is Retiring – Here's How to Prepare.

The following sections provide snippets of this example. The complete code for the example is shown after that, and can be built and run as is.

Topics

- Find existing security groups
- Create a security group
- Complete code

Find existing security groups

The following snippet searches for existing security groups with the given name in the given VPC.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
//
// Method to determine if a security group with the specified name
// already exists in the VPC
private static async Task<List<SecurityGroup>> FindSecurityGroups(
  IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, string groupName, string vpcID)
{
  var request = new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest();
  request.Filters.Add(new Filter{
    Name = "group-name",
    Values = new List<string>() { groupName }
  });
  if(!string.IsNullOrEmpty(vpcID))
    request.Filters.Add(new Filter{
      Name = "vpc-id",
      Values = new List<string>() { vpcID }
    });

  var response = await ec2Client.DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync(request);
  return response.SecurityGroups;
```

```
    }
```

Create a security group

The following snippet creates a new security group if a group with that name doesn't exist in the given VPC. If no VPC is given and one or more groups with that name exist, the snippet simply returns the list of groups.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
    //
    // Method to create a new security group (either EC2-Classic or EC2-VPC)
    // If vpcID is empty, the security group will be for EC2-Classic
    private static async Task<List<SecurityGroup>> CreateSecurityGroup(
      IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, string groupName, string vpcID)
    {
      // See if one or more security groups with that name
      // already exist in the given VPC. If so, return the list of them.
      var securityGroups = await FindSecurityGroups(ec2Client, groupName, vpcID);
      if (securityGroups.Count > 0)
      {
        Console.WriteLine(
          $"\nOne or more security groups with name {groupName} already exist.\n");
        return securityGroups;
      }

      // If the security group doesn't already exists, create it.
      var createRequest = new CreateSecurityGroupRequest{
        GroupName = groupName
      };
      if(string.IsNullOrEmpty(vpcID))
      {
        createRequest.Description = "My .NET example security group for EC2-Classic";
      }
      else
      {
        createRequest.VpcId = vpcID;
        createRequest.Description = "My .NET example security group for EC2-VPC";
      }
      CreateSecurityGroupResponse createResponse =
        await ec2Client.CreateSecurityGroupAsync(createRequest);

      // Return the new security group
```

```
    DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse describeResponse =
      await ec2Client.DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync(new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest{
        GroupIds = new List<string>() { createResponse.GroupId }
      });
    return describeResponse.SecurityGroups;
  }
```

Complete code

This section shows relevant references and the complete code for this example.

SDK references

NuGet packages:

- AWSSDK.EC2

Programming elements:

- Namespace Amazon.EC2

  Class AmazonEC2Client
- Namespace Amazon.EC2.Model

  Class CreateSecurityGroupRequest

  Class CreateSecurityGroupResponse

  Class DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest

  Class DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse

  Class Filter

  Class SecurityGroup

The code

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon.EC2;
```

```
using Amazon.EC2.Model;

namespace EC2CreateSecGroup
{
  // = = =
```

```
      }
    }


    //
    // Method to create a new security group (either EC2-Classic or EC2-VPC)
    // If vpcID is empty, the security group will be for EC2-Classic
    private static async Task<List<SecurityGroup>> CreateSecurityGroup(
      IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, string groupName, string vpcID)
    {
      // See if one or more security groups with that name
      // already exist in the given VPC. If so, return the list of them.
      var securityGroups = await FindSecurityGroups(ec2Client, groupName, vpcID);
      if (securityGroups.Count > 0)
      {
        Console.WriteLine(
          $"\nOne or more security groups with name {groupName} already exist.\n");
        return securityGroups;
      }

      // If the security group doesn't already exists, create it.
      var createRequest = new CreateSecurityGroupRequest{
        GroupName = groupName
      };
      if(string.IsNullOrEmpty(vpcID))
      {
        createRequest.Description = "Security group for .NET code example (no VPC
specified)";
      }
      else
      {
        createRequest.VpcId = vpcID;
        createRequest.Description = "Security group for .NET code example (VPC: " +
vpcID + ")";
      }
      CreateSecurityGroupResponse createResponse =
        await ec2Client.CreateSecurityGroupAsync(createRequest);

      // Return the new security group
      DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse describeResponse =
        await ec2Client.DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync(new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest{
          GroupIds = new List<string>() { createResponse.GroupId }
        });
      return describeResponse.SecurityGroups;
```

```
    }


    //
    // Method to determine if a security group with the specified name
    // already exists in the VPC
    private static async Task<List<SecurityGroup>> FindSecurityGroups(
      IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, string groupName, string vpcID)
    {
      var request = new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest();
      request.Filters.Add(new Filter{
        Name = "group-name",
        Values = new List<string>() { groupName }
      });
      if(!string.IsNullOrEmpty(vpcID))
        request.Filters.Add(new Filter{
          Name = "vpc-id",
          Values = new List<string>() { vpcID }
        });

      var response = await ec2Client.DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync(request);
      return response.SecurityGroups;
    }


    //
    // Command-line help
    private static void PrintHelp()
    {
      Console.WriteLine(
        "\nUsage: EC2CreateSecGroup -g <group-name> [-v <vpc-id>]" +
        "\n  -g, --group-name: The name you would like the new security group to have."
+
        "\n  -v, --vpc-id: The ID of a VPC to which the new security group will
belong." +
        "\n     If vpc-id isn't present, the security group will be" +
        "\n     for EC2-Classic (if your AWS account supports this)" +
        "\n     or will use the default VCP for EC2-VPC.");
    }
  }


  // = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = =
= = =
```

```
 // Class that represents a command line on the console or terminal.
 // (This is the same for all examples. When you have seen it once, you can ignore
it.)
 static class CommandLine
 {
   //
   // Method to parse a command line of the form: "--key value" or "-k value".
   //
   // Parameters:
   // - args: The command-line arguments passed into the application by the system.
   //
   // Returns:
   // A Dictionary with string Keys and Values.
   //
   // If a key is found without a matching value, Dictionary.Value is set to the key
   //  (including the dashes).
   // If a value is found without a matching key, Dictionary.Key is set to "--NoKeyN",
   //  where "N" represents sequential numbers.
   public static Dictionary<string,string> Parse(string[] args)
   {
     var parsedArgs = new Dictionary<string,string>();
     int i = 0, n = 0;
     while(i < args.Length)
     {
       // If the first argument in this iteration starts with a dash it's an option.
       if(args[i].StartsWith("-"))
       {
         var key = args[i++];
         var value = key;

         // Check to see if there's a value that goes with this option?
         if((i < args.Length) && (!args[i].StartsWith("-"))) value = args[i++];
         parsedArgs.Add(key, value);
       }

       // If the first argument in this iteration doesn't start with a dash, it's a
value
       else
       {
         parsedArgs.Add("--NoKey" + n.ToString(), args[i++]);
         n++;
       }
     }
```

```
      return parsedArgs;
    }

    //
    // Method to get an argument from the parsed command-line arguments
    //
    // Parameters:
    // - parsedArgs: The Dictionary object returned from the Parse() method (shown
 above).
    // - defaultValue: The default string to return if the specified key isn't in
 parsedArgs.
    // - keys: An array of keys to look for in parsedArgs.
    public static string GetArgument(
      Dictionary<string,string> parsedArgs, string defaultReturn, params string[] keys)
    {
      string retval = null;
      foreach(var key in keys)
        if(parsedArgs.TryGetValue(key, out retval)) break;
      return retval ?? defaultReturn;
    }

    //
    // Method to exit the application with an error.
    public static void ErrorExit(string msg, int code=1)
    {
      Console.WriteLine("\nError");
      Console.WriteLine(msg);
      Environment.Exit(code);
    }
  }

}
```

Updating security groups

This example shows you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to add a rule to a security group. In particular, the example adds a rule to allow inbound traffic on a given TCP port, which can be used, for example, for remote connections to an EC2 instance. The application takes the ID of an existing security group, an IP address (or address range) in CIDR format, and optionally a TCP port number. It then adds an inbound rule to the given security group.

> **Note**
>
> To use this example, you need an IP address (or address range) in CIDR format. See **Additional considerations** at this end of this topic for methods to obtain the IP address of your local computer.

The following sections provide snippets of this example. The complete code for the example is shown after that, and can be built and run as is.

Topics

- Add an inbound rule
- Complete code
- Additional considerations

Add an inbound rule

The following snippet adds an inbound rule to a security group for a particular IP address (or range) and TCP port.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
//
// Method that adds a TCP ingress rule to a security group
private static async Task AddIngressRule(
  IAmazonEC2 eC2Client, string groupID, string ipAddress, int port)
{
  // Create an object to hold the request information for the rule.
  // It uses an IpPermission object to hold the IP information for the rule.
  var ingressRequest = new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest{
    GroupId = groupID};
  ingressRequest.IpPermissions.Add(new IpPermission{
    IpProtocol = "tcp",
    FromPort = port,
    ToPort = port,
    Ipv4Ranges = new List<IpRange>() { new IpRange { CidrIp = ipAddress } }
  });

  // Create the inbound rule for the security group
  AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressResponse responseIngress =
```

```
        await eC2Client.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressAsync(ingressRequest);
      Console.WriteLine($"\nNew RDP rule was written in {groupID} for {ipAddress}.");
      Console.WriteLine($"Result: {responseIngress.HttpStatusCode}");
    }
```

Complete code

This section shows relevant references and the complete code for this example.

SDK references

NuGet packages:

- AWSSDK.EC2

Programming elements:

- Namespace Amazon.EC2

  Class AmazonEC2Client
- Namespace Amazon.EC2.Model

  Class AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest

  Class AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressResponse

  Class IpPermission

  Class IpRange

The code

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon.EC2;
using Amazon.EC2.Model;

namespace EC2AddRuleForRDP
{
  // = = =
```

```
// Class to add a rule that allows inbound traffic on TCP a port
class Program
{
  private const int DefaultPort = 3389;

  static async Task Main(string[] args)
  {
    // Parse the command line and show help if necessary
    var parsedArgs = CommandLine.Parse(args);
    if(parsedArgs.Count == 0)
    {
      PrintHelp();
      return;
    }

    // Get the application arguments from the parsed list
    var groupID = CommandLine.GetArgument(parsedArgs, null, "-g", "--group-id");
    var ipAddress = CommandLine.GetArgument(parsedArgs, null, "-i", "--ip-address");
    var portStr = CommandLine.GetArgument(parsedArgs, DefaultPort.ToString(), "-p",
"--port");
    if(string.IsNullOrEmpty(ipAddress))
      CommandLine.ErrorExit("\nYou must supply an IP address in CIDR format.");
    if(string.IsNullOrEmpty(groupID) || !groupID.StartsWith("sg-"))
      CommandLine.ErrorExit("\nThe ID for a security group is missing or
incorrect.");
    if(int.Parse(portStr) == 0)
      CommandLine.ErrorExit($"\nThe given TCP port number, {portStr}, isn't
allowed.");

    // Add a rule to the given security group that allows
    // inbound traffic on a TCP port
    await AddIngressRule(
      new AmazonEC2Client(), groupID, ipAddress, int.Parse(portStr));
  }


  //
  // Method that adds a TCP ingress rule to a security group
  private static async Task AddIngressRule(
    IAmazonEC2 eC2Client, string groupID, string ipAddress, int port)
  {
    // Create an object to hold the request information for the rule.
    // It uses an IpPermission object to hold the IP information for the rule.
    var ingressRequest = new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest{
```

```
        GroupId = groupID};
      ingressRequest.IpPermissions.Add(new IpPermission{
        IpProtocol = "tcp",
        FromPort = port,
        ToPort = port,
        Ipv4Ranges = new List<IpRange>() { new IpRange { CidrIp = ipAddress } }
      });

      // Create the inbound rule for the security group
      AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressResponse responseIngress =
        await eC2Client.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressAsync(ingressRequest);
      Console.WriteLine($"\nNew RDP rule was written in {groupID} for {ipAddress}.");
      Console.WriteLine($"Result: {responseIngress.HttpStatusCode}");
    }


    //
    // Command-line help
    private static void PrintHelp()
    {
      Console.WriteLine(
        "\nUsage: EC2AddRuleForRDP -g <group-id> -i <ip-address> [-p <port>]" +
        "\n  -g, --group-id: The ID of the security group to which you want to add the
inbound rule." +
        "\n  -i, --ip-address: An IP address or address range in CIDR format." +
        "\n  -p, --port: The TCP port number. Defaults to 3389.");
    }
  }


  // = = =
```

```
    // A Dictionary with string Keys and Values.
    //
    // If a key is found without a matching value, Dictionary.Value is set to the key
    //  (including the dashes).
    // If a value is found without a matching key, Dictionary.Key is set to "--NoKeyN",
    //  where "N" represents sequential numbers.
    public static Dictionary<string,string> Parse(string[] args)
    {
      var parsedArgs = new Dictionary<string,string>();
      int i = 0, n = 0;
      while(i < args.Length)
      {
        // If the first argument in this iteration starts with a dash it's an option.
        if(args[i].StartsWith("-"))
        {
          var key = args[i++];
          var value = key;

          // Check to see if there's a value that goes with this option?
          if((i < args.Length) && (!args[i].StartsWith("-"))) value = args[i++];
          parsedArgs.Add(key, value);
        }

        // If the first argument in this iteration doesn't start with a dash, it's a
value
        else
        {
          parsedArgs.Add("--NoKey" + n.ToString(), args[i++]);
          n++;
        }
      }

      return parsedArgs;
    }

    //
    // Method to get an argument from the parsed command-line arguments
    //
    // Parameters:
    // - parsedArgs: The Dictionary object returned from the Parse() method (shown
above).
    // - defaultValue: The default string to return if the specified key isn't in
parsedArgs.
    // - keys: An array of keys to look for in parsedArgs.
```

```
    public static string GetArgument(
      Dictionary<string,string> parsedArgs, string defaultReturn, params string[] keys)
    {
      string retval = null;
      foreach(var key in keys)
        if(parsedArgs.TryGetValue(key, out retval)) break;
      return retval ?? defaultReturn;
    }

    //
    // Method to exit the application with an error.
    public static void ErrorExit(string msg, int code=1)
    {
      Console.WriteLine("\nError");
      Console.WriteLine(msg);
      Environment.Exit(code);
    }
  }

}
```

Additional considerations

- If you don't supply a port number, the application defaults to port 3389. This is the port for Windows RDP, which enables you to connect to an EC2 instance running Windows. If you're launching an EC2 instance running Linux, you can use TCP port 22 (SSH) instead.

- Notice that the example sets `IpProtocol` to "tcp". The values for `IpProtocol` can be found in the description for the `IpProtocol` property of the IpPermission class.

- You might want the IP address of your local computer when you use this example. The following are some of the ways in which you can obtain the address.
  - If your local computer (from which you will connect to your EC2 instance) has a static public IP address, you can use a service to get that address. One such service is http://checkip.amazonaws.com/. To read more about authorizing inbound traffic, see Add rules to a security group and Security group rules for different use cases in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.
  - Another way to obtain the IP address of your local computer is to use the Amazon EC2 console.

Select one of your security groups, select the **Inbound rules** tab, and choose **Edit inbound rules**. In an inbound rule, open the drop-down menu in the **Source** column and choose **My IP** to see the IP address of your local computer in CIDR format. Be sure to **Cancel** the operation.

- You can verify the results of this example by examining the list of security groups in the Amazon EC2 console.

Working with Amazon EC2 key pairs

Amazon EC2 uses public–key cryptography to encrypt and decrypt login information. Public–key cryptography uses a public key to encrypt data, and then the recipient uses the private key to decrypt the data. The public and private keys are known as a key pair. If you want to log into an EC2 instance, you must specify a key pair when you launch it, and then provide the private key of the pair when you connect to it.

When you launch an EC2 instance, you can create a key pair for it or use one that you've already used when launching other instances. To read more about Amazon EC2 key pairs, see Working with Amazon EC2 key pairs in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.

For information about the APIs and prerequisites, see the parent section (Working with Amazon EC2).

Topics

- Creating and displaying key pairs
- Deleting key pairs

Creating and displaying key pairs

This example shows you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to create a key pair. The application takes the name for the new key pair and the name of a PEM file (with a ".pem" extension). It creates the keypair, writes the private key to the PEM file, and then displays all available key pairs. If you provide no command-line arguments, the application simply displays all available key pairs.

The following sections provide snippets of this example. The complete code for the example is shown after that, and can be built and run as is.

Topics

- Create the key pair
- Display available key pairs
- Complete code
- Additional considerations

Create the key pair

The following snippet creates a key pair and then stores the private key to the given PEM file.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
//
// Method to create a key pair and save the key material in a PEM file
private static async Task CreateKeyPair(
  IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, string keyPairName, string pemFileName)
{
  // Create the key pair
  CreateKeyPairResponse response =
    await ec2Client.CreateKeyPairAsync(new CreateKeyPairRequest{
      KeyName = keyPairName
    });
  Console.WriteLine($"\nCreated new key pair: {response.KeyPair.KeyName}");

  // Save the private key in a PEM file
  using (var s = new FileStream(pemFileName, FileMode.Create))
  using (var writer = new StreamWriter(s))
  {
    writer.WriteLine(response.KeyPair.KeyMaterial);
  }
}
```

Display available key pairs

The following snippet displays a list of the available key pairs.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
//
// Method to show the key pairs that are available
private static async Task EnumerateKeyPairs(IAmazonEC2 ec2Client)
{
```

```
      DescribeKeyPairsResponse response = await ec2Client.DescribeKeyPairsAsync();
      Console.WriteLine("Available key pairs:");
      foreach (KeyPairInfo item in response.KeyPairs)
        Console.WriteLine($"  {item.KeyName}");
    }
```

Complete code

This section shows relevant references and the complete code for this example.

SDK references

NuGet packages:

- AWSSDK.EC2

Programming elements:

- Namespace Amazon.EC2

  Class AmazonEC2Client
- Namespace Amazon.EC2.Model

  Class CreateKeyPairRequest

  Class CreateKeyPairResponse

  Class DescribeKeyPairsResponse

  Class KeyPairInfo

The code

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using System.IO;
using Amazon.EC2;
using Amazon.EC2.Model;
using System.Collections.Generic;

namespace EC2CreateKeyPair
{
```

```
// = = =
```

```
    //
    // Method to create a key pair and save the key material in a PEM file
    private static async Task CreateKeyPair(
      IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, string keyPairName, string pemFileName)
    {
      // Create the key pair
      CreateKeyPairResponse response =
        await ec2Client.CreateKeyPairAsync(new CreateKeyPairRequest{
          KeyName = keyPairName
        });
      Console.WriteLine($"\nCreated new key pair: {response.KeyPair.KeyName}");

      // Save the private key in a PEM file
      using (var s = new FileStream(pemFileName, FileMode.Create))
      using (var writer = new StreamWriter(s))
      {
        writer.WriteLine(response.KeyPair.KeyMaterial);
      }
    }


    //
    // Method to show the key pairs that are available
    private static async Task EnumerateKeyPairs(IAmazonEC2 ec2Client)
    {
      DescribeKeyPairsResponse response = await ec2Client.DescribeKeyPairsAsync();
      Console.WriteLine("Available key pairs:");
      foreach (KeyPairInfo item in response.KeyPairs)
        Console.WriteLine($"  {item.KeyName}");
    }


    //
    // Command-line help
    private static void PrintHelp()
    {
      Console.WriteLine(
        "\nUsage: EC2CreateKeyPair -k <keypair-name> -p <pem-filename>" +
        "\n  -k, --keypair-name: The name you want to assign to the key pair." +
        "\n  -p, --pem-filename: The name of the PEM file to create, with a \".pem\"
extension.");
    }
  }
```

```
 // = = =
```

```
        }
      }

      return parsedArgs;
    }

    //
    // Method to get an argument from the parsed command-line arguments
    //
    // Parameters:
    // - parsedArgs: The Dictionary object returned from the Parse() method (shown
 above).
    // - defaultValue: The default string to return if the specified key isn't in
 parsedArgs.
    // - keys: An array of keys to look for in parsedArgs.
    public static string GetArgument(
      Dictionary<string,string> parsedArgs, string defaultReturn, params string[] keys)
    {
      string retval = null;
      foreach(var key in keys)
        if(parsedArgs.TryGetValue(key, out retval)) break;
      return retval ?? defaultReturn;
    }

    //
    // Method to exit the application with an error.
    public static void ErrorExit(string msg, int code=1)
    {
      Console.WriteLine("\nError");
      Console.WriteLine(msg);
      Environment.Exit(code);
    }
  }

}
```

Additional considerations

- After you run the example, you can see the new key pair in the Amazon EC2 console.
- When you create a key pair, you must save the private key that is returned because you can't retrieve the private key later.

Deleting key pairs

This example shows you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to delete a key pair. The application takes the name of a key pair. It deletes the key pair and then displays all available key pairs. If you provide no command-line arguments, the application simply displays all available key pairs.

The following sections provide snippets of this example. The complete code for the example is shown after that, and can be built and run as is.

Topics

- Delete the key pair
- Display available key pairs
- Complete code

Delete the key pair

The following snippet deletes a key pair.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
//
// Method to delete a key pair
private static async Task DeleteKeyPair(IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, string keyName)
{
  await ec2Client.DeleteKeyPairAsync(new DeleteKeyPairRequest{
    KeyName = keyName});
  Console.WriteLine($"\nKey pair {keyName} has been deleted (if it existed).");
}
```

Display available key pairs

The following snippet displays a list of the available key pairs.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
//
// Method to show the key pairs that are available
private static async Task EnumerateKeyPairs(IAmazonEC2 ec2Client)
{
  DescribeKeyPairsResponse response = await ec2Client.DescribeKeyPairsAsync();
  Console.WriteLine("Available key pairs:");
```

```
      foreach (KeyPairInfo item in response.KeyPairs)
        Console.WriteLine($"  {item.KeyName}");
    }
```

Complete code

This section shows relevant references and the complete code for this example.

SDK references

NuGet packages:

- AWSSDK.EC2

Programming elements:

- Namespace Amazon.EC2

  Class AmazonEC2Client
- Namespace Amazon.EC2.Model

  Class DeleteKeyPairRequest

  Class DescribeKeyPairsResponse

  Class KeyPairInfo

The code

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.EC2;
using Amazon.EC2.Model;

namespace EC2DeleteKeyPair
{
  class Program
  {
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
      // Create the EC2 client
      var ec2Client = new AmazonEC2Client();
```

```
      if(args.Length == 1)
      {
        // Delete a key pair (if it exists)
        await DeleteKeyPair(ec2Client, args[0]);

        // Display the key pairs that are left
        await EnumerateKeyPairs(ec2Client);
      }
      else
      {
        Console.WriteLine("\nUsage: EC2DeleteKeyPair keypair-name");
        Console.WriteLine("  keypair-name - The name of the key pair you want to
delete.");
        Console.WriteLine("\nNo arguments specified.");
        Console.Write(
          "Do you want to see a list of the existing key pairs? ((y) or n): ");
        string response = Console.ReadLine();
        if((string.IsNullOrEmpty(response)) || (response.ToLower() == "y"))
          await EnumerateKeyPairs(ec2Client);
      }
    }


    //
    // Method to delete a key pair
    private static async Task DeleteKeyPair(IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, string keyName)
    {
      await ec2Client.DeleteKeyPairAsync(new DeleteKeyPairRequest{
        KeyName = keyName});
      Console.WriteLine($"\nKey pair {keyName} has been deleted (if it existed).");
    }


    //
    // Method to show the key pairs that are available
    private static async Task EnumerateKeyPairs(IAmazonEC2 ec2Client)
    {
      DescribeKeyPairsResponse response = await ec2Client.DescribeKeyPairsAsync();
      Console.WriteLine("Available key pairs:");
      foreach (KeyPairInfo item in response.KeyPairs)
        Console.WriteLine($"  {item.KeyName}");
    }
  }
```

```
}
```

Seeing your Amazon EC2 Regions and Availability Zones

Amazon EC2 is hosted in multiple locations worldwide. These locations are composed of Regions and Availability Zones. Each Region is a separate geographic area that has multiple, isolated locations known as Availability Zones.

To read more about Regions and Availability Zones, see Regions and Zones in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.

This example shows you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to get details about the Regions and Availability Zones related to an EC2 client. The application displays lists of the Regions and Availability Zones available to an EC2 client.

SDK references

NuGet packages:

- AWSSDK.EC2

Programming elements:

- Namespace Amazon.EC2

  Class AmazonEC2Client
- Namespace Amazon.EC2.Model

  Class DescribeAvailabilityZonesResponse

  Class DescribeRegionsResponse

  Class AvailabilityZone

  Class Region

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.EC2;
using Amazon.EC2.Model;
```

```
namespace EC2RegionsAndZones
{
  class Program
  {
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
      Console.WriteLine(
        "Finding the Regions and Availability Zones available to an EC2 client...");

      // Create the EC2 client
      var ec2Client = new AmazonEC2Client();

      // Display the Regions and Availability Zones
      await DescribeRegions(ec2Client);
      await DescribeAvailabilityZones(ec2Client);
    }


    //
    // Method to display Regions
    private static async Task DescribeRegions(IAmazonEC2 ec2Client)
    {
      Console.WriteLine("\nRegions that are enabled for the EC2 client:");
      DescribeRegionsResponse response = await ec2Client.DescribeRegionsAsync();
      foreach (Region region in response.Regions)
        Console.WriteLine(region.RegionName);
    }


    //
    // Method to display Availability Zones
    private static async Task DescribeAvailabilityZones(IAmazonEC2 ec2Client)
    {
      Console.WriteLine("\nAvailability Zones for the EC2 client's region:");
      DescribeAvailabilityZonesResponse response =
        await ec2Client.DescribeAvailabilityZonesAsync();
      foreach (AvailabilityZone az in response.AvailabilityZones)
        Console.WriteLine(az.ZoneName);
    }
  }
}
```

Working with Amazon EC2 instances

You can use the AWS SDK for .NET to control Amazon EC2 instances with operations such as create, start, and terminate. The topics in this section provide some examples of how to do this. To read more about EC2 instances, see Amazon EC2 instances in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.

For information about the APIs and prerequisites, see the parent section (Working with Amazon EC2).

Topics

- Launching an Amazon EC2 instance
- Terminating an Amazon EC2 instance

Launching an Amazon EC2 instance

This example shows you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to launch one or more identically configured Amazon EC2 instances from the same Amazon Machine Image (AMI). Using several inputs that you supply, the application launches an EC2 instance and then monitors the instance until it's out of the "Pending" state.

When your EC2 instance is running, you can connect to it remotely, as described in (optional) Connect to the instance.

> **Warning**
>
> EC2-Classic was retired on August 15, 2022. We recommend that you migrate from EC2-Classic to a VPC. For more information, see the blog post EC2-Classic Networking is Retiring – Here's How to Prepare.

The following sections provide snippets and other information for this example. The complete code for the example is shown after the snippets, and can be built and run as is.

Topics

- Gather what you need
- Launch an instance
- Monitor the instance

- Complete code
- Additional considerations
- (optional) Connect to the instance
- Clean up

Gather what you need

To launch an EC2 instance, you'll need several things.

- A VPC where the instance will be launched. If it'll be a Windows instance and you'll be connecting to it through RDP, the VPC will most likely need to have an internet gateway attached to it, as well as an entry for the internet gateway in the route table. For more information, see Internet gateways in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*.

- The ID of an existing subnet in the VPC where the instance will be launched. An easy way to find or create this is to sign in to the Amazon VPC console, but you can also obtain it programmatically by using the CreateSubnetAsync and DescribeSubnetsAsync methods.

  > **Note**
  >
  > If you don't supply this parameter, the new instance is launched in the default VPC for your account.

- The ID of an existing security group that belongs to the VPC where the instance will be launched. For more information, see Working with security groups in Amazon EC2.

- If you want to connect to the new instance, the security group mentioned earlier must have an appropriate inbound rule that allows SSH traffic on port 22 (Linux instance) or RDP traffic on port 3389 (Windows instance). For information about how to do this see Updating security groups, including the Additional considerations near the end of that topic.

- The Amazon Machine Image (AMI) that will be used to create the instance. For information about AMIs, see Amazon Machine Images (AMIs) in the Amazon EC2 User Guide. In particular, see Find an AMI and Shared AMIs.

- The name of an existing EC2 key pair, which is used to connect to the new instance. For more information, see Working with Amazon EC2 key pairs.

- The name of the PEM file that contains the private key of the EC2 key pair mentioned earlier. The PEM file is used when you connect remotely to the instance.

Launch an instance

The following snippet launches an EC2 instance.

The example near the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
//
// Method to launch the instances
// Returns a list with the launched instance IDs
private static async Task<List<string>> LaunchInstances(
  IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, RunInstancesRequest requestLaunch)
{
  var instanceIds = new List<string>();
  RunInstancesResponse responseLaunch =
    await ec2Client.RunInstancesAsync(requestLaunch);

  Console.WriteLine("\nNew instances have been created.");
  foreach (Instance item in responseLaunch.Reservation.Instances)
  {
    instanceIds.Add(item.InstanceId);
    Console.WriteLine($"  New instance: {item.InstanceId}");
  }

  return instanceIds;
}
```

Monitor the instance

The following snippet monitors the instance until it's out of the "Pending" state.

The example near the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

See the InstanceState class for the valid values of the `Instance.State.Code` property.

```
//
// Method to wait until the instances are running (or at least not pending)
```

```
    private static async Task CheckState(IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, List<string>
 instanceIds)
    {
      Console.WriteLine(
        "\nWaiting for the instances to start." +
        "\nPress any key to stop waiting. (Response might be slightly delayed.)");

      int numberRunning;
      DescribeInstancesResponse responseDescribe;
      var requestDescribe = new DescribeInstancesRequest{
        InstanceIds = instanceIds};

      // Check every couple of seconds
      int wait = 2000;
      while(true)
      {
        // Get and check the status for each of the instances to see if it's past
 pending.
        // Once all instances are past pending, break out.
        // (For this example, we are assuming that there is only one reservation.)
        Console.Write(".");
        numberRunning = 0;
        responseDescribe = await ec2Client.DescribeInstancesAsync(requestDescribe);
        foreach(Instance i in responseDescribe.Reservations[0].Instances)
        {
          // Check the lower byte of State.Code property
          // Code == 0 is the pending state
          if((i.State.Code & 255) > 0) numberRunning++;
        }
        if(numberRunning == responseDescribe.Reservations[0].Instances.Count)
          break;

        // Wait a bit and try again (unless the user wants to stop waiting)
        Thread.Sleep(wait);
        if(Console.KeyAvailable)
          break;
      }

      Console.WriteLine("\nNo more instances are pending.");
      foreach(Instance i in responseDescribe.Reservations[0].Instances)
      {
        Console.WriteLine($"For {i.InstanceId}:");
        Console.WriteLine($"  VPC ID: {i.VpcId}");
        Console.WriteLine($"  Instance state: {i.State.Name}");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"  Public IP address: {i.PublicIpAddress}");
        Console.WriteLine($"  Public DNS name: {i.PublicDnsName}");
        Console.WriteLine($"  Key pair name: {i.KeyName}");
      }
    }
```

Complete code

This section shows relevant references and the complete code for this example.

SDK references

NuGet packages:

- AWSSDK.EC2

Programming elements:

- Namespace Amazon.EC2

  Class AmazonEC2Client

  Class InstanceType
- Namespace Amazon.EC2.Model

  Class DescribeInstancesRequest

  Class DescribeInstancesResponse

  Class Instance

  Class InstanceNetworkInterfaceSpecification

  Class RunInstancesRequest

  Class RunInstancesResponse

The code

```
using System;
using System.Threading;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
```

```
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon.EC2;
using Amazon.EC2.Model;

namespace EC2LaunchInstance
{
  // = = =
```

```
      // Launch the instances and wait for them to start running
      var instanceIds = await LaunchInstances(ec2Client, request);
      await CheckState(ec2Client, instanceIds);
    }


    //
    // Method to put together the properties needed to launch the instance.
    private static RunInstancesRequest GetRequestData(
      string groupID, string ami, string keyPairName, string subnetID)
    {
      // Common properties
      var groupIDs = new List<string>() { groupID };
      var request = new RunInstancesRequest()
      {
        // The first three of these would be additional command-line arguments or
 similar.
        InstanceType = InstanceType.T1Micro,
        MinCount = 1,
        MaxCount = 1,
        ImageId = ami,
        KeyName = keyPairName
      };

      // Properties specifically for EC2 in a VPC.
      if(!string.IsNullOrEmpty(subnetID))
      {
        request.NetworkInterfaces =
          new List<InstanceNetworkInterfaceSpecification>() {
            new InstanceNetworkInterfaceSpecification() {
              DeviceIndex = 0,
              SubnetId = subnetID,
              Groups = groupIDs,
              AssociatePublicIpAddress = true
            }
          };
      }

      // Properties specifically for EC2-Classic
      else
      {
        request.SecurityGroupIds = groupIDs;
      }
```

```
      return request;
    }


    //
    // Method to launch the instances
    // Returns a list with the launched instance IDs
    private static async Task<List<string>> LaunchInstances(
      IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, RunInstancesRequest requestLaunch)
    {
      var instanceIds = new List<string>();
      RunInstancesResponse responseLaunch =
        await ec2Client.RunInstancesAsync(requestLaunch);

      Console.WriteLine("\nNew instances have been created.");
      foreach (Instance item in responseLaunch.Reservation.Instances)
      {
        instanceIds.Add(item.InstanceId);
        Console.WriteLine($"  New instance: {item.InstanceId}");
      }

      return instanceIds;
    }


    //
    // Method to wait until the instances are running (or at least not pending)
    private static async Task CheckState(IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, List<string>
 instanceIds)
    {
      Console.WriteLine(
        "\nWaiting for the instances to start." +
        "\nPress any key to stop waiting. (Response might be slightly delayed.)");

      int numberRunning;
      DescribeInstancesResponse responseDescribe;
      var requestDescribe = new DescribeInstancesRequest{
        InstanceIds = instanceIds};

      // Check every couple of seconds
      int wait = 2000;
      while(true)
      {
```

```
        // Get and check the status for each of the instances to see if it's past
pending.
        // Once all instances are past pending, break out.
        // (For this example, we are assuming that there is only one reservation.)
        Console.Write(".");
        numberRunning = 0;
        responseDescribe = await ec2Client.DescribeInstancesAsync(requestDescribe);
        foreach(Instance i in responseDescribe.Reservations[0].Instances)
        {
          // Check the lower byte of State.Code property
          // Code == 0 is the pending state
          if((i.State.Code & 255) > 0) numberRunning++;
        }
        if(numberRunning == responseDescribe.Reservations[0].Instances.Count)
          break;

        // Wait a bit and try again (unless the user wants to stop waiting)
        Thread.Sleep(wait);
        if(Console.KeyAvailable)
          break;
      }

      Console.WriteLine("\nNo more instances are pending.");
      foreach(Instance i in responseDescribe.Reservations[0].Instances)
      {
        Console.WriteLine($"For {i.InstanceId}:");
        Console.WriteLine($"  VPC ID: {i.VpcId}");
        Console.WriteLine($"  Instance state: {i.State.Name}");
        Console.WriteLine($"  Public IP address: {i.PublicIpAddress}");
        Console.WriteLine($"  Public DNS name: {i.PublicDnsName}");
        Console.WriteLine($"  Key pair name: {i.KeyName}");
      }
    }


    //
    // Command-line help
    private static void PrintHelp()
    {
      Console.WriteLine(
        "\nUsage: EC2LaunchInstance -g <group-id> -a <ami-id> -k <keypair-name> [-s
<subnet-id>]" +
        "\n  -g, --group-id: The ID of the security group." +
        "\n  -a, --ami-id: The ID of an Amazon Machine Image." +
```

```
        "\n  -k, --keypair-name - The name of a key pair." +
        "\n  -s, --subnet-id: The ID of a subnet. Required only for EC2 in a VPC.");
    }
  }


  // = = =
```

```
        // If the first argument in this iteration doesn't start with a dash, it's a
 value
        else
        {
          parsedArgs.Add("--NoKey" + n.ToString(), args[i++]);
          n++;
        }
      }

      return parsedArgs;
    }

    //
    // Method to get an argument from the parsed command-line arguments
    //
    // Parameters:
    // - parsedArgs: The Dictionary object returned from the Parse() method (shown
 above).
    // - defaultValue: The default string to return if the specified key isn't in
 parsedArgs.
    // - keys: An array of keys to look for in parsedArgs.
    public static string GetArgument(
      Dictionary<string,string> parsedArgs, string defaultReturn, params string[] keys)
    {
      string retval = null;
      foreach(var key in keys)
        if(parsedArgs.TryGetValue(key, out retval)) break;
      return retval ?? defaultReturn;
    }

    //
    // Method to exit the application with an error.
    public static void ErrorExit(string msg, int code=1)
    {
      Console.WriteLine("\nError");
      Console.WriteLine(msg);
      Environment.Exit(code);
    }
  }

}
```

Additional considerations

- When checking the state of an EC2 instance, you can add a filter to the `Filter` property of the DescribeInstancesRequest object. Using this technique, you can limit the request to certain instances; for example, instances with a particular user-specified tag.

- For brevity, some properties were given typical values. Any or all of these properties can instead be determined programmatically or by user input.

- The values you can use for the `MinCount` and `MaxCount` properties of the RunInstancesRequest object are determined by the target Availability Zone and the maximum number of instances you're allowed for the instance type. For more information, see How many instances can I run in Amazon EC2 in the Amazon EC2 General FAQ.

- If you want to use a different instance type than this example, there are several instance types to choose from. For more information see Amazon EC2 instance types in the Amazon EC2 User Guide. Also see Instance Type Details and Instance Type Explorer.

- You can also attach an IAM role to an instance when you launch it. To do so, create an IamInstanceProfileSpecification object whose `Name` property is set to the name of an IAM role. Then add that object to the `IamInstanceProfile` property of the RunInstancesRequest object.

  > **Note**
  >
  > To launch an EC2 instance that has an IAM role attached, an IAM user's configuration must include certain permissions. For more information about the required permissions, see the Grant a user permission to pass an IAM role to an instance in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.

(optional) Connect to the instance

After an instance is running, you can connect to it remotely by using the appropriate remote client. For both Linux and Windows instances, you need the instance's public IP address or public DNS name. You also need the following.

For Linux instances

You can use an SSH client to connect to your Linux instance. Make sure that the security group you used when you launched the instance allows SSH traffic on port 22, as described in Updating security groups.

You also need the private portion of the key pair you used to launch the instance; that is, the PEM file.

For more information, see Connect to your Linux instance in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.

For Windows instances

You can use an RDP client to connect to your instance. Make sure that the security group you used when you launched the instance allows RDP traffic on port 3389, as described in Updating security groups.

You also need the Administrator password. You can obtain this by using the following example code, which requires the instance ID and the private portion of the key pair used to launch the instance; that is, the PEM file.

For more information, see Connect to your Windows instance in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.

> **Warning**
>
> This example code returns the plaintext Administrator password for your instance.

SDK references

NuGet packages:

- AWSSDK.EC2

Programming elements:

- Namespace Amazon.EC2

  Class AmazonEC2Client
- Namespace Amazon.EC2.Model

  Class GetPasswordDataRequest

Class GetPasswordDataResponse

The code

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.IO;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.EC2;
using Amazon.EC2.Model;

namespace EC2GetWindowsPassword
{
  // = = =
```

```
      // Get and display the password
      string password = await GetPassword(ec2Client, instanceID, pemFileName);
      Console.WriteLine($"\nPassword: {password}");
    }


    //
    // Method to get the administrator password of a Windows EC2 instance
    private static async Task<string> GetPassword(
      IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, string instanceID, string pemFilename)
    {
      string password = string.Empty;
      GetPasswordDataResponse response =
        await ec2Client.GetPasswordDataAsync(new GetPasswordDataRequest{
          InstanceId = instanceID});
      if(response.PasswordData != null)
      {
        password = response.GetDecryptedPassword(File.ReadAllText(pemFilename));
      }
      else
      {
        Console.WriteLine($"\nThe password is not available for instance
{instanceID}.");
        Console.WriteLine($"If this is a Windows instance, the password might not be
ready.");
      }
      return password;
    }


    //
    // Command-line help
    private static void PrintHelp()
    {
      Console.WriteLine(
        "\nUsage: EC2GetWindowsPassword -i <instance-id> -p pem-filename" +
        "\n  -i, --instance-id: The name of the EC2 instance." +
        "\n  -p, --pem-filename: The name of the PEM file with the private key.");
    }
  }

  // = = =
```

```
 // (This is the same for all examples. When you have seen it once, you can ignore
it.)
 static class CommandLine
 {
   //
   // Method to parse a command line of the form: "--key value" or "-k value".
   //
   // Parameters:
   // - args: The command-line arguments passed into the application by the system.
   //
   // Returns:
   // A Dictionary with string Keys and Values.
   //
   // If a key is found without a matching value, Dictionary.Value is set to the key
   //  (including the dashes).
   // If a value is found without a matching key, Dictionary.Key is set to "--NoKeyN",
   //  where "N" represents sequential numbers.
   public static Dictionary<string,string> Parse(string[] args)
   {
     var parsedArgs = new Dictionary<string,string>();
     int i = 0, n = 0;
     while(i < args.Length)
     {
       // If the first argument in this iteration starts with a dash it's an option.
       if(args[i].StartsWith("-"))
       {
         var key = args[i++];
         var value = key;

         // Check to see if there's a value that goes with this option?
         if((i < args.Length) && (!args[i].StartsWith("-"))) value = args[i++];
         parsedArgs.Add(key, value);
       }

       // If the first argument in this iteration doesn't start with a dash, it's a
value
       else
       {
         parsedArgs.Add("--NoKey" + n.ToString(), args[i++]);
         n++;
       }
     }

     return parsedArgs;
```

```
    }

    //
    // Method to get an argument from the parsed command-line arguments
    //
    // Parameters:
    // - parsedArgs: The Dictionary object returned from the Parse() method (shown
 above).
    // - defaultValue: The default string to return if the specified key isn't in
 parsedArgs.
    // - keys: An array of keys to look for in parsedArgs.
    public static string GetArgument(
      Dictionary<string,string> parsedArgs, string defaultReturn, params string[] keys)
    {
      string retval = null;
      foreach(var key in keys)
        if(parsedArgs.TryGetValue(key, out retval)) break;
      return retval ?? defaultReturn;
    }

    //
    // Method to exit the application with an error.
    public static void ErrorExit(string msg, int code=1)
    {
      Console.WriteLine("\nError");
      Console.WriteLine(msg);
      Environment.Exit(code);
    }
  }

}
```

Clean up

When you no longer need your EC2 instance, be sure to terminate it, as described in Terminating an Amazon EC2 instance.

Terminating an Amazon EC2 instance

When you no longer need one or more of your Amazon EC2 instances, you can terminate them.

This example shows you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to terminate EC2 instances. It takes an instance ID as input.

SDK references

NuGet packages:

- AWSSDK.EC2

Programming elements:

- Namespace Amazon.EC2

  Class AmazonEC2Client
- Namespace Amazon.EC2.Model

  Class TerminateInstancesRequest

  Class TerminateInstancesResponse

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon.EC2;
using Amazon.EC2.Model;

namespace EC2TerminateInstance
{
  class Program
  {
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
      if((args.Length == 1) && (args[0].StartsWith("i-")))
      {
        // Terminate the instance
        var ec2Client = new AmazonEC2Client();
        await TerminateInstance(ec2Client, args[0]);
      }
      else
      {
        Console.WriteLine("\nCommand-line argument missing or incorrect.");
        Console.WriteLine("\nUsage: EC2TerminateInstance instance-ID");
        Console.WriteLine("  instance-ID - The EC2 instance you want to terminate.");
        return;
```

```
      }
    }

    //
    // Method to terminate an EC2 instance
    private static async Task TerminateInstance(IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, string
 instanceID)
    {
      var request = new TerminateInstancesRequest{
        InstanceIds = new List<string>() { instanceID }};
      TerminateInstancesResponse response =
        await ec2Client.TerminateInstancesAsync(new TerminateInstancesRequest{
          InstanceIds = new List<string>() { instanceID }
        });
      foreach (InstanceStateChange item in response.TerminatingInstances)
      {
        Console.WriteLine("Terminated instance: " + item.InstanceId);
        Console.WriteLine("Instance state: " + item.CurrentState.Name);
      }
    }
  }
}
```

After you run the example, it's a good idea to sign in to the Amazon EC2 console to verify that the EC2 instance has been terminated.

Amazon EC2 Spot Instance tutorial

This tutorial shows you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to manage Amazon EC2 Spot Instances.

Overview

Spot Instances enable you to request unused Amazon EC2 capacity for less than the On-Demand price. This can significantly lower your EC2 costs for applications that can be interrupted.

The following is a high-level summary of how Spot Instances are requested and used.

1. Create a Spot Instance request, specifying the maximum price you are willing to pay.
2. When the request is fulfilled, run the instance as you would any other Amazon EC2 instance.
3. Run the instance as long as you want and then terminate it, unless the *Spot Price* changes such that the instance is terminated for you.

4. Clean up the Spot Instance request when you no longer need it so that Spot Instances are no longer created.

This has been a very high level overview of Spot Instances. To gain a better understanding of Spot Instances, see Spot Instances in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.

About this tutorial

As you follow this tutorial, you use the AWS SDK for .NET to do the following:

- Create a Spot Instance request
- Determine when the Spot Instance request has been fulfilled
- Cancel the Spot Instance request
- Terminate associated instances

The following sections provide snippets and other information for this example. The complete code for the example is shown after the snippets, and can be built and run as is.

Topics

- Prerequisites
- Gather what you need
- Creating a Spot Instance request
- Determine the state of your Spot Instance request
- Clean up your Spot Instance requests
- Clean up your Spot Instances
- Complete code
- Additional considerations

Prerequisites

For information about the APIs and prerequisites, see the parent section (Working with Amazon EC2).

Gather what you need

To create a Spot Instance request, you'll need several things.

- The number of instances and their instance type. There are several instance types to choose from. For more information, see Amazon EC2 instance types in the Amazon EC2 User Guide. Also see Instance Type Details and Instance Type Explorer.

  The default number for this tutorial is 1.

- The Amazon Machine Image (AMI) that will be used to create the instance. For information about AMIs, see Amazon Machine Images (AMIs) in the Amazon EC2 User Guide. In particular, see Find an AMI and Shared AMIs.

- The maximum price that you're willing to pay per instance hour. You can see the prices for all instance types (for both On-Demand Instances and Spot Instances) on the Amazon EC2 pricing page. The default price for this tutorial is explained later.

- If you want to connect remotely to an instance, a security group with the appropriate configuration and resources. This is described in Working with security groups in Amazon EC2 and the information about gathering what you need and connecting to an instance in Launching an Amazon EC2 instance. For simplicity, this tutorial uses the security group named **default** that all newer AWS accounts have.

There are many ways to approach requesting Spot Instances. The following are common strategies:

- Make requests that are sure to cost less than on-demand pricing.
- Make requests based on the value of the resulting computation.
- Make requests so as to acquire computing capacity as quickly as possible.

The following explanations refer to the Spot Instance pricing history in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.

Reduce cost below On-Demand

You have a batch processing job that will take a number of hours or days to run. However, you are flexible with respect to when it starts and ends. You want to see if you can complete it for less than the cost of On-Demand Instances.

You examine the Spot Price history for instance types by using either the Amazon EC2 console or the Amazon EC2 API. After you've analyzed the price history for your desired instance type in a given Availability Zone, you have two alternative approaches for your request:

- Specify a request at the upper end of the range of Spot Prices, which are still below the On-Demand price, anticipating that your one-time Spot Instance request would most likely be fulfilled and run for enough consecutive compute time to complete the job.
- Specify a request at the lower end of the price range, and plan to combine many instances launched over time through a persistent request. The instances would run long enough, in aggregate, to complete the job at an even lower total cost.

Pay no more than the value of the result

You have a data processing job to run. You understand the value of the job's results well enough to know how much they're worth in terms of computing costs.

After you've analyzed the Spot Price history for your instance type, you choose a price at which the cost of the computing time is no more than the value of the job's results. You create a persistent request and allow it to run intermittently as the Spot Price fluctuates at or below your request.

Acquire computing capacity quickly

You have an unanticipated, short-term need for additional capacity that's not available through On-Demand Instances. After you've analyzed the Spot Price history for your instance type, you choose a price above the highest historical price to greatly improve the likelihood that your request will be fulfilled quickly and continue computing until it's complete.

After you have gathered what you need and chosen a strategy, you are ready to request a Spot Instance. For this tutorial the default maximum spot-instance price is set to be the same as the On-Demand price (which is $0.003 for this tutorial). Setting the price in this way maximizes the chances that the request will be fulfilled.

Creating a Spot Instance request

The following snippet shows you how to create a Spot Instance request with the elements you gathered earlier.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
    //
```

```
    // Method to create a Spot Instance request
    private static async Task<SpotInstanceRequest> CreateSpotInstanceRequest(
      IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, string amiId, string securityGroupName,
      InstanceType instanceType, string spotPrice, int instanceCount)
    {
      var launchSpecification = new LaunchSpecification{
        ImageId = amiId,
        InstanceType = instanceType
      };
      launchSpecification.SecurityGroups.Add(securityGroupName);
      var request = new RequestSpotInstancesRequest{
        SpotPrice = spotPrice,
        InstanceCount = instanceCount,
        LaunchSpecification = launchSpecification
      };

      RequestSpotInstancesResponse result =
        await ec2Client.RequestSpotInstancesAsync(request);
      return result.SpotInstanceRequests[0];
    }
```

The important value returned from this method is the Spot Instance request ID, which is contained in the `SpotInstanceRequestId` member of the returned SpotInstanceRequest object.

> **Note**
>
> You will be charged for any Spot Instances that are launched. To avoid unnecessary costs be sure to cancel any requests and terminate any instances.

Determine the state of your Spot Instance request

The following snippet shows you how to get information about your Spot Instance request. You can use that information to make certain decisions in your code, such as whether to continue waiting for a Spot Instance request to be fulfilled.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
    //
    // Method to get information about a Spot Instance request, including the status,
    // instance ID, etc.
    // It gets the information for a specific request (as opposed to all requests).
```

```
    private static async Task<SpotInstanceRequest> GetSpotInstanceRequestInfo(
      IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, string requestId)
    {
      var describeRequest = new DescribeSpotInstanceRequestsRequest();
      describeRequest.SpotInstanceRequestIds.Add(requestId);

      DescribeSpotInstanceRequestsResponse describeResponse =
        await ec2Client.DescribeSpotInstanceRequestsAsync(describeRequest);
      return describeResponse.SpotInstanceRequests[0];
    }
```

The method returns information about the Spot Instance request such as the instance ID, it's state, and the status code. For more information about the status codes for Spot Instance requests, see Spot request status in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.

Clean up your Spot Instance requests

When you no longer need to request Spot Instances, it's important to cancel any outstanding requests to prevent those requests from being re-fulfilled. The following snippet shows you how to cancel a Spot Instance request.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
    //
    // Method to cancel a Spot Instance request
    private static async Task CancelSpotInstanceRequest(
      IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, string requestId)
    {
      var cancelRequest = new CancelSpotInstanceRequestsRequest();
      cancelRequest.SpotInstanceRequestIds.Add(requestId);

      await ec2Client.CancelSpotInstanceRequestsAsync(cancelRequest);
    }
```

Clean up your Spot Instances

To avoid unnecessary costs, it's important that you terminate any instances that were started from Spot Instance requests; simply canceling Spot Instance requests will not terminate your instances, which means that you'll continue to be charged for them. The following snippet shows you how to terminate an instance after you obtain the instance identifier for an active Spot Instance.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
    //
    // Method to terminate a Spot Instance
    private static async Task TerminateSpotInstance(
      IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, string requestId)
    {
      var describeRequest = new DescribeSpotInstanceRequestsRequest();
      describeRequest.SpotInstanceRequestIds.Add(requestId);

      // Retrieve the Spot Instance request to check for running instances.
      DescribeSpotInstanceRequestsResponse describeResponse =
        await ec2Client.DescribeSpotInstanceRequestsAsync(describeRequest);

      // If there are any running instances, terminate them
      if(   (describeResponse.SpotInstanceRequests[0].Status.Code
              == "request-canceled-and-instance-running")
         || (describeResponse.SpotInstanceRequests[0].State ==
SpotInstanceState.Active))
      {
        TerminateInstancesResponse response =
          await ec2Client.TerminateInstancesAsync(new TerminateInstancesRequest{
            InstanceIds = new List<string>(){
              describeResponse.SpotInstanceRequests[0].InstanceId } });
        foreach (InstanceStateChange item in response.TerminatingInstances)
        {
          Console.WriteLine($"\n  Terminated instance: {item.InstanceId}");
          Console.WriteLine($"  Instance state: {item.CurrentState.Name}\n");
        }
      }
    }
```

Complete code

The following code example calls the methods described earlier to create and cancel a Spot Instance request and terminate a Spot Instance.

SDK references

NuGet packages:

- AWSSDK.EC2

Programming elements:

- Namespace Amazon.EC2

  Class AmazonEC2Client

  Class InstanceType

- Namespace Amazon.EC2.Model

  Class CancelSpotInstanceRequestsRequest

  Class DescribeSpotInstanceRequestsRequest

  Class DescribeSpotInstanceRequestsResponse

  Class InstanceStateChange

  Class LaunchSpecification

  Class RequestSpotInstancesRequest

  Class RequestSpotInstancesResponse

  Class SpotInstanceRequest

  Class TerminateInstancesRequest

  Class TerminateInstancesResponse

The code

```
using System;
using System.Threading;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon.EC2;
using Amazon.EC2.Model;

namespace EC2SpotInstanceRequests
{
  class Program
  {
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
```

```
    {
      // Some default values.
      // These could be made into command-line arguments instead.
      var instanceType = InstanceType.T1Micro;
      string securityGroupName = "default";
      string spotPrice = "0.003";
      int instanceCount = 1;

      // Parse the command line arguments
      if((args.Length != 1) || (!args[0].StartsWith("ami-")))
      {
        Console.WriteLine("\nUsage: EC2SpotInstanceRequests ami");
        Console.WriteLine("  ami: the Amazon Machine Image to use for the Spot
 Instances.");
        return;
      }

      // Create the Amazon EC2 client.
      var ec2Client = new AmazonEC2Client();

      // Create the Spot Instance request and record its ID
      Console.WriteLine("\nCreating spot instance request...");
      var req = await CreateSpotInstanceRequest(
        ec2Client, args[0], securityGroupName, instanceType, spotPrice, instanceCount);
      string requestId = req.SpotInstanceRequestId;

      // Wait for an EC2 Spot Instance to become active
      Console.WriteLine(
        $"Waiting for Spot Instance request with ID {requestId} to become active...");
      int wait = 1;
      var start = DateTime.Now;
      while(true)
      {
        Console.Write(".");

        // Get and check the status to see if the request has been fulfilled.
        var requestInfo = await GetSpotInstanceRequestInfo(ec2Client, requestId);
        if(requestInfo.Status.Code == "fulfilled")
        {
          Console.WriteLine($"\nSpot Instance request {requestId} " +
            $"has been fulfilled by instance {requestInfo.InstanceId}.\n");
          break;
        }
```

```
        // Wait a bit and try again, longer each time (1, 2, 4, ...)
        Thread.Sleep(wait);
        wait = wait * 2;
      }

      // Show the user how long it took to fulfill the Spot Instance request.
      TimeSpan span = DateTime.Now.Subtract(start);
      Console.WriteLine($"That took {span.TotalMilliseconds} milliseconds");

      // Perform actions here as needed.
      // For this example, simply wait for the user to hit a key.
      // That gives them a chance to look at the EC2 console to see
      // the running instance if they want to.
      Console.WriteLine("Press any key to start the cleanup...");
      Console.ReadKey(true);

      // Cancel the request.
      // Do this first to make sure that the request can't be re-fulfilled
      // once the Spot Instance has been terminated.
      Console.WriteLine("Canceling Spot Instance request...");
      await CancelSpotInstanceRequest(ec2Client, requestId);

      // Terminate the Spot Instance that's running.
      Console.WriteLine("Terminating the running Spot Instance...");
      await TerminateSpotInstance(ec2Client, requestId);

      Console.WriteLine("Done. Press any key to exit...");
      Console.ReadKey(true);
    }


    //
    // Method to create a Spot Instance request
    private static async Task<SpotInstanceRequest> CreateSpotInstanceRequest(
      IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, string amiId, string securityGroupName,
      InstanceType instanceType, string spotPrice, int instanceCount)
    {
      var launchSpecification = new LaunchSpecification{
        ImageId = amiId,
        InstanceType = instanceType
      };
      launchSpecification.SecurityGroups.Add(securityGroupName);
      var request = new RequestSpotInstancesRequest{
        SpotPrice = spotPrice,
```

```
        InstanceCount = instanceCount,
        LaunchSpecification = launchSpecification
      };

      RequestSpotInstancesResponse result =
        await ec2Client.RequestSpotInstancesAsync(request);
      return result.SpotInstanceRequests[0];
    }


    //
    // Method to get information about a Spot Instance request, including the status,
    // instance ID, etc.
    // It gets the information for a specific request (as opposed to all requests).
    private static async Task<SpotInstanceRequest> GetSpotInstanceRequestInfo(
      IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, string requestId)
    {
      var describeRequest = new DescribeSpotInstanceRequestsRequest();
      describeRequest.SpotInstanceRequestIds.Add(requestId);

      DescribeSpotInstanceRequestsResponse describeResponse =
        await ec2Client.DescribeSpotInstanceRequestsAsync(describeRequest);
      return describeResponse.SpotInstanceRequests[0];
    }


    //
    // Method to cancel a Spot Instance request
    private static async Task CancelSpotInstanceRequest(
      IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, string requestId)
    {
      var cancelRequest = new CancelSpotInstanceRequestsRequest();
      cancelRequest.SpotInstanceRequestIds.Add(requestId);

      await ec2Client.CancelSpotInstanceRequestsAsync(cancelRequest);
    }


    //
    // Method to terminate a Spot Instance
    private static async Task TerminateSpotInstance(
      IAmazonEC2 ec2Client, string requestId)
    {
      var describeRequest = new DescribeSpotInstanceRequestsRequest();
```

```
      describeRequest.SpotInstanceRequestIds.Add(requestId);

      // Retrieve the Spot Instance request to check for running instances.
      DescribeSpotInstanceRequestsResponse describeResponse =
        await ec2Client.DescribeSpotInstanceRequestsAsync(describeRequest);

      // If there are any running instances, terminate them
      if(   (describeResponse.SpotInstanceRequests[0].Status.Code
              == "request-canceled-and-instance-running")
         || (describeResponse.SpotInstanceRequests[0].State ==
 SpotInstanceState.Active))
      {
        TerminateInstancesResponse response =
          await ec2Client.TerminateInstancesAsync(new TerminateInstancesRequest{
            InstanceIds = new List<string>(){
              describeResponse.SpotInstanceRequests[0].InstanceId } });
        foreach (InstanceStateChange item in response.TerminatingInstances)
        {
          Console.WriteLine($"\n  Terminated instance: {item.InstanceId}");
          Console.WriteLine($"  Instance state: {item.CurrentState.Name}\n");
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Additional considerations

- After you run the tutorial, it's a good idea to sign in to the Amazon EC2 console to verify that the Spot Instance request has been canceled and that the Spot Instance has been terminated.

Accessing AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) with the AWS SDK for .NET

The AWS SDK for .NET supports AWS Identity and Access Management, which is a web service that enables AWS customers to manage users and user permissions in AWS.

An AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) *user* is an entity that you create in AWS. The entity represents a person or application that interacts with AWS. For more information about IAM users, see IAM Users and IAM and STS Limits in the IAM User Guide.

You grant permissions to a user by creating an IAM *policy*. The policy contains a *policy document* that lists the actions that a user can perform and the resources those actions can affect. For more information about IAM policies, see Policies and Permissions in the *IAM User Guide*.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

APIs

The AWS SDK for .NET provides APIs for IAM clients. The APIs enable you to work with IAM features such as users, roles, and access keys.

This section contains a small number of examples that show you the patterns you can follow when working with these APIs. To view the full set of APIs, see the AWS SDK for .NET API Reference (and scroll to "Amazon.IdentityManagement").

This section also contains an example that shows you how to attach an IAM role to Amazon EC2 instances to make managing credentials easier.

The IAM APIs are provided by the AWSSDK.IdentityManagement NuGet package.

Prerequisites

Before you begin, be sure you have set up your environment and project. Also review the information in SDK features.

Topics

Topics

- Creating IAM managed policies from JSON
- Display the policy document of an IAM managed policy
- Granting access by using an IAM role

Creating IAM managed policies from JSON

This example shows you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to create an IAM managed policy from a given policy document in JSON. The application creates an IAM client object, reads the policy document from a file, and then creates the policy.

> **Note**
>
> For an example policy document in JSON, see the additional considerations at the end of this topic.

The following sections provide snippets of this example. The complete code for the example is shown after that, and can be built and run as is.

Topics

- Create the policy
- Complete code
- Additional considerations

Create the policy

The following snippet creates an IAM managed policy with the given name and policy document.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
    //
    // Method to create an IAM policy from a JSON file
    private static async Task<CreatePolicyResponse> CreateManagedPolicy(
      IAmazonIdentityManagementService iamClient, string policyName, string
jsonFilename)
    {
      return await iamClient.CreatePolicyAsync(new CreatePolicyRequest{
        PolicyName = policyName,
        PolicyDocument = File.ReadAllText(jsonFilename)});
    }
```

Complete code

This section shows relevant references and the complete code for this example.

SDK references

NuGet packages:

- AWSSDK.IdentityManagement

Programming elements:

- Namespace Amazon.IdentityManagement

  Class AmazonIdentityManagementServiceClient
- Namespace Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model

  Class CreatePolicyRequest

  Class CreatePolicyResponse

The code

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.IO;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.IdentityManagement;
using Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model;

namespace IamCreatePolicyFromJson
{
  // = = =
```

```
        return;
      }

      // Get the application arguments from the parsed list
      string policyName =
        CommandLine.GetArgument(parsedArgs, null, "-p", "--policy-name");
      string policyFilename =
        CommandLine.GetArgument(parsedArgs, null, "-j", "--json-filename");
      if(   string.IsNullOrEmpty(policyName)
         || (string.IsNullOrEmpty(policyFilename) || !
policyFilename.EndsWith(".json")))
        CommandLine.ErrorExit(
          "\nOne or more of the required arguments is missing or incorrect." +
          "\nRun the command with no arguments to see help.");

      // Create an IAM service client
      var iamClient = new AmazonIdentityManagementServiceClient();

      // Create the new policy
      var response = await CreateManagedPolicy(iamClient, policyName, policyFilename);
      Console.WriteLine($"\nPolicy {response.Policy.PolicyName} has been created.");
      Console.WriteLine($"  Arn: {response.Policy.Arn}");
    }


    //
    // Method to create an IAM policy from a JSON file
    private static async Task<CreatePolicyResponse> CreateManagedPolicy(
      IAmazonIdentityManagementService iamClient, string policyName, string
 jsonFilename)
    {
      return await iamClient.CreatePolicyAsync(new CreatePolicyRequest{
        PolicyName = policyName,
        PolicyDocument = File.ReadAllText(jsonFilename)});
    }


    //
    // Command-line help
    private static void PrintHelp()
    {
      Console.WriteLine(
        "\nUsage: IamCreatePolicyFromJson -p <policy-name> -j <json-filename>" +
        "\n  -p, --policy-name: The name you want the new policy to have." +
```

```
        "\n  -j, --json-filename: The name of the JSON file with the policy
document.");
    }
  }


  // = = =
```

```
        // If the first argument in this iteration doesn't start with a dash, it's a
 value
        else
        {
          parsedArgs.Add("--NoKey" + n.ToString(), args[i++]);
          n++;
        }
      }

      return parsedArgs;
    }

    //
    // Method to get an argument from the parsed command-line arguments
    //
    // Parameters:
    // - parsedArgs: The Dictionary object returned from the Parse() method (shown
 above).
    // - defaultValue: The default string to return if the specified key isn't in
 parsedArgs.
    // - keys: An array of keys to look for in parsedArgs.
    public static string GetArgument(
      Dictionary<string,string> parsedArgs, string defaultReturn, params string[] keys)
    {
      string retval = null;
      foreach(var key in keys)
        if(parsedArgs.TryGetValue(key, out retval)) break;
      return retval ?? defaultReturn;
    }

    //
    // Method to exit the application with an error.
    public static void ErrorExit(string msg, int code=1)
    {
      Console.WriteLine("\nError");
      Console.WriteLine(msg);
      Environment.Exit(code);
    }
  }

}
```

Additional considerations

- The following is an example policy document that you can copy into a JSON file and use as input for this application:

  JSON

```
{
  "Version":"2012-10-17",
  "Id"  : "DotnetTutorialPolicy",
  "Statement" : [
    {
      "Sid" : "DotnetTutorialPolicyS3",
      "Effect" : "Allow",
      "Action" : [
        "s3:Get*",
        "s3:List*"
      ],
      "Resource" : "*"
    },
    {
      "Sid" : "DotnetTutorialPolicyPolly",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "polly:DescribeVoices",
        "polly:SynthesizeSpeech"
      ],
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}
```

- You can verify that the policy was created by looking in the IAM console. In the **Filter policies** drop-down list, select **Customer managed**. Delete the policy when you no longer need it.

- For more information about policy creation, see Creating IAM policies and the IAM JSON policy reference in the IAM User Guide

Display the policy document of an IAM managed policy

This example shows you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to display a policy document. The application creates an IAM client object, finds the default version of the given IAM managed policy, and then displays the policy document in JSON.

The following sections provide snippets of this example. The complete code for the example is shown after that, and can be built and run as is.

Topics

- Find the default version
- Display the policy document
- Complete code

Find the default version

The following snippet finds the default version of the given IAM policy.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
//
// Method to determine the default version of an IAM policy
// Returns a string with the version
private static async Task<string> GetDefaultVersion(
  IAmazonIdentityManagementService iamClient, string policyArn)
{
  // Retrieve all the versions of this policy
  string defaultVersion = string.Empty;
  ListPolicyVersionsResponse reponseVersions =
    await iamClient.ListPolicyVersionsAsync(new ListPolicyVersionsRequest{
      PolicyArn = policyArn});

  // Find the default version
  foreach(PolicyVersion version in reponseVersions.Versions)
  {
    if(version.IsDefaultVersion)
    {
      defaultVersion = version.VersionId;
      break;
    }
  }
```

```
    return defaultVersion;
  }
```

Display the policy document

The following snippet displays the policy document in JSON of the given IAM policy.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
  //
  // Method to retrieve and display the policy document of an IAM policy
  private static async Task ShowPolicyDocument(
    IAmazonIdentityManagementService iamClient, string policyArn, string
defaultVersion)
  {
    // Retrieve the policy document of the default version
    GetPolicyVersionResponse responsePolicy =
      await iamClient.GetPolicyVersionAsync(new GetPolicyVersionRequest{
        PolicyArn = policyArn,
        VersionId = defaultVersion});

    // Display the policy document (in JSON)
    Console.WriteLine($"Version {defaultVersion} of the policy (in JSON format):");
    Console.WriteLine(
      $"{HttpUtility.UrlDecode(responsePolicy.PolicyVersion.Document)}");
  }
```

Complete code

This section shows relevant references and the complete code for this example.

SDK references

NuGet packages:

- AWSSDK.IdentityManagement

Programming elements:

- Namespace Amazon.IdentityManagement

  Class AmazonIdentityManagementServiceClient

- Namespace Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model

  Class GetPolicyVersionRequest

  Class GetPolicyVersionResponse

  Class ListPolicyVersionsRequest

  Class ListPolicyVersionsResponse

  Class PolicyVersion

The code

```
using System;
using System.Web;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.IdentityManagement;
using Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model;

namespace IamDisplayPolicyJson
{
  class Program
  {
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
      // Parse the command line and show help if necessary
      if(args.Length != 1)
      {
        Console.WriteLine("\nUsage: IamDisplayPolicyJson policy-arn");
        Console.WriteLine("   policy-arn: The ARN of the policy to retrieve.");
        return;
      }
      if(!args[0].StartsWith("arn:"))
      {
        Console.WriteLine("\nCould not find policy ARN in the command-line
 arguments:");
        Console.WriteLine($"{args[0]}");
        return;
      }

      // Create an IAM service client
      var iamClient = new AmazonIdentityManagementServiceClient();
```

```
      // Retrieve and display the policy document of the given policy
      string defaultVersion = await GetDefaultVersion(iamClient, args[0]);
      if(string.IsNullOrEmpty(defaultVersion))
        Console.WriteLine($"Could not find the default version for policy {args[0]}.");
      else
        await ShowPolicyDocument(iamClient, args[0], defaultVersion);
    }


    //
    // Method to determine the default version of an IAM policy
    // Returns a string with the version
    private static async Task<string> GetDefaultVersion(
      IAmazonIdentityManagementService iamClient, string policyArn)
    {
      // Retrieve all the versions of this policy
      string defaultVersion = string.Empty;
      ListPolicyVersionsResponse reponseVersions =
        await iamClient.ListPolicyVersionsAsync(new ListPolicyVersionsRequest{
          PolicyArn = policyArn});

      // Find the default version
      foreach(PolicyVersion version in reponseVersions.Versions)
      {
        if(version.IsDefaultVersion)
        {
          defaultVersion = version.VersionId;
          break;
        }
      }

      return defaultVersion;
    }


    //
    // Method to retrieve and display the policy document of an IAM policy
    private static async Task ShowPolicyDocument(
      IAmazonIdentityManagementService iamClient, string policyArn, string
  defaultVersion)
    {
      // Retrieve the policy document of the default version
      GetPolicyVersionResponse responsePolicy =
```

```
        await iamClient.GetPolicyVersionAsync(new GetPolicyVersionRequest{
          PolicyArn = policyArn,
          VersionId = defaultVersion});

      // Display the policy document (in JSON)
      Console.WriteLine($"Version {defaultVersion} of the policy (in JSON format):");
      Console.WriteLine(
        $"{HttpUtility.UrlDecode(responsePolicy.PolicyVersion.Document)}");
    }
  }
}
```

Granting access by using an IAM role

This tutorial shows you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to enable IAM roles on Amazon EC2 instances.

Overview

All requests to AWS must be cryptographically signed by using credentials issued by AWS. Therefore, you need a strategy to manage credentials for applications that run on Amazon EC2 instances. You have to distribute, store, and rotate these credentials securely, but also keep them accessible to the applications.

With IAM roles, you can effectively manage these credentials. You create an IAM role and configure it with the permissions that an application requires, and then attach that role to an EC2 instance. To read more about the benefits of using IAM roles, see IAM roles for Amazon EC2 in the Amazon EC2 User Guide. Also see the information about IAM Roles in the IAM User Guide.

For an application that is built using the AWS SDK for .NET, when the application constructs a client object for an AWS service, the object searches for credentials from several potential sources. The order in which it searches is shown in Credential and profile resolution.

If the client object doesn't find credentials from any other source, it retrieves temporary credentials that have the same permissions as those that have been configured into the IAM role and are in the metadata of the EC2 instance. These credentials are used to make calls to AWS from the client object.

About this tutorial

As you follow this tutorial, you use the AWS SDK for .NET (and other tools) to launch an Amazon EC2 instance with an IAM role attached, and then see an application on the instance using the permissions of the IAM role.

Topics

- Create a sample Amazon S3 application
- Create an IAM role
- Launch an EC2 instance and attach the IAM role
- Connect to the EC2 instance
- Run the sample application on the EC2 instance
- Clean up

Create a sample Amazon S3 application

This sample application retrieves an object from Amazon S3. To run the application, you need the following:

- An Amazon S3 bucket that contains a text file.
- AWS credentials on your development machine that allow you to access to the bucket.

For information about creating an Amazon S3 bucket and uploading an object, see the Amazon Simple Storage Service User Guide. For information about AWS credentials, see Configure SDK authentication with AWS.

Create a .NET Core project with the following code. Then test the application on your development machine.

> **Note**
>
> On your development machine, the .NET Core Runtime is installed, which enables you to run the application without publishing it. When you create an EC2 instance later in this tutorial, you can choose to install the .NET Core Runtime on the instance. This gives you a similar experience and a smaller file transfer.

However, you can also choose not to install the .NET Core Runtime on the instance. If you choose this course of action, you must publish the application so that all dependencies are included when you transfer it to the instance.

SDK references

NuGet packages:

- AWSSDK.S3

Programming elements:

- Namespace Amazon.S3

  Class AmazonS3Client
- Namespace Amazon.S3.Model

  Class GetObjectResponse

The code

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.IO;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

namespace S3GetTextItem
{
  // = = =
```

```
      {
        PrintHelp();
        return;
      }

      // Get the application arguments from the parsed list
      string bucket =
        CommandLine.GetArgument(parsedArgs, null, "-b", "--bucket-name");
      string item =
        CommandLine.GetArgument(parsedArgs, null, "-t", "--text-object");
      string outFile =
        CommandLine.GetArgument(parsedArgs, null, "-o", "--output-filename");
      if(   string.IsNullOrEmpty(bucket)
         || string.IsNullOrEmpty(item)
         || string.IsNullOrEmpty(outFile))
        CommandLine.ErrorExit(
          "\nOne or more of the required arguments is missing or incorrect." +
          "\nRun the command with no arguments to see help.");

      // Create the S3 client object and get the file object from the bucket.
      var response = await GetObject(new AmazonS3Client(), bucket, item);

      // Write the contents of the file object to the given output file.
      var reader = new StreamReader(response.ResponseStream);
      string contents = reader.ReadToEnd();
      using (var s = new FileStream(outFile, FileMode.Create))
      using (var writer = new StreamWriter(s))
        writer.WriteLine(contents);
    }


    //
    // Method to get an object from an S3 bucket.
    private static async Task<GetObjectResponse> GetObject(
      IAmazonS3 s3Client, string bucket, string item)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"Retrieving {item} from bucket {bucket}.");
        return await s3Client.GetObjectAsync(bucket, item);
    }


    //
    // Command-line help
    private static void PrintHelp()
```

```
    {
      Console.WriteLine(
        "\nUsage: S3GetTextItem -b <bucket-name> -t <text-object> -o <output-filename>"
+
        "\n  -b, --bucket-name: The name of the S3 bucket." +
        "\n  -t, --text-object: The name of the text object in the bucket." +
        "\n  -o, --output-filename: The name of the file to write the text to.");
    }
  }


  // = = =
```

```
          if((i < args.Length) && (!args[i].StartsWith("-"))) value = args[i++];
          parsedArgs.Add(key, value);
        }

        // If the first argument in this iteration doesn't start with a dash, it's a
value
        else
        {
          parsedArgs.Add("--NoKey" + n.ToString(), args[i++]);
          n++;
        }
      }

      return parsedArgs;
    }

    //
    // Method to get an argument from the parsed command-line arguments
    //
    // Parameters:
    // - parsedArgs: The Dictionary object returned from the Parse() method (shown
above).
    // - defaultValue: The default string to return if the specified key isn't in
parsedArgs.
    // - keys: An array of keys to look for in parsedArgs.
    public static string GetArgument(
      Dictionary<string,string> parsedArgs, string defaultReturn, params string[] keys)
    {
      string retval = null;
      foreach(var key in keys)
        if(parsedArgs.TryGetValue(key, out retval)) break;
      return retval ?? defaultReturn;
    }

    //
    // Method to exit the application with an error.
    public static void ErrorExit(string msg, int code=1)
    {
      Console.WriteLine("\nError");
      Console.WriteLine(msg);
      Environment.Exit(code);
    }
  }
```

```
}
```

If you want, you can temporarily remove the credentials you use on your development machine to see how the application responds. (But be sure to restore the credentials when you're finished.)

Create an IAM role

Create an IAM role that has the appropriate permissions to access Amazon S3.

1. Open the IAM console.
2. In the navigation pane, choose **Roles**, and then choose **Create Role**.
3. Select **AWS service**, find and choose **EC2**, and choose **Next: Permissions**.
4. Under **Attach permissions policies**, find and select **AmazonS3ReadOnlyAccess**. Review the policy if you want to, and then choose **Next: Tags**.
5. Add tags if you want and then choose **Next: Review**.
6. Type a name and description for the role, and then choose **Create role**. Remember this name because you'll need it when you launch your EC2 instance.

Launch an EC2 instance and attach the IAM role

Launch an EC2 instance with the IAM role you created previously. You can do so in the following ways.

- **Using the EC2 console**

  To launch an instance by using the EC2 console, see Launch an instance using the new launch instance wizard in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.

  As you look through the launch page, you should at least expand the **Advanced details** pane so that you can specify the IAM role you created earlier in **IAM instance profile**.

- **Using the AWS SDK for .NET**

  For information about this, see Launching an Amazon EC2 instance, including the Additional considerations near the end of that topic.

To launch an EC2 instance that has an IAM role attached, an IAM user's configuration must include certain permissions. For more information about the required permissions, see Grant a user permission to pass an IAM role to an instance in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.

Connect to the EC2 instance

Connect to the EC2 instance so that you can transfer the sample application to it and then run the application. You'll need the file that contains the private portion of the key pair you used to launch the instance; that is, the PEM file.

For information about connecting to an instance, see Connect to your Linux instance or Connect to your Windows instance in the Amazon EC2 User Guide. When you connect, do so in such a way that you can transfer files from your development machine to your instance.

If you're using Visual Studio on Windows, you can also connect to the instance by using the Toolkit for Visual Studio. For more information, see Connecting to an Amazon EC2 Instance in the AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio User Guide.

Run the sample application on the EC2 instance

1. Copy the application files from your local drive to your instance.

   Which files you transfer depends on how you built the application and whether your instance has the .NET Core Runtime installed. For information about how to transfer files to your instance, see Connect to your Linux instance (see the appropriate sub-section) or Transfer files to Windows instances in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.
2. Start the application and verify that it runs with the same results as on your development machine.
3. Verify that the application uses the credentials provided by the IAM role.

   a. Open the Amazon EC2 console.
   b. Select the instance and detach the IAM role through **Actions**, **Instance Settings**, **Attach/Replace IAM Role**.
   c. Run the application again and see that it returns an authorization error.

Clean up

When you are finished with this tutorial, and if you no longer want the EC2 instance you created, be sure to terminate the instance to avoid unwanted cost. You can do so in the Amazon EC2

console or programmatically, as described in Terminating an Amazon EC2 instance. If you want to, you can also delete other resources that you created for this tutorial. These might include an IAM role, an EC2 keypair and PEM file, a security group, etc.

Using Amazon Simple Storage Service Internet storage

The AWS SDK for .NET supports Amazon S3, which is storage for the Internet. It is designed to make web-scale computing easier for developers.

APIs

The AWS SDK for .NET provides APIs for Amazon S3 clients. The APIs enable you to work with Amazon S3 resources such as buckets and items. To view the full set of APIs for Amazon S3, see the following:

- AWS SDK for .NET API Reference (and scroll to "Amazon.S3").
- Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption documentation

The Amazon S3 APIs are provided by the following NuGet packages:

- AWSSDK.S3
- Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption

Prerequisites

Before you begin, be sure you have set up your environment and project. Also review the information in SDK features.

Examples in this document

The following topics in this document show you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to work with Amazon S3.

- Using KMS keys for S3 encryption

Examples in other documents

The following links to the Amazon S3 Developer Guide provide additional examples of how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to work with Amazon S3.

> **Note**
>
> Although these examples and additional programming considerations were created for Version 3 of the AWS SDK for .NET using .NET Framework, they are also viable for later versions of the AWS SDK for .NET using .NET Core. Small adjustments in the code are sometimes necessary.

Amazon S3 programming examples

- Managing ACLs
- Creating a Bucket
- Upload an Object
- Multipart Upload with the High-Level API (Amazon.S3.Transfer.TransferUtility)
- Multipart Upload with the Low-Level API
- Listing Objects
- Listing Keys
- Get an Object
- Copy an Object
- Copy an Object with the Multipart Upload API
- Deleting an Object
- Deleting Multiple Objects
- Restore an Object
- Configure a Bucket for Notifications
- Manage an Object's Lifecycle
- Generate a Pre-signed Object URL
- Managing Websites
- Enabling Cross-Origin Resource Sharing (CORS)

Additional programming considerations

- Using the AWS SDK for .NET for Amazon S3 Programming

- Making Requests Using IAM User Temporary Credentials
- Making Requests Using Federated User Temporary Credentials
- Specifying Server-Side Encryption
- Specifying Server-Side Encryption with Customer-Provided Encryption Keys

Using AWS KMS keys for Amazon S3 encryption in the AWS SDK for .NET

This example shows you how to use AWS Key Management Service keys to encrypt Amazon S3 objects. The application creates a customer master key (CMK) and uses it to create an AmazonS3EncryptionClientV2 object for client-side encryption. The application uses that client to create an encrypted object from a given text file in an existing Amazon S3 bucket. It then decrypts the object and displays its contents.

> **Warning**
>
> A similar class called `AmazonS3EncryptionClient` is deprecated and is less secure than the `AmazonS3EncryptionClientV2` class. To migrate existing code that uses `AmazonS3EncryptionClient`, see S3 Encryption Client Migration (V1 to V2).

Topics

- Create encryption materials
- Create and encrypt an Amazon S3 object
- Complete code
- Additional considerations

Create encryption materials

The following snippet creates an `EncryptionMaterials` object that contains a KMS key ID.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
      // Create a customer master key (CMK) and store the result
      CreateKeyResponse createKeyResponse =
        await new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient().CreateKeyAsync(new
CreateKeyRequest());
```

```
    var kmsEncryptionContext = new Dictionary<string, string>();
    var kmsEncryptionMaterials = new EncryptionMaterialsV2(
      createKeyResponse.KeyMetadata.KeyId, KmsType.KmsContext, kmsEncryptionContext);
```

Create and encrypt an Amazon S3 object

The following snippet creates an `AmazonS3EncryptionClientV2` object that uses the encryption materials created earlier. It then uses the client to create and encrypt a new Amazon S3 object.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
  //
  // Method to create and encrypt an object in an S3 bucket
  static async Task<GetObjectResponse> CreateAndRetrieveObjectAsync(
    EncryptionMaterialsV2 materials, string bucketName,
    string fileName, string itemName)
  {
    // CryptoStorageMode.ObjectMetadata is required for KMS EncryptionMaterials
    var config = new AmazonS3CryptoConfigurationV2(SecurityProfile.V2AndLegacy)
    {
      StorageMode = CryptoStorageMode.ObjectMetadata
    };
    var s3EncClient = new AmazonS3EncryptionClientV2(config, materials);

    // Create, encrypt, and put the object
    await s3EncClient.PutObjectAsync(new PutObjectRequest
    {
      BucketName = bucketName,
      Key = itemName,
      ContentBody = File.ReadAllText(fileName)
    });

    // Get, decrypt, and return the object
    return await s3EncClient.GetObjectAsync(new GetObjectRequest
    {
      BucketName = bucketName,
      Key = itemName
    });
  }
```

Complete code

This section shows relevant references and the complete code for this example.

SDK references

NuGet packages:

- Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption

Programming elements:

- Namespace Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption

  Class AmazonS3EncryptionClientV2

  Class AmazonS3CryptoConfigurationV2

  Class CryptoStorageMode

  Class EncryptionMaterialsV2
- Namespace Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption.Primitives

  Class KmsType
- Namespace Amazon.S3.Model

  Class GetObjectRequest

  Class GetObjectResponse

  Class PutObjectRequest
- Namespace Amazon.KeyManagementService

  Class AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient
- Namespace Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model

  Class CreateKeyRequest

  Class CreateKeyResponse

The code

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
```

```
using System.IO;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption;
using Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption.Primitives;
using Amazon.S3.Model;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

namespace KmsS3Encryption
{
  // = = =
```

```
      CreateKeyResponse createKeyResponse =
        await new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient().CreateKeyAsync(new
CreateKeyRequest());
      var kmsEncryptionContext = new Dictionary<string, string>();
      var kmsEncryptionMaterials = new EncryptionMaterialsV2(
        createKeyResponse.KeyMetadata.KeyId, KmsType.KmsContext, kmsEncryptionContext);

      // Create the object in the bucket, then display the content of the object
      var putObjectResponse =
        await CreateAndRetrieveObjectAsync(kmsEncryptionMaterials, bucketName,
fileName, itemName);
      Stream stream = putObjectResponse.ResponseStream;
      StreamReader reader = new StreamReader(stream);
      Console.WriteLine(reader.ReadToEnd());
    }


    //
    // Method to create and encrypt an object in an S3 bucket
    static async Task<GetObjectResponse> CreateAndRetrieveObjectAsync(
      EncryptionMaterialsV2 materials, string bucketName,
      string fileName, string itemName)
    {
      // CryptoStorageMode.ObjectMetadata is required for KMS EncryptionMaterials
      var config = new AmazonS3CryptoConfigurationV2(SecurityProfile.V2AndLegacy)
      {
        StorageMode = CryptoStorageMode.ObjectMetadata
      };
      var s3EncClient = new AmazonS3EncryptionClientV2(config, materials);

      // Create, encrypt, and put the object
      await s3EncClient.PutObjectAsync(new PutObjectRequest
      {
        BucketName = bucketName,
        Key = itemName,
        ContentBody = File.ReadAllText(fileName)
      });

      // Get, decrypt, and return the object
      return await s3EncClient.GetObjectAsync(new GetObjectRequest
      {
        BucketName = bucketName,
        Key = itemName
      });
```

```
    }


    //
    // Command-line help
    private static void PrintHelp()
    {
      Console.WriteLine(
        "\nUsage: KmsS3Encryption -b <bucket-name> -f <file-name> [-i <item-name>]" +
        "\n  -b, --bucket-name: The name of an existing S3 bucket." +
        "\n  -f, --file-name: The name of a text file with content to encrypt and store
in S3." +
        "\n  -i, --item-name: The name you want to use for the item." +
        "\n      If item-name isn't given, file-name will be used.");
    }

  }

  // = = =
```

```
        // If the first argument in this iteration starts with a dash it's an option.
        if(args[i].StartsWith("-"))
        {
          var key = args[i++];
          var value = key;

          // Check to see if there's a value that goes with this option?
          if((i < args.Length) && (!args[i].StartsWith("-"))) value = args[i++];
          parsedArgs.Add(key, value);
        }

        // If the first argument in this iteration doesn't start with a dash, it's a
value
        else
        {
          parsedArgs.Add("--NoKey" + n.ToString(), args[i++]);
          n++;
        }
      }

      return parsedArgs;
    }

    //
    // Method to get an argument from the parsed command-line arguments
    //
    // Parameters:
    // - parsedArgs: The Dictionary object returned from the Parse() method (shown
above).
    // - defaultValue: The default string to return if the specified key isn't in
parsedArgs.
    // - keys: An array of keys to look for in parsedArgs.
    public static string GetArgument(
      Dictionary<string,string> parsedArgs, string defaultReturn, params string[] keys)
    {
      string retval = null;
      foreach(var key in keys)
        if(parsedArgs.TryGetValue(key, out retval)) break;
      return retval ?? defaultReturn;
    }

    //
    // Method to exit the application with an error.
    public static void ErrorExit(string msg, int code=1)
```

```
    {
      Console.WriteLine("\nError");
      Console.WriteLine(msg);
      Environment.Exit(code);
    }
  }

}
```

Additional considerations

- You can check the results of this example. To do so, go to the Amazon S3 console and open the bucket you provided to the application. Then find the new object, download it, and open it in a text editor.

- The AmazonS3EncryptionClientV2 class implements the same interface as the standard `AmazonS3Client` class. This makes it easier to port your code to the `AmazonS3EncryptionClientV2` class so that encryption and decryption happen automatically and transparently in the client.

- One advantage of using an AWS KMS key as your master key is that you don't need to store and manage your own master keys; this is done by AWS. A second advantage is that the `AmazonS3EncryptionClientV2` class of the AWS SDK for .NET is interoperable with the `AmazonS3EncryptionClientV2` class of the AWS SDK for Java. This means you can encrypt with the AWS SDK for Java and decrypt with the AWS SDK for .NET, and vice versa.

  > **Note**
  >
  > The `AmazonS3EncryptionClientV2` class of the AWS SDK for .NET supports KMS master keys only when run in metadata mode. The instruction file mode of the `AmazonS3EncryptionClientV2` class of the AWS SDK for .NET is incompatible with the `AmazonS3EncryptionClientV2` class of the AWS SDK for Java.

- For more information about client-side encryption with the `AmazonS3EncryptionClientV2` class, and how envelope encryption works, see Client Side Data Encryption with AWS SDK for .NET and Amazon S3.

Sending Notifications From the Cloud Using Amazon Simple Notification Service

> **Note**
>
> The information in this topic is specific to projects based on .NET Framework and the AWS SDK for .NET version 3.3 and earlier.

The AWS SDK for .NET supports Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS), which is a web service that enables applications, end users, and devices to instantly send notifications from the cloud. For more information, see Amazon SNS.

Listing Your Amazon SNS Topics

The following example shows how to list your Amazon SNS topics, the subscriptions to each topic, and the attributes for each topic. This example uses the default AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient.

```
// using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
// using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

var client = new AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();
var request = new ListTopicsRequest();
var response = new ListTopicsResponse();

do
{
  response = client.ListTopics(request);

  foreach (var topic in response.Topics)
  {
    Console.WriteLine("Topic: {0}", topic.TopicArn);

    var subs = client.ListSubscriptionsByTopic(
      new ListSubscriptionsByTopicRequest
      {
        TopicArn = topic.TopicArn
      });

    var ss = subs.Subscriptions;
```

```
    if (ss.Any())
    {
      Console.WriteLine("  Subscriptions:");

      foreach (var sub in ss)
      {
        Console.WriteLine("    {0}", sub.SubscriptionArn);
      }
    }

    var attrs = client.GetTopicAttributes(
      new GetTopicAttributesRequest
      {
        TopicArn = topic.TopicArn
      }).Attributes;

    if (attrs.Any())
    {
      Console.WriteLine("  Attributes:");

      foreach (var attr in attrs)
      {
        Console.WriteLine("    {0} = {1}", attr.Key, attr.Value);
      }
    }

    Console.WriteLine();
  }

  request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

} while (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(response.NextToken));
```

Sending a Message to an Amazon SNS Topic

The following example shows how to send a message to an Amazon SNS topic. The example takes one argument, the ARN of the Amazon SNS topic.

```
using System;
using System.Linq;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
```

```
using Amazon;
using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

namespace SnsSendMessage
{
    class Program
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            /* Topic ARNs must be in the correct format:
             *   arn:aws:sns:REGION:ACCOUNT_ID:NAME
             *
             *  where:
             *  REGION     is the region in which the topic is created, such as us-
west-2
             *  ACCOUNT_ID is your (typically) 12-character account ID
             *  NAME       is the name of the topic
             */
            string topicArn = args[0];
            string message = "Hello at " + DateTime.Now.ToShortTimeString();

            var client = new AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient(region:
 Amazon.RegionEndpoint.USWest2);

            var request = new PublishRequest
            {
                Message = message,
                TopicArn = topicArn
            };

            try
            {
                var response = client.Publish(request);

                Console.WriteLine("Message sent to topic:");
                Console.WriteLine(message);
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Caught exception publishing request:");
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

See the complete example, including information on how to build and run the example from the command line, on GitHub.

Sending an SMS Message to a Phone Number

The following example shows how to send an SMS message to a telephone number. The example takes one argument, the telephone number, which must be in either of the two formats described in the comments.

```
using System;
using System.Linq;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

namespace SnsPublish
{
    class Program
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // US phone numbers must be in the correct format:
            // +1 (nnn) nnn-nnnn OR +1nnnnnnnnnn
            string number = args[0];
            string message = "Hello at " + DateTime.Now.ToShortTimeString();

            var client = new AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient(region:
 Amazon.RegionEndpoint.USWest2);
            var request = new PublishRequest
            {
                Message = message,
                PhoneNumber = number
            };

            try
            {
                var response = client.Publish(request);

                Console.WriteLine("Message sent to " + number + ":");
```

```
                Console.WriteLine(message);
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Caught exception publishing request:");
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

See the complete example, including information on how to build and run the example from the command line, on GitHub.

Messaging using Amazon SQS

The AWS SDK for .NET supports Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS), which is a message queuing service that handles messages or workflows between components in a system.

Amazon SQS queues provide a mechanism that enables you to send, store, and receive messages between software components such as microservices, distributed systems, and serverless applications. This enables you to decouple such components and frees you from the need to design and operate your own messaging system. For information about how queues and messages work in Amazon SQS, see Amazon SQS tutorials and Basic Amazon SQS architecture in the Amazon Simple Queue Service Developer Guide.

> **Important**
>
> Due to the distributed nature of queues, Amazon SQS can't guarantee that you'll receive messages in the precise order they're sent. If you need to preserve message order, use an Amazon SQS FIFO queue.

APIs

The AWS SDK for .NET provides APIs for Amazon SQS clients. The APIs enable you to work with Amazon SQS features such as queues and messages. This section contains a small number of examples that show you the patterns you can follow when working with these APIs. To view the full set of APIs, see the AWS SDK for .NET API Reference (and scroll to "Amazon.SQS").

The Amazon SQS APIs are provided by the AWSSDK.SQS NuGet package.

Prerequisites

Before you begin, be sure you have set up your environment and project. Also review the information in SDK features.

Topics

Topics

- Creating Amazon SQS queues
- Updating Amazon SQS queues
- Deleting Amazon SQS queues
- Sending Amazon SQS messages
- Receiving Amazon SQS messages

Creating Amazon SQS queues

This example shows you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to create an Amazon SQS queue. The application creates a dead-letter queue if you don't supply the ARN for one. It then creates a standard message queue, which includes a dead-letter queue (the one you supplied or the one that was created).

If you don't supply any command-line arguments, the application simply shows information about all existing queues.

The following sections provide snippets of this example. The complete code for the example is shown after that, and can be built and run as is.

Topics

- Show existing queues
- Create the queue
- Get a queue's ARN
- Complete code
- Additional considerations

Show existing queues

The following snippet shows a list of the existing queues in the SQS client's region and the attributes of each queue.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
//
// Method to show a list of the existing queues
private static async Task ShowQueues(IAmazonSQS sqsClient)
{
  ListQueuesResponse responseList = await sqsClient.ListQueuesAsync("");
  Console.WriteLine();
  foreach(string qUrl in responseList.QueueUrls)
  {
    // Get and show all attributes. Could also get a subset.
    await ShowAllAttributes(sqsClient, qUrl);
  }
}

//
// Method to show all attributes of a queue
private static async Task ShowAllAttributes(IAmazonSQS sqsClient, string qUrl)
{
  var attributes = new List<string>{ QueueAttributeName.All };
  GetQueueAttributesResponse responseGetAtt =
    await sqsClient.GetQueueAttributesAsync(qUrl, attributes);
  Console.WriteLine($"Queue: {qUrl}");
  foreach(var att in responseGetAtt.Attributes)
    Console.WriteLine($"\t{att.Key}: {att.Value}");
}
```

Create the queue

The following snippet creates a queue. The snippet includes the use of a dead-letter queue, but a dead-letter queue isn't necessarily required for your queues.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
//
// Method to create a queue. Returns the queue URL.
private static async Task<string> CreateQueue(
  IAmazonSQS sqsClient, string qName, string deadLetterQueueUrl=null,
```

```
      string maxReceiveCount=null, string receiveWaitTime=null)
    {
      var attrs = new Dictionary<string, string>();

      // If a dead-letter queue is given, create a message queue
      if(!string.IsNullOrEmpty(deadLetterQueueUrl))
      {
        attrs.Add(QueueAttributeName.ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds, receiveWaitTime);
        attrs.Add(QueueAttributeName.RedrivePolicy,
          $"{{\"deadLetterTargetArn\":\"{await GetQueueArn(sqsClient,
deadLetterQueueUrl)}\"," +
          $"\"maxReceiveCount\":\"{maxReceiveCount}\"}}");
        // Add other attributes for the message queue such as VisibilityTimeout
      }

      // If no dead-letter queue is given, create one of those instead
      //else
      //{
      //  // Add attributes for the dead-letter queue as needed
      //  attrs.Add();
      //}

      // Create the queue
      CreateQueueResponse responseCreate = await sqsClient.CreateQueueAsync(
          new CreateQueueRequest{QueueName = qName, Attributes = attrs});
      return responseCreate.QueueUrl;
    }
```

Get a queue's ARN

The following snippet gets the ARN of the queue identified by the given queue URL.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
    //
    // Method to get the ARN of a queue
    private static async Task<string> GetQueueArn(IAmazonSQS sqsClient, string qUrl)
    {
      GetQueueAttributesResponse responseGetAtt = await
sqsClient.GetQueueAttributesAsync(
        qUrl, new List<string>{QueueAttributeName.QueueArn});
      return responseGetAtt.QueueARN;
    }
```

Complete code

This section shows relevant references and the complete code for this example.

SDK references

NuGet packages:

- AWSSDK.SQS

Programming elements:

- Namespace Amazon.SQS

  Class AmazonSQSClient

  Class QueueAttributeName
- Namespace Amazon.SQS.Model

  Class CreateQueueRequest

  Class CreateQueueResponse

  Class GetQueueAttributesResponse

  Class ListQueuesResponse

The code

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon.SQS;
using Amazon.SQS.Model;

namespace SQSCreateQueue
{
  // = = =
```

```
    private const string MaxReceiveCount = "10";
    private const string ReceiveMessageWaitTime = "2";
    private const int MaxArgs = 3;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
      // Parse the command line and show help if necessary
      var parsedArgs = CommandLine.Parse(args);
      if(parsedArgs.Count > MaxArgs)
        CommandLine.ErrorExit(
          "\nToo many command-line arguments.\nRun the command with no arguments to see
 help.");

      // Create the Amazon SQS client
      var sqsClient = new AmazonSQSClient();

      // In the case of no command-line arguments, just show help and the existing
 queues
      if(parsedArgs.Count == 0)
      {
        PrintHelp();
        Console.WriteLine("\nNo arguments specified.");
        Console.Write("Do you want to see a list of the existing queues? ((y) or n):
 ");
        string response = Console.ReadLine();
        if((string.IsNullOrEmpty(response)) || (response.ToLower() == "y"))
          await ShowQueues(sqsClient);
        return;
      }

      // Get the application arguments from the parsed list
      string queueName =
        CommandLine.GetArgument(parsedArgs, null, "-q", "--queue-name");
      string deadLetterQueueUrl =
        CommandLine.GetArgument(parsedArgs, null, "-d", "--dead-letter-queue");
      string maxReceiveCount =
        CommandLine.GetArgument(parsedArgs, MaxReceiveCount, "-m", "--max-receive-
count");
      string receiveWaitTime =
        CommandLine.GetArgument(parsedArgs, ReceiveMessageWaitTime, "-w", "--wait-
time");

      if(string.IsNullOrEmpty(queueName))
        CommandLine.ErrorExit(
```

```
          "\nYou must supply a queue name.\nRun the command with no arguments to see
help.");

      // If a dead-letter queue wasn't given, create one
      if(string.IsNullOrEmpty(deadLetterQueueUrl))
      {
        Console.WriteLine("\nNo dead-letter queue was specified. Creating one...");
        deadLetterQueueUrl = await CreateQueue(sqsClient, queueName + "__dlq");
        Console.WriteLine($"Your new dead-letter queue:");
        await ShowAllAttributes(sqsClient, deadLetterQueueUrl);
      }

      // Create the message queue
      string messageQueueUrl = await CreateQueue(
        sqsClient, queueName, deadLetterQueueUrl, maxReceiveCount, receiveWaitTime);
      Console.WriteLine($"Your new message queue:");
      await ShowAllAttributes(sqsClient, messageQueueUrl);
    }


    //
    // Method to show a list of the existing queues
    private static async Task ShowQueues(IAmazonSQS sqsClient)
    {
      ListQueuesResponse responseList = await sqsClient.ListQueuesAsync("");
      Console.WriteLine();
      foreach(string qUrl in responseList.QueueUrls)
      {
        // Get and show all attributes. Could also get a subset.
        await ShowAllAttributes(sqsClient, qUrl);
      }
    }


    //
    // Method to create a queue. Returns the queue URL.
    private static async Task<string> CreateQueue(
      IAmazonSQS sqsClient, string qName, string deadLetterQueueUrl=null,
      string maxReceiveCount=null, string receiveWaitTime=null)
    {
      var attrs = new Dictionary<string, string>();

      // If a dead-letter queue is given, create a message queue
      if(!string.IsNullOrEmpty(deadLetterQueueUrl))
```

```
      {
        attrs.Add(QueueAttributeName.ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds, receiveWaitTime);
        attrs.Add(QueueAttributeName.RedrivePolicy,
          $"{{\"deadLetterTargetArn\":\"{await GetQueueArn(sqsClient,
deadLetterQueueUrl)}\"," +
          $"\"maxReceiveCount\":\"{maxReceiveCount}\"}}");
        // Add other attributes for the message queue such as VisibilityTimeout
      }

      // If no dead-letter queue is given, create one of those instead
      //else
      //{
      //  // Add attributes for the dead-letter queue as needed
      //  attrs.Add();
      //}

      // Create the queue
      CreateQueueResponse responseCreate = await sqsClient.CreateQueueAsync(
          new CreateQueueRequest{QueueName = qName, Attributes = attrs});
      return responseCreate.QueueUrl;
    }


    //
    // Method to get the ARN of a queue
    private static async Task<string> GetQueueArn(IAmazonSQS sqsClient, string qUrl)
    {
      GetQueueAttributesResponse responseGetAtt = await
sqsClient.GetQueueAttributesAsync(
        qUrl, new List<string>{QueueAttributeName.QueueArn});
      return responseGetAtt.QueueARN;
    }


    //
    // Method to show all attributes of a queue
    private static async Task ShowAllAttributes(IAmazonSQS sqsClient, string qUrl)
    {
      var attributes = new List<string>{ QueueAttributeName.All };
      GetQueueAttributesResponse responseGetAtt =
        await sqsClient.GetQueueAttributesAsync(qUrl, attributes);
      Console.WriteLine($"Queue: {qUrl}");
      foreach(var att in responseGetAtt.Attributes)
        Console.WriteLine($"\t{att.Key}: {att.Value}");
```

```
    }


    //
    // Command-line help
    private static void PrintHelp()
    {
      Console.WriteLine(
      "\nUsage: SQSCreateQueue -q <queue-name> [-d <dead-letter-queue>]" +
        " [-m <max-receive-count>] [-w <wait-time>]" +
      "\n  -q, --queue-name: The name of the queue you want to create." +
      "\n  -d, --dead-letter-queue: The URL of an existing queue to be used as the
dead-letter queue."+
      "\n      If this argument isn't supplied, a new dead-letter queue will be
created." +
      "\n  -m, --max-receive-count: The value for maxReceiveCount in the RedrivePolicy
of the queue." +
      $"\n      Default is {MaxReceiveCount}." +
      "\n  -w, --wait-time: The value for ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds of the queue
for long polling." +
      $"\n      Default is {ReceiveMessageWaitTime}.");
    }
  }


  // = = =
```

```
    //  where "N" represents sequential numbers.
    public static Dictionary<string,string> Parse(string[] args)
    {
      var parsedArgs = new Dictionary<string,string>();
      int i = 0, n = 0;
      while(i < args.Length)
      {
        // If the first argument in this iteration starts with a dash it's an option.
        if(args[i].StartsWith("-"))
        {
          var key = args[i++];
          var value = key;

          // Check to see if there's a value that goes with this option?
          if((i < args.Length) && (!args[i].StartsWith("-"))) value = args[i++];
          parsedArgs.Add(key, value);
        }

        // If the first argument in this iteration doesn't start with a dash, it's a
 value
        else
        {
          parsedArgs.Add("--NoKey" + n.ToString(), args[i++]);
          n++;
        }
      }

      return parsedArgs;
    }

    //
    // Method to get an argument from the parsed command-line arguments
    //
    // Parameters:
    // - parsedArgs: The Dictionary object returned from the Parse() method (shown
 above).
    // - defaultValue: The default string to return if the specified key isn't in
 parsedArgs.
    // - keys: An array of keys to look for in parsedArgs.
    public static string GetArgument(
      Dictionary<string,string> parsedArgs, string defaultReturn, params string[] keys)
    {
      string retval = null;
      foreach(var key in keys)
```

```
        if(parsedArgs.TryGetValue(key, out retval)) break;
      return retval ?? defaultReturn;
    }

    //
    // Method to exit the application with an error.
    public static void ErrorExit(string msg, int code=1)
    {
      Console.WriteLine("\nError");
      Console.WriteLine(msg);
      Environment.Exit(code);
    }
  }

}
```

Additional considerations

- Your queue name must be composed of alphanumeric characters, hyphens, and underscores.
- Queue names and queue URLs are case-sensitive
- If you need the queue URL but only have the queue name, use one of the `AmazonSQSClient.GetQueueUrlAsync` methods.
- For information about the various queue attributes you can set, see CreateQueueRequest in the AWS SDK for .NET API Reference or SetQueueAttributes in the Amazon Simple Queue Service API Reference.
- This example specifies long polling for all messages on the queue that you create. This is done by using the `ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds` attribute.

  You can also specify long polling during a call to the `ReceiveMessageAsync` methods of the AmazonSQSClient class. For more information, see Receiving Amazon SQS messages.

  For information about short polling versus long polling, see Short and long polling in the *Amazon Simple Queue Service Developer Guide*.

- A dead letter queue is one that other (source) queues can target for messages that aren't processed successfully. For more information, see Amazon SQS dead-letter queues in the Amazon Simple Queue Service Developer Guide.

- You can also see the list of queues and the results of this example in the Amazon SQS console.

Updating Amazon SQS queues

This example shows you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to update an Amazon SQS queue. After some checks, the application updates the given attribute with the given value, and then shows all attributes for the queue.

If only the queue URL is included in the command-line arguments, the application simply shows all attributes for the queue.

The following sections provide snippets of this example. The complete code for the example is shown after that, and can be built and run as is.

Topics

- Show queue attributes
- Validate attribute name
- Update queue attribute
- Complete code
- Additional considerations

Show queue attributes

The following snippet shows the attributes of the queue identified by the given queue URL.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
//
// Method to show all attributes of a queue
private static async Task ShowAllAttributes(IAmazonSQS sqsClient, string qUrl)
{
  GetQueueAttributesResponse responseGetAtt =
    await sqsClient.GetQueueAttributesAsync(qUrl,
      new List<string>{ QueueAttributeName.All });
```

```
    Console.WriteLine($"Queue: {qUrl}");
    foreach(var att in responseGetAtt.Attributes)
      Console.WriteLine($"\t{att.Key}: {att.Value}");
  }
```

Validate attribute name

The following snippet validates the name of the attribute being updated.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
  //
  // Method to check the name of the attribute
  private static bool ValidAttribute(string attribute)
  {
    var attOk = false;
    var qAttNameType = typeof(QueueAttributeName);
    List<string> qAttNamefields = new List<string>();
    foreach(var field in qAttNameType.GetFields())
     qAttNamefields.Add(field.Name);
    foreach(var name in qAttNamefields)
      if(attribute == name) { attOk = true; break; }
    return attOk;
  }
```

Update queue attribute

The following snippet updates an attribute of the queue identified by the given queue URL.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
  //
  // Method to update a queue attribute
  private static async Task UpdateAttribute(
    IAmazonSQS sqsClient, string qUrl, string attribute, string value)
  {
    await sqsClient.SetQueueAttributesAsync(qUrl,
      new Dictionary<string, string>{{attribute, value}});
  }
```

Complete code

This section shows relevant references and the complete code for this example.

SDK references

NuGet packages:

- AWSSDK.SQS

Programming elements:

- Namespace Amazon.SQS

  Class AmazonSQSClient

  Class QueueAttributeName
- Namespace Amazon.SQS.Model

  Class GetQueueAttributesResponse

The code

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.SQS;
using Amazon.SQS.Model;

namespace SQSUpdateQueue
{
  // = = =
```

```
        return;
      }
      if((parsedArgs.Count > MaxArgs) || (parsedArgs.Count == InvalidArgCount))
        CommandLine.ErrorExit("\nThe number of command-line arguments is incorrect." +
          "\nRun the command with no arguments to see help.");

      // Get the application arguments from the parsed list
      var qUrl = CommandLine.GetArgument(parsedArgs, null, "-q");
      var attribute = CommandLine.GetArgument(parsedArgs, null, "-a");
      var value = CommandLine.GetArgument(parsedArgs, null, "-v", "--value");

      if(string.IsNullOrEmpty(qUrl))
        CommandLine.ErrorExit("\nYou must supply at least a queue URL." +
          "\nRun the command with no arguments to see help.");

      // Create the Amazon SQS client
      var sqsClient = new AmazonSQSClient();

      // In the case of one command-line argument, just show the attributes for the
 queue
      if(parsedArgs.Count == 1)
        await ShowAllAttributes(sqsClient, qUrl);

      // Otherwise, attempt to update the given queue attribute with the given value
      else
      {
        // Check to see if the attribute is valid
        if(ValidAttribute(attribute))
        {
          // Perform the update and then show all the attributes of the queue
          await UpdateAttribute(sqsClient, qUrl, attribute, value);
          await ShowAllAttributes(sqsClient, qUrl);
        }
        else
        {
          Console.WriteLine($"\nThe given attribute name, {attribute}, isn't valid.");
        }
      }
    }


    //
    // Method to show all attributes of a queue
    private static async Task ShowAllAttributes(IAmazonSQS sqsClient, string qUrl)
```

```
    {
      GetQueueAttributesResponse responseGetAtt =
        await sqsClient.GetQueueAttributesAsync(qUrl,
          new List<string>{ QueueAttributeName.All });
      Console.WriteLine($"Queue: {qUrl}");
      foreach(var att in responseGetAtt.Attributes)
        Console.WriteLine($"\t{att.Key}: {att.Value}");
    }


    //
    // Method to check the name of the attribute
    private static bool ValidAttribute(string attribute)
    {
      var attOk = false;
      var qAttNameType = typeof(QueueAttributeName);
      List<string> qAttNamefields = new List<string>();
      foreach(var field in qAttNameType.GetFields())
       qAttNamefields.Add(field.Name);
      foreach(var name in qAttNamefields)
        if(attribute == name) { attOk = true; break; }
      return attOk;
    }


    //
    // Method to update a queue attribute
    private static async Task UpdateAttribute(
      IAmazonSQS sqsClient, string qUrl, string attribute, string value)
    {
      await sqsClient.SetQueueAttributesAsync(qUrl,
        new Dictionary<string, string>{{attribute, value}});
    }


    //
    // Command-line help
    private static void PrintHelp()
    {
      Console.WriteLine("\nUsage: SQSUpdateQueue -q queue_url [-a attribute -v
 value]");
      Console.WriteLine("  -q: The URL of the queue you want to update.");
      Console.WriteLine("  -a: The name of the attribute to update.");
      Console.WriteLine("  -v, --value: The value to assign to the attribute.");
```

```
    }
  }


  // = = =
```

```
        {
          parsedArgs.Add("--NoKey" + n.ToString(), args[i++]);
          n++;
        }
      }

      return parsedArgs;
    }

    //
    // Method to get an argument from the parsed command-line arguments
    //
    // Parameters:
    // - parsedArgs: The Dictionary object returned from the Parse() method (shown
 above).
    // - defaultValue: The default string to return if the specified key isn't in
 parsedArgs.
    // - keys: An array of keys to look for in parsedArgs.
    public static string GetArgument(
      Dictionary<string,string> parsedArgs, string defaultReturn, params string[] keys)
    {
      string retval = null;
      foreach(var key in keys)
        if(parsedArgs.TryGetValue(key, out retval)) break;
      return retval ?? defaultReturn;
    }

    //
    // Method to exit the application with an error.
    public static void ErrorExit(string msg, int code=1)
    {
      Console.WriteLine("\nError");
      Console.WriteLine(msg);
      Environment.Exit(code);
    }
  }

}
```

Additional considerations

- To update the `RedrivePolicy` attribute, you must quote the entire value and escape the quotes for the key/value pairs, as appropriate for you operating system.

On Windows, for example, the value is constructed in a manner similar to the following:

```
"{\"deadLetterTargetArn\":\"DEAD_LETTER-QUEUE-ARN\",\"maxReceiveCount\":\"10\"}"
```

Deleting Amazon SQS queues

This example shows you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to delete an Amazon SQS queue. The application deletes the queue, waits for up to a given amount of time for the queue to be gone, and then shows a list of the remaining queues.

If you don't supply any command-line arguments, the application simply shows a list of the existing queues.

The following sections provide snippets of this example. The complete code for the example is shown after that, and can be built and run as is.

Topics

- Delete the queue
- Wait for the queue to be gone
- Show a list of existing queues
- Complete code
- Additional considerations

Delete the queue

The following snippet deletes the queue identified by the given queue URL.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
    //
    // Method to delete an SQS queue
    private static async Task DeleteQueue(IAmazonSQS sqsClient, string qUrl)
    {
      Console.WriteLine($"Deleting queue {qUrl}...");
      await sqsClient.DeleteQueueAsync(qUrl);
      Console.WriteLine($"Queue {qUrl} has been deleted.");
    }
```

Wait for the queue to be gone

The following snippet waits for the deletion process to finish, which might take 60 seconds.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
    //
    // Method to wait up to a given number of seconds
    private static async Task Wait(
      IAmazonSQS sqsClient, int numSeconds, string qUrl)
    {
      Console.WriteLine($"Waiting for up to {numSeconds} seconds.");
      Console.WriteLine("Press any key to stop waiting. (Response might be slightly
 delayed.)");
      for(int i=0; i<numSeconds; i++)
      {
        Console.Write(".");
        Thread.Sleep(1000);
        if(Console.KeyAvailable) break;

        // Check to see if the queue is gone yet
        var found = false;
        ListQueuesResponse responseList = await sqsClient.ListQueuesAsync("");
        foreach(var url in responseList.QueueUrls)
        {
          if(url == qUrl)
          {
            found = true;
            break;
          }
        }
        if(!found) break;
      }
    }
```

Show a list of existing queues

The following snippet shows a list of the existing queues in the SQS client's region.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
    //
    // Method to show a list of the existing queues
    private static async Task ListQueues(IAmazonSQS sqsClient)
```

```
    {
      ListQueuesResponse responseList = await sqsClient.ListQueuesAsync("");
      Console.WriteLine("\nList of queues:");
      foreach(var qUrl in responseList.QueueUrls)
        Console.WriteLine($"- {qUrl}");
    }
```

Complete code

This section shows relevant references and the complete code for this example.

SDK references

NuGet packages:

- AWSSDK.SQS

Programming elements:

- Namespace Amazon.SQS

  Class AmazonSQSClient
- Namespace Amazon.SQS.Model

  Class ListQueuesResponse

The code

```
using System;
using System.Threading;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.SQS;
using Amazon.SQS.Model;

namespace SQSDeleteQueue
{
  // = = =
```

```
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
      // Create the Amazon SQS client
      var sqsClient = new AmazonSQSClient();

      // If no command-line arguments, just show a list of the queues
      if(args.Length == 0)
      {
        Console.WriteLine("\nUsage: SQSCreateQueue queue_url");
        Console.WriteLine("   queue_url - The URL of the queue you want to delete.");
        Console.WriteLine("\nNo arguments specified.");
        Console.Write("Do you want to see a list of the existing queues? ((y) or n): 
");
        var response = Console.ReadLine();
        if((string.IsNullOrEmpty(response)) || (response.ToLower() == "y"))
          await ListQueues(sqsClient);
        return;
      }

      // If given a queue URL, delete that queue
      if(args[0].StartsWith("https://sqs."))
      {
        // Delete the queue
        await DeleteQueue(sqsClient, args[0]);
        // Wait for a little while because it takes a while for the queue to disappear
        await Wait(sqsClient, TimeToWait, args[0]);
        // Show a list of the remaining queues
        await ListQueues(sqsClient);
      }
      else
      {
        Console.WriteLine("The command-line argument isn't a queue URL:");
        Console.WriteLine($"{args[0]}");
      }
    }


    //
    // Method to delete an SQS queue
    private static async Task DeleteQueue(IAmazonSQS sqsClient, string qUrl)
    {
      Console.WriteLine($"Deleting queue {qUrl}...");
      await sqsClient.DeleteQueueAsync(qUrl);
```

```
      Console.WriteLine($"Queue {qUrl} has been deleted.");
    }


    //
    // Method to wait up to a given number of seconds
    private static async Task Wait(
      IAmazonSQS sqsClient, int numSeconds, string qUrl)
    {
      Console.WriteLine($"Waiting for up to {numSeconds} seconds.");
      Console.WriteLine("Press any key to stop waiting. (Response might be slightly
 delayed.)");
      for(int i=0; i<numSeconds; i++)
      {
        Console.Write(".");
        Thread.Sleep(1000);
        if(Console.KeyAvailable) break;

        // Check to see if the queue is gone yet
        var found = false;
        ListQueuesResponse responseList = await sqsClient.ListQueuesAsync("");
        foreach(var url in responseList.QueueUrls)
        {
          if(url == qUrl)
          {
            found = true;
            break;
          }
        }
        if(!found) break;
      }
    }


    //
    // Method to show a list of the existing queues
    private static async Task ListQueues(IAmazonSQS sqsClient)
    {
      ListQueuesResponse responseList = await sqsClient.ListQueuesAsync("");
      Console.WriteLine("\nList of queues:");
      foreach(var qUrl in responseList.QueueUrls)
        Console.WriteLine($"- {qUrl}");
    }
  }
```

```
}
```

Additional considerations

- The `DeleteQueueAsync` API call doesn't check to see if the queue you're deleting is being used as a dead-letter queue. A more sophisticated procedure could check for this.

- You can also see the list of queues and the results of this example in the Amazon SQS console.

Sending Amazon SQS messages

This example shows you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to send messages to an Amazon SQS queue, which you can create programmatically or by using the Amazon SQS console. The application sends a single message to the queue and then a batch of messages. The application then waits for user input, which can be additional messages to send to the queue or a request to exit the application.

This example and the next example about receiving messages can be used together to see message flow in Amazon SQS.

The following sections provide snippets of this example. The complete code for the example is shown after that, and can be built and run as is.

Topics

- Send a message
- Send a batch of messages
- Delete all messages from the queue
- Complete code
- Additional considerations

Send a message

The following snippet sends a message to the queue identified by the given queue URL.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
    //
```

```
    // Method to put a message on a queue
    // Could be expanded to include message attributes, etc., in a SendMessageRequest
    private static async Task SendMessage(
      IAmazonSQS sqsClient, string qUrl, string messageBody)
    {
      SendMessageResponse responseSendMsg =
        await sqsClient.SendMessageAsync(qUrl, messageBody);
      Console.WriteLine($"Message added to queue\n  {qUrl}");
      Console.WriteLine($"HttpStatusCode: {responseSendMsg.HttpStatusCode}");
    }
```

Send a batch of messages

The following snippet sends a batch of messages to the queue identified by the given queue URL.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
    //
    // Method to put a batch of messages on a queue
    // Could be expanded to include message attributes, etc.,
    // in the SendMessageBatchRequestEntry objects
    private static async Task SendMessageBatch(
      IAmazonSQS sqsClient, string qUrl, List<SendMessageBatchRequestEntry> messages)
    {
      Console.WriteLine($"\nSending a batch of messages to queue\n  {qUrl}");
      SendMessageBatchResponse responseSendBatch =
        await sqsClient.SendMessageBatchAsync(qUrl, messages);
      // Could test responseSendBatch.Failed here
      foreach(SendMessageBatchResultEntry entry in responseSendBatch.Successful)
        Console.WriteLine($"Message {entry.Id} successfully queued.");
    }
```

Delete all messages from the queue

The following snippet deletes all messages from the queue identified by the given queue URL. This is also known as *purging the queue*.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
    //
    // Method to delete all messages from the queue
    private static async Task DeleteAllMessages(IAmazonSQS sqsClient, string qUrl)
    {
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"\nPurging messages from queue\n  {qUrl}...");
        PurgeQueueResponse responsePurge = await sqsClient.PurgeQueueAsync(qUrl);
        Console.WriteLine($"HttpStatusCode: {responsePurge.HttpStatusCode}");
    }
```

Complete code

This section shows relevant references and the complete code for this example.

SDK references

NuGet packages:

- AWSSDK.SQS

Programming elements:

- Namespace Amazon.SQS

  Class AmazonSQSClient
- Namespace Amazon.SQS.Model

  Class PurgeQueueResponse

  Class SendMessageBatchResponse

  Class SendMessageResponse

  Class SendMessageBatchRequestEntry

  Class SendMessageBatchResultEntry

The code

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.SQS;
using Amazon.SQS.Model;

namespace SQSSendMessages
{
```

```
  // = = =
```

```
    // Let the user send their own messages or quit
    await InteractWithUser(sqsClient, args[0]);

    // Delete all messages that are still in the queue
    await DeleteAllMessages(sqsClient, args[0]);
  }


  //
  // Method to put a message on a queue
  // Could be expanded to include message attributes, etc., in a SendMessageRequest
  private static async Task SendMessage(
    IAmazonSQS sqsClient, string qUrl, string messageBody)
  {
    SendMessageResponse responseSendMsg =
      await sqsClient.SendMessageAsync(qUrl, messageBody);
    Console.WriteLine($"Message added to queue\n  {qUrl}");
    Console.WriteLine($"HttpStatusCode: {responseSendMsg.HttpStatusCode}");
  }


  //
  // Method to put a batch of messages on a queue
  // Could be expanded to include message attributes, etc.,
  // in the SendMessageBatchRequestEntry objects
  private static async Task SendMessageBatch(
    IAmazonSQS sqsClient, string qUrl, List<SendMessageBatchRequestEntry> messages)
  {
    Console.WriteLine($"\nSending a batch of messages to queue\n  {qUrl}");
    SendMessageBatchResponse responseSendBatch =
      await sqsClient.SendMessageBatchAsync(qUrl, messages);
    // Could test responseSendBatch.Failed here
    foreach(SendMessageBatchResultEntry entry in responseSendBatch.Successful)
      Console.WriteLine($"Message {entry.Id} successfully queued.");
  }


  //
  // Method to get input from the user
  // They can provide messages to put in the queue or exit the application
  private static async Task InteractWithUser(IAmazonSQS sqsClient, string qUrl)
  {
    string response;
```

```
      while (true)
      {
        // Get the user's input
        Console.WriteLine("\nType a message for the queue or \"exit\" to quit:");
        response = Console.ReadLine();
        if(response.ToLower() == "exit") break;

        // Put the user's message in the queue
        await SendMessage(sqsClient, qUrl, response);
      }
    }


    //
    // Method to delete all messages from the queue
    private static async Task DeleteAllMessages(IAmazonSQS sqsClient, string qUrl)
    {
      Console.WriteLine($"\nPurging messages from queue\n  {qUrl}...");
      PurgeQueueResponse responsePurge = await sqsClient.PurgeQueueAsync(qUrl);
      Console.WriteLine($"HttpStatusCode: {responsePurge.HttpStatusCode}");
    }
  }
}
```

Additional considerations

- For information about various limitations on messages, including the allowed characters, see Quotas related to messages in the Amazon Simple Queue Service Developer Guide.

- Messages stay in queues until they are deleted or the queue is purged. When a message has been received by an application, it won't be visible in the queue even though it still exists in the queue. For more information about visibility timeouts, see Amazon SQS visibility timeout.

- In additional to the message body, you can also add attributes to messages. For more information, see Message metadata.

Receiving Amazon SQS messages

This example shows you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to receive messages from an Amazon SQS queue, which you can create programmatically or by using the Amazon SQS console. The

application reads a single message from the queue, processes the message (in this case, displays the message body on the console), and then deletes the message from the queue. The application repeats these steps until the user types a key on the keyboard.

This example and the previous example about sending messages can be used together to see message flow in Amazon SQS.

The following sections provide snippets of this example. The complete code for the example is shown after that, and can be built and run as is.

Topics

- Receive a message
- Delete a message
- Complete code
- Additional considerations

Receive a message

The following snippet receives a message from the queue identified by the given queue URL.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
//
// Method to read a message from the given queue
// In this example, it gets one message at a time
private static async Task<ReceiveMessageResponse> GetMessage(
  IAmazonSQS sqsClient, string qUrl, int waitTime=0)
{
  return await sqsClient.ReceiveMessageAsync(new ReceiveMessageRequest{
    QueueUrl=qUrl,
    MaxNumberOfMessages=MaxMessages,
    WaitTimeSeconds=waitTime
    // (Could also request attributes, set visibility timeout, etc.)
  });
}
```

Delete a message

The following snippet deletes a message from the queue identified by the given queue URL.

The example at the end of this topic shows this snippet in use.

```
    //
    // Method to delete a message from a queue
    private static async Task DeleteMessage(
      IAmazonSQS sqsClient, Message message, string qUrl)
    {
      Console.WriteLine($"\nDeleting message {message.MessageId} from queue...");
      await sqsClient.DeleteMessageAsync(qUrl, message.ReceiptHandle);
    }
```

Complete code

This section shows relevant references and the complete code for this example.

SDK references

NuGet packages:

- AWSSDK.SQS

Programming elements:

- Namespace Amazon.SQS

  Class AmazonSQSClient
- Namespace Amazon.SQS.Model

  Class ReceiveMessageRequest

  Class ReceiveMessageResponse

The code

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.SQS;
using Amazon.SQS.Model;

namespace SQSReceiveMessages
{
  class Program
  {
```

```
    private const int MaxMessages = 1;
    private const int WaitTime = 2;
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
      // Do some checks on the command-line
      if(args.Length == 0)
      {
        Console.WriteLine("\nUsage: SQSReceiveMessages queue_url");
        Console.WriteLine("   queue_url - The URL of an existing SQS queue.");
        return;
      }
      if(!args[0].StartsWith("https://sqs."))
      {
        Console.WriteLine("\nThe command-line argument isn't a queue URL:");
        Console.WriteLine($"{args[0]}");
        return;
      }

      // Create the Amazon SQS client
      var sqsClient = new AmazonSQSClient();

      // (could verify that the queue exists)
      // Read messages from the queue and perform appropriate actions
      Console.WriteLine($"Reading messages from queue\n  {args[0]}");
      Console.WriteLine("Press any key to stop. (Response might be slightly
 delayed.)");
      do
      {
        var msg = await GetMessage(sqsClient, args[0], WaitTime);
        if(msg.Messages.Count != 0)
        {
          if(ProcessMessage(msg.Messages[0]))
            await DeleteMessage(sqsClient, msg.Messages[0], args[0]);
        }
      } while(!Console.KeyAvailable);
    }



    //
    // Method to read a message from the given queue
    // In this example, it gets one message at a time
    private static async Task<ReceiveMessageResponse> GetMessage(
      IAmazonSQS sqsClient, string qUrl, int waitTime=0)
    {
```

```
      return await sqsClient.ReceiveMessageAsync(new ReceiveMessageRequest{
        QueueUrl=qUrl,
        MaxNumberOfMessages=MaxMessages,
        WaitTimeSeconds=waitTime
        // (Could also request attributes, set visibility timeout, etc.)
      });
    }


    //
    // Method to process a message
    // In this example, it simply prints the message
    private static bool ProcessMessage(Message message)
    {
      Console.WriteLine($"\nMessage body of {message.MessageId}:");
      Console.WriteLine($"{message.Body}");
      return true;
    }


    //
    // Method to delete a message from a queue
    private static async Task DeleteMessage(
      IAmazonSQS sqsClient, Message message, string qUrl)
    {
      Console.WriteLine($"\nDeleting message {message.MessageId} from queue...");
      await sqsClient.DeleteMessageAsync(qUrl, message.ReceiptHandle);
    }
  }
}
```

Additional considerations

- To specify long polling, this example uses the `WaitTimeSeconds` property for each call to the `ReceiveMessageAsync` method.

  You can also specify long polling for all messages on a queue by using the `ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds` attribute when creating or updating the queue.

  For information about short polling versus long polling, see Short and long polling in the *Amazon Simple Queue Service Developer Guide*.

- During message processing, you can use the receipt handle to change the message visibility timeout. For information about how to do this, see the `ChangeMessageVisibilityAsync` methods of the AmazonSQSClient class.

- Calling the `DeleteMessageAsync` method unconditionally removes the message from the queue, regardless of the visibility timeout setting.

Using AWS Lambda for compute service

The AWS SDK for .NET supports AWS Lambda, which lets you run code without provisioning or managing servers. For more information, see the AWS Lambda product page and the AWS Lambda Developer Guide, particularly the section for Working with C#.

APIs

The AWS SDK for .NET provides APIs for AWS Lambda. The APIs enable you to work with Lambda features such as functions, triggers, and events. To view the full set of APIs, see Lambda in the AWS SDK for .NET API Reference.

The Lambda APIs are provided by NuGet packages.

Prerequisites

Before you begin, be sure you have set up your environment and project. Also review the information in SDK features.

Additional information

See Integrating AWS with .NET Aspire for information about developing with AWS Lambda through .NET Aspire.

Topics

Topics

- Using annotations to write AWS Lambda functions

Using annotations to write AWS Lambda functions

When writing Lambda functions, you sometimes need to write a large amount of handler code and update AWS CloudFormation templates, among other tasks. Lambda Annotations is a framework to help ease these burdens for .NET 6 Lambda functions, thereby making the experience of writing Lambda feel more natural in C#.

As an example of the benefit of using the Lambda Annotations framework, consider the following snippets of code that add two numbers.

Without Lambda Annotations

```
public class Functions
{
    public APIGatewayProxyResponse LambdaMathPlus(APIGatewayProxyRequest request,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        if (!request.PathParameters.TryGetValue("x", out var xs))
        {
            return new APIGatewayProxyResponse
            {
                StatusCode = (int)HttpStatusCode.BadRequest
            };
        }
        if (!request.PathParameters.TryGetValue("y", out var ys))
        {
            return new APIGatewayProxyResponse
            {
                StatusCode = (int)HttpStatusCode.BadRequest
            };
        }

        var x = int.Parse(xs);
        var y = int.Parse(ys);

        return new APIGatewayProxyResponse
        {
            StatusCode = (int)HttpStatusCode.OK,
            Body = (x + y).ToString(),
            Headers = new Dictionary<string, string> { { "Content-Type", "text/
plain" } }
        };
    }
```

```
}
```

With Lambda Annotations

```
public class Functions
{
    [LambdaFunction]
    [RestApi("/plus/{x}/{y}")]
    public int Plus(int x, int y)
    {
        return x + y;
    }
}
```

As is shown in the example, Lambda Annotations can remove the need for certain boiler plate code.

For details about how to use the framework as well as additional information, see the following resources:

- The GitHub README for documentation on the APIs and attributes of Lambda Annotations.
- The blog post for Lambda Annotations.
- The `Amazon.Lambda.Annotations` NuGet package.
- The Photo Asset Management project on GitHub. Specifically, see the PamApiAnnotations folder and references to Lambda Annotations in the project README.

High-level libraries and frameworks for the AWS SDK for .NET

The following sections contain information about high-level libraries and frameworks that aren't part of the core SDK functionality. These libraries and frameworks use the core SDK functionality to create features that ease certain tasks.

If you're new to the AWS SDK for .NET, you might want to check out the Take a quick tour topic first. It gives you an introduction to the SDK.

Before you begin, be sure you have set up your environment and project. Also review the information in SDK features.

Topics

- AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET
- Integrating AWS with .NET Aspire in the AWS SDK for .NET

AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET

The AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET is an AWS-native framework that simplifies the development of .NET message processing applications that use AWS services such as Amazon Simple Queue Service (SQS), Amazon Simple Notification Service (SNS), and Amazon EventBridge. The framework reduces the amount of boiler-plate code developers need to write, allowing you to focus on your business logic when publishing and consuming messages. For details about how the framework can simplify your development, see the blog post Introducing the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET (Preview). The first part in particular provides a demonstration that shows the difference between using low-level API calls and using the framework.

The Message Processing Framework supports the following activities and features:

- Sending messages to SQS and publishing events to SNS and EventBridge.
- Receiving and handling messages from SQS by using a long-running poller, which is typically used in background services. This includes managing the visibility timeout while a message is being handled to prevent other clients from processing it.
- Handling messages in AWS Lambda functions.
- FIFO (first-in-first-out) SQS queues and SNS topics.
- OpenTelemetry for logging.

For details about these activities and features see the **Features** section of the blog post and the topics listed below.

Before you begin, be sure you have set up your environment and project. Also review the information in SDK features.

Additional resources

- The `AWS.Messaging` package on NuGet.org.
- The API reference.
- The `README` file in the GitHub repo at https://github.com/aws/aws-dotnet-messaging/
- .NET dependency injection from Microsoft.

- .NET Generic Host from Microsoft.

Topics

- Get started with the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET
- Publish messages with the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET
- Consume messages with the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET
- Using FIFO with the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET
- Logging and Open Telemetry for the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET
- Customize the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET
- Security for the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET

Get started with the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET

Before you begin, be sure you have set up your environment and project. Also review the information in SDK features.

This topic provides information that will help you get started using the Message Processing Framework. In addition to prerequisite and configuration information, a tutorial is provided that shows you how to implement a common scenario.

Prerequisites and configuration

- The credentials you provide for your application must have appropriate permissions for the messaging service and operations that it uses. For more information, see the security topics for SQS, SNS, and EventBridge in their respective developer guides. Also see the portion of the README file on GitHub that discusses specific permissions.
- To use the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET, you must add the `AWS.Messaging` NuGet package to your project. For example:

```
dotnet add package AWS.Messaging
```

- The framework integrates with .NET's dependency injection (DI) service container. You can configure the framework during your application's startup by calling `AddAWSMessageBus` to add it to the DI container.

```
var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);
```

```
// Register the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET
builder.Services.AddAWSMessageBus(builder =>
{
    // Register that you'll publish messages of type ChatMessage to an existing queue
    builder.AddSQSPublisher<ChatMessage>("https://sqs.us-
west-2.amazonaws.com/012345678910/MyAppProd");
});
```

Tutorial

This tutorial demonstrates how to use the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET. It creates two applications: an ASP.NET Core Minimal API that sends messages to an Amazon SQS queue when it receives a request at an API endpoint, and a long-running console application that polls for these messages and handles them.

- The instructions in this tutorial favor the .NET CLI, but you can perform this tutorial by using either cross-platform tools such as the .NET CLI or Microsoft Visual Studio. For information about tools, see Install and configure your toolchain.
- This tutorial assumes that you're using your `[default]` profile for credentials. It also assumes that short-term credentials are available with appropriate permissions for sending and receiving Amazon SQS messages. For more information, see Configure SDK authentication with AWS and the security topics for SQS.

> **Note**
>
> By running this tutorial, you might incur costs for SQS messaging.

Steps

- Create an SQS queue
- Create and run the publishing application
- Create and run the handling application
- Cleanup

Create an SQS queue

This tutorial requires an SQS queue to send messages to and receive messages from. A queue can be created by using one of the following commands for the AWS CLI or the AWS Tools for PowerShell. Take note of the queue URL that is returned so that you can specify it in the framework configuration that follows.

AWS CLI

```
aws sqs create-queue --queue-name DemoQueue
```

AWS Tools for PowerShell

```
New-SQSQueue -QueueName DemoQueue
```

Create and run the publishing application

Use the following procedure to create and run the publishing application.

1. Open a command prompt or terminal. Find or create an operating system folder under which you can create a .NET project.
2. In that folder, run the following command to create the .NET project.

   ```
   dotnet new webapi --name Publisher
   ```

3. Navigate into the new project's folder. Add a dependency on the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET.

   ```
   cd Publisher
   dotnet add package AWS.Messaging
   ```

   > **Note**
   >
   > If you're using AWS IAM Identity Center for authentication, be sure to also add `AWSSDK.SSO` and `AWSSDK.SSOOIDC`.

4. Replace the code in `Program.cs` with the following code.

   ```
   using AWS.Messaging;
   ```

```
using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Mvc;
using Publisher;

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

// Add services to the container.
// Learn more about configuring Swagger/OpenAPI at https://aka.ms/aspnetcore/
swashbuckle.
builder.Services.AddEndpointsApiExplorer();
builder.Services.AddSwaggerGen();


// Configure the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET.
builder.Services.AddAWSMessageBus(builder =>
{
    // Check for input SQS URL.
    // The SQS URL should be passed as a command line argument or set in the Debug
 launch profile.
    if ((args.Length == 1) && (args[0].Contains("https://sqs.")))
    {
        // Register that you'll publish messages of type GreetingMessage:
        // 1. To a specified queue.
        // 2. Using the message identifier "greetingMessage", which will be used
        //    by handlers to route the message to the appropriate handler.
        builder.AddSQSPublisher<GreetingMessage>(args[0], "greetingMessage");
    }
    // You can map additional message types to queues or topics here as well.
});
var app = builder.Build();


// Configure the HTTP request pipeline.
if (app.Environment.IsDevelopment())
{
    app.UseSwagger();
    app.UseSwaggerUI();
}

app.UseHttpsRedirection();

// Create an API Endpoint that receives GreetingMessage objects
// from the caller and then sends them as an SQS message.
app.MapPost("/greeting", async ([FromServices] IMessagePublisher publisher,
 Publisher.GreetingMessage message) =>
```

```
    {
        return await PostGreeting(message, publisher);
    })
.WithName("SendGreeting")
.WithOpenApi();

app.Run();

public partial class Program
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Endpoint for posting a greeting message.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="greetingMessage">The greeting message.</param>
    /// <param name="messagePublisher">The message publisher.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task result.</returns>
    public static async Task<IResult> PostGreeting(GreetingMessage greetingMessage,
        IMessagePublisher messagePublisher)
    {
        if (greetingMessage.SenderName == null || greetingMessage.Greeting == null)
        {
            return Results.BadRequest();
        }

        // Publish the message to the queue configured above.
        await messagePublisher.PublishAsync(greetingMessage);

        return Results.Ok();
    }
}

namespace Publisher
{
    /// <summary>
    /// This class represents the message contents.
    /// </summary>
    public class GreetingMessage
    {
        public string? SenderName { get; set; }
        public string? Greeting { get; set; }
    }
}
```

5. Run the following command. This should open a browser window with the Swagger UI, which allows you to explore and test your API.

```
dotnet watch run <queue URL created earlier>
```

6. Open the `/greeting` endpoint and choose **Try it out**.
7. Specify `senderName` and `greeting` values for the message, and choose **Execute**. This invokes your API, which sends the SQS message.

Create and run the handling application

Use the following procedure to create and run the handling application.

1. Open a command prompt or terminal. Find or create an operating system folder under which you can create a .NET project.
2. In that folder, run the following command to create the .NET project.

```
dotnet new console --name Handler
```

3. Navigate into the new project's folder. Add a dependency on the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET. Also add the `Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting` package, which allows you to configure the framework through the .NET Generic Host.

```
cd Handler
dotnet add package AWS.Messaging
dotnet add package Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting
```

> **Note**
>
> If you're using AWS IAM Identity Center for authentication, be sure to also add `AWSSDK.SSO` and `AWSSDK.SSOOIDC`.

4. Replace the code in `Program.cs` with the following code.

```
using AWS.Messaging;
using Handler;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
```

```
var builder = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args);

builder.ConfigureServices(services =>
{
    // Register the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET.
    services.AddAWSMessageBus(builder =>
    {
        // Check for input SQS URL.
        // The SQS URL should be passed as a command line argument or set in the
 Debug launch profile.
        if ((args.Length == 1) && (args[0].Contains("https://sqs.")))
        {
            // Register you'll poll the following queue.
            builder.AddSQSPoller(args[0]);

            // And that messages of type "greetingMessage" should be:
            // 1. Deserialized as GreetingMessage objects.
            // 2. Which are then passed to GreetingMessageHandler.
            builder.AddMessageHandler<GreetingMessageHandler,
 GreetingMessage>("greetingMessage");

        }
        // You can add additional message handlers here, using different message
 types.
    });
});

var host = builder.Build();
await host.RunAsync();

namespace Handler
{
    /// <summary>
    /// This class represents the message contents.
    /// </summary>
    public class GreetingMessage
    {
        public string? SenderName { get; set; }
        public string? Greeting { get; set; }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// This handler is invoked each time you receive the message.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    public class GreetingMessageHandler : IMessageHandler<GreetingMessage>
    {
        public Task<MessageProcessStatus> HandleAsync(
            MessageEnvelope<GreetingMessage> messageEnvelope,
            CancellationToken token = default)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"Received message {messageEnvelope.Message.Greeting} from
 {messageEnvelope.Message.SenderName}");
            return Task.FromResult(MessageProcessStatus.Success());
        }
    }
}
```

5. Run the following command. This starts a long-running poller.

```
dotnet run <queue URL created earlier>
```

Shortly after startup the application will receive the message that was sent in the first part of this tutorial and log the following message:

```
Received message {greeting} from {senderName}
```

6. Press `Ctrl+C` to stop the poller.

Cleanup

Use one of the following commands for the AWS CLI or the AWS Tools for PowerShell to delete the queue.

AWS CLI

```
aws sqs delete-queue --queue-url "<queue URL created earlier>"
```

AWS Tools for PowerShell

```
Remove-SQSQueue -QueueUrl "<queue URL created earlier>"
```

Publish messages with the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET

The AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET supports publishing one or more message types, processing one or more message types, or doing both in the same application.

The following code shows a configuration for an application that is publishing different message types to different AWS services.

```
var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

// Register the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET
builder.Services.AddAWSMessageBus(builder =>
{
    // Register that you'll send messages of type ChatMessage to an existing queue
    builder.AddSQSPublisher<ChatMessage>("https://sqs.us-
west-2.amazonaws.com/012345678910/MyAppProd");

    // Register that you'll publish messages of type OrderInfo to an existing SNS topic
    builder.AddSNSPublisher<OrderInfo>("arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:012345678910:MyAppProd");

    // Register that you'll publish messages of type FoodItem to an existing
 EventBridge bus
    builder.AddEventBridgePublisher<FoodItem>("arn:aws:events:us-
west-2:012345678910:event-bus/default");
});
```

Once you have registered the framework during startup, inject the generic `IMessagePublisher` into your code. Call its `PublishAsync` method to publish any of the message types that were configured above. The generic publisher will determine the destination to route the message to based on its type.

In the following example, an ASP.NET MVC controller receives both `ChatMessage` messages and `OrderInfo` events from users, and then publishes them to Amazon SQS and Amazon SNS respectively. Both message types can be published using the generic publisher that was configured above.

```
[ApiController]
[Route("[controller]")]
public class PublisherController : ControllerBase
{
    private readonly IMessagePublisher _messagePublisher;
```

```
    public PublisherController(IMessagePublisher messagePublisher)
    {
        _messagePublisher = messagePublisher;
    }

    [HttpPost("chatmessage", Name = "Chat Message")]
    public async Task<IActionResult> PublishChatMessage([FromBody] ChatMessage message)
    {
        // Perform business and validation logic on the ChatMessage here.
        if (message == null)
        {
            return BadRequest("A chat message was not submitted. Unable to forward to
 the message queue.");
        }
        if (string.IsNullOrEmpty(message.MessageDescription))
        {
            return BadRequest("The MessageDescription cannot be null or empty.");
        }

        // Send the ChatMessage to SQS, using the generic publisher.
        await _messagePublisher.PublishAsync(message);

        return Ok();
    }

    [HttpPost("order", Name = "Order")]
    public async Task<IActionResult> PublishOrder([FromBody] OrderInfo message)
    {
        if (message == null)
        {
            return BadRequest("An order was not submitted.");
        }

        // Publish the OrderInfo to SNS, using the generic publisher.
        await _messagePublisher.PublishAsync(message);

        return Ok();
    }
}
```

In order to route a message to the appropriate handling logic, the framework uses metadata called the *message type identifier*. By default, this is the full name of the message's .NET type, including its assembly name. If you're both sending and handling messages, this mechanism works well if

you share the definition of your message objects across projects. However, if the messages are redefined in different namespaces, or if you're exchanging messages with other frameworks or programming languages, then you might need to override the message type identifier.

```
var builder = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args);

builder.ConfigureServices(services =>
{
    // Register the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET
    services.AddAWSMessageBus(builder =>
    {
        // Register that you'll publish messages of type GreetingMessage to an existing
 queue
        builder.AddSQSPublisher<GreetingMessage>("https://sqs.us-
west-2.amazonaws.com/012345678910/MyAppProd", "greetingMessage");
    });
});
```

Service-specific publishers

The example shown above uses the generic `IMessagePublisher`, which can publish to any supported AWS service based on the configured message type. The framework also provides service-specific publishers for Amazon SQS, Amazon SNS and Amazon EventBridge. These specific publishers expose options that only apply to that service, and can be injected using the types `ISQSPublisher`, `ISNSPublisher`, and `IEventBridgePublisher`.

For example, when sending messages to an SQS FIFO queue, you must set the appropriate message group ID. The following code shows the `ChatMessage` example again, but now using an `ISQSPublisher` to set SQS-specific options.

```
public class PublisherController : ControllerBase
{
    private readonly ISQSPublisher _sqsPublisher;

    public PublisherController(ISQSPublisher sqsPublisher)
    {
        _sqsPublisher = sqsPublisher;
    }

    [HttpPost("chatmessage", Name = "Chat Message")]
    public async Task<IActionResult> PublishChatMessage([FromBody] ChatMessage message)
```

```
    {
        // Perform business and validation logic on the ChatMessage here
        if (message == null)
        {
            return BadRequest("A chat message was not submitted. Unable to forward to
 the message queue.");
        }
        if (string.IsNullOrEmpty(message.MessageDescription))
        {
            return BadRequest("The MessageDescription cannot be null or empty.");
        }

        // Send the ChatMessage to SQS using the injected ISQSPublisher, with SQS-
specific options
        await _sqsPublisher.SendAsync(message, new SQSOptions
        {
            DelaySeconds = <delay-in-seconds>,
            MessageAttributes = <message-attributes>,
            MessageDeduplicationId = <message-deduplication-id>,
            MessageGroupId = <message-group-id>
        });

        return Ok();
    }
}
```

The same can be done for SNS and EventBridge, using `ISNSPublisher` and `IEventBridgePublisher` respectively.

```
await _snsPublisher.PublishAsync(message, new SNSOptions
{
    Subject = <subject>,
    MessageAttributes = <message-attributes>,
    MessageDeduplicationId = <message-deduplication-id>,
    MessageGroupId = <message-group-id>
});
```

```
await _eventBridgePublisher.PublishAsync(message, new EventBridgeOptions
{
    DetailType = <detail-type>,
    Resources = <resources>,
    Source = <source>,
    Time = <time>,
```

```
    TraceHeader = <trace-header>
});
```

By default, messages of a given type are sent to the destination that is configured in advance. However, you can override the destination for a single message using the message-specific publishers. You can also override the underlying AWS SDK for .NET client that is used to publish the message, which can be useful in multi-tenant applications where you need to change roles or credentials, depending on the destination.

```
await _sqsPublisher.SendAsync(message, new SQSOptions
{
    OverrideClient = <override IAmazonSQS client>,
    QueueUrl = <override queue URL>
});
```

Consume messages with the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET

The AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET allows you to consume messages that have been published by using the framework or one of the messaging services. The messages can be consumed in a variety of ways, some of which are described below.

Message Handlers

To consume messages, implement a message handler using the `IMessageHandler` interface for each message type you wish to process. The mapping between message types and message handlers is configured in the project startup.

```
await Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
    .ConfigureServices(services =>
    {
        // Register the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET
        services.AddAWSMessageBus(builder =>
        {
            // Register an SQS Queue that the framework will poll for messages.
            // NOTE: The URL given below is an example. Use the appropriate URL for
 your SQS Queue.
            builder.AddSQSPoller("https://sqs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/012345678910/
MyAppProd");

            // Register all IMessageHandler implementations with the message type they
 should process.
```

```
            // Here messages that match our ChatMessage .NET type will be handled by
 our ChatMessageHandler
            builder.AddMessageHandler<ChatMessageHandler, ChatMessage>();
        });
    })
    .Build()
    .RunAsync();
```

The following code shows a sample message handler for a `ChatMessage` message.

```
public class ChatMessageHandler : IMessageHandler<ChatMessage>
{
    public Task<MessageProcessStatus> HandleAsync(MessageEnvelope<ChatMessage>
 messageEnvelope, CancellationToken token = default)
    {
        // Add business and validation logic here.
        if (messageEnvelope == null)
        {
            return Task.FromResult(MessageProcessStatus.Failed());
        }

        if (messageEnvelope.Message == null)
        {
            return Task.FromResult(MessageProcessStatus.Failed());
        }

        ChatMessage message = messageEnvelope.Message;

        Console.WriteLine($"Message Description: {message.MessageDescription}");

        // Return success so the framework will delete the message from the queue.
        return Task.FromResult(MessageProcessStatus.Success());
    }
}
```

The outer `MessageEnvelope` contains metadata used by the framework. Its `message` property is the message type (in this case `ChatMessage`).

You can return `MessageProcessStatus.Success()` to indicate that the message was processed successfully and the framework will delete the message from the Amazon SQS queue. When returning `MessageProcessStatus.Failed()`, the message will remain in the queue where it can be processed again or moved to a dead-letter queue, if configured.

Handling Messages in a Long-Running Process

You can call `AddSQSPoller` with an SQS queue URL to start a long-running `BackgroundService` that will continuously poll the queue and process messages.

```
await Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
    .ConfigureServices(services =>
    {
        // Register the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET
        services.AddAWSMessageBus(builder =>
        {
            // Register an SQS Queue that the framework will poll for messages.
            // NOTE: The URL given below is an example. Use the appropriate URL for
 your SQS Queue.
            builder.AddSQSPoller("https://sqs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/012345678910/
MyAppProd", options =>
            {
                // The maximum number of messages from this queue that the framework
 will process concurrently on this client.
                options.MaxNumberOfConcurrentMessages = 10;

                // The duration each call to SQS will wait for new messages.
                options.WaitTimeSeconds = 20;
            });

            // Register all IMessageHandler implementations with the message type they
 should process.
            builder.AddMessageHandler<ChatMessageHandler, ChatMessage>();
        });
    })
    .Build()
    .RunAsync();
```

Configuring the SQS Message Poller

The SQS message poller can be configured by the `SQSMessagePollerOptions` when calling `AddSQSPoller`.

- `MaxNumberOfConcurrentMessages` - The maximum number of messages from the queue to process concurrently. The default value is 10.

- `WaitTimeSeconds` - The duration (in seconds) for which the `ReceiveMessage` SQS call waits for a message to arrive in the queue before returning. If a message is available, the call returns sooner than `WaitTimeSeconds`. The default value is 20.

Message Visibility Timeout Handling

SQS messages have a visibility timeout period. When one consumer begins handling a given message, it remains in the queue but is hidden from other consumers to avoid processing it more than once. If the message is not handled and deleted before becoming visible again, another consumer might attempt to handle the same message.

The framework will track and attempt to extend the visibility timeout for messages that it is currently handling. You can configure this behavior on the `SQSMessagePollerOptions` when calling `AddSQSPoller`.

- `VisibilityTimeout` - The duration in seconds that received messages are hidden from subsequent retrieve requests. The default value is 30.
- `VisibilityTimeoutExtensionThreshold` - When a message's visibility timeout is within this many seconds of expiring, the framework will extend the visibility timeout (by another `VisibilityTimeout` seconds). The default value is 5.
- `VisibilityTimeoutExtensionHeartbeatInterval` - How often in seconds that the framework will check for messages that are within `VisibilityTimeoutExtensionThreshold` seconds of expiring, and then extend their visibility timeout. The default value is 1.

In the following example, the framework will check every 1 second for messages that are still being handled. For those messages within 5 seconds of becoming visible again, the framework will automatically extend the visibility timeout of each message by another 30 seconds.

```
// NOTE: The URL given below is an example. Use the appropriate URL for your SQS Queue.
builder.AddSQSPoller("https://sqs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/012345678910/MyAppProd",
 options =>
{
    options.VisibilityTimeout = 30;
    options.VisibilityTimeoutExtensionThreshold = 5;
    VisibilityTimeoutExtensionHeartbeatInterval = 1;
});
```

Handling messages in AWS Lambda functions

You can use the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET with SQS's integration with Lambda. This is provided by the `AWS.Messaging.Lambda` package. Refer to its README to get started.

Using FIFO with the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET

For use cases where message ordering and message deduplication are critical, the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET supports first-in-first-out (FIFO) Amazon SQS queues and Amazon SNS topics.

Publishing

When publishing messages to a FIFO queue or topic, you must set the message group ID, which specifies the group that the message belongs to. Messages within a group are processed in order. You can set this on the SQS-specific and SNS-specific message publishers.

```
await _sqsPublisher.PublishAsync(message, new SQSOptions
{
    MessageDeduplicationId = <message-deduplication-id>,
    MessageGroupId = <message-group-id>
});
```

Subscribing

When handling messages from a FIFO queue, the framework handles messages within a given message group in the order in which they were received for each `ReceiveMessages` call. The framework enters this mode of operation automatically when configured with a queue ending in `.fifo`.

```
await Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
    .ConfigureServices(services =>
    {
        // Register the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET.
        services.AddAWSMessageBus(builder =>
        {
            // Because this is a FIFO queue, the framework automatically handles these
 messages in order.
            builder.AddSQSPoller("https://sqs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/012345678910/
MPF.fifo");
            builder.AddMessageHandler<OrderMessageHandler, OrderMessage>();
```

```
        });
    })
    .Build()
    .RunAsync();
```

Logging and Open Telemetry for the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET

The AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET is instrumented for OpenTelemetry to log traces for each message that is published or handled by the framework. This is provided by the `AWS.Messaging.Telemetry.OpenTelemetry` package. Refer to its README to get started.

> **Note**
>
> For security information related to logging, see Security for the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET.

Customize the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET

The AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET builds, sends, and handles messages in three different "layers":

1. At the outermost layer, the framework builds the AWS-native request or response specific to a service. With Amazon SQS for example, it builds `SendMessage` requests, and works with the `Message` objects that are defined by the service.
2. Inside the SQS request and response, the framework sets the `MessageBody` element (or `Message` for Amazon SNS or `Detail` for Amazon EventBridge) to a JSON-formatted CloudEvent. This contains metadata set by the framework that is accessible on the `MessageEnvelope` object when handling a message.
3. At the innermost layer, the `data` attribute inside the CloudEvent JSON object contains a JSON serialization of the .NET object that was sent or received as the message.

```
{
    "id":"b02f156b-0f02-48cf-ae54-4fbbe05cffba",
    "source":"/aws/messaging",
    "specversion":"1.0",
    "type":"Publisher.Models.ChatMessage",
```

```
    "time":"2023-11-21T16:36:02.8957126+00:00",
    "data":"<the ChatMessage object serialized as JSON>"
}
```

You can customize how the message envelope is configured and read:

- `"id"` uniquely identifies the message. By default it is set to a new GUID, but this can be overridden by implementing your own `IMessageIdGenerator` and injecting that into the DI container.
- `"type"` controls how the message is routed to handlers. By default this uses the full name of the .NET type that corresponds to the message. You can override this via the `messageTypeIdentifier` parameter when mapping the message type to the destination via `AddSQSPublisher`, `AddSNSPublisher`, or `AddEventBridgePublisher`.
- `"source"` indicates which system or server sent the message.
  - This will be the function name if publishing from AWS Lambda, the cluster name and task ARN if on Amazon ECS, the instance ID if on Amazon EC2, otherwise a fallback value of `/aws/messaging`.
  - You can override this via `AddMessageSource` or `AddMessageSourceSuffix` on the `MessageBusBuilder`.
- `"time"` set to the current DateTime in UTC. This can be overridden by implementing your own `IDateTimeHandler` and injecting that into the DI container.
- `"data"` contains a JSON representation of the .NET object that was sent or received as the message:
  - `ConfigureSerializationOptions` on `MessageBusBuilder` allows you to configure the `System.Text.Json.JsonSerializerOptions` that will be used when serializing and deserializing the message.
  - To inject additional attributes or transform the message envelope once the framework builds it, you can implement `ISerializationCallback` and register that via `AddSerializationCallback` on `MessageBusBuilder`.

Security for the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET

The AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET relies on the AWS SDK for .NET for communicating with AWS. For more information about security in the AWS SDK for .NET, see Security for this AWS Product or Service.

For security purposes, the framework doesn't log data messages sent by the user. If you want to enable this functionality for debugging purposes, you need to call `EnableDataMessageLogging()` in the Message Bus as follows:

```
builder.Services.AddAWSMessageBus(bus =>
{
    builder.EnableDataMessageLogging();
});
```

If you discover a potential security issue, refer to the security policy for reporting information.

Integrating AWS with .NET Aspire in the AWS SDK for .NET

.NET Aspire is a new way of building cloud-ready applications. In particular, it provides an orchestration for local environments in which to run, connect, and debug the components of distributed applications. To improve the inner dev loop for cloud ready applications, integrations with .NET Aspire have been created for connecting your .NET applications to AWS resources. These integrations are available through the Aspire.Hosting.AWS NuGet package.

The following .NET Aspire integrations are available:

- The ability to provision your AWS resources through CloudFormation. This integration is utilized within the .NET Aspire AppHost project.

  For more information, see the blog post Integrating AWS with .NET Aspire.
- Installing, configuring, and connecting the AWS SDK for .NET to Amazon DynamoDB local. This integration is utilized within the .NET Aspire AppHost project.

  For more information, see the blog post Integrating AWS with .NET Aspire.
- Enable a local development environment for AWS Lambda functions. This integration is utilized within the .NET Aspire AppHost project.

  For more information, see the blog posts Building and Debugging .NET Lambda applications with .NET Aspire (Part 1) and Building and Debugging .NET Lambda applications with .NET Aspire (Part 2).

> **Note**
>
> This is prerelease documentation for a feature in preview release. It is subject to change.

Because this feature is in preview, you will need to opt-in for preview features. For additional information about this preview feature and how to opt-in, see the development tracker issue on GitHub.

Additional information

For additional information and details about how you can use the integrations that are available in Aspire.Hosting.AWS, see the following resources.

- Blog post Integrating AWS with .NET Aspire.
- Blog posts Building and Debugging .NET Lambda applications with .NET Aspire (Part 1) and Building and Debugging .NET Lambda applications with .NET Aspire (Part 2).
- The integrations-on-dotnet-aspire-for-aws repo on GitHub.
- The detailed README for the Aspire.Hosting.AWS NuGet package.

Support for other AWS services and configuration

The AWS SDK for .NET supports AWS services in addition to those described in the preceding sections. For information about the APIs for all supported services, see the AWS SDK for .NET API Reference.

In addition to the namespaces for individual AWS services, the AWS SDK for .NET also provides the following APIs:

Area	Description	Resources
AWS Support	Programmatic access to AWS Support cases and Trusted Advisor features.	See Amazon.AWSSupport and Amazon.AWSSupport.Model.
General	Helper classes and enumerations.	See Amazon and Amazon.Util.

SDK for .NET code examples

The code examples in this topic show you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET with AWS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Some services contain additional example categories that show how to leverage libraries or functions specific to the service.

Services

- ACM examples using SDK for .NET
- API Gateway examples using SDK for .NET
- Aurora examples using SDK for .NET
- Auto Scaling examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for .NET
- CloudWatch Logs examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon Comprehend examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon DocumentDB examples using SDK for .NET
- DynamoDB examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon ECS examples using SDK for .NET
- Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 examples using SDK for .NET
- EventBridge examples using SDK for .NET
- EventBridge Scheduler examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon Glacier examples using SDK for .NET

- AWS Glue examples using SDK for .NET
- IAM examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon Keyspaces examples using SDK for .NET
- Kinesis examples using SDK for .NET
- AWS KMS examples using SDK for .NET
- Lambda examples using SDK for .NET
- MediaConvert examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon MSK examples using SDK for .NET
- Organizations examples using SDK for .NET
- Partner Central examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon Pinpoint examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon Polly examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon RDS examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon RDS Data Service examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon Rekognition examples using SDK for .NET
- Route 53 domain registration examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon S3 examples using SDK for .NET
- SageMaker AI examples using SDK for .NET
- Secrets Manager examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon SES examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon SES API v2 examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon SNS examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon SQS examples using SDK for .NET
- Step Functions examples using SDK for .NET
- AWS STS examples using SDK for .NET
- Support examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon Textract examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon Transcribe examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon Translate examples using SDK for .NET

ACM examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with ACM.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`DescribeCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCertificate`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.CertificateManager;
using Amazon.CertificateManager.Model;

namespace DescribeCertificate
{
    class DescribeCertificate
    {
        // The following example retrieves and displays the metadata for a
        // certificate using the AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) service.
```

```
        // Specify your AWS Region (an example Region is shown).
        private static readonly RegionEndpoint ACMRegion = RegionEndpoint.USEast1;
        private static AmazonCertificateManagerClient _client;

        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            _client = new
 Amazon.CertificateManager.AmazonCertificateManagerClient(ACMRegion);

            var describeCertificateReq = new DescribeCertificateRequest();
            // The ARN used here is just an example. Replace it with the ARN of
            // a certificate that exists on your account.
            describeCertificateReq.CertificateArn =
                "arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/8cfd7dae-9b6a-2d07-92bc-1c309EXAMPLE";

            var certificateDetailResp =
                DescribeCertificateResponseAsync(client: _client, request:
 describeCertificateReq);
            var certificateDetail = certificateDetailResp.Result.Certificate;

            if (certificateDetail is not null)
            {
                DisplayCertificateDetails(certificateDetail);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays detailed metadata about a certificate retrieved
        /// using the ACM service.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="certificateDetail">The object that contains details
        /// returned from the call to DescribeCertificateAsync.</param>
        static void DisplayCertificateDetails(CertificateDetail certificateDetail)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\nCertificate Details: ");
            Console.WriteLine($"Certificate Domain:
 {certificateDetail.DomainName}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Certificate Arn:
 {certificateDetail.CertificateArn}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Certificate Subject: {certificateDetail.Subject}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Certificate Status: {certificateDetail.Status}");
            foreach (var san in certificateDetail.SubjectAlternativeNames)
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Certificate SubjectAlternativeName: {san}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves the metadata associated with the ACM service certificate.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An AmazonCertificateManagerClient object
        /// used to call DescribeCertificateResponse.</param>
        /// <param name="request">The DescribeCertificateRequest object that
        /// will be passed to the method call.</param>
        /// <returns></returns>
        static async Task<DescribeCertificateResponse>
 DescribeCertificateResponseAsync(
            AmazonCertificateManagerClient client, DescribeCertificateRequest
 request)
        {
            var response = new DescribeCertificateResponse();

            try
            {
                response = await client.DescribeCertificateAsync(request);
            }
            catch (InvalidArnException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: The ARN specified is invalid.");
            }
            catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: The specified certificate could not be
 found.");
            }

            return response;
        }
    }

}
```

- For API details, see DescribeCertificate in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

ListCertificates

The following code example shows how to use `ListCertificates`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.CertificateManager;
using Amazon.CertificateManager.Model;

namespace ListCertificates
{
    // The following example retrieves and displays a list of the
    // certificates defined for the default account using the AWS
    // Certificate Manager (ACM) service.
    class ListCertificates
    {
        // Specify your AWS Region (an example Region is shown).

        private static readonly RegionEndpoint ACMRegion = RegionEndpoint.USEast1;
        private static AmazonCertificateManagerClient _client;

        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            _client = new AmazonCertificateManagerClient(ACMRegion);
            var certificateList = ListCertificatesResponseAsync(client: _client);

            Console.WriteLine("Certificate Summary List\n");

            foreach (var certificate in
 certificateList.Result.CertificateSummaryList)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Certificate Domain: {certificate.DomainName}");
```

```
                Console.WriteLine($"Certificate ARN:
 {certificate.CertificateArn}\n");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves a list of the certificates defined in this Region.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The ACM client object passed to the
        /// ListCertificateResAsync method call.</param>
        /// <param name="request"></param>
        /// <returns>The ListCertificatesResponse.</returns>
        static async Task<ListCertificatesResponse> ListCertificatesResponseAsync(
            AmazonCertificateManagerClient client)
        {
            var request = new ListCertificatesRequest();

            var response = await client.ListCertificatesAsync(request);
            return response;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListCertificates in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

API Gateway examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with API Gateway.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

AWS community contributions are examples that were created and are maintained by multiple teams across AWS. To provide feedback, use the mechanism provided in the linked repositories.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios
- AWS community contributions

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

AWS community contributions

Build and test a serverless application

The following code example shows how to build and test a serverless application using API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB

SDK for .NET

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the .NET SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Aurora examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Aurora.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses a front end built with React.js to interact with a RESTful .NET backend.

- Integrate a React web application with AWS services.

- List, add, update, and delete items in an Aurora table.
- Send an email report of filtered work items using Amazon SES.
- Deploy and manage example resources with the included AWS CloudFormation script.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Auto Scaling examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Auto Scaling.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
 Scaling group.
    /// The
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="autoScalingGroupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <param name="targetGroupArn">The Arn for the target group.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(string autoScalingGroupName, string
 targetGroupArn)
    {
        await _amazonAutoScaling.AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsAsync(
            new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupName = autoScalingGroupName,
                TargetGroupARNs = new List<string>() { targetGroupArn }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Update the minimum size of an Auto Scaling group to zero, terminate all instances in the group, and delete the group.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Try to terminate an instance by its Id.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to terminate.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryTerminateInstanceById(string instanceId)
    {
        var stopping = false;
        Console.WriteLine($"Stopping {instanceId}...");
        while (!stopping)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        InstanceId = instanceId,
                        ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false
                    });
                stopping = true;
            }
            catch (ScalingActivityInProgressException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Scaling activity in progress for {instanceId}.
Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Tries to delete the EC2 Auto Scaling group. If the group is in use or in
progress,
    /// waits and retries until the group is successfully deleted.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to try to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryDeleteGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var stopped = false;
        while (!stopped)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        AutoScalingGroupName = groupName
                    });
                stopped = true;
            }
            catch (Exception e)
                when ((e is ScalingActivityInProgressException)
                      || (e is Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.ResourceInUseException))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Some instances are still running. Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate instances and delete the Auto Scaling group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(string groupName)
    {
        var describeGroupsResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { groupName }
            });
        if (describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups.Any())
```

```
        {
            // Update the size to 0.
            await _amazonAutoScaling.UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    MinSize = 0
                });
            var group = describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups[0];
            foreach (var instance in group.Instances)
            {
                await TryTerminateInstanceById(instance.InstanceId);
            }

            await TryDeleteGroupByName(groupName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No groups found with name {groupName}.");
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(
        string groupName)
    {
        var deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest = new DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            ForceDelete = true,
        };

        var response = await
 _amazonAutoScaling.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"You successfully deleted {groupName}");
            return true;
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete {groupName}.");
        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build and manage a resilient service

The following code example shows how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();


        // Set up dependency injection for the AWS services.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonDynamoDB>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonAutoScaling>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>()
                    .AddTransient<AutoScalerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<SmParameterWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<Recommendations>()
                    .AddSingleton<IConfiguration>(_configuration)
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);
        ResourcesSetup();

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Resilient Architecture Example
Scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Deploy(true);
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("Now let's begin the scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Demo(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Finally, let's clean up our resources.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            await DestroyResources(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Resilient Architecture Example Scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            await DestroyResources(true);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Setup any common resources, also used for integration testing.
    /// </summary>
    public static void ResourcesSetup()
    {
        _httpClient = new HttpClient();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>();
        _iamClient =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>();
```

```
        _recommendations = host.Services.GetRequiredService<Recommendations>();
        _autoScalerWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<AutoScalerWrapper>();
        _smParameterWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<SmParameterWrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deploy necessary resources for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Deploy(bool interactive)
    {
        var protocol = "HTTP";
        var port = 80;
        var sshPort = 22;

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nFor this demo, we'll use the AWS SDK for .NET to create several AWS
resources\n" +
            "to set up a load-balanced web service endpoint and explore some ways to
make it resilient\n" +
            "against various kinds of failures.\n\n" +
            "Some of the resources create by this demo are:\n");

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* A DynamoDB table that the web service depends on to provide book,
movie, and song recommendations.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 launch template that defines EC2 instances that each contain
a Python web server.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 Auto Scaling group that manages EC2 instances across several
Availability Zones.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) load balancer that targets the Auto
Scaling group to distribute requests.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to start deploying
resources.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        // Create and populate the DynamoDB table.
```

```
        var databaseTableName = _configuration["databaseName"];
        var recommendationsPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "recommendations_objects.json");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating and populating a DynamoDB table named
{databaseTableName}.");
        await _recommendations.CreateDatabaseWithName(databaseTableName);
        await _recommendations.PopulateDatabase(databaseTableName,
recommendationsPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        // Create the EC2 Launch Template.

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Creating an EC2 launch template that runs 'server_startup_script.sh'
when an instance starts.\n"
            + "\nThis script starts a Python web server defined in the `server.py`
script. The web server\n"
            + "listens to HTTP requests on port 80 and responds to requests to '/'
and to '/healthcheck'.\n"
            + "For demo purposes, this server is run as the root user. In
production, the best practice is to\n"
            + "run a web server, such as Apache, with least-privileged
credentials.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nThe template also defines an IAM policy that each instance uses to
assume a role that grants\n"
            + "permissions to access the DynamoDB recommendation table and Systems
Manager parameters\n"
            + "that control the flow of the demo.");

        var startupScriptPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "server_startup_script.sh");
        var instancePolicyPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "instance_policy.json");
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateTemplate(startupScriptPath,
instancePolicyPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group that maintains three EC2 instances,
each in a different\n"
            + "Availability Zone.\n");
        var zones = await _autoScalerWrapper.DescribeAvailabilityZones();
```

```
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateGroupOfSize(3, _autoScalerWrapper.GroupName,
zones);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "At this point, you have EC2 instances created. Once each instance
starts, it listens for\n"
            + "HTTP requests. You can see these instances in the console or continue
with the demo.\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("Creating variables that control the flow of the demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nCreating an Elastic Load Balancing target group and load balancer.
The target group\n"
            + "defines how the load balancer connects to instances. The load
balancer provides a\n"
            + "single endpoint where clients connect and dispatches requests to
instances in the group.");

        var defaultVpc = await _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultVpc();
        var subnets = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(defaultVpc.VpcId, zones);
        var subnetIds = subnets.Select(s => s.SubnetId).ToList();
        var targetGroup = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGroupN
protocol, port, defaultVpc.VpcId);

        await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.LoadB
subnetIds, targetGroup);
        await
_autoScalerWrapper.AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName,
targetGroup.TargetGroupArn);
        Console.WriteLine("\nVerifying access to the load balancer endpoint...");
        var endPoint = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.Lo
```

```
        var loadBalancerAccess = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);

        if (!loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\nCouldn't connect to the load balancer, verifying
 that the port is open...");

            var ipString = await _httpClient.GetStringAsync("https://
checkip.amazonaws.com");
            ipString = ipString.Trim();

            var defaultSecurityGroup = await
 _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(defaultVpc);
            var portIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, port, ipString);
            var sshPortIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, sshPort,
 ipString);

            if (!portIsOpen)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    "\nFor this example to work, the default security group for your
 default VPC must\n"
                    + "allows access from this computer. You can either add it
 automatically from this\n"
                    + "example or add it yourself using the AWS Management Console.
\n");

                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
 inbound traffic from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
                    await
 _autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, port, ipString);
                }
            }

            if (!sshPortIsOpen)
            {
                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
 inbound SSH traffic for debugging from your computer's IP address?"))
```

```
                {
                    await
_autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, sshPort,
ipString);
                }
            }
            loadBalancerAccess = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);
        }

        if (loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Your load balancer is ready. You can access it by
browsing to:");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "\nCouldn't get a successful response from the load balancer
endpoint. Troubleshoot by\n"
                + "manually verifying that your VPC and security group are
configured correctly and that\n"
                + "you can successfully make a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint:\n");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue with the
demo.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Demonstrate the steps of the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as an interactive scenario.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Demo(bool interactive)
    {
        var ssmOnlyPolicy = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "ssm_only_policy.json");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Resetting parameters to starting values for demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine("\nThis part of the demonstration shows how to toggle
 different parts of the system\n" +
                          "to create situations where the web service fails, and
 shows how using a resilient\n" +
                          "architecture can keep the web service running in spite of
 these failures.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 88));
        Console.WriteLine("At the start, the load balancer endpoint returns
 recommendations and reports that all targets are healthy.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine($"The web service running on the EC2 instances gets
 recommendations by querying a DynamoDB table.\n" +
                          $"The table name is contained in a Systems Manager
 parameter named '{_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter}'.\n" +
                          $"To simulate a failure of the recommendation service,
 let's set this parameter to name a non-existent table.\n");
        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter, "this-
is-not-a-table");
        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
 endpoint returns a failure code. But, the service reports as\n" +
                          "healthy to the load balancer because shallow health
 checks don't check for failure of the recommendation service.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Instead of failing when the recommendation service fails,
 the web service can return a static response.");
        Console.WriteLine("While this is not a perfect solution, it presents the
 customer with a somewhat better experience than failure.");

        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.FailureResponseParameter,
 "static");

        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
 endpoint returns a static response.");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("The service still reports as healthy because health
checks are still shallow.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Let's reinstate the recommendation service.\n");
        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter,
_smParameterWrapper.TableName);
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nLet's also substitute bad credentials for one of the instances in the
target group so that it can't\n" +
            "access the DynamoDB recommendation table.\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsPolicyName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            ssmOnlyPolicy,
            new List<string> { "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore" }
        );
        var instances = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstancesByGroupName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName);
        var badInstanceId = instances.First();
        var instanceProfile = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstanceProfile(badInstanceId);
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Replacing the profile for instance {badInstanceId} with a profile that
contains\n" +
            "bad credentials...\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.ReplaceInstanceProfile(
            badInstanceId,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            instanceProfile.AssociationId
        );
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint returns either
a recommendation or a static response,\n" +
            "depending on which instance is selected by the load balancer.\n"
        );
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("\nLet's implement a deep health check. For this demo, a
deep health check tests whether");
        Console.WriteLine("the web service can access the DynamoDB table that it
depends on for recommendations. Note that");
        Console.WriteLine("the deep health check is only for ELB routing and not for
Auto Scaling instance health.");
        Console.WriteLine("This kind of deep health check is not recommended for
Auto Scaling instance health, because it");
        Console.WriteLine("risks accidental termination of all instances in the Auto
Scaling group when a dependent service fails.");

        Console.WriteLine("\nBy implementing deep health checks, the load balancer
can detect when one of the instances is failing");
        Console.WriteLine("and take that instance out of rotation.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.HealthCheckParameter,
"deep");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nNow, checking target health indicates that the
instance with bad credentials ({badInstanceId})");
        Console.WriteLine("is unhealthy. Note that it might take a minute or two for
the load balancer to detect the unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance. Sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint always returns a recommendation, because");
        Console.WriteLine("the load balancer takes unhealthy instances out of its
rotation.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nBecause the instances in this demo are controlled by an
auto scaler, the simplest way to fix an unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance is to terminate it and let the auto scaler start
a new instance to replace it.");

        await _autoScalerWrapper.TryTerminateInstanceById(badInstanceId);

        Console.WriteLine($"\nEven while the instance is terminating and the new
instance is starting, sending a GET");
        Console.WriteLine("request to the web service continues to get a successful
recommendation response because");
        Console.WriteLine("starts and reports as healthy, it is included in the load
balancing rotation.");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("Note that terminating and replacing an instance typically
 takes several minutes, during which time you");
        Console.WriteLine("can see the changing health check status until the new
 instance is running and healthy.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nIf the recommendation service fails now, deep health
 checks mean all instances report as unhealthy.");

        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter, "this-
is-not-a-table");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nWhen all instances are unhealthy, the load balancer
 continues to route requests even to");
        Console.WriteLine("unhealthy instances, allowing them to fail open and
 return a static response rather than fail");
        Console.WriteLine("closed and report failure to the customer.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to ask the user for cleanup.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> DestroyResources(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine(
            "To keep things tidy and to avoid unwanted charges on your account, we
 can clean up all AWS resources\n" +
            "that were created for this demo."
        );
```

```
        if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse("Do you want to clean up all demo
resources? (y/n) "))
        {
            await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.LoadBalanc
            await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteTargetGroupByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGroup
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName)
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.DeleteKeyPairByName(_autoScalerWrapper.KeyPairName);
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.DeleteTemplateByName(_autoScalerWrapper.LaunchTemplateName);
            await _autoScalerWrapper.DeleteInstanceProfile(
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName
            );
            await
_recommendations.DestroyDatabaseByName(_recommendations.TableName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Ok, we'll leave the resources intact.\n" +
                "Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you might
incur unexpected charges."
            );
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management methods.
/// </summary>
public class AutoScalerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonAutoScaling _amazonAutoScaling;
    private readonly IAmazonEC2 _amazonEc2;
```

```
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement _amazonSsm;
    private readonly IAmazonIdentityManagementService _amazonIam;
    private readonly ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> _logger;

    private readonly string _instanceType = "";
    private readonly string _amiParam = "";
    private readonly string _launchTemplateName = "";
    private readonly string _groupName = "";
    private readonly string _instancePolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsPolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _keyPairName = "";

    public string GroupName => _groupName;
    public string KeyPairName => _keyPairName;
    public string LaunchTemplateName => _launchTemplateName;
    public string InstancePolicyName => _instancePolicyName;
    public string BadCredsProfileName => _badCredsProfileName;
    public string BadCredsRoleName => _badCredsRoleName;
    public string BadCredsPolicyName => _badCredsPolicyName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the AutoScalerWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonAutoScaling">The injected AutoScaling client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonEc2">The injected EC2 client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonIam">The injected IAM client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonSsm">The injected SSM client.</param>
    public AutoScalerWrapper(
        IAmazonAutoScaling amazonAutoScaling,
        IAmazonEC2 amazonEc2,
        IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement amazonSsm,
        IAmazonIdentityManagementService amazonIam,
        IConfiguration configuration,
        ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonAutoScaling = amazonAutoScaling;
        _amazonEc2 = amazonEc2;
        _amazonSsm = amazonSsm;
        _amazonIam = amazonIam;
        _logger = logger;
```

```
        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _instanceType = configuration["instanceType"];
        _amiParam = configuration["amiParam"];

        _launchTemplateName = prefix + "-template";
        _groupName = prefix + "-group";
        _instancePolicyName = prefix + "-pol";
        _instanceRoleName = prefix + "-role";
        _instanceProfileName = prefix + "-prof";
        _badCredsPolicyName = prefix + "-bc-pol";
        _badCredsRoleName = prefix + "-bc-role";
        _badCredsProfileName = prefix + "-bc-prof";
        _keyPairName = prefix + "-key-pair";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances with a
specified name.
    /// An instance's associated profile defines a role that is assumed by the
    /// instance.The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
granted to
    /// clients that run on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">Name to use for the policy.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">Name to use for the role.</param>
    /// <param name="profileName">Name to use for the profile.</param>
    /// <param name="ssmOnlyPolicyFile">Path to a policy file for SSM.</param>
    /// <param name="awsManagedPolicies">AWS Managed policies to be attached to the
role.</param>
    /// <returns>The Arn of the profile.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
        string policyName,
        string roleName,
        string profileName,
        string ssmOnlyPolicyFile,
        List<string>? awsManagedPolicies = null)
    {

        var assumeRoleDoc = "{" +
                                    "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                    "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                         "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                         "\"Principal\": {" +
```

```
                                        "\"Service\": [" +
                                            "\"ec2.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                        "]" +
                                        "}," +
                                    "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                                    "}]" +
                                "}";

        var policyDocument = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(ssmOnlyPolicyFile);

        var policyArn = "";

        try
        {
            var createPolicyResult = await _amazonIam.CreatePolicyAsync(
                new CreatePolicyRequest
                {
                    PolicyName = policyName,
                    PolicyDocument = policyDocument
                });
            policyArn = createPolicyResult.Policy.Arn;
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            // The policy already exists, so we look it up to get the Arn.
            var policiesPaginator = _amazonIam.Paginators.ListPolicies(
                new ListPoliciesRequest()
                {
                    Scope = PolicyScopeType.Local
                });
            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var policy in policiesPaginator.Policies)
            {
                if (policy.PolicyName.Equals(policyName))
                {
                    policyArn = policy.Arn;
                }
            }

            if (policyArn == null)
            {
                throw new InvalidOperationException("Policy not found");
            }
        }
```

```
        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.CreateRoleAsync(new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRoleDoc,
            });
            await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                PolicyArn = policyArn
            });
            if (awsManagedPolicies != null)
            {
                foreach (var awsPolicy in awsManagedPolicies)
                {
                    await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
AttachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        PolicyArn = $"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{awsPolicy}",
                        RoleName = roleName
                    });
                }
            }
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Role already exists.");
        }

        string profileArn = "";
        try
        {
            var profileCreateResponse = await _amazonIam.CreateInstanceProfileAsync(
                new CreateInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            // Allow time for the profile to be ready.
            profileArn = profileCreateResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
            await _amazonIam.AddRoleToInstanceProfileAsync(
                new AddRoleToInstanceProfileRequest()
```

```
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });

        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Policy already exists.");
            var profileGetResponse = await _amazonIam.GetInstanceProfileAsync(
                new GetInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            profileArn = profileGetResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
        }
        return profileArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new key pair and save the file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newKeyPairName">The name of the new key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateKeyPair(string newKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            var keyResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateKeyPairAsync(
                new CreateKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = newKeyPairName });
            await File.WriteAllTextAsync($"{newKeyPairName}.pem",
                keyResponse.KeyPair.KeyMaterial);
            Console.WriteLine($"Created key pair {newKeyPairName}.");
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Key pair already exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the key pair and file by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="deleteKeyPairName">The key pair to delete.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteKeyPairByName(string deleteKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteKeyPairAsync(
                new DeleteKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = deleteKeyPairName });
            File.Delete($"{deleteKeyPairName}.pem");
        }
        catch (FileNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Key pair {deleteKeyPairName} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling.
    /// The launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that runs
after
    /// the instance is started. This script installs the Python packages and starts
a Python
    /// web server on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="startupScriptPath">The path to a Bash script file that is
run.</param>
    /// <param name="instancePolicyPath">The path to a permissions policy to create
and attach to the profile.</param>
    /// <returns>The template object.</returns>
    public async Task<Amazon.EC2.Model.LaunchTemplate> CreateTemplate(string
startupScriptPath, string instancePolicyPath)
    {
        try
        {
            await CreateKeyPair(_keyPairName);
            await CreateInstanceProfileWithName(_instancePolicyName,
_instanceRoleName,
                _instanceProfileName, instancePolicyPath);

            var startServerText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(startupScriptPath);
            var plainTextBytes =
System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(startServerText);

            var amiLatest = await _amazonSsm.GetParameterAsync(
                new GetParameterRequest() { Name = _amiParam });
```

```
            var amiId = amiLatest.Parameter.Value;
            var launchTemplateResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new CreateLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                    LaunchTemplateData = new RequestLaunchTemplateData()
                    {
                        InstanceType = _instanceType,
                        ImageId = amiId,
                        IamInstanceProfile =
                            new

LaunchTemplateIamInstanceProfileSpecificationRequest()
                            {
                                Name = _instanceProfileName
                            },
                        KeyName = _keyPairName,
                        UserData = System.Convert.ToBase64String(plainTextBytes)
                    }
                });
            return launchTemplateResponse.LaunchTemplate;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Could not create the template, the name
{_launchTemplateName} already exists. " +
                                 $"Please try again with a unique name.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while creating the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2 Client.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of availability zones.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> DescribeAvailabilityZones()
    {
        try
        {
            var zoneResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeAvailabilityZonesAsync(
                new DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest());
            return zoneResponse.AvailabilityZones.Select(z => z.ZoneName).ToList();
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An Amazon EC2 error occurred while listing
 availability zones.: {ec2Exception.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while listing availability zones.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an EC2 Auto Scaling group of a specified size and name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupSize">The size for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The availability zones for the group.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateGroupOfSize(int groupSize, string groupName,
 List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonAutoScaling.CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    AvailabilityZones = availabilityZones,
                    LaunchTemplate =
                        new Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.LaunchTemplateSpecification()
```

```
                        {
                            LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                            Version = "$Default"
                        },
                    MaxSize = groupSize,
                    MinSize = groupSize
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Created EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} with size
{groupSize}.");
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} already
exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default VPC for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The default VPC object.</returns>
    public async Task<Vpc> GetDefaultVpc()
    {
        try
        {
            var vpcResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeVpcsAsync(
                new DescribeVpcsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("is-default", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });
            return vpcResponse.Vpcs[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "UnauthorizedOperation")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"You do not have the necessary
permissions to describe VPCs.");
            }

            throw;
```

```
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the vpcs.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get all the subnets for a Vpc in a set of availability zones.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The list of availability zones.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of subnet objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Subnet>> GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(string vpcId,
List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            var subnets = new List<Subnet>();
            var subnetPaginator = _amazonEc2.Paginators.DescribeSubnets(
                new DescribeSubnetsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpcId }),
                        new("availability-zone", availabilityZones),
                        new("default-for-az", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });

            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var subnet in subnetPaginator.Subnets)
            {
                subnets.Add(subnet);
            }

            return subnets;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound")
            {
```

```
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"The specified VPC ID {vpcId} does
not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the subnets.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a launch template by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the template to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTemplateByName(string templateName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new DeleteLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = templateName
                });
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Could not delete the template, the name {_launchTemplateName}
was not found.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
```

```
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while deleting the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
    /// and deletes all the resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="profileName">The name of the profile to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteInstanceProfile(string profileName, string roleName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileAsync(
                new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });
            await _amazonIam.DeleteInstanceProfileAsync(
                new DeleteInstanceProfileRequest() { InstanceProfileName =
profileName });
            var attachedPolicies = await _amazonIam.ListAttachedRolePoliciesAsync(
                new ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
            foreach (var policy in attachedPolicies.AttachedPolicies)
            {
                await _amazonIam.DetachRolePolicyAsync(
                    new DetachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        RoleName = roleName,
                        PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                    });
                // Delete the custom policies only.
                if (!policy.PolicyArn.StartsWith("arn:aws:iam::aws"))
                {
                    await _amazonIam.DeletePolicyAsync(
                        new Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.DeletePolicyRequest()
                        {
                            PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                        });
```

```
                }
            }

            await _amazonIam.DeleteRoleAsync(
                new DeleteRoleRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
        }
        catch (NoSuchEntityException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Instance profile {profileName} does not exist.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Gets data about the instances in an EC2 Auto Scaling group by its group
name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="group">The name of the auto scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of instance Ids.</returns>
    public async Task<IEnumerable<string>> GetInstancesByGroupName(string group)
    {
        var instanceResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { group }
            });
        var instanceIds = instanceResponse.AutoScalingGroups.SelectMany(
            g => g.Instances.Select(i => i.InstanceId));
        return instanceIds;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the instance profile association data for an instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Instance profile associations data.</returns>
    public async Task<IamInstanceProfileAssociation> GetInstanceProfile(string
instanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await
_amazonEc2.DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsAsync(
                new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest()
```

```
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("instance-id", new List<string>() { instanceId })
                    },
                });
            return response.IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while creating the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Replace the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile is
replaced, the instance
    /// is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile. When the instance is
ready, Systems Manager is
    /// used to restart the Python web server.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to update.</param>
    /// <param name="credsProfileName">The name of the new profile to associate with
the specified instance.</param>
    /// <param name="associationId">The Id of the existing profile association for
the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task ReplaceInstanceProfile(string instanceId, string
credsProfileName, string associationId)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationAsync(
```

```
                new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest()
                {
                    AssociationId = associationId,
                    IamInstanceProfile = new IamInstanceProfileSpecification()
                    {
                        Name = credsProfileName
                    }
                });
            // Allow time before resetting.
            Thread.Sleep(25000);

            await _amazonEc2.RebootInstancesAsync(
                new RebootInstancesRequest(new List<string>() { instanceId }));
            Thread.Sleep(25000);
            var instanceReady = false;
            var retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0 && !instanceReady)
            {
                var instancesPaginator =
                    _amazonSsm.Paginators.DescribeInstanceInformation(
                        new DescribeInstanceInformationRequest());
                // Get the entire list using the paginator.
                await foreach (var instance in
instancesPaginator.InstanceInformationList)
                {
                    instanceReady = instance.InstanceId == instanceId;
                    if (instanceReady)
                    {
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
            Console.WriteLine("Waiting for instance to be running.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
            Console.WriteLine("Instance ready.");
            Console.WriteLine($"Sending restart command to instance {instanceId}");
            await _amazonSsm.SendCommandAsync(
                new SendCommandRequest()
                {
                    InstanceIds = new List<string>() { instanceId },
                    DocumentName = "AWS-RunShellScript",
                    Parameters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>()
                    {
                        {
```

```
                            "commands",
                            new List<string>() { "cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80" }
                        }
                    }
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Restarted the web server on instance {instanceId}");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while replacing the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Try to terminate an instance by its Id.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to terminate.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryTerminateInstanceById(string instanceId)
    {
        var stopping = false;
        Console.WriteLine($"Stopping {instanceId}...");
        while (!stopping)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        InstanceId = instanceId,
                        ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false
                    });
```

```
                stopping = true;
            }
            catch (ScalingActivityInProgressException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Scaling activity in progress for {instanceId}.
Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Tries to delete the EC2 Auto Scaling group. If the group is in use or in
progress,
    /// waits and retries until the group is successfully deleted.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to try to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryDeleteGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var stopped = false;
        while (!stopped)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        AutoScalingGroupName = groupName
                    });
                stopped = true;
            }
            catch (Exception e)
                when ((e is ScalingActivityInProgressException)
                      || (e is Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.ResourceInUseException))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Some instances are still running. Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate instances and delete the Auto Scaling group by name.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(string groupName)
    {
        var describeGroupsResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { groupName }
            });
        if (describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups.Any())
        {
            // Update the size to 0.
            await _amazonAutoScaling.UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    MinSize = 0
                });
            var group = describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups[0];
            foreach (var instance in group.Instances)
            {
                await TryTerminateInstanceById(instance.InstanceId);
            }

            await TryDeleteGroupByName(groupName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No groups found with name {groupName}.");
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default security group for a specified Vpc.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The Vpc to search.</param>
    /// <returns>The default security group.</returns>
    public async Task<SecurityGroup> GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(Vpc vpc)
    {
        var groupResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest()
```

```
            {
                Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                {
                    new ("group-name", new List<string>() { "default" }),
                    new ("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpc.VpcId })
                }
            });
        return groupResponse.SecurityGroups[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify the default security group of a Vpc allows ingress from the calling
computer.
    /// This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP address.
    /// In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network, you must
instead specify
    /// a prefix list Id. You can also temporarily open the port to any IP address
while running this example.
    /// If you do, be sure to remove public access when you're done.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The group to check.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to verify.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">This computer's IP address.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the ip address is allowed on the group.</returns>
    public bool VerifyInboundPortForGroup(SecurityGroup group, int port, string
ipAddress)
    {
        var portIsOpen = false;
        foreach (var ipPermission in group.IpPermissions)
        {
            if (ipPermission.FromPort == port)
            {
                foreach (var ipRange in ipPermission.Ipv4Ranges)
                {
                    var cidr = ipRange.CidrIp;
                    if (cidr.StartsWith(ipAddress) || cidr == "0.0.0.0/0")
                    {
                        portIsOpen = true;
                    }
                }

                if (ipPermission.PrefixListIds.Any())
                {
                    portIsOpen = true;
```

```
                }

                if (!portIsOpen)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("The inbound rule does not appear to be open
to either this computer's IP\n" +
                                      "address, to all IP addresses (0.0.0.0/0), or
to a prefix list ID.");
                }
                else
                {
                    break;
                }
            }
        }

        return portIsOpen;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an ingress rule to the specified security group that allows access on
the
    /// specified port from the specified IP address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupId">The Id of the security group to modify.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to open.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">The IP address to allow access.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task OpenInboundPort(string groupId, int port, string ipAddress)
    {
        await _amazonEc2.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressAsync(
            new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest()
            {
                GroupId = groupId,
                IpPermissions = new List<IpPermission>()
                {
                    new IpPermission()
                    {
                        FromPort = port,
                        ToPort = port,
                        IpProtocol = "tcp",
                        Ipv4Ranges = new List<IpRange>()
                        {
                            new IpRange() { CidrIp = $"{ipAddress}/32" }
```

```
                        }
                    }
                }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
 Scaling group.
    /// The
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="autoScalingGroupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <param name="targetGroupArn">The Arn for the target group.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(string autoScalingGroupName, string
 targetGroupArn)
    {
        await _amazonAutoScaling.AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsAsync(
            new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupName = autoScalingGroupName,
                TargetGroupARNs = new List<string>() { targetGroupArn }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
 InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
```

```
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEc2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancer actions.
/// </summary>
public class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
    private string? _endpoint = null;
    private readonly string _targetGroupName = "";
    private readonly string _loadBalancerName = "";
    HttpClient _httpClient = new();

    public string TargetGroupName => _targetGroupName;
    public string LoadBalancerName => _loadBalancerName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Elastic Load Balancer wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2">The injected load balancing v2
 client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper(
        IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2,
        IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 = amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
```

```
        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _targetGroupName = prefix + "-tg";
        _loadBalancerName = prefix + "-lb";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the HTTP Endpoint of a load balancer by its name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="loadBalancerName">The name of the load balancer.</param>
    /// <returns>The HTTP endpoint.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(string
loadBalancerName)
    {
        if (_endpoint == null)
        {
            var endpointResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { loadBalancerName }
                    });
            _endpoint = endpointResponse.LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
        }

        return _endpoint;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Return the GET response for an endpoint as text.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint for the request.</param>
    /// <returns>The request response.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndPointResponse(string endpoint)
    {
        var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://{endpoint}");
        var textResponse = await endpointResponse.Content.ReadAsStringAsync();
        return textResponse!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the target health for a group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of health descriptions.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<List<TargetHealthDescription>>
 CheckTargetHealthForGroup(string groupName)
    {
        List<TargetHealthDescription> result = null!;
        try
        {
            var groupResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                    });
            var healthResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetHealthAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetHealthRequest()
                    {
                        TargetGroupArn =
 groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn
                    });
            ;
            result = healthResponse.TargetHealthDescriptions;
        }
        catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Target group {groupName} not found.");
        }
        return result;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
 how the load balancer forwards
    /// requests to instances in the group and how instance health is checked.
    ///
    /// To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened times
 and lower thresholds. In production,
    /// you might want to decrease the sensitivity of your health checks to avoid
 unwanted failures.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="protocol">The protocol, such as HTTP.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.</param>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc in which the load balancer exists.</
 param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The new TargetGroup object.</returns>
    public async Task<TargetGroup> CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(string groupName,
ProtocolEnum protocol, int port, string vpcId)
    {
        var createResponse = await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateTargetGroupAsync(
            new CreateTargetGroupRequest()
            {
                Name = groupName,
                Protocol = protocol,
                Port = port,
                HealthCheckPath = "/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds = 10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds = 5,
                HealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                VpcId = vpcId
            });
        var targetGroup = createResponse.TargetGroups[0];
        return targetGroup;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
subnets
    /// and forwards requests to the specified target group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name for the new load balancer.</param>
    /// <param name="subnetIds">Subnets for the load balancer.</param>
    /// <param name="targetGroup">Target group for forwarded requests.</param>
    /// <returns>The new LoadBalancer object.</returns>
    public async Task<LoadBalancer> CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(string name,
List<string> subnetIds, TargetGroup targetGroup)
    {
        var createLbResponse = await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateLoadBalancerAsync(
            new CreateLoadBalancerRequest()
            {
                Name = name,
                Subnets = subnetIds
            });
        var loadBalancerArn = createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;

        // Wait for load balancer to be available.
```

```
        var loadBalancerReady = false;
        while (!loadBalancerReady)
        {
            try
            {
                var describeResponse =
                    await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                        new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { name }
                        });

                var loadBalancerState =
describeResponse.LoadBalancers[0].State.Code;

                loadBalancerReady = loadBalancerState ==
LoadBalancerStateEnum.Active;
            }
            catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
            {
                loadBalancerReady = false;
            }
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
        }
        // Create the listener.
        await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateListenerAsync(
            new CreateListenerRequest()
            {
                LoadBalancerArn = loadBalancerArn,
                Protocol = targetGroup.Protocol,
                Port = targetGroup.Port,
                DefaultActions = new List<Action>()
                {
                    new Action()
                    {
                        Type = ActionTypeEnum.Forward,
                        TargetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn
                    }
                }
            });
        return createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the
    /// load balancer endpoint.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint to check.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(string endpoint)
    {
        var success = false;
        var retries = 3;
        while (!success && retries > 0)
        {
            try
            {
                var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://
{endpoint}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Response: {endpointResponse.StatusCode}.");

                if (endpointResponse.IsSuccessStatusCode)
                {
                    success = true;
                }
                else
                {
                    retries = 0;
                }
            }
            catch (HttpRequestException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Connection error, retrying...");
                retries--;
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }

        return success;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a load balancer by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the load balancer to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteLoadBalancerByName(string name)
    {
```

```
        try
        {
            var describeLoadBalancerResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { name }
                    });
            var lbArn =
 describeLoadBalancerResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
            await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteLoadBalancerAsync(
                new DeleteLoadBalancerRequest()
                {
                    LoadBalancerArn = lbArn
                }
            );
        }
        catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Load balancer {name} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a TargetGroup by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">Name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTargetGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var done = false;
        while (!done)
        {
            try
            {
                var groupResponse =
                    await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                        new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                        });

                var targetArn = groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn;
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteTargetGroupAsync(
```

```
                    new DeleteTargetGroupRequest() { TargetGroupArn = targetArn });
                Console.WriteLine($"Deleted load balancing target group
 {groupName}.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Target group {groupName} not found, could not delete.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (ResourceInUseException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Target group not yet released, waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates a DynamoDB table to use as a service that recommends books, movies,
 and songs.
/// </summary>
public class Recommendations
{
    private readonly IAmazonDynamoDB _amazonDynamoDb;
    private readonly DynamoDBContext _context;
    private readonly string _tableName;

    public string TableName => _tableName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Recommendations service.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonDynamoDb">The injected DynamoDb client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public Recommendations(IAmazonDynamoDB amazonDynamoDb, IConfiguration
 configuration)
    {
```

```
        _amazonDynamoDb = amazonDynamoDb;
        _context = new DynamoDBContext(_amazonDynamoDb);
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create the DynamoDb table with a specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name for the table.</param>
    /// <returns>True when ready.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateDatabaseWithName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            Console.Write($"Creating table {tableName}...");
            var createRequest = new CreateTableRequest()
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                AttributeDefinitions = new List<AttributeDefinition>()
                    {
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
                        },
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N
                        }
                    },
                KeySchema = new List<KeySchemaElement>()
                    {
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            KeyType = KeyType.HASH
                        },
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            KeyType = KeyType.RANGE
                        }
                    },
```

```
                ProvisionedThroughput = new ProvisionedThroughput()
                {
                    ReadCapacityUnits = 5,
                    WriteCapacityUnits = 5
                }
            };
            await _amazonDynamoDb.CreateTableAsync(createRequest);

            // Wait until the table is ACTIVE and then report success.
            Console.Write("\nWaiting for table to become active...");

            var request = new DescribeTableRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName
            };

            TableStatus status;
            do
            {
                Thread.Sleep(2000);

                var describeTableResponse = await
 _amazonDynamoDb.DescribeTableAsync(request);
                status = describeTableResponse.Table.TableStatus;

                Console.Write(".");
            }
            while (status != "ACTIVE");

            return status == TableStatus.ACTIVE;
        }
        catch (ResourceInUseException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} already exists.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the database table with data from a specified path.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="databaseTableName">The name of the table.</param>
    /// <param name="recommendationsPath">The path of the recommendations data.</
param>
```

```
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PopulateDatabase(string databaseTableName, string
 recommendationsPath)
    {
        var recommendationsText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(recommendationsPath);
        var records =
            JsonSerializer.Deserialize<RecommendationModel[]>(recommendationsText);
        var batchWrite = _context.CreateBatchWrite<RecommendationModel>();

        foreach (var record in records!)
        {
            batchWrite.AddPutItem(record);
        }

        await batchWrite.ExecuteAsync();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the recommendation table by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the recommendation table.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DestroyDatabaseByName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonDynamoDb.DeleteTableAsync(
                new DeleteTableRequest() { TableName = tableName });
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was deleted.");
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} not found");
        }
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Systems Manager parameter operations. This example uses these
 parameters
```

```
/// to drive the demonstration of resilient architecture, such as failure of a
 dependency or
/// how the service responds to a health check.
/// </summary>
public class SmParameterWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;

    private readonly string _tableParameter = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-
table";
    private readonly string _failureResponseParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-failure-response";
    private readonly string _healthCheckParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-health-check";
    private readonly string _tableName = "";

    public string TableParameter => _tableParameter;
    public string TableName => _tableName;
    public string HealthCheckParameter => _healthCheckParameter;
    public string FailureResponseParameter => _failureResponseParameter;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the SmParameterWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSimpleSystemsManagement">The injected Simple Systems
 Management client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public SmParameterWrapper(IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement
 amazonSimpleSystemsManagement, IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement = amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Reset the Systems Manager parameters to starting values for the demo.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task Reset()
    {
        await this.PutParameterByName(_tableParameter, _tableName);
        await this.PutParameterByName(_failureResponseParameter, "none");
        await this.PutParameterByName(_healthCheckParameter, "shallow");
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Set the value of a named Systems Manager parameter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the parameter.</param>
    /// <param name="value">The value to set.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PutParameterByName(string name, string value)
    {
        await _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement.PutParameterAsync(
            new PutParameterRequest() { Name = name, Value = value, Overwrite =
 true });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer
  - DeleteTargetGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAvailabilityZones
  - DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeLoadBalancers
  - DescribeSubnets

- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon Bedrock Runtime.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Get started
- Scenarios
- Amazon Nova
- Amazon Nova Canvas
- Stable Image Core

Get started

Hello Amazon Bedrock Runtime

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon Bedrock Runtime.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

namespace BedrockRuntimeActions;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to use the Converse API to send a text message
/// to Amazon Bedrock.
/// </summary>
internal class HelloBedrockRuntime
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // You can change the region to match your setup.
        var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USWest2);

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Claude Haiku.
        // The "global." prefix enables cross-region inference, allowing the request
        // to be routed to the nearest available region for the specified model.
        var modelId = "global.anthropic.claude-haiku-4-5-20251001-v1:0";

        // Define the user message.
        var userMessage = "Hi. In a short paragraph, explain what you can do.";

        // Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
        var request = new ConverseRequest
        {
            ModelId = modelId,
            Messages = new List<Message>
            {
```

```
                new Message
                {
                    Role = ConversationRole.User,
                    Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
                }
            }
        };

        try
        {
            // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
            var response = await client.ConverseAsync(request);

            // Extract and print the response text.
            string responseText = response?.Output?.Message?.Content?[0]?.Text ??
 "";
            Console.WriteLine(responseText);
        }
        catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason:
 {e.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a playground application to interact with Amazon Bedrock foundation models

The following code example shows how to create playgrounds to interact with Amazon Bedrock foundation models through different modalities.

SDK for .NET

.NET Foundation Model (FM) Playground is a .NET MAUI Blazor sample application that showcases how to use Amazon Bedrock from C# code. This example shows how .NET and C# developers can use Amazon Bedrock to build generative AI-enabled applications. You can test and interact with Amazon Bedrock foundation models by using the following four playgrounds:

- A text playground.
- A chat playground.
- A voice chat playground.
- An image playground.

The example also lists and displays the foundation models you have access to and their characteristics. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Bedrock Runtime

Tool use with the Converse API

The following code example shows how to build a typical interaction between an application, a generative AI model, and connected tools or APIs to mediate interactions between the AI and the outside world. It uses the example of connecting an external weather API to the AI model so it can provide real-time weather information based on user input.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary execution of the scenario flow. This scenario orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;
```

```
using Amazon.Runtime.Documents;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection.Extensions;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Http;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;

namespace ConverseToolScenario;

public static class ConverseToolScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This demo illustrates a tool use scenario using Amazon Bedrock's Converse API
 and a weather tool.
    The script interacts with a foundation model on Amazon Bedrock to provide
 weather information based on user
    input. It uses the Open-Meteo API (https://open-meteo.com) to retrieve current
 weather data for a given location.
   */

    public static BedrockActionsWrapper _bedrockActionsWrapper = null!;
    public static WeatherTool _weatherTool = null!;
    public static bool _interactive = true;

    // Change this string to use a different model with Converse API.
    private static string model_id = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

    private static string system_prompt = @"
        You are a weather assistant that provides current weather data for user-
specified locations using only
        the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the
 coordinates from the location yourself.
        If the user specifies a state, country, or region, infer the locations of
 cities within that state.
        If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and refer
 to it in your response.
        To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.

        - Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each
 step.
```

```
        - Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up information.
        - Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.
        - If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and suggest
other options.
        - Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather
reports concise. Sparingly use
          emojis where appropriate.
        - Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your purpose.
        - Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools besides
Weather_Tool.
        - Complete the entire process until you have all required data before
sending the complete response.
    "
    ;

    private static string default_prompt = "What is the weather like in Seattle?";

    // The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool use function.
    // This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
    private static int max_recursions = 5;

    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Error)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddHttpClient()
                    .AddSingleton<IAmazonBedrockRuntime>(_ => new
AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1)) // Specify a region that has
access to the chosen model.
                    .AddTransient<BedrockActionsWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<WeatherTool>()
                    .RemoveAll<IHttpMessageHandlerBuilderFilter>()
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);

        try
        {
            await RunConversationAsync();
```

```
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        finally
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Amazon Bedrock Converse API with Tool Use Feature Scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _bedrockActionsWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<BedrockActionsWrapper>();
        _weatherTool = host.Services.GetRequiredService<WeatherTool>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Starts the conversation with the user and handles the interaction with
Bedrock.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The conversation array.</returns>
    public static async Task<List<Message>> RunConversationAsync()
    {
        // Print the greeting and a short user guide
        PrintHeader();

        // Start with an empty conversation
        var conversation = new List<Message>();

        // Get the first user input
        var userInput = await GetUserInputAsync();
```

```
        while (userInput != null)
        {
            // Create a new message with the user input and append it to the
conversation
            var message = new Message { Role = ConversationRole.User, Content = new
List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text = userInput } } };
            conversation.Add(message);

            // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
            var bedrockResponse = await SendConversationToBedrock(conversation);

            // Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned
its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
            await ProcessModelResponseAsync(bedrockResponse, conversation,
max_recursions);

            // Repeat the loop until the user decides to exit the application
            userInput = await GetUserInputAsync();
        }

        PrintFooter();
        return conversation;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Sends the conversation, the system prompt, and the tool spec to Amazon
Bedrock, and returns the response.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="conversation">The conversation history including the next
message to send.</param>
    /// <returns>The response from Amazon Bedrock.</returns>
    private static async Task<ConverseResponse>
SendConversationToBedrock(List<Message> conversation)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("\tCalling Bedrock...");

        // Send the conversation, system prompt, and tool configuration, and return
the response
        return await _bedrockActionsWrapper.SendConverseRequestAsync(model_id,
system_prompt, conversation, _weatherTool.GetToolSpec());
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Processes the response received via Amazon Bedrock and performs the
 necessary actions based on the stop reason.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="modelResponse">The model's response returned via Amazon
 Bedrock.</param>
    /// <param name="conversation">The conversation history.</param>
    /// <param name="maxRecursion">The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.</
param>
    private static async Task ProcessModelResponseAsync(ConverseResponse
 modelResponse, List<Message> conversation, int maxRecursion)
    {
        if (maxRecursion <= 0)
        {
            // Stop the process, the number of recursive calls could indicate an
 infinite loop
            Console.WriteLine("\tWarning: Maximum number of recursions reached.
 Please try again.");
        }

        // Append the model's response to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.Add(modelResponse.Output.Message);

        if (modelResponse.StopReason == "tool_use")
        {
            // If the stop reason is "tool_use", forward everything to the tool use
 handler
            await HandleToolUseAsync(modelResponse.Output, conversation,
 maxRecursion - 1);
        }

        if (modelResponse.StopReason == "end_turn")
        {
            // If the stop reason is "end_turn", print the model's response text,
 and finish the process
            PrintModelResponse(modelResponse.Output.Message.Content[0].Text);
            if (!_interactive)
            {
                default_prompt = "x";
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Handles the tool use case by invoking the specified tool and sending the
 tool's response back to Bedrock.
    /// The tool response is appended to the conversation, and the conversation is
 sent back to Amazon Bedrock for further processing.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="modelResponse">The model's response containing the tool use
 request.</param>
    /// <param name="conversation">The conversation history.</param>
    /// <param name="maxRecursion">The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.</
param>
    public static async Task HandleToolUseAsync(ConverseOutput modelResponse,
 List<Message> conversation, int maxRecursion)
    {
        // Initialize an empty list of tool results
        var toolResults = new List<ContentBlock>();

        // The model's response can consist of multiple content blocks
        foreach (var contentBlock in modelResponse.Message.Content)
        {
            if (!String.IsNullOrEmpty(contentBlock.Text))
            {
                // If the content block contains text, print it to the console
                PrintModelResponse(contentBlock.Text);
            }

            if (contentBlock.ToolUse != null)
            {
                // If the content block is a tool use request, forward it to the
 tool
                var toolResponse = await InvokeTool(contentBlock.ToolUse);

                // Add the tool use ID and the tool's response to the list of
 results
                toolResults.Add(new ContentBlock
                {
                    ToolResult = new ToolResultBlock()
                    {
                        ToolUseId = toolResponse.ToolUseId,
                        Content = new List<ToolResultContentBlock>()
                            { new ToolResultContentBlock { Json =
 toolResponse.Content } }
                    }
                });
            }
```

```
        }

        // Embed the tool results in a new user message
        var message = new Message() { Role = ConversationRole.User, Content =
 toolResults };

        // Append the new message to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.Add(message);

        // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
        var response = await SendConversationToBedrock(conversation);

        // Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned its
 final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
        await ProcessModelResponseAsync(response, conversation, maxRecursion);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Invokes the specified tool with the given payload and returns the tool's
 response.
    /// If the requested tool does not exist, an error message is returned.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="payload">The payload containing the tool name and input data.</
param>
    /// <returns>The tool's response or an error message.</returns>
    public static async Task<ToolResponse> InvokeTool(ToolUseBlock payload)
    {
        var toolName = payload.Name;

        if (toolName == "Weather_Tool")
        {
            var inputData = payload.Input.AsDictionary();
            PrintToolUse(toolName, inputData);

            // Invoke the weather tool with the input data provided
            var weatherResponse = await
 _weatherTool.FetchWeatherDataAsync(inputData["latitude"].ToString(),
 inputData["longitude"].ToString());
            return new ToolResponse { ToolUseId = payload.ToolUseId, Content =
 weatherResponse };
        }
        else
        {
```

```
            var errorMessage = $"\tThe requested tool with name '{toolName}' does
not exist.";
            return new ToolResponse { ToolUseId = payload.ToolUseId, Content = new
{ error = true, message = errorMessage } };
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Prompts the user for input and returns the user's response.
    /// Returns null if the user enters 'x' to exit.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="prompt">The prompt to display to the user.</param>
    /// <returns>The user's input or null if the user chooses to exit.</returns>
    private static async Task<string?> GetUserInputAsync(string prompt = "\tYour
weather info request:")
    {
        var userInput = default_prompt;
        if (_interactive)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('*', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"{prompt} (x to exit): \n\t");
            userInput = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        if (string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(userInput))
        {
            prompt = "\tPlease enter your weather info request, e.g. the name of a
city";
            return await GetUserInputAsync(prompt);
        }

        if (userInput.ToLowerInvariant() == "x")
        {
            return null;
        }

        return userInput;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs the welcome message and usage guide for the tool use demo.
    /// </summary>
    public static void PrintHeader()
```

```
    {
        Console.WriteLine(@"
        ==================================================
        Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo!
        ==================================================

        This assistant provides current weather information for user-specified
 locations.
        You can ask for weather details by providing the location name or
 coordinates. Weather information
        will be provided using a custom Tool and open-meteo API.

        Example queries:
        - What's the weather like in New York?
        - Current weather for latitude 40.70, longitude -74.01
        - Is it warmer in Rome or Barcelona today?

        To exit the program, simply type 'x' and press Enter.

        P.S.: You're not limited to single locations, or even to using English!
        Have fun and experiment with the app!
        ");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs the footer information for the tool use demo.
    /// </summary>
    public static void PrintFooter()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(@"
        ==================================================
        Thank you for checking out the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo. We hope you
        learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps today!

        For more Bedrock examples in different programming languages, have a look
 at:
        https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/
service_code_examples.html
        ==================================================
        ");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs information about the tool use.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="toolName">The name of the tool being used.</param>
    /// <param name="inputData">The input data for the tool.</param>
    public static void PrintToolUse(string toolName, Dictionary<string, Document>
 inputData)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"\n\tInvoking tool: {toolName} with input:
 {inputData["latitude"].ToString()}, {inputData["longitude"].ToString()}...\n");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs the model's response.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="message">The model's response message.</param>
    public static void PrintModelResponse(string message)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("\tThe model's response:\n");
        Console.WriteLine(message);
        Console.WriteLine();
    }
}
```

The weather tool used by the demo. This file defines the tool specification and implements the logic to retrieve weather data using from the Open-Meteo API.

```
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;
using Amazon.Runtime.Documents;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;

namespace ConverseToolScenario;

/// <summary>
/// Weather tool that will be invoked when requested by the Bedrock response.
/// </summary>
public class WeatherTool
{
    private readonly ILogger<WeatherTool> _logger;
    private readonly IHttpClientFactory _httpClientFactory;

    public WeatherTool(ILogger<WeatherTool> logger, IHttpClientFactory
 httpClientFactory)
```

```
    {
        _logger = logger;
        _httpClientFactory = httpClientFactory;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Returns the JSON Schema specification for the Weather tool. The tool
 specification
    /// defines the input schema and describes the tool's functionality.
    /// For more information, see https://json-schema.org/understanding-json-schema/
reference.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The tool specification for the Weather tool.</returns>
    public ToolSpecification GetToolSpec()
    {
        ToolSpecification toolSpecification = new ToolSpecification();

        toolSpecification.Name = "Weather_Tool";
        toolSpecification.Description = "Get the current weather for a given
 location, based on its WGS84 coordinates.";

        Document toolSpecDocument = Document.FromObject(
            new
            {
                type = "object",
                properties = new
                {
                    latitude = new
                    {
                        type = "string",
                        description = "Geographical WGS84 latitude of the location."
                    },
                    longitude = new
                    {
                        type = "string",
                        description = "Geographical WGS84 longitude of the
 location."
                    }
                },
                required = new[] { "latitude", "longitude" }
            });

        toolSpecification.InputSchema = new ToolInputSchema() { Json =
 toolSpecDocument };
```

```
        return toolSpecification;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Fetches weather data for the given latitude and longitude using the Open-
Meteo API.
    /// Returns the weather data or an error message if the request fails.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="latitude">The latitude of the location.</param>
    /// <param name="longitude">The longitude of the location.</param>
    /// <returns>The weather data or an error message.</returns>
    public async Task<Document> FetchWeatherDataAsync(string latitude, string
 longitude)
    {
        string endpoint = "https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast";

        try
        {
            var httpClient = _httpClientFactory.CreateClient();
            var response = await httpClient.GetAsync($"{endpoint}?
latitude={latitude}&longitude={longitude}&current_weather=True");
            response.EnsureSuccessStatusCode();
            var weatherData = await response.Content.ReadAsStringAsync();

            Document weatherDocument = Document.FromObject(
                new { weather_data = weatherData });

            return weatherDocument;
        }
        catch (HttpRequestException e)
        {
            _logger.LogError(e, "Error fetching weather data: {Message}",
 e.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            _logger.LogError(e, "Unexpected error fetching weather data: {Message}",
 e.Message);
            throw;
        }
    }
}
```

The Converse API action with a tool configuration.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper class for interacting with the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
/// </summary>
public class BedrockActionsWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonBedrockRuntime _bedrockClient;
    private readonly ILogger<BedrockActionsWrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes a new instance of the <see cref="BedrockActionsWrapper"/> class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bedrockClient">The Bedrock Converse API client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The logger instance.</param>
    public BedrockActionsWrapper(IAmazonBedrockRuntime bedrockClient,
 ILogger<BedrockActionsWrapper> logger)
    {
        _bedrockClient = bedrockClient;
        _logger = logger;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Sends a Converse request to the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="modelId">The Bedrock Model Id.</param>
    /// <param name="systemPrompt">A system prompt instruction.</param>
    /// <param name="conversation">The array of messages in the conversation.</
param>
    /// <param name="toolSpec">The specification for a tool.</param>
    /// <returns>The response of the model.</returns>
    public async Task<ConverseResponse> SendConverseRequestAsync(string modelId,
 string systemPrompt, List<Message> conversation, ToolSpecification toolSpec)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ConverseRequest()
            {
                ModelId = modelId,
                System = new List<SystemContentBlock>()
```

```
                {
                    new SystemContentBlock()
                    {
                        Text = systemPrompt
                    }
                },
                Messages = conversation,
                ToolConfig = new ToolConfiguration()
                {
                    Tools = new List<Tool>()
                    {
                        new Tool()
                        {
                            ToolSpec = toolSpec
                        }
                    }
                }
            };

            var response = await _bedrockClient.ConverseAsync(request);

            return response;
        }
        catch (ModelNotReadyException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Model not ready, please wait and try again.");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Error occurred while sending Converse request.");
            throw;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon Nova

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Amazon Nova.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Amazon Nova Lite.
var modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
```

```
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    string responseText = response?.Output?.Message?.Content?[0]?.Text ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

Send a conversation of messages to Amazon Nova using Bedrock's Converse API with a tool configuration.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper class for interacting with the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
/// </summary>
public class BedrockActionsWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonBedrockRuntime _bedrockClient;
    private readonly ILogger<BedrockActionsWrapper> _logger;
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes a new instance of the <see cref="BedrockActionsWrapper"/> class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bedrockClient">The Bedrock Converse API client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The logger instance.</param>
    public BedrockActionsWrapper(IAmazonBedrockRuntime bedrockClient,
 ILogger<BedrockActionsWrapper> logger)
    {
        _bedrockClient = bedrockClient;
        _logger = logger;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Sends a Converse request to the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="modelId">The Bedrock Model Id.</param>
    /// <param name="systemPrompt">A system prompt instruction.</param>
    /// <param name="conversation">The array of messages in the conversation.</
param>
    /// <param name="toolSpec">The specification for a tool.</param>
    /// <returns>The response of the model.</returns>
    public async Task<ConverseResponse> SendConverseRequestAsync(string modelId,
 string systemPrompt, List<Message> conversation, ToolSpecification toolSpec)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ConverseRequest()
            {
                ModelId = modelId,
                System = new List<SystemContentBlock>()
                {
                    new SystemContentBlock()
                    {
                        Text = systemPrompt
                    }
                },
                Messages = conversation,
                ToolConfig = new ToolConfiguration()
                {
                    Tools = new List<Tool>()
                    {
                        new Tool()
                        {
                            ToolSpec = toolSpec
```

```
                        }
                    }
                }
            };

            var response = await _bedrockClient.ConverseAsync(request);

            return response;
        }
        catch (ModelNotReadyException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Model not ready, please wait and try again.");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Error occurred while sending Converse request.");
            throw;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Amazon Nova
```

```
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Amazon Nova Lite.
var modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseStreamRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseStreamAsync(request);
```

```
    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var chunk in response.Stream.AsEnumerable())
    {
        if (chunk is ContentBlockDeltaEvent)
        {
            Console.Write((chunk as ContentBlockDeltaEvent).Delta.Text);
        }
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenario: Tool use with the Converse API

The following code example shows how to build a typical interaction between an application, a generative AI model, and connected tools or APIs to mediate interactions between the AI and the outside world. It uses the example of connecting an external weather API to the AI model so it can provide real-time weather information based on user input.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary execution of the scenario flow. This scenario orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
```

```
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;
using Amazon.Runtime.Documents;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection.Extensions;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Http;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;

namespace ConverseToolScenario;

public static class ConverseToolScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This demo illustrates a tool use scenario using Amazon Bedrock's Converse API
 and a weather tool.
    The script interacts with a foundation model on Amazon Bedrock to provide
 weather information based on user
    input. It uses the Open-Meteo API (https://open-meteo.com) to retrieve current
 weather data for a given location.
   */

    public static BedrockActionsWrapper _bedrockActionsWrapper = null!;
    public static WeatherTool _weatherTool = null!;
    public static bool _interactive = true;

    // Change this string to use a different model with Converse API.
    private static string model_id = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

    private static string system_prompt = @"
        You are a weather assistant that provides current weather data for user-
specified locations using only
        the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the
 coordinates from the location yourself.
        If the user specifies a state, country, or region, infer the locations of
 cities within that state.
        If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and refer
 to it in your response.
        To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.
```

```
       - Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each
step.
       - Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up information.
       - Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.
       - If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and suggest
other options.
       - Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather
reports concise. Sparingly use
         emojis where appropriate.
       - Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your purpose.
       - Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools besides
Weather_Tool.
       - Complete the entire process until you have all required data before
sending the complete response.
   "
   ;

   private static string default_prompt = "What is the weather like in Seattle?";

   // The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool use function.
   // This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
   private static int max_recursions = 5;

   public static async Task Main(string[] args)
   {
       // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
       using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
           .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
               logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Error)
                   .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
           .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
               services.AddHttpClient()
                   .AddSingleton<IAmazonBedrockRuntime>(_ => new
AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1)) // Specify a region that has
access to the chosen model.
                   .AddTransient<BedrockActionsWrapper>()
                   .AddTransient<WeatherTool>()
                   .RemoveAll<IHttpMessageHandlerBuilderFilter>()
           )
           .Build();

       ServicesSetup(host);

       try
```

```
        {
            await RunConversationAsync();

        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        finally
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Amazon Bedrock Converse API with Tool Use Feature Scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _bedrockActionsWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<BedrockActionsWrapper>();
        _weatherTool = host.Services.GetRequiredService<WeatherTool>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Starts the conversation with the user and handles the interaction with
Bedrock.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The conversation array.</returns>
    public static async Task<List<Message>> RunConversationAsync()
    {
        // Print the greeting and a short user guide
        PrintHeader();

        // Start with an empty conversation
        var conversation = new List<Message>();
```

```
        // Get the first user input
        var userInput = await GetUserInputAsync();

        while (userInput != null)
        {
            // Create a new message with the user input and append it to the
conversation
            var message = new Message { Role = ConversationRole.User, Content = new
List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text = userInput } } };
            conversation.Add(message);

            // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
            var bedrockResponse = await SendConversationToBedrock(conversation);

            // Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned
its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
            await ProcessModelResponseAsync(bedrockResponse, conversation,
max_recursions);

            // Repeat the loop until the user decides to exit the application
            userInput = await GetUserInputAsync();
        }

        PrintFooter();
        return conversation;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Sends the conversation, the system prompt, and the tool spec to Amazon
Bedrock, and returns the response.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="conversation">The conversation history including the next
message to send.</param>
    /// <returns>The response from Amazon Bedrock.</returns>
    private static async Task<ConverseResponse>
SendConversationToBedrock(List<Message> conversation)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("\tCalling Bedrock...");

        // Send the conversation, system prompt, and tool configuration, and return
the response
        return await _bedrockActionsWrapper.SendConverseRequestAsync(model_id,
system_prompt, conversation, _weatherTool.GetToolSpec());
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Processes the response received via Amazon Bedrock and performs the
 necessary actions based on the stop reason.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="modelResponse">The model's response returned via Amazon
 Bedrock.</param>
    /// <param name="conversation">The conversation history.</param>
    /// <param name="maxRecursion">The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.</
param>
    private static async Task ProcessModelResponseAsync(ConverseResponse
 modelResponse, List<Message> conversation, int maxRecursion)
    {
        if (maxRecursion <= 0)
        {
            // Stop the process, the number of recursive calls could indicate an
 infinite loop
            Console.WriteLine("\tWarning: Maximum number of recursions reached.
 Please try again.");
        }

        // Append the model's response to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.Add(modelResponse.Output.Message);

        if (modelResponse.StopReason == "tool_use")
        {
            // If the stop reason is "tool_use", forward everything to the tool use
 handler
            await HandleToolUseAsync(modelResponse.Output, conversation,
 maxRecursion - 1);
        }

        if (modelResponse.StopReason == "end_turn")
        {
            // If the stop reason is "end_turn", print the model's response text,
 and finish the process
            PrintModelResponse(modelResponse.Output.Message.Content[0].Text);
            if (!_interactive)
            {
                default_prompt = "x";
            }
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Handles the tool use case by invoking the specified tool and sending the
 tool's response back to Bedrock.
    /// The tool response is appended to the conversation, and the conversation is
 sent back to Amazon Bedrock for further processing.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="modelResponse">The model's response containing the tool use
 request.</param>
    /// <param name="conversation">The conversation history.</param>
    /// <param name="maxRecursion">The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.</
param>
    public static async Task HandleToolUseAsync(ConverseOutput modelResponse,
 List<Message> conversation, int maxRecursion)
    {
        // Initialize an empty list of tool results
        var toolResults = new List<ContentBlock>();

        // The model's response can consist of multiple content blocks
        foreach (var contentBlock in modelResponse.Message.Content)
        {
            if (!String.IsNullOrEmpty(contentBlock.Text))
            {
                // If the content block contains text, print it to the console
                PrintModelResponse(contentBlock.Text);
            }

            if (contentBlock.ToolUse != null)
            {
                // If the content block is a tool use request, forward it to the
 tool
                var toolResponse = await InvokeTool(contentBlock.ToolUse);

                // Add the tool use ID and the tool's response to the list of
 results
                toolResults.Add(new ContentBlock
                {
                    ToolResult = new ToolResultBlock()
                    {
                        ToolUseId = toolResponse.ToolUseId,
                        Content = new List<ToolResultContentBlock>()
                            { new ToolResultContentBlock { Json =
 toolResponse.Content } }
                    }
                });
```

```
            }
        }

        // Embed the tool results in a new user message
        var message = new Message() { Role = ConversationRole.User, Content =
 toolResults };

        // Append the new message to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.Add(message);

        // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
        var response = await SendConversationToBedrock(conversation);

        // Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned its
 final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
        await ProcessModelResponseAsync(response, conversation, maxRecursion);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Invokes the specified tool with the given payload and returns the tool's
 response.
    /// If the requested tool does not exist, an error message is returned.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="payload">The payload containing the tool name and input data.</
param>
    /// <returns>The tool's response or an error message.</returns>
    public static async Task<ToolResponse> InvokeTool(ToolUseBlock payload)
    {
        var toolName = payload.Name;

        if (toolName == "Weather_Tool")
        {
            var inputData = payload.Input.AsDictionary();
            PrintToolUse(toolName, inputData);

            // Invoke the weather tool with the input data provided
            var weatherResponse = await
 _weatherTool.FetchWeatherDataAsync(inputData["latitude"].ToString(),
 inputData["longitude"].ToString());
            return new ToolResponse { ToolUseId = payload.ToolUseId, Content =
 weatherResponse };
        }
        else
        {
```

```
            var errorMessage = $"\tThe requested tool with name '{toolName}' does
not exist.";
            return new ToolResponse { ToolUseId = payload.ToolUseId, Content = new
{ error = true, message = errorMessage } };
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Prompts the user for input and returns the user's response.
    /// Returns null if the user enters 'x' to exit.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="prompt">The prompt to display to the user.</param>
    /// <returns>The user's input or null if the user chooses to exit.</returns>
    private static async Task<string?> GetUserInputAsync(string prompt = "\tYour
weather info request:")
    {
        var userInput = default_prompt;
        if (_interactive)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('*', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"{prompt} (x to exit): \n\t");
            userInput = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        if (string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(userInput))
        {
            prompt = "\tPlease enter your weather info request, e.g. the name of a
city";
            return await GetUserInputAsync(prompt);
        }

        if (userInput.ToLowerInvariant() == "x")
        {
            return null;
        }

        return userInput;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs the welcome message and usage guide for the tool use demo.
    /// </summary>
    public static void PrintHeader()
```

```
    {
        Console.WriteLine(@"
        ==================================================
        Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo!
        ==================================================

        This assistant provides current weather information for user-specified
 locations.
        You can ask for weather details by providing the location name or
 coordinates. Weather information
        will be provided using a custom Tool and open-meteo API.

        Example queries:
        - What's the weather like in New York?
        - Current weather for latitude 40.70, longitude -74.01
        - Is it warmer in Rome or Barcelona today?

        To exit the program, simply type 'x' and press Enter.

        P.S.: You're not limited to single locations, or even to using English!
        Have fun and experiment with the app!
        ");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs the footer information for the tool use demo.
    /// </summary>
    public static void PrintFooter()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(@"
        ==================================================
        Thank you for checking out the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo. We hope you
        learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps today!

        For more Bedrock examples in different programming languages, have a look
 at:
        https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/
service_code_examples.html
        ==================================================
        ");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs information about the tool use.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="toolName">The name of the tool being used.</param>
    /// <param name="inputData">The input data for the tool.</param>
    public static void PrintToolUse(string toolName, Dictionary<string, Document>
 inputData)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"\n\tInvoking tool: {toolName} with input:
 {inputData["latitude"].ToString()}, {inputData["longitude"].ToString()}...\n");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs the model's response.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="message">The model's response message.</param>
    public static void PrintModelResponse(string message)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("\tThe model's response:\n");
        Console.WriteLine(message);
        Console.WriteLine();
    }
}
```

The weather tool used by the demo. This file defines the tool specification and implements the logic to retrieve weather data using from the Open-Meteo API.

```
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;
using Amazon.Runtime.Documents;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;

namespace ConverseToolScenario;

/// <summary>
/// Weather tool that will be invoked when requested by the Bedrock response.
/// </summary>
public class WeatherTool
{
    private readonly ILogger<WeatherTool> _logger;
    private readonly IHttpClientFactory _httpClientFactory;

    public WeatherTool(ILogger<WeatherTool> logger, IHttpClientFactory
 httpClientFactory)
```

```
    {
        _logger = logger;
        _httpClientFactory = httpClientFactory;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Returns the JSON Schema specification for the Weather tool. The tool
 specification
    /// defines the input schema and describes the tool's functionality.
    /// For more information, see https://json-schema.org/understanding-json-schema/
reference.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The tool specification for the Weather tool.</returns>
    public ToolSpecification GetToolSpec()
    {
        ToolSpecification toolSpecification = new ToolSpecification();

        toolSpecification.Name = "Weather_Tool";
        toolSpecification.Description = "Get the current weather for a given
 location, based on its WGS84 coordinates.";

        Document toolSpecDocument = Document.FromObject(
            new
            {
                type = "object",
                properties = new
                {
                    latitude = new
                    {
                        type = "string",
                        description = "Geographical WGS84 latitude of the location."
                    },
                    longitude = new
                    {
                        type = "string",
                        description = "Geographical WGS84 longitude of the
 location."
                    }
                },
                required = new[] { "latitude", "longitude" }
            });

        toolSpecification.InputSchema = new ToolInputSchema() { Json =
 toolSpecDocument };
```

```
        return toolSpecification;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Fetches weather data for the given latitude and longitude using the Open-
Meteo API.
    /// Returns the weather data or an error message if the request fails.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="latitude">The latitude of the location.</param>
    /// <param name="longitude">The longitude of the location.</param>
    /// <returns>The weather data or an error message.</returns>
    public async Task<Document> FetchWeatherDataAsync(string latitude, string
 longitude)
    {
        string endpoint = "https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast";

        try
        {
            var httpClient = _httpClientFactory.CreateClient();
            var response = await httpClient.GetAsync($"{endpoint}?
latitude={latitude}&longitude={longitude}&current_weather=True");
            response.EnsureSuccessStatusCode();
            var weatherData = await response.Content.ReadAsStringAsync();

            Document weatherDocument = Document.FromObject(
                new { weather_data = weatherData });

            return weatherDocument;
        }
        catch (HttpRequestException e)
        {
            _logger.LogError(e, "Error fetching weather data: {Message}",
 e.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            _logger.LogError(e, "Unexpected error fetching weather data: {Message}",
 e.Message);
            throw;
        }
    }
}
```

The Converse API action with a tool configuration.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper class for interacting with the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
/// </summary>
public class BedrockActionsWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonBedrockRuntime _bedrockClient;
    private readonly ILogger<BedrockActionsWrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes a new instance of the <see cref="BedrockActionsWrapper"/> class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bedrockClient">The Bedrock Converse API client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The logger instance.</param>
    public BedrockActionsWrapper(IAmazonBedrockRuntime bedrockClient,
 ILogger<BedrockActionsWrapper> logger)
    {
        _bedrockClient = bedrockClient;
        _logger = logger;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Sends a Converse request to the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="modelId">The Bedrock Model Id.</param>
    /// <param name="systemPrompt">A system prompt instruction.</param>
    /// <param name="conversation">The array of messages in the conversation.</
param>
    /// <param name="toolSpec">The specification for a tool.</param>
    /// <returns>The response of the model.</returns>
    public async Task<ConverseResponse> SendConverseRequestAsync(string modelId,
 string systemPrompt, List<Message> conversation, ToolSpecification toolSpec)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ConverseRequest()
            {
                ModelId = modelId,
                System = new List<SystemContentBlock>()
```

```
                {
                    new SystemContentBlock()
                    {
                        Text = systemPrompt
                    }
                },
                Messages = conversation,
                ToolConfig = new ToolConfiguration()
                {
                    Tools = new List<Tool>()
                    {
                        new Tool()
                        {
                            ToolSpec = toolSpec
                        }
                    }
                }
            };

            var response = await _bedrockClient.ConverseAsync(request);

            return response;
        }
        catch (ModelNotReadyException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Model not ready, please wait and try again.");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Error occurred while sending Converse request.");
            throw;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon Nova Canvas

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to invoke Amazon Nova Canvas on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with Amazon Nova Canvas.

```
// Use the native inference API to create an image with Amazon Nova Canvas.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID.
var modelId = "amazon.nova-canvas-v1:0";

// Define the image generation prompt for the model.
var prompt = "A stylized picture of a cute old steampunk robot.";

// Create a random seed between 0 and 858,993,459
int seed = new Random().Next(0, 858993460);

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
```

```
    taskType = "TEXT_IMAGE",
    textToImageParams = new
    {
        text = prompt
    },
    imageGenerationConfig = new
    {
        seed,
        quality = "standard",
        width = 512,
        height = 512,
        numberOfImages = 1
    }
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var response = await client.InvokeModelAsync(request);

    // Decode the response body.
    var modelResponse = await JsonNode.ParseAsync(response.Body);

    // Extract the image data.
    var base64Image = modelResponse["images"]?[0].ToString() ?? "";

    // Save the image in a local folder
    string savedPath = AmazonNovaCanvas.InvokeModel.SaveBase64Image(base64Image);
    Console.WriteLine($"Image saved to: {savedPath}");
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Stable Image Core

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to invoke Stability.ai Stable Image Core on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with Stable Image Core.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Asynchronously invokes the Stability.ai Stable Image Core model to run
 an inference based on the provided input.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="prompt">The prompt that describes the image Stability.ai
 Stable Image Core has to generate.</param>
        /// <returns>A base-64 encoded image generated by model</returns>
        /// <remarks>
        /// The different model providers have individual request and response
 formats.
        /// For the format, ranges, and default values for Stability.ai Stable Image
 Core, refer to:
        ///     https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-
parameters-diffusion-stable-image-core-text-image-request-response.html
        /// </remarks>
        public static async Task<string?> InvokeStableImageCoreAsync(string prompt,
 int seed)
        {
            string stableImageCoreModelId = "stability.stable-image-core-v1:1";
```

```
            AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient client = new(RegionEndpoint.USWest2);

            string payload = new JsonObject()
            {
                { "prompt", prompt },
                { "aspect_ratio", "1:1" },
                { "seed", seed },
                { "output_format", "png" }
            }.ToJsonString();

            try
            {
                InvokeModelResponse response = await client.InvokeModelAsync(new
 InvokeModelRequest()
                {
                    ModelId = stableImageCoreModelId,
                    Body = AWSSDKUtils.GenerateMemoryStreamFromString(payload),
                    ContentType = "application/json",
                    Accept = "application/json"
                });

                if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
                {
                    var results = JsonNode.ParseAsync(response.Body).Result?
["images"]?.AsArray();

                    return results?[0]?.GetValue<string>();
                }
                else
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("InvokeModelAsync failed with status code " +
 response.HttpStatusCode);
                }
            }
            catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
            }
            return null;
        }
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CloudWatch Logs examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with CloudWatch Logs.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AssociateKmsKey`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateKmsKey`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to associate an AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key with
/// an Amazon CloudWatch Logs log group.
/// </summary>
public class AssociateKmsKey
{
```

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // This client object will be associated with the same AWS Region
            // as the default user on this system. If you need to use a
            // different AWS Region, pass it as a parameter to the client
            // constructor.
            var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();

            string kmsKeyId = "arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:<account-
number>:key/7c9eccc2-38cb-4c4f-9db3-766ee8dd3ad4";
            string groupName = "cloudwatchlogs-example-loggroup";

            var request = new AssociateKmsKeyRequest
            {
                KmsKeyId = kmsKeyId,
                LogGroupName = groupName,
            };

            var response = await client.AssociateKmsKeyAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully associated KMS key ID: {kmsKeyId}
 with log group: {groupName}.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Could not make the association between:
 {kmsKeyId} and {groupName}.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AssociateKmsKey in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CancelExportTask`

The following code example shows how to use `CancelExportTask`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to cancel an Amazon CloudWatch Logs export task.
/// </summary>
public class CancelExportTask
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // This client object will be associated with the same AWS Region
        // as the default user on this system. If you need to use a
        // different AWS Region, pass it as a parameter to the client
        // constructor.
        var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();
        string taskId = "exampleTaskId";

        var request = new CancelExportTaskRequest
        {
            TaskId = taskId,
        };

        var response = await client.CancelExportTaskAsync(request);

        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{taskId} successfully canceled.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{taskId} could not be canceled.");
        }
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CancelExportTask in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateExportTask`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateExportTask`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to create an Export Task to export the contents of the Amazon
/// CloudWatch Logs to the specified Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
/// bucket.
/// </summary>
public class CreateExportTask
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // This client object will be associated with the same AWS Region
        // as the default user on this system. If you need to use a
        // different AWS Region, pass it as a parameter to the client
        // constructor.
        var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();
        string taskName = "export-task-example";
        string logGroupName = "cloudwatchlogs-example-loggroup";
        string destination = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
```

```
            var fromTime = 1437584472382;
            var toTime = 1437584472833;

            var request = new CreateExportTaskRequest
            {
                From = fromTime,
                To = toTime,
                TaskName = taskName,
                LogGroupName = logGroupName,
                Destination = destination,
            };

            var response = await client.CreateExportTaskAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"The task, {taskName} with ID: " +
                                  $"{response.TaskId} has been created
successfully.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateExportTask in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateLogGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateLogGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
```

```
    using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to create an Amazon CloudWatch Logs log group.
    /// </summary>
    public class CreateLogGroup
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // This client object will be associated with the same AWS Region
            // as the default user on this system. If you need to use a
            // different AWS Region, pass it as a parameter to the client
            // constructor.
            var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();

            string logGroupName = "cloudwatchlogs-example-loggroup";

            var request = new CreateLogGroupRequest
            {
                LogGroupName = logGroupName,
            };

            var response = await client.CreateLogGroupAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully create log group with ID:
{logGroupName}.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Could not create log group.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateLogGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateLogStream`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateLogStream`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to create an Amazon CloudWatch Logs stream for a CloudWatch
/// log group.
/// </summary>
public class CreateLogStream
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // This client object will be associated with the same AWS Region
        // as the default user on this system. If you need to use a
        // different AWS Region, pass it as a parameter to the client
        // constructor.
        var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();
        string logGroupName = "cloudwatchlogs-example-loggroup";
        string logStreamName = "cloudwatchlogs-example-logstream";

        var request = new CreateLogStreamRequest
        {
            LogGroupName = logGroupName,
            LogStreamName = logStreamName,
        };

        var response = await client.CreateLogStreamAsync(request);

        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{logStreamName} successfully created for
{logGroupName}.");
        }
```

```
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Could not create stream.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateLogStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteLogGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteLogGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon CloudWatch Logs Service to delete an existing
/// CloudWatch Logs log group.
/// </summary>
public class DeleteLogGroup
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();
        string logGroupName = "cloudwatchlogs-example-loggroup";

        var request = new DeleteLogGroupRequest
        {
            LogGroupName = logGroupName,
```

```
            };

            var response = await client.DeleteLogGroupAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted CloudWatch log group,
{logGroupName}.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteLogGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeExportTasks`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeExportTasks`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
    using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to retrieve a list of information about Amazon CloudWatch
    /// Logs export tasks.
    /// </summary>
    public class DescribeExportTasks
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // This client object will be associated with the same AWS Region
```

```
            // as the default user on this system. If you need to use a
            // different AWS Region, pass it as a parameter to the client
            // constructor.
            var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();

            var request = new DescribeExportTasksRequest
            {
                Limit = 5,
            };

            var response = new DescribeExportTasksResponse();

            do
            {
                response = await client.DescribeExportTasksAsync(request);
                response.ExportTasks.ForEach(t =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"{t.TaskName} with ID: {t.TaskId} has status:
{t.Status}");
                });
            }
            while (response.NextToken is not null);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeExportTasks in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeLogGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeLogGroups`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
```

```
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
    using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieves information about existing Amazon CloudWatch Logs log groups
    /// and displays the information on the console.
    /// </summary>
    public class DescribeLogGroups
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // Creates a CloudWatch Logs client using the default
            // user. If you need to work with resources in another
            // AWS Region than the one defined for the default user,
            // pass the AWS Region as a parameter to the client constructor.
            var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();

            bool done = false;
            string newToken = null;

            var request = new DescribeLogGroupsRequest
            {
                Limit = 5,
            };

            DescribeLogGroupsResponse response;

            do
            {
                if (newToken is not null)
                {
                    request.NextToken = newToken;
                }

                response = await client.DescribeLogGroupsAsync(request);

                response.LogGroups.ForEach(lg =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"{lg.LogGroupName} is associated with the
key: {lg.KmsKeyId}.");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Created on: {lg.CreationTime.Date.Date}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Date for this group will be stored for:
{lg.RetentionInDays} days.\n");
```

```
                });

                if (response.NextToken is null)
                {
                    done = true;
                }
                else
                {
                    newToken = response.NextToken;
                }
            }
            while (!done);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeLogGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`StartLiveTail`

The following code example shows how to use `StartLiveTail`.

SDK for .NET

Include the required files.

```
using Amazon;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;
```

Start the Live Tail session.

```
            var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();
            var request = new StartLiveTailRequest
            {
                LogGroupIdentifiers = logGroupIdentifiers,
                LogStreamNames = logStreamNames,
                LogEventFilterPattern = filterPattern,
            };
```

```
            var response = await client.StartLiveTailAsync(request);

            // Catch if request fails
            if (response.HttpStatusCode != System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Failed to start live tail session");
                return;
            }
```

You can handle the events from the Live Tail session in two ways:

```
            /* Method 1
            * 1). Asynchronously loop through the event stream
            * 2). Set a timer to dispose the stream and stop the Live Tail session
at the end.
            */
            var eventStream = response.ResponseStream;
            var task = Task.Run(() =>
            {
                foreach (var item in eventStream)
                {
                    if (item is LiveTailSessionUpdate liveTailSessionUpdate)
                    {
                        foreach (var sessionResult in
liveTailSessionUpdate.SessionResults)
                        {
                            Console.WriteLine("Message : {0}",
sessionResult.Message);
                        }
                    }
                    if (item is LiveTailSessionStart)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine("Live Tail session started");
                    }
                    // On-stream exceptions are processed here
                    if (item is CloudWatchLogsEventStreamException)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: {item}");
                    }
                }
            });
            // Close the stream to stop the session after a timeout
```

```
            if (!task.Wait(TimeSpan.FromSeconds(10))){
                eventStream.Dispose();
                Console.WriteLine("End of line");
            }
```

```
            /* Method 2
            * 1). Add event handlers to each event variable
            * 2). Start processing the stream and wait for a timeout using
AutoResetEvent
            */
            AutoResetEvent endEvent = new AutoResetEvent(false);
            var eventStream = response.ResponseStream;
            using (eventStream) // automatically disposes the stream to stop the
session after execution finishes
            {
                eventStream.SessionStartReceived += (sender, e) =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("LiveTail session started");
                };
                eventStream.SessionUpdateReceived += (sender, e) =>
                {
                    foreach (LiveTailSessionLogEvent logEvent in
e.EventStreamEvent.SessionResults){
                        Console.WriteLine("Message: {0}", logEvent.Message);
                    }
                };
                // On-stream exceptions are captured here
                eventStream.ExceptionReceived += (sender, e) =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: {e.EventStreamException.Message}");
                };

                eventStream.StartProcessing();
                // Stream events for this amount of time.
                endEvent.WaitOne(TimeSpan.FromSeconds(10));
                Console.WriteLine("End of line");
            }
```

- For API details, see StartLiveTail in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon Cognito Identity Provider.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`AdminGetUser`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminGetUser`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the specified user from an Amazon Cognito user pool with administrator
access.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The name of the user.</param>
    /// <param name="poolId">The Id of the Amazon Cognito user pool.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task<UserStatusType> GetAdminUserAsync(string userName, string
poolId)
    {
        AdminGetUserRequest userRequest = new AdminGetUserRequest
        {
            Username = userName,
            UserPoolId = poolId,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.AdminGetUserAsync(userRequest);

        Console.WriteLine($"User status {response.UserStatus}");
        return response.UserStatus;
    }
```

- For API details, see AdminGetUser in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`AdminInitiateAuth`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminInitiateAuth`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Initiate an admin auth request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client ID to use.</param>
    /// <param name="userPoolId">The ID of the user pool.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username to authenticate.</param>
    /// <param name="password">The user's password.</param>
    /// <returns>The session to use in challenge-response.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AdminInitiateAuthAsync(string clientId, string
userPoolId, string userName, string password)
```

```
    {
        var authParameters = new Dictionary<string, string>();
        authParameters.Add("USERNAME", userName);
        authParameters.Add("PASSWORD", password);

        var request = new AdminInitiateAuthRequest
        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            UserPoolId = userPoolId,
            AuthParameters = authParameters,
            AuthFlow = AuthFlowType.ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.AdminInitiateAuthAsync(request);
        return response.Session;
    }
```

- For API details, see AdminInitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`AdminRespondToAuthChallenge`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminRespondToAuthChallenge`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Respond to an admin authentication challenge.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The name of the user.</param>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client ID.</param>
    /// <param name="mfaCode">The multi-factor authentication code.</param>
    /// <param name="session">The current application session.</param>
    /// <param name="clientId">The user pool ID.</param>
    /// <returns>The result of the authentication response.</returns>
    public async Task<AuthenticationResultType> AdminRespondToAuthChallengeAsync(
```

```
        string userName,
        string clientId,
        string mfaCode,
        string session,
        string userPoolId)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA challenge is generated");

        var challengeResponses = new Dictionary<string, string>();
        challengeResponses.Add("USERNAME", userName);
        challengeResponses.Add("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE", mfaCode);

        var respondToAuthChallengeRequest = new AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest
        {
            ChallengeName = ChallengeNameType.SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA,
            ClientId = clientId,
            ChallengeResponses = challengeResponses,
            Session = session,
            UserPoolId = userPoolId,
        };

        var response = await
_cognitoService.AdminRespondToAuthChallengeAsync(respondToAuthChallengeRequest);
        Console.WriteLine($"Response to Authentication
{response.AuthenticationResult.TokenType}");
        return response.AuthenticationResult;
    }
```

- For API details, see AdminRespondToAuthChallenge in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`AssociateSoftwareToken`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateSoftwareToken`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get an MFA token to authenticate the user with the authenticator.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="session">The session name.</param>
    /// <returns>The session name.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AssociateSoftwareTokenAsync(string session)
    {
        var softwareTokenRequest = new AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest
        {
            Session = session,
        };

        var tokenResponse = await
_cognitoService.AssociateSoftwareTokenAsync(softwareTokenRequest);
        var secretCode = tokenResponse.SecretCode;

        Console.WriteLine($"Use the following secret code to set up the
authenticator: {secretCode}");

        return tokenResponse.Session;
    }
```

- For API details, see AssociateSoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ConfirmDevice`

The following code example shows how to use `ConfirmDevice`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Initiates and confirms tracking of the device.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="accessToken">The user's access token.</param>
    /// <param name="deviceKey">The key of the device from Amazon Cognito.</param>
    /// <param name="deviceName">The device name.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    public async Task<bool> ConfirmDeviceAsync(string accessToken, string deviceKey,
 string deviceName)
    {
        var request = new ConfirmDeviceRequest
        {
            AccessToken = accessToken,
            DeviceKey = deviceKey,
            DeviceName = deviceName
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.ConfirmDeviceAsync(request);
        return response.UserConfirmationNecessary;
    }
```

- For API details, see ConfirmDevice in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ConfirmSignUp`

The following code example shows how to use `ConfirmSignUp`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Confirm that the user has signed up.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The Id of this application.</param>
    /// <param name="code">The confirmation code sent to the user.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> ConfirmSignupAsync(string clientId, string code, string
 userName)
    {
        var signUpRequest = new ConfirmSignUpRequest
        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            ConfirmationCode = code,
            Username = userName,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.ConfirmSignUpAsync(signUpRequest);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{userName} was confirmed");
            return true;
        }
        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see ConfirmSignUp in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`InitiateAuth`

The following code example shows how to use `InitiateAuth`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Initiate authorization.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client Id of the application.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The name of the user who is authenticating.</param>
    /// <param name="password">The password for the user who is authenticating.</
param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The response from the initiate auth request.</returns>
    public async Task<InitiateAuthResponse> InitiateAuthAsync(string clientId,
string userName, string password)
    {
        var authParameters = new Dictionary<string, string>();
        authParameters.Add("USERNAME", userName);
        authParameters.Add("PASSWORD", password);

        var authRequest = new InitiateAuthRequest

        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            AuthParameters = authParameters,
            AuthFlow = AuthFlowType.USER_PASSWORD_AUTH,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.InitiateAuthAsync(authRequest);
        Console.WriteLine($"Result Challenge is : {response.ChallengeName}");

        return response;
    }
```

- For API details, see InitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUsers`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of users for the Amazon Cognito user pool.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userPoolId">The user pool ID.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of users.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<List<UserType>> ListUsersAsync(string userPoolId)
    {
        var request = new ListUsersRequest
        {
            UserPoolId = userPoolId
        };

        var users = new List<UserType>();

        var usersPaginator = _cognitoService.Paginators.ListUsers(request);
        await foreach (var response in usersPaginator.Responses)
        {
            users.AddRange(response.Users);
        }

        return users;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ResendConfirmationCode`

The following code example shows how to use `ResendConfirmationCode`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Send a new confirmation code to a user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The Id of the client application.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of user who will receive the code.</
param>
    /// <returns>The delivery details.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<CodeDeliveryDetailsType> ResendConfirmationCodeAsync(string
clientId, string userName)
    {
        var codeRequest = new ResendConfirmationCodeRequest
        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            Username = userName,
        };

        var response = await
_cognitoService.ResendConfirmationCodeAsync(codeRequest);

        Console.WriteLine($"Method of delivery is
{response.CodeDeliveryDetails.DeliveryMedium}");

        return response.CodeDeliveryDetails;
    }
```

- For API details, see ResendConfirmationCode in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`SignUp`

The following code example shows how to use `SignUp`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Sign up a new user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client Id of the application.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username to use.</param>
    /// <param name="password">The user's password.</param>
    /// <param name="email">The email address of the user.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating whether the user was confirmed.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> SignUpAsync(string clientId, string userName, string
 password, string email)
    {
        var userAttrs = new AttributeType
        {
            Name = "email",
            Value = email,
        };

        var userAttrsList = new List<AttributeType>();

        userAttrsList.Add(userAttrs);

        var signUpRequest = new SignUpRequest
        {
            UserAttributes = userAttrsList,
            Username = userName,
            ClientId = clientId,
            Password = password
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.SignUpAsync(signUpRequest);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see SignUp in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`VerifySoftwareToken`

The following code example shows how to use `VerifySoftwareToken`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Verify the TOTP and register for MFA.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="session">The name of the session.</param>
    /// <param name="code">The MFA code.</param>
    /// <returns>The status of the software token.</returns>
    public async Task<VerifySoftwareTokenResponseType>
VerifySoftwareTokenAsync(string session, string code)
    {
        var tokenRequest = new VerifySoftwareTokenRequest
        {
            UserCode = code,
            Session = session,
        };

        var verifyResponse = await
_cognitoService.VerifySoftwareTokenAsync(tokenRequest);

        return verifyResponse.Status;
    }
```

- For API details, see VerifySoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Sign up a user with a user pool that requires MFA

The following code example shows how to:

- Sign up and confirm a user with a username, password, and email address.
- Set up multi-factor authentication by associating an MFA application with the user.
- Sign in by using a password and an MFA code.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace CognitoBasics;

public class CognitoBasics
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon Cognito.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonCognitoIdentityProvider>()
            .AddTransient<CognitoWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<CognitoBasics>();

        var configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        var cognitoWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<CognitoWrapper>();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
        UiMethods.DisplayOverview();
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        // clientId - The app client Id value that you get from the AWS CDK script.
        var clientId = configuration["ClientId"]; // "*** REPLACE WITH CLIENT ID
VALUE FROM CDK SCRIPT";

        // poolId - The pool Id that you get from the AWS CDK script.
        var poolId = configuration["PoolId"]!; // "*** REPLACE WITH POOL ID VALUE
FROM CDK SCRIPT";
        var userName = configuration["UserName"];
        var password = configuration["Password"];
        var email = configuration["Email"];

        // If the username wasn't set in the configuration file,
        // get it from the user now.
        if (userName is null)
        {
            do
            {
                Console.Write("Username: ");
                userName = Console.ReadLine();
            }
            while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(userName));
        }
        Console.WriteLine($"\nUsername: {userName}");

        // If the password wasn't set in the configuration file,
        // get it from the user now.
        if (password is null)
        {
            do
            {
                Console.Write("Password: ");
                password = Console.ReadLine();
            }
            while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(password));
        }

        // If the email address wasn't set in the configuration file,
        // get it from the user now.
        if (email is null)
        {
            do
```

```
            {
                Console.Write("Email: ");
                email = Console.ReadLine();
            } while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(email));
        }

        // Now sign up the user.
        Console.WriteLine($"\nSigning up {userName} with email address: {email}");
        await cognitoWrapper.SignUpAsync(clientId, userName, password, email);

        // Add the user to the user pool.
        Console.WriteLine($"Adding {userName} to the user pool");
        await cognitoWrapper.GetAdminUserAsync(userName, poolId);

        UiMethods.DisplayTitle("Get confirmation code");
        Console.WriteLine($"Conformation code sent to {userName}.");
        Console.Write("Would you like to send a new code? (Y/N) ");
        var answer = Console.ReadLine();

        if (answer!.ToLower() == "y")
        {
            await cognitoWrapper.ResendConfirmationCodeAsync(clientId, userName);
            Console.WriteLine("Sending a new confirmation code");
        }

        Console.Write("Enter confirmation code (from Email): ");
        var code = Console.ReadLine();

        await cognitoWrapper.ConfirmSignupAsync(clientId, code, userName);

        UiMethods.DisplayTitle("Checking status");
        Console.WriteLine($"Rechecking the status of {userName} in the user pool");
        await cognitoWrapper.GetAdminUserAsync(userName, poolId);

        Console.WriteLine($"Setting up authenticator for {userName} in the user
pool");
        var setupResponse = await cognitoWrapper.InitiateAuthAsync(clientId,
userName, password);

        var setupSession = await
cognitoWrapper.AssociateSoftwareTokenAsync(setupResponse.Session);
        Console.Write("Enter the 6-digit code displayed in Google Authenticator: ");
        var setupCode = Console.ReadLine();
```

```
        var setupResult = await
 cognitoWrapper.VerifySoftwareTokenAsync(setupSession, setupCode);
        Console.WriteLine($"Setup status: {setupResult}");

        Console.WriteLine($"Now logging in {userName} in the user pool");
        var authSession = await cognitoWrapper.AdminInitiateAuthAsync(clientId,
 poolId, userName, password);

        Console.Write("Enter a new 6-digit code displayed in Google Authenticator:
 ");
        var authCode = Console.ReadLine();

        var authResult = await
 cognitoWrapper.AdminRespondToAuthChallengeAsync(userName, clientId, authCode,
 authSession, poolId);
        Console.WriteLine($"Authenticated and received access token:
 {authResult.AccessToken}");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Cognito scenario is complete.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }
}


using System.Net;

namespace CognitoActions;

/// <summary>
/// Methods to perform Amazon Cognito Identity Provider actions.
/// </summary>
public class CognitoWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonCognitoIdentityProvider _cognitoService;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the wrapper class containing Amazon Cognito actions.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="cognitoService">The Amazon Cognito client object.</param>
    public CognitoWrapper(IAmazonCognitoIdentityProvider cognitoService)
    {
        _cognitoService = cognitoService;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List the Amazon Cognito user pools for an account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of UserPoolDescriptionType objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<UserPoolDescriptionType>> ListUserPoolsAsync()
    {
        var userPools = new List<UserPoolDescriptionType>();

        var userPoolsPaginator = _cognitoService.Paginators.ListUserPools(new
ListUserPoolsRequest());

        await foreach (var response in userPoolsPaginator.Responses)
        {
            userPools.AddRange(response.UserPools);
        }

        return userPools;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of users for the Amazon Cognito user pool.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userPoolId">The user pool ID.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of users.</returns>
    public async Task<List<UserType>> ListUsersAsync(string userPoolId)
    {
        var request = new ListUsersRequest
        {
            UserPoolId = userPoolId
        };

        var users = new List<UserType>();

        var usersPaginator = _cognitoService.Paginators.ListUsers(request);
        await foreach (var response in usersPaginator.Responses)
        {
            users.AddRange(response.Users);
        }

        return users;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Respond to an admin authentication challenge.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The name of the user.</param>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client ID.</param>
    /// <param name="mfaCode">The multi-factor authentication code.</param>
    /// <param name="session">The current application session.</param>
    /// <param name="clientId">The user pool ID.</param>
    /// <returns>The result of the authentication response.</returns>
    public async Task<AuthenticationResultType> AdminRespondToAuthChallengeAsync(
        string userName,
        string clientId,
        string mfaCode,
        string session,
        string userPoolId)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA challenge is generated");

        var challengeResponses = new Dictionary<string, string>();
        challengeResponses.Add("USERNAME", userName);
        challengeResponses.Add("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE", mfaCode);

        var respondToAuthChallengeRequest = new AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest
        {
            ChallengeName = ChallengeNameType.SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA,
            ClientId = clientId,
            ChallengeResponses = challengeResponses,
            Session = session,
            UserPoolId = userPoolId,
        };

        var response = await
_cognitoService.AdminRespondToAuthChallengeAsync(respondToAuthChallengeRequest);
        Console.WriteLine($"Response to Authentication
{response.AuthenticationResult.TokenType}");
        return response.AuthenticationResult;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Verify the TOTP and register for MFA.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="session">The name of the session.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="code">The MFA code.</param>
    /// <returns>The status of the software token.</returns>
    public async Task<VerifySoftwareTokenResponseType>
VerifySoftwareTokenAsync(string session, string code)
    {
        var tokenRequest = new VerifySoftwareTokenRequest
        {
            UserCode = code,
            Session = session,
        };

        var verifyResponse = await
_cognitoService.VerifySoftwareTokenAsync(tokenRequest);

        return verifyResponse.Status;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get an MFA token to authenticate the user with the authenticator.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="session">The session name.</param>
    /// <returns>The session name.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AssociateSoftwareTokenAsync(string session)
    {
        var softwareTokenRequest = new AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest
        {
            Session = session,
        };

        var tokenResponse = await
_cognitoService.AssociateSoftwareTokenAsync(softwareTokenRequest);
        var secretCode = tokenResponse.SecretCode;

        Console.WriteLine($"Use the following secret code to set up the
authenticator: {secretCode}");

        return tokenResponse.Session;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Initiate an admin auth request.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="clientId">The client ID to use.</param>
    /// <param name="userPoolId">The ID of the user pool.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username to authenticate.</param>
    /// <param name="password">The user's password.</param>
    /// <returns>The session to use in challenge-response.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AdminInitiateAuthAsync(string clientId, string
 userPoolId, string userName, string password)
    {
        var authParameters = new Dictionary<string, string>();
        authParameters.Add("USERNAME", userName);
        authParameters.Add("PASSWORD", password);

        var request = new AdminInitiateAuthRequest
        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            UserPoolId = userPoolId,
            AuthParameters = authParameters,
            AuthFlow = AuthFlowType.ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.AdminInitiateAuthAsync(request);
        return response.Session;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Initiate authorization.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client Id of the application.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The name of the user who is authenticating.</param>
    /// <param name="password">The password for the user who is authenticating.</
param>
    /// <returns>The response from the initiate auth request.</returns>
    public async Task<InitiateAuthResponse> InitiateAuthAsync(string clientId,
 string userName, string password)
    {
        var authParameters = new Dictionary<string, string>();
        authParameters.Add("USERNAME", userName);
        authParameters.Add("PASSWORD", password);

        var authRequest = new InitiateAuthRequest

        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            AuthParameters = authParameters,
```

```
            AuthFlow = AuthFlowType.USER_PASSWORD_AUTH,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.InitiateAuthAsync(authRequest);
        Console.WriteLine($"Result Challenge is : {response.ChallengeName}");

        return response;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Confirm that the user has signed up.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The Id of this application.</param>
    /// <param name="code">The confirmation code sent to the user.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ConfirmSignupAsync(string clientId, string code, string
userName)
    {
        var signUpRequest = new ConfirmSignUpRequest
        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            ConfirmationCode = code,
            Username = userName,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.ConfirmSignUpAsync(signUpRequest);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{userName} was confirmed");
            return true;
        }
        return false;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Initiates and confirms tracking of the device.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="accessToken">The user's access token.</param>
    /// <param name="deviceKey">The key of the device from Amazon Cognito.</param>
    /// <param name="deviceName">The device name.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> ConfirmDeviceAsync(string accessToken, string deviceKey,
 string deviceName)
    {
        var request = new ConfirmDeviceRequest
        {
            AccessToken = accessToken,
            DeviceKey = deviceKey,
            DeviceName = deviceName
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.ConfirmDeviceAsync(request);
        return response.UserConfirmationNecessary;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Send a new confirmation code to a user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The Id of the client application.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of user who will receive the code.</
param>
    /// <returns>The delivery details.</returns>
    public async Task<CodeDeliveryDetailsType> ResendConfirmationCodeAsync(string
 clientId, string userName)
    {
        var codeRequest = new ResendConfirmationCodeRequest
        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            Username = userName,
        };

        var response = await
 _cognitoService.ResendConfirmationCodeAsync(codeRequest);

        Console.WriteLine($"Method of delivery is
 {response.CodeDeliveryDetails.DeliveryMedium}");

        return response.CodeDeliveryDetails;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get the specified user from an Amazon Cognito user pool with administrator
 access.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The name of the user.</param>
    /// <param name="poolId">The Id of the Amazon Cognito user pool.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task<UserStatusType> GetAdminUserAsync(string userName, string
 poolId)
    {
        AdminGetUserRequest userRequest = new AdminGetUserRequest
        {
            Username = userName,
            UserPoolId = poolId,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.AdminGetUserAsync(userRequest);

        Console.WriteLine($"User status {response.UserStatus}");
        return response.UserStatus;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Sign up a new user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client Id of the application.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username to use.</param>
    /// <param name="password">The user's password.</param>
    /// <param name="email">The email address of the user.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating whether the user was confirmed.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> SignUpAsync(string clientId, string userName, string
 password, string email)
    {
        var userAttrs = new AttributeType
        {
            Name = "email",
            Value = email,
        };

        var userAttrsList = new List<AttributeType>();

        userAttrsList.Add(userAttrs);

        var signUpRequest = new SignUpRequest
        {
```

```
            UserAttributes = userAttrsList,
            Username = userName,
            ClientId = clientId,
            Password = password
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.SignUpAsync(signUpRequest);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AdminGetUser
  - AdminInitiateAuth
  - AdminRespondToAuthChallenge
  - AssociateSoftwareToken
  - ConfirmDevice
  - ConfirmSignUp
  - InitiateAuth
  - ListUsers
  - ResendConfirmationCode
  - RespondToAuthChallenge
  - SignUp
  - VerifySoftwareToken

Amazon Comprehend examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon Comprehend.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`DetectDominantLanguage`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectDominantLanguage`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Comprehend;
using Amazon.Comprehend.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example calls the Amazon Comprehend service to determine the
/// dominant language.
/// </summary>
public static class DetectDominantLanguage
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Calls Amazon Comprehend to determine the dominant language used in
    /// the sample text.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
```

```
        {
            string text = "It is raining today in Seattle.";

            var comprehendClient = new
AmazonComprehendClient(Amazon.RegionEndpoint.USWest2);

            Console.WriteLine("Calling DetectDominantLanguage\n");
            var detectDominantLanguageRequest = new DetectDominantLanguageRequest()
            {
                Text = text,
            };

            var detectDominantLanguageResponse = await
comprehendClient.DetectDominantLanguageAsync(detectDominantLanguageRequest);
            foreach (var dl in detectDominantLanguageResponse.Languages)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Language Code: {dl.LanguageCode}, Score:
{dl.Score}");
            }

            Console.WriteLine("Done");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectDominantLanguage in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DetectEntities`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectEntities`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
```

```
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Comprehend;
    using Amazon.Comprehend.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to use the AmazonComprehend service detect any
    /// entities in submitted text.
    /// </summary>
    public static class DetectEntities
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// The main method calls the DetectEntitiesAsync method to find any
        /// entities in the sample code.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string text = "It is raining today in Seattle";

            var comprehendClient = new AmazonComprehendClient();

            Console.WriteLine("Calling DetectEntities\n");
            var detectEntitiesRequest = new DetectEntitiesRequest()
            {
                Text = text,
                LanguageCode = "en",
            };
            var detectEntitiesResponse = await
comprehendClient.DetectEntitiesAsync(detectEntitiesRequest);

            foreach (var e in detectEntitiesResponse.Entities)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Text: {e.Text}, Type: {e.Type}, Score:
{e.Score}, BeginOffset: {e.BeginOffset}, EndOffset: {e.EndOffset}");
            }

            Console.WriteLine("Done");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectEntities in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DetectKeyPhrases`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectKeyPhrases`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Comprehend;
    using Amazon.Comprehend.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to use the Amazon Comprehend service to
    /// search text for key phrases.
    /// </summary>
    public static class DetectKeyPhrase
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// This method calls the Amazon Comprehend method DetectKeyPhrasesAsync
        /// to detect any key phrases in the sample text.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string text = "It is raining today in Seattle";

            var comprehendClient = new
AmazonComprehendClient(Amazon.RegionEndpoint.USWest2);

            // Call DetectKeyPhrases API
            Console.WriteLine("Calling DetectKeyPhrases");
            var detectKeyPhrasesRequest = new DetectKeyPhrasesRequest()
            {
                Text = text,
                LanguageCode = "en",
            };
            var detectKeyPhrasesResponse = await
comprehendClient.DetectKeyPhrasesAsync(detectKeyPhrasesRequest);
```

```
            foreach (var kp in detectKeyPhrasesResponse.KeyPhrases)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Text: {kp.Text}, Score: {kp.Score}, BeginOffset:
{kp.BeginOffset}, EndOffset: {kp.EndOffset}");
            }

            Console.WriteLine("Done");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectKeyPhrases in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DetectPiiEntities`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectPiiEntities`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Comprehend;
using Amazon.Comprehend.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to use the Amazon Comprehend service to find
/// personally identifiable information (PII) within text submitted to the
/// DetectPiiEntitiesAsync method.
/// </summary>
public class DetectingPII
{
    /// <summary>
    /// This method calls the DetectPiiEntitiesAsync method to locate any
    /// personally dientifiable information within the supplied text.
    /// </summary>
```

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var comprehendClient = new AmazonComprehendClient();
            var text = @"Hello Paul Santos. The latest statement for your
                        credit card account 1111-0000-1111-0000 was
                        mailed to 123 Any Street, Seattle, WA 98109.";

            var request = new DetectPiiEntitiesRequest
            {
                Text = text,
                LanguageCode = "EN",
            };

            var response = await comprehendClient.DetectPiiEntitiesAsync(request);

            if (response.Entities.Count > 0)
            {
                foreach (var entity in response.Entities)
                {
                    var entityValue = text.Substring(entity.BeginOffset,
entity.EndOffset - entity.BeginOffset);
                    Console.WriteLine($"{entity.Type}: {entityValue}");
                }
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectPiiEntities in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DetectSentiment`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectSentiment`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Comprehend;
    using Amazon.Comprehend.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to detect the overall sentiment of the supplied
    /// text using the Amazon Comprehend service.
    /// </summary>
    public static class DetectSentiment
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// This method calls the DetetectSentimentAsync method to analyze the
        /// supplied text and determine the overal sentiment.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string text = "It is raining today in Seattle";

            var comprehendClient = new
AmazonComprehendClient(Amazon.RegionEndpoint.USWest2);

            // Call DetectKeyPhrases API
            Console.WriteLine("Calling DetectSentiment");
            var detectSentimentRequest = new DetectSentimentRequest()
            {
                Text = text,
                LanguageCode = "en",
            };
            var detectSentimentResponse = await
comprehendClient.DetectSentimentAsync(detectSentimentRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"Sentiment: {detectSentimentResponse.Sentiment}");
            Console.WriteLine("Done");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectSentiment in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DetectSyntax`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectSyntax`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Comprehend;
    using Amazon.Comprehend.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to use Amazon Comprehend to detect syntax
    /// elements by calling the DetectSyntaxAsync method.
    /// </summary>
    public class DetectingSyntax
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// This method calls DetectSynaxAsync to identify the syntax elements
        /// in the sample text.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string text = "It is raining today in Seattle";

            var comprehendClient = new AmazonComprehendClient();

            // Call DetectSyntax API
            Console.WriteLine("Calling DetectSyntaxAsync\n");
            var detectSyntaxRequest = new DetectSyntaxRequest()
            {
                Text = text,
                LanguageCode = "en",
            };
            DetectSyntaxResponse detectSyntaxResponse = await
comprehendClient.DetectSyntaxAsync(detectSyntaxRequest);
            foreach (SyntaxToken s in detectSyntaxResponse.SyntaxTokens)
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Text: {s.Text}, PartOfSpeech:
{s.PartOfSpeech.Tag}, BeginOffset: {s.BeginOffset}, EndOffset: {s.EndOffset}");
            }

            Console.WriteLine("Done");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectSyntax in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`StartTopicsDetectionJob`

The following code example shows how to use `StartTopicsDetectionJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Comprehend;
using Amazon.Comprehend.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example scans the documents in an Amazon Simple Storage Service
/// (Amazon S3) bucket and analyzes it for topics. The results are stored
/// in another bucket and then the resulting job properties are displayed
/// on the screen. This example was created using the AWS SDK for .NEt
/// version 3.7 and .NET Core version 5.0.
/// </summary>
public static class TopicModeling
{
    /// <summary>
    /// This methos calls a topic detection job by calling the Amazon
    /// Comprehend StartTopicsDetectionJobRequest.
```

```
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var comprehendClient = new AmazonComprehendClient();

            string inputS3Uri = "s3://input bucket/input path";
            InputFormat inputDocFormat = InputFormat.ONE_DOC_PER_FILE;
            string outputS3Uri = "s3://output bucket/output path";
            string dataAccessRoleArn = "arn:aws:iam::account ID:role/data access
role";
            int numberOfTopics = 10;

            var startTopicsDetectionJobRequest = new
StartTopicsDetectionJobRequest()
            {
                InputDataConfig = new InputDataConfig()
                {
                    S3Uri = inputS3Uri,
                    InputFormat = inputDocFormat,
                },
                OutputDataConfig = new OutputDataConfig()
                {
                    S3Uri = outputS3Uri,
                },
                DataAccessRoleArn = dataAccessRoleArn,
                NumberOfTopics = numberOfTopics,
            };

            var startTopicsDetectionJobResponse = await
comprehendClient.StartTopicsDetectionJobAsync(startTopicsDetectionJobRequest);

            var jobId = startTopicsDetectionJobResponse.JobId;
            Console.WriteLine("JobId: " + jobId);

            var describeTopicsDetectionJobRequest = new
DescribeTopicsDetectionJobRequest()
            {
                JobId = jobId,
            };

            var describeTopicsDetectionJobResponse = await
comprehendClient.DescribeTopicsDetectionJobAsync(describeTopicsDetectionJobRequest);

PrintJobProperties(describeTopicsDetectionJobResponse.TopicsDetectionJobProperties);
```

```
            var listTopicsDetectionJobsResponse = await
comprehendClient.ListTopicsDetectionJobsAsync(new
ListTopicsDetectionJobsRequest());
            foreach (var props in
listTopicsDetectionJobsResponse.TopicsDetectionJobPropertiesList)
            {
                PrintJobProperties(props);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method is a helper method that displays the job properties
        /// from the call to StartTopicsDetectionJobRequest.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="props">A list of properties from the call to
        /// StartTopicsDetectionJobRequest.</param>
        private static void PrintJobProperties(TopicsDetectionJobProperties props)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"JobId: {props.JobId}, JobName: {props.JobName},
JobStatus: {props.JobStatus}");
            Console.WriteLine($"NumberOfTopics: {props.NumberOfTopics}\nInputS3Uri:
{props.InputDataConfig.S3Uri}");
            Console.WriteLine($"InputFormat: {props.InputDataConfig.InputFormat},
OutputS3Uri: {props.OutputDataConfig.S3Uri}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see StartTopicsDetectionJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for .NET

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Amazon DocumentDB examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon DocumentDB.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DocumentDB change stream. The function retrieves the DocumentDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using .NET.

```
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using System.Text.Json;
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Text.Json.Serialization;
//Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted into
 a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace LambdaDocDb;

public class Function
{

     /// <summary>
    /// Lambda function entry point to process Amazon DocumentDB events.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="event">The Amazon DocumentDB event.</param>
    /// <param name="context">The Lambda context object.</param>
    /// <returns>A string to indicate successful processing.</returns>
    public string FunctionHandler(Event evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {
```

```
        foreach (var record in evnt.Events)
        {
            ProcessDocumentDBEvent(record, context);
        }

        return "OK";
    }

     private void ProcessDocumentDBEvent(DocumentDBEventRecord record,
ILambdaContext context)
    {

        var eventData = record.Event;
        var operationType = eventData.OperationType;
        var databaseName = eventData.Ns.Db;
        var collectionName = eventData.Ns.Coll;
        var fullDocument = JsonSerializer.Serialize(eventData.FullDocument, new
JsonSerializerOptions { WriteIndented = true });

        context.Logger.LogLine($"Operation type: {operationType}");
        context.Logger.LogLine($"Database: {databaseName}");
        context.Logger.LogLine($"Collection: {collectionName}");
        context.Logger.LogLine($"Full document:\n{fullDocument}");
    }



    public class Event
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("eventSourceArn")]
        public string EventSourceArn { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("events")]
        public List<DocumentDBEventRecord> Events { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("eventSource")]
        public string EventSource { get; set; }
    }

    public class DocumentDBEventRecord
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("event")]
        public EventData Event { get; set; }
    }
```

```
public class EventData
{
    [JsonPropertyName("_id")]
    public IdData Id { get; set; }

    [JsonPropertyName("clusterTime")]
    public ClusterTime ClusterTime { get; set; }

    [JsonPropertyName("documentKey")]
    public DocumentKey DocumentKey { get; set; }

    [JsonPropertyName("fullDocument")]
    public Dictionary<string, object> FullDocument { get; set; }

    [JsonPropertyName("ns")]
    public Namespace Ns { get; set; }

    [JsonPropertyName("operationType")]
    public string OperationType { get; set; }
}

public class IdData
{
    [JsonPropertyName("_data")]
    public string Data { get; set; }
}

public class ClusterTime
{
    [JsonPropertyName("$timestamp")]
    public Timestamp Timestamp { get; set; }
}

public class Timestamp
{
    [JsonPropertyName("t")]
    public long T { get; set; }

    [JsonPropertyName("i")]
    public int I { get; set; }
}

public class DocumentKey
```

```
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("_id")]
        public Id Id { get; set; }
    }

    public class Id
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("$oid")]
        public string Oid { get; set; }
    }

    public class Namespace
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("db")]
        public string Db { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("coll")]
        public string Coll { get; set; }
    }
}
```

DynamoDB examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with DynamoDB.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

AWS community contributions are examples that were created and are maintained by multiple teams across AWS. To provide feedback, use the mechanism provided in the linked repositories.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

- Scenarios
- Serverless examples
- AWS community contributions

Actions

`BatchExecuteStatement`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchExecuteStatement`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use batches of INSERT statements to add items.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Inserts movies imported from a JSON file into the movie table by
        /// using an Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL INSERT statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table into which the movie
        /// information will be inserted.</param>
        /// <param name="movieFileName">The name of the JSON file that contains
        /// movie information.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
        /// the insert operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> InsertMovies(string tableName, string
movieFileName)
        {
            // Get the list of movies from the JSON file.
            var movies = ImportMovies(movieFileName);

            var success = false;

            if (movies is not null)
            {
                // Insert the movies in a batch using PartiQL. Because the
```

```
                // batch can contain a maximum of 25 items, insert 25 movies
                // at a time.
                string insertBatch = $"INSERT INTO {tableName} VALUE {{'title': ?,
'year': ?}}";
                var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>();

                try
                {
                    for (var indexOffset = 0; indexOffset < 250; indexOffset += 25)
                    {
                        for (var i = indexOffset; i < indexOffset + 25; i++)
                        {
                            statements.Add(new BatchStatementRequest
                            {
                                Statement = insertBatch,
                                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                                {
                                    new AttributeValue { S = movies[i].Title },
                                    new AttributeValue { N =
movies[i].Year.ToString() },
                                },
                            });
                        }

                        var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
BatchExecuteStatementRequest
                        {
                            Statements = statements,
                        });

                        // Wait between batches for movies to be successfully added.
                        System.Threading.Thread.Sleep(3000);

                        success = response.HttpStatusCode ==
System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;

                        // Clear the list of statements for the next batch.
                        statements.Clear();
                    }
                }
                catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                }
```

```
            }

            return success;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Loads the contents of a JSON file into a list of movies to be
        /// added to the DynamoDB table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="movieFileName">The full path to the JSON file.</param>
        /// <returns>A generic list of movie objects.</returns>
        public static List<Movie> ImportMovies(string movieFileName)
        {
            if (!File.Exists(movieFileName))
            {
                return null!;
            }

            using var sr = new StreamReader(movieFileName);
            string json = sr.ReadToEnd();
            var allMovies = JsonConvert.DeserializeObject<List<Movie>>(json);

            if (allMovies is not null)
            {
                // Return the first 250 entries.
                return allMovies.GetRange(0, 250);
            }
            else
            {
                return null!;
            }
        }
```

Use batches of SELECT statements to get items.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Gets movies from the movie table by
        /// using an Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL SELECT statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="title1">The title of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="title2">The title of the second movie.</param>
```

```
        /// <param name="year1">The year of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year2">The year of the second movie.</param>
        /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> GetBatch(
            string tableName,
            string title1,
            string title2,
            int year1,
            int year2)
        {
            var getBatch = $"SELECT * FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ? AND year
= ?";
            var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>
            {
                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = getBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title1 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year1.ToString() },
                    },
                },

                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = getBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title2 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year2.ToString() },
                    },
                }
            };

            var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
BatchExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statements = statements,
            });

            if (response.Responses.Count > 0)
            {
                response.Responses.ForEach(r =>
```

```
                {
                    if (r.Item.Any())
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"{r.Item["title"]}\t{r.Item["year"]}");
                    }
                });
                return true;
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't find either {title1} or {title2}.");
                return false;
            }

        }
```

Use batches of UPDATE statements to update items.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Updates information for multiple movies.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table containing the
        /// movies to be updated.</param>
        /// <param name="producer1">The producer name for the first movie
        /// to update.</param>
        /// <param name="title1">The title of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year1">The year that the first movie was released.</param>
        /// <param name="producer2">The producer name for the second
        /// movie to update.</param>
        /// <param name="title2">The title of the second movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year2">The year that the second movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the update.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UpdateBatch(
            string tableName,
            string producer1,
            string title1,
            int year1,
            string producer2,
            string title2,
            int year2)
        {
```

```
            string updateBatch = $"UPDATE {tableName} SET Producer=? WHERE title = ?
AND year = ?";
            var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>
            {
                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = producer1 },
                        new AttributeValue { S = title1 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year1.ToString() },
                    },
                },

                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = producer2 },
                        new AttributeValue { S = title2 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year2.ToString() },
                    },
                }
            };

            var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
BatchExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statements = statements,
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

Use batches of DELETE statements to delete items.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes multiple movies using a PartiQL BatchExecuteAsync
        /// statement.
```

```
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table containing the
        /// moves that will be deleted.</param>
        /// <param name="title1">The title of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year1">The year the first movie was released.</param>
        /// <param name="title2">The title of the second movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year2">The year the second movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the operation.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteBatch(
            string tableName,
            string title1,
            int year1,
            string title2,
            int year2)
        {

            string updateBatch = $"DELETE FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ? AND year
 = ?";
            var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>
            {
                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title1 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year1.ToString() },
                    },
                },

                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title2 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year2.ToString() },
                    },
                }
            };

            var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
 BatchExecuteStatementRequest
```

```
            {
                Statements = statements,
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`BatchGetItem`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchGetItem`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model;

namespace LowLevelBatchGet
{
    public class LowLevelBatchGet
    {
        private static readonly string _table1Name = "Forum";
        private static readonly string _table2Name = "Thread";

        public static async void RetrieveMultipleItemsBatchGet(AmazonDynamoDBClient
 client)
        {
            var request = new BatchGetItemRequest
            {
                RequestItems = new Dictionary<string, KeysAndAttributes>()
            {
                { _table1Name,
```

```
                    new KeysAndAttributes
                    {
                        Keys = new List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue> >()
                        {
                            new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>()
                            {
                                { "Name", new AttributeValue {
                              S = "Amazon DynamoDB"
                          } }
                            },
                            new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>()
                            {
                                { "Name", new AttributeValue {
                              S = "Amazon S3"
                          } }
                            }
                        }
                    }},
                {
                    _table2Name,
                    new KeysAndAttributes
                    {
                        Keys = new List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue> >()
                        {
                            new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>()
                            {
                                { "ForumName", new AttributeValue {
                                      S = "Amazon DynamoDB"
                                  } },
                                { "Subject", new AttributeValue {
                                      S = "DynamoDB Thread 1"
                                  } }
                            },
                            new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>()
                            {
                                { "ForumName", new AttributeValue {
                                      S = "Amazon DynamoDB"
                                  } },
                                { "Subject", new AttributeValue {
                                      S = "DynamoDB Thread 2"
                                  } }
                            },
                            new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>()
                            {
```

```
                                { "ForumName", new AttributeValue {
                                      S = "Amazon S3"
                                  } },
                                { "Subject", new AttributeValue {
                                      S = "S3 Thread 1"
                                  } }
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
            };

            BatchGetItemResponse response;
            do
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Making request");
                response = await client.BatchGetItemAsync(request);

                // Check the response.
                var responses = response.Responses; // Attribute list in the
response.

                foreach (var tableResponse in responses)
                {
                    var tableResults = tableResponse.Value;
                    Console.WriteLine("Items retrieved from table {0}",
tableResponse.Key);
                    foreach (var item1 in tableResults)
                    {
                        PrintItem(item1);
                    }
                }

                // Any unprocessed keys? could happen if you exceed
ProvisionedThroughput or some other error.
                Dictionary<string, KeysAndAttributes> unprocessedKeys =
response.UnprocessedKeys;
                foreach (var unprocessedTableKeys in unprocessedKeys)
                {
                    // Print table name.
                    Console.WriteLine(unprocessedTableKeys.Key);
                    // Print unprocessed primary keys.
                    foreach (var key in unprocessedTableKeys.Value.Keys)
```

```
                    {
                        PrintItem(key);
                    }
                }

                request.RequestItems = unprocessedKeys;
            } while (response.UnprocessedKeys.Count > 0);
        }

        private static void PrintItem(Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
 attributeList)
        {
            foreach (KeyValuePair<string, AttributeValue> kvp in attributeList)
            {
                string attributeName = kvp.Key;
                AttributeValue value = kvp.Value;

                Console.WriteLine(
                    attributeName + " " +
                    (value.S == null ? "" : "S=[" + value.S + "]") +
                    (value.N == null ? "" : "N=[" + value.N + "]") +
                    (value.SS == null ? "" : "SS=[" + string.Join(",",
 value.SS.ToArray()) + "]") +
                    (value.NS == null ? "" : "NS=[" + string.Join(",",
 value.NS.ToArray()) + "]")
                    );
            }
            Console.WriteLine("************************************************");
        }

        static void Main()
        {
            var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();

            RetrieveMultipleItemsBatchGet(client);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see BatchGetItem in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTable`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
private static async Task GetTableInformation()
{
    Console.WriteLine("\n*** Retrieving table information ***");

    var response = await Client.DescribeTableAsync(new DescribeTableRequest
    {
        TableName = ExampleTableName
    });

    var table = response.Table;
    Console.WriteLine($"Name: {table.TableName}");
    Console.WriteLine($"# of items: {table.ItemCount}");

}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ExecuteStatement`

The following code example shows how to use `ExecuteStatement`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use an INSERT statement to add an item.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Inserts a single movie into the movies table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to insert.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year that the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
        /// the INSERT operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> InsertSingleMovie(string tableName, string
 movieTitle, int year)
        {
            string insertBatch = $"INSERT INTO {tableName} VALUE {{'title': ?,
 'year': ?}}";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
 ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = insertBatch,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

Use a SELECT statement to get an item.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Uses a PartiQL SELECT statement to retrieve a single movie from the
        /// movie database.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the movie table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to retrieve.</param>
        /// <returns>A list of movie data. If no movie matches the supplied
```

```
        /// title, the list is empty.</returns>
        public static async Task<List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>>>
GetSingleMovie(string tableName, string movieTitle)
        {
            string selectSingle = $"SELECT * FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ?";
            var parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
            {
                new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
            };

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = selectSingle,
                Parameters = parameters,
            });

            return response.Items;
        }
```

Use a SELECT statement to get a list of items.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve multiple movies by year using a SELECT statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the movie table.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year the movies were released.</param>
        /// <returns></returns>
        public static async Task<List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>>>
GetMovies(string tableName, int year)
        {
            string selectSingle = $"SELECT * FROM {tableName} WHERE year = ?";
            var parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
            {
                new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
            };

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
```

```
                Statement = selectSingle,
                Parameters = parameters,
            });

            return response.Items;
        }
```

Use an UPDATE statement to update an item.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Updates a single movie in the table, adding information for the
        /// producer.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">the name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="producer">The name of the producer.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The movie title.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the
        /// UPDATE operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UpdateSingleMovie(string tableName, string
 producer, string movieTitle, int year)
        {
            string insertSingle = $"UPDATE {tableName} SET Producer=? WHERE title
 = ? AND year = ?";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
 ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = insertSingle,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = producer },
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

Use a DELETE statement to delete a single movie.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes a single movie from the table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to delete.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year that the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the
        /// DELETE operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteSingleMovie(string tableName, string
movieTitle, int year)
        {
            var deleteSingle = $"DELETE FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ? AND year
= ?";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = deleteSingle,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListTables`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTables`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
private static async Task ListMyTables()
{
    Console.WriteLine("\n*** Listing tables ***");

    string lastTableNameEvaluated = null;
    do
    {
        var response = await Client.ListTablesAsync(new ListTablesRequest
        {
            Limit = 2,
            ExclusiveStartTableName = lastTableNameEvaluated
        });

        foreach (var name in response.TableNames)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(name);
        }

        lastTableNameEvaluated = response.LastEvaluatedTableName;
    } while (lastTableNameEvaluated != null);
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Create a web application to track DynamoDB data

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon DynamoDB table and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the Amazon DynamoDB .NET API to create a dynamic web application that tracks DynamoDB work data.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SES

Query a table by using batches of PartiQL statements

The following code example shows how to:

- Get a batch of items by running multiple SELECT statements.
- Add a batch of items by running multiple INSERT statements.
- Update a batch of items by running multiple UPDATE statements.
- Delete a batch of items by running multiple DELETE statements.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Before you run this example, download 'movies.json' from
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
GettingStarted.Js.02.html,
// and put it in the same folder as the example.

// Separator for the console display.
var SepBar = new string('-', 80);
const string tableName = "movie_table";
const string movieFileName = @"..\..\..\..\..\..\..\..\resources\sample_files
\movies.json";

DisplayInstructions();

// Create the table and wait for it to be active.
Console.WriteLine($"Creating the movie table: {tableName}");

var success = await DynamoDBMethods.CreateMovieTableAsync(tableName);
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created table: {tableName}.");
}

WaitForEnter();

// Add movie information to the table from moviedata.json. See the
// instructions at the top of this file to download the JSON file.
```

```
Console.WriteLine($"Inserting movies into the new table. Please wait...");
success = await PartiQLBatchMethods.InsertMovies(tableName, movieFileName);
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine("Movies successfully added to the table.");
}
else
{
    Console.WriteLine("Movies could not be added to the table.");
}

WaitForEnter();

// Update multiple movies by using the BatchExecute statement.
var title1 = "Star Wars";
var year1 = 1977;
var title2 = "Wizard of Oz";
var year2 = 1939;

Console.WriteLine($"Updating two movies with producer information: {title1} and
 {title2}.");
success = await PartiQLBatchMethods.GetBatch(tableName, title1, title2, year1,
 year2);
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Successfully retrieved {title1} and {title2}.");
}
else
{
    Console.WriteLine("Select statement failed.");
}

WaitForEnter();

// Update multiple movies by using the BatchExecute statement.
var producer1 = "LucasFilm";
var producer2 = "MGM";

Console.WriteLine($"Updating two movies with producer information: {title1} and
 {title2}.");
success = await PartiQLBatchMethods.UpdateBatch(tableName, producer1, title1, year1,
 producer2, title2, year2);
if (success)
{
```

```
    Console.WriteLine($"Successfully updated {title1} and {title2}.");
}
else
{
    Console.WriteLine("Update failed.");
}

WaitForEnter();

// Delete multiple movies by using the BatchExecute statement.
Console.WriteLine($"Now we will delete {title1} and {title2} from the table.");
success = await PartiQLBatchMethods.DeleteBatch(tableName, title1, year1, title2,
 year2);

if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Deleted {title1} and {title2}");
}
else
{
    Console.WriteLine($"could not delete {title1} or {title2}");
}

WaitForEnter();

// DNow that the PartiQL Batch scenario is complete, delete the movie table.
success = await DynamoDBMethods.DeleteTableAsync(tableName);

if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted {tableName}");
}
else
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Could not delete {tableName}");
}

/// <summary>
/// Displays the description of the application on the console.
/// </summary>
void DisplayInstructions()
{
    Console.Clear();
    Console.WriteLine();
```

```
    Console.Write(new string(' ', 24));
    Console.WriteLine("DynamoDB PartiQL Basics Example");
    Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
    Console.WriteLine("This demo application shows the basics of using Amazon
 DynamoDB with the AWS SDK for");
    Console.WriteLine(".NET version 3.7 and .NET 6.");
    Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
    Console.WriteLine("Creates a table by using the CreateTable method.");
    Console.WriteLine("Gets multiple movies by using a PartiQL SELECT statement.");
    Console.WriteLine("Updates multiple movies by using the ExecuteBatch method.");
    Console.WriteLine("Deletes multiple movies by using a PartiQL DELETE
 statement.");
    Console.WriteLine("Cleans up the resources created for the demo by deleting the
 table.");
    Console.WriteLine(SepBar);

    WaitForEnter();
}

/// <summary>
/// Simple method to wait for the <Enter> key to be pressed.
/// </summary>
void WaitForEnter()
{
    Console.WriteLine("\nPress <Enter> to continue.");
    Console.Write(SepBar);
    _ = Console.ReadLine();
}


        /// <summary>
        /// Gets movies from the movie table by
        /// using an Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL SELECT statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="title1">The title of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="title2">The title of the second movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year1">The year of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year2">The year of the second movie.</param>
        /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> GetBatch(
            string tableName,
            string title1,
            string title2,
```

```
            int year1,
            int year2)
        {
            var getBatch = $"SELECT * FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ? AND year
= ?";
            var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>
            {
                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = getBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title1 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year1.ToString() },
                    },
                },

                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = getBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title2 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year2.ToString() },
                    },
                }
            };

            var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
BatchExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statements = statements,
            });

            if (response.Responses.Count > 0)
            {
                response.Responses.ForEach(r =>
                {
                    if (r.Item.Any())
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"{r.Item["title"]}\t{r.Item["year"]}");
                    }
                });
                return true;
```

```
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't find either {title1} or {title2}.");
                return false;
            }

        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Inserts movies imported from a JSON file into the movie table by
        /// using an Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL INSERT statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table into which the movie
        /// information will be inserted.</param>
        /// <param name="movieFileName">The name of the JSON file that contains
        /// movie information.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
        /// the insert operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> InsertMovies(string tableName, string
movieFileName)
        {
            // Get the list of movies from the JSON file.
            var movies = ImportMovies(movieFileName);

            var success = false;

            if (movies is not null)
            {
                // Insert the movies in a batch using PartiQL. Because the
                // batch can contain a maximum of 25 items, insert 25 movies
                // at a time.
                string insertBatch = $"INSERT INTO {tableName} VALUE {{'title': ?,
'year': ?}}";
                var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>();

                try
                {
                    for (var indexOffset = 0; indexOffset < 250; indexOffset += 25)
                    {
                        for (var i = indexOffset; i < indexOffset + 25; i++)
                        {
                            statements.Add(new BatchStatementRequest
                            {
```

```
                                Statement = insertBatch,
                                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                                {
                                    new AttributeValue { S = movies[i].Title },
                                    new AttributeValue { N =
movies[i].Year.ToString() },
                                },
                            });
                        }

                        var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
BatchExecuteStatementRequest
                        {
                            Statements = statements,
                        });

                        // Wait between batches for movies to be successfully added.
                        System.Threading.Thread.Sleep(3000);

                        success = response.HttpStatusCode ==
System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;

                        // Clear the list of statements for the next batch.
                        statements.Clear();
                    }
                }
                catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                }
            }

            return success;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Loads the contents of a JSON file into a list of movies to be
        /// added to the DynamoDB table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="movieFileName">The full path to the JSON file.</param>
        /// <returns>A generic list of movie objects.</returns>
        public static List<Movie> ImportMovies(string movieFileName)
        {
            if (!File.Exists(movieFileName))
```

```
            {
                return null!;
            }

            using var sr = new StreamReader(movieFileName);
            string json = sr.ReadToEnd();
            var allMovies = JsonConvert.DeserializeObject<List<Movie>>(json);

            if (allMovies is not null)
            {
                // Return the first 250 entries.
                return allMovies.GetRange(0, 250);
            }
            else
            {
                return null!;
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Updates information for multiple movies.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table containing the
        /// movies to be updated.</param>
        /// <param name="producer1">The producer name for the first movie
        /// to update.</param>
        /// <param name="title1">The title of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year1">The year that the first movie was released.</param>
        /// <param name="producer2">The producer name for the second
        /// movie to update.</param>
        /// <param name="title2">The title of the second movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year2">The year that the second movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the update.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UpdateBatch(
            string tableName,
            string producer1,
            string title1,
            int year1,
            string producer2,
            string title2,
            int year2)
        {
```

```
            string updateBatch = $"UPDATE {tableName} SET Producer=? WHERE title = ?
AND year = ?";
            var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>
            {
                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = producer1 },
                        new AttributeValue { S = title1 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year1.ToString() },
                    },
                },

                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = producer2 },
                        new AttributeValue { S = title2 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year2.ToString() },
                    },
                }
            };

            var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
BatchExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statements = statements,
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes multiple movies using a PartiQL BatchExecuteAsync
        /// statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table containing the
        /// moves that will be deleted.</param>
        /// <param name="title1">The title of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year1">The year the first movie was released.</param>
```

```
        /// <param name="title2">The title of the second movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year2">The year the second movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the operation.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteBatch(
            string tableName,
            string title1,
            int year1,
            string title2,
            int year2)
        {

            string updateBatch = $"DELETE FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ? AND year
 = ?";
            var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>
            {
                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title1 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year1.ToString() },
                    },
                },

                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title2 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year2.ToString() },
                    },
                }
            };

            var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
 BatchExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statements = statements,
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
```

```
        }
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Query a table using PartiQL

The following code example shows how to:

- Get an item by running a SELECT statement.
- Add an item by running an INSERT statement.
- Update an item by running an UPDATE statement.
- Delete an item by running a DELETE statement.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace PartiQL_Basics_Scenario
{
    public class PartiQLMethods
    {
        private static readonly AmazonDynamoDBClient Client = new
 AmazonDynamoDBClient();


        /// <summary>
        /// Inserts movies imported from a JSON file into the movie table by
        /// using an Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL INSERT statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table where the movie
        /// information will be inserted.</param>
        /// <param name="movieFileName">The name of the JSON file that contains
        /// movie information.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
        /// the insert operation.</returns>
```

```
        public static async Task<bool> InsertMovies(string tableName, string
movieFileName)
        {
            // Get the list of movies from the JSON file.
            var movies = ImportMovies(movieFileName);

            var success = false;

            if (movies is not null)
            {
                // Insert the movies in a batch using PartiQL. Because the
                // batch can contain a maximum of 25 items, insert 25 movies
                // at a time.
                string insertBatch = $"INSERT INTO {tableName} VALUE {{'title': ?,
'year': ?}}";
                var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>();

                try
                {
                    for (var indexOffset = 0; indexOffset < 250; indexOffset += 25)
                    {
                        for (var i = indexOffset; i < indexOffset + 25; i++)
                        {
                            statements.Add(new BatchStatementRequest
                            {
                                Statement = insertBatch,
                                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                                {
                                    new AttributeValue { S = movies[i].Title },
                                    new AttributeValue { N =
movies[i].Year.ToString() },
                                },
                            });
                        }

                        var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
BatchExecuteStatementRequest
                        {
                            Statements = statements,
                        });

                        // Wait between batches for movies to be successfully added.
                        System.Threading.Thread.Sleep(3000);
```

```
                        success = response.HttpStatusCode ==
System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;

                        // Clear the list of statements for the next batch.
                        statements.Clear();
                    }
                }
                catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                }
            }

            return success;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Loads the contents of a JSON file into a list of movies to be
        /// added to the DynamoDB table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="movieFileName">The full path to the JSON file.</param>
        /// <returns>A generic list of movie objects.</returns>
        public static List<Movie> ImportMovies(string movieFileName)
        {
            if (!File.Exists(movieFileName))
            {
                return null!;
            }

            using var sr = new StreamReader(movieFileName);
            string json = sr.ReadToEnd();
            var allMovies = JsonConvert.DeserializeObject<List<Movie>>(json);

            if (allMovies is not null)
            {
                // Return the first 250 entries.
                return allMovies.GetRange(0, 250);
            }
            else
            {
                return null!;
            }
        }
```

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Uses a PartiQL SELECT statement to retrieve a single movie from the
        /// movie database.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the movie table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to retrieve.</param>
        /// <returns>A list of movie data. If no movie matches the supplied
        /// title, the list is empty.</returns>
        public static async Task<List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>>>
GetSingleMovie(string tableName, string movieTitle)
        {
            string selectSingle = $"SELECT * FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ?";
            var parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
            {
                new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
            };

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = selectSingle,
                Parameters = parameters,
            });

            return response.Items;
        }



        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve multiple movies by year using a SELECT statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the movie table.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year the movies were released.</param>
        /// <returns></returns>
        public static async Task<List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>>>
GetMovies(string tableName, int year)
        {
            string selectSingle = $"SELECT * FROM {tableName} WHERE year = ?";
            var parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
            {
                new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
```

```
            };

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = selectSingle,
                Parameters = parameters,
            });

            return response.Items;
        }


        /// <summary>
        /// Inserts a single movie into the movies table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to insert.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year that the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
        /// the INSERT operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> InsertSingleMovie(string tableName, string
movieTitle, int year)
        {
            string insertBatch = $"INSERT INTO {tableName} VALUE {{'title': ?,
'year': ?}}";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = insertBatch,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }



        /// <summary>
```

```
        /// Updates a single movie in the table, adding information for the
        /// producer.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">the name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="producer">The name of the producer.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The movie title.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the
        /// UPDATE operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UpdateSingleMovie(string tableName, string
 producer, string movieTitle, int year)
        {
            string insertSingle = $"UPDATE {tableName} SET Producer=? WHERE title
 = ? AND year = ?";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
 ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = insertSingle,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = producer },
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }



        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes a single movie from the table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to delete.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year that the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the
        /// DELETE operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteSingleMovie(string tableName, string
 movieTitle, int year)
        {
```

```
            var deleteSingle = $"DELETE FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ? AND year
 = ?";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
 ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = deleteSingle,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }


        /// <summary>
        /// Displays the list of movies returned from a database query.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="items">The list of movie information to display.</param>
        private static void DisplayMovies(List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>>
 items)
        {
            if (items.Count > 0)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Found {items.Count} movies.");
                items.ForEach(item =>
 Console.WriteLine($"{item["year"].N}\t{item["title"].S}"));
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Didn't find a movie that matched the supplied
 criteria.");
            }
        }


    }
}
```

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Uses a PartiQL SELECT statement to retrieve a single movie from the
        /// movie database.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the movie table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to retrieve.</param>
        /// <returns>A list of movie data. If no movie matches the supplied
        /// title, the list is empty.</returns>
        public static async Task<List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>>>
GetSingleMovie(string tableName, string movieTitle)
        {
            string selectSingle = $"SELECT * FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ?";
            var parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
            {
                new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
            };

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = selectSingle,
                Parameters = parameters,
            });

            return response.Items;
        }



        /// <summary>
        /// Inserts a single movie into the movies table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to insert.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year that the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
        /// the INSERT operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> InsertSingleMovie(string tableName, string
movieTitle, int year)
        {
            string insertBatch = $"INSERT INTO {tableName} VALUE {{'title': ?,
'year': ?}}";
```

```
            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = insertBatch,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }



        /// <summary>
        /// Updates a single movie in the table, adding information for the
        /// producer.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">the name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="producer">The name of the producer.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The movie title.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the
        /// UPDATE operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UpdateSingleMovie(string tableName, string
producer, string movieTitle, int year)
        {
            string insertSingle = $"UPDATE {tableName} SET Producer=? WHERE title
= ? AND year = ?";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = insertSingle,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = producer },
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });
```

```
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }



        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes a single movie from the table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to delete.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year that the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the
        /// DELETE operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteSingleMovie(string tableName, string
movieTitle, int year)
        {
            var deleteSingle = $"DELETE FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ? AND year
= ?";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = deleteSingle,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Use a document model

The following code example shows how to perform Create, Read, Update, and Delete (CRUD) and batch operations using a document model for DynamoDB and an AWS SDK.

For more information, see Document model.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Perform CRUD operations using a document model.

```
/// <summary>
/// Performs CRUD operations on an Amazon DynamoDB table.
/// </summary>
public class MidlevelItemCRUD
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var tableName = "ProductCatalog";
        var sampleBookId = 555;

        var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
        var productCatalog = LoadTable(client, tableName);

        await CreateBookItem(productCatalog, sampleBookId);
        RetrieveBook(productCatalog, sampleBookId);

        // Couple of sample updates.
        UpdateMultipleAttributes(productCatalog, sampleBookId);
        UpdateBookPriceConditionally(productCatalog, sampleBookId);

        // Delete.
        await DeleteBook(productCatalog, sampleBookId);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Loads the contents of a DynamoDB table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="client">An initialized DynamoDB client object.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to load.</param>
    /// <returns>A DynamoDB table object.</returns>
    public static Table LoadTable(IAmazonDynamoDB client, string tableName)
    {
```

```
            Table productCatalog = Table.LoadTable(client, tableName);
            return productCatalog;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates an example book item and adds it to the DynamoDB table
        /// ProductCatalog.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="productCatalog">A DynamoDB table object.</param>
        /// <param name="sampleBookId">An integer value representing the book's
ID.</param>
        public static async Task CreateBookItem(Table productCatalog, int
sampleBookId)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\n*** Executing CreateBookItem() ***");
            var book = new Document
            {
                ["Id"] = sampleBookId,
                ["Title"] = "Book " + sampleBookId,
                ["Price"] = 19.99,
                ["ISBN"] = "111-1111111111",
                ["Authors"] = new List<string> { "Author 1", "Author 2", "Author
3" },
                ["PageCount"] = 500,
                ["Dimensions"] = "8.5x11x.5",
                ["InPublication"] = new DynamoDBBool(true),
                ["InStock"] = new DynamoDBBool(false),
                ["QuantityOnHand"] = 0,
            };

            // Adds the book to the ProductCatalog table.
            await productCatalog.PutItemAsync(book);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves an item, a book, from the DynamoDB ProductCatalog table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="productCatalog">A DynamoDB table object.</param>
        /// <param name="sampleBookId">An integer value representing the book's
ID.</param>
        public static async void RetrieveBook(
          Table productCatalog,
          int sampleBookId)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("\n*** Executing RetrieveBook() ***");

            // Optional configuration.
            var config = new GetItemOperationConfig
            {
                AttributesToGet = new List<string> { "Id", "ISBN", "Title",
"Authors", "Price" },
                ConsistentRead = true,
            };

            Document document = await productCatalog.GetItemAsync(sampleBookId,
config);
            Console.WriteLine("RetrieveBook: Printing book retrieved...");
            PrintDocument(document);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Updates multiple attributes for a book and writes the changes to the
        /// DynamoDB table ProductCatalog.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="productCatalog">A DynamoDB table object.</param>
        /// <param name="sampleBookId">An integer value representing the book's
ID.</param>
        public static async void UpdateMultipleAttributes(
          Table productCatalog,
          int sampleBookId)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\nUpdating multiple attributes....");
            int partitionKey = sampleBookId;

            var book = new Document
            {
                ["Id"] = partitionKey,

                // List of attribute updates.
                // The following replaces the existing authors list.
                ["Authors"] = new List<string> { "Author x", "Author y" },
                ["newAttribute"] = "New Value",
                ["ISBN"] = null, // Remove it.
            };

            // Optional parameters.
            var config = new UpdateItemOperationConfig
            {
```

```
                // Gets updated item in response.
                ReturnValues = ReturnValues.AllNewAttributes,
            };

            Document updatedBook = await productCatalog.UpdateItemAsync(book,
config);
            Console.WriteLine("UpdateMultipleAttributes: Printing item after
updates ...");
            PrintDocument(updatedBook);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Updates a book item if it meets the specified criteria.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="productCatalog">A DynamoDB table object.</param>
        /// <param name="sampleBookId">An integer value representing the book's
ID.</param>
        public static async void UpdateBookPriceConditionally(
          Table productCatalog,
          int sampleBookId)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\n*** Executing UpdateBookPriceConditionally() ***");

            int partitionKey = sampleBookId;

            var book = new Document
            {
                ["Id"] = partitionKey,
                ["Price"] = 29.99,
            };

            // For conditional price update, creating a condition expression.
            var expr = new Expression
            {
                ExpressionStatement = "Price = :val",
            };
            expr.ExpressionAttributeValues[":val"] = 19.00;

            // Optional parameters.
            var config = new UpdateItemOperationConfig
            {
                ConditionalExpression = expr,
                ReturnValues = ReturnValues.AllNewAttributes,
            };
```

```
            Document updatedBook = await productCatalog.UpdateItemAsync(book,
config);
            Console.WriteLine("UpdateBookPriceConditionally: Printing item whose
price was conditionally updated");
            PrintDocument(updatedBook);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes the book with the supplied Id value from the DynamoDB table
        /// ProductCatalog.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="productCatalog">A DynamoDB table object.</param>
        /// <param name="sampleBookId">An integer value representing the book's
ID.</param>
        public static async Task DeleteBook(
          Table productCatalog,
          int sampleBookId)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\n*** Executing DeleteBook() ***");

            // Optional configuration.
            var config = new DeleteItemOperationConfig
            {
                // Returns the deleted item.
                ReturnValues = ReturnValues.AllOldAttributes,
            };
            Document document = await productCatalog.DeleteItemAsync(sampleBookId,
config);
            Console.WriteLine("DeleteBook: Printing deleted just deleted...");

            PrintDocument(document);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Prints the information for the supplied DynamoDB document.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="updatedDocument">A DynamoDB document object.</param>
        public static void PrintDocument(Document updatedDocument)
        {
            if (updatedDocument is null)
            {
                return;
            }
```

```
            foreach (var attribute in updatedDocument.GetAttributeNames())
            {
                string stringValue = null;
                var value = updatedDocument[attribute];

                if (value is null)
                {
                    continue;
                }

                if (value is Primitive)
                {
                    stringValue = value.AsPrimitive().Value.ToString();
                }
                else if (value is PrimitiveList)
                {
                    stringValue = string.Join(",", (from primitive
                      in value.AsPrimitiveList().Entries
                                                  select
primitive.Value).ToArray());
                }

                Console.WriteLine($"{attribute} - {stringValue}", attribute,
stringValue);
            }
        }
    }
```

Perform batch write operations using a document model.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to use mid-level Amazon DynamoDB API calls to perform batch
    /// operations.
    /// </summary>
    public class MidLevelBatchWriteItem
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonDynamoDB client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
```

```
            await SingleTableBatchWrite(client);
            await MultiTableBatchWrite(client);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Perform a batch operation on a single DynamoDB table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized DynamoDB object.</param>
        public static async Task SingleTableBatchWrite(IAmazonDynamoDB client)
        {
            Table productCatalog = Table.LoadTable(client, "ProductCatalog");
            var batchWrite = productCatalog.CreateBatchWrite();

            var book1 = new Document
            {
                ["Id"] = 902,
                ["Title"] = "My book1 in batch write using .NET helper classes",
                ["ISBN"] = "902-11-11-1111",
                ["Price"] = 10,
                ["ProductCategory"] = "Book",
                ["Authors"] = new List<string> { "Author 1", "Author 2", "Author
3" },
                ["Dimensions"] = "8.5x11x.5",
                ["InStock"] = new DynamoDBBool(true),
                ["QuantityOnHand"] = new DynamoDBNull(), // Quantity is unknown at
this time.
            };

            batchWrite.AddDocumentToPut(book1);

            // Specify delete item using overload that takes PK.
            batchWrite.AddKeyToDelete(12345);
            Console.WriteLine("Performing batch write in SingleTableBatchWrite()");
            await batchWrite.ExecuteAsync();
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Perform a batch operation involving multiple DynamoDB tables.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized DynamoDB client object.</param>
        public static async Task MultiTableBatchWrite(IAmazonDynamoDB client)
        {
            // Specify item to add in the Forum table.
```

```
            Table forum = Table.LoadTable(client, "Forum");
            var forumBatchWrite = forum.CreateBatchWrite();

            var forum1 = new Document
            {
                ["Name"] = "Test BatchWrite Forum",
                ["Threads"] = 0,
            };
            forumBatchWrite.AddDocumentToPut(forum1);

            // Specify item to add in the Thread table.
            Table thread = Table.LoadTable(client, "Thread");
            var threadBatchWrite = thread.CreateBatchWrite();

            var thread1 = new Document
            {
                ["ForumName"] = "S3 forum",
                ["Subject"] = "My sample question",
                ["Message"] = "Message text",
                ["KeywordTags"] = new List<string> { "S3", "Bucket" },
            };
            threadBatchWrite.AddDocumentToPut(thread1);

            // Specify item to delete from the Thread table.
            threadBatchWrite.AddKeyToDelete("someForumName", "someSubject");

            // Create multi-table batch.
            var superBatch = new MultiTableDocumentBatchWrite();
            superBatch.AddBatch(forumBatchWrite);
            superBatch.AddBatch(threadBatchWrite);
            Console.WriteLine("Performing batch write in MultiTableBatchWrite()");

            // Execute the batch.
            await superBatch.ExecuteAsync();
        }
    }
```

Scan a table using a document model.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Shows how to use mid-level Amazon DynamoDB API calls to scan a DynamoDB
    /// table for values.
    /// </summary>
    public class MidLevelScanOnly
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonDynamoDB client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();

            Table productCatalogTable = Table.LoadTable(client, "ProductCatalog");

            await FindProductsWithNegativePrice(productCatalogTable);
            await FindProductsWithNegativePriceWithConfig(productCatalogTable);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves any products that have a negative price in a DynamoDB table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="productCatalogTable">A DynamoDB table object.</param>
        public static async Task FindProductsWithNegativePrice(
          Table productCatalogTable)
        {
            // Assume there is a price error. So we scan to find items priced < 0.
            var scanFilter = new ScanFilter();
            scanFilter.AddCondition("Price", ScanOperator.LessThan, 0);

            Search search = productCatalogTable.Scan(scanFilter);

            do
            {
                var documentList = await search.GetNextSetAsync();
                Console.WriteLine("\nFindProductsWithNegativePrice:
printing ............");

                foreach (var document in documentList)
                {
                    PrintDocument(document);
                }
            }
            while (!search.IsDone);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Finds any items in the ProductCatalog table using a DynamoDB
```

```
        /// configuration object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="productCatalogTable">A DynamoDB table object.</param>
        public static async Task FindProductsWithNegativePriceWithConfig(
          Table productCatalogTable)
        {
            // Assume there is a price error. So we scan to find items priced < 0.
            var scanFilter = new ScanFilter();
            scanFilter.AddCondition("Price", ScanOperator.LessThan, 0);

            var config = new ScanOperationConfig()
            {
                Filter = scanFilter,
                Select = SelectValues.SpecificAttributes,
                AttributesToGet = new List<string> { "Title", "Id" },
            };

            Search search = productCatalogTable.Scan(config);

            do
            {
                var documentList = await search.GetNextSetAsync();
                Console.WriteLine("\nFindProductsWithNegativePriceWithConfig:
printing ............");

                foreach (var document in documentList)
                {
                    PrintDocument(document);
                }
            }
            while (!search.IsDone);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays the details of the passed DynamoDB document object on the
        /// console.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="document">A DynamoDB document object.</param>
        public static void PrintDocument(Document document)
        {
            Console.WriteLine();
            foreach (var attribute in document.GetAttributeNames())
            {
                string stringValue = null;
```

```
                var value = document[attribute];
                if (value is Primitive)
                {
                    stringValue = value.AsPrimitive().Value.ToString();
                }
                else if (value is PrimitiveList)
                {
                    stringValue = string.Join(",", (from primitive
                      in value.AsPrimitiveList().Entries
                                                  select
primitive.Value).ToArray());
                }

                Console.WriteLine($"{attribute} - {stringValue}");
            }
        }
    }
```

Query and scan a table using a document model.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to perform mid-level query procedures on an Amazon DynamoDB
    /// table.
    /// </summary>
    public class MidLevelQueryAndScan
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonDynamoDB client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();

            // Query examples.
            Table replyTable = Table.LoadTable(client, "Reply");
            string forumName = "Amazon DynamoDB";
            string threadSubject = "DynamoDB Thread 2";

            await FindRepliesInLast15Days(replyTable);
            await FindRepliesInLast15DaysWithConfig(replyTable, forumName,
threadSubject);
            await FindRepliesPostedWithinTimePeriod(replyTable, forumName,
threadSubject);
```

```
            // Get Example.
            Table productCatalogTable = Table.LoadTable(client, "ProductCatalog");
            int productId = 101;

            await GetProduct(productCatalogTable, productId);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves information about a product from the DynamoDB table
        /// ProductCatalog based on the product ID and displays the information
        /// on the console.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table from which to retrieve
        /// product information.</param>
        /// <param name="productId">The ID of the product to retrieve.</param>
        public static async Task GetProduct(Table tableName, int productId)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("*** Executing GetProduct() ***");
            Document productDocument = await tableName.GetItemAsync(productId);
            if (productDocument != null)
            {
                PrintDocument(productDocument);
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Error: product " + productId + " does not
exist");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves replies from the passed DynamoDB table object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="table">The table we want to query.</param>
        public static async Task FindRepliesInLast15Days(
          Table table)
        {
            DateTime twoWeeksAgoDate = DateTime.UtcNow - TimeSpan.FromDays(15);
            var filter = new QueryFilter("Id", QueryOperator.Equal, "Id");
            filter.AddCondition("ReplyDateTime", QueryOperator.GreaterThan,
twoWeeksAgoDate);

            // Use Query overloads that take the minimum required query parameters.
```

```
            Search search = table.Query(filter);

            do
            {
                var documentSet = await search.GetNextSetAsync();
                Console.WriteLine("\nFindRepliesInLast15Days:
printing ............");

                foreach (var document in documentSet)
                {
                    PrintDocument(document);
                }
            }
            while (!search.IsDone);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve replies made during a specific time period.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="table">The table we want to query.</param>
        /// <param name="forumName">The name of the forum that we're interested
in.</param>
        /// <param name="threadSubject">The subject of the thread, which we are
        /// searching for replies.</param>
        public static async Task FindRepliesPostedWithinTimePeriod(
          Table table,
          string forumName,
          string threadSubject)
        {
            DateTime startDate = DateTime.UtcNow.Subtract(new TimeSpan(21, 0, 0,
0));
            DateTime endDate = DateTime.UtcNow.Subtract(new TimeSpan(1, 0, 0, 0));

            var filter = new QueryFilter("Id", QueryOperator.Equal, forumName + "#"
+ threadSubject);
            filter.AddCondition("ReplyDateTime", QueryOperator.Between, startDate,
endDate);

            var config = new QueryOperationConfig()
            {
                Limit = 2, // 2 items/page.
                Select = SelectValues.SpecificAttributes,
                AttributesToGet = new List<string>
        {
```

```
          "Message",
          "ReplyDateTime",
          "PostedBy",
        },
                ConsistentRead = true,
                Filter = filter,
            };

            Search search = table.Query(config);

            do
            {
                var documentList = await search.GetNextSetAsync();
                Console.WriteLine("\nFindRepliesPostedWithinTimePeriod: printing
replies posted within dates: {0} and {1} ............", startDate, endDate);

                foreach (var document in documentList)
                {
                    PrintDocument(document);
                }
            }
            while (!search.IsDone);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Perform a query for replies made in the last 15 days using a DynamoDB
        /// QueryOperationConfig object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="table">The table we want to query.</param>
        /// <param name="forumName">The name of the forum that we're interested
in.</param>
        /// <param name="threadName">The bane of the thread that we are searching
        /// for replies.</param>
        public static async Task FindRepliesInLast15DaysWithConfig(
          Table table,
          string forumName,
          string threadName)
        {
            DateTime twoWeeksAgoDate = DateTime.UtcNow - TimeSpan.FromDays(15);
            var filter = new QueryFilter("Id", QueryOperator.Equal, forumName + "#"
+ threadName);
            filter.AddCondition("ReplyDateTime", QueryOperator.GreaterThan,
twoWeeksAgoDate);
```

```
            var config = new QueryOperationConfig()
            {
                Filter = filter,

                // Optional parameters.
                Select = SelectValues.SpecificAttributes,
                AttributesToGet = new List<string>
                {
                  "Message",
                  "ReplyDateTime",
                  "PostedBy",
                },
                ConsistentRead = true,
            };

            Search search = table.Query(config);

            do
            {
                var documentSet = await search.GetNextSetAsync();
                Console.WriteLine("\nFindRepliesInLast15DaysWithConfig:
printing ............");

                foreach (var document in documentSet)
                {
                    PrintDocument(document);
                }
            }
            while (!search.IsDone);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays the contents of the passed DynamoDB document on the console.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="document">A DynamoDB document to display.</param>
        public static void PrintDocument(Document document)
        {
            Console.WriteLine();
            foreach (var attribute in document.GetAttributeNames())
            {
                string stringValue = null;
                var value = document[attribute];

                if (value is Primitive)
```

```
                {
                    stringValue = value.AsPrimitive().Value.ToString();
                }
                else if (value is PrimitiveList)
                {
                    stringValue = string.Join(",", (from primitive
                      in value.AsPrimitiveList().Entries
                                                        select
primitive.Value).ToArray());
                }

                Console.WriteLine($"{attribute} - {stringValue}");
            }
        }
    }
```

Use a high-level object persistence model

The following code example shows how to perform Create, Read, Update, and Delete (CRUD) and batch operations using an object persistence model for DynamoDB and an AWS SDK.

For more information, see Object persistence model.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Perform CRUD operations using a high-level object persistence model.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to perform high-level CRUD operations on an Amazon DynamoDB
    /// table.
    /// </summary>
    public class HighLevelItemCrud
    {
```

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
            DynamoDBContext context = new DynamoDBContext(client);
            await PerformCRUDOperations(context);
        }

        public static async Task PerformCRUDOperations(IDynamoDBContext context)
        {
            int bookId = 1001; // Some unique value.
            Book myBook = new Book
            {
                Id = bookId,
                Title = "object persistence-AWS SDK for.NET SDK-Book 1001",
                Isbn = "111-1111111001",
                BookAuthors = new List<string> { "Author 1", "Author 2" },
            };

            // Save the book to the ProductCatalog table.
            await context.SaveAsync(myBook);

            // Retrieve the book from the ProductCatalog table.
            Book bookRetrieved = await context.LoadAsync<Book>(bookId);

            // Update some properties.
            bookRetrieved.Isbn = "222-2222221001";

            // Update existing authors list with the following values.
            bookRetrieved.BookAuthors = new List<string> { " Author 1", "Author
x" };
            await context.SaveAsync(bookRetrieved);

            // Retrieve the updated book. This time, add the optional
            // ConsistentRead parameter using DynamoDBContextConfig object.
            await context.LoadAsync<Book>(bookId, new DynamoDBContextConfig
            {
                ConsistentRead = true,
            });

            // Delete the book.
            await context.DeleteAsync<Book>(bookId);

            // Try to retrieve deleted book. It should return null.
```

```
            Book deletedBook = await context.LoadAsync<Book>(bookId, new
DynamoDBContextConfig
            {
                ConsistentRead = true,
            });

            if (deletedBook == null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Book is deleted");
            }
        }
    }
```

Perform batch write operations using a high-level object persistence model.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Performs high-level batch write operations to an Amazon DynamoDB table.
    /// This example was written using the AWS SDK for .NET version 3.7 and .NET
    /// Core 5.0.
    /// </summary>
    public class HighLevelBatchWriteItem
    {
        public static async Task SingleTableBatchWrite(IDynamoDBContext context)
        {
            Book book1 = new Book
            {
                Id = 902,
                InPublication = true,
                Isbn = "902-11-11-1111",
                PageCount = "100",
                Price = 10,
                ProductCategory = "Book",
                Title = "My book3 in batch write",
            };

            Book book2 = new Book
            {
                Id = 903,
                InPublication = true,
                Isbn = "903-11-11-1111",
```

```
                PageCount = "200",
                Price = 10,
                ProductCategory = "Book",
                Title = "My book4 in batch write",
            };

            var bookBatch = context.CreateBatchWrite<Book>();
            bookBatch.AddPutItems(new List<Book> { book1, book2 });

            Console.WriteLine("Adding two books to ProductCatalog table.");
            await bookBatch.ExecuteAsync();
        }

        public static async Task MultiTableBatchWrite(IDynamoDBContext context)
        {
            // New Forum item.
            Forum newForum = new Forum
            {
                Name = "Test BatchWrite Forum",
                Threads = 0,
            };
            var forumBatch = context.CreateBatchWrite<Forum>();
            forumBatch.AddPutItem(newForum);

            // New Thread item.
            Thread newThread = new Thread
            {
                ForumName = "S3 forum",
                Subject = "My sample question",
                KeywordTags = new List<string> { "S3", "Bucket" },
                Message = "Message text",
            };

            DynamoDBOperationConfig config = new DynamoDBOperationConfig();
            config.SkipVersionCheck = true;
            var threadBatch = context.CreateBatchWrite<Thread>(config);
            threadBatch.AddPutItem(newThread);
            threadBatch.AddDeleteKey("some partition key value", "some sort key
value");

            var superBatch = new MultiTableBatchWrite(forumBatch, threadBatch);

            Console.WriteLine("Performing batch write in MultiTableBatchWrite().");
            await superBatch.ExecuteAsync();
```

```
        }

        public static async Task Main()
        {
            AmazonDynamoDBClient client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
            DynamoDBContext context = new DynamoDBContext(client);

            await SingleTableBatchWrite(context);
            await MultiTableBatchWrite(context);
        }
    }
```

Map arbitrary data to a table using a high-level object persistence model.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to map arbitrary data to an Amazon DynamoDB table.
    /// </summary>
    public class HighLevelMappingArbitraryData
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// Creates a book, adds it to the DynamoDB ProductCatalog table, retrieves
        /// the new book from the table, updates the dimensions and writes the
        /// changed item back to the table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="context">The DynamoDB context object used to write and
        /// read data from the table.</param>
        public static async Task AddRetrieveUpdateBook(IDynamoDBContext context)
        {
            // Create a book.
            DimensionType myBookDimensions = new DimensionType()
            {
                Length = 8M,
                Height = 11M,
                Thickness = 0.5M,
            };

            Book myBook = new Book
            {
                Id = 501,
```

```
                Title = "AWS SDK for .NET Object Persistence Model Handling
Arbitrary Data",
                Isbn = "999-9999999999",
                BookAuthors = new List<string> { "Author 1", "Author 2" },
                Dimensions = myBookDimensions,
            };

            // Add the book to the DynamoDB table ProductCatalog.
            await context.SaveAsync(myBook);

            // Retrieve the book.
            Book bookRetrieved = await context.LoadAsync<Book>(501);

            // Update the book dimensions property.
            bookRetrieved.Dimensions.Height += 1;
            bookRetrieved.Dimensions.Length += 1;
            bookRetrieved.Dimensions.Thickness += 0.2M;

            // Write the changed item to the table.
            await context.SaveAsync(bookRetrieved);
        }

        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
            DynamoDBContext context = new DynamoDBContext(client);
            await AddRetrieveUpdateBook(context);
        }
    }
```

Query and scan a table using a high-level object persistence model.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to perform high-level query and scan operations to Amazon
    /// DynamoDB tables.
    /// </summary>
    public class HighLevelQueryAndScan
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
```

```
            var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();

            DynamoDBContext context = new DynamoDBContext(client);

            // Get an item.
            await GetBook(context, 101);

            // Sample forum and thread to test queries.
            string forumName = "Amazon DynamoDB";
            string threadSubject = "DynamoDB Thread 1";

            // Sample queries.
            await FindRepliesInLast15Days(context, forumName, threadSubject);
            await FindRepliesPostedWithinTimePeriod(context, forumName,
 threadSubject);

            // Scan table.
            await FindProductsPricedLessThanZero(context);
        }

        public static async Task GetBook(IDynamoDBContext context, int productId)
        {
            Book bookItem = await context.LoadAsync<Book>(productId);

            Console.WriteLine("\nGetBook: Printing result.....");
            Console.WriteLine($"Title: {bookItem.Title} \n ISBN:{bookItem.Isbn} \n
 No. of pages: {bookItem.PageCount}");
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Queries a DynamoDB table to find replies posted within the last 15 days.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="context">The DynamoDB context used to perform the query.</
param>
        /// <param name="forumName">The name of the forum that we're interested
 in.</param>
        /// <param name="threadSubject">The thread object containing the query
 parameters.</param>
        public static async Task FindRepliesInLast15Days(
          IDynamoDBContext context,
          string forumName,
          string threadSubject)
        {
            string replyId = $"{forumName} #{threadSubject}";
```

```
            DateTime twoWeeksAgoDate = DateTime.UtcNow - TimeSpan.FromDays(15);

            List<object> times = new List<object>();
            times.Add(twoWeeksAgoDate);

            List<ScanCondition> scs = new List<ScanCondition>();
            var sc = new ScanCondition("PostedBy", ScanOperator.GreaterThan,
 times.ToArray());
            scs.Add(sc);

            var cfg = new DynamoDBOperationConfig
            {
                QueryFilter = scs,
            };

            AsyncSearch<Reply> response = context.QueryAsync<Reply>(replyId, cfg);
            IEnumerable<Reply> latestReplies = await response.GetRemainingAsync();

            Console.WriteLine("\nReplies in last 15 days:");

            foreach (Reply r in latestReplies)
            {

 Console.WriteLine($"{r.Id}\t{r.PostedBy}\t{r.Message}\t{r.ReplyDateTime}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Queries for replies posted within a specific time period.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="context">The DynamoDB context used to perform the query.</
param>
        /// <param name="forumName">The name of the forum that we're interested
 in.</param>
        /// <param name="threadSubject">Information about the subject that we're
        /// interested in.</param>
        public static async Task FindRepliesPostedWithinTimePeriod(
          IDynamoDBContext context,
          string forumName,
          string threadSubject)
        {
            string forumId = forumName + "#" + threadSubject;
            Console.WriteLine("\nReplies posted within time period:");
```

```
            DateTime startDate = DateTime.UtcNow - TimeSpan.FromDays(30);
            DateTime endDate = DateTime.UtcNow - TimeSpan.FromDays(1);

            List<object> times = new List<object>();
            times.Add(startDate);
            times.Add(endDate);

            List<ScanCondition> scs = new List<ScanCondition>();
            var sc = new ScanCondition("LastPostedBy", ScanOperator.Between,
times.ToArray());
            scs.Add(sc);

            var cfg = new DynamoDBOperationConfig
            {
                QueryFilter = scs,
            };

            AsyncSearch<Reply> response = context.QueryAsync<Reply>(forumId, cfg);
            IEnumerable<Reply> repliesInAPeriod = await
response.GetRemainingAsync();

            foreach (Reply r in repliesInAPeriod)
            {

Console.WriteLine("{r.Id}\t{r.PostedBy}\t{r.Message}\t{r.ReplyDateTime}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Queries the DynamoDB ProductCatalog table for products costing less
        /// than zero.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="context">The DynamoDB context object used to perform the
        /// query.</param>
        public static async Task FindProductsPricedLessThanZero(IDynamoDBContext
context)
        {
            int price = 0;

            List<ScanCondition> scs = new List<ScanCondition>();
            var sc1 = new ScanCondition("Price", ScanOperator.LessThan, price);
            var sc2 = new ScanCondition("ProductCategory", ScanOperator.Equal,
"Book");
            scs.Add(sc1);
```

```
            scs.Add(sc2);

            AsyncSearch<Book> response = context.ScanAsync<Book>(scs);

            IEnumerable<Book> itemsWithWrongPrice = await
 response.GetRemainingAsync();

            Console.WriteLine("\nFindProductsPricedLessThanZero: Printing
 result.....");

            foreach (Book r in itemsWithWrongPrice)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{r.Id}\t{r.Title}\t{r.Price}\t{r.Isbn}");
            }
        }
    }
```

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DynamoDB stream. The function retrieves the DynamoDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text;
```

```
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.DynamoDBEvents;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace AWSLambda_DDB;

public class Function
{
    public void FunctionHandler(DynamoDBEvent dynamoEvent, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Beginning to process
 {dynamoEvent.Records.Count} records...");

        foreach (var record in dynamoEvent.Records)
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Event ID: {record.EventID}");
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Event Name: {record.EventName}");

            context.Logger.LogInformation(JsonSerializer.Serialize(record));
        }

        context.Logger.LogInformation("Stream processing complete.");
    }
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a DynamoDB stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.DynamoDBEvents;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace AWSLambda_DDB;

public class Function
{
    public StreamsEventResponse FunctionHandler(DynamoDBEvent dynamoEvent,
 ILambdaContext context)

    {
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Beginning to process
 {dynamoEvent.Records.Count} records...");
        List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure>();
        StreamsEventResponse streamsEventResponse = new StreamsEventResponse();

        foreach (var record in dynamoEvent.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                var sequenceNumber = record.Dynamodb.SequenceNumber;
                context.Logger.LogInformation(sequenceNumber);
            }
```

```
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                context.Logger.LogError(ex.Message);
                batchItemFailures.Add(new StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure()
 { ItemIdentifier = record.Dynamodb.SequenceNumber });
            }
        }

        if (batchItemFailures.Count > 0)
        {
            streamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailures = batchItemFailures;
        }

        context.Logger.LogInformation("Stream processing complete.");
        return streamsEventResponse;
    }
}
```

AWS community contributions

Build and test a serverless application

The following code example shows how to build and test a serverless application using API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB

SDK for .NET

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the .NET SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon EC2.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a key pair and security group.
- Select an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) and compatible instance type, then create an instance.
- Stop and restart the instance.
- Associate an Elastic IP address with your instance.
- Connect to your instance with SSH, then clean up resources.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run a scenario at a command prompt.

```
/// <summary>
/// Show Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Basics actions.
/// </summary>
public class EC2Basics
{
    public static ILogger<EC2Basics> _logger = null!;
    public static EC2Wrapper _ec2Wrapper = null!;
    public static SsmWrapper _ssmWrapper = null!;
    public static UiMethods _uiMethods = null!;

    public static string associationId = null!;
    public static string allocationId = null!;
    public static string instanceId = null!;
    public static string keyPairName = null!;
    public static string groupName = null!;
    public static string tempFileName = null!;
    public static string secGroupId = null!;
    public static bool isInteractive = true;

    /// <summary>
    /// Perform the actions defined for the Amazon EC2 Basics scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="args">Command line arguments.</param>
    /// <returns>A Task object.</returns>
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon EC2 and Amazon Simple Systems
        // Management (Amazon SSM) Service.
        using var host =
 Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting.Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement>()
```

```
                    .AddTransient<EC2Wrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<SsmWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        SetUpServices(host);

        var uniqueName = Guid.NewGuid().ToString();
        keyPairName = "mvp-example-key-pair" + uniqueName;
        groupName = "ec2-scenario-group" + uniqueName;
        var groupDescription = "A security group created for the EC2 Basics
scenario.";

        try
        {
            // Start the scenario.
            _uiMethods.DisplayOverview();
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            // Create the key pair.
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Create RSA key pair");
            Console.Write("Let's create an RSA key pair that you can be use to ");
            Console.WriteLine("securely connect to your EC2 instance.");
            var keyPair = await _ec2Wrapper.CreateKeyPair(keyPairName);

            // Save key pair information to a temporary file.
            tempFileName = _ec2Wrapper.SaveKeyPair(keyPair);

            Console.WriteLine(
                $"Created the key pair: {keyPair.KeyName} and saved it to:
{tempFileName}");
            string? answer = "";
            if (isInteractive)
            {
                do
                {
                    Console.Write("Would you like to list your existing key pairs?
");
                    answer = Console.ReadLine();
                } while (answer!.ToLower() != "y" && answer.ToLower() != "n");
            }

            if (!isInteractive || answer == "y")
            {
```

```
                // List existing key pairs.
                _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Existing key pairs");

                // Passing an empty string to the DescribeKeyPairs method will
return
                // a list of all existing key pairs.
                var keyPairs = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeKeyPairs("");
                keyPairs.ForEach(kp =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"{kp.KeyName} created at: {kp.CreateTime} Fingerprint:
{kp.KeyFingerprint}");
                });
            }

            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            // Create the security group.
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Let's create a security group to manage access to your instance.");
            secGroupId = await _ec2Wrapper.CreateSecurityGroup(groupName,
groupDescription);
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Let's add rules to allow all HTTP and HTTPS inbound traffic and to
allow SSH only from your current IP address.");

            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Security group information");
            var secGroups = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeSecurityGroups(secGroupId);

            Console.WriteLine($"Created security group {groupName} in your default
VPC.");
            secGroups.ForEach(group =>
            {
                _ec2Wrapper.DisplaySecurityGroupInfoAsync(group);
            });
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            Console.WriteLine(
                "Now we'll authorize the security group we just created so that it
can");
            Console.WriteLine("access the EC2 instances you create.");
            await _ec2Wrapper.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress(groupName);

            secGroups = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeSecurityGroups(secGroupId);
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Now let's look at the permissions again.");
            secGroups.ForEach(group =>
            {
                _ec2Wrapper.DisplaySecurityGroupInfoAsync(group);
            });
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            // Get list of available Amazon Linux 2 Amazon Machine Images (AMIs).
            var parameters =
                await _ssmWrapper.GetParametersByPath(
                    "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest");

            List<string> imageIds = parameters.Select(param =>
param.Value).ToList();

            var images = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeImages(imageIds);

            var i = 1;
            images.ForEach(image =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\t{i++}\t{image.Description}");
            });

            int choice = 1;
            bool validNumber = false;
            if (isInteractive)
            {
                do
                {
                    Console.Write("Please select an image: ");
                    var selImage = Console.ReadLine();
                    validNumber = int.TryParse(selImage, out choice);
                } while (!validNumber);
            }

            var selectedImage = images[choice - 1];

            // Display available instance types.
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Instance Types");
            var instanceTypes =
                await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeInstanceTypes(selectedImage.Architecture);

            i = 1;
            instanceTypes.ForEach(instanceType =>
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\t{i++}\t{instanceType.InstanceType}");
            });
            if (isInteractive)
            {
                do
                {
                    Console.Write("Please select an instance type: ");
                    var selImage = Console.ReadLine();
                    validNumber = int.TryParse(selImage, out choice);
                } while (!validNumber);
            }

            var selectedInstanceType = instanceTypes[choice - 1].InstanceType;

            // Create an EC2 instance.
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Creating an EC2 Instance");
            instanceId = await _ec2Wrapper.RunInstances(selectedImage.ImageId,
                selectedInstanceType, keyPairName, secGroupId);

            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            var instance = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeInstance(instanceId);
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("New Instance Information");
            _ec2Wrapper.DisplayInstanceInformation(instance);

            Console.WriteLine(
                "\nYou can use SSH to connect to your instance. For example:");
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\tssh -i {tempFileName} ec2-user@{instance.PublicIpAddress}");

            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            Console.WriteLine(
                "Now we'll stop the instance and then start it again to see what's
changed.");

            await _ec2Wrapper.StopInstances(instanceId);

            Console.WriteLine("Now let's start it up again.");
            await _ec2Wrapper.StartInstances(instanceId);

            Console.WriteLine("\nLet's see what changed.");
```

```
            instance = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeInstance(instanceId);
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("New Instance Information");
            _ec2Wrapper.DisplayInstanceInformation(instance);

            Console.WriteLine("\nNotice the change in the SSH information:");
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\tssh -i {tempFileName} ec2-user@{instance.PublicIpAddress}");

            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            Console.WriteLine(
                "Now we will stop the instance again. Then we will create and
associate an");
            Console.WriteLine("Elastic IP address to use with our instance.");

            await _ec2Wrapper.StopInstances(instanceId);
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Allocate Elastic IP address");
            Console.WriteLine(
                "You can allocate an Elastic IP address and associate it with your
instance\nto keep a consistent IP address even when your instance restarts.");
            var allocationResponse = await _ec2Wrapper.AllocateAddress();
            allocationId = allocationResponse.AllocationId;
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Now we will associate the Elastic IP address with our instance.");
            associationId = await _ec2Wrapper.AssociateAddress(allocationId,
instanceId);

            // Start the instance again.
            Console.WriteLine("Now let's start the instance again.");
            await _ec2Wrapper.StartInstances(instanceId);

            Console.WriteLine("\nLet's see what changed.");

            instance = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeInstance(instanceId);
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Instance information");
            _ec2Wrapper.DisplayInstanceInformation(instance);

            Console.WriteLine("\nHere is the SSH information:");
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\tssh -i {tempFileName} ec2-user@{instance.PublicIpAddress}");

            Console.WriteLine("Let's stop and start the instance again.");
```

```
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            await _ec2Wrapper.StopInstances(instanceId);

            Console.WriteLine("\nThe instance has stopped.");

            Console.WriteLine("Now let's start it up again.");
            await _ec2Wrapper.StartInstances(instanceId);

            instance = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeInstance(instanceId);
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("New Instance Information");
            _ec2Wrapper.DisplayInstanceInformation(instance);
            Console.WriteLine("Note that the IP address did not change this time.");
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            await Cleanup();
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem with the scenario, starting
cleanup.");
            await Cleanup();
        }

        _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("EC2 Basics Scenario completed.");
        _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the services and logging.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host"></param>
    public static void SetUpServices(IHost host)
    {
        var loggerFactory = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
        {
            builder.AddConsole();
        });
        _logger = new Logger<EC2Basics>(loggerFactory);

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        _ec2Wrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<EC2Wrapper>();
        _ssmWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SsmWrapper>();
        _uiMethods = new UiMethods();
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up any resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns></returns>
    public static async Task Cleanup()
    {
        _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Clean up resources");
        Console.WriteLine("Now let's clean up the resources we created.");

        Console.WriteLine("Disassociate the Elastic IP address and release it.");
        // Disassociate the Elastic IP address.
        await _ec2Wrapper.DisassociateIp(associationId);

        // Delete the Elastic IP address.
        await _ec2Wrapper.ReleaseAddress(allocationId);

        // Terminate the instance.
        Console.WriteLine("Terminating the instance we created.");
        await _ec2Wrapper.TerminateInstances(instanceId);

        // Delete the security group.
        Console.WriteLine($"Deleting the Security Group: {groupName}.");
        await _ec2Wrapper.DeleteSecurityGroup(secGroupId);

        // Delete the RSA key pair.
        Console.WriteLine($"Deleting the key pair: {keyPairName}");
        await _ec2Wrapper.DeleteKeyPair(keyPairName);
        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the temporary file with the key information.");
        _ec2Wrapper.DeleteTempFile(tempFileName);
        _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);
    }
}
```

Define a class that wraps EC2 actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Methods of this class perform Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2).
/// </summary>
public class EC2Wrapper
{
```

```
    private readonly IAmazonEC2 _amazonEC2;
    private readonly ILogger<EC2Wrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the EC2Wrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonScheduler">The injected EC2 client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The injected logger.</param>
    public EC2Wrapper(IAmazonEC2 amazonService, ILogger<EC2Wrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonEC2 = amazonService;
        _logger = logger;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Allocates an Elastic IP address that can be associated with an Amazon EC2
    // instance. By using an Elastic IP address, you can keep the public IP address
    // constant even when you restart the associated instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The response object for the allocated address.</returns>
    public async Task<AllocateAddressResponse> AllocateAddress()
    {
        var request = new AllocateAddressRequest();

        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonEC2.AllocateAddressAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"Allocated IP: {response.PublicIp} with allocation ID
 {response.AllocationId}.");
            return response;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "AddressLimitExceeded")
            {
                // For more information on Elastic IP address quotas, see:
                // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/elastic-ip-
addresses-eip.html#using-instance-addressing-limit
                _logger.LogError($"Unable to allocate Elastic IP, address limit
 exceeded. {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
```

```
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while allocating Elastic IP.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Associates an Elastic IP address with an instance. When this association is
    /// created, the Elastic IP's public IP address is immediately used as the
 public
    /// IP address of the associated instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="allocationId">The allocation Id of an Elastic IP address.</
param>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id of the EC2 instance to
    /// associate the address with.</param>
    /// <returns>The association Id that represents
    /// the association of the Elastic IP address with an instance.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AssociateAddress(string allocationId, string
 instanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new AssociateAddressRequest
            {
                AllocationId = allocationId,
                InstanceId = instanceId
            };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.AssociateAddressAsync(request);
            return response.AssociationId;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to associate address.
 {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
```

```
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while associating the Elastic IP.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Authorize the local computer ingress to EC2 instances associated
    /// with the virtual private cloud (VPC) security group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the security group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress(string groupName)
    {
        try
        {
            // Get the IP address for the local computer.
            var ipAddress = await GetIpAddress();
            Console.WriteLine($"Your IP address is: {ipAddress}");
            var ipRanges =
                new List<IpRange> { new IpRange { CidrIp = $"{ipAddress}/32" } };
            var permission = new IpPermission
            {
                Ipv4Ranges = ipRanges,
                IpProtocol = "tcp",
                FromPort = 22,
                ToPort = 22
            };
            var permissions = new List<IpPermission> { permission };
            var response = await _amazonEC2.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressAsync(
                new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest(groupName, permissions));
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidPermission.Duplicate")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"The ingress rule already exists. {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }
```

```
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while authorizing ingress.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Authorize the local computer for ingress to
    /// the Amazon EC2 SecurityGroup.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The IPv4 address of the computer running the scenario.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> GetIpAddress()
    {
        var httpClient = new HttpClient();
        var ipString = await httpClient.GetStringAsync("https://
checkip.amazonaws.com");

        // The IP address is returned with a new line
        // character on the end. Trim off the whitespace and
        // return the value to the caller.
        return ipString.Trim();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon EC2 key pair with a specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPairName">The name for the new key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon EC2 key pair created.</returns>
    public async Task<KeyPair?> CreateKeyPair(string keyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new CreateKeyPairRequest { KeyName = keyPairName, };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.CreateKeyPairAsync(request);

            var kp = response.KeyPair;
            // Return the key pair so it can be saved if needed.
```

```
            // Wait until the key pair exists.
            int retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Checking for new KeyPair {keyPairName}...");
                var keyPairs = await DescribeKeyPairs(keyPairName);
                if (keyPairs.Any())
                {
                    return kp;
                }

                Thread.Sleep(5000);
                retries--;
            }
            _logger.LogError($"Unable to find newly created KeyPair
{keyPairName}.");
            throw new DoesNotExistException("KeyPair not found");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A key pair called {keyPairName} already exists.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while creating the key pair.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Save KeyPair information to a temporary file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPair">The name of the key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>The full path to the temporary file.</returns>
    public string SaveKeyPair(KeyPair keyPair)
    {
        var tempPath = Path.GetTempPath();
```

```
        var tempFileName = $"{tempPath}\\{Path.GetRandomFileName()}";
        var pemFileName = Path.ChangeExtension(tempFileName, "pem");

        // Save the key pair to a file in a temporary folder.
        using var stream = new FileStream(pemFileName, FileMode.Create);
        using var writer = new StreamWriter(stream);
        writer.WriteLine(keyPair.KeyMaterial);

        return pemFileName;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon EC2 security group with a specified name and description.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the new security group.</param>
    /// <param name="groupDescription">A description of the new security group.</
param>
    /// <returns>The group Id of the new security group.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateSecurityGroup(string groupName, string
 groupDescription)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonEC2.CreateSecurityGroupAsync(
                new CreateSecurityGroupRequest(groupName, groupDescription));

            // Wait until the security group exists.
            int retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0)
            {
                var groups = await DescribeSecurityGroups(response.GroupId);
                if (groups.Any())
                {
                    return response.GroupId;
                }

                Thread.Sleep(5000);
                retries--;
            }
            _logger.LogError($"Unable to find newly created group {groupName}.");
            throw new DoesNotExistException("security group not found");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
```

```
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "ResourceAlreadyExists")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A security group with the name {groupName} already exists.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while creating the security group.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon EC2 VPC.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="cidrBlock">The CIDR block for the new security group.</param>
    /// <returns>The VPC Id of the new VPC.</returns>
    public async Task<string?> CreateVPC(string cidrBlock)
    {

        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonEC2.CreateVpcAsync(new CreateVpcRequest
            {
                CidrBlock = cidrBlock,
            });

            Vpc vpc = response.Vpc;
            Console.WriteLine($"Created VPC with ID: {vpc.VpcId}.");
            return vpc.VpcId;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't create VPC because: {ex.Message}");
            return null;
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Amazon EC2 key pair.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPairName">The name of the key pair to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteKeyPair(string keyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEC2.DeleteKeyPairAsync(new
DeleteKeyPairRequest(keyPairName)).ConfigureAwait(false);
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidKeyPair.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"KeyPair {keyPairName} does not exist and cannot
be deleted. Please verify the key pair name and try again.");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete the key pair because:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the temporary file where the key pair information was saved.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tempFileName">The path to the temporary file.</param>
    public void DeleteTempFile(string tempFileName)
    {
        if (File.Exists(tempFileName))
        {
            File.Delete(tempFileName);
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Delete an Amazon EC2 security group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteSecurityGroup(string groupId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response =
                await _amazonEC2.DeleteSecurityGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteSecurityGroupRequest { GroupId = groupId });
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidGroup.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Security Group {groupId} does not exist and cannot be deleted.
Please verify the ID and try again.");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete the security group because:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Amazon EC2 VPC.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteVpc(string vpcId)
    {
        var request = new DeleteVpcRequest
        {
            VpcId = vpcId,
        };

        var response = await _amazonEC2.DeleteVpcAsync(request);
```

```
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about existing Amazon EC2 images.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of image information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Image>> DescribeImages(List<string>? imageIds)
    {
        var request = new DescribeImagesRequest();
        if (imageIds is not null)
        {
            // If the imageIds list is not null, add the list
            // to the request object.
            request.ImageIds = imageIds;
        }

        var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeImagesAsync(request);
        return response.Images;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display the information returned by DescribeImages.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="images">The list of image information to display.</param>
    public void DisplayImageInfo(List<Image> images)
    {
        images.ForEach(image =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{image.Name} Created on: {image.CreationDate}");
        });

    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an Amazon EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id of the EC2 instance.</param>
    /// <returns>An EC2 instance.</returns>
    public async Task<Instance> DescribeInstance(string instanceId)
    {
        var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeInstancesAsync(
```

```
            new DescribeInstancesRequest { InstanceIds = new List<string>
{ instanceId } });
        return response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display EC2 instance information.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instance">The instance Id of the EC2 instance.</param>
    public void DisplayInstanceInformation(Instance instance)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"ID: {instance.InstanceId}");
        Console.WriteLine($"Image ID: {instance.ImageId}");
        Console.WriteLine($"{instance.InstanceType}");
        Console.WriteLine($"Key Name: {instance.KeyName}");
        Console.WriteLine($"VPC ID: {instance.VpcId}");
        Console.WriteLine($"Public IP: {instance.PublicIpAddress}");
        Console.WriteLine($"State: {instance.State.Name}");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about EC2 instances with a particular state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tagName">The name of the tag to filter on.</param>
    /// <param name="tagValue">The value of the tag to look for.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> GetInstancesWithState(string state)
    {
        try
        {
            // Filters the results of the instance list.
            var filters = new List<Filter>
            {
                new Filter
                {
                    Name = $"instance-state-name",
                    Values = new List<string> { state, },
                },
            };
            var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest { Filters = filters, };

            Console.WriteLine($"\nShowing instances with state {state}");
            var paginator = _amazonEC2.Paginators.DescribeInstances(request);
```

```
            await foreach (var response in paginator.Responses)
            {
                foreach (var reservation in response.Reservations)
                {
                    foreach (var instance in reservation.Instances)
                    {
                        Console.Write($"Instance ID: {instance.InstanceId} ");
                        Console.WriteLine($"\tCurrent State:
{instance.State.Name}");
                    }
                }
            }

            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidParameterValue")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Invalid parameter value for filtering instances.");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list instances because: {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the instance types available.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of instance type information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<InstanceTypeInfo>>
DescribeInstanceTypes(ArchitectureValues architecture)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DescribeInstanceTypesRequest();

            var filters = new List<Filter>
```

```
            {
                new Filter("processor-info.supported-architecture",
                    new List<string> { architecture.ToString() })
            };
            filters.Add(new Filter("instance-type", new() { "*.micro",
"*.small" }));

            request.Filters = filters;
            var instanceTypes = new List<InstanceTypeInfo>();

            var paginator = _amazonEC2.Paginators.DescribeInstanceTypes(request);
            await foreach (var instanceType in paginator.InstanceTypes)
            {
                instanceTypes.Add(instanceType);
            }

            return instanceTypes;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidParameterValue")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Parameters are invalid. Ensure architecture and size strings
conform to DescribeInstanceTypes API reference.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete the security group because:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an Amazon EC2 key pair.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPairName">The name of the key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of key pair information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<KeyPairInfo>> DescribeKeyPairs(string keyPairName)
    {
```

```
        try
        {
            var request = new DescribeKeyPairsRequest();
            if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(keyPairName))
            {
                request = new DescribeKeyPairsRequest
                {
                    KeyNames = new List<string> { keyPairName }
                };
            }

            var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeKeyPairsAsync(request);
            return response.KeyPairs.ToList();
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidKeyPair.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A key pair called {keyPairName} does not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while describing the key pair.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information for one or all Amazon EC2 security group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupId">The optional Id of a specific Amazon EC2 security
 group.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of security group information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<SecurityGroup>> DescribeSecurityGroups(string groupId)
    {
        try
        {
            var securityGroups = new List<SecurityGroup>();
```

```
            var request = new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest();

            if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(groupId))
            {
                var groupIds = new List<string> { groupId };
                request.GroupIds = groupIds;
            }

            var paginatorForSecurityGroups =
                _amazonEC2.Paginators.DescribeSecurityGroups(request);

            await foreach (var securityGroup in
paginatorForSecurityGroups.SecurityGroups)
            {
                securityGroups.Add(securityGroup);
            }

            return securityGroups;

        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidGroup.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A security group {groupId} does not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while listing security groups. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display the information returned by the call to
    /// DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="securityGroup">A list of security group information.</param>
    public void DisplaySecurityGroupInfoAsync(SecurityGroup securityGroup)
```

```
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"{securityGroup.GroupName}");
        Console.WriteLine("Ingress permissions:");
        securityGroup.IpPermissions.ForEach(permission =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tFromPort: {permission.FromPort}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tIpProtocol: {permission.IpProtocol}");

            Console.Write($"\tIpv4Ranges: ");
            permission.Ipv4Ranges.ForEach(range => { Console.Write($"{range.CidrIp}
"); });

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tIpv6Ranges:");
            permission.Ipv6Ranges.ForEach(range =>
{ Console.Write($"{range.CidrIpv6} "); });

            Console.Write($"\n\tPrefixListIds: ");
            permission.PrefixListIds.ForEach(id => Console.Write($"{id.Id} "));

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tTo Port: {permission.ToPort}");
        });
        Console.WriteLine("Egress permissions:");
        securityGroup.IpPermissionsEgress.ForEach(permission =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tFromPort: {permission.FromPort}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tIpProtocol: {permission.IpProtocol}");

            Console.Write($"\tIpv4Ranges: ");
            permission.Ipv4Ranges.ForEach(range => { Console.Write($"{range.CidrIp}
"); });

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tIpv6Ranges:");
            permission.Ipv6Ranges.ForEach(range =>
{ Console.Write($"{range.CidrIpv6} "); });

            Console.Write($"\n\tPrefixListIds: ");
            permission.PrefixListIds.ForEach(id => Console.Write($"{id.Id} "));

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tTo Port: {permission.ToPort}");
        });
    }


    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Disassociate an Elastic IP address from an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="associationId">The association Id.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DisassociateIp(string associationId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonEC2.DisassociateAddressAsync(
                new DisassociateAddressRequest { AssociationId = associationId });
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"AssociationId is invalid, unable to disassociate address.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while disassociating the Elastic IP.:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Reboot a specific EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the instance that will be
rebooted.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> RebootInstances(string ec2InstanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new RebootInstancesRequest
            {
```

```
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId },
            };

            await _amazonEC2.RebootInstancesAsync(request);

            // Wait for the instance to be running.
            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to start.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);

            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId {ec2InstanceId} is invalid, unable to reboot.
 {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while rebooting the instance {ec2InstanceId}.:
 {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Release an Elastic IP address. After the Elastic IP address is released,
    /// it can no longer be used.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="allocationId">The allocation Id of the Elastic IP address.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ReleaseAddress(string allocationId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ReleaseAddressRequest { AllocationId = allocationId };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.ReleaseAddressAsync(request);
```

```
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidAllocationID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"AllocationId {allocationId} was not found.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while releasing the AllocationId
{allocationId}.: {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create and run an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ImageId">The image Id of the image used as a basis for the
    /// EC2 instance.</param>
    /// <param name="instanceType">The instance type of the EC2 instance to
create.</param>
    /// <param name="keyName">The name of the key pair to associate with the
    /// instance.</param>
    /// <param name="groupId">The Id of the Amazon EC2 security group that will be
    /// allowed to interact with the new EC2 instance.</param>
    /// <returns>The instance Id of the new EC2 instance.</returns>
    public async Task<string> RunInstances(string imageId, string instanceType,
string keyName, string groupId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new RunInstancesRequest
            {
                ImageId = imageId,
                InstanceType = instanceType,
                KeyName = keyName,
```

```
                MinCount = 1,
                MaxCount = 1,
                SecurityGroupIds = new List<string> { groupId }
            };
            var response = await _amazonEC2.RunInstancesAsync(request);
            var instanceId = response.Reservation.Instances[0].InstanceId;

            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to start.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);

            return instanceId;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidGroupId.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"GroupId {groupId} was not found. {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while running the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Start an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the Amazon EC2 instance
    /// to start.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task StartInstances(string ec2InstanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new StartInstancesRequest
            {
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId },
```

```
            };

            await _amazonEC2.StartInstancesAsync(request);

            Console.Write("Waiting for instance to start. ");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to start.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while starting the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Stop an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the EC2 instance to
    /// stop.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task StopInstances(string ec2InstanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new StopInstancesRequest
            {
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId },
            };

            await _amazonEC2.StopInstancesAsync(request);
            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to stop.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Stopped);
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("\nThe instance has stopped.");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to stop.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while stopping the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the EC2 instance
    /// to terminate.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task<List<InstanceStateChange>> TerminateInstances(string
ec2InstanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new TerminateInstancesRequest
            {
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId }
            };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.TerminateInstancesAsync(request);
            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to terminate.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Terminated);

            Console.WriteLine($"\nThe instance {ec2InstanceId} has been
terminated.");
```

```
            return response.TerminatingInstances;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to terminate.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while terminating the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
```

```
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AllocateAddress
  - AssociateAddress
  - AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
  - CreateKeyPair
  - CreateSecurityGroup
  - DeleteKeyPair
  - DeleteSecurityGroup
  - DescribeImages
  - DescribeInstanceTypes
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeKeyPairs
  - DescribeSecurityGroups
  - DisassociateAddress
  - ReleaseAddress
  - RunInstances
  - StartInstances
  - StopInstances
  - TerminateInstances
  - UnmonitorInstances

Actions

`AllocateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AllocateAddress`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Allocates an Elastic IP address that can be associated with an Amazon EC2
    // instance. By using an Elastic IP address, you can keep the public IP address
    // constant even when you restart the associated instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The response object for the allocated address.</returns>
    public async Task<AllocateAddressResponse> AllocateAddress()
    {
        var request = new AllocateAddressRequest();

        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonEC2.AllocateAddressAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"Allocated IP: {response.PublicIp} with allocation ID
 {response.AllocationId}.");
            return response;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "AddressLimitExceeded")
            {
                // For more information on Elastic IP address quotas, see:
                // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/elastic-ip-
addresses-eip.html#using-instance-addressing-limit
                _logger.LogError($"Unable to allocate Elastic IP, address limit
 exceeded. {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }
```

```
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while allocating Elastic IP.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`AssociateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateAddress`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Associates an Elastic IP address with an instance. When this association is
    /// created, the Elastic IP's public IP address is immediately used as the
 public
    /// IP address of the associated instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="allocationId">The allocation Id of an Elastic IP address.</
param>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id of the EC2 instance to
    /// associate the address with.</param>
    /// <returns>The association Id that represents
    /// the association of the Elastic IP address with an instance.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AssociateAddress(string allocationId, string
 instanceId)
    {
        try
        {
```

```
            var request = new AssociateAddressRequest
            {
                AllocationId = allocationId,
                InstanceId = instanceId
            };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.AssociateAddressAsync(request);
            return response.AssociationId;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to associate address.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while associating the Elastic IP.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`

The following code example shows how to use `AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Authorize the local computer ingress to EC2 instances associated
    /// with the virtual private cloud (VPC) security group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the security group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress(string groupName)
    {
        try
        {
            // Get the IP address for the local computer.
            var ipAddress = await GetIpAddress();
            Console.WriteLine($"Your IP address is: {ipAddress}");
            var ipRanges =
                new List<IpRange> { new IpRange { CidrIp = $"{ipAddress}/32" } };
            var permission = new IpPermission
            {
                Ipv4Ranges = ipRanges,
                IpProtocol = "tcp",
                FromPort = 22,
                ToPort = 22
            };
            var permissions = new List<IpPermission> { permission };
            var response = await _amazonEC2.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressAsync(
                new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest(groupName, permissions));
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidPermission.Duplicate")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"The ingress rule already exists. {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while authorizing ingress.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Authorize the local computer for ingress to
    /// the Amazon EC2 SecurityGroup.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The IPv4 address of the computer running the scenario.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> GetIpAddress()
    {
        var httpClient = new HttpClient();
        var ipString = await httpClient.GetStringAsync("https://
checkip.amazonaws.com");

        // The IP address is returned with a new line
        // character on the end. Trim off the whitespace and
        // return the value to the caller.
        return ipString.Trim();
    }
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeyPair`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon EC2 key pair with a specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPairName">The name for the new key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon EC2 key pair created.</returns>
    public async Task<KeyPair?> CreateKeyPair(string keyPairName)
    {
        try
```

```
        {
            var request = new CreateKeyPairRequest { KeyName = keyPairName, };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.CreateKeyPairAsync(request);

            var kp = response.KeyPair;
            // Return the key pair so it can be saved if needed.

            // Wait until the key pair exists.
            int retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Checking for new KeyPair {keyPairName}...");
                var keyPairs = await DescribeKeyPairs(keyPairName);
                if (keyPairs.Any())
                {
                    return kp;
                }

                Thread.Sleep(5000);
                retries--;
            }
            _logger.LogError($"Unable to find newly created KeyPair
{keyPairName}.");
            throw new DoesNotExistException("KeyPair not found");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A key pair called {keyPairName} already exists.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while creating the key pair.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Save KeyPair information to a temporary file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPair">The name of the key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>The full path to the temporary file.</returns>
    public string SaveKeyPair(KeyPair keyPair)
    {
        var tempPath = Path.GetTempPath();
        var tempFileName = $"{tempPath}\\{Path.GetRandomFileName()}";
        var pemFileName = Path.ChangeExtension(tempFileName, "pem");

        // Save the key pair to a file in a temporary folder.
        using var stream = new FileStream(pemFileName, FileMode.Create);
        using var writer = new StreamWriter(stream);
        writer.WriteLine(keyPair.KeyMaterial);

        return pemFileName;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateLaunchTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateLaunchTemplate`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling.
    /// The launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that runs
after
    /// the instance is started. This script installs the Python packages and starts
a Python
    /// web server on the instance.
    /// </summary>
```

```
   /// <param name="startupScriptPath">The path to a Bash script file that is
run.</param>
   /// <param name="instancePolicyPath">The path to a permissions policy to create
and attach to the profile.</param>
   /// <returns>The template object.</returns>
   public async Task<Amazon.EC2.Model.LaunchTemplate> CreateTemplate(string
startupScriptPath, string instancePolicyPath)
   {
       try
       {
           await CreateKeyPair(_keyPairName);
           await CreateInstanceProfileWithName(_instancePolicyName,
_instanceRoleName,
               _instanceProfileName, instancePolicyPath);

           var startServerText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(startupScriptPath);
           var plainTextBytes =
System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(startServerText);

           var amiLatest = await _amazonSsm.GetParameterAsync(
               new GetParameterRequest() { Name = _amiParam });
           var amiId = amiLatest.Parameter.Value;
           var launchTemplateResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateLaunchTemplateAsync(
               new CreateLaunchTemplateRequest()
               {
                   LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                   LaunchTemplateData = new RequestLaunchTemplateData()
                   {
                       InstanceType = _instanceType,
                       ImageId = amiId,
                       IamInstanceProfile =
                           new

LaunchTemplateIamInstanceProfileSpecificationRequest()
                           {
                               Name = _instanceProfileName
                           },
                       KeyName = _keyPairName,
                       UserData = System.Convert.ToBase64String(plainTextBytes)
                   }
               });
           return launchTemplateResponse.LaunchTemplate;
       }
       catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
```

```
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
 "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Could not create the template, the name
 {_launchTemplateName} already exists. " +
                                $"Please try again with a unique name.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while creating the template.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateLaunchTemplate in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSecurityGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon EC2 security group with a specified name and description.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the new security group.</param>
    /// <param name="groupDescription">A description of the new security group.</
param>
    /// <returns>The group Id of the new security group.</returns>
```

```
   public async Task<string> CreateSecurityGroup(string groupName, string
groupDescription)
   {
       try
       {
           var response = await _amazonEC2.CreateSecurityGroupAsync(
               new CreateSecurityGroupRequest(groupName, groupDescription));

           // Wait until the security group exists.
           int retries = 5;
           while (retries-- > 0)
           {
               var groups = await DescribeSecurityGroups(response.GroupId);
               if (groups.Any())
               {
                   return response.GroupId;
               }

               Thread.Sleep(5000);
               retries--;
           }
           _logger.LogError($"Unable to find newly created group {groupName}.");
           throw new DoesNotExistException("security group not found");
       }
       catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
       {
           if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "ResourceAlreadyExists")
           {
               _logger.LogError(
                   $"A security group with the name {groupName} already exists.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
           }
           throw;
       }
       catch (Exception ex)
       {
           _logger.LogError(
               $"An error occurred while creating the security group.:
{ex.Message}");
           throw;
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteKeyPair`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Amazon EC2 key pair.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPairName">The name of the key pair to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteKeyPair(string keyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEC2.DeleteKeyPairAsync(new
DeleteKeyPairRequest(keyPairName)).ConfigureAwait(false);
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidKeyPair.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"KeyPair {keyPairName} does not exist and cannot
be deleted. Please verify the key pair name and try again.");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete the key pair because:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the temporary file where the key pair information was saved.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tempFileName">The path to the temporary file.</param>
    public void DeleteTempFile(string tempFileName)
    {
        if (File.Exists(tempFileName))
        {
            File.Delete(tempFileName);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteLaunchTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteLaunchTemplate`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a launch template by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the template to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTemplateByName(string templateName)
    {
        try
        {
```

```
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new DeleteLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = templateName
                });
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Could not delete the template, the name {_launchTemplateName}
was not found.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while deleting the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteLaunchTemplate in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSecurityGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Delete an Amazon EC2 security group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteSecurityGroup(string groupId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response =
                await _amazonEC2.DeleteSecurityGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteSecurityGroupRequest { GroupId = groupId });
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidGroup.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Security Group {groupId} does not exist and cannot be deleted.
Please verify the ID and try again.");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete the security group because:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeAvailabilityZones`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAvailabilityZones`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2 Client.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of availability zones.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> DescribeAvailabilityZones()
    {
        try
        {
            var zoneResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeAvailabilityZonesAsync(
                new DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest());
            return zoneResponse.AvailabilityZones.Select(z => z.ZoneName).ToList();
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An Amazon EC2 error occurred while listing
availability zones.: {ec2Exception.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while listing availability zones.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAvailabilityZones in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Get the instance profile association data for an instance.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance.</param>
   /// <returns>Instance profile associations data.</returns>
   public async Task<IamInstanceProfileAssociation> GetInstanceProfile(string
instanceId)
   {
       try
       {
           var response = await
_amazonEc2.DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsAsync(
               new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest()
               {
                   Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                   {
                       new("instance-id", new List<string>() { instanceId })
                   },
               });
           return response.IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0];
       }
       catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
       {
           if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
           {
               _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
           }

           throw;
       }
       catch (Exception ex)
       {
           _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while creating the template.:
{ex.Message}");
```

```
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeInstanceTypes`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeInstanceTypes`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the instance types available.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of instance type information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<InstanceTypeInfo>>
DescribeInstanceTypes(ArchitectureValues architecture)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DescribeInstanceTypesRequest();

            var filters = new List<Filter>
            {
                new Filter("processor-info.supported-architecture",
                    new List<string> { architecture.ToString() })
            };
            filters.Add(new Filter("instance-type", new() { "*.micro",
"*.small" }));

            request.Filters = filters;
            var instanceTypes = new List<InstanceTypeInfo>();
```

```
            var paginator = _amazonEC2.Paginators.DescribeInstanceTypes(request);
            await foreach (var instanceType in paginator.InstanceTypes)
            {
                instanceTypes.Add(instanceType);
            }

            return instanceTypes;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidParameterValue")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Parameters are invalid. Ensure architecture and size strings
conform to DescribeInstanceTypes API reference.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete the security group because:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceTypes in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeInstances`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about EC2 instances with a particular state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tagName">The name of the tag to filter on.</param>
    /// <param name="tagValue">The value of the tag to look for.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> GetInstancesWithState(string state)
    {
        try
        {
            // Filters the results of the instance list.
            var filters = new List<Filter>
            {
                new Filter
                {
                    Name = $"instance-state-name",
                    Values = new List<string> { state, },
                },
            };
            var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest { Filters = filters, };

            Console.WriteLine($"\nShowing instances with state {state}");
            var paginator = _amazonEC2.Paginators.DescribeInstances(request);

            await foreach (var response in paginator.Responses)
            {
                foreach (var reservation in response.Reservations)
                {
                    foreach (var instance in reservation.Instances)
                    {
                        Console.Write($"Instance ID: {instance.InstanceId} ");
                        Console.WriteLine($"\tCurrent State:
{instance.State.Name}");
                    }
                }
            }

            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidParameterValue")
            {
```

```
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Invalid parameter value for filtering instances.");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list instances because: {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeKeyPairs`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeKeyPairs`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an Amazon EC2 key pair.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPairName">The name of the key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of key pair information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<KeyPairInfo>> DescribeKeyPairs(string keyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DescribeKeyPairsRequest();
            if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(keyPairName))
            {
                request = new DescribeKeyPairsRequest
                {
```

```
                    KeyNames = new List<string> { keyPairName }
                };
            }

            var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeKeyPairsAsync(request);
            return response.KeyPairs.ToList();
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidKeyPair.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A key pair called {keyPairName} does not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while describing the key pair.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeSecurityGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSecurityGroups`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Retrieve information for one or all Amazon EC2 security group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupId">The optional Id of a specific Amazon EC2 security
group.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of security group information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<SecurityGroup>> DescribeSecurityGroups(string groupId)
    {
        try
        {
            var securityGroups = new List<SecurityGroup>();
            var request = new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest();

            if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(groupId))
            {
                var groupIds = new List<string> { groupId };
                request.GroupIds = groupIds;
            }

            var paginatorForSecurityGroups =
                _amazonEC2.Paginators.DescribeSecurityGroups(request);

            await foreach (var securityGroup in
paginatorForSecurityGroups.SecurityGroups)
            {
                securityGroups.Add(securityGroup);
            }

            return securityGroups;

        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidGroup.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A security group {groupId} does not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while listing security groups. {ex.Message}");
```

```
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display the information returned by the call to
    /// DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="securityGroup">A list of security group information.</param>
    public void DisplaySecurityGroupInfoAsync(SecurityGroup securityGroup)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"{securityGroup.GroupName}");
        Console.WriteLine("Ingress permissions:");
        securityGroup.IpPermissions.ForEach(permission =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tFromPort: {permission.FromPort}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tIpProtocol: {permission.IpProtocol}");

            Console.Write($"\tIpv4Ranges: ");
            permission.Ipv4Ranges.ForEach(range => { Console.Write($"{range.CidrIp}
"); });

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tIpv6Ranges:");
            permission.Ipv6Ranges.ForEach(range =>
{ Console.Write($"{range.CidrIpv6} "); });

            Console.Write($"\n\tPrefixListIds: ");
            permission.PrefixListIds.ForEach(id => Console.Write($"{id.Id} "));

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tTo Port: {permission.ToPort}");
        });
        Console.WriteLine("Egress permissions:");
        securityGroup.IpPermissionsEgress.ForEach(permission =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tFromPort: {permission.FromPort}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tIpProtocol: {permission.IpProtocol}");

            Console.Write($"\tIpv4Ranges: ");
            permission.Ipv4Ranges.ForEach(range => { Console.Write($"{range.CidrIp}
"); });

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tIpv6Ranges:");
            permission.Ipv6Ranges.ForEach(range =>
{ Console.Write($"{range.CidrIpv6} "); });
```

```
            Console.Write($"\n\tPrefixListIds: ");
            permission.PrefixListIds.ForEach(id => Console.Write($"{id.Id} "));

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tTo Port: {permission.ToPort}");
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeSubnets`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSubnets`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get all the subnets for a Vpc in a set of availability zones.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The list of availability zones.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of subnet objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Subnet>> GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(string vpcId,
List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            var subnets = new List<Subnet>();
            var subnetPaginator = _amazonEc2.Paginators.DescribeSubnets(
                new DescribeSubnetsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
```

```
                        new("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpcId }),
                        new("availability-zone", availabilityZones),
                        new("default-for-az", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });

            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var subnet in subnetPaginator.Subnets)
            {
                subnets.Add(subnet);
            }

            return subnets;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"The specified VPC ID {vpcId} does
not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the subnets.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSubnets in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeVpcs`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeVpcs`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default VPC for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The default VPC object.</returns>
    public async Task<Vpc> GetDefaultVpc()
    {
        try
        {
            var vpcResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeVpcsAsync(
                new DescribeVpcsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("is-default", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });
            return vpcResponse.Vpcs[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "UnauthorizedOperation")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"You do not have the necessary
permissions to describe VPCs.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the vpcs.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DisassociateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `DisassociateAddress`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Disassociate an Elastic IP address from an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="associationId">The association Id.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DisassociateIp(string associationId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonEC2.DisassociateAddressAsync(
                new DisassociateAddressRequest { AssociationId = associationId });
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"AssociationId is invalid, unable to disassociate address.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
```

```
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while disassociating the Elastic IP.:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DisassociateAddress in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`RebootInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `RebootInstances`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Reboot an instance by its Id.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Reboot a specific EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the instance that will be
rebooted.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> RebootInstances(string ec2InstanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new RebootInstancesRequest
            {
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId },
            };

            await _amazonEC2.RebootInstancesAsync(request);
```

```
            // Wait for the instance to be running.
            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to start.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);

            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId {ec2InstanceId} is invalid, unable to reboot.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while rebooting the instance {ec2InstanceId}.:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
```

```
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
```

Replace the profile for an instance, reboot, and restart a web server.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Replace the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile is
replaced, the instance
    /// is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile. When the instance is
ready, Systems Manager is
    /// used to restart the Python web server.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to update.</param>
    /// <param name="credsProfileName">The name of the new profile to associate with
the specified instance.</param>
    /// <param name="associationId">The Id of the existing profile association for
the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task ReplaceInstanceProfile(string instanceId, string
credsProfileName, string associationId)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationAsync(
                new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest()
                {
                    AssociationId = associationId,
                    IamInstanceProfile = new IamInstanceProfileSpecification()
                    {
                        Name = credsProfileName
                    }
                });
```

```
            // Allow time before resetting.
            Thread.Sleep(25000);

            await _amazonEc2.RebootInstancesAsync(
                new RebootInstancesRequest(new List<string>() { instanceId }));
            Thread.Sleep(25000);
            var instanceReady = false;
            var retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0 && !instanceReady)
            {
                var instancesPaginator =
                    _amazonSsm.Paginators.DescribeInstanceInformation(
                        new DescribeInstanceInformationRequest());
                // Get the entire list using the paginator.
                await foreach (var instance in
instancesPaginator.InstanceInformationList)
                {
                    instanceReady = instance.InstanceId == instanceId;
                    if (instanceReady)
                    {
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
            Console.WriteLine("Waiting for instance to be running.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
            Console.WriteLine("Instance ready.");
            Console.WriteLine($"Sending restart command to instance {instanceId}");
            await _amazonSsm.SendCommandAsync(
                new SendCommandRequest()
                {
                    InstanceIds = new List<string>() { instanceId },
                    DocumentName = "AWS-RunShellScript",
                    Parameters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>()
                    {
                        {
                            "commands",
                            new List<string>() { "cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80" }
                        }
                    }
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Restarted the web server on instance {instanceId}");
        }
```

```
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while replacing the template.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RebootInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ReleaseAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `ReleaseAddress`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Release an Elastic IP address. After the Elastic IP address is released,
    /// it can no longer be used.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="allocationId">The allocation Id of the Elastic IP address.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ReleaseAddress(string allocationId)
    {
        try
```

```
        {
            var request = new ReleaseAddressRequest { AllocationId = allocationId };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.ReleaseAddressAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidAllocationID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"AllocationId {allocationId} was not found.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while releasing the AllocationId
{allocationId}.: {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation`

The following code example shows how to use `ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
   /// Replace the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile is
replaced, the instance
   /// is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile. When the instance is
ready, Systems Manager is
   /// used to restart the Python web server.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to update.</param>
   /// <param name="credsProfileName">The name of the new profile to associate with
the specified instance.</param>
   /// <param name="associationId">The Id of the existing profile association for
the instance.</param>
   /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
   public async Task ReplaceInstanceProfile(string instanceId, string
credsProfileName, string associationId)
   {
       try
       {
           await _amazonEc2.ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationAsync(
               new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest()
               {
                   AssociationId = associationId,
                   IamInstanceProfile = new IamInstanceProfileSpecification()
                   {
                       Name = credsProfileName
                   }
               });
           // Allow time before resetting.
           Thread.Sleep(25000);

           await _amazonEc2.RebootInstancesAsync(
               new RebootInstancesRequest(new List<string>() { instanceId }));
           Thread.Sleep(25000);
           var instanceReady = false;
           var retries = 5;
           while (retries-- > 0 && !instanceReady)
           {
               var instancesPaginator =
                   _amazonSsm.Paginators.DescribeInstanceInformation(
                       new DescribeInstanceInformationRequest());
               // Get the entire list using the paginator.
               await foreach (var instance in
instancesPaginator.InstanceInformationList)
               {
                   instanceReady = instance.InstanceId == instanceId;
```

```
                    if (instanceReady)
                    {
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
            Console.WriteLine("Waiting for instance to be running.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
            Console.WriteLine("Instance ready.");
            Console.WriteLine($"Sending restart command to instance {instanceId}");
            await _amazonSsm.SendCommandAsync(
                new SendCommandRequest()
                {
                    InstanceIds = new List<string>() { instanceId },
                    DocumentName = "AWS-RunShellScript",
                    Parameters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>()
                    {
                        {
                            "commands",
                            new List<string>() { "cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80" }
                        }
                    }
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Restarted the web server on instance {instanceId}");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while replacing the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`RunInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `RunInstances`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create and run an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ImageId">The image Id of the image used as a basis for the
    /// EC2 instance.</param>
    /// <param name="instanceType">The instance type of the EC2 instance to
create.</param>
    /// <param name="keyName">The name of the key pair to associate with the
    /// instance.</param>
    /// <param name="groupId">The Id of the Amazon EC2 security group that will be
    /// allowed to interact with the new EC2 instance.</param>
    /// <returns>The instance Id of the new EC2 instance.</returns>
    public async Task<string> RunInstances(string imageId, string instanceType,
string keyName, string groupId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new RunInstancesRequest
            {
                ImageId = imageId,
                InstanceType = instanceType,
                KeyName = keyName,
                MinCount = 1,
                MaxCount = 1,
                SecurityGroupIds = new List<string> { groupId }
            };
            var response = await _amazonEC2.RunInstancesAsync(request);
            var instanceId = response.Reservation.Instances[0].InstanceId;
```

```
            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to start.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);

            return instanceId;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidGroupId.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"GroupId {groupId} was not found. {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while running the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`StartInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `StartInstances`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Start an EC2 instance.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the Amazon EC2 instance
    /// to start.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task StartInstances(string ec2InstanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new StartInstancesRequest
            {
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId },
            };

            await _amazonEC2.StartInstancesAsync(request);

            Console.Write("Waiting for instance to start. ");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to start.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while starting the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`StopInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `StopInstances`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Stop an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the EC2 instance to
    /// stop.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task StopInstances(string ec2InstanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new StopInstancesRequest
            {
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId },
            };

            await _amazonEC2.StopInstancesAsync(request);
            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to stop.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Stopped);

            Console.WriteLine("\nThe instance has stopped.");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to stop.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while stopping the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`TerminateInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `TerminateInstances`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the EC2 instance
    /// to terminate.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task<List<InstanceStateChange>> TerminateInstances(string
ec2InstanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new TerminateInstancesRequest
            {
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId }
            };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.TerminateInstancesAsync(request);
            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to terminate.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Terminated);

            Console.WriteLine($"\nThe instance {ec2InstanceId} has been
terminated.");
            return response.TerminatingInstances;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to terminate.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while terminating the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build and manage a resilient service

The following code example shows how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();


        // Set up dependency injection for the AWS services.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
```

```
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonDynamoDB>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonAutoScaling>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>()
                    .AddTransient<AutoScalerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<SmParameterWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<Recommendations>()
                    .AddSingleton<IConfiguration>(_configuration)
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);
        ResourcesSetup();

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Resilient Architecture Example
Scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Deploy(true);

            Console.WriteLine("Now let's begin the scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Demo(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Finally, let's clean up our resources.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            await DestroyResources(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Resilient Architecture Example Scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            await DestroyResources(true);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Setup any common resources, also used for integration testing.
    /// </summary>
    public static void ResourcesSetup()
    {
        _httpClient = new HttpClient();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>();
        _iamClient =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>();
        _recommendations = host.Services.GetRequiredService<Recommendations>();
        _autoScalerWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<AutoScalerWrapper>();
        _smParameterWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<SmParameterWrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deploy necessary resources for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Deploy(bool interactive)
    {
        var protocol = "HTTP";
        var port = 80;
        var sshPort = 22;

        Console.WriteLine(
```

```
            "\nFor this demo, we'll use the AWS SDK for .NET to create several AWS
resources\n" +
            "to set up a load-balanced web service endpoint and explore some ways to
make it resilient\n" +
            "against various kinds of failures.\n\n" +
            "Some of the resources create by this demo are:\n");

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* A DynamoDB table that the web service depends on to provide book,
movie, and song recommendations.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 launch template that defines EC2 instances that each contain
a Python web server.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 Auto Scaling group that manages EC2 instances across several
Availability Zones.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) load balancer that targets the Auto
Scaling group to distribute requests.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to start deploying
resources.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        // Create and populate the DynamoDB table.
        var databaseTableName = _configuration["databaseName"];
        var recommendationsPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "recommendations_objects.json");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating and populating a DynamoDB table named
{databaseTableName}.");
        await _recommendations.CreateDatabaseWithName(databaseTableName);
        await _recommendations.PopulateDatabase(databaseTableName,
recommendationsPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        // Create the EC2 Launch Template.

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Creating an EC2 launch template that runs 'server_startup_script.sh'
when an instance starts.\n"
            + "\nThis script starts a Python web server defined in the `server.py`
script. The web server\n"
```

```
            + "listens to HTTP requests on port 80 and responds to requests to '/'
and to '/healthcheck'.\n"
            + "For demo purposes, this server is run as the root user. In
production, the best practice is to\n"
            + "run a web server, such as Apache, with least-privileged
credentials.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nThe template also defines an IAM policy that each instance uses to
assume a role that grants\n"
            + "permissions to access the DynamoDB recommendation table and Systems
Manager parameters\n"
            + "that control the flow of the demo.");

        var startupScriptPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "server_startup_script.sh");
        var instancePolicyPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "instance_policy.json");
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateTemplate(startupScriptPath,
instancePolicyPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group that maintains three EC2 instances,
each in a different\n"
            + "Availability Zone.\n");
        var zones = await _autoScalerWrapper.DescribeAvailabilityZones();
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateGroupOfSize(3, _autoScalerWrapper.GroupName,
zones);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "At this point, you have EC2 instances created. Once each instance
starts, it listens for\n"
            + "HTTP requests. You can see these instances in the console or continue
with the demo.\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("Creating variables that control the flow of the demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nCreating an Elastic Load Balancing target group and load balancer.
 The target group\n"
            + "defines how the load balancer connects to instances. The load
 balancer provides a\n"
            + "single endpoint where clients connect and dispatches requests to
 instances in the group.");

        var defaultVpc = await _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultVpc();
        var subnets = await
 _autoScalerWrapper.GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(defaultVpc.VpcId, zones);
        var subnetIds = subnets.Select(s => s.SubnetId).ToList();
        var targetGroup = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGroupN
 protocol, port, defaultVpc.VpcId);

        await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.LoadB
 subnetIds, targetGroup);
        await
 _autoScalerWrapper.AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName,
 targetGroup.TargetGroupArn);
        Console.WriteLine("\nVerifying access to the load balancer endpoint...");
        var endPoint = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.Lo
        var loadBalancerAccess = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);

        if (!loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\nCouldn't connect to the load balancer, verifying
 that the port is open...");

            var ipString = await _httpClient.GetStringAsync("https://
checkip.amazonaws.com");
            ipString = ipString.Trim();

            var defaultSecurityGroup = await
 _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(defaultVpc);
            var portIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, port, ipString);
            var sshPortIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, sshPort,
 ipString);
```

```
            if (!portIsOpen)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    "\nFor this example to work, the default security group for your
 default VPC must\n"
                    + "allows access from this computer. You can either add it
 automatically from this\n"
                    + "example or add it yourself using the AWS Management Console.
\n");

                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
 inbound traffic from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
                    await
 _autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, port, ipString);
                }
            }

            if (!sshPortIsOpen)
            {
                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
 inbound SSH traffic for debugging from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
                    await
 _autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, sshPort,
 ipString);
                }
            }
            loadBalancerAccess = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);
        }

        if (loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Your load balancer is ready. You can access it by
 browsing to:");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
```

```
                "\nCouldn't get a successful response from the load balancer
endpoint. Troubleshoot by\n"
                + "manually verifying that your VPC and security group are
configured correctly and that\n"
                + "you can successfully make a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint:\n");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue with the
demo.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Demonstrate the steps of the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as an interactive scenario.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Demo(bool interactive)
    {
        var ssmOnlyPolicy = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "ssm_only_policy.json");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Resetting parameters to starting values for demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine("\nThis part of the demonstration shows how to toggle
different parts of the system\n" +
                          "to create situations where the web service fails, and
shows how using a resilient\n" +
                          "architecture can keep the web service running in spite of
these failures.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 88));
        Console.WriteLine("At the start, the load balancer endpoint returns
recommendations and reports that all targets are healthy.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine($"The web service running on the EC2 instances gets
recommendations by querying a DynamoDB table.\n" +
```

```
                            $"The table name is contained in a Systems Manager
 parameter named '{_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter}'.\n" +
                            $"To simulate a failure of the recommendation service,
 let's set this parameter to name a non-existent table.\n");
        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter, "this-
is-not-a-table");
        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
 endpoint returns a failure code. But, the service reports as\n" +
                            "healthy to the load balancer because shallow health
 checks don't check for failure of the recommendation service.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Instead of failing when the recommendation service fails,
 the web service can return a static response.");
        Console.WriteLine("While this is not a perfect solution, it presents the
 customer with a somewhat better experience than failure.");

        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.FailureResponseParameter,
 "static");

        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
 endpoint returns a static response.");
        Console.WriteLine("The service still reports as healthy because health
 checks are still shallow.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Let's reinstate the recommendation service.\n");
        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter,
 _smParameterWrapper.TableName);
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nLet's also substitute bad credentials for one of the instances in the
 target group so that it can't\n" +
            "access the DynamoDB recommendation table.\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsPolicyName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            ssmOnlyPolicy,
```

```
            new List<string> { "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore" }
        );
        var instances = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstancesByGroupName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName);
        var badInstanceId = instances.First();
        var instanceProfile = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstanceProfile(badInstanceId);
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Replacing the profile for instance {badInstanceId} with a profile that
contains\n" +
            "bad credentials...\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.ReplaceInstanceProfile(
            badInstanceId,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            instanceProfile.AssociationId
        );
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint returns either
a recommendation or a static response,\n" +
            "depending on which instance is selected by the load balancer.\n"
        );
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nLet's implement a deep health check. For this demo, a
deep health check tests whether");
        Console.WriteLine("the web service can access the DynamoDB table that it
depends on for recommendations. Note that");
        Console.WriteLine("the deep health check is only for ELB routing and not for
Auto Scaling instance health.");
        Console.WriteLine("This kind of deep health check is not recommended for
Auto Scaling instance health, because it");
        Console.WriteLine("risks accidental termination of all instances in the Auto
Scaling group when a dependent service fails.");

        Console.WriteLine("\nBy implementing deep health checks, the load balancer
can detect when one of the instances is failing");
        Console.WriteLine("and take that instance out of rotation.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.HealthCheckParameter,
"deep");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"\nNow, checking target health indicates that the
 instance with bad credentials ({badInstanceId})");
        Console.WriteLine("is unhealthy. Note that it might take a minute or two for
 the load balancer to detect the unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance. Sending a GET request to the load balancer
 endpoint always returns a recommendation, because");
        Console.WriteLine("the load balancer takes unhealthy instances out of its
 rotation.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nBecause the instances in this demo are controlled by an
 auto scaler, the simplest way to fix an unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance is to terminate it and let the auto scaler start
 a new instance to replace it.");

        await _autoScalerWrapper.TryTerminateInstanceById(badInstanceId);

        Console.WriteLine($"\nEven while the instance is terminating and the new
 instance is starting, sending a GET");
        Console.WriteLine("request to the web service continues to get a successful
 recommendation response because");
        Console.WriteLine("starts and reports as healthy, it is included in the load
 balancing rotation.");
        Console.WriteLine("Note that terminating and replacing an instance typically
 takes several minutes, during which time you");
        Console.WriteLine("can see the changing health check status until the new
 instance is running and healthy.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nIf the recommendation service fails now, deep health
 checks mean all instances report as unhealthy.");

        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter, "this-
is-not-a-table");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nWhen all instances are unhealthy, the load balancer
 continues to route requests even to");
        Console.WriteLine("unhealthy instances, allowing them to fail open and
 return a static response rather than fail");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("closed and report failure to the customer.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to ask the user for cleanup.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> DestroyResources(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine(
            "To keep things tidy and to avoid unwanted charges on your account, we
can clean up all AWS resources\n" +
            "that were created for this demo."
        );

        if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse("Do you want to clean up all demo
resources? (y/n) "))
        {
            await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.LoadBalanc
            await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteTargetGroupByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGroup
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName)
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.DeleteKeyPairByName(_autoScalerWrapper.KeyPairName);
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.DeleteTemplateByName(_autoScalerWrapper.LaunchTemplateName);
            await _autoScalerWrapper.DeleteInstanceProfile(
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName
            );
            await
_recommendations.DestroyDatabaseByName(_recommendations.TableName);
        }
```

```
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Ok, we'll leave the resources intact.\n" +
                "Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you might
 incur unexpected charges."
            );
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management methods.
/// </summary>
public class AutoScalerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonAutoScaling _amazonAutoScaling;
    private readonly IAmazonEC2 _amazonEc2;
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement _amazonSsm;
    private readonly IAmazonIdentityManagementService _amazonIam;
    private readonly ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> _logger;

    private readonly string _instanceType = "";
    private readonly string _amiParam = "";
    private readonly string _launchTemplateName = "";
    private readonly string _groupName = "";
    private readonly string _instancePolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsPolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _keyPairName = "";

    public string GroupName => _groupName;
    public string KeyPairName => _keyPairName;
    public string LaunchTemplateName => _launchTemplateName;
    public string InstancePolicyName => _instancePolicyName;
```

```
    public string BadCredsProfileName => _badCredsProfileName;
    public string BadCredsRoleName => _badCredsRoleName;
    public string BadCredsPolicyName => _badCredsPolicyName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the AutoScalerWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonAutoScaling">The injected AutoScaling client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonEc2">The injected EC2 client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonIam">The injected IAM client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonSsm">The injected SSM client.</param>
    public AutoScalerWrapper(
        IAmazonAutoScaling amazonAutoScaling,
        IAmazonEC2 amazonEc2,
        IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement amazonSsm,
        IAmazonIdentityManagementService amazonIam,
        IConfiguration configuration,
        ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonAutoScaling = amazonAutoScaling;
        _amazonEc2 = amazonEc2;
        _amazonSsm = amazonSsm;
        _amazonIam = amazonIam;
        _logger = logger;

        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _instanceType = configuration["instanceType"];
        _amiParam = configuration["amiParam"];

        _launchTemplateName = prefix + "-template";
        _groupName = prefix + "-group";
        _instancePolicyName = prefix + "-pol";
        _instanceRoleName = prefix + "-role";
        _instanceProfileName = prefix + "-prof";
        _badCredsPolicyName = prefix + "-bc-pol";
        _badCredsRoleName = prefix + "-bc-role";
        _badCredsProfileName = prefix + "-bc-prof";
        _keyPairName = prefix + "-key-pair";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances with a
specified name.
    /// An instance's associated profile defines a role that is assumed by the
```

```
   /// instance.The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
granted to
   /// clients that run on the instance.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="policyName">Name to use for the policy.</param>
   /// <param name="roleName">Name to use for the role.</param>
   /// <param name="profileName">Name to use for the profile.</param>
   /// <param name="ssmOnlyPolicyFile">Path to a policy file for SSM.</param>
   /// <param name="awsManagedPolicies">AWS Managed policies to be attached to the
role.</param>
   /// <returns>The Arn of the profile.</returns>
   public async Task<string> CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
       string policyName,
       string roleName,
       string profileName,
       string ssmOnlyPolicyFile,
       List<string>? awsManagedPolicies = null)
   {

       var assumeRoleDoc = "{" +
                                   "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                   "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                        "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                        "\"Principal\": {" +
                                        "\"Service\": [" +
                                            "\"ec2.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                        "]" +
                                        "}," +
                                   "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                                   "}]" +
                               "}";

       var policyDocument = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(ssmOnlyPolicyFile);

       var policyArn = "";

       try
       {
           var createPolicyResult = await _amazonIam.CreatePolicyAsync(
               new CreatePolicyRequest
               {
                   PolicyName = policyName,
                   PolicyDocument = policyDocument
               });
```

```
            policyArn = createPolicyResult.Policy.Arn;
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            // The policy already exists, so we look it up to get the Arn.
            var policiesPaginator = _amazonIam.Paginators.ListPolicies(
                new ListPoliciesRequest()
                {
                    Scope = PolicyScopeType.Local
                });
            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var policy in policiesPaginator.Policies)
            {
                if (policy.PolicyName.Equals(policyName))
                {
                    policyArn = policy.Arn;
                }
            }

            if (policyArn == null)
            {
                throw new InvalidOperationException("Policy not found");
            }
        }

        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.CreateRoleAsync(new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRoleDoc,
            });
            await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                PolicyArn = policyArn
            });
            if (awsManagedPolicies != null)
            {
                foreach (var awsPolicy in awsManagedPolicies)
                {
                    await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
AttachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
```

```
                        PolicyArn = $"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{awsPolicy}",
                        RoleName = roleName
                    });
                }
            }
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Role already exists.");
        }

        string profileArn = "";
        try
        {
            var profileCreateResponse = await _amazonIam.CreateInstanceProfileAsync(
                new CreateInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            // Allow time for the profile to be ready.
            profileArn = profileCreateResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
            await _amazonIam.AddRoleToInstanceProfileAsync(
                new AddRoleToInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });

        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Policy already exists.");
            var profileGetResponse = await _amazonIam.GetInstanceProfileAsync(
                new GetInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            profileArn = profileGetResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
        }
        return profileArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Create a new key pair and save the file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newKeyPairName">The name of the new key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateKeyPair(string newKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            var keyResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateKeyPairAsync(
                new CreateKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = newKeyPairName });
            await File.WriteAllTextAsync($"{newKeyPairName}.pem",
                keyResponse.KeyPair.KeyMaterial);
            Console.WriteLine($"Created key pair {newKeyPairName}.");
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Key pair already exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the key pair and file by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="deleteKeyPairName">The key pair to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteKeyPairByName(string deleteKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteKeyPairAsync(
                new DeleteKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = deleteKeyPairName });
            File.Delete($"{deleteKeyPairName}.pem");
        }
        catch (FileNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Key pair {deleteKeyPairName} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling.
    /// The launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that runs
after
```

```
   /// the instance is started. This script installs the Python packages and starts
a Python
   /// web server on the instance.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="startupScriptPath">The path to a Bash script file that is
run.</param>
   /// <param name="instancePolicyPath">The path to a permissions policy to create
and attach to the profile.</param>
   /// <returns>The template object.</returns>
   public async Task<Amazon.EC2.Model.LaunchTemplate> CreateTemplate(string
startupScriptPath, string instancePolicyPath)
   {
       try
       {
           await CreateKeyPair(_keyPairName);
           await CreateInstanceProfileWithName(_instancePolicyName,
_instanceRoleName,
               _instanceProfileName, instancePolicyPath);

           var startServerText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(startupScriptPath);
           var plainTextBytes =
System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(startServerText);

           var amiLatest = await _amazonSsm.GetParameterAsync(
               new GetParameterRequest() { Name = _amiParam });
           var amiId = amiLatest.Parameter.Value;
           var launchTemplateResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateLaunchTemplateAsync(
               new CreateLaunchTemplateRequest()
               {
                   LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                   LaunchTemplateData = new RequestLaunchTemplateData()
                   {
                       InstanceType = _instanceType,
                       ImageId = amiId,
                       IamInstanceProfile =
                           new

LaunchTemplateIamInstanceProfileSpecificationRequest()
                           {
                               Name = _instanceProfileName
                           },
                       KeyName = _keyPairName,
                       UserData = System.Convert.ToBase64String(plainTextBytes)
                   }
```

```
                });
            return launchTemplateResponse.LaunchTemplate;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Could not create the template, the name
{_launchTemplateName} already exists. " +
                                 $"Please try again with a unique name.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while creating the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2 Client.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of availability zones.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> DescribeAvailabilityZones()
    {
        try
        {
            var zoneResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeAvailabilityZonesAsync(
                new DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest());
            return zoneResponse.AvailabilityZones.Select(z => z.ZoneName).ToList();
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An Amazon EC2 error occurred while listing
availability zones.: {ec2Exception.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
```

```
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while listing availability zones.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an EC2 Auto Scaling group of a specified size and name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupSize">The size for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The availability zones for the group.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateGroupOfSize(int groupSize, string groupName,
 List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonAutoScaling.CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    AvailabilityZones = availabilityZones,
                    LaunchTemplate =
                        new Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.LaunchTemplateSpecification()
                        {
                            LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                            Version = "$Default"
                        },
                    MaxSize = groupSize,
                    MinSize = groupSize
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Created EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} with size
 {groupSize}.");
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} already
 exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Get the default VPC for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The default VPC object.</returns>
    public async Task<Vpc> GetDefaultVpc()
    {
        try
        {
            var vpcResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeVpcsAsync(
                new DescribeVpcsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("is-default", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });
            return vpcResponse.Vpcs[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "UnauthorizedOperation")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"You do not have the necessary
permissions to describe VPCs.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the vpcs.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get all the subnets for a Vpc in a set of availability zones.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The list of availability zones.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of subnet objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Subnet>> GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(string vpcId,
List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
```

```
        try
        {
            var subnets = new List<Subnet>();
            var subnetPaginator = _amazonEc2.Paginators.DescribeSubnets(
                new DescribeSubnetsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpcId }),
                        new("availability-zone", availabilityZones),
                        new("default-for-az", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });

            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var subnet in subnetPaginator.Subnets)
            {
                subnets.Add(subnet);
            }

            return subnets;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"The specified VPC ID {vpcId} does
not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the subnets.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a launch template by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the template to delete.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTemplateByName(string templateName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new DeleteLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = templateName
                });
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Could not delete the template, the name {_launchTemplateName}
was not found.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while deleting the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
    /// and deletes all the resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="profileName">The name of the profile to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteInstanceProfile(string profileName, string roleName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileAsync(
                new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest()
```

```
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });
            await _amazonIam.DeleteInstanceProfileAsync(
                new DeleteInstanceProfileRequest() { InstanceProfileName =
profileName });
            var attachedPolicies = await _amazonIam.ListAttachedRolePoliciesAsync(
                new ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
            foreach (var policy in attachedPolicies.AttachedPolicies)
            {
                await _amazonIam.DetachRolePolicyAsync(
                    new DetachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        RoleName = roleName,
                        PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                    });
                // Delete the custom policies only.
                if (!policy.PolicyArn.StartsWith("arn:aws:iam::aws"))
                {
                    await _amazonIam.DeletePolicyAsync(
                        new Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.DeletePolicyRequest()
                        {
                            PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                        });
                }
            }

            await _amazonIam.DeleteRoleAsync(
                new DeleteRoleRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
        }
        catch (NoSuchEntityException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Instance profile {profileName} does not exist.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Gets data about the instances in an EC2 Auto Scaling group by its group
name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="group">The name of the auto scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of instance Ids.</returns>
    public async Task<IEnumerable<string>> GetInstancesByGroupName(string group)
```

```
    {
        var instanceResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { group }
            });
        var instanceIds = instanceResponse.AutoScalingGroups.SelectMany(
            g => g.Instances.Select(i => i.InstanceId));
        return instanceIds;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the instance profile association data for an instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Instance profile associations data.</returns>
    public async Task<IamInstanceProfileAssociation> GetInstanceProfile(string
instanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await
_amazonEc2.DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsAsync(
                new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("instance-id", new List<string>() { instanceId })
                    },
                });
            return response.IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
```

```
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while creating the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Replace the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile is
replaced, the instance
    /// is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile. When the instance is
ready, Systems Manager is
    /// used to restart the Python web server.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to update.</param>
    /// <param name="credsProfileName">The name of the new profile to associate with
the specified instance.</param>
    /// <param name="associationId">The Id of the existing profile association for
the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task ReplaceInstanceProfile(string instanceId, string
credsProfileName, string associationId)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationAsync(
                new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest()
                {
                    AssociationId = associationId,
                    IamInstanceProfile = new IamInstanceProfileSpecification()
                    {
                        Name = credsProfileName
                    }
                });
            // Allow time before resetting.
            Thread.Sleep(25000);

            await _amazonEc2.RebootInstancesAsync(
                new RebootInstancesRequest(new List<string>() { instanceId }));
            Thread.Sleep(25000);
            var instanceReady = false;
            var retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0 && !instanceReady)
            {
                var instancesPaginator =
```

```
                    _amazonSsm.Paginators.DescribeInstanceInformation(
                        new DescribeInstanceInformationRequest());
                // Get the entire list using the paginator.
                await foreach (var instance in
instancesPaginator.InstanceInformationList)
                {
                    instanceReady = instance.InstanceId == instanceId;
                    if (instanceReady)
                    {
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
            Console.WriteLine("Waiting for instance to be running.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
            Console.WriteLine("Instance ready.");
            Console.WriteLine($"Sending restart command to instance {instanceId}");
            await _amazonSsm.SendCommandAsync(
                new SendCommandRequest()
                {
                    InstanceIds = new List<string>() { instanceId },
                    DocumentName = "AWS-RunShellScript",
                    Parameters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>()
                    {
                        {
                            "commands",
                            new List<string>() { "cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80" }
                        }
                    }
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Restarted the web server on instance {instanceId}");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
```

```
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while replacing the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Try to terminate an instance by its Id.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to terminate.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryTerminateInstanceById(string instanceId)
    {
        var stopping = false;
        Console.WriteLine($"Stopping {instanceId}...");
        while (!stopping)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        InstanceId = instanceId,
                        ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false
                    });
                stopping = true;
            }
            catch (ScalingActivityInProgressException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Scaling activity in progress for {instanceId}.
Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Tries to delete the EC2 Auto Scaling group. If the group is in use or in
progress,
    /// waits and retries until the group is successfully deleted.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to try to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryDeleteGroupByName(string groupName)
```

```
    {
        var stopped = false;
        while (!stopped)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        AutoScalingGroupName = groupName
                    });
                stopped = true;
            }
            catch (Exception e)
                when ((e is ScalingActivityInProgressException)
                      || (e is Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.ResourceInUseException))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Some instances are still running. Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate instances and delete the Auto Scaling group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(string groupName)
    {
        var describeGroupsResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { groupName }
            });
        if (describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups.Any())
        {
            // Update the size to 0.
            await _amazonAutoScaling.UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    MinSize = 0
```

```
                });
            var group = describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups[0];
            foreach (var instance in group.Instances)
            {
                await TryTerminateInstanceById(instance.InstanceId);
            }

            await TryDeleteGroupByName(groupName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No groups found with name {groupName}.");
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default security group for a specified Vpc.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The Vpc to search.</param>
    /// <returns>The default security group.</returns>
    public async Task<SecurityGroup> GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(Vpc vpc)
    {
        var groupResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest()
            {
                Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                {
                    new ("group-name", new List<string>() { "default" }),
                    new ("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpc.VpcId })
                }
            });
        return groupResponse.SecurityGroups[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify the default security group of a Vpc allows ingress from the calling
computer.
    /// This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP address.
    /// In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network, you must
instead specify
    /// a prefix list Id. You can also temporarily open the port to any IP address
while running this example.
    /// If you do, be sure to remove public access when you're done.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The group to check.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to verify.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">This computer's IP address.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the ip address is allowed on the group.</returns>
    public bool VerifyInboundPortForGroup(SecurityGroup group, int port, string
ipAddress)
    {
        var portIsOpen = false;
        foreach (var ipPermission in group.IpPermissions)
        {
            if (ipPermission.FromPort == port)
            {
                foreach (var ipRange in ipPermission.Ipv4Ranges)
                {
                    var cidr = ipRange.CidrIp;
                    if (cidr.StartsWith(ipAddress) || cidr == "0.0.0.0/0")
                    {
                        portIsOpen = true;
                    }
                }

                if (ipPermission.PrefixListIds.Any())
                {
                    portIsOpen = true;
                }

                if (!portIsOpen)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("The inbound rule does not appear to be open
to either this computer's IP\n" +
                                      "address, to all IP addresses (0.0.0.0/0), or
to a prefix list ID.");
                }
                else
                {
                    break;
                }
            }
        }

        return portIsOpen;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Add an ingress rule to the specified security group that allows access on
 the
    /// specified port from the specified IP address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupId">The Id of the security group to modify.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to open.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">The IP address to allow access.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task OpenInboundPort(string groupId, int port, string ipAddress)
    {
        await _amazonEc2.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressAsync(
            new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest()
            {
                GroupId = groupId,
                IpPermissions = new List<IpPermission>()
                {
                    new IpPermission()
                    {
                        FromPort = port,
                        ToPort = port,
                        IpProtocol = "tcp",
                        Ipv4Ranges = new List<IpRange>()
                        {
                            new IpRange() { CidrIp = $"{ipAddress}/32" }
                        }
                    }
                }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
 Scaling group.
    /// The
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="autoScalingGroupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <param name="targetGroupArn">The Arn for the target group.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(string autoScalingGroupName, string
 targetGroupArn)
    {
        await _amazonAutoScaling.AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsAsync(
```

```
            new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupName = autoScalingGroupName,
                TargetGroupARNs = new List<string>() { targetGroupArn }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
 InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEc2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancer actions.
/// </summary>
public class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
    private string? _endpoint = null;
    private readonly string _targetGroupName = "";
    private readonly string _loadBalancerName = "";
    HttpClient _httpClient = new();

    public string TargetGroupName => _targetGroupName;
    public string LoadBalancerName => _loadBalancerName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Elastic Load Balancer wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2">The injected load balancing v2
 client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper(
        IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2,
        IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 = amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _targetGroupName = prefix + "-tg";
        _loadBalancerName = prefix + "-lb";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the HTTP Endpoint of a load balancer by its name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="loadBalancerName">The name of the load balancer.</param>
    /// <returns>The HTTP endpoint.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(string
 loadBalancerName)
    {
        if (_endpoint == null)
        {
            var endpointResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
```

```
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { loadBalancerName }
                    });
            _endpoint = endpointResponse.LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
        }

        return _endpoint;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Return the GET response for an endpoint as text.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint for the request.</param>
    /// <returns>The request response.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndPointResponse(string endpoint)
    {
        var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://{endpoint}");
        var textResponse = await endpointResponse.Content.ReadAsStringAsync();
        return textResponse!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the target health for a group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of health descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TargetHealthDescription>>
CheckTargetHealthForGroup(string groupName)
    {
        List<TargetHealthDescription> result = null!;
        try
        {
            var groupResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                    });
            var healthResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetHealthAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetHealthRequest()
                    {
                        TargetGroupArn =
groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn
```

```
                    });
            ;
            result = healthResponse.TargetHealthDescriptions;
        }
        catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Target group {groupName} not found.");
        }
        return result;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
 how the load balancer forwards
    /// requests to instances in the group and how instance health is checked.
    ///
    /// To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened times
 and lower thresholds. In production,
    /// you might want to decrease the sensitivity of your health checks to avoid
 unwanted failures.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="protocol">The protocol, such as HTTP.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.</param>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc in which the load balancer exists.</
param>
    /// <returns>The new TargetGroup object.</returns>
    public async Task<TargetGroup> CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(string groupName,
 ProtocolEnum protocol, int port, string vpcId)
    {
        var createResponse = await
 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateTargetGroupAsync(
            new CreateTargetGroupRequest()
            {
                Name = groupName,
                Protocol = protocol,
                Port = port,
                HealthCheckPath = "/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds = 10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds = 5,
                HealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                VpcId = vpcId
            });
```

```
        var targetGroup = createResponse.TargetGroups[0];
        return targetGroup;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
subnets
    /// and forwards requests to the specified target group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name for the new load balancer.</param>
    /// <param name="subnetIds">Subnets for the load balancer.</param>
    /// <param name="targetGroup">Target group for forwarded requests.</param>
    /// <returns>The new LoadBalancer object.</returns>
    public async Task<LoadBalancer> CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(string name,
List<string> subnetIds, TargetGroup targetGroup)
    {
        var createLbResponse = await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateLoadBalancerAsync(
            new CreateLoadBalancerRequest()
            {
                Name = name,
                Subnets = subnetIds
            });
        var loadBalancerArn = createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;

        // Wait for load balancer to be available.
        var loadBalancerReady = false;
        while (!loadBalancerReady)
        {
            try
            {
                var describeResponse =
                    await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                        new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { name }
                        });

                var loadBalancerState =
describeResponse.LoadBalancers[0].State.Code;

                loadBalancerReady = loadBalancerState ==
LoadBalancerStateEnum.Active;
            }
```

```
            catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
            {
                loadBalancerReady = false;
            }
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
        }
        // Create the listener.
        await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateListenerAsync(
            new CreateListenerRequest()
            {
                LoadBalancerArn = loadBalancerArn,
                Protocol = targetGroup.Protocol,
                Port = targetGroup.Port,
                DefaultActions = new List<Action>()
                {
                    new Action()
                    {
                        Type = ActionTypeEnum.Forward,
                        TargetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn
                    }
                }
            });
        return createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the
    /// load balancer endpoint.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint to check.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(string endpoint)
    {
        var success = false;
        var retries = 3;
        while (!success && retries > 0)
        {
            try
            {
                var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://
{endpoint}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Response: {endpointResponse.StatusCode}.");

                if (endpointResponse.IsSuccessStatusCode)
```

```
                {
                    success = true;
                }
                else
                {
                    retries = 0;
                }
            }
            catch (HttpRequestException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Connection error, retrying...");
                retries--;
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }

        return success;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a load balancer by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the load balancer to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteLoadBalancerByName(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var describeLoadBalancerResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { name }
                    });
            var lbArn =
describeLoadBalancerResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
            await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteLoadBalancerAsync(
                new DeleteLoadBalancerRequest()
                {
                    LoadBalancerArn = lbArn
                }
            );
        }
        catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Load balancer {name} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a TargetGroup by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">Name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTargetGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var done = false;
        while (!done)
        {
            try
            {
                var groupResponse =
                    await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                        new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                        });

                var targetArn = groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn;
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteTargetGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteTargetGroupRequest() { TargetGroupArn = targetArn });
                Console.WriteLine($"Deleted load balancing target group
{groupName}.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Target group {groupName} not found, could not delete.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (ResourceInUseException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Target group not yet released, waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates a DynamoDB table to use as a service that recommends books, movies,
 and songs.
/// </summary>
public class Recommendations
{
    private readonly IAmazonDynamoDB _amazonDynamoDb;
    private readonly DynamoDBContext _context;
    private readonly string _tableName;

    public string TableName => _tableName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Recommendations service.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonDynamoDb">The injected DynamoDb client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public Recommendations(IAmazonDynamoDB amazonDynamoDb, IConfiguration
 configuration)
    {
        _amazonDynamoDb = amazonDynamoDb;
        _context = new DynamoDBContext(_amazonDynamoDb);
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create the DynamoDb table with a specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name for the table.</param>
    /// <returns>True when ready.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateDatabaseWithName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            Console.Write($"Creating table {tableName}...");
            var createRequest = new CreateTableRequest()
            {
                TableName = tableName,
```

```
                AttributeDefinitions = new List<AttributeDefinition>()
                    {
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
                        },
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N
                        }
                    },
                KeySchema = new List<KeySchemaElement>()
                    {
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            KeyType = KeyType.HASH
                        },
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            KeyType = KeyType.RANGE
                        }
                    },
                ProvisionedThroughput = new ProvisionedThroughput()
                {
                    ReadCapacityUnits = 5,
                    WriteCapacityUnits = 5
                }
            };
            await _amazonDynamoDb.CreateTableAsync(createRequest);

            // Wait until the table is ACTIVE and then report success.
            Console.Write("\nWaiting for table to become active...");

            var request = new DescribeTableRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName
            };

            TableStatus status;
            do
```

```
            {
                Thread.Sleep(2000);

                var describeTableResponse = await
 _amazonDynamoDb.DescribeTableAsync(request);
                status = describeTableResponse.Table.TableStatus;

                Console.Write(".");
            }
            while (status != "ACTIVE");

            return status == TableStatus.ACTIVE;
        }
        catch (ResourceInUseException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} already exists.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the database table with data from a specified path.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="databaseTableName">The name of the table.</param>
    /// <param name="recommendationsPath">The path of the recommendations data.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PopulateDatabase(string databaseTableName, string
 recommendationsPath)
    {
        var recommendationsText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(recommendationsPath);
        var records =
            JsonSerializer.Deserialize<RecommendationModel[]>(recommendationsText);
        var batchWrite = _context.CreateBatchWrite<RecommendationModel>();

        foreach (var record in records!)
        {
            batchWrite.AddPutItem(record);
        }

        await batchWrite.ExecuteAsync();
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Delete the recommendation table by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the recommendation table.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DestroyDatabaseByName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonDynamoDb.DeleteTableAsync(
                new DeleteTableRequest() { TableName = tableName });
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was deleted.");
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} not found");
        }
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Systems Manager parameter operations. This example uses these
 parameters
/// to drive the demonstration of resilient architecture, such as failure of a
 dependency or
/// how the service responds to a health check.
/// </summary>
public class SmParameterWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;

    private readonly string _tableParameter = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-
table";
    private readonly string _failureResponseParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-failure-response";
    private readonly string _healthCheckParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-health-check";
    private readonly string _tableName = "";

    public string TableParameter => _tableParameter;
    public string TableName => _tableName;
```

```
    public string HealthCheckParameter => _healthCheckParameter;
    public string FailureResponseParameter => _failureResponseParameter;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the SmParameterWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSimpleSystemsManagement">The injected Simple Systems
 Management client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public SmParameterWrapper(IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement
 amazonSimpleSystemsManagement, IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement = amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Reset the Systems Manager parameters to starting values for the demo.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task Reset()
    {
        await this.PutParameterByName(_tableParameter, _tableName);
        await this.PutParameterByName(_failureResponseParameter, "none");
        await this.PutParameterByName(_healthCheckParameter, "shallow");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set the value of a named Systems Manager parameter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the parameter.</param>
    /// <param name="value">The value to set.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PutParameterByName(string name, string value)
    {
        await _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement.PutParameterAsync(
            new PutParameterRequest() { Name = name, Value = value, Overwrite =
 true });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

- AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
- CreateAutoScalingGroup
- CreateInstanceProfile
- CreateLaunchTemplate
- CreateListener
- CreateLoadBalancer
- CreateTargetGroup
- DeleteAutoScalingGroup
- DeleteInstanceProfile
- DeleteLaunchTemplate
- DeleteLoadBalancer
- DeleteTargetGroup
- DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Amazon ECS examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon ECS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`ListClusters`

The following code example shows how to use `ListClusters`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List cluster ARNs available.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The ARN list of clusters.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> GetClusterARNSAsync()
    {

        Console.WriteLine("Getting a list of all the clusters in your AWS
account...");
        List<string> clusterArnList = new List<string>();
        // Get a list of all the clusters in your AWS account
        try
        {
```

```
            var listClustersResponse = _ecsClient.Paginators.ListClusters(new
ListClustersRequest
            {
            });

            var clusterArns = listClustersResponse.ClusterArns;

            // Print the ARNs of the clusters
            await foreach (var clusterArn in clusterArns)
            {
                clusterArnList.Add(clusterArn);
            }

            if (clusterArnList.Count == 0)
            {
                _logger.LogWarning("No clusters found in your AWS account.");
            }
            return clusterArnList;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while getting a list of all the
clusters in your AWS account. {e.InnerException}");
            throw new Exception($"An error occurred while getting a list of all the
clusters in your AWS account. {e.InnerException}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListClusters in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListServices`

The following code example shows how to use `ListServices`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List service ARNs available.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clusterARN">The arn of the ECS cluster.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN list of services in given cluster.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> GetServiceARNSAsync(string clusterARN)
    {
        List<string> serviceArns = new List<string>();

        var request = new ListServicesRequest
        {
            Cluster = clusterARN
        };
        // Call the ListServices API operation and get the list of service ARNs
        var serviceList = _ecsClient.Paginators.ListServices(request);

        await foreach (var serviceARN in serviceList.ServiceArns)
        {
            if (serviceARN is null)
                continue;

            serviceArns.Add(serviceARN);
        }

        if (serviceArns.Count == 0)
        {
            _logger.LogWarning($"No services found in cluster {clusterARN} .");
        }

        return serviceArns;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListServices in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListTasks`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTasks`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// List task ARNs available.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="clusterARN">The arn of the ECS cluster.</param>
/// <returns>The ARN list of tasks in given cluster.</returns>
public async Task<List<string>> GetTaskARNsAsync(string clusterARN)
{
    // Set up the request to describe the tasks in the service
    var listTasksRequest = new ListTasksRequest
    {
        Cluster = clusterARN
    };
    List<string> taskArns = new List<string>();

    // Call the ListTasks API operation and get the list of task ARNs
    var tasks = _ecsClient.Paginators.ListTasks(listTasksRequest);

    await foreach (var task in tasks.TaskArns)
    {
        if (task is null)
            continue;


        taskArns.Add(task);
    }

    if (taskArns.Count == 0)
    {
        _logger.LogWarning("No tasks found in cluster: " + clusterARN);
    }

    return taskArns;
}
```

- For API details, see ListTasks in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Get ARN information for clusters, services, and tasks

The following code example shows how to:

- Get a list of all clusters.
- Get services for a cluster.
- Get tasks for a cluster.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
using Amazon.ECS;
using ECSActions;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;

namespace ECSScenario;

public class ECSScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.


    This .NET example performs the following tasks:
        1. List ECS Cluster ARNs.
```

```
        2. List services in every cluster
        3. List Task ARNs in every cluster.
    */

    private static ILogger logger = null!;
    private static ECSWrapper _ecsWrapper = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
        .Build();

        ILoggerFactory loggerFactory = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
        {
            builder.AddConsole();
        });

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<ECSScenario>();

        var loggerECSWarpper = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
{ builder.AddConsole(); })
          .CreateLogger<ECSWrapper>();

        var amazonECSClient = new AmazonECSClient();

        _ecsWrapper = new ECSWrapper(amazonECSClient, loggerECSWarpper);

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon ECS example scenario.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        try
        {
            await ListClusterARNs();
            await ListServiceARNs();
            await ListTaskARNs();
```

```
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem executing the scenario.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List ECS Cluster ARNs
    /// </summary>
    private static async Task ListClusterARNs()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"1. List Cluster ARNs from ECS.");
        var arns = await _ecsWrapper.GetClusterARNSAsync();

        foreach (var arn in arns)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Cluster arn: {arn}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Cluster name: {arn.Split("/").Last()}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List services in every cluster
    /// </summary>
    private static async Task ListServiceARNs()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"2. List Service ARNs in every cluster.");
        var clusterARNs = await _ecsWrapper.GetClusterARNSAsync();

        foreach (var clusterARN in clusterARNs)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Getting services for cluster name:
{clusterARN.Split("/").Last()}");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('.', 5));


            var serviceARNs = await _ecsWrapper.GetServiceARNSAsync(clusterARN);
```

```
            foreach (var serviceARN in serviceARNs)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Service arn: {serviceARN}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Service name: {serviceARN.Split("/").Last()}");
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List tasks in every cluster
    /// </summary>
    private static async Task ListTaskARNs()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"3. List Task ARNs in every cluster.");
        var clusterARNs = await _ecsWrapper.GetClusterARNSAsync();

        foreach (var clusterARN in clusterARNs)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Getting tasks for cluster name:
 {clusterARN.Split("/").Last()}");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('.', 5));

            var taskARNs = await _ecsWrapper.GetTaskARNsAsync(clusterARN);

            foreach (var taskARN in taskARNs)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Task arn: {taskARN}");
            }
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }
}
```

Wrapper methods that are called by the scenario to manage Amazon ECS actions.

```
using Amazon.ECS;
using Amazon.ECS.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
```

```
namespace ECSActions;

public class ECSWrapper
{
    private readonly AmazonECSClient _ecsClient;
    private readonly ILogger<ECSWrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the ECS wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ecsClient">The injected ECS client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The injected logger for the wrapper.</param>
    public ECSWrapper(AmazonECSClient ecsClient, ILogger<ECSWrapper> logger)

    {
        _logger = logger;
        _ecsClient = ecsClient;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List cluster ARNs available.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The ARN list of clusters.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> GetClusterARNSAsync()
    {

        Console.WriteLine("Getting a list of all the clusters in your AWS
 account...");
        List<string> clusterArnList = new List<string>();
        // Get a list of all the clusters in your AWS account
        try
        {

            var listClustersResponse = _ecsClient.Paginators.ListClusters(new
 ListClustersRequest
            {
            });

            var clusterArns = listClustersResponse.ClusterArns;

            // Print the ARNs of the clusters
            await foreach (var clusterArn in clusterArns)
            {
```

```
                clusterArnList.Add(clusterArn);
            }

            if (clusterArnList.Count == 0)
            {
                _logger.LogWarning("No clusters found in your AWS account.");
            }
            return clusterArnList;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while getting a list of all the
clusters in your AWS account. {e.InnerException}");
            throw new Exception($"An error occurred while getting a list of all the
clusters in your AWS account. {e.InnerException}");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List service ARNs available.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clusterARN">The arn of the ECS cluster.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN list of services in given cluster.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> GetServiceARNSAsync(string clusterARN)
    {
        List<string> serviceArns = new List<string>();

        var request = new ListServicesRequest
        {
            Cluster = clusterARN
        };
        // Call the ListServices API operation and get the list of service ARNs
        var serviceList = _ecsClient.Paginators.ListServices(request);

        await foreach (var serviceARN in serviceList.ServiceArns)
        {
            if (serviceARN is null)
                continue;

            serviceArns.Add(serviceARN);
        }

        if (serviceArns.Count == 0)
        {
```

```
            _logger.LogWarning($"No services found in cluster {clusterARN} .");
        }

        return serviceArns;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List task ARNs available.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clusterARN">The arn of the ECS cluster.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN list of tasks in given cluster.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> GetTaskARNsAsync(string clusterARN)
    {
        // Set up the request to describe the tasks in the service
        var listTasksRequest = new ListTasksRequest
        {
            Cluster = clusterARN
        };
        List<string> taskArns = new List<string>();

        // Call the ListTasks API operation and get the list of task ARNs
        var tasks = _ecsClient.Paginators.ListTasks(listTasksRequest);

        await foreach (var task in tasks.TaskArns)
        {
            if (task is null)
                continue;


            taskArns.Add(task);
        }

        if (taskArns.Count == 0)
        {
            _logger.LogWarning("No tasks found in cluster: " + clusterARN);
        }

        return taskArns;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

- ListClusters
- ListServices
- ListTasks

Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateListener`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateListener`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
```

```
   /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
subnets
   /// and forwards requests to the specified target group.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="name">The name for the new load balancer.</param>
   /// <param name="subnetIds">Subnets for the load balancer.</param>
   /// <param name="targetGroup">Target group for forwarded requests.</param>
   /// <returns>The new LoadBalancer object.</returns>
   public async Task<LoadBalancer> CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(string name,
List<string> subnetIds, TargetGroup targetGroup)
   {
       var createLbResponse = await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateLoadBalancerAsync(
           new CreateLoadBalancerRequest()
           {
               Name = name,
               Subnets = subnetIds
           });
       var loadBalancerArn = createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;

       // Wait for load balancer to be available.
       var loadBalancerReady = false;
       while (!loadBalancerReady)
       {
           try
           {
               var describeResponse =
                   await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                       new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                       {
                           Names = new List<string>() { name }
                       });

               var loadBalancerState =
describeResponse.LoadBalancers[0].State.Code;

               loadBalancerReady = loadBalancerState ==
LoadBalancerStateEnum.Active;
           }
           catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
           {
               loadBalancerReady = false;
           }
           Thread.Sleep(10000);
```

```
        }
        // Create the listener.
        await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateListenerAsync(
            new CreateListenerRequest()
            {
                LoadBalancerArn = loadBalancerArn,
                Protocol = targetGroup.Protocol,
                Port = targetGroup.Port,
                DefaultActions = new List<Action>()
                {
                    new Action()
                    {
                        Type = ActionTypeEnum.Forward,
                        TargetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn
                    }
                }
            });
        return createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0];
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateListener in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateLoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateLoadBalancer`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
subnets
    /// and forwards requests to the specified target group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name for the new load balancer.</param>
    /// <param name="subnetIds">Subnets for the load balancer.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="targetGroup">Target group for forwarded requests.</param>
    /// <returns>The new LoadBalancer object.</returns>
    public async Task<LoadBalancer> CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(string name,
List<string> subnetIds, TargetGroup targetGroup)
    {
        var createLbResponse = await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateLoadBalancerAsync(
            new CreateLoadBalancerRequest()
            {
                Name = name,
                Subnets = subnetIds
            });
        var loadBalancerArn = createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;

        // Wait for load balancer to be available.
        var loadBalancerReady = false;
        while (!loadBalancerReady)
        {
            try
            {
                var describeResponse =
                    await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                        new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { name }
                        });

                var loadBalancerState =
describeResponse.LoadBalancers[0].State.Code;

                loadBalancerReady = loadBalancerState ==
LoadBalancerStateEnum.Active;
            }
            catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
            {
                loadBalancerReady = false;
            }
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
        }
        // Create the listener.
        await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateListenerAsync(
            new CreateListenerRequest()
            {
                LoadBalancerArn = loadBalancerArn,
```

```
                Protocol = targetGroup.Protocol,
                Port = targetGroup.Port,
                DefaultActions = new List<Action>()
                {
                    new Action()
                    {
                        Type = ActionTypeEnum.Forward,
                        TargetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn
                    }
                }
            });
        return createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0];
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancer in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateTargetGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTargetGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
how the load balancer forwards
    /// requests to instances in the group and how instance health is checked.
    ///
    /// To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened times
and lower thresholds. In production,
    /// you might want to decrease the sensitivity of your health checks to avoid
unwanted failures.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="protocol">The protocol, such as HTTP.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc in which the load balancer exists.</
param>
    /// <returns>The new TargetGroup object.</returns>
    public async Task<TargetGroup> CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(string groupName,
 ProtocolEnum protocol, int port, string vpcId)
    {
        var createResponse = await
 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateTargetGroupAsync(
            new CreateTargetGroupRequest()
            {
                Name = groupName,
                Protocol = protocol,
                Port = port,
                HealthCheckPath = "/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds = 10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds = 5,
                HealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                VpcId = vpcId
            });
        var targetGroup = createResponse.TargetGroups[0];
        return targetGroup;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTargetGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteLoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteLoadBalancer`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a load balancer by its specified name.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the load balancer to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteLoadBalancerByName(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var describeLoadBalancerResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { name }
                    });
            var lbArn =
describeLoadBalancerResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
            await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteLoadBalancerAsync(
                new DeleteLoadBalancerRequest()
                {
                    LoadBalancerArn = lbArn
                }
            );
        }
        catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Load balancer {name} not found.");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancer in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteTargetGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTargetGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a TargetGroup by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">Name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTargetGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var done = false;
        while (!done)
        {
            try
            {
                var groupResponse =
                    await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                        new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                        });

                var targetArn = groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn;
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteTargetGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteTargetGroupRequest() { TargetGroupArn = targetArn });
                Console.WriteLine($"Deleted load balancing target group
{groupName}.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Target group {groupName} not found, could not delete.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (ResourceInUseException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Target group not yet released, waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTargetGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeLoadBalancers`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeLoadBalancers`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the HTTP Endpoint of a load balancer by its name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="loadBalancerName">The name of the load balancer.</param>
    /// <returns>The HTTP endpoint.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(string
loadBalancerName)
    {
        if (_endpoint == null)
        {
            var endpointResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { loadBalancerName }
                    });
            _endpoint = endpointResponse.LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
        }

        return _endpoint;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeTargetHealth`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTargetHealth`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the target health for a group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of health descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TargetHealthDescription>>
CheckTargetHealthForGroup(string groupName)
    {
        List<TargetHealthDescription> result = null!;
        try
        {
            var groupResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                    });
            var healthResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetHealthAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetHealthRequest()
                    {
                        TargetGroupArn =
groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn
                    });
            ;
            result = healthResponse.TargetHealthDescriptions;
        }
        catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Target group {groupName} not found.");
        }
        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetHealth in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build and manage a resilient service

The following code example shows how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
static async Task Main(string[] args)
{
    _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
        .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
        .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
        .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
            true) // Optionally, load local settings.
```

```
            .Build();


        // Set up dependency injection for the AWS services.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonDynamoDB>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonAutoScaling>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>()
                    .AddTransient<AutoScalerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<SmParameterWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<Recommendations>()
                    .AddSingleton<IConfiguration>(_configuration)
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);
        ResourcesSetup();

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Resilient Architecture Example
Scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Deploy(true);

            Console.WriteLine("Now let's begin the scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Demo(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Finally, let's clean up our resources.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
            await DestroyResources(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Resilient Architecture Example Scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            await DestroyResources(true);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Setup any common resources, also used for integration testing.
    /// </summary>
    public static void ResourcesSetup()
    {
        _httpClient = new HttpClient();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>();
        _iamClient =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>();
        _recommendations = host.Services.GetRequiredService<Recommendations>();
        _autoScalerWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<AutoScalerWrapper>();
        _smParameterWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<SmParameterWrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deploy necessary resources for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Deploy(bool interactive)
    {
        var protocol = "HTTP";
        var port = 80;
        var sshPort = 22;

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nFor this demo, we'll use the AWS SDK for .NET to create several AWS
resources\n" +
            "to set up a load-balanced web service endpoint and explore some ways to
make it resilient\n" +
            "against various kinds of failures.\n\n" +
            "Some of the resources create by this demo are:\n");

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* A DynamoDB table that the web service depends on to provide book,
movie, and song recommendations.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 launch template that defines EC2 instances that each contain
a Python web server.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 Auto Scaling group that manages EC2 instances across several
Availability Zones.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) load balancer that targets the Auto
Scaling group to distribute requests.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to start deploying
resources.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        // Create and populate the DynamoDB table.
        var databaseTableName = _configuration["databaseName"];
        var recommendationsPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "recommendations_objects.json");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating and populating a DynamoDB table named
{databaseTableName}.");
        await _recommendations.CreateDatabaseWithName(databaseTableName);
        await _recommendations.PopulateDatabase(databaseTableName,
recommendationsPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
        // Create the EC2 Launch Template.

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Creating an EC2 launch template that runs 'server_startup_script.sh'
when an instance starts.\n"
            + "\nThis script starts a Python web server defined in the `server.py`
script. The web server\n"
            + "listens to HTTP requests on port 80 and responds to requests to '/'
and to '/healthcheck'.\n"
            + "For demo purposes, this server is run as the root user. In
production, the best practice is to\n"
            + "run a web server, such as Apache, with least-privileged
credentials.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nThe template also defines an IAM policy that each instance uses to
assume a role that grants\n"
            + "permissions to access the DynamoDB recommendation table and Systems
Manager parameters\n"
            + "that control the flow of the demo.");

        var startupScriptPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "server_startup_script.sh");
        var instancePolicyPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "instance_policy.json");
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateTemplate(startupScriptPath,
instancePolicyPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group that maintains three EC2 instances,
each in a different\n"
            + "Availability Zone.\n");
        var zones = await _autoScalerWrapper.DescribeAvailabilityZones();
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateGroupOfSize(3, _autoScalerWrapper.GroupName,
zones);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "At this point, you have EC2 instances created. Once each instance
starts, it listens for\n"
            + "HTTP requests. You can see these instances in the console or continue
with the demo.\n");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("Creating variables that control the flow of the demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nCreating an Elastic Load Balancing target group and load balancer.
 The target group\n"
            + "defines how the load balancer connects to instances. The load
 balancer provides a\n"
            + "single endpoint where clients connect and dispatches requests to
 instances in the group.");

        var defaultVpc = await _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultVpc();
        var subnets = await
 _autoScalerWrapper.GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(defaultVpc.VpcId, zones);
        var subnetIds = subnets.Select(s => s.SubnetId).ToList();
        var targetGroup = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGroupN
 protocol, port, defaultVpc.VpcId);

        await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.LoadB
 subnetIds, targetGroup);
        await
 _autoScalerWrapper.AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName,
 targetGroup.TargetGroupArn);
        Console.WriteLine("\nVerifying access to the load balancer endpoint...");
        var endPoint = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.Lo
        var loadBalancerAccess = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);

        if (!loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\nCouldn't connect to the load balancer, verifying
 that the port is open...");

            var ipString = await _httpClient.GetStringAsync("https://
checkip.amazonaws.com");
            ipString = ipString.Trim();
```

```
            var defaultSecurityGroup = await
 _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(defaultVpc);
            var portIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, port, ipString);
            var sshPortIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, sshPort,
 ipString);

            if (!portIsOpen)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    "\nFor this example to work, the default security group for your
 default VPC must\n"
                    + "allows access from this computer. You can either add it
 automatically from this\n"
                    + "example or add it yourself using the AWS Management Console.
\n");

                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
 inbound traffic from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
                    await
 _autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, port, ipString);
                }
            }

            if (!sshPortIsOpen)
            {
                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
 inbound SSH traffic for debugging from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
                    await
 _autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, sshPort,
 ipString);
                }
            }
            loadBalancerAccess = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);
        }

        if (loadBalancerAccess)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Your load balancer is ready. You can access it by
browsing to:");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "\nCouldn't get a successful response from the load balancer
endpoint. Troubleshoot by\n"
                + "manually verifying that your VPC and security group are
configured correctly and that\n"
                + "you can successfully make a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint:\n");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue with the
demo.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Demonstrate the steps of the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as an interactive scenario.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Demo(bool interactive)
    {
        var ssmOnlyPolicy = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "ssm_only_policy.json");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Resetting parameters to starting values for demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine("\nThis part of the demonstration shows how to toggle
different parts of the system\n" +
                          "to create situations where the web service fails, and
shows how using a resilient\n" +
                          "architecture can keep the web service running in spite of
these failures.");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 88));
        Console.WriteLine("At the start, the load balancer endpoint returns
 recommendations and reports that all targets are healthy.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine($"The web service running on the EC2 instances gets
 recommendations by querying a DynamoDB table.\n" +
                          $"The table name is contained in a Systems Manager
 parameter named '{_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter}'.\n" +
                          $"To simulate a failure of the recommendation service,
 let's set this parameter to name a non-existent table.\n");
        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter, "this-
is-not-a-table");
        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
 endpoint returns a failure code. But, the service reports as\n" +
                          "healthy to the load balancer because shallow health
 checks don't check for failure of the recommendation service.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Instead of failing when the recommendation service fails,
 the web service can return a static response.");
        Console.WriteLine("While this is not a perfect solution, it presents the
 customer with a somewhat better experience than failure.");

        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.FailureResponseParameter,
 "static");

        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
 endpoint returns a static response.");
        Console.WriteLine("The service still reports as healthy because health
 checks are still shallow.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Let's reinstate the recommendation service.\n");
        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter,
 _smParameterWrapper.TableName);
        Console.WriteLine(
```

```
            "\nLet's also substitute bad credentials for one of the instances in the
target group so that it can't\n" +
            "access the DynamoDB recommendation table.\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsPolicyName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            ssmOnlyPolicy,
            new List<string> { "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore" }
        );
        var instances = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstancesByGroupName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName);
        var badInstanceId = instances.First();
        var instanceProfile = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstanceProfile(badInstanceId);
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Replacing the profile for instance {badInstanceId} with a profile that
contains\n" +
            "bad credentials...\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.ReplaceInstanceProfile(
            badInstanceId,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            instanceProfile.AssociationId
        );
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint returns either
a recommendation or a static response,\n" +
            "depending on which instance is selected by the load balancer.\n"
        );
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nLet's implement a deep health check. For this demo, a
deep health check tests whether");
        Console.WriteLine("the web service can access the DynamoDB table that it
depends on for recommendations. Note that");
        Console.WriteLine("the deep health check is only for ELB routing and not for
Auto Scaling instance health.");
        Console.WriteLine("This kind of deep health check is not recommended for
Auto Scaling instance health, because it");
        Console.WriteLine("risks accidental termination of all instances in the Auto
Scaling group when a dependent service fails.");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("\nBy implementing deep health checks, the load balancer
can detect when one of the instances is failing");
        Console.WriteLine("and take that instance out of rotation.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.HealthCheckParameter,
"deep");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nNow, checking target health indicates that the
instance with bad credentials ({badInstanceId})");
        Console.WriteLine("is unhealthy. Note that it might take a minute or two for
the load balancer to detect the unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance. Sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint always returns a recommendation, because");
        Console.WriteLine("the load balancer takes unhealthy instances out of its
rotation.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nBecause the instances in this demo are controlled by an
auto scaler, the simplest way to fix an unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance is to terminate it and let the auto scaler start
a new instance to replace it.");

        await _autoScalerWrapper.TryTerminateInstanceById(badInstanceId);

        Console.WriteLine($"\nEven while the instance is terminating and the new
instance is starting, sending a GET");
        Console.WriteLine("request to the web service continues to get a successful
recommendation response because");
        Console.WriteLine("starts and reports as healthy, it is included in the load
balancing rotation.");
        Console.WriteLine("Note that terminating and replacing an instance typically
takes several minutes, during which time you");
        Console.WriteLine("can see the changing health check status until the new
instance is running and healthy.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nIf the recommendation service fails now, deep health
checks mean all instances report as unhealthy.");
```

```
        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter, "this-
is-not-a-table");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nWhen all instances are unhealthy, the load balancer
 continues to route requests even to");
        Console.WriteLine("unhealthy instances, allowing them to fail open and
 return a static response rather than fail");
        Console.WriteLine("closed and report failure to the customer.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to ask the user for cleanup.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> DestroyResources(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine(
            "To keep things tidy and to avoid unwanted charges on your account, we
 can clean up all AWS resources\n" +
            "that were created for this demo."
        );

        if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse("Do you want to clean up all demo
 resources? (y/n) "))
        {
            await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.LoadBalanc
            await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteTargetGroupByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGroup
            await
 _autoScalerWrapper.TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName)
            await
 _autoScalerWrapper.DeleteKeyPairByName(_autoScalerWrapper.KeyPairName);
```

```
            await
 _autoScalerWrapper.DeleteTemplateByName(_autoScalerWrapper.LaunchTemplateName);
            await _autoScalerWrapper.DeleteInstanceProfile(
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName
            );
            await
 _recommendations.DestroyDatabaseByName(_recommendations.TableName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Ok, we'll leave the resources intact.\n" +
                "Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you might
 incur unexpected charges."
            );
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management methods.
/// </summary>
public class AutoScalerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonAutoScaling _amazonAutoScaling;
    private readonly IAmazonEC2 _amazonEc2;
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement _amazonSsm;
    private readonly IAmazonIdentityManagementService _amazonIam;
    private readonly ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> _logger;

    private readonly string _instanceType = "";
    private readonly string _amiParam = "";
    private readonly string _launchTemplateName = "";
    private readonly string _groupName = "";
    private readonly string _instancePolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceProfileName = "";
```

```
    private readonly string _badCredsProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsPolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _keyPairName = "";

    public string GroupName => _groupName;
    public string KeyPairName => _keyPairName;
    public string LaunchTemplateName => _launchTemplateName;
    public string InstancePolicyName => _instancePolicyName;
    public string BadCredsProfileName => _badCredsProfileName;
    public string BadCredsRoleName => _badCredsRoleName;
    public string BadCredsPolicyName => _badCredsPolicyName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the AutoScalerWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonAutoScaling">The injected AutoScaling client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonEc2">The injected EC2 client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonIam">The injected IAM client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonSsm">The injected SSM client.</param>
    public AutoScalerWrapper(
        IAmazonAutoScaling amazonAutoScaling,
        IAmazonEC2 amazonEc2,
        IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement amazonSsm,
        IAmazonIdentityManagementService amazonIam,
        IConfiguration configuration,
        ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonAutoScaling = amazonAutoScaling;
        _amazonEc2 = amazonEc2;
        _amazonSsm = amazonSsm;
        _amazonIam = amazonIam;
        _logger = logger;

        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _instanceType = configuration["instanceType"];
        _amiParam = configuration["amiParam"];

        _launchTemplateName = prefix + "-template";
        _groupName = prefix + "-group";
        _instancePolicyName = prefix + "-pol";
        _instanceRoleName = prefix + "-role";
        _instanceProfileName = prefix + "-prof";
        _badCredsPolicyName = prefix + "-bc-pol";
```

```
        _badCredsRoleName = prefix + "-bc-role";
        _badCredsProfileName = prefix + "-bc-prof";
        _keyPairName = prefix + "-key-pair";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances with a
specified name.
    /// An instance's associated profile defines a role that is assumed by the
    /// instance.The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
granted to
    /// clients that run on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">Name to use for the policy.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">Name to use for the role.</param>
    /// <param name="profileName">Name to use for the profile.</param>
    /// <param name="ssmOnlyPolicyFile">Path to a policy file for SSM.</param>
    /// <param name="awsManagedPolicies">AWS Managed policies to be attached to the
role.</param>
    /// <returns>The Arn of the profile.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
        string policyName,
        string roleName,
        string profileName,
        string ssmOnlyPolicyFile,
        List<string>? awsManagedPolicies = null)
    {

        var assumeRoleDoc = "{" +
                                    "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                    "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                         "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                         "\"Principal\": {" +
                                         "\"Service\": [" +
                                             "\"ec2.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                         "]" +
                                         "}," +
                                    "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                                    "}]" +
                                "}";

        var policyDocument = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(ssmOnlyPolicyFile);

        var policyArn = "";
```

```
        try
        {
            var createPolicyResult = await _amazonIam.CreatePolicyAsync(
                new CreatePolicyRequest
                {
                    PolicyName = policyName,
                    PolicyDocument = policyDocument
                });
            policyArn = createPolicyResult.Policy.Arn;
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            // The policy already exists, so we look it up to get the Arn.
            var policiesPaginator = _amazonIam.Paginators.ListPolicies(
                new ListPoliciesRequest()
                {
                    Scope = PolicyScopeType.Local
                });
            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var policy in policiesPaginator.Policies)
            {
                if (policy.PolicyName.Equals(policyName))
                {
                    policyArn = policy.Arn;
                }
            }

            if (policyArn == null)
            {
                throw new InvalidOperationException("Policy not found");
            }
        }

        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.CreateRoleAsync(new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRoleDoc,
            });
            await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
```

```
                PolicyArn = policyArn
            });
            if (awsManagedPolicies != null)
            {
                foreach (var awsPolicy in awsManagedPolicies)
                {
                    await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
AttachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        PolicyArn = $"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{awsPolicy}",
                        RoleName = roleName
                    });
                }
            }
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Role already exists.");
        }

        string profileArn = "";
        try
        {
            var profileCreateResponse = await _amazonIam.CreateInstanceProfileAsync(
                new CreateInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            // Allow time for the profile to be ready.
            profileArn = profileCreateResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
            await _amazonIam.AddRoleToInstanceProfileAsync(
                new AddRoleToInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });

        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Policy already exists.");
            var profileGetResponse = await _amazonIam.GetInstanceProfileAsync(
                new GetInstanceProfileRequest()
```

```
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            profileArn = profileGetResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
        }
        return profileArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new key pair and save the file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newKeyPairName">The name of the new key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateKeyPair(string newKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            var keyResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateKeyPairAsync(
                new CreateKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = newKeyPairName });
            await File.WriteAllTextAsync($"{newKeyPairName}.pem",
                keyResponse.KeyPair.KeyMaterial);
            Console.WriteLine($"Created key pair {newKeyPairName}.");
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Key pair already exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the key pair and file by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="deleteKeyPairName">The key pair to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteKeyPairByName(string deleteKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteKeyPairAsync(
                new DeleteKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = deleteKeyPairName });
            File.Delete($"{deleteKeyPairName}.pem");
        }
        catch (FileNotFoundException)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Key pair {deleteKeyPairName} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling.
    /// The launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that runs
after
    /// the instance is started. This script installs the Python packages and starts
a Python
    /// web server on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="startupScriptPath">The path to a Bash script file that is
run.</param>
    /// <param name="instancePolicyPath">The path to a permissions policy to create
and attach to the profile.</param>
    /// <returns>The template object.</returns>
    public async Task<Amazon.EC2.Model.LaunchTemplate> CreateTemplate(string
startupScriptPath, string instancePolicyPath)
    {
        try
        {
            await CreateKeyPair(_keyPairName);
            await CreateInstanceProfileWithName(_instancePolicyName,
_instanceRoleName,
                _instanceProfileName, instancePolicyPath);

            var startServerText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(startupScriptPath);
            var plainTextBytes =
System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(startServerText);

            var amiLatest = await _amazonSsm.GetParameterAsync(
                new GetParameterRequest() { Name = _amiParam });
            var amiId = amiLatest.Parameter.Value;
            var launchTemplateResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new CreateLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                    LaunchTemplateData = new RequestLaunchTemplateData()
                    {
                        InstanceType = _instanceType,
                        ImageId = amiId,
                        IamInstanceProfile =
                            new
```

```
LaunchTemplateIamInstanceProfileSpecificationRequest()
                            {
                                Name = _instanceProfileName
                            },
                        KeyName = _keyPairName,
                        UserData = System.Convert.ToBase64String(plainTextBytes)
                    }
                });
            return launchTemplateResponse.LaunchTemplate;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Could not create the template, the name
{_launchTemplateName} already exists. " +
                                 $"Please try again with a unique name.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while creating the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2 Client.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of availability zones.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> DescribeAvailabilityZones()
    {
        try
        {
            var zoneResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeAvailabilityZonesAsync(
                new DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest());
            return zoneResponse.AvailabilityZones.Select(z => z.ZoneName).ToList();
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
```

```
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An Amazon EC2 error occurred while listing
 availability zones.: {ec2Exception.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while listing availability zones.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an EC2 Auto Scaling group of a specified size and name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupSize">The size for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The availability zones for the group.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateGroupOfSize(int groupSize, string groupName,
 List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonAutoScaling.CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    AvailabilityZones = availabilityZones,
                    LaunchTemplate =
                        new Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.LaunchTemplateSpecification()
                        {
                            LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                            Version = "$Default"
                        },
                    MaxSize = groupSize,
                    MinSize = groupSize
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Created EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} with size
 {groupSize}.");
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} already
exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default VPC for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The default VPC object.</returns>
    public async Task<Vpc> GetDefaultVpc()
    {
        try
        {
            var vpcResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeVpcsAsync(
                new DescribeVpcsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("is-default", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });
            return vpcResponse.Vpcs[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "UnauthorizedOperation")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"You do not have the necessary
permissions to describe VPCs.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the vpcs.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get all the subnets for a Vpc in a set of availability zones.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The list of availability zones.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of subnet objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Subnet>> GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(string vpcId,
List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            var subnets = new List<Subnet>();
            var subnetPaginator = _amazonEc2.Paginators.DescribeSubnets(
                new DescribeSubnetsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpcId }),
                        new("availability-zone", availabilityZones),
                        new("default-for-az", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });

            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var subnet in subnetPaginator.Subnets)
            {
                subnets.Add(subnet);
            }

            return subnets;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"The specified VPC ID {vpcId} does
not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the subnets.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
```

```
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a launch template by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the template to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTemplateByName(string templateName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new DeleteLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = templateName
                });
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Could not delete the template, the name {_launchTemplateName}
was not found.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while deleting the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
    /// and deletes all the resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="profileName">The name of the profile to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to delete.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteInstanceProfile(string profileName, string roleName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileAsync(
                new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });
            await _amazonIam.DeleteInstanceProfileAsync(
                new DeleteInstanceProfileRequest() { InstanceProfileName =
profileName });
            var attachedPolicies = await _amazonIam.ListAttachedRolePoliciesAsync(
                new ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
            foreach (var policy in attachedPolicies.AttachedPolicies)
            {
                await _amazonIam.DetachRolePolicyAsync(
                    new DetachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        RoleName = roleName,
                        PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                    });
                // Delete the custom policies only.
                if (!policy.PolicyArn.StartsWith("arn:aws:iam::aws"))
                {
                    await _amazonIam.DeletePolicyAsync(
                        new Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.DeletePolicyRequest()
                        {
                            PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                        });
                }
            }

            await _amazonIam.DeleteRoleAsync(
                new DeleteRoleRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
        }
        catch (NoSuchEntityException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Instance profile {profileName} does not exist.");
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Gets data about the instances in an EC2 Auto Scaling group by its group
name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="group">The name of the auto scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of instance Ids.</returns>
    public async Task<IEnumerable<string>> GetInstancesByGroupName(string group)
    {
        var instanceResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { group }
            });
        var instanceIds = instanceResponse.AutoScalingGroups.SelectMany(
            g => g.Instances.Select(i => i.InstanceId));
        return instanceIds;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the instance profile association data for an instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Instance profile associations data.</returns>
    public async Task<IamInstanceProfileAssociation> GetInstanceProfile(string
instanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await
_amazonEc2.DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsAsync(
                new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("instance-id", new List<string>() { instanceId })
                    },
                });
            return response.IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
```

```
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while creating the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Replace the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile is
replaced, the instance
    /// is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile. When the instance is
ready, Systems Manager is
    /// used to restart the Python web server.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to update.</param>
    /// <param name="credsProfileName">The name of the new profile to associate with
the specified instance.</param>
    /// <param name="associationId">The Id of the existing profile association for
the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task ReplaceInstanceProfile(string instanceId, string
credsProfileName, string associationId)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationAsync(
                new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest()
                {
                    AssociationId = associationId,
                    IamInstanceProfile = new IamInstanceProfileSpecification()
                    {
                        Name = credsProfileName
                    }
                });
            // Allow time before resetting.
            Thread.Sleep(25000);

            await _amazonEc2.RebootInstancesAsync(
```

```
                new RebootInstancesRequest(new List<string>() { instanceId }));
            Thread.Sleep(25000);
            var instanceReady = false;
            var retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0 && !instanceReady)
            {
                var instancesPaginator =
                    _amazonSsm.Paginators.DescribeInstanceInformation(
                        new DescribeInstanceInformationRequest());
                // Get the entire list using the paginator.
                await foreach (var instance in
instancesPaginator.InstanceInformationList)
                {
                    instanceReady = instance.InstanceId == instanceId;
                    if (instanceReady)
                    {
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
            Console.WriteLine("Waiting for instance to be running.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
            Console.WriteLine("Instance ready.");
            Console.WriteLine($"Sending restart command to instance {instanceId}");
            await _amazonSsm.SendCommandAsync(
                new SendCommandRequest()
                {
                    InstanceIds = new List<string>() { instanceId },
                    DocumentName = "AWS-RunShellScript",
                    Parameters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>()
                    {
                        {
                            "commands",
                            new List<string>() { "cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80" }
                        }
                    }
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Restarted the web server on instance {instanceId}");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
```

```
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while replacing the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Try to terminate an instance by its Id.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to terminate.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryTerminateInstanceById(string instanceId)
    {
        var stopping = false;
        Console.WriteLine($"Stopping {instanceId}...");
        while (!stopping)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        InstanceId = instanceId,
                        ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false
                    });
                stopping = true;
            }
            catch (ScalingActivityInProgressException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Scaling activity in progress for {instanceId}.
Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Tries to delete the EC2 Auto Scaling group. If the group is in use or in
progress,
    /// waits and retries until the group is successfully deleted.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to try to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryDeleteGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var stopped = false;
        while (!stopped)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        AutoScalingGroupName = groupName
                    });
                stopped = true;
            }
            catch (Exception e)
                when ((e is ScalingActivityInProgressException)
                      || (e is Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.ResourceInUseException))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Some instances are still running. Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate instances and delete the Auto Scaling group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(string groupName)
    {
        var describeGroupsResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { groupName }
            });
        if (describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups.Any())
```

```
        {
            // Update the size to 0.
            await _amazonAutoScaling.UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    MinSize = 0
                });
            var group = describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups[0];
            foreach (var instance in group.Instances)
            {
                await TryTerminateInstanceById(instance.InstanceId);
            }

            await TryDeleteGroupByName(groupName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No groups found with name {groupName}.");
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default security group for a specified Vpc.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The Vpc to search.</param>
    /// <returns>The default security group.</returns>
    public async Task<SecurityGroup> GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(Vpc vpc)
    {
        var groupResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest()
            {
                Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                {
                    new ("group-name", new List<string>() { "default" }),
                    new ("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpc.VpcId })
                }
            });
        return groupResponse.SecurityGroups[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
   /// Verify the default security group of a Vpc allows ingress from the calling
computer.
   /// This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP address.
   /// In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network, you must
instead specify
   /// a prefix list Id. You can also temporarily open the port to any IP address
while running this example.
   /// If you do, be sure to remove public access when you're done.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="vpc">The group to check.</param>
   /// <param name="port">The port to verify.</param>
   /// <param name="ipAddress">This computer's IP address.</param>
   /// <returns>True if the ip address is allowed on the group.</returns>
   public bool VerifyInboundPortForGroup(SecurityGroup group, int port, string
ipAddress)
   {
       var portIsOpen = false;
       foreach (var ipPermission in group.IpPermissions)
       {
           if (ipPermission.FromPort == port)
           {
               foreach (var ipRange in ipPermission.Ipv4Ranges)
               {
                   var cidr = ipRange.CidrIp;
                   if (cidr.StartsWith(ipAddress) || cidr == "0.0.0.0/0")
                   {
                       portIsOpen = true;
                   }
               }

               if (ipPermission.PrefixListIds.Any())
               {
                   portIsOpen = true;
               }

               if (!portIsOpen)
               {
                   Console.WriteLine("The inbound rule does not appear to be open
to either this computer's IP\n" +
                                       "address, to all IP addresses (0.0.0.0/0), or
to a prefix list ID.");
               }
               else
               {
```

```
                    break;
                }
            }
        }

        return portIsOpen;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an ingress rule to the specified security group that allows access on
the
    /// specified port from the specified IP address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupId">The Id of the security group to modify.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to open.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">The IP address to allow access.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task OpenInboundPort(string groupId, int port, string ipAddress)
    {
        await _amazonEc2.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressAsync(
            new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest()
            {
                GroupId = groupId,
                IpPermissions = new List<IpPermission>()
                {
                    new IpPermission()
                    {
                        FromPort = port,
                        ToPort = port,
                        IpProtocol = "tcp",
                        Ipv4Ranges = new List<IpRange>()
                        {
                            new IpRange() { CidrIp = $"{ipAddress}/32" }
                        }
                    }
                }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
Scaling group.
    /// The
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="autoScalingGroupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <param name="targetGroupArn">The Arn for the target group.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(string autoScalingGroupName, string
 targetGroupArn)
    {
        await _amazonAutoScaling.AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsAsync(
            new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupName = autoScalingGroupName,
                TargetGroupARNs = new List<string>() { targetGroupArn }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
 InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEc2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
```

```
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancer actions.
/// </summary>
public class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
    private string? _endpoint = null;
    private readonly string _targetGroupName = "";
    private readonly string _loadBalancerName = "";
    HttpClient _httpClient = new();

    public string TargetGroupName => _targetGroupName;
    public string LoadBalancerName => _loadBalancerName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Elastic Load Balancer wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2">The injected load balancing v2
 client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper(
        IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2,
        IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 = amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _targetGroupName = prefix + "-tg";
        _loadBalancerName = prefix + "-lb";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the HTTP Endpoint of a load balancer by its name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="loadBalancerName">The name of the load balancer.</param>
    /// <returns>The HTTP endpoint.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<string> GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(string
loadBalancerName)
    {
        if (_endpoint == null)
        {
            var endpointResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { loadBalancerName }
                    });
            _endpoint = endpointResponse.LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
        }

        return _endpoint;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Return the GET response for an endpoint as text.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint for the request.</param>
    /// <returns>The request response.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndPointResponse(string endpoint)
    {
        var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://{endpoint}");
        var textResponse = await endpointResponse.Content.ReadAsStringAsync();
        return textResponse!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the target health for a group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of health descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TargetHealthDescription>>
CheckTargetHealthForGroup(string groupName)
    {
        List<TargetHealthDescription> result = null!;
        try
        {
            var groupResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                    {
```

```
                        Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                    });
            var healthResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetHealthAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetHealthRequest()
                    {
                        TargetGroupArn =
 groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn
                    });
            ;
            result = healthResponse.TargetHealthDescriptions;
        }
        catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Target group {groupName} not found.");
        }
        return result;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
 how the load balancer forwards
    /// requests to instances in the group and how instance health is checked.
    ///
    /// To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened times
 and lower thresholds. In production,
    /// you might want to decrease the sensitivity of your health checks to avoid
 unwanted failures.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="protocol">The protocol, such as HTTP.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.</param>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc in which the load balancer exists.</
param>
    /// <returns>The new TargetGroup object.</returns>
    public async Task<TargetGroup> CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(string groupName,
 ProtocolEnum protocol, int port, string vpcId)
    {
        var createResponse = await
 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateTargetGroupAsync(
            new CreateTargetGroupRequest()
            {
                Name = groupName,
                Protocol = protocol,
```

```
                Port = port,
                HealthCheckPath = "/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds = 10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds = 5,
                HealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                VpcId = vpcId
            });
        var targetGroup = createResponse.TargetGroups[0];
        return targetGroup;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
subnets
    /// and forwards requests to the specified target group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name for the new load balancer.</param>
    /// <param name="subnetIds">Subnets for the load balancer.</param>
    /// <param name="targetGroup">Target group for forwarded requests.</param>
    /// <returns>The new LoadBalancer object.</returns>
    public async Task<LoadBalancer> CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(string name,
List<string> subnetIds, TargetGroup targetGroup)
    {
        var createLbResponse = await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateLoadBalancerAsync(
            new CreateLoadBalancerRequest()
            {
                Name = name,
                Subnets = subnetIds
            });
        var loadBalancerArn = createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;

        // Wait for load balancer to be available.
        var loadBalancerReady = false;
        while (!loadBalancerReady)
        {
            try
            {
                var describeResponse =
                    await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                        new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { name }
```

```
                        });

                var loadBalancerState =
describeResponse.LoadBalancers[0].State.Code;

                loadBalancerReady = loadBalancerState ==
LoadBalancerStateEnum.Active;
            }
            catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
            {
                loadBalancerReady = false;
            }
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
        }
        // Create the listener.
        await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateListenerAsync(
            new CreateListenerRequest()
            {
                LoadBalancerArn = loadBalancerArn,
                Protocol = targetGroup.Protocol,
                Port = targetGroup.Port,
                DefaultActions = new List<Action>()
                {
                    new Action()
                    {
                        Type = ActionTypeEnum.Forward,
                        TargetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn
                    }
                }
            });
        return createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the
    /// load balancer endpoint.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint to check.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(string endpoint)
    {
        var success = false;
        var retries = 3;
        while (!success && retries > 0)
```

```
        {
            try
            {
                var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://
{endpoint}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Response: {endpointResponse.StatusCode}.");

                if (endpointResponse.IsSuccessStatusCode)
                {
                    success = true;
                }
                else
                {
                    retries = 0;
                }
            }
            catch (HttpRequestException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Connection error, retrying...");
                retries--;
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }

        return success;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a load balancer by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the load balancer to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteLoadBalancerByName(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var describeLoadBalancerResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { name }
                    });
            var lbArn =
 describeLoadBalancerResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
```

```
            await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteLoadBalancerAsync(
                new DeleteLoadBalancerRequest()
                {
                    LoadBalancerArn = lbArn
                }
            );
        }
        catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Load balancer {name} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a TargetGroup by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">Name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTargetGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var done = false;
        while (!done)
        {
            try
            {
                var groupResponse =
                    await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                        new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                        });

                var targetArn = groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn;
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteTargetGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteTargetGroupRequest() { TargetGroupArn = targetArn });
                Console.WriteLine($"Deleted load balancing target group
{groupName}.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Target group {groupName} not found, could not delete.");
                done = true;
```

```
            }
            catch (ResourceInUseException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Target group not yet released, waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates a DynamoDB table to use as a service that recommends books, movies,
 and songs.
/// </summary>
public class Recommendations
{
    private readonly IAmazonDynamoDB _amazonDynamoDb;
    private readonly DynamoDBContext _context;
    private readonly string _tableName;

    public string TableName => _tableName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Recommendations service.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonDynamoDb">The injected DynamoDb client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public Recommendations(IAmazonDynamoDB amazonDynamoDb, IConfiguration
 configuration)
    {
        _amazonDynamoDb = amazonDynamoDb;
        _context = new DynamoDBContext(_amazonDynamoDb);
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create the DynamoDb table with a specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name for the table.</param>
    /// <returns>True when ready.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> CreateDatabaseWithName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            Console.Write($"Creating table {tableName}...");
            var createRequest = new CreateTableRequest()
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                AttributeDefinitions = new List<AttributeDefinition>()
                    {
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
                        },
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N
                        }
                    },
                KeySchema = new List<KeySchemaElement>()
                    {
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            KeyType = KeyType.HASH
                        },
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            KeyType = KeyType.RANGE
                        }
                    },
                ProvisionedThroughput = new ProvisionedThroughput()
                {
                    ReadCapacityUnits = 5,
                    WriteCapacityUnits = 5
                }
            };
            await _amazonDynamoDb.CreateTableAsync(createRequest);

            // Wait until the table is ACTIVE and then report success.
            Console.Write("\nWaiting for table to become active...");
```

```
            var request = new DescribeTableRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName
            };

            TableStatus status;
            do
            {
                Thread.Sleep(2000);

                var describeTableResponse = await
 _amazonDynamoDb.DescribeTableAsync(request);
                status = describeTableResponse.Table.TableStatus;

                Console.Write(".");
            }
            while (status != "ACTIVE");

            return status == TableStatus.ACTIVE;
        }
        catch (ResourceInUseException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} already exists.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the database table with data from a specified path.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="databaseTableName">The name of the table.</param>
    /// <param name="recommendationsPath">The path of the recommendations data.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PopulateDatabase(string databaseTableName, string
 recommendationsPath)
    {
        var recommendationsText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(recommendationsPath);
        var records =
            JsonSerializer.Deserialize<RecommendationModel[]>(recommendationsText);
        var batchWrite = _context.CreateBatchWrite<RecommendationModel>();

        foreach (var record in records!)
```

```
        {
            batchWrite.AddPutItem(record);
        }

        await batchWrite.ExecuteAsync();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the recommendation table by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the recommendation table.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DestroyDatabaseByName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonDynamoDb.DeleteTableAsync(
                new DeleteTableRequest() { TableName = tableName });
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was deleted.");
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} not found");
        }
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Systems Manager parameter operations. This example uses these
 parameters
/// to drive the demonstration of resilient architecture, such as failure of a
 dependency or
/// how the service responds to a health check.
/// </summary>
public class SmParameterWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;

    private readonly string _tableParameter = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-
table";
```

```
    private readonly string _failureResponseParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-failure-response";
    private readonly string _healthCheckParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-health-check";
    private readonly string _tableName = "";

    public string TableParameter => _tableParameter;
    public string TableName => _tableName;
    public string HealthCheckParameter => _healthCheckParameter;
    public string FailureResponseParameter => _failureResponseParameter;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the SmParameterWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSimpleSystemsManagement">The injected Simple Systems
 Management client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public SmParameterWrapper(IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement
 amazonSimpleSystemsManagement, IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement = amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Reset the Systems Manager parameters to starting values for the demo.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task Reset()
    {
        await this.PutParameterByName(_tableParameter, _tableName);
        await this.PutParameterByName(_failureResponseParameter, "none");
        await this.PutParameterByName(_healthCheckParameter, "shallow");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set the value of a named Systems Manager parameter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the parameter.</param>
    /// <param name="value">The value to set.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PutParameterByName(string name, string value)
    {
        await _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement.PutParameterAsync(
```

```
            new PutParameterRequest() { Name = name, Value = value, Overwrite =
 true });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer
  - DeleteTargetGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAvailabilityZones
  - DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeLoadBalancers
  - DescribeSubnets
  - DescribeTargetGroups
  - DescribeTargetHealth
  - DescribeVpcs
  - RebootInstances
  - ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
  - TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
  - UpdateAutoScalingGroup

EventBridge examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with EventBridge.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Get started
- Basics
- Actions

Get started

Hello EventBridge

The following code example shows how to get started using EventBridge.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.EventBridge;
using Amazon.EventBridge.Model;

namespace EventBridgeActions;
```

```
public static class HelloEventBridge
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var eventBridgeClient = new AmazonEventBridgeClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon EventBridge! Following are some of your
 EventBuses:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get the first five event buses.
        var response = await eventBridgeClient.ListEventBusesAsync(
            new ListEventBusesRequest()
            {
                Limit = 5
            });

        foreach (var eventBus in response.EventBuses)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tEventBus: {eventBus.Name}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tArn: {eventBus.Arn}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tPolicy: {eventBus.Policy}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListEventBuses in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a rule and add a target to it.
- Enable and disable rules.
- List and update rules and targets.
- Send events, then clean up resources.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
public class EventBridgeScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This .NET example performs the following tasks with Amazon EventBridge:
    - Create a rule.
    - Add a target to a rule.
    - Enable and disable rules.
    - List rules and targets.
    - Update rules and targets.
    - Send events.
    - Delete the rule.
    */

    private static ILogger logger = null!;
    private static EventBridgeWrapper _eventBridgeWrapper = null!;
    private static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;

    private static IAmazonIdentityManagementService? _iamClient = null!;
    private static IAmazonSimpleNotificationService? _snsClient = null!;
    private static IAmazonS3 _s3Client = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon EventBridge.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
```

```
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonEventBridge>()
            .AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
            .AddAWSService<IAmazonS3>()
            .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleNotificationService>()
            .AddTransient<EventBridgeWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<EventBridgeScenario>();

        ServicesSetup(host);

        string topicArn = "";
        string roleArn = "";

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon EventBridge example scenario.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        try
        {
            roleArn = await CreateRole();

            await CreateBucketWithEventBridgeEvents();

            await AddEventRule(roleArn);

            await ListEventRules();

            topicArn = await CreateSnsTopic();

            var email = await SubscribeToSnsTopic(topicArn);

            await AddSnsTarget(topicArn);
```

```
            await ListTargets();

            await ListRulesForTarget(topicArn);

            await UploadS3File(_s3Client);

            await ChangeRuleState(false);

            await GetRuleState();

            await UpdateSnsEventRule(topicArn);

            await ChangeRuleState(true);

            await UploadS3File(_s3Client);

            await UpdateToCustomRule(topicArn);

            await TriggerCustomRule(email);

            await CleanupResources(topicArn);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem executing the scenario.");
            await CleanupResources(topicArn);
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("The Amazon EventBridge example scenario is complete.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _eventBridgeWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<EventBridgeWrapper>();
        _snsClient =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonSimpleNotificationService>();
        _s3Client = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonS3>();
```

```
        _iamClient =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a role to be used by EventBridge.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The role Amazon Resource Name (ARN).</returns>
    public static async Task<string> CreateRole()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Creating a role to use with EventBridge and attaching
managed policy AmazonEventBridgeFullAccess.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        var roleName = _configuration["roleName"];

        var assumeRolePolicy = "{" +
                                   "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                   "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                   "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                   "\"Principal\": {" +
                                   $"\"Service\": \"events.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                   "}," +
                                   "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                                   "}]" +
                                   "}";

        var roleResult = await _iamClient!.CreateRoleAsync(
            new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRolePolicy,
                Path = "/",
                RoleName = roleName
            });

        await _iamClient.AttachRolePolicyAsync(
            new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
            {
                PolicyArn = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonEventBridgeFullAccess",
                RoleName = roleName
            });
        // Allow time for the role to be ready.
        Thread.Sleep(10000);
```

```
        return roleResult.Role.Arn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket with EventBridge
events enabled.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CreateBucketWithEventBridgeEvents()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Creating an S3 bucket with EventBridge events enabled.");

        var testBucketName = _configuration["testBucketName"];

        var bucketExists = await
Amazon.S3.Util.AmazonS3Util.DoesS3BucketExistV2Async(_s3Client,
            testBucketName);

        if (!bucketExists)
        {
            await _s3Client.PutBucketAsync(new PutBucketRequest()
            {
                BucketName = testBucketName,
                UseClientRegion = true
            });
        }

        await _s3Client.PutBucketNotificationAsync(new
PutBucketNotificationRequest()
        {
            BucketName = testBucketName,
            EventBridgeConfiguration = new EventBridgeConfiguration()
        });

        Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded bucket {testBucketName} with EventBridge events
enabled.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create and upload a file to an S3 bucket to trigger an event.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task UploadS3File(IAmazonS3 s3Client)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Uploading a file to the test bucket. This will trigger a
subscription email.");

        var testBucketName = _configuration["testBucketName"];

        var fileName = $"example_upload_{DateTime.UtcNow.Ticks}.txt";

        // Create the file if it does not already exist.
        if (!File.Exists(fileName))
        {
            await using StreamWriter sw = File.CreateText(fileName);
            await sw.WriteLineAsync(
                "This is a sample file for testing uploads.");
        }

        await s3Client.PutObjectAsync(new PutObjectRequest()
        {
            FilePath = fileName,
            BucketName = testBucketName
        });

        Console.WriteLine($"\tPress Enter to continue.");
        Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic to use as an
EventBridge target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> CreateSnsTopic()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Creating an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic for
email subscriptions.");

        var topicName = _configuration["topicName"];
```

```
        string topicPolicy = "{" +
                             "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                             "\"Statement\": [{" +
                             "\"Sid\": \"EventBridgePublishTopic\"," +
                             "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                             "\"Principal\": {" +
                             $"\"Service\": \"events.amazonaws.com\"" +
                             "}," +
                             "\"Resource\": \"*\"," +
                             "\"Action\": \"sns:Publish\"" +
                             "}]" +
                             "}";

        var topicAttributes = new Dictionary<string, string>()
        {
            { "Policy", topicPolicy }
        };

        var topicResponse = await _snsClient!.CreateTopicAsync(new
CreateTopicRequest()
        {
            Name = topicName,
            Attributes = topicAttributes

        });

        Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded topic {topicName} for email subscriptions.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return topicResponse.TopicArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Subscribe a user email to an SNS topic.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the SNS topic.</param>
    /// <returns>The user's email.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> SubscribeToSnsTopic(string topicArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
        string email = "";
        while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(email))
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Enter your email to subscribe to the Amazon SNS
topic:");
            email = Console.ReadLine()!;
        }

        var subscriptions = new List<string>();
        var paginatedSubscriptions =
_snsClient!.Paginators.ListSubscriptionsByTopic(
            new ListSubscriptionsByTopicRequest()
            {
                TopicArn = topicArn
            });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var subscription in paginatedSubscriptions.Subscriptions)
        {
            subscriptions.Add(subscription.Endpoint);
        }

        if (subscriptions.Contains(email))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tYour email is already subscribed.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            return email;
        }

        await _snsClient.SubscribeAsync(new SubscribeRequest()
        {
            TopicArn = topicArn,
            Protocol = "email",
            Endpoint = email
        });

        Console.WriteLine($"Use the link in the email you received to confirm your
subscription, then press Enter to continue.");

        Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return email;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Add a rule which triggers when a file is uploaded to an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The ARN of the role used by EventBridge.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task AddEventRule(string roleArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Creating an EventBridge event that sends an email when an
Amazon S3 object is created.");

        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];
        var testBucketName = _configuration["testBucketName"];

        await _eventBridgeWrapper.PutS3UploadRule(roleArn, eventRuleName,
testBucketName);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded event rule {eventRuleName} for bucket
{testBucketName}.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an SNS target to the rule.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the SNS topic.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task AddSnsTarget(string topicArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Adding a target to the rule to that sends an email when
the rule is triggered.");

        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];
        var testBucketName = _configuration["testBucketName"];
        var topicName = _configuration["topicName"];
        await _eventBridgeWrapper.AddSnsTargetToRule(eventRuleName, topicArn);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded event rule {eventRuleName} with Amazon SNS
target {topicName} for bucket {testBucketName}.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List the event rules on the default event bus.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListEventRules()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Current event rules:");

        var rules = await _eventBridgeWrapper.ListAllRulesForEventBus();
        rules.ForEach(r => Console.WriteLine($"\tRule: {r.Name} Description:
{r.Description} State: {r.State}"));

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Update the event target to use a transform.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The SNS topic ARN target to update.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task UpdateSnsEventRule(string topicArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Let's update the event target with a transform.");

        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];
        var testBucketName = _configuration["testBucketName"];

        await
_eventBridgeWrapper.UpdateS3UploadRuleTargetWithTransform(eventRuleName, topicArn);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tUpdated event rule {eventRuleName} with Amazon SNS
target {topicArn} for bucket {testBucketName}.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Update the rule to use a custom event pattern.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task UpdateToCustomRule(string topicArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("Updating the event pattern to be triggered by a custom
event instead.");

        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];

        await _eventBridgeWrapper.UpdateCustomEventPattern(eventRuleName);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tUpdated event rule {eventRuleName} to custom
pattern.");
        await _eventBridgeWrapper.UpdateCustomRuleTargetWithTransform(eventRuleName,
            topicArn);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tUpdated event target {topicArn}.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Send rule events for a custom rule using the user's email address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="email">The email address to include.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task TriggerCustomRule(string email)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Sending an event to trigger the rule. This will trigger a
subscription email.");

        await _eventBridgeWrapper.PutCustomEmailEvent(email);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tEvents have been sent. Press Enter to continue.");
        Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List all of the targets for a rule.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListTargets()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("List all of the targets for a particular rule.");
```

```
        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];
        var targets = await _eventBridgeWrapper.ListAllTargetsOnRule(eventRuleName);
        targets.ForEach(t => Console.WriteLine($"\tTarget: {t.Arn} Id: {t.Id} Input:
{t.Input}"));

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List all of the rules for a particular target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the SNS topic.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListRulesForTarget(string topicArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("List all of the rules for a particular target.");

        var rules = await _eventBridgeWrapper.ListAllRuleNamesByTarget(topicArn);
        rules.ForEach(r => Console.WriteLine($"\tRule: {r}"));

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Enable or disable a particular rule.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="isEnabled">True to enable the rule, otherwise false.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ChangeRuleState(bool isEnabled)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];

        if (!isEnabled)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Disabling the rule: {eventRuleName}");
            await _eventBridgeWrapper.DisableRuleByName(eventRuleName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Enabling the rule: {eventRuleName}");
            await _eventBridgeWrapper.EnableRuleByName(eventRuleName);
```

```
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the current state of the rule.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task GetRuleState()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];

        var state = await _eventBridgeWrapper.GetRuleStateByRuleName(eventRuleName);
        Console.WriteLine($"Rule {eventRuleName} is in current state {state}.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the SNS topic to clean up.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CleanupResources(string topicArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Clean up resources.");

        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];
        if (GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete all targets and event rule {eventRuleName}?
(y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tRemoving all targets from the event rule.");
            await _eventBridgeWrapper.RemoveAllTargetsFromRule(eventRuleName);

            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting event rule.");
            await _eventBridgeWrapper.DeleteRuleByName(eventRuleName);
        }

        var topicName = _configuration["topicName"];
        if (GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete Amazon SNS subscription topic {topicName}?
(y/n)"))
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting topic.");
            await _snsClient!.DeleteTopicAsync(new DeleteTopicRequest()
            {
                TopicArn = topicArn
            });
        }

        var bucketName = _configuration["testBucketName"];
        if (GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete Amazon S3 bucket {bucketName}? (y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting bucket.");
            // Delete all objects in the bucket.
            var deleteList = await _s3Client.ListObjectsV2Async(new
ListObjectsV2Request()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName
            });
            await _s3Client.DeleteObjectsAsync(new DeleteObjectsRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Objects = deleteList.S3Objects
                    .Select(o => new KeyVersion { Key = o.Key }).ToList()
            });
            // Now delete the bucket.
            await _s3Client.DeleteBucketAsync(new DeleteBucketRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName
            });
        }

        var roleName = _configuration["roleName"];
        if (GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete role {roleName}? (y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDetaching policy and deleting role.");

            await _iamClient!.DetachRolePolicyAsync(new DetachRolePolicyRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                PolicyArn = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonEventBridgeFullAccess",
            });

            await _iamClient!.DeleteRoleAsync(new DeleteRoleRequest()
            {
```

```
                RoleName = roleName
            });
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        var response = ynResponse != null &&
                       ynResponse.Equals("y",
                           StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
        return response;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps EventBridge operations.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper for Amazon EventBridge operations.
/// </summary>
public class EventBridgeWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonEventBridge _amazonEventBridge;
    private readonly ILogger<EventBridgeWrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the EventBridge wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonEventBridge">The injected EventBridge client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The injected logger for the wrapper.</param>
    public EventBridgeWrapper(IAmazonEventBridge amazonEventBridge,
 ILogger<EventBridgeWrapper> logger)
```

```
    {
        _amazonEventBridge = amazonEventBridge;
        _logger = logger;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the state for a rule by the rule name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <param name="eventBusName">The optional name of the event bus. If empty,
uses the default event bus.</param>
    /// <returns>The state of the rule.</returns>
    public async Task<RuleState> GetRuleStateByRuleName(string ruleName, string?
eventBusName = null)
    {
        var ruleResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.DescribeRuleAsync(
            new DescribeRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName,
                EventBusName = eventBusName
            });
        return ruleResponse.State;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Enable a particular rule on an event bus.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> EnableRuleByName(string ruleName)
    {
        var ruleResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.EnableRuleAsync(
            new EnableRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName
            });
        return ruleResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Disable a particular rule on an event bus.
    /// </summary
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> DisableRuleByName(string ruleName)
    {
        var ruleResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.DisableRuleAsync(
            new DisableRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName
            });
        return ruleResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List the rules on an event bus.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="eventBusArn">The optional ARN of the event bus. If empty, uses
 the default event bus.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of rules.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Rule>> ListAllRulesForEventBus(string? eventBusArn =
 null)
    {
        var results = new List<Rule>();
        var request = new ListRulesRequest()
        {
            EventBusName = eventBusArn
        };
        // Get all of the pages of rules.
        ListRulesResponse response;
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonEventBridge.ListRulesAsync(request);
            results.AddRange(response.Rules);
            request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

        } while (response.NextToken is not null);

        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List all of the targets matching a rule by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of targets.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Target>> ListAllTargetsOnRule(string ruleName)
    {
```

```
        var results = new List<Target>();
        var request = new ListTargetsByRuleRequest()
        {
            Rule = ruleName
        };
        ListTargetsByRuleResponse response;
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonEventBridge.ListTargetsByRuleAsync(request);
            results.AddRange(response.Targets);
            request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

        } while (response.NextToken is not null);

        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List names of all rules matching a target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="targetArn">The ARN of the target.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of rule names.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> ListAllRuleNamesByTarget(string targetArn)
    {
        var results = new List<string>();
        var request = new ListRuleNamesByTargetRequest()
        {
            TargetArn = targetArn
        };
        ListRuleNamesByTargetResponse response;
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonEventBridge.ListRuleNamesByTargetAsync(request);
            results.AddRange(response.RuleNames);
            request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

        } while (response.NextToken is not null);

        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new event rule that triggers when an Amazon S3 object is created in
 a bucket.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The ARN of the role.</param>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name to give the rule.</param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to trigger the event.</
param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new rule.</returns>
    public async Task<string> PutS3UploadRule(string roleArn, string ruleName,
 string bucketName)
    {
        string eventPattern = "{" +
                                "\"source\": [\"aws.s3\"]," +
                                    "\"detail-type\": [\"Object Created\"]," +
                                    "\"detail\": {" +
                                        "\"bucket\": {" +
                                            "\"name\": [\"" + bucketName + "\"]" +
                                        "}" +
                                    "}" +
                                "}";

        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutRuleAsync(
            new PutRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName,
                Description = "Example S3 upload rule for EventBridge",
                RoleArn = roleArn,
                EventPattern = eventPattern
            });

        return response.RuleArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Update an Amazon S3 object created rule with a transform on the target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <param name="targetArn">The ARN of the target.</param>
    /// <param name="eventBusArn">Optional event bus ARN. If empty, uses the default
 event bus.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the target.</returns>
    public async Task<string> UpdateS3UploadRuleTargetWithTransform(string ruleName,
 string targetArn, string? eventBusArn = null)
    {
        var targetID = Guid.NewGuid().ToString();
```

```
        var targets = new List<Target>
        {
            new Target()
            {
                Id = targetID,
                Arn = targetArn,
                InputTransformer = new InputTransformer()
                {
                    InputPathsMap = new Dictionary<string, string>()
                    {
                        {"bucket", "$.detail.bucket.name"},
                        {"time", "$.time"}
                    },
                    InputTemplate = "\"Notification: an object was uploaded to
bucket <bucket> at <time>.\""
                }
            }
        };
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutTargetsAsync(
            new PutTargetsRequest()
            {
                EventBusName = eventBusArn,
                Rule = ruleName,
                Targets = targets,
            });
        if (response.FailedEntryCount > 0)
        {
            response.FailedEntries.ForEach(e =>
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Failed to add target {e.TargetId}: {e.ErrorMessage}, code
{e.ErrorCode}");
            });
        }
        return targetID;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Update a custom rule with a transform on the target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <param name="targetArn">The ARN of the target.</param>
    /// <param name="eventBusArn">Optional event bus ARN. If empty, uses the default
event bus.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The ID of the target.</returns>
    public async Task<string> UpdateCustomRuleTargetWithTransform(string ruleName,
 string targetArn, string? eventBusArn = null)
    {
        var targetID = Guid.NewGuid().ToString();

        var targets = new List<Target>
        {
            new Target()
            {
                Id = targetID,
                Arn = targetArn,
                InputTransformer = new InputTransformer()
                {
                    InputTemplate = "\"Notification: sample event was received.\""
                }
            }
        };
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutTargetsAsync(
            new PutTargetsRequest()
            {
                EventBusName = eventBusArn,
                Rule = ruleName,
                Targets = targets,
            });
        if (response.FailedEntryCount > 0)
        {
            response.FailedEntries.ForEach(e =>
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Failed to add target {e.TargetId}: {e.ErrorMessage}, code
 {e.ErrorCode}");
            });
        }
        return targetID;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an event to the event bus that includes an email, message, and time.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="email">The email to use in the event detail of the custom
 event.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutCustomEmailEvent(string email)
```

```
    {
        var eventDetail = new
        {
            UserEmail = email,
            Message = "This event was generated by example code.",
            UtcTime = DateTime.UtcNow.ToString("g")
        };
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutEventsAsync(
            new PutEventsRequest()
            {
                Entries = new List<PutEventsRequestEntry>()
                {
                    new PutEventsRequestEntry()
                    {
                        Source = "ExampleSource",
                        Detail = JsonSerializer.Serialize(eventDetail),
                        DetailType = "ExampleType"
                    }
                }
            });

        return response.FailedEntryCount == 0;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Update a rule to use a custom defined event pattern.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule to update.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the updated rule.</returns>
    public async Task<string> UpdateCustomEventPattern(string ruleName)
    {
        string customEventsPattern = "{" +
                                     "\"source\": [\"ExampleSource\"]," +
                                     "\"detail-type\": [\"ExampleType\"]" +
                                     "}";

        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutRuleAsync(
            new PutRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName,
                Description = "Custom test rule",
                EventPattern = customEventsPattern
            });
```

```
        return response.RuleArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an Amazon SNS target topic to a rule.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule to update.</param>
    /// <param name="targetArn">The ARN of the Amazon SNS target.</param>
    /// <param name="eventBusArn">The optional event bus name, uses default if
empty.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the target.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AddSnsTargetToRule(string ruleName, string targetArn,
string? eventBusArn = null)
    {
        var targetID = Guid.NewGuid().ToString();

        // Create the list of targets and add a new target.
        var targets = new List<Target>
        {
            new Target()
            {
                Arn = targetArn,
                Id = targetID
            }
        };

        // Add the targets to the rule.
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutTargetsAsync(
            new PutTargetsRequest()
            {
                EventBusName = eventBusArn,
                Rule = ruleName,
                Targets = targets,
            });

        if (response.FailedEntryCount > 0)
        {
            response.FailedEntries.ForEach(e =>
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Failed to add target {e.TargetId}: {e.ErrorMessage}, code
{e.ErrorCode}");
            });
        }
```

```
        return targetID;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an event rule by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the event rule.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> RemoveAllTargetsFromRule(string ruleName)
    {
        var targetIds = new List<string>();
        var request = new ListTargetsByRuleRequest()
        {
            Rule = ruleName
        };
        ListTargetsByRuleResponse targetsResponse;
        do
        {
            targetsResponse = await
_amazonEventBridge.ListTargetsByRuleAsync(request);
            targetIds.AddRange(targetsResponse.Targets.Select(t => t.Id));
            request.NextToken = targetsResponse.NextToken;

        } while (targetsResponse.NextToken is not null);

        var removeResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.RemoveTargetsAsync(
            new RemoveTargetsRequest()
            {
                Rule = ruleName,
                Ids = targetIds
            });

        if (removeResponse.FailedEntryCount > 0)
        {
            removeResponse.FailedEntries.ForEach(e =>
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Failed to remove target {e.TargetId}: {e.ErrorMessage}, code
{e.ErrorCode}");
            });
        }

        return removeResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an event rule by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the event rule.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteRuleByName(string ruleName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.DeleteRuleAsync(
            new DeleteRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName
            });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - DeleteRule
  - DescribeRule
  - DisableRule
  - EnableRule
  - ListRuleNamesByTarget
  - ListRules
  - ListTargetsByRule
  - PutEvents
  - PutRule
  - PutTargets

Actions

`DeleteRule`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRule`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete a rule by its name.

```
/// <summary>
/// Delete an event rule by name.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="ruleName">The name of the event rule.</param>
/// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
public async Task<bool> DeleteRuleByName(string ruleName)
{
    var response = await _amazonEventBridge.DeleteRuleAsync(
        new DeleteRuleRequest()
        {
            Name = ruleName
        });

    return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteRule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeRule`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeRule`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the state of a rule using the rule description.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the state for a rule by the rule name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <param name="eventBusName">The optional name of the event bus. If empty,
uses the default event bus.</param>
    /// <returns>The state of the rule.</returns>
    public async Task<RuleState> GetRuleStateByRuleName(string ruleName, string?
eventBusName = null)
    {
        var ruleResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.DescribeRuleAsync(
            new DescribeRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName,
                EventBusName = eventBusName
            });
        return ruleResponse.State;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeRule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DisableRule`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableRule`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Disable a rule by its rule name.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Disable a particular rule on an event bus.
    /// </summary
```

```
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DisableRuleByName(string ruleName)
    {
        var ruleResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.DisableRuleAsync(
            new DisableRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName
            });
        return ruleResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DisableRule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`EnableRule`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableRule`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Enable a rule by its rule name.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Enable a particular rule on an event bus.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> EnableRuleByName(string ruleName)
    {
        var ruleResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.EnableRuleAsync(
            new EnableRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName
            });
        return ruleResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see EnableRule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListRuleNamesByTarget`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRuleNamesByTarget`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List all of the rule names using the target.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List names of all rules matching a target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="targetArn">The ARN of the target.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of rule names.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> ListAllRuleNamesByTarget(string targetArn)
    {
        var results = new List<string>();
        var request = new ListRuleNamesByTargetRequest()
        {
            TargetArn = targetArn
        };
        ListRuleNamesByTargetResponse response;
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonEventBridge.ListRuleNamesByTargetAsync(request);
            results.AddRange(response.RuleNames);
            request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

        } while (response.NextToken is not null);

        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRuleNamesByTarget in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListRules`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRules`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List all of the rules for an event bus.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List the rules on an event bus.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="eventBusArn">The optional ARN of the event bus. If empty, uses
 the default event bus.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of rules.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Rule>> ListAllRulesForEventBus(string? eventBusArn =
 null)
    {
        var results = new List<Rule>();
        var request = new ListRulesRequest()
        {
            EventBusName = eventBusArn
        };
        // Get all of the pages of rules.
        ListRulesResponse response;
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonEventBridge.ListRulesAsync(request);
            results.AddRange(response.Rules);
            request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

        } while (response.NextToken is not null);
```

```
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRules in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListTargetsByRule`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTargetsByRule`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List all of the targets for a rule using the rule name.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List all of the targets matching a rule by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of targets.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Target>> ListAllTargetsOnRule(string ruleName)
    {
        var results = new List<Target>();
        var request = new ListTargetsByRuleRequest()
        {
            Rule = ruleName
        };
        ListTargetsByRuleResponse response;
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonEventBridge.ListTargetsByRuleAsync(request);
            results.AddRange(response.Targets);
            request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

        } while (response.NextToken is not null);

        return results;
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTargetsByRule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutEvents`

The following code example shows how to use `PutEvents`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send an event that matches a custom pattern for a rule.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Add an event to the event bus that includes an email, message, and time.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="email">The email to use in the event detail of the custom
event.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutCustomEmailEvent(string email)
    {
        var eventDetail = new
        {
            UserEmail = email,
            Message = "This event was generated by example code.",
            UtcTime = DateTime.UtcNow.ToString("g")
        };
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutEventsAsync(
            new PutEventsRequest()
            {
                Entries = new List<PutEventsRequestEntry>()
                {
                    new PutEventsRequestEntry()
                    {
                        Source = "ExampleSource",
                        Detail = JsonSerializer.Serialize(eventDetail),
```

```
                        DetailType = "ExampleType"
                    }
                }
            });

        return response.FailedEntryCount == 0;
    }
```

- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutRule`

The following code example shows how to use `PutRule`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a rule that triggers when an object is added to an Amazon Simple Storage Service bucket.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new event rule that triggers when an Amazon S3 object is created in
 a bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The ARN of the role.</param>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name to give the rule.</param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to trigger the event.</
param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new rule.</returns>
    public async Task<string> PutS3UploadRule(string roleArn, string ruleName,
 string bucketName)
    {
        string eventPattern = "{" +
                                "\"source\": [\"aws.s3\"]," +
                                    "\"detail-type\": [\"Object Created\"]," +
```

```
                                    "\"detail\": {" +
                                        "\"bucket\": {" +
                                            "\"name\": [\"" + bucketName + "\"]" +
                                        "}" +
                                    "}" +
                                "}";

        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutRuleAsync(
            new PutRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName,
                Description = "Example S3 upload rule for EventBridge",
                RoleArn = roleArn,
                EventPattern = eventPattern
            });

        return response.RuleArn;
    }
```

Create a rule that uses a custom pattern.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update a rule to use a custom defined event pattern.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule to update.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the updated rule.</returns>
    public async Task<string> UpdateCustomEventPattern(string ruleName)
    {
        string customEventsPattern = "{" +
                                     "\"source\": [\"ExampleSource\"]," +
                                     "\"detail-type\": [\"ExampleType\"]" +
                                     "}";

        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutRuleAsync(
            new PutRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName,
                Description = "Custom test rule",
                EventPattern = customEventsPattern
            });

        return response.RuleArn;
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see PutRule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutTargets`

The following code example shows how to use `PutTargets`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Add an Amazon SNS topic as a target for a rule.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Add an Amazon SNS target topic to a rule.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule to update.</param>
    /// <param name="targetArn">The ARN of the Amazon SNS target.</param>
    /// <param name="eventBusArn">The optional event bus name, uses default if
empty.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the target.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AddSnsTargetToRule(string ruleName, string targetArn,
string? eventBusArn = null)
    {
        var targetID = Guid.NewGuid().ToString();

        // Create the list of targets and add a new target.
        var targets = new List<Target>
        {
            new Target()
            {
                Arn = targetArn,
                Id = targetID
            }
        };
```

```
        // Add the targets to the rule.
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutTargetsAsync(
            new PutTargetsRequest()
            {
                EventBusName = eventBusArn,
                Rule = ruleName,
                Targets = targets,
            });

        if (response.FailedEntryCount > 0)
        {
            response.FailedEntries.ForEach(e =>
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Failed to add target {e.TargetId}: {e.ErrorMessage}, code
{e.ErrorCode}");
            });
        }

        return targetID;
    }
```

Add an input transformer to a target for a rule.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update an Amazon S3 object created rule with a transform on the target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <param name="targetArn">The ARN of the target.</param>
    /// <param name="eventBusArn">Optional event bus ARN. If empty, uses the default
event bus.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the target.</returns>
    public async Task<string> UpdateS3UploadRuleTargetWithTransform(string ruleName,
string targetArn, string? eventBusArn = null)
    {
        var targetID = Guid.NewGuid().ToString();

        var targets = new List<Target>
        {
            new Target()
            {
                Id = targetID,
```

```
                Arn = targetArn,
                InputTransformer = new InputTransformer()
                {
                    InputPathsMap = new Dictionary<string, string>()
                    {
                        {"bucket", "$.detail.bucket.name"},
                        {"time", "$.time"}
                    },
                    InputTemplate = "\"Notification: an object was uploaded to
bucket <bucket> at <time>.\""
                }
            }
        };
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutTargetsAsync(
            new PutTargetsRequest()
            {
                EventBusName = eventBusArn,
                Rule = ruleName,
                Targets = targets,
            });
        if (response.FailedEntryCount > 0)
        {
            response.FailedEntries.ForEach(e =>
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Failed to add target {e.TargetId}: {e.ErrorMessage}, code
{e.ErrorCode}");
            });
        }
        return targetID;
    }
```

- For API details, see PutTargets in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`RemoveTargets`

The following code example shows how to use `RemoveTargets`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Remove all of the targets for a rule using the rule name.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an event rule by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the event rule.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> RemoveAllTargetsFromRule(string ruleName)
    {
        var targetIds = new List<string>();
        var request = new ListTargetsByRuleRequest()
        {
            Rule = ruleName
        };
        ListTargetsByRuleResponse targetsResponse;
        do
        {
            targetsResponse = await
_amazonEventBridge.ListTargetsByRuleAsync(request);
            targetIds.AddRange(targetsResponse.Targets.Select(t => t.Id));
            request.NextToken = targetsResponse.NextToken;

        } while (targetsResponse.NextToken is not null);

        var removeResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.RemoveTargetsAsync(
            new RemoveTargetsRequest()
            {
                Rule = ruleName,
                Ids = targetIds
            });

        if (removeResponse.FailedEntryCount > 0)
        {
            removeResponse.FailedEntries.ForEach(e =>
            {
```

```
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Failed to remove target {e.TargetId}: {e.ErrorMessage}, code
{e.ErrorCode}");
            });
        }

        return removeResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see RemoveTargets in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

EventBridge Scheduler examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with EventBridge Scheduler.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Get started
- Actions
- Scenarios

Get started

Hello EventBridge Scheduler

The following code example shows how to get started using EventBridge Scheduler.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public static class HelloScheduler
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Use the AWS .NET Core Setup package to set up dependency injection for
 the EventBridge Scheduler service.
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default profile.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonScheduler>()
            ).Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        var schedulerClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonScheduler>();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response, or a
 paginator to list schedules or groups.
        var results = new List<ScheduleSummary>();
        var paginateSchedules = schedulerClient.Paginators.ListSchedules(
            new ListSchedulesRequest());
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Hello AWS Scheduler! Let's list schedules in your account.");
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var schedule in paginateSchedules.Schedules)
        {
            results.Add(schedule);
        }
        Console.WriteLine($"\tTotal of {results.Count} schedule(s) available.");
        results.ForEach(s => Console.WriteLine($"\tSchedule: {s.Name}"));
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListSchedules in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Actions

`CreateSchedule`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSchedule`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new schedule in Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule.</param>
    /// <param name="scheduleExpression">The schedule expression that defines when
 the schedule should run.</param>
    /// <param name="scheduleGroupName">The name of the schedule group to which the
 schedule should be added.</param>
    /// <param name="deleteAfterCompletion">Indicates whether to delete the schedule
 after completion.</param>
    /// <param name="useFlexibleTimeWindow">Indicates whether to use a flexible time
 window for the schedule.</param>
    /// <param name="targetArn">ARN of the event target.</param>
    /// <param name="roleArn">Execution Role ARN.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule was created successfully, false otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateScheduleAsync(
            string name,
            string scheduleExpression,
            string scheduleGroupName,
            string targetArn,
            string roleArn,
            string input,
            bool deleteAfterCompletion = false,
            bool useFlexibleTimeWindow = false)
    {
        try
        {
```

```
            int hoursToRun = 1;
            int flexibleTimeWindowMinutes = 10;

            var request = new CreateScheduleRequest
            {
                Name = name,
                ScheduleExpression = scheduleExpression,
                GroupName = scheduleGroupName,
                Target = new Target { Arn = targetArn, RoleArn = roleArn, Input =
input },
                ActionAfterCompletion = deleteAfterCompletion
                    ? ActionAfterCompletion.DELETE
                    : ActionAfterCompletion.NONE,
                StartDate = DateTime.UtcNow, // Ignored for one-time schedules.
                EndDate =
                    DateTime.UtcNow
                        .AddHours(hoursToRun) // Ignored for one-time schedules.
            };
            // Allow a flexible time window if the caller specifies it.
            request.FlexibleTimeWindow = new FlexibleTimeWindow
            {
                Mode = useFlexibleTimeWindow
                    ? FlexibleTimeWindowMode.FLEXIBLE
                    : FlexibleTimeWindowMode.OFF,
                MaximumWindowInMinutes = useFlexibleTimeWindow
                    ? flexibleTimeWindowMinutes
                    : null
            };

            var response = await _amazonScheduler.CreateScheduleAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created schedule '{name}' " +
                              $"in schedule group '{scheduleGroupName}':
{response.ScheduleArn}.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (ConflictException ex)
        {
            // If the name is not unique, a ConflictException will be thrown.
            _logger.LogError($"Failed to create schedule '{name}' due to a conflict.
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
```

```
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while creating schedule '{name}' "
+
                              $"in schedule group '{scheduleGroupName}':
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateSchedule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateScheduleGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateScheduleGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new schedule group in Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule group.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule group was created successfully, false
otherwise.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateScheduleGroupAsync(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new CreateScheduleGroupRequest { Name = name };

            var response = await _amazonScheduler.CreateScheduleGroupAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created schedule group '{name}':
{response.ScheduleGroupArn}.");
            return true;
```

```
        }
        catch (ConflictException ex)
        {
            // If the name is not unique, a ConflictException will be thrown.
            _logger.LogError($"Failed to create schedule group '{name}' due to a
 conflict. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while creating schedule group '{name}':
 {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateScheduleGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteSchedule`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSchedule`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an existing schedule from Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="groupName">The group name of the schedule to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule was deleted successfully, false otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteScheduleAsync(string name, string groupName)
    {
        try
```

```
        {
            var request = new DeleteScheduleRequest
            {
                Name = name,
                GroupName = groupName
            };

            await _amazonScheduler.DeleteScheduleAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted schedule with name '{name}'.");
            return true;

        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"Failed to delete schedule with ID '{name}' because the resource
was not found: {ex.Message}");
            return true;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while deleting schedule with ID '{name}':
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteSchedule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteScheduleGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteScheduleGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an existing schedule group from Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule group was deleted successfully, false
otherwise.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteScheduleGroupAsync(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteScheduleGroupRequest { Name = name };

            await _amazonScheduler.DeleteScheduleGroupAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted schedule group '{name}'.");
            return true;

        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"Failed to delete schedule group '{name}' because the resource was
not found: {ex.Message}");
            return true;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while deleting schedule group '{name}':
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteScheduleGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Scheduled Events

The following code example shows how to:

- Deploy a CloudFormation stack with required resources.
- Create a EventBridge Scheduler schedule group.
- Create a one-time EventBridge Scheduler schedule with a flexible time window.
- Create a recurring EventBridge Scheduler schedule with a specified rate.
- Delete EventBridge Scheduler the schedule and schedule group.
- Clean up resources and delete the stack.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the scenario.

```
using System.Text.RegularExpressions;
using Amazon.CloudFormation;
using Amazon.CloudFormation.Model;
using Amazon.Scheduler;
using Amazon.Scheduler.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;
using SchedulerActions;
using Exception = System.Exception;

namespace SchedulerScenario;

public class SchedulerWorkflow
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
    This .NET code example performs the following tasks for the Amazon EventBridge
 Scheduler workflow:
```

```
   1. Prepare the Application:
      - Prompt the user for an email address to use for the subscription for the
 SNS topic subscription.
      - Prompt the user for a name for the Cloud Formation stack.
      - Deploy the Cloud Formation template in resources/cfn_template.yaml for
 resource creation.
      - Store the outputs of the stack into variables for use in the scenario.
      - Create a schedule group for all schedules.

   2. Create one-time Schedule:
      - Create a one-time schedule to send an initial event.
      - Use a Flexible Time Window and set the schedule to delete after completion.
      - Wait for the user to receive the event email from SNS.

   3. Create a time-based schedule:
      - Prompt the user for how many X times per Y hours a recurring event should
 be scheduled.
      - Create the scheduled event for X times per hour for Y hours.
      - Wait for the user to receive the event email from SNS.
      - Delete the schedule when the user is finished.

   4. Clean up:
      - Prompt the user for y/n answer if they want to destroy the stack and clean
 up all resources.
      - Delete the schedule group.
      - Destroy the Cloud Formation stack and wait until the stack has been
 removed.
   */

   public static ILogger<SchedulerWorkflow> _logger = null!;
   public static SchedulerWrapper _schedulerWrapper = null!;
   public static IAmazonCloudFormation _amazonCloudFormation = null!;

   private static string _roleArn = null!;
   private static string _snsTopicArn = null!;

   public static bool _interactive = true;
   private static string _stackName = "default-scheduler-scenario-stack-name";
   private static string _scheduleGroupName = "scenario-schedules-group";
   private static string _stackResourcePath = "../../../../../../scenarios/
features/eventbridge_scheduler/resources/cfn_template.yaml";

   public static async Task Main(string[] args)
   {
```

```
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonScheduler>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonCloudFormation>()
                    .AddTransient<SchedulerWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        if (_interactive)
        {
            _logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
                .CreateLogger<SchedulerWorkflow>();

            _schedulerWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<SchedulerWrapper>();
            _amazonCloudFormation =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonCloudFormation>();
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon EventBridge Scheduler Scenario.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            var prepareSuccess = await PrepareApplication();
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            if (prepareSuccess)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
                await CreateOneTimeSchedule();
                Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

                Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
                await CreateRecurringSchedule();
                Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            }
```

```
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Cleanup();
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem with the scenario, initiating
cleanup...");
            _interactive = false;
            await Cleanup();
        }

        Console.WriteLine("Amazon EventBridge Scheduler scenario completed.");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Prepares the application by creating the necessary resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if the application was prepared successfully.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> PrepareApplication()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Preparing the application...");
        try
        {
            // Prompt the user for an email address to use for the subscription.
            Console.WriteLine("\nThis example creates resources in a CloudFormation
stack, including an SNS topic" +
                              "\nthat will be subscribed to the EventBridge Scheduler
events. " +
                              "\n\nYou will need to confirm the subscription in order to
receive event emails. ");

            var emailAddress = PromptUserForEmail();

            // Prompt the user for a name for the CloudFormation stack
            _stackName = PromptUserForStackName();

            // Deploy the CloudFormation stack
            var deploySuccess = await DeployCloudFormationStack(_stackName,
emailAddress);

            if (deploySuccess)
            {
```

```
                // Create a schedule group for all schedules
                await
_schedulerWrapper.CreateScheduleGroupAsync(_scheduleGroupName);

                Console.WriteLine("Application preparation complete.");
                return true;
            }
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "An error occurred while preparing the
application.");
        }
        Console.WriteLine("Application preparation failed.");
        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deploys the CloudFormation stack with the necessary resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stackName">The name of the CloudFormation stack.</param>
    /// <param name="email">The email to use for the subscription.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the stack was deployed successfully.</returns>
    private static async Task<bool> DeployCloudFormationStack(string stackName,
string email)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"\nDeploying CloudFormation stack: {stackName}");

        try
        {
            var request = new CreateStackRequest
            {
                StackName = stackName,
                TemplateBody = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(_stackResourcePath),
                Capabilities = { Capability.CAPABILITY_NAMED_IAM }
            };

            // If an email is provided, set the parameter.
            if (!string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(email))
            {
                request.Parameters = new List<Parameter>()
                {
                    new() { ParameterKey = "email", ParameterValue = email }
                };
```

```
            }

            var response = await _amazonCloudFormation.CreateStackAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"CloudFormation stack creation started:
{stackName}");

                // Wait for the stack to be in CREATE_COMPLETE state
                bool stackCreated = await WaitForStackCompletion(response.StackId);

                if (stackCreated)
                {
                    // Retrieve the output values
                    var success = await GetStackOutputs(response.StackId);
                    return success;
                }
                else
                {
                    _logger.LogError($"CloudFormation stack creation failed:
{stackName}");
                    return false;
                }
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Failed to create CloudFormation stack:
{stackName}");
                return false;
            }
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            _logger.LogWarning($"CloudFormation stack '{stackName}' already exists.
Please provide a unique name.");
            var newStackName = PromptUserForStackName();
            return await DeployCloudFormationStack(newStackName, email);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while deploying the
CloudFormation stack: {stackName}");
            return false;
```

```
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Waits for the CloudFormation stack to be in the CREATE_COMPLETE state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="client">The CloudFormation client.</param>
    /// <param name="stackId">The ID of the CloudFormation stack.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the stack was created successfully.</returns>
    private static async Task<bool> WaitForStackCompletion(string stackId)
    {
        int retryCount = 0;
        const int maxRetries = 10;
        const int retryDelay = 30000; // 30 seconds.

        while (retryCount < maxRetries)
        {
            var describeStacksRequest = new DescribeStacksRequest
            {
                StackName = stackId
            };

            var describeStacksResponse = await
_amazonCloudFormation.DescribeStacksAsync(describeStacksRequest);

            if (describeStacksResponse.Stacks.Count > 0)
            {
                if (describeStacksResponse.Stacks[0].StackStatus ==
StackStatus.CREATE_COMPLETE)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("CloudFormation stack creation complete.");
                    return true;
                }
                if (describeStacksResponse.Stacks[0].StackStatus ==
StackStatus.CREATE_FAILED ||
                        describeStacksResponse.Stacks[0].StackStatus ==
StackStatus.ROLLBACK_COMPLETE)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("CloudFormation stack creation failed.");
                    return false;
                }
            }
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("Waiting for CloudFormation stack creation to
complete...");
            await Task.Delay(retryDelay);
            retryCount++;
        }

        _logger.LogError("Timed out waiting for CloudFormation stack creation to
complete.");
        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieves the output values from the CloudFormation stack.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stackId">The ID of the CloudFormation stack.</param>
    private static async Task<bool> GetStackOutputs(string stackId)
    {
        try
        {
            var describeStacksRequest = new DescribeStacksRequest { StackName =
stackId };

            var describeStacksResponse =
                await
_amazonCloudFormation.DescribeStacksAsync(describeStacksRequest);

            if (describeStacksResponse.Stacks.Count > 0)
            {
                var stack = describeStacksResponse.Stacks[0];
                _roleArn = GetStackOutputValue(stack, "RoleARN");
                _snsTopicArn = GetStackOutputValue(stack, "SNStopicARN");
                return true;
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"No stack found for stack outputs: {stackId}");
                return false;
            }
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                ex, $"Failed to retrieve CloudFormation stack outputs: {stackId}");
            return false;
```

```
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get an output value by key from a CloudFormation stack.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stack">The CloudFormation stack.</param>
    /// <param name="outputKey">The key of the output.</param>
    /// <returns>The value as a string.</returns>
    private static string GetStackOutputValue(Stack stack, string outputKey)
    {
        var output = stack.Outputs.First(o => o.OutputKey == outputKey);
        var outputValue = output.OutputValue;
        Console.WriteLine($"Stack output {outputKey}: {outputValue}");
        return outputValue;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a one-time schedule to send an initial event.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if the one-time schedule was created successfully.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> CreateOneTimeSchedule()
    {
        var scheduleName =
            PromptUserForResourceName("Enter a name for the one-time schedule:");

        Console.WriteLine($"Creating a one-time schedule named '{scheduleName}' " +
                          $"\nto send an initial event in 1 minute with a flexible
time window...");
        try
        {
            // Create a one-time schedule with a flexible time
            // window set to delete after completion.
            // You may also set a timezone instead of using UTC.
            var scheduledTime = DateTime.UtcNow.AddMinutes(1).ToString("s");

            var createSuccess = await _schedulerWrapper.CreateScheduleAsync(
                scheduleName,
                $"at({scheduledTime})",
                _scheduleGroupName,
                _snsTopicArn,
                _roleArn,
                $"One time scheduled event test from schedule {scheduleName}.",
                true,
```

```
                useFlexibleTimeWindow: true);

            Console.WriteLine($"Subscription email will receive an email from this
event.");
            Console.WriteLine($"You must confirm your subscription to receive event
emails.");

            Console.WriteLine($"One-time schedule '{scheduleName}' created
successfully.");
            return createSuccess;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"The target with ARN '{_snsTopicArn}' was not
found.");
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while creating the one-time
schedule '{scheduleName}'.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a recurring schedule to send events at a specified rate in minutes.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if the recurring schedule was created successfully.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> CreateRecurringSchedule()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Creating a recurring schedule to send events for one
hour...");

        try
        {
            // Prompt the user for a schedule name.
            var scheduleName =
                PromptUserForResourceName("Enter a name for the recurring schedule:
");

            // Prompt the user for the schedule rate (in minutes).
            var scheduleRateInMinutes =
```

```
                PromptUserForInteger("Enter the desired schedule rate (in minutes):
");

            // Create the recurring schedule.
            var createSuccess = await _schedulerWrapper.CreateScheduleAsync(
                scheduleName,
                $"rate({scheduleRateInMinutes} minutes)",
                _scheduleGroupName,
                _snsTopicArn,
                _roleArn,
                $"Recurrent event test from schedule {scheduleName}.");

            Console.WriteLine($"Subscription email will receive an email from this
event.");
            Console.WriteLine($"You must confirm your subscription to receive event
emails.");

            // Delete the schedule when the user is finished.
            if (!_interactive || GetYesNoResponse($"Are you ready to delete the
'{scheduleName}' schedule? (y/n)"))
            {
                await _schedulerWrapper.DeleteScheduleAsync(scheduleName,
_scheduleGroupName);
            }

            return createSuccess;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"The target with ARN '{_snsTopicArn}' was not
found.");
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "An error occurred while creating the recurring
schedule.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Cleans up the resources created during the scenario.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <returns>True if the cleanup was successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Cleanup()
    {
        // Prompt the user to confirm cleanup.
        var cleanup = !_interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
            "Do you want to delete all resources created by this scenario? (y/n) ");
        if (cleanup)
        {
            try
            {
                // Delete the schedule group.
                var groupDeleteSuccess = await
_schedulerWrapper.DeleteScheduleGroupAsync(_scheduleGroupName);

                // Destroy the CloudFormation stack and wait for it to be removed.
                var stackDeleteSuccess = await DeleteCloudFormationStack(_stackName,
false);

                return groupDeleteSuccess && stackDeleteSuccess;
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                _logger.LogError(ex,
                    "An error occurred while cleaning up the resources.");
                return false;
            }
        }
        _logger.LogInformation("EventBridge Scheduler scenario is complete.");
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the resources in the stack and wait for confirmation.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stackName">The name of the stack.</param>
    /// <param name="forceDelete">True to force delete the stack.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    private static async Task<bool> DeleteCloudFormationStack(string stackName, bool
forceDelete)
    {
        var request = new DeleteStackRequest
        {
            StackName = stackName,
        };
```

```
        if (forceDelete)
        {
            request.DeletionMode = DeletionMode.FORCE_DELETE_STACK;
        }

        await _amazonCloudFormation.DeleteStackAsync(request);
        Console.WriteLine($"CloudFormation stack '{_stackName}' is being deleted.
This may take a few minutes.");

        bool stackDeleted = await WaitForStackDeletion(_stackName, forceDelete);

        if (stackDeleted)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"CloudFormation stack '{_stackName}' has been
deleted.");
            return true;
        }
        else
        {
            _logger.LogError($"Failed to delete CloudFormation stack
'{_stackName}'.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait for the stack to be deleted.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stackName">The name of the stack.</param>
    /// <param name="forceDelete">True to force delete the stack.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    private static async Task<bool> WaitForStackDeletion(string stackName, bool
forceDelete)
    {
        int retryCount = 0;
        const int maxRetries = 10;
        const int retryDelay = 30000; // 30 seconds

        while (retryCount < maxRetries)
        {
            var describeStacksRequest = new DescribeStacksRequest
            {
                StackName = stackName
```

```
            };

            try
            {
                var describeStacksResponse = await
_amazonCloudFormation.DescribeStacksAsync(describeStacksRequest);

                if (describeStacksResponse.Stacks.Count == 0 ||
describeStacksResponse.Stacks[0].StackStatus == StackStatus.DELETE_COMPLETE)
                {
                    return true;
                }
                if (!forceDelete && describeStacksResponse.Stacks[0].StackStatus ==
StackStatus.DELETE_FAILED)
                {
                    // Try one time to force delete.
                    return await DeleteCloudFormationStack(stackName, true);
                }
            }
            catch (AmazonCloudFormationException ex) when (ex.ErrorCode ==
"ValidationError")
            {
                // Stack does not exist, so it has been successfully deleted.
                return true;
            }

            Console.WriteLine($"Waiting for CloudFormation stack '{stackName}' to be
deleted...");
            await Task.Delay(retryDelay);
            retryCount++;
        }

        _logger.LogError($"Timed out waiting for CloudFormation stack '{stackName}'
to be deleted.");
        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
    {
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        var response = ynResponse != null && ynResponse.Equals("y",
StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
        return response;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Prompt the user for a valid email address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The valid email address.</returns>
    private static string PromptUserForEmail()
    {
        if (_interactive)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Enter an email address to use for event
subscriptions: ");

            string email = Console.ReadLine()!;

            if (!IsValidEmail(email))
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Invalid email address. Please try again.");
                return PromptUserForEmail();
            }
            return email;
        }
        // Used when running without user prompts.
        return "";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Prompt the user for a non-empty stack name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The valid stack name</returns>
    private static string PromptUserForStackName()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Enter a name for the AWS Cloud Formation Stack: ");
        if (_interactive)
        {
            string stackName = Console.ReadLine()!;
            var regex = "[a-zA-Z][-a-zA-Z0-9]|arn:[-a-zA-Z0-9:/._+]";
            if (!Regex.IsMatch(stackName, regex))
            {
```

```
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Invalid stack name. Please use a name that matches the pattern
{regex}.");
                return PromptUserForStackName();
            }

            return stackName;
        }
        // Used when running without user prompts.
        return _stackName;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Prompt the user for a non-empty resource name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The valid stack name</returns>
    private static string PromptUserForResourceName(string prompt)
    {
        if (_interactive)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(prompt);
            string resourceName = Console.ReadLine()!;
            var regex = "[0-9a-zA-Z-_.]+";
            if (!Regex.IsMatch(resourceName, regex))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Invalid resource name. Please use a name that
matches the pattern {regex}.");
                return PromptUserForResourceName(prompt);
            }
            return resourceName!;
        }
        // Used when running without user prompts.
        return "resource-" + Guid.NewGuid();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Prompt the user for a non-empty resource name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The valid stack name</returns>
    private static int PromptUserForInteger(string prompt)
    {
        if (_interactive)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(prompt);
```

```
            string stringResponse = Console.ReadLine()!;
            if (string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(stringResponse) ||
                !Int32.TryParse(stringResponse, out var intResponse))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Invalid integer. ");
                return PromptUserForInteger(prompt);
            }
            return intResponse!;
        }
        // Used when running without user prompts.
        return 1;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Use System Mail to check for a valid email address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="email">The string to verify.</param>
    /// <returns>True if a valid email address.</returns>
    private static bool IsValidEmail(string email)
    {
        try
        {
            var mailAddress = new System.Net.Mail.MailAddress(email);
            return mailAddress.Address == email;
        }
        catch
        {
            // Invalid emails will cause an exception, return false.
            return false;
        }
    }
}
```

Wrapper for service operations.

```
using Amazon.Scheduler;
using Amazon.Scheduler.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;

namespace SchedulerActions;

/// <summary>
```

```
/// Wrapper class for Amazon EventBridge Scheduler operations.
/// </summary>
public class SchedulerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonScheduler _amazonScheduler;
    private readonly ILogger<SchedulerWrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the SchedulerWrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonScheduler">The injected EventBridge Scheduler client.</
param>
    /// <param name="logger">The injected logger.</param>
    public SchedulerWrapper(IAmazonScheduler amazonScheduler,
 ILogger<SchedulerWrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonScheduler = amazonScheduler;
        _logger = logger;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new schedule in Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule.</param>
    /// <param name="scheduleExpression">The schedule expression that defines when
 the schedule should run.</param>
    /// <param name="scheduleGroupName">The name of the schedule group to which the
 schedule should be added.</param>
    /// <param name="deleteAfterCompletion">Indicates whether to delete the schedule
 after completion.</param>
    /// <param name="useFlexibleTimeWindow">Indicates whether to use a flexible time
 window for the schedule.</param>
    /// <param name="targetArn">ARN of the event target.</param>
    /// <param name="roleArn">Execution Role ARN.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule was created successfully, false otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateScheduleAsync(
            string name,
            string scheduleExpression,
            string scheduleGroupName,
            string targetArn,
            string roleArn,
            string input,
            bool deleteAfterCompletion = false,
```

```
            bool useFlexibleTimeWindow = false)
    {
        try
        {
            int hoursToRun = 1;
            int flexibleTimeWindowMinutes = 10;

            var request = new CreateScheduleRequest
            {
                Name = name,
                ScheduleExpression = scheduleExpression,
                GroupName = scheduleGroupName,
                Target = new Target { Arn = targetArn, RoleArn = roleArn, Input =
input },
                ActionAfterCompletion = deleteAfterCompletion
                    ? ActionAfterCompletion.DELETE
                    : ActionAfterCompletion.NONE,
                StartDate = DateTime.UtcNow, // Ignored for one-time schedules.
                EndDate =
                    DateTime.UtcNow
                        .AddHours(hoursToRun) // Ignored for one-time schedules.
            };
            // Allow a flexible time window if the caller specifies it.
            request.FlexibleTimeWindow = new FlexibleTimeWindow
            {
                Mode = useFlexibleTimeWindow
                    ? FlexibleTimeWindowMode.FLEXIBLE
                    : FlexibleTimeWindowMode.OFF,
                MaximumWindowInMinutes = useFlexibleTimeWindow
                    ? flexibleTimeWindowMinutes
                    : null
            };

            var response = await _amazonScheduler.CreateScheduleAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created schedule '{name}' " +
                              $"in schedule group '{scheduleGroupName}':
{response.ScheduleArn}.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (ConflictException ex)
        {
            // If the name is not unique, a ConflictException will be thrown.
```

```
            _logger.LogError($"Failed to create schedule '{name}' due to a conflict.
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while creating schedule '{name}' "
+
                              $"in schedule group '{scheduleGroupName}':
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new schedule group in Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule group.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule group was created successfully, false
otherwise.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateScheduleGroupAsync(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new CreateScheduleGroupRequest { Name = name };

            var response = await _amazonScheduler.CreateScheduleGroupAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created schedule group '{name}':
{response.ScheduleGroupArn}.");
            return true;

        }
        catch (ConflictException ex)
        {
            // If the name is not unique, a ConflictException will be thrown.
            _logger.LogError($"Failed to create schedule group '{name}' due to a
conflict. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
```

```
                $"An error occurred while creating schedule group '{name}':
 {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an existing schedule from Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="groupName">The group name of the schedule to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule was deleted successfully, false otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteScheduleAsync(string name, string groupName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteScheduleRequest
            {
                Name = name,
                GroupName = groupName
            };

            await _amazonScheduler.DeleteScheduleAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted schedule with name '{name}'.");
            return true;

        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"Failed to delete schedule with ID '{name}' because the resource
 was not found: {ex.Message}");
            return true;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while deleting schedule with ID '{name}':
 {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an existing schedule group from Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule group was deleted successfully, false
 otherwise.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteScheduleGroupAsync(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteScheduleGroupRequest { Name = name };

            await _amazonScheduler.DeleteScheduleGroupAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted schedule group '{name}'.");
            return true;

        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"Failed to delete schedule group '{name}' because the resource was
 not found: {ex.Message}");
            return true;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while deleting schedule group '{name}':
 {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateSchedule
  - CreateScheduleGroup
  - DeleteSchedule
  - DeleteScheduleGroups

Amazon Glacier examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon Glacier.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Get started
- Actions

Get started

Hello Amazon Glacier

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon Glacier.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.Glacier;
using Amazon.Glacier.Model;

namespace GlacierActions;

public static class HelloGlacier
{
    static async Task Main()
    {
```

```
        var glacierService = new AmazonGlacierClient();

        Console.WriteLine("Hello Amazon Glacier!");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's list your Glacier vaults:");

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get the vaults using a paginator.
        var glacierVaultPaginator = glacierService.Paginators.ListVaults(
            new ListVaultsRequest { AccountId = "-" });

        await foreach (var vault in glacierVaultPaginator.VaultList)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{vault.CreationDate}:{vault.VaultName}, ARN:
{vault.VaultARN}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListVaults in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Actions

`AddTagsToVault`

The following code example shows how to use `AddTagsToVault`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Add tags to the items in an Amazon S3 Glacier vault.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vaultName">The name of the vault to add tags to.</param>
    /// <param name="key">The name of the object to tag.</param>
    /// <param name="value">The tag value to add.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AddTagsToVaultAsync(string vaultName, string key, string
value)
    {
        var request = new AddTagsToVaultRequest
        {
            Tags = new Dictionary<string, string>
                {
                    { key, value },
                },
            AccountId = "-",
            VaultName = vaultName,
        };

        var response = await _glacierService.AddTagsToVaultAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.NoContent;
    }
```

- For API details, see AddTagsToVault in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateVault`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateVault`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon S3 Glacier vault.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vaultName">The name of the vault to create.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateVaultAsync(string vaultName)
    {
        var request = new CreateVaultRequest
        {
```

```
            // Setting the AccountId to "-" means that
            // the account associated with the current
            // account will be used.
            AccountId = "-",
            VaultName = vaultName,
        };

        var response = await _glacierService.CreateVaultAsync(request);

        Console.WriteLine($"Created {vaultName} at: {response.Location}");

        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.Created;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateVault in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeVault`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeVault`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Describe an Amazon S3 Glacier vault.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vaultName">The name of the vault to describe.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the vault.</returns>
    public async Task<string> DescribeVaultAsync(string vaultName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeVaultRequest
        {
            AccountId = "-",
            VaultName = vaultName,
        };
```

```
        var response = await _glacierService.DescribeVaultAsync(request);

        // Display the information about the vault.
        Console.WriteLine($"{response.VaultName}\tARN: {response.VaultARN}");
        Console.WriteLine($"Created on: {response.CreationDate}\tNumber of Archives:
{response.NumberOfArchives}\tSize (in bytes): {response.SizeInBytes}");
        if (response.LastInventoryDate != DateTime.MinValue)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Last inventory: {response.LastInventoryDate}");
        }

        return response.VaultARN;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeVault in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`InitiateJob`

The following code example shows how to use `InitiateJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Retrieve an archive from a vault. This example uses the ArchiveTransferManager class. For API details see ArchiveTransferManager.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Download an archive from an Amazon S3 Glacier vault using the Archive
    /// Transfer Manager.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vaultName">The name of the vault containing the object.</param>
    /// <param name="archiveId">The Id of the archive to download.</param>
    /// <param name="localFilePath">The local directory where the file will
    /// be stored after download.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
```

```
   public async Task<bool> DownloadArchiveWithArchiveManagerAsync(string vaultName,
string archiveId, string localFilePath)
   {
       try
       {
           var manager = new ArchiveTransferManager(_glacierService);

           var options = new DownloadOptions
           {
               StreamTransferProgress = Progress!,
           };

           // Download an archive.
           Console.WriteLine("Initiating the archive retrieval job and then polling
SQS queue for the archive to be available.");
           Console.WriteLine("When the archive is available, downloading will
begin.");
           await manager.DownloadAsync(vaultName, archiveId, localFilePath,
options);

           return true;
       }
       catch (AmazonGlacierException ex)
       {
           Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
           return false;
       }
   }

   /// <summary>
   /// Event handler to track the progress of the Archive Transfer Manager.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="sender">The object that raised the event.</param>
   /// <param name="args">The argument values from the object that raised the
   /// event.</param>
   static void Progress(object sender, StreamTransferProgressArgs args)
   {
       if (args.PercentDone != _currentPercentage)
       {
           _currentPercentage = args.PercentDone;
           Console.WriteLine($"Downloaded {_currentPercentage}%");
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see InitiateJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListJobs`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// List Amazon S3 Glacier jobs.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="vaultName">The name of the vault to list jobs for.</param>
/// <returns>A list of Amazon S3 Glacier jobs.</returns>
public async Task<List<GlacierJobDescription>> ListJobsAsync(string vaultName)
{
    var request = new ListJobsRequest
    {
        // Using a hyphen "-" for the Account Id will
        // cause the SDK to use the Account Id associated
        // with the current account.
        AccountId = "-",
        VaultName = vaultName,
    };

    var response = await _glacierService.ListJobsAsync(request);

    return response.JobList;
}
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListTagsForVault`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTagsForVault`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List tags for an Amazon S3 Glacier vault.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vaultName">The name of the vault to list tags for.</param>
    /// <returns>A dictionary listing the tags attached to each object in the
    /// vault and its tags.</returns>
    public async Task<Dictionary<string, string>> ListTagsForVaultAsync(string
vaultName)
    {
        var request = new ListTagsForVaultRequest
        {
            // Using a hyphen "-" for the Account Id will
            // cause the SDK to use the Account Id associated
            // with the default user.
            AccountId = "-",
            VaultName = vaultName,
        };

        var response = await _glacierService.ListTagsForVaultAsync(request);

        return response.Tags;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForVault in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListVaults`

The following code example shows how to use `ListVaults`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// List the Amazon S3 Glacier vaults associated with the current account.
/// </summary>
/// <returns>A list containing information about each vault.</returns>
public async Task<List<DescribeVaultOutput>> ListVaultsAsync()
{
    var glacierVaultPaginator = _glacierService.Paginators.ListVaults(
        new ListVaultsRequest { AccountId = "-" });
    var vaultList = new List<DescribeVaultOutput>();

    await foreach (var vault in glacierVaultPaginator.VaultList)
    {
        vaultList.Add(vault);
    }

    return vaultList;
}
```

- For API details, see ListVaults in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`UploadArchive`

The following code example shows how to use `UploadArchive`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Upload an object to an Amazon S3 Glacier vault.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vaultName">The name of the Amazon S3 Glacier vault to upload
    /// the archive to.</param>
    /// <param name="archiveFilePath">The file path of the archive to upload to the
vault.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<string> UploadArchiveWithArchiveManager(string vaultName,
string archiveFilePath)
    {
        try
        {
            var manager = new ArchiveTransferManager(_glacierService);

            // Upload an archive.
            var response = await manager.UploadAsync(vaultName, "upload archive
test", archiveFilePath);
            return response.ArchiveId;
        }
        catch (AmazonGlacierException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return string.Empty;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UploadArchive in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

AWS Glue examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with AWS Glue.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Get started
- Basics
- Actions

Get started

Hello AWS Glue

The following code example shows how to get started using AWS Glue.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace GlueActions;

public class HelloGlue
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for AWS Glue.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonGlue>()
```

```
                .AddTransient<GlueWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<HelloGlue>();
        var glueClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonGlue>();

        var request = new ListJobsRequest();

        var jobNames = new List<string>();

        do
        {
            var response = await glueClient.ListJobsAsync(request);
            jobNames.AddRange(response.JobNames);
            request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
        }
        while (request.NextToken is not null);

        Console.Clear();
        Console.WriteLine("Hello, Glue. Let's list your existing Glue Jobs:");
        if (jobNames.Count == 0)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("You don't have any AWS Glue jobs.");
        }
        else
        {
            jobNames.ForEach(Console.WriteLine);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a crawler that crawls a public Amazon S3 bucket and generates a database of CSV-formatted metadata.
- List information about databases and tables in your AWS Glue Data Catalog.
- Create a job to extract CSV data from the S3 bucket, transform the data, and load JSON-formatted output into another S3 bucket.
- List information about job runs, view transformed data, and clean up resources.

For more information, see Tutorial: Getting started with AWS Glue Studio.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps AWS Glue functions that are used in the scenario.

```
using System.Net;

namespace GlueActions;

public class GlueWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonGlue _amazonGlue;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the AWS Glue actions wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonGlue"></param>
    public GlueWrapper(IAmazonGlue amazonGlue)
    {
        _amazonGlue = amazonGlue;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name for the crawler.</param>
    /// <param name="crawlerDescription">A description of the crawler.</param>
    /// <param name="role">The AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role to
    /// be assumed by the crawler.</param>
    /// <param name="schedule">The schedule on which the crawler will be executed.</
param>
    /// <param name="s3Path">The path to the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon
 S3)
    /// bucket where the Python script has been stored.</param>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name to use for the database that will be
    /// created by the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateCrawlerAsync(
        string crawlerName,
        string crawlerDescription,
        string role,
        string schedule,
        string s3Path,
        string dbName)
    {
        var s3Target = new S3Target
        {
            Path = s3Path,
        };

        var targetList = new List<S3Target>
        {
            s3Target,
        };

        var targets = new CrawlerTargets
        {
            S3Targets = targetList,
        };

        var crawlerRequest = new CreateCrawlerRequest
        {
            DatabaseName = dbName,
            Name = crawlerName,
            Description = crawlerDescription,
            Targets = targets,
            Role = role,
            Schedule = schedule,
        };
```

```
        var response = await _amazonGlue.CreateCrawlerAsync(crawlerRequest);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create an AWS Glue job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to be assumed by
    /// the job.</param>
    /// <param name="description">A description of the job.</param>
    /// <param name="scriptUrl">The URL to the script.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateJobAsync(string dbName, string tableName, string
 bucketUrl, string jobName, string roleName, string description, string scriptUrl)
    {
        var command = new JobCommand
        {
            PythonVersion = "3",
            Name = "glueetl",
            ScriptLocation = scriptUrl,
        };

        var arguments = new Dictionary<string, string>
        {
            { "--input_database", dbName },
            { "--input_table", tableName },
            { "--output_bucket_url", bucketUrl }
        };

        var request = new CreateJobRequest
        {
            Command = command,
            DefaultArguments = arguments,
            Description = description,
            GlueVersion = "3.0",
            Name = jobName,
            NumberOfWorkers = 10,
            Role = roleName,
            WorkerType = "G.1X"
        };
```

```
        var response = await _amazonGlue.CreateJobAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name of the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteCrawlerAsync(string crawlerName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteCrawlerAsync(new DeleteCrawlerRequest
{ Name = crawlerName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name of the database.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteDatabaseAsync(string dbName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteDatabaseAsync(new
DeleteDatabaseRequest { Name = dbName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an AWS Glue job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteJobAsync(string jobName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteJobAsync(new DeleteJobRequest
{ JobName = jobName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a table from an AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The table to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTableAsync(string dbName, string tableName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteTableAsync(new DeleteTableRequest
{ Name = tableName, DatabaseName = dbName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name of the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A Crawler object describing the crawler.</returns>
    public async Task<Crawler?> GetCrawlerAsync(string crawlerName)
    {
        var crawlerRequest = new GetCrawlerRequest
        {
            Name = crawlerName,
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.GetCrawlerAsync(crawlerRequest);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            var databaseName = response.Crawler.DatabaseName;
            Console.WriteLine($"{crawlerName} has the database {databaseName}");
            return response.Crawler;
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"No information regarding {crawlerName} could be
found.");
        return null;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about the state of an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name of the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A value describing the state of the crawler.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<CrawlerState> GetCrawlerStateAsync(string crawlerName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.GetCrawlerAsync(
            new GetCrawlerRequest { Name = crawlerName });
        return response.Crawler.State;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name of the database.</param>
    /// <returns>A Database object containing information about the database.</
returns>
    public async Task<Database> GetDatabaseAsync(string dbName)
    {
        var databasesRequest = new GetDatabaseRequest
        {
            Name = dbName,
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.GetDatabaseAsync(databasesRequest);
        return response.Database;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about a specific AWS Glue job run.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <param name="jobRunId">The Id of the job run.</param>
    /// <returns>A JobRun object with information about the job run.</returns>
    public async Task<JobRun> GetJobRunAsync(string jobName, string jobRunId)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.GetJobRunAsync(new GetJobRunRequest
 { JobName = jobName, RunId = jobRunId });
        return response.JobRun;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about all AWS Glue runs of a specific job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>A list of JobRun objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<JobRun>> GetJobRunsAsync(string jobName)
    {
        var jobRuns = new List<JobRun>();

        var request = new GetJobRunsRequest
        {
            JobName = jobName,
        };

        // No need to loop to get all the log groups--the SDK does it for us behind
the scenes
        var paginatorForJobRuns =
            _amazonGlue.Paginators.GetJobRuns(request);

        await foreach (var response in paginatorForJobRuns.Responses)
        {
            response.JobRuns.ForEach(jobRun =>
            {
                jobRuns.Add(jobRun);
            });
        }

        return jobRuns;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of tables for an AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name of the database.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of Table objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Table>> GetTablesAsync(string dbName)
    {
        var request = new GetTablesRequest { DatabaseName = dbName };
        var tables = new List<Table>();

        // Get a paginator for listing the tables.
        var tablePaginator = _amazonGlue.Paginators.GetTables(request);

        await foreach (var response in tablePaginator.Responses)
        {
            tables.AddRange(response.TableList);
        }
```

```
        return tables;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List AWS Glue jobs using a paginator.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of AWS Glue job names.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> ListJobsAsync()
    {
        var jobNames = new List<string>();

        var listJobsPaginator = _amazonGlue.Paginators.ListJobs(new ListJobsRequest
{ MaxResults = 10 });
        await foreach (var response in listJobsPaginator.Responses)
        {
            jobNames.AddRange(response.JobNames);
        }

        return jobNames;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Start an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name of the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> StartCrawlerAsync(string crawlerName)
    {
        var crawlerRequest = new StartCrawlerRequest
        {
            Name = crawlerName,
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.StartCrawlerAsync(crawlerRequest);

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Start an AWS Glue job run.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <returns>A string representing the job run Id.</returns>
    public async Task<string> StartJobRunAsync(
        string jobName,
        string inputDatabase,
        string inputTable,
        string bucketName)
    {
        var request = new StartJobRunRequest
        {
            JobName = jobName,
            Arguments = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                {"--input_database", inputDatabase},
                {"--input_table", inputTable},
                {"--output_bucket_url", $"s3://{bucketName}/"}
            }
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.StartJobRunAsync(request);
        return response.JobRunId;
    }

}
```

Create a class that runs the scenario.

```
global using Amazon.Glue;
global using GlueActions;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;



using Amazon.Glue.Model;
using Amazon.S3;
```

```
using Amazon.S3.Model;

namespace GlueBasics;

public class GlueBasics
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;
    private static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for AWS Glue.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonGlue>()
            .AddTransient<GlueWrapper>()
            .AddTransient<UiWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
        .CreateLogger<GlueBasics>();

        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        // These values are stored in settings.json
        // Once you have run the CDK script to deploy the resources,
        // edit the file to set "BucketName", "RoleName", and "ScriptURL"
        // to the appropriate values. Also set "CrawlerName" to the name
        // you want to give the crawler when it is created.
        string bucketName = _configuration["BucketName"]!;
        string bucketUrl = _configuration["BucketUrl"]!;
        string crawlerName = _configuration["CrawlerName"]!;
        string roleName = _configuration["RoleName"]!;
```

```
        string sourceData = _configuration["SourceData"]!;
        string dbName = _configuration["DbName"]!;
        string cron = _configuration["Cron"]!;
        string scriptUrl = _configuration["ScriptURL"]!;
        string jobName = _configuration["JobName"]!;

        var wrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<GlueWrapper>();
        var uiWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<UiWrapper>();

        uiWrapper.DisplayOverview();
        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        // Create the crawler and wait for it to be ready.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Create AWS Glue crawler");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's begin by creating the AWS Glue crawler.");

        var crawlerDescription = "Crawler created for the AWS Glue Basics
scenario.";
        var crawlerCreated = await wrapper.CreateCrawlerAsync(crawlerName,
crawlerDescription, roleName, cron, sourceData, dbName);
        if (crawlerCreated)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The crawler: {crawlerName} has been created. Now
let's wait until it's ready.");
            CrawlerState crawlerState;
            do
            {
                crawlerState = await wrapper.GetCrawlerStateAsync(crawlerName);
            }
            while (crawlerState != "READY");
            Console.WriteLine($"The crawler {crawlerName} is now ready for use.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't create crawler {crawlerName}.");
            return; // Exit the application.
        }

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Start AWS Glue crawler");
        Console.WriteLine("Now let's wait until the crawler has successfully
started.");
        var crawlerStarted = await wrapper.StartCrawlerAsync(crawlerName);
        if (crawlerStarted)
        {
```

```
            CrawlerState crawlerState;
            do
            {
                crawlerState = await wrapper.GetCrawlerStateAsync(crawlerName);
            }
            while (crawlerState != "READY");
            Console.WriteLine($"The crawler {crawlerName} is now ready for use.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't start the crawler {crawlerName}.");
            return; // Exit the application.
        }

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        Console.WriteLine($"\nLet's take a look at the database: {dbName}");
        var database = await wrapper.GetDatabaseAsync(dbName);

        if (database != null)
        {
            uiWrapper.DisplayTitle($"{database.Name} Details");
            Console.WriteLine($"{database.Name} created on {database.CreateTime}");
            Console.WriteLine(database.Description);
        }

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        var tables = await wrapper.GetTablesAsync(dbName);
        if (tables.Count > 0)
        {
            tables.ForEach(table =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{table.Name}\tCreated:
{table.CreateTime}\tUpdated: {table.UpdateTime}");
            });
        }

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Create AWS Glue job");
        Console.WriteLine("Creating a new AWS Glue job.");
        var description = "An AWS Glue job created using the AWS SDK for .NET";
```

```
        await wrapper.CreateJobAsync(dbName, tables[0].Name, bucketUrl, jobName,
roleName, description, scriptUrl);

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Starting AWS Glue job");
        Console.WriteLine("Starting the new AWS Glue job...");
        var jobRunId = await wrapper.StartJobRunAsync(jobName, dbName,
tables[0].Name, bucketName);
        var jobRunComplete = false;
        var jobRun = new JobRun();
        do
        {
            jobRun = await wrapper.GetJobRunAsync(jobName, jobRunId);
            if (jobRun.JobRunState == "SUCCEEDED" || jobRun.JobRunState == "STOPPED"
||
                jobRun.JobRunState == "FAILED" || jobRun.JobRunState == "TIMEOUT")
            {
                jobRunComplete = true;
            }
        } while (!jobRunComplete);

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle($"Data in {bucketName}");

        // Get the list of data stored in the S3 bucket.
        var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();

        var response = await s3Client.ListObjectsAsync(new ListObjectsRequest
{ BucketName = bucketName });
        response.S3Objects.ForEach(s3Object =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine(s3Object.Key);
        });

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("AWS Glue jobs");
        var jobNames = await wrapper.ListJobsAsync();
        jobNames.ForEach(jobName =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine(jobName);
        });

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Get AWS Glue job run information");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("Getting information about the AWS Glue job.");
        var jobRuns = await wrapper.GetJobRunsAsync(jobName);

        jobRuns.ForEach(jobRun =>
        {

 Console.WriteLine($"{jobRun.JobName}\t{jobRun.JobRunState}\t{jobRun.CompletedOn}");
        });

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Deleting resources");
        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the AWS Glue job used by the example.");
        await wrapper.DeleteJobAsync(jobName);

        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the tables from the database.");
        tables.ForEach(async table =>
        {
            await wrapper.DeleteTableAsync(dbName, table.Name);
        });

        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the database.");
        await wrapper.DeleteDatabaseAsync(dbName);

        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the AWS Glue crawler.");
        await wrapper.DeleteCrawlerAsync(crawlerName);

        Console.WriteLine("The AWS Glue scenario has completed.");
        uiWrapper.PressEnter();
    }
}


namespace GlueBasics;

public class UiWrapper
{
    public readonly string SepBar = new string('-', Console.WindowWidth);

    /// <summary>
    /// Show information about the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    public void DisplayOverview()
    {
```

```
        Console.Clear();
        DisplayTitle("Amazon Glue: get started with crawlers and jobs");

        Console.WriteLine("This example application does the following:");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 1. Create a crawler, pass it the IAM role and the URL
to the public S3 bucket that contains the source data");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 2. Start the crawler.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 3. Get the database created by the crawler and the
tables in the database.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 4. Create a job.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 5. Start a job run.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 6. Wait for the job run to complete.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 7. Show the data stored in the bucket.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 8. List jobs for the account.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 9. Get job run details for the job that was run.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t10. Delete the demo job.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t11. Delete the database and tables created for the
demo.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t12. Delete the crawler.");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a message and wait until the user presses enter.
    /// </summary>
    public void PressEnter()
    {
        Console.Write("\nPlease press <Enter> to continue. ");
        _ = Console.ReadLine();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Pad a string with spaces to center it on the console display.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strToCenter">The string to center on the screen.</param>
    /// <returns>The string padded to make it center on the screen.</returns>
    public string CenterString(string strToCenter)
    {
        var padAmount = (Console.WindowWidth - strToCenter.Length) / 2;
        var leftPad = new string(' ', padAmount);
        return $"{leftPad}{strToCenter}";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a line of hyphens, the centered text of the title and another
```

```
    /// line of hyphens.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strTitle">The string to be displayed.</param>
    public void DisplayTitle(string strTitle)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
        Console.WriteLine(CenterString(strTitle));
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateCrawler
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteCrawler
  - DeleteDatabase
  - DeleteJob
  - DeleteTable
  - GetCrawler
  - GetDatabase
  - GetDatabases
  - GetJob
  - GetJobRun
  - GetJobRuns
  - GetTables
  - ListJobs
  - StartCrawler
  - StartJobRun

Actions

`CreateCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCrawler`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name for the crawler.</param>
    /// <param name="crawlerDescription">A description of the crawler.</param>
    /// <param name="role">The AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role to
    /// be assumed by the crawler.</param>
    /// <param name="schedule">The schedule on which the crawler will be executed.</
param>
    /// <param name="s3Path">The path to the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon
 S3)
    /// bucket where the Python script has been stored.</param>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name to use for the database that will be
    /// created by the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateCrawlerAsync(
        string crawlerName,
        string crawlerDescription,
        string role,
        string schedule,
        string s3Path,
        string dbName)
    {
        var s3Target = new S3Target
        {
            Path = s3Path,
        };

        var targetList = new List<S3Target>
        {
            s3Target,
        };

        var targets = new CrawlerTargets
```

```
        {
            S3Targets = targetList,
        };

        var crawlerRequest = new CreateCrawlerRequest
        {
            DatabaseName = dbName,
            Name = crawlerName,
            Description = crawlerDescription,
            Targets = targets,
            Role = role,
            Schedule = schedule,
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.CreateCrawlerAsync(crawlerRequest);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateCrawler in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an AWS Glue job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to be assumed by
    /// the job.</param>
    /// <param name="description">A description of the job.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="scriptUrl">The URL to the script.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateJobAsync(string dbName, string tableName, string
 bucketUrl, string jobName, string roleName, string description, string scriptUrl)
    {
        var command = new JobCommand
        {
            PythonVersion = "3",
            Name = "glueetl",
            ScriptLocation = scriptUrl,
        };

        var arguments = new Dictionary<string, string>
        {
            { "--input_database", dbName },
            { "--input_table", tableName },
            { "--output_bucket_url", bucketUrl }
        };

        var request = new CreateJobRequest
        {
            Command = command,
            DefaultArguments = arguments,
            Description = description,
            GlueVersion = "3.0",
            Name = jobName,
            NumberOfWorkers = 10,
            Role = roleName,
            WorkerType = "G.1X"
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.CreateJobAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

DeleteCrawler

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCrawler`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name of the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteCrawlerAsync(string crawlerName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteCrawlerAsync(new DeleteCrawlerRequest
{ Name = crawlerName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteCrawler in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteDatabase`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDatabase`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="dbName">The name of the database.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteDatabaseAsync(string dbName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteDatabaseAsync(new
DeleteDatabaseRequest { Name = dbName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatabase in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an AWS Glue job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteJobAsync(string jobName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteJobAsync(new DeleteJobRequest
{ JobName = jobName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a table from an AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The table to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTableAsync(string dbName, string tableName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteTableAsync(new DeleteTableRequest
{ Name = tableName, DatabaseName = dbName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `GetCrawler`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name of the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A Crawler object describing the crawler.</returns>
    public async Task<Crawler?> GetCrawlerAsync(string crawlerName)
    {
        var crawlerRequest = new GetCrawlerRequest
        {
            Name = crawlerName,
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.GetCrawlerAsync(crawlerRequest);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            var databaseName = response.Crawler.DatabaseName;
            Console.WriteLine($"{crawlerName} has the database {databaseName}");
            return response.Crawler;
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"No information regarding {crawlerName} could be
found.");
        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetCrawler in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetDatabase`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDatabase`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name of the database.</param>
    /// <returns>A Database object containing information about the database.</
returns>
    public async Task<Database> GetDatabaseAsync(string dbName)
    {
        var databasesRequest = new GetDatabaseRequest
        {
            Name = dbName,
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.GetDatabaseAsync(databasesRequest);
        return response.Database;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetDatabase in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetJobRun`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJobRun`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about a specific AWS Glue job run.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <param name="jobRunId">The Id of the job run.</param>
    /// <returns>A JobRun object with information about the job run.</returns>
    public async Task<JobRun> GetJobRunAsync(string jobName, string jobRunId)
    {
```

```
        var response = await _amazonGlue.GetJobRunAsync(new GetJobRunRequest
{ JobName = jobName, RunId = jobRunId });
        return response.JobRun;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetJobRun in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetJobRuns`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJobRuns`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about all AWS Glue runs of a specific job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of JobRun objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<JobRun>> GetJobRunsAsync(string jobName)
    {
        var jobRuns = new List<JobRun>();

        var request = new GetJobRunsRequest
        {
            JobName = jobName,
        };

        // No need to loop to get all the log groups--the SDK does it for us behind
the scenes
        var paginatorForJobRuns =
            _amazonGlue.Paginators.GetJobRuns(request);

        await foreach (var response in paginatorForJobRuns.Responses)
        {
```

```
            response.JobRuns.ForEach(jobRun =>
            {
                jobRuns.Add(jobRun);
            });
        }

        return jobRuns;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetJobRuns in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetTables`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTables`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of tables for an AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name of the database.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of Table objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Table>> GetTablesAsync(string dbName)
    {
        var request = new GetTablesRequest { DatabaseName = dbName };
        var tables = new List<Table>();

        // Get a paginator for listing the tables.
        var tablePaginator = _amazonGlue.Paginators.GetTables(request);

        await foreach (var response in tablePaginator.Responses)
        {
            tables.AddRange(response.TableList);
        }
```

```
        return tables;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetTables in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListJobs`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List AWS Glue jobs using a paginator.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of AWS Glue job names.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> ListJobsAsync()
    {
        var jobNames = new List<string>();

        var listJobsPaginator = _amazonGlue.Paginators.ListJobs(new ListJobsRequest
{ MaxResults = 10 });
        await foreach (var response in listJobsPaginator.Responses)
        {
            jobNames.AddRange(response.JobNames);
        }

        return jobNames;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

StartCrawler

The following code example shows how to use `StartCrawler`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Start an AWS Glue crawler.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="crawlerName">The name of the crawler.</param>
/// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
public async Task<bool> StartCrawlerAsync(string crawlerName)
{
    var crawlerRequest = new StartCrawlerRequest
    {
        Name = crawlerName,
    };

    var response = await _amazonGlue.StartCrawlerAsync(crawlerRequest);

    return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
}
```

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

StartJobRun

The following code example shows how to use `StartJobRun`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Start an AWS Glue job run.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
/// <returns>A string representing the job run Id.</returns>
public async Task<string> StartJobRunAsync(
    string jobName,
    string inputDatabase,
    string inputTable,
    string bucketName)
{
    var request = new StartJobRunRequest
    {
        JobName = jobName,
        Arguments = new Dictionary<string, string>
        {
            {"--input_database", inputDatabase},
            {"--input_table", inputTable},
            {"--output_bucket_url", $"s3://{bucketName}/"}
        }
    };

    var response = await _amazonGlue.StartJobRunAsync(request);
    return response.JobRunId;
}
```

- For API details, see StartJobRun in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

IAM examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with IAM.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Get started
- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Get started

Hello IAM

The following code example shows how to get started using IAM.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace IAMActions;
```

```
public class HelloIAM
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Getting started with AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM). List
        // the policies for the account.
        var iamClient = new AmazonIdentityManagementServiceClient();

        var listPoliciesPaginator = iamClient.Paginators.ListPolicies(new
 ListPoliciesRequest());
        var policies = new List<ManagedPolicy>();

        await foreach (var response in listPoliciesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            policies.AddRange(response.Policies);
        }

        Console.WriteLine("Here are the policies defined for your account:\n");
        policies.ForEach(policy =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Created:
 {policy.CreateDate}\t{policy.PolicyName}\t{policy.Description}");
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to create a user and assume a role.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

- Create a user with no permissions.
- Create a role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets for the account.
- Add a policy to let the user assume the role.
- Assume the role and list S3 buckets using temporary credentials, then clean up resources.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
global using Amazon.IdentityManagement;
global using Amazon.S3;
global using Amazon.SecurityToken;
global using IAMActions;
global using IamScenariosCommon;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;


namespace IAMActions;

public class IAMWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonIdentityManagementService _IAMService;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the IAMWrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="IAMService">An IAM client object.</param>
    public IAMWrapper(IAmazonIdentityManagementService IAMService)
    {
        _IAMService = IAMService;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Attach an IAM policy to a role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The policy to attach.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The role that the policy will be attached to.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AttachRolePolicyAsync(string policyArn, string roleName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
AttachRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyArn = policyArn,
            RoleName = roleName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM access key for a user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username for which to create the IAM access
    /// key.</param>
    /// <returns>The AccessKey.</returns>
    public async Task<AccessKey> CreateAccessKeyAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.CreateAccessKeyAsync(new
CreateAccessKeyRequest
        {
            UserName = userName,
        });

        return response.AccessKey;

    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name to give the new IAM policy.</param>
    /// <param name="policyDocument">The policy document for the new policy.</param>
    /// <returns>The new IAM policy object.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<ManagedPolicy> CreatePolicyAsync(string policyName, string
 policyDocument)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.CreatePolicyAsync(new CreatePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyDocument = policyDocument,
            PolicyName = policyName,
        });

        return response.Policy;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role.</param>
    /// <param name="rolePolicyDocument">The name of the IAM policy document
    /// for the new role.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateRoleAsync(string roleName, string
 rolePolicyDocument)
    {
        var request = new CreateRoleRequest
        {
            RoleName = roleName,
            AssumeRolePolicyDocument = rolePolicyDocument,
        };

        var response = await _IAMService.CreateRoleAsync(request);
        return response.Role.Arn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM service-linked role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="serviceName">The name of the AWS Service.</param>
    /// <param name="description">A description of the IAM service-linked role.</
param>
    /// <returns>The IAM role that was created.</returns>
    public async Task<Role> CreateServiceLinkedRoleAsync(string serviceName, string
 description)
    {
```

```
        var request = new CreateServiceLinkedRoleRequest
        {
            AWSServiceName = serviceName,
            Description = description
        };

        var response = await _IAMService.CreateServiceLinkedRoleAsync(request);
        return response.Role;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username for the new IAM user.</param>
    /// <returns>The IAM user that was created.</returns>
    public async Task<User> CreateUserAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.CreateUserAsync(new CreateUserRequest
{ UserName = userName });
        return response.User;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM user's access key.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="accessKeyId">The Id for the IAM access key.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the user that owns the IAM
    /// access key.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteAccessKeyAsync(string accessKeyId, string
userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteAccessKeyAsync(new
DeleteAccessKeyRequest
        {
            AccessKeyId = accessKeyId,
            UserName = userName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the policy to
    /// delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeletePolicyAsync(string policyArn)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeletePolicyAsync(new DeletePolicyRequest
{ PolicyArn = policyArn });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteRoleAsync(string roleName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteRoleAsync(new DeleteRoleRequest
{ RoleName = roleName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM role policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role.</param>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name of the IAM role policy to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteRolePolicyAsync(string roleName, string
policyName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteRolePolicyAsync(new
DeleteRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyName = policyName,
            RoleName = roleName,
        });
```

```
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the IAM user to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteUserAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteUserAsync(new DeleteUserRequest
 { UserName = userName });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM user policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name of the IAM policy to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the IAM user.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteUserPolicyAsync(string policyName, string
 userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteUserPolicyAsync(new
 DeleteUserPolicyRequest { PolicyName = policyName, UserName = userName });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Detach an IAM policy from an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the IAM policy.</
param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DetachRolePolicyAsync(string policyArn, string roleName)
    {
```

```
        var response = await _IAMService.DetachRolePolicyAsync(new
DetachRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyArn = policyArn,
            RoleName = roleName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Gets the IAM password policy for an AWS account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The PasswordPolicy for the AWS account.</returns>
    public async Task<PasswordPolicy> GetAccountPasswordPolicyAsync()
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.GetAccountPasswordPolicyAsync(new
GetAccountPasswordPolicyRequest());
        return response.PasswordPolicy;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an IAM policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The IAM policy to retrieve information for.</param>
    /// <returns>The IAM policy.</returns>
    public async Task<ManagedPolicy> GetPolicyAsync(string policyArn)
    {

        var response = await _IAMService.GetPolicyAsync(new GetPolicyRequest
{ PolicyArn = policyArn });
        return response.Policy;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to retrieve information
    /// for.</param>
    /// <returns>The IAM role that was retrieved.</returns>
    public async Task<Role> GetRoleAsync(string roleName)
```

```
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.GetRoleAsync(new GetRoleRequest
        {
            RoleName = roleName,
        });

        return response.Role;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an IAM user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the user.</param>
    /// <returns>An IAM user object.</returns>
    public async Task<User> GetUserAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.GetUserAsync(new GetUserRequest { UserName
= userName });
        return response.User;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List the IAM role policies that are attached to an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The IAM role to list IAM policies for.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of the IAM policies attached to the IAM role.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AttachedPolicyType>> ListAttachedRolePoliciesAsync(string
roleName)
    {
        var attachedPolicies = new List<AttachedPolicyType>();
        var attachedRolePoliciesPaginator =
_IAMService.Paginators.ListAttachedRolePolicies(new ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest
{ RoleName = roleName });

        await foreach (var response in attachedRolePoliciesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            attachedPolicies.AddRange(response.AttachedPolicies);
        }

        return attachedPolicies;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM groups.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM groups.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Group>> ListGroupsAsync()
    {
        var groupsPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListGroups(new
ListGroupsRequest());
        var groups = new List<Group>();

        await foreach (var response in groupsPaginator.Responses)
        {
            groups.AddRange(response.Groups);
        }

        return groups;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM policies.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of the IAM policies.</returns>
    public async Task<List<ManagedPolicy>> ListPoliciesAsync()
    {
        var listPoliciesPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListPolicies(new
ListPoliciesRequest());
        var policies = new List<ManagedPolicy>();

        await foreach (var response in listPoliciesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            policies.AddRange(response.Policies);
        }

        return policies;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM role policies.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The IAM role for which to list IAM policies.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM policy names.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<List<string>> ListRolePoliciesAsync(string roleName)
    {
        var listRolePoliciesPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListRolePolicies(new
ListRolePoliciesRequest { RoleName = roleName });
        var policyNames = new List<string>();

        await foreach (var response in listRolePoliciesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            policyNames.AddRange(response.PolicyNames);
        }

        return policyNames;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM roles.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM roles.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Role>> ListRolesAsync()
    {
        var listRolesPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListRoles(new
ListRolesRequest());
        var roles = new List<Role>();

        await foreach (var response in listRolesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            roles.AddRange(response.Roles);
        }

        return roles;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List SAML authentication providers.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of SAML providers.</returns>
    public async Task<List<SAMLProviderListEntry>> ListSAMLProvidersAsync()
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.ListSAMLProvidersAsync(new
ListSAMLProvidersRequest());
        return response.SAMLProviderList;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM users.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM users.</returns>
    public async Task<List<User>> ListUsersAsync()
    {
        var listUsersPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListUsers(new
 ListUsersRequest());
        var users = new List<User>();

        await foreach (var response in listUsersPaginator.Responses)
        {
            users.AddRange(response.Users);
        }

        return users;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Update the inline policy document embedded in a role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name of the policy to embed.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to update.</param>
    /// <param name="policyDocument">The policy document that defines the role.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutRolePolicyAsync(string policyName, string roleName,
 string policyDocument)
    {
        var request = new PutRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyName = policyName,
            RoleName = roleName,
            PolicyDocument = policyDocument
        };

        var response = await _IAMService.PutRolePolicyAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Add or update an inline policy document that is embedded in an IAM user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The name of the IAM user.</param>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name of the IAM policy.</param>
    /// <param name="policyDocument">The policy document defining the IAM policy.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutUserPolicyAsync(string userName, string policyName,
 string policyDocument)
    {
        var request = new PutUserPolicyRequest
        {
            UserName = userName,
            PolicyName = policyName,
            PolicyDocument = policyDocument
        };

        var response = await _IAMService.PutUserPolicyAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait for a new access key to be ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="accessKeyId">The Id of the access key.</param>
    /// <returns>A boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitUntilAccessKeyIsReady(string accessKeyId)
    {
        var keyReady = false;

        do
        {
            try
            {
                var response = await _IAMService.GetAccessKeyLastUsedAsync(
                    new GetAccessKeyLastUsedRequest { AccessKeyId = accessKeyId });
                if (response.UserName is not null)
                {
                    keyReady = true;
                }
            }
            catch (NoSuchEntityException)
            {
```

```
                keyReady = false;
            }
        } while (!keyReady);

        return keyReady;
    }
}



using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;

namespace IAMBasics;

public class IAMBasics
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the AWS service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
            .AddTransient<IAMWrapper>()
            .AddTransient<UIWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<IAMBasics>();


        IConfiguration configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();
```

```
        // Values needed for user, role, and policies.
        string userName = configuration["UserName"]!;
        string s3PolicyName = configuration["S3PolicyName"]!;
        string roleName = configuration["RoleName"]!;


        var iamWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAMWrapper>();
        var uiWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<UIWrapper>();

        uiWrapper.DisplayBasicsOverview();
        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        // First create a user. By default, the new user has
        // no permissions.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Create User");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating a new user with user name: {userName}.");
        var user = await iamWrapper.CreateUserAsync(userName);
        var userArn = user.Arn;

        Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created user: {userName} with ARN:
{userArn}.");
        uiWrapper.WaitABit(15, "Now let's wait for the user to be ready for use.");

        // Define a role policy document that allows the new user
        // to assume the role.
        string assumeRolePolicyDocument = "{" +
          "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
          "\"Statement\": [{" +
              "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
              "\"Principal\": {" +
              $" \"AWS\": \"{userArn}\"" +
              "}," +
              "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
          "}]" +
        "}";

        // Permissions to list all buckets.
        string policyDocument = "{" +
            "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
            " \"Statement\" : [{" +
                " \"Action\" : [\"s3:ListAllMyBuckets\"]," +
                " \"Effect\" : \"Allow\"," +
                " \"Resource\" : \"*\"" +
```

```
            "}]" +
        "}";

        // Create an AccessKey for the user.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Create access key");
        Console.WriteLine("Now let's create an access key for the new user.");
        var accessKey = await iamWrapper.CreateAccessKeyAsync(userName);

        var accessKeyId = accessKey.AccessKeyId;
        var secretAccessKey = accessKey.SecretAccessKey;

        Console.WriteLine($"We have created the access key with Access key id:
{accessKeyId}.");

        Console.WriteLine("Now let's wait until the IAM access key is ready to
use.");
        var keyReady = await iamWrapper.WaitUntilAccessKeyIsReady(accessKeyId);

        // Now try listing the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
        // buckets. This should fail at this point because the user doesn't
        // have permissions to perform this task.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Try to display Amazon S3 buckets");
        Console.WriteLine("Now let's try to display a list of the user's Amazon S3
buckets.");
        var s3Client1 = new AmazonS3Client(accessKeyId, secretAccessKey);
        var stsClient1 = new AmazonSecurityTokenServiceClient(accessKeyId,
secretAccessKey);

        var s3Wrapper = new S3Wrapper(s3Client1, stsClient1);
        var buckets = await s3Wrapper.ListMyBucketsAsync();

        Console.WriteLine(buckets is null
            ? "As expected, the call to list the buckets has returned a null list."
            : "Something went wrong. This shouldn't have worked.");

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Create IAM role");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating the role: {roleName}");

        // Creating an IAM role to allow listing the S3 buckets. A role name
        // is not case sensitive and must be unique to the account for which it
        // is created.
```

```
        var roleArn = await iamWrapper.CreateRoleAsync(roleName,
 assumeRolePolicyDocument);

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        // Create a policy with permissions to list S3 buckets.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Create IAM policy");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating the policy: {s3PolicyName}");
        Console.WriteLine("with permissions to list the Amazon S3 buckets for the
 account.");
        var policy = await iamWrapper.CreatePolicyAsync(s3PolicyName,
 policyDocument);

        // Wait 15 seconds for the IAM policy to be available.
        uiWrapper.WaitABit(15, "Waiting for the policy to be available.");

        // Attach the policy to the role you created earlier.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Attach new IAM policy");
        Console.WriteLine("Now let's attach the policy to the role.");
        await iamWrapper.AttachRolePolicyAsync(policy.Arn, roleName);

        // Wait 15 seconds for the role to be updated.
        Console.WriteLine();
        uiWrapper.WaitABit(15, "Waiting for the policy to be attached.");

        // Use the AWS Security Token Service (AWS STS) to have the user
        // assume the role we created.
        var stsClient2 = new AmazonSecurityTokenServiceClient(accessKeyId,
 secretAccessKey);

        // Wait for the new credentials to become valid.
        uiWrapper.WaitABit(10, "Waiting for the credentials to be valid.");

        var assumedRoleCredentials = await s3Wrapper.AssumeS3RoleAsync("temporary-
session", roleArn);

        // Try again to list the buckets using the client created with
        // the new user's credentials. This time, it should work.
        var s3Client2 = new AmazonS3Client(assumedRoleCredentials);

        s3Wrapper.UpdateClients(s3Client2, stsClient2);

        buckets = await s3Wrapper.ListMyBucketsAsync();
```

```
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("List Amazon S3 buckets");
        Console.WriteLine("This time we should have buckets to list.");
        if (buckets is not null)
        {
            buckets.ForEach(bucket =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{bucket.BucketName} created:
 {bucket.CreationDate}");
            });
        }

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        // Now clean up all the resources used in the example.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Clean up resources");
        Console.WriteLine("Thank you for watching. The IAM Basics demo is
 complete.");
        Console.WriteLine("Please wait while we clean up the resources we
 created.");

        await iamWrapper.DetachRolePolicyAsync(policy.Arn, roleName);

        await iamWrapper.DeletePolicyAsync(policy.Arn);

        await iamWrapper.DeleteRoleAsync(roleName);

        await iamWrapper.DeleteAccessKeyAsync(accessKeyId, userName);

        await iamWrapper.DeleteUserAsync(userName);

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        Console.WriteLine("All done cleaning up our resources. Thank you for your
 patience.");
    }
}


namespace IamScenariosCommon;

using System.Net;

/// <summary>
/// A class to perform Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) actions for
```

```
/// the IAM Basics scenario.
/// </summary>
public class S3Wrapper
{
    private IAmazonS3 _s3Service;
    private IAmazonSecurityTokenService _stsService;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the S3Wrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="s3Service">An Amazon S3 client object.</param>
    /// <param name="stsService">An AWS Security Token Service (AWS STS)
    /// client object.</param>
    public S3Wrapper(IAmazonS3 s3Service, IAmazonSecurityTokenService stsService)
    {
        _s3Service = s3Service;
        _stsService = stsService;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Assumes an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows
    /// Amazon S3 access for the current session.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleSession">A string representing the current session.</param>
    /// <param name="roleToAssume">The name of the IAM role to assume.</param>
    /// <returns>Credentials for the newly assumed IAM role.</returns>
    public async Task<Credentials> AssumeS3RoleAsync(string roleSession, string
 roleToAssume)
    {
        // Create the request to use with the AssumeRoleAsync call.
        var request = new AssumeRoleRequest()
        {
            RoleSessionName = roleSession,
            RoleArn = roleToAssume,
        };

        var response = await _stsService.AssumeRoleAsync(request);

        return response.Credentials;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an S3 bucket.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">Name of the S3 bucket to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteBucketAsync(string bucketName)
    {
        var result = await _s3Service.DeleteBucketAsync(new DeleteBucketRequest
{ BucketName = bucketName });
        return result.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List the buckets that are owned by the user's account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task<List<S3Bucket>?> ListMyBucketsAsync()
    {
        try
        {
            // Get the list of buckets accessible by the new user.
            var response = await _s3Service.ListBucketsAsync();

            return response.Buckets;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            // Something else went wrong. Display the error message.
            Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
            return null;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name for the new bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating whether the action completed
    /// successfully.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutBucketAsync(string bucketName)
    {
        var response = await _s3Service.PutBucketAsync(new PutBucketRequest
{ BucketName = bucketName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update the client objects with new client objects. This is available
    /// because the scenario uses the methods of this class without and then
    /// with the proper permissions to list S3 buckets.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="s3Service">The Amazon S3 client object.</param>
    /// <param name="stsService">The AWS STS client object.</param>
    public void UpdateClients(IAmazonS3 s3Service, IAmazonSecurityTokenService
 stsService)
    {
        _s3Service = s3Service;
        _stsService = stsService;
    }
}


namespace IamScenariosCommon;

public class UIWrapper
{
    public readonly string SepBar = new('-', Console.WindowWidth);

    /// <summary>
    /// Show information about the IAM Groups scenario.
    /// </summary>
    public void DisplayGroupsOverview()
    {
        Console.Clear();

        DisplayTitle("Welcome to the IAM Groups Demo");
        Console.WriteLine("This example application does the following:");
        Console.WriteLine("\t1. Creates an Amazon Identity and Access Management
 (IAM) group.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t2. Adds an IAM policy to the IAM group giving it full
 access to Amazon S3.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t3. Creates a new IAM user.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t4. Creates an IAM access key for the user.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t5. Adds the user to the IAM group.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t6. Lists the buckets on the account.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t7. Proves that the user has full Amazon S3 access by
 creating a bucket.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t8. List the buckets again to show the new bucket.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t9. Cleans up all the resources created.");
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Show information about the IAM Basics scenario.
    /// </summary>
    public void DisplayBasicsOverview()
    {
        Console.Clear();

        DisplayTitle("Welcome to IAM Basics");
        Console.WriteLine("This example application does the following:");
        Console.WriteLine("\t1. Creates a user with no permissions.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t2. Creates a role and policy that grant
s3:ListAllMyBuckets permission.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t3. Grants the user permission to assume the role.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t4. Creates an S3 client object as the user and tries to
list buckets (this will fail).");
        Console.WriteLine("\t5. Gets temporary credentials by assuming the role.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t6. Creates a new S3 client object with the temporary
credentials and lists the buckets (this will succeed).");
        Console.WriteLine("\t7. Deletes all the resources.");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a message and wait until the user presses enter.
    /// </summary>
    public void PressEnter()
    {
        Console.Write("\nPress <Enter> to continue. ");
        _ = Console.ReadLine();
        Console.WriteLine();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Pad a string with spaces to center it on the console display.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strToCenter">The string to be centered.</param>
    /// <returns>The padded string.</returns>
    public string CenterString(string strToCenter)
    {
        var padAmount = (Console.WindowWidth - strToCenter.Length) / 2;
        var leftPad = new string(' ', padAmount);
        return $"{leftPad}{strToCenter}";
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Display a line of hyphens, the centered text of the title, and another
    /// line of hyphens.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strTitle">The string to be displayed.</param>
    public void DisplayTitle(string strTitle)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
        Console.WriteLine(CenterString(strTitle));
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a countdown and wait for a number of seconds.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="numSeconds">The number of seconds to wait.</param>
    public void WaitABit(int numSeconds, string msg)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(msg);

        // Wait for the requested number of seconds.
        for (int i = numSeconds; i > 0; i--)
        {
            System.Threading.Thread.Sleep(1000);
            Console.Write($"{i}...");
        }

        PressEnter();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey

- DeletePolicy
- DeleteRole
- DeleteUser
- DeleteUserPolicy
- DetachRolePolicy
- PutUserPolicy

Actions

`AttachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachRolePolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Attach an IAM policy to a role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The policy to attach.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The role that the policy will be attached to.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AttachRolePolicyAsync(string policyArn, string roleName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
AttachRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyArn = policyArn,
            RoleName = roleName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccessKey`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM access key for a user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username for which to create the IAM access
    /// key.</param>
    /// <returns>The AccessKey.</returns>
    public async Task<AccessKey> CreateAccessKeyAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.CreateAccessKeyAsync(new
CreateAccessKeyRequest
        {
            UserName = userName,
        });

        return response.AccessKey;

    }
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateInstanceProfile`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateInstanceProfile`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Create a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances with a
specified name.
   /// An instance's associated profile defines a role that is assumed by the
   /// instance.The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
granted to
   /// clients that run on the instance.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="policyName">Name to use for the policy.</param>
   /// <param name="roleName">Name to use for the role.</param>
   /// <param name="profileName">Name to use for the profile.</param>
   /// <param name="ssmOnlyPolicyFile">Path to a policy file for SSM.</param>
   /// <param name="awsManagedPolicies">AWS Managed policies to be attached to the
role.</param>
   /// <returns>The Arn of the profile.</returns>
   public async Task<string> CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
       string policyName,
       string roleName,
       string profileName,
       string ssmOnlyPolicyFile,
       List<string>? awsManagedPolicies = null)
   {

       var assumeRoleDoc = "{" +
                                   "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                   "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                        "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                        "\"Principal\": {" +
                                        "\"Service\": [" +
                                            "\"ec2.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                        "]" +
                                        "}," +
                                   "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                                   "}]" +
```

```
                                "}";

        var policyDocument = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(ssmOnlyPolicyFile);

        var policyArn = "";

        try
        {
            var createPolicyResult = await _amazonIam.CreatePolicyAsync(
                new CreatePolicyRequest
                {
                    PolicyName = policyName,
                    PolicyDocument = policyDocument
                });
            policyArn = createPolicyResult.Policy.Arn;
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            // The policy already exists, so we look it up to get the Arn.
            var policiesPaginator = _amazonIam.Paginators.ListPolicies(
                new ListPoliciesRequest()
                {
                    Scope = PolicyScopeType.Local
                });
            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var policy in policiesPaginator.Policies)
            {
                if (policy.PolicyName.Equals(policyName))
                {
                    policyArn = policy.Arn;
                }
            }

            if (policyArn == null)
            {
                throw new InvalidOperationException("Policy not found");
            }
        }

        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.CreateRoleAsync(new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
```

```
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRoleDoc,
            });
            await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                PolicyArn = policyArn
            });
            if (awsManagedPolicies != null)
            {
                foreach (var awsPolicy in awsManagedPolicies)
                {
                    await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
AttachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        PolicyArn = $"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{awsPolicy}",
                        RoleName = roleName
                    });
                }
            }
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Role already exists.");
        }

        string profileArn = "";
        try
        {
            var profileCreateResponse = await _amazonIam.CreateInstanceProfileAsync(
                new CreateInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            // Allow time for the profile to be ready.
            profileArn = profileCreateResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
            await _amazonIam.AddRoleToInstanceProfileAsync(
                new AddRoleToInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });

        }
```

```
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Policy already exists.");
            var profileGetResponse = await _amazonIam.GetInstanceProfileAsync(
                new GetInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            profileArn = profileGetResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
        }
        return profileArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateInstanceProfile in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreatePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name to give the new IAM policy.</param>
    /// <param name="policyDocument">The policy document for the new policy.</param>
    /// <returns>The new IAM policy object.</returns>
    public async Task<ManagedPolicy> CreatePolicyAsync(string policyName, string
policyDocument)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.CreatePolicyAsync(new CreatePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyDocument = policyDocument,
            PolicyName = policyName,
        });
```

```
        return response.Policy;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateRole`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRole`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role.</param>
    /// <param name="rolePolicyDocument">The name of the IAM policy document
    /// for the new role.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateRoleAsync(string roleName, string
rolePolicyDocument)
    {
        var request = new CreateRoleRequest
        {
            RoleName = roleName,
            AssumeRolePolicyDocument = rolePolicyDocument,
        };

        var response = await _IAMService.CreateRoleAsync(request);
        return response.Role.Arn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateServiceLinkedRole`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateServiceLinkedRole`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM service-linked role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="serviceName">The name of the AWS Service.</param>
    /// <param name="description">A description of the IAM service-linked role.</
param>
    /// <returns>The IAM role that was created.</returns>
    public async Task<Role> CreateServiceLinkedRoleAsync(string serviceName, string
 description)
    {
        var request = new CreateServiceLinkedRoleRequest
        {
            AWSServiceName = serviceName,
            Description = description
        };

        var response = await _IAMService.CreateServiceLinkedRoleAsync(request);
        return response.Role;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateUser`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username for the new IAM user.</param>
    /// <returns>The IAM user that was created.</returns>
    public async Task<User> CreateUserAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.CreateUserAsync(new CreateUserRequest
{ UserName = userName });
        return response.User;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAccessKey`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM user's access key.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="accessKeyId">The Id for the IAM access key.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the user that owns the IAM
    /// access key.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteAccessKeyAsync(string accessKeyId, string
userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteAccessKeyAsync(new
DeleteAccessKeyRequest
        {
            AccessKeyId = accessKeyId,
            UserName = userName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteInstanceProfile`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteInstanceProfile`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
    /// and deletes all the resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="profileName">The name of the profile to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteInstanceProfile(string profileName, string roleName)
```

```
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileAsync(
                new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });
            await _amazonIam.DeleteInstanceProfileAsync(
                new DeleteInstanceProfileRequest() { InstanceProfileName =
profileName });
            var attachedPolicies = await _amazonIam.ListAttachedRolePoliciesAsync(
                new ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
            foreach (var policy in attachedPolicies.AttachedPolicies)
            {
                await _amazonIam.DetachRolePolicyAsync(
                    new DetachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        RoleName = roleName,
                        PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                    });
                // Delete the custom policies only.
                if (!policy.PolicyArn.StartsWith("arn:aws:iam::aws"))
                {
                    await _amazonIam.DeletePolicyAsync(
                        new Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.DeletePolicyRequest()
                        {
                            PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                        });
                }
            }

            await _amazonIam.DeleteRoleAsync(
                new DeleteRoleRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
        }
        catch (NoSuchEntityException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Instance profile {profileName} does not exist.");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteInstanceProfile in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeletePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the policy to
    /// delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeletePolicyAsync(string policyArn)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeletePolicyAsync(new DeletePolicyRequest
{ PolicyArn = policyArn });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteRole`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRole`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteRoleAsync(string roleName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteRoleAsync(new DeleteRoleRequest
{ RoleName = roleName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteRole in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRolePolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM role policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role.</param>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name of the IAM role policy to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteRolePolicyAsync(string roleName, string
policyName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteRolePolicyAsync(new
DeleteRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyName = policyName,
```

```
            RoleName = roleName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteUser`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUser`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the IAM user to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteUserAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteUserAsync(new DeleteUserRequest
{ UserName = userName });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

DeleteUserPolicy

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUserPolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM user policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name of the IAM policy to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the IAM user.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteUserPolicyAsync(string policyName, string
userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteUserPolicyAsync(new
DeleteUserPolicyRequest { PolicyName = policyName, UserName = userName });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

DetachRolePolicy

The following code example shows how to use `DetachRolePolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Detach an IAM policy from an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the IAM policy.</
param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DetachRolePolicyAsync(string policyArn, string roleName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DetachRolePolicyAsync(new
 DetachRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyArn = policyArn,
            RoleName = roleName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetAccountPasswordPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAccountPasswordPolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Gets the IAM password policy for an AWS account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The PasswordPolicy for the AWS account.</returns>
    public async Task<PasswordPolicy> GetAccountPasswordPolicyAsync()
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.GetAccountPasswordPolicyAsync(new
GetAccountPasswordPolicyRequest());
        return response.PasswordPolicy;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetPolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an IAM policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The IAM policy to retrieve information for.</param>
    /// <returns>The IAM policy.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<ManagedPolicy> GetPolicyAsync(string policyArn)
    {

        var response = await _IAMService.GetPolicyAsync(new GetPolicyRequest
{ PolicyArn = policyArn });
        return response.Policy;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetRole`

The following code example shows how to use `GetRole`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to retrieve information
    /// for.</param>
    /// <returns>The IAM role that was retrieved.</returns>
    public async Task<Role> GetRoleAsync(string roleName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.GetRoleAsync(new GetRoleRequest
        {
            RoleName = roleName,
        });

        return response.Role;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetRole in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetUser`

The following code example shows how to use `GetUser`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an IAM user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the user.</param>
    /// <returns>An IAM user object.</returns>
    public async Task<User> GetUserAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.GetUserAsync(new GetUserRequest { UserName
= userName });
        return response.User;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetUser in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListAttachedRolePolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAttachedRolePolicies`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List the IAM role policies that are attached to an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The IAM role to list IAM policies for.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of the IAM policies attached to the IAM role.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AttachedPolicyType>> ListAttachedRolePoliciesAsync(string
roleName)
    {
        var attachedPolicies = new List<AttachedPolicyType>();
        var attachedRolePoliciesPaginator =
_IAMService.Paginators.ListAttachedRolePolicies(new ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest
{ RoleName = roleName });

        await foreach (var response in attachedRolePoliciesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            attachedPolicies.AddRange(response.AttachedPolicies);
        }

        return attachedPolicies;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `ListGroups`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM groups.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM groups.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<List<Group>> ListGroupsAsync()
    {
        var groupsPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListGroups(new
ListGroupsRequest());
        var groups = new List<Group>();

        await foreach (var response in groupsPaginator.Responses)
        {
            groups.AddRange(response.Groups);
        }

        return groups;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListPolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListPolicies`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM policies.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of the IAM policies.</returns>
    public async Task<List<ManagedPolicy>> ListPoliciesAsync()
    {
        var listPoliciesPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListPolicies(new
ListPoliciesRequest());
        var policies = new List<ManagedPolicy>();

        await foreach (var response in listPoliciesPaginator.Responses)
```

```
        {
            policies.AddRange(response.Policies);
        }

        return policies;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListRolePolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRolePolicies`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM role policies.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The IAM role for which to list IAM policies.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM policy names.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> ListRolePoliciesAsync(string roleName)
    {
        var listRolePoliciesPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListRolePolicies(new
ListRolePoliciesRequest { RoleName = roleName });
        var policyNames = new List<string>();

        await foreach (var response in listRolePoliciesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            policyNames.AddRange(response.PolicyNames);
        }

        return policyNames;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListRoles`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRoles`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM roles.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM roles.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Role>> ListRolesAsync()
    {
        var listRolesPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListRoles(new
ListRolesRequest());
        var roles = new List<Role>();

        await foreach (var response in listRolesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            roles.AddRange(response.Roles);
        }

        return roles;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRoles in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListSAMLProviders`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSAMLProviders`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List SAML authentication providers.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of SAML providers.</returns>
    public async Task<List<SAMLProviderListEntry>> ListSAMLProvidersAsync()
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.ListSAMLProvidersAsync(new
ListSAMLProvidersRequest());
        return response.SAMLProviderList;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListSAMLProviders in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUsers`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM users.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM users.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<List<User>> ListUsersAsync()
    {
        var listUsersPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListUsers(new
 ListUsersRequest());
        var users = new List<User>();

        await foreach (var response in listUsersPaginator.Responses)
        {
            users.AddRange(response.Users);
        }

        return users;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `PutRolePolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update the inline policy document embedded in a role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name of the policy to embed.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to update.</param>
    /// <param name="policyDocument">The policy document that defines the role.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutRolePolicyAsync(string policyName, string roleName,
 string policyDocument)
    {
```

```
        var request = new PutRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyName = policyName,
            RoleName = roleName,
            PolicyDocument = policyDocument
        };

        var response = await _IAMService.PutRolePolicyAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see PutRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build and manage a resilient service

The following code example shows how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();


        // Set up dependency injection for the AWS services.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonDynamoDB>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonAutoScaling>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>()
                    .AddTransient<AutoScalerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<SmParameterWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<Recommendations>()
                    .AddSingleton<IConfiguration>(_configuration)
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);
```

```
        ResourcesSetup();

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Resilient Architecture Example
Scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Deploy(true);

            Console.WriteLine("Now let's begin the scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Demo(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Finally, let's clean up our resources.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            await DestroyResources(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Resilient Architecture Example Scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            await DestroyResources(true);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Setup any common resources, also used for integration testing.
    /// </summary>
    public static void ResourcesSetup()
    {
        _httpClient = new HttpClient();
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>();
        _iamClient =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>();
        _recommendations = host.Services.GetRequiredService<Recommendations>();
        _autoScalerWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<AutoScalerWrapper>();
        _smParameterWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<SmParameterWrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deploy necessary resources for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Deploy(bool interactive)
    {
        var protocol = "HTTP";
        var port = 80;
        var sshPort = 22;

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nFor this demo, we'll use the AWS SDK for .NET to create several AWS
resources\n" +
            "to set up a load-balanced web service endpoint and explore some ways to
make it resilient\n" +
            "against various kinds of failures.\n\n" +
            "Some of the resources create by this demo are:\n");

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* A DynamoDB table that the web service depends on to provide book,
movie, and song recommendations.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 launch template that defines EC2 instances that each contain
a Python web server.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 Auto Scaling group that manages EC2 instances across several
Availability Zones.");
        Console.WriteLine(
```

```
            "\t* An Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) load balancer that targets the Auto
Scaling group to distribute requests.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to start deploying
resources.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        // Create and populate the DynamoDB table.
        var databaseTableName = _configuration["databaseName"];
        var recommendationsPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "recommendations_objects.json");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating and populating a DynamoDB table named
{databaseTableName}.");
        await _recommendations.CreateDatabaseWithName(databaseTableName);
        await _recommendations.PopulateDatabase(databaseTableName,
recommendationsPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        // Create the EC2 Launch Template.

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Creating an EC2 launch template that runs 'server_startup_script.sh'
when an instance starts.\n"
            + "\nThis script starts a Python web server defined in the `server.py`
script. The web server\n"
            + "listens to HTTP requests on port 80 and responds to requests to '/'
and to '/healthcheck'.\n"
            + "For demo purposes, this server is run as the root user. In
production, the best practice is to\n"
            + "run a web server, such as Apache, with least-privileged
credentials.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nThe template also defines an IAM policy that each instance uses to
assume a role that grants\n"
            + "permissions to access the DynamoDB recommendation table and Systems
Manager parameters\n"
            + "that control the flow of the demo.");

        var startupScriptPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "server_startup_script.sh");
        var instancePolicyPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "instance_policy.json");
```

```
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateTemplate(startupScriptPath,
instancePolicyPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group that maintains three EC2 instances,
each in a different\n"
            + "Availability Zone.\n");
        var zones = await _autoScalerWrapper.DescribeAvailabilityZones();
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateGroupOfSize(3, _autoScalerWrapper.GroupName,
zones);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "At this point, you have EC2 instances created. Once each instance
starts, it listens for\n"
            + "HTTP requests. You can see these instances in the console or continue
with the demo.\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("Creating variables that control the flow of the demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nCreating an Elastic Load Balancing target group and load balancer.
The target group\n"
            + "defines how the load balancer connects to instances. The load
balancer provides a\n"
            + "single endpoint where clients connect and dispatches requests to
instances in the group.");

        var defaultVpc = await _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultVpc();
        var subnets = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(defaultVpc.VpcId, zones);
        var subnetIds = subnets.Select(s => s.SubnetId).ToList();
        var targetGroup = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGroupN
protocol, port, defaultVpc.VpcId);
```

```
        await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.LoadB
 subnetIds, targetGroup);
        await
 _autoScalerWrapper.AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName,
 targetGroup.TargetGroupArn);
        Console.WriteLine("\nVerifying access to the load balancer endpoint...");
        var endPoint = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.Lo
        var loadBalancerAccess = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);

        if (!loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\nCouldn't connect to the load balancer, verifying
 that the port is open...");

            var ipString = await _httpClient.GetStringAsync("https://
checkip.amazonaws.com");
            ipString = ipString.Trim();

            var defaultSecurityGroup = await
 _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(defaultVpc);
            var portIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, port, ipString);
            var sshPortIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, sshPort,
 ipString);

            if (!portIsOpen)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    "\nFor this example to work, the default security group for your
 default VPC must\n"
                    + "allows access from this computer. You can either add it
 automatically from this\n"
                    + "example or add it yourself using the AWS Management Console.
\n");

                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
 inbound traffic from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
```

```
                    await
_autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, port, ipString);
                }
            }

            if (!sshPortIsOpen)
            {
                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
inbound SSH traffic for debugging from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
                    await
_autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, sshPort,
ipString);
                }
            }
            loadBalancerAccess = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);
        }

        if (loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Your load balancer is ready. You can access it by
browsing to:");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "\nCouldn't get a successful response from the load balancer
endpoint. Troubleshoot by\n"
                + "manually verifying that your VPC and security group are
configured correctly and that\n"
                + "you can successfully make a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint:\n");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue with the
demo.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();
        return true;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Demonstrate the steps of the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as an interactive scenario.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Demo(bool interactive)
    {
        var ssmOnlyPolicy = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "ssm_only_policy.json");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Resetting parameters to starting values for demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine("\nThis part of the demonstration shows how to toggle
 different parts of the system\n" +
                          "to create situations where the web service fails, and
 shows how using a resilient\n" +
                          "architecture can keep the web service running in spite of
 these failures.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 88));
        Console.WriteLine("At the start, the load balancer endpoint returns
 recommendations and reports that all targets are healthy.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine($"The web service running on the EC2 instances gets
 recommendations by querying a DynamoDB table.\n" +
                          $"The table name is contained in a Systems Manager
 parameter named '{_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter}'.\n" +
                          $"To simulate a failure of the recommendation service,
 let's set this parameter to name a non-existent table.\n");
        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter, "this-
is-not-a-table");
        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
 endpoint returns a failure code. But, the service reports as\n" +
                          "healthy to the load balancer because shallow health
 checks don't check for failure of the recommendation service.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("Instead of failing when the recommendation service fails,
the web service can return a static response.");
        Console.WriteLine("While this is not a perfect solution, it presents the
customer with a somewhat better experience than failure.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.FailureResponseParameter,
"static");

        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint returns a static response.");
        Console.WriteLine("The service still reports as healthy because health
checks are still shallow.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Let's reinstate the recommendation service.\n");
        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter,
_smParameterWrapper.TableName);
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nLet's also substitute bad credentials for one of the instances in the
target group so that it can't\n" +
            "access the DynamoDB recommendation table.\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsPolicyName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            ssmOnlyPolicy,
            new List<string> { "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore" }
        );
        var instances = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstancesByGroupName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName);
        var badInstanceId = instances.First();
        var instanceProfile = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstanceProfile(badInstanceId);
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Replacing the profile for instance {badInstanceId} with a profile that
contains\n" +
            "bad credentials...\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.ReplaceInstanceProfile(
            badInstanceId,
```

```
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            instanceProfile.AssociationId
        );
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint returns either
a recommendation or a static response,\n" +
            "depending on which instance is selected by the load balancer.\n"
        );
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nLet's implement a deep health check. For this demo, a
deep health check tests whether");
        Console.WriteLine("the web service can access the DynamoDB table that it
depends on for recommendations. Note that");
        Console.WriteLine("the deep health check is only for ELB routing and not for
Auto Scaling instance health.");
        Console.WriteLine("This kind of deep health check is not recommended for
Auto Scaling instance health, because it");
        Console.WriteLine("risks accidental termination of all instances in the Auto
Scaling group when a dependent service fails.");

        Console.WriteLine("\nBy implementing deep health checks, the load balancer
can detect when one of the instances is failing");
        Console.WriteLine("and take that instance out of rotation.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.HealthCheckParameter,
"deep");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nNow, checking target health indicates that the
instance with bad credentials ({badInstanceId})");
        Console.WriteLine("is unhealthy. Note that it might take a minute or two for
the load balancer to detect the unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance. Sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint always returns a recommendation, because");
        Console.WriteLine("the load balancer takes unhealthy instances out of its
rotation.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nBecause the instances in this demo are controlled by an
auto scaler, the simplest way to fix an unhealthy");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("instance is to terminate it and let the auto scaler start
 a new instance to replace it.");

        await _autoScalerWrapper.TryTerminateInstanceById(badInstanceId);

        Console.WriteLine($"\nEven while the instance is terminating and the new
 instance is starting, sending a GET");
        Console.WriteLine("request to the web service continues to get a successful
 recommendation response because");
        Console.WriteLine("starts and reports as healthy, it is included in the load
 balancing rotation.");
        Console.WriteLine("Note that terminating and replacing an instance typically
 takes several minutes, during which time you");
        Console.WriteLine("can see the changing health check status until the new
 instance is running and healthy.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nIf the recommendation service fails now, deep health
 checks mean all instances report as unhealthy.");

        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter, "this-
is-not-a-table");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nWhen all instances are unhealthy, the load balancer
 continues to route requests even to");
        Console.WriteLine("unhealthy instances, allowing them to fail open and
 return a static response rather than fail");
        Console.WriteLine("closed and report failure to the customer.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to ask the user for cleanup.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> DestroyResources(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine(
            "To keep things tidy and to avoid unwanted charges on your account, we
can clean up all AWS resources\n" +
            "that were created for this demo."
        );

        if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse("Do you want to clean up all demo
resources? (y/n) "))
        {
            await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.LoadBalanc
            await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteTargetGroupByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGroup
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName)
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.DeleteKeyPairByName(_autoScalerWrapper.KeyPairName);
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.DeleteTemplateByName(_autoScalerWrapper.LaunchTemplateName);
            await _autoScalerWrapper.DeleteInstanceProfile(
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName
            );
            await
_recommendations.DestroyDatabaseByName(_recommendations.TableName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Ok, we'll leave the resources intact.\n" +
                "Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you might
incur unexpected charges."
            );
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management methods.
/// </summary>
public class AutoScalerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonAutoScaling _amazonAutoScaling;
    private readonly IAmazonEC2 _amazonEc2;
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement _amazonSsm;
    private readonly IAmazonIdentityManagementService _amazonIam;
    private readonly ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> _logger;

    private readonly string _instanceType = "";
    private readonly string _amiParam = "";
    private readonly string _launchTemplateName = "";
    private readonly string _groupName = "";
    private readonly string _instancePolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsPolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _keyPairName = "";

    public string GroupName => _groupName;
    public string KeyPairName => _keyPairName;
    public string LaunchTemplateName => _launchTemplateName;
    public string InstancePolicyName => _instancePolicyName;
    public string BadCredsProfileName => _badCredsProfileName;
    public string BadCredsRoleName => _badCredsRoleName;
    public string BadCredsPolicyName => _badCredsPolicyName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the AutoScalerWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonAutoScaling">The injected AutoScaling client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonEc2">The injected EC2 client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonIam">The injected IAM client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonSsm">The injected SSM client.</param>
    public AutoScalerWrapper(
        IAmazonAutoScaling amazonAutoScaling,
        IAmazonEC2 amazonEc2,
        IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement amazonSsm,
```

```
        IAmazonIdentityManagementService amazonIam,
        IConfiguration configuration,
        ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonAutoScaling = amazonAutoScaling;
        _amazonEc2 = amazonEc2;
        _amazonSsm = amazonSsm;
        _amazonIam = amazonIam;
        _logger = logger;

        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _instanceType = configuration["instanceType"];
        _amiParam = configuration["amiParam"];

        _launchTemplateName = prefix + "-template";
        _groupName = prefix + "-group";
        _instancePolicyName = prefix + "-pol";
        _instanceRoleName = prefix + "-role";
        _instanceProfileName = prefix + "-prof";
        _badCredsPolicyName = prefix + "-bc-pol";
        _badCredsRoleName = prefix + "-bc-role";
        _badCredsProfileName = prefix + "-bc-prof";
        _keyPairName = prefix + "-key-pair";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances with a
specified name.
    /// An instance's associated profile defines a role that is assumed by the
    /// instance.The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
granted to
    /// clients that run on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">Name to use for the policy.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">Name to use for the role.</param>
    /// <param name="profileName">Name to use for the profile.</param>
    /// <param name="ssmOnlyPolicyFile">Path to a policy file for SSM.</param>
    /// <param name="awsManagedPolicies">AWS Managed policies to be attached to the
role.</param>
    /// <returns>The Arn of the profile.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
        string policyName,
        string roleName,
        string profileName,
```

```
        string ssmOnlyPolicyFile,
        List<string>? awsManagedPolicies = null)
    {

        var assumeRoleDoc = "{" +
                                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                     "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                     "\"Principal\": {" +
                                     "\"Service\": [" +
                                         "\"ec2.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                     "]" +
                                     "}," +
                                "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                                "}]" +
                            "}";

        var policyDocument = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(ssmOnlyPolicyFile);

        var policyArn = "";

        try
        {
            var createPolicyResult = await _amazonIam.CreatePolicyAsync(
                new CreatePolicyRequest
                {
                    PolicyName = policyName,
                    PolicyDocument = policyDocument
                });
            policyArn = createPolicyResult.Policy.Arn;
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            // The policy already exists, so we look it up to get the Arn.
            var policiesPaginator = _amazonIam.Paginators.ListPolicies(
                new ListPoliciesRequest()
                {
                    Scope = PolicyScopeType.Local
                });
            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var policy in policiesPaginator.Policies)
            {
                if (policy.PolicyName.Equals(policyName))
                {
```

```
                    policyArn = policy.Arn;
                }
            }

            if (policyArn == null)
            {
                throw new InvalidOperationException("Policy not found");
            }
        }

        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.CreateRoleAsync(new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRoleDoc,
            });
            await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                PolicyArn = policyArn
            });
            if (awsManagedPolicies != null)
            {
                foreach (var awsPolicy in awsManagedPolicies)
                {
                    await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
AttachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        PolicyArn = $"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{awsPolicy}",
                        RoleName = roleName
                    });
                }
            }
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Role already exists.");
        }

        string profileArn = "";
        try
        {
            var profileCreateResponse = await _amazonIam.CreateInstanceProfileAsync(
```

```
                new CreateInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            // Allow time for the profile to be ready.
            profileArn = profileCreateResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
            await _amazonIam.AddRoleToInstanceProfileAsync(
                new AddRoleToInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });

        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Policy already exists.");
            var profileGetResponse = await _amazonIam.GetInstanceProfileAsync(
                new GetInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            profileArn = profileGetResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
        }
        return profileArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new key pair and save the file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newKeyPairName">The name of the new key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateKeyPair(string newKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            var keyResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateKeyPairAsync(
                new CreateKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = newKeyPairName });
            await File.WriteAllTextAsync($"{newKeyPairName}.pem",
                keyResponse.KeyPair.KeyMaterial);
            Console.WriteLine($"Created key pair {newKeyPairName}.");
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Key pair already exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the key pair and file by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="deleteKeyPairName">The key pair to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteKeyPairByName(string deleteKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteKeyPairAsync(
                new DeleteKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = deleteKeyPairName });
            File.Delete($"{deleteKeyPairName}.pem");
        }
        catch (FileNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Key pair {deleteKeyPairName} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling.
    /// The launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that runs
after
    /// the instance is started. This script installs the Python packages and starts
a Python
    /// web server on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="startupScriptPath">The path to a Bash script file that is
run.</param>
    /// <param name="instancePolicyPath">The path to a permissions policy to create
and attach to the profile.</param>
    /// <returns>The template object.</returns>
    public async Task<Amazon.EC2.Model.LaunchTemplate> CreateTemplate(string
startupScriptPath, string instancePolicyPath)
    {
        try
        {
            await CreateKeyPair(_keyPairName);
```

```
            await CreateInstanceProfileWithName(_instancePolicyName,
_instanceRoleName,
                _instanceProfileName, instancePolicyPath);

            var startServerText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(startupScriptPath);
            var plainTextBytes =
System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(startServerText);

            var amiLatest = await _amazonSsm.GetParameterAsync(
                new GetParameterRequest() { Name = _amiParam });
            var amiId = amiLatest.Parameter.Value;
            var launchTemplateResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new CreateLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                    LaunchTemplateData = new RequestLaunchTemplateData()
                    {
                        InstanceType = _instanceType,
                        ImageId = amiId,
                        IamInstanceProfile =
                            new

LaunchTemplateIamInstanceProfileSpecificationRequest()
                            {
                                Name = _instanceProfileName
                            },
                        KeyName = _keyPairName,
                        UserData = System.Convert.ToBase64String(plainTextBytes)
                    }
                });
            return launchTemplateResponse.LaunchTemplate;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Could not create the template, the name
{_launchTemplateName} already exists. " +
                                 $"Please try again with a unique name.");
            }

            throw;
        }
```

```
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while creating the template.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2 Client.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of availability zones.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> DescribeAvailabilityZones()
    {
        try
        {
            var zoneResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeAvailabilityZonesAsync(
                new DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest());
            return zoneResponse.AvailabilityZones.Select(z => z.ZoneName).ToList();
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An Amazon EC2 error occurred while listing
 availability zones.: {ec2Exception.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while listing availability zones.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an EC2 Auto Scaling group of a specified size and name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupSize">The size for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The availability zones for the group.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateGroupOfSize(int groupSize, string groupName,
 List<string> availabilityZones)
```

```
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonAutoScaling.CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    AvailabilityZones = availabilityZones,
                    LaunchTemplate =
                        new Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.LaunchTemplateSpecification()
                        {
                            LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                            Version = "$Default"
                        },
                    MaxSize = groupSize,
                    MinSize = groupSize
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Created EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} with size
{groupSize}.");
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} already
exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default VPC for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The default VPC object.</returns>
    public async Task<Vpc> GetDefaultVpc()
    {
        try
        {
            var vpcResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeVpcsAsync(
                new DescribeVpcsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("is-default", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });
            return vpcResponse.Vpcs[0];
```

```
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "UnauthorizedOperation")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"You do not have the necessary
permissions to describe VPCs.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the vpcs.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get all the subnets for a Vpc in a set of availability zones.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The list of availability zones.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of subnet objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Subnet>> GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(string vpcId,
List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            var subnets = new List<Subnet>();
            var subnetPaginator = _amazonEc2.Paginators.DescribeSubnets(
                new DescribeSubnetsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpcId }),
                        new("availability-zone", availabilityZones),
                        new("default-for-az", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });

            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var subnet in subnetPaginator.Subnets)
```

```
            {
                subnets.Add(subnet);
            }

            return subnets;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"The specified VPC ID {vpcId} does
not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the subnets.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a launch template by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the template to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTemplateByName(string templateName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new DeleteLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = templateName
                });
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException")
            {
```

```
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Could not delete the template, the name {_launchTemplateName}
was not found.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while deleting the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
    /// and deletes all the resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="profileName">The name of the profile to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteInstanceProfile(string profileName, string roleName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileAsync(
                new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });
            await _amazonIam.DeleteInstanceProfileAsync(
                new DeleteInstanceProfileRequest() { InstanceProfileName =
profileName });
            var attachedPolicies = await _amazonIam.ListAttachedRolePoliciesAsync(
                new ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
            foreach (var policy in attachedPolicies.AttachedPolicies)
            {
                await _amazonIam.DetachRolePolicyAsync(
                    new DetachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        RoleName = roleName,
                        PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
```

```
                    });
                // Delete the custom policies only.
                if (!policy.PolicyArn.StartsWith("arn:aws:iam::aws"))
                {
                    await _amazonIam.DeletePolicyAsync(
                        new Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.DeletePolicyRequest()
                        {
                            PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                        });
                }
            }

            await _amazonIam.DeleteRoleAsync(
                new DeleteRoleRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
        }
        catch (NoSuchEntityException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Instance profile {profileName} does not exist.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Gets data about the instances in an EC2 Auto Scaling group by its group
name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="group">The name of the auto scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of instance Ids.</returns>
    public async Task<IEnumerable<string>> GetInstancesByGroupName(string group)
    {
        var instanceResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { group }
            });
        var instanceIds = instanceResponse.AutoScalingGroups.SelectMany(
            g => g.Instances.Select(i => i.InstanceId));
        return instanceIds;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the instance profile association data for an instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>Instance profile associations data.</returns>
    public async Task<IamInstanceProfileAssociation> GetInstanceProfile(string
instanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await
_amazonEc2.DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsAsync(
                new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("instance-id", new List<string>() { instanceId })
                    },
                });
            return response.IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while creating the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Replace the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile is
replaced, the instance
    /// is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile. When the instance is
ready, Systems Manager is
    /// used to restart the Python web server.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to update.</param>
    /// <param name="credsProfileName">The name of the new profile to associate with
the specified instance.</param>
```

```
   /// <param name="associationId">The Id of the existing profile association for
the instance.</param>
   /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
   public async Task ReplaceInstanceProfile(string instanceId, string
credsProfileName, string associationId)
   {
       try
       {
           await _amazonEc2.ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationAsync(
               new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest()
               {
                   AssociationId = associationId,
                   IamInstanceProfile = new IamInstanceProfileSpecification()
                   {
                       Name = credsProfileName
                   }
               });
           // Allow time before resetting.
           Thread.Sleep(25000);

           await _amazonEc2.RebootInstancesAsync(
               new RebootInstancesRequest(new List<string>() { instanceId }));
           Thread.Sleep(25000);
           var instanceReady = false;
           var retries = 5;
           while (retries-- > 0 && !instanceReady)
           {
               var instancesPaginator =
                   _amazonSsm.Paginators.DescribeInstanceInformation(
                       new DescribeInstanceInformationRequest());
               // Get the entire list using the paginator.
               await foreach (var instance in
instancesPaginator.InstanceInformationList)
               {
                   instanceReady = instance.InstanceId == instanceId;
                   if (instanceReady)
                   {
                       break;
                   }
               }
           }
           Console.WriteLine("Waiting for instance to be running.");
           await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
           Console.WriteLine("Instance ready.");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Sending restart command to instance {instanceId}");
            await _amazonSsm.SendCommandAsync(
                new SendCommandRequest()
                {
                    InstanceIds = new List<string>() { instanceId },
                    DocumentName = "AWS-RunShellScript",
                    Parameters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>()
                    {
                        {
                            "commands",
                            new List<string>() { "cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80" }
                        }
                    }
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Restarted the web server on instance {instanceId}");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while replacing the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Try to terminate an instance by its Id.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to terminate.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryTerminateInstanceById(string instanceId)
    {
        var stopping = false;
        Console.WriteLine($"Stopping {instanceId}...");
        while (!stopping)
```

```
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        InstanceId = instanceId,
                        ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false
                    });
                stopping = true;
            }
            catch (ScalingActivityInProgressException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Scaling activity in progress for {instanceId}.
Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Tries to delete the EC2 Auto Scaling group. If the group is in use or in
progress,
    /// waits and retries until the group is successfully deleted.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to try to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryDeleteGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var stopped = false;
        while (!stopped)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        AutoScalingGroupName = groupName
                    });
                stopped = true;
            }
            catch (Exception e)
                when ((e is ScalingActivityInProgressException)
                      || (e is Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.ResourceInUseException))
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Some instances are still running. Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate instances and delete the Auto Scaling group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(string groupName)
    {
        var describeGroupsResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { groupName }
            });
        if (describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups.Any())
        {
            // Update the size to 0.
            await _amazonAutoScaling.UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    MinSize = 0
                });
            var group = describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups[0];
            foreach (var instance in group.Instances)
            {
                await TryTerminateInstanceById(instance.InstanceId);
            }

            await TryDeleteGroupByName(groupName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No groups found with name {groupName}.");
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default security group for a specified Vpc.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The Vpc to search.</param>
    /// <returns>The default security group.</returns>
    public async Task<SecurityGroup> GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(Vpc vpc)
    {
        var groupResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest()
            {
                Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                {
                    new ("group-name", new List<string>() { "default" }),
                    new ("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpc.VpcId })
                }
            });
        return groupResponse.SecurityGroups[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify the default security group of a Vpc allows ingress from the calling
 computer.
    /// This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP address.
    /// In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network, you must
 instead specify
    /// a prefix list Id. You can also temporarily open the port to any IP address
 while running this example.
    /// If you do, be sure to remove public access when you're done.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The group to check.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to verify.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">This computer's IP address.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the ip address is allowed on the group.</returns>
    public bool VerifyInboundPortForGroup(SecurityGroup group, int port, string
 ipAddress)
    {
        var portIsOpen = false;
        foreach (var ipPermission in group.IpPermissions)
        {
            if (ipPermission.FromPort == port)
            {
                foreach (var ipRange in ipPermission.Ipv4Ranges)
                {
                    var cidr = ipRange.CidrIp;
```

```
                    if (cidr.StartsWith(ipAddress) || cidr == "0.0.0.0/0")
                    {
                        portIsOpen = true;
                    }
                }

                if (ipPermission.PrefixListIds.Any())
                {
                    portIsOpen = true;
                }

                if (!portIsOpen)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("The inbound rule does not appear to be open
to either this computer's IP\n" +
                                      "address, to all IP addresses (0.0.0.0/0), or
to a prefix list ID.");
                }
                else
                {
                    break;
                }
            }
        }

        return portIsOpen;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an ingress rule to the specified security group that allows access on
the
    /// specified port from the specified IP address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupId">The Id of the security group to modify.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to open.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">The IP address to allow access.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task OpenInboundPort(string groupId, int port, string ipAddress)
    {
        await _amazonEc2.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressAsync(
            new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest()
            {
                GroupId = groupId,
                IpPermissions = new List<IpPermission>()
```

```
                {
                    new IpPermission()
                    {
                        FromPort = port,
                        ToPort = port,
                        IpProtocol = "tcp",
                        Ipv4Ranges = new List<IpRange>()
                        {
                            new IpRange() { CidrIp = $"{ipAddress}/32" }
                        }
                    }
                }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
 Scaling group.
    /// The
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="autoScalingGroupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <param name="targetGroupArn">The Arn for the target group.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(string autoScalingGroupName, string
 targetGroupArn)
    {
        await _amazonAutoScaling.AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsAsync(
            new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupName = autoScalingGroupName,
                TargetGroupARNs = new List<string>() { targetGroupArn }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
 InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
```

```
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEc2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancer actions.
/// </summary>
public class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
    private string? _endpoint = null;
    private readonly string _targetGroupName = "";
    private readonly string _loadBalancerName = "";
    HttpClient _httpClient = new();

    public string TargetGroupName => _targetGroupName;
    public string LoadBalancerName => _loadBalancerName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Elastic Load Balancer wrapper.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2">The injected load balancing v2
client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper(
        IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2,
        IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 = amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _targetGroupName = prefix + "-tg";
        _loadBalancerName = prefix + "-lb";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the HTTP Endpoint of a load balancer by its name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="loadBalancerName">The name of the load balancer.</param>
    /// <returns>The HTTP endpoint.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(string
loadBalancerName)
    {
        if (_endpoint == null)
        {
            var endpointResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { loadBalancerName }
                    });
            _endpoint = endpointResponse.LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
        }

        return _endpoint;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Return the GET response for an endpoint as text.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint for the request.</param>
    /// <returns>The request response.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndPointResponse(string endpoint)
    {
        var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://{endpoint}");
```

```
        var textResponse = await endpointResponse.Content.ReadAsStringAsync();
        return textResponse!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the target health for a group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of health descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TargetHealthDescription>>
CheckTargetHealthForGroup(string groupName)
    {
        List<TargetHealthDescription> result = null!;
        try
        {
            var groupResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                    });
            var healthResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetHealthAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetHealthRequest()
                    {
                        TargetGroupArn =
groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn
                    });
            ;
            result = healthResponse.TargetHealthDescriptions;
        }
        catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Target group {groupName} not found.");
        }
        return result;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
how the load balancer forwards
    /// requests to instances in the group and how instance health is checked.
    ///
```

```
    /// To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened times
 and lower thresholds. In production,
    /// you might want to decrease the sensitivity of your health checks to avoid
 unwanted failures.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="protocol">The protocol, such as HTTP.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.</param>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc in which the load balancer exists.</
param>
    /// <returns>The new TargetGroup object.</returns>
    public async Task<TargetGroup> CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(string groupName,
 ProtocolEnum protocol, int port, string vpcId)
    {
        var createResponse = await
 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateTargetGroupAsync(
            new CreateTargetGroupRequest()
            {
                Name = groupName,
                Protocol = protocol,
                Port = port,
                HealthCheckPath = "/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds = 10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds = 5,
                HealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                VpcId = vpcId
            });
        var targetGroup = createResponse.TargetGroups[0];
        return targetGroup;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
 subnets
    /// and forwards requests to the specified target group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name for the new load balancer.</param>
    /// <param name="subnetIds">Subnets for the load balancer.</param>
    /// <param name="targetGroup">Target group for forwarded requests.</param>
    /// <returns>The new LoadBalancer object.</returns>
    public async Task<LoadBalancer> CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(string name,
 List<string> subnetIds, TargetGroup targetGroup)
    {
```

```
        var createLbResponse = await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateLoadBalancerAsync(
            new CreateLoadBalancerRequest()
            {
                Name = name,
                Subnets = subnetIds
            });
        var loadBalancerArn = createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;

        // Wait for load balancer to be available.
        var loadBalancerReady = false;
        while (!loadBalancerReady)
        {
            try
            {
                var describeResponse =
                    await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                        new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { name }
                        });

                var loadBalancerState =
describeResponse.LoadBalancers[0].State.Code;

                loadBalancerReady = loadBalancerState ==
LoadBalancerStateEnum.Active;
            }
            catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
            {
                loadBalancerReady = false;
            }
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
        }
        // Create the listener.
        await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateListenerAsync(
            new CreateListenerRequest()
            {
                LoadBalancerArn = loadBalancerArn,
                Protocol = targetGroup.Protocol,
                Port = targetGroup.Port,
                DefaultActions = new List<Action>()
                {
                    new Action()
```

```
                    {
                        Type = ActionTypeEnum.Forward,
                        TargetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn
                    }
                }
            });
        return createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the
    /// load balancer endpoint.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint to check.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(string endpoint)
    {
        var success = false;
        var retries = 3;
        while (!success && retries > 0)
        {
            try
            {
                var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://
{endpoint}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Response: {endpointResponse.StatusCode}.");

                if (endpointResponse.IsSuccessStatusCode)
                {
                    success = true;
                }
                else
                {
                    retries = 0;
                }
            }
            catch (HttpRequestException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Connection error, retrying...");
                retries--;
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
```

```
        return success;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a load balancer by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the load balancer to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteLoadBalancerByName(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var describeLoadBalancerResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { name }
                    });
            var lbArn =
describeLoadBalancerResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
            await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteLoadBalancerAsync(
                new DeleteLoadBalancerRequest()
                {
                    LoadBalancerArn = lbArn
                }
            );
        }
        catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Load balancer {name} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a TargetGroup by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">Name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTargetGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var done = false;
        while (!done)
        {
            try
```

```
            {
                var groupResponse =
                    await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                        new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                        });

                var targetArn = groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn;
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteTargetGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteTargetGroupRequest() { TargetGroupArn = targetArn });
                Console.WriteLine($"Deleted load balancing target group
 {groupName}.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Target group {groupName} not found, could not delete.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (ResourceInUseException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Target group not yet released, waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates a DynamoDB table to use as a service that recommends books, movies,
 and songs.
/// </summary>
public class Recommendations
{
    private readonly IAmazonDynamoDB _amazonDynamoDb;
    private readonly DynamoDBContext _context;
    private readonly string _tableName;
```

```
    public string TableName => _tableName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Recommendations service.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonDynamoDb">The injected DynamoDb client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public Recommendations(IAmazonDynamoDB amazonDynamoDb, IConfiguration
configuration)
    {
        _amazonDynamoDb = amazonDynamoDb;
        _context = new DynamoDBContext(_amazonDynamoDb);
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create the DynamoDb table with a specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name for the table.</param>
    /// <returns>True when ready.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateDatabaseWithName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            Console.Write($"Creating table {tableName}...");
            var createRequest = new CreateTableRequest()
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                AttributeDefinitions = new List<AttributeDefinition>()
                    {
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
                        },
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N
                        }
                    },
                KeySchema = new List<KeySchemaElement>()
                    {
                        new KeySchemaElement()
```

```
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            KeyType = KeyType.HASH
                        },
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            KeyType = KeyType.RANGE
                        }
                    },
                ProvisionedThroughput = new ProvisionedThroughput()
                {
                    ReadCapacityUnits = 5,
                    WriteCapacityUnits = 5
                }
            };
            await _amazonDynamoDb.CreateTableAsync(createRequest);

            // Wait until the table is ACTIVE and then report success.
            Console.Write("\nWaiting for table to become active...");

            var request = new DescribeTableRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName
            };

            TableStatus status;
            do
            {
                Thread.Sleep(2000);

                var describeTableResponse = await
_amazonDynamoDb.DescribeTableAsync(request);
                status = describeTableResponse.Table.TableStatus;

                Console.Write(".");
            }
            while (status != "ACTIVE");

            return status == TableStatus.ACTIVE;
        }
        catch (ResourceInUseException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} already exists.");
```

```
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the database table with data from a specified path.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="databaseTableName">The name of the table.</param>
    /// <param name="recommendationsPath">The path of the recommendations data.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PopulateDatabase(string databaseTableName, string
 recommendationsPath)
    {
        var recommendationsText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(recommendationsPath);
        var records =
            JsonSerializer.Deserialize<RecommendationModel[]>(recommendationsText);
        var batchWrite = _context.CreateBatchWrite<RecommendationModel>();

        foreach (var record in records!)
        {
            batchWrite.AddPutItem(record);
        }

        await batchWrite.ExecuteAsync();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the recommendation table by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the recommendation table.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DestroyDatabaseByName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonDynamoDb.DeleteTableAsync(
                new DeleteTableRequest() { TableName = tableName });
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was deleted.");
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} not found");
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Systems Manager parameter operations. This example uses these
 parameters
/// to drive the demonstration of resilient architecture, such as failure of a
 dependency or
/// how the service responds to a health check.
/// </summary>
public class SmParameterWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;

    private readonly string _tableParameter = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-
table";
    private readonly string _failureResponseParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-failure-response";
    private readonly string _healthCheckParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-health-check";
    private readonly string _tableName = "";

    public string TableParameter => _tableParameter;
    public string TableName => _tableName;
    public string HealthCheckParameter => _healthCheckParameter;
    public string FailureResponseParameter => _failureResponseParameter;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the SmParameterWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSimpleSystemsManagement">The injected Simple Systems
 Management client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public SmParameterWrapper(IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement
 amazonSimpleSystemsManagement, IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement = amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Reset the Systems Manager parameters to starting values for the demo.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task Reset()
    {
        await this.PutParameterByName(_tableParameter, _tableName);
        await this.PutParameterByName(_failureResponseParameter, "none");
        await this.PutParameterByName(_healthCheckParameter, "shallow");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set the value of a named Systems Manager parameter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the parameter.</param>
    /// <param name="value">The value to set.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PutParameterByName(string name, string value)
    {
        await _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement.PutParameterAsync(
            new PutParameterRequest() { Name = name, Value = value, Overwrite =
 true });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer

- DeleteTargetGroup
- DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Amazon Keyspaces examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon Keyspaces.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Get started
- Basics
- Actions

Get started

Hello Amazon Keyspaces

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon Keyspaces.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace KeyspacesActions;

public class HelloKeyspaces
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra).
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonKeyspaces>()
                .AddTransient<KeyspacesWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<HelloKeyspaces>();

        var keyspacesClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonKeyspaces>();
        var keyspacesWrapper = new KeyspacesWrapper(keyspacesClient);

        Console.WriteLine("Hello, Amazon Keyspaces! Let's list your keyspaces:");
```

```
        await keyspacesWrapper.ListKeyspaces();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a keyspace and table. The table schema holds movie data and has point-in-time recovery enabled.
- Connect to the keyspace using a secure TLS connection with SigV4 authentication.
- Query the table. Add, retrieve, and update movie data.
- Update the table. Add a column to track watched movies.
- Restore the table to its previous state and clean up resources.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
global using System.Security.Cryptography.X509Certificates;
global using Amazon.Keyspaces;
global using Amazon.Keyspaces.Model;
global using KeyspacesActions;
global using KeyspacesScenario;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
```

```
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;
global using Newtonsoft.Json;


namespace KeyspacesBasics;

/// <summary>
/// Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) scenario. Shows some of the basic
/// actions performed with Amazon Keyspaces.
/// </summary>
public class KeyspacesBasics
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonKeyspaces>()
            .AddTransient<KeyspacesWrapper>()
            .AddTransient<CassandraWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<KeyspacesBasics>();

        var configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        var keyspacesWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<KeyspacesWrapper>();
        var uiMethods = new UiMethods();

        var keyspaceName = configuration["KeyspaceName"];
```

```
        var tableName = configuration["TableName"];

        bool success; // Used to track the results of some operations.

        uiMethods.DisplayOverview();
        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        // Create the keyspace.
        var keyspaceArn = await keyspacesWrapper.CreateKeyspace(keyspaceName);

        // Wait for the keyspace to be available. GetKeyspace results in a
        // resource not found error until it is ready for use.
        try
        {
            var getKeyspaceArn = "";
            Console.Write($"Created {keyspaceName}. Waiting for it to become
available. ");
            do
            {
                getKeyspaceArn = await keyspacesWrapper.GetKeyspace(keyspaceName);
                Console.Write(". ");
            } while (getKeyspaceArn != keyspaceArn);
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Waiting for keyspace to be created.");
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"\nThe keyspace {keyspaceName} is ready for use.");

        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        // Create the table.
        // First define the schema.
        var allColumns = new List<ColumnDefinition>
        {
            new ColumnDefinition { Name = "title", Type = "text" },
            new ColumnDefinition { Name = "year", Type = "int" },
            new ColumnDefinition { Name = "release_date", Type = "timestamp" },
            new ColumnDefinition { Name = "plot", Type = "text" },
        };

        var partitionKeys = new List<PartitionKey>
        {
```

```
            new PartitionKey { Name = "year", },
            new PartitionKey { Name = "title" },
        };

        var tableSchema = new SchemaDefinition
        {
            AllColumns = allColumns,
            PartitionKeys = partitionKeys,
        };

        var tableArn = await keyspacesWrapper.CreateTable(keyspaceName, tableSchema,
tableName);

        // Wait for the table to be active.
        try
        {
            var resp = new GetTableResponse();
            Console.Write("Waiting for the new table to be active. ");
            do
            {
                try
                {
                    resp = await keyspacesWrapper.GetTable(keyspaceName, tableName);
                    Console.Write(".");
                }
                catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
                {
                    Console.Write(".");
                }
            } while (resp.Status != TableStatus.ACTIVE);

            // Display the table's schema.
            Console.WriteLine($"\nTable {tableName} has been created in
{keyspaceName}");
            Console.WriteLine("Let's take a look at the schema.");
            uiMethods.DisplayTitle("All columns");
            resp.SchemaDefinition.AllColumns.ForEach(column =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{column.Name,-40}\t{column.Type,-20}");
            });

            uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Cluster keys");
            resp.SchemaDefinition.ClusteringKeys.ForEach(clusterKey =>
            {
```

```
Console.WriteLine($"{clusterKey.Name,-40}\t{clusterKey.OrderBy,-20}");
            });

            uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Partition keys");
            resp.SchemaDefinition.PartitionKeys.ForEach(partitionKey =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{partitionKey.Name}");
            });

            uiMethods.PressEnter();
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
        }

        // Access Apache Cassandra using the Cassandra drive for C#.
        var cassandraWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<CassandraWrapper>();
        var movieFilePath = configuration["MovieFile"];

        Console.WriteLine("Let's add some movies to the table we created.");
        var inserted = await cassandraWrapper.InsertIntoMovieTable(keyspaceName,
tableName, movieFilePath);

        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        Console.WriteLine("Added the following movies to the table:");
        var rows = await cassandraWrapper.GetMovies(keyspaceName, tableName);
        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("All Movies");

        foreach (var row in rows)
        {
            var title = row.GetValue<string>("title");
            var year = row.GetValue<int>("year");
            var plot = row.GetValue<string>("plot");
            var release_date = row.GetValue<DateTime>("release_date");
            Console.WriteLine($"{release_date}\t{title}\t{year}\n{plot}");
            Console.WriteLine(uiMethods.SepBar);
        }

        // Update the table schema
        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Update table schema");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("Now we will update the table to add a boolean field
called watched.");

        // First save the current time as a UTC Date so the original
        // table can be restored later.
        var timeChanged = DateTime.UtcNow;

        // Now update the schema.
        var resourceArn = await keyspacesWrapper.UpdateTable(keyspaceName,
tableName);
        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        Console.WriteLine("Now let's mark some of the movies as watched.");

        // Pick some files to mark as watched.
        var movieToWatch = rows[2].GetValue<string>("title");
        var watchedMovieYear = rows[2].GetValue<int>("year");
        var changedRows = await cassandraWrapper.MarkMovieAsWatched(keyspaceName,
tableName, movieToWatch, watchedMovieYear);

        movieToWatch = rows[6].GetValue<string>("title");
        watchedMovieYear = rows[6].GetValue<int>("year");
        changedRows = await cassandraWrapper.MarkMovieAsWatched(keyspaceName,
tableName, movieToWatch, watchedMovieYear);

        movieToWatch = rows[9].GetValue<string>("title");
        watchedMovieYear = rows[9].GetValue<int>("year");
        changedRows = await cassandraWrapper.MarkMovieAsWatched(keyspaceName,
tableName, movieToWatch, watchedMovieYear);

        movieToWatch = rows[10].GetValue<string>("title");
        watchedMovieYear = rows[10].GetValue<int>("year");
        changedRows = await cassandraWrapper.MarkMovieAsWatched(keyspaceName,
tableName, movieToWatch, watchedMovieYear);

        movieToWatch = rows[13].GetValue<string>("title");
        watchedMovieYear = rows[13].GetValue<int>("year");
        changedRows = await cassandraWrapper.MarkMovieAsWatched(keyspaceName,
tableName, movieToWatch, watchedMovieYear);

        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Watched movies");
        Console.WriteLine("These movies have been marked as watched:");
        rows = await cassandraWrapper.GetWatchedMovies(keyspaceName, tableName);
        foreach (var row in rows)
```

```
        {
            var title = row.GetValue<string>("title");
            var year = row.GetValue<int>("year");
            Console.WriteLine($"{title,-40}\t{year,8}");
        }
        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        Console.WriteLine("We can restore the table to its previous state but that
can take up to 20 minutes to complete.");
        string answer;
        do
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Do you want to restore the table? (y/n)");
            answer = Console.ReadLine();
        } while (answer.ToLower() != "y" && answer.ToLower() != "n");

        if (answer == "y")
        {
            var restoredTableName = $"{tableName}_restored";
            var restoredTableArn = await keyspacesWrapper.RestoreTable(
                keyspaceName,
                tableName,
                restoredTableName,
                timeChanged);
            // Loop and call GetTable until the table is gone. Once it has been
            // deleted completely, GetTable will raise a ResourceNotFoundException.
            bool wasRestored = false;

            try
            {
                do
                {
                    var resp = await keyspacesWrapper.GetTable(keyspaceName,
restoredTableName);
                    wasRestored = (resp.Status == TableStatus.ACTIVE);
                } while (!wasRestored);
            }
            catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
            {
                // If the restored table raised an error, it isn't
                // ready yet.
                Console.Write(".");
            }
        }
```

```
        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Clean up resources.");

        // Delete the table.
        success = await keyspacesWrapper.DeleteTable(keyspaceName, tableName);

        Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} successfully deleted from
 {keyspaceName}.");
        Console.WriteLine("Waiting for the table to be removed completely. ");

        // Loop and call GetTable until the table is gone. Once it has been
        // deleted completely, GetTable will raise a ResourceNotFoundException.
        bool wasDeleted = false;

        try
        {
            do
            {
                var resp = await keyspacesWrapper.GetTable(keyspaceName, tableName);
            } while (!wasDeleted);
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            wasDeleted = true;
            Console.WriteLine($"{ex.Message} indicates that the table has been
 deleted.");
        }

        // Delete the keyspace.
        success = await keyspacesWrapper.DeleteKeyspace(keyspaceName);
        Console.WriteLine("The keyspace has been deleted and the demo is now
 complete.");
    }
}
```

```
namespace KeyspacesActions;

/// <summary>
/// Performs Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) actions.
/// </summary>
public class KeyspacesWrapper
```

```
{
    private readonly IAmazonKeyspaces _amazonKeyspaces;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the KeyspaceWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonKeyspaces">An Amazon Keyspaces client object.</param>
    public KeyspacesWrapper(IAmazonKeyspaces amazonKeyspaces)
    {
        _amazonKeyspaces = amazonKeyspaces;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new keyspace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The name for the new keyspace.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the new keyspace.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateKeyspace(string keyspaceName)
    {
        var response =
            await _amazonKeyspaces.CreateKeyspaceAsync(
                new CreateKeyspaceRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
        return response.ResourceArn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon Keyspaces table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace where the table will be created.</
param>
    /// <param name="schema">The schema for the new table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the new table.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the new table.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateTable(string keyspaceName, SchemaDefinition
 schema, string tableName)
    {
        var request = new CreateTableRequest
        {
            KeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            SchemaDefinition = schema,
            TableName = tableName,
            PointInTimeRecovery = new PointInTimeRecovery { Status =
 PointInTimeRecoveryStatus.ENABLED }
```

```
        };

        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.CreateTableAsync(request);
        return response.ResourceArn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an existing keyspace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName"></param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteKeyspace(string keyspaceName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.DeleteKeyspaceAsync(
            new DeleteKeyspaceRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Amazon Keyspaces table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTable(string keyspaceName, string tableName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.DeleteTableAsync(
            new DeleteTableRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName, TableName =
tableName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get data about a keyspace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The name of the keyspace.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the keyspace.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetKeyspace(string keyspaceName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.GetKeyspaceAsync(
            new GetKeyspaceRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
```

```
        return response.ResourceArn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an Amazon Keyspaces table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the Amazon Keyspaces table.</param>
    /// <returns>The response containing data about the table.</returns>
    public async Task<GetTableResponse> GetTable(string keyspaceName, string
tableName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.GetTableAsync(
            new GetTableRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName, TableName =
tableName });
        return response;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Lists all keyspaces for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task ListKeyspaces()
    {
        var paginator = _amazonKeyspaces.Paginators.ListKeyspaces(new
ListKeyspacesRequest());

        Console.WriteLine("{0, -30}\t{1}", "Keyspace name", "Keyspace ARN");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', Console.WindowWidth));
        await foreach (var keyspace in paginator.Keyspaces)
        {

Console.WriteLine($"{keyspace.KeyspaceName,-30}\t{keyspace.ResourceArn}");
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Lists the Amazon Keyspaces tables in a keyspace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The name of the keyspace.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of TableSummary objects.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<List<TableSummary>> ListTables(string keyspaceName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.ListTablesAsync(new ListTablesRequest
 { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
        response.Tables.ForEach(table =>
        {

 Console.WriteLine($"{table.KeyspaceName}\t{table.TableName}\t{table.ResourceArn}");
        });

        return response.Tables;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Restores the specified table to the specified point in time.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to restore.</param>
    /// <param name="timestamp">The time to which the table will be restored.</
param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the restored table.</returns>
    public async Task<string> RestoreTable(string keyspaceName, string tableName,
 string restoredTableName, DateTime timestamp)
    {
        var request = new RestoreTableRequest
        {
            RestoreTimestamp = timestamp,
            SourceKeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            SourceTableName = tableName,
            TargetKeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            TargetTableName = restoredTableName
        };

        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.RestoreTableAsync(request);
        return response.RestoredTableARN;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Updates the movie table to add a boolean column named watched.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to change.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the updated table.</returns>
    public async Task<string> UpdateTable(string keyspaceName, string tableName)
    {
        var newColumn = new ColumnDefinition { Name = "watched", Type = "boolean" };
        var request = new UpdateTableRequest
        {
            KeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            TableName = tableName,
            AddColumns = new List<ColumnDefinition> { newColumn }
        };
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.UpdateTableAsync(request);
        return response.ResourceArn;
    }

}
```

```
using System.Net;
using Cassandra;

namespace KeyspacesScenario;

/// <summary>
/// Class to perform CRUD methods on an Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra)
 database.
///
/// NOTE: This sample uses a plain text authenticator for example purposes only.
/// Recommended best practice is to use a SigV4 authentication plugin, if available.
/// </summary>
public class CassandraWrapper
{
    private readonly IConfiguration _configuration;
    private readonly string _localPathToFile;
    private const string _certLocation = "https://certs.secureserver.net/repository/
sf-class2-root.crt";
    private const string _certFileName = "sf-class2-root.crt";
    private readonly X509Certificate2Collection _certCollection;
    private X509Certificate2 _amazoncert;
    private Cluster _cluster;

    // User name and password for the service.
    private string _userName = null!;
```

```
    private string _pwd = null!;

    public CassandraWrapper()
    {
        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        _localPathToFile = Path.GetTempPath();

        // Get the Starfield digital certificate and save it locally.
        var client = new WebClient();
        client.DownloadFile(_certLocation, $"{_localPathToFile}/{_certFileName}");

        //var httpClient = new HttpClient();
        //var httpResult = httpClient.Get(fileUrl);
        //using var resultStream = await httpResult.Content.ReadAsStreamAsync();
        //using var fileStream = File.Create(pathToSave);
        //resultStream.CopyTo(fileStream);

        _certCollection = new X509Certificate2Collection();
        _amazoncert = new X509Certificate2($"{_localPathToFile}/{_certFileName}");

        // Get the user name and password stored in the configuration file.
        _userName = _configuration["UserName"]!;
        _pwd = _configuration["Password"]!;

        // For a list of Service Endpoints for Amazon Keyspaces, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/keyspaces/latest/devguide/
programmatic.endpoints.html
        var awsEndpoint = _configuration["ServiceEndpoint"];

        _cluster = Cluster.Builder()
            .AddContactPoints(awsEndpoint)
            .WithPort(9142)
            .WithAuthProvider(new PlainTextAuthProvider(_userName, _pwd))
            .WithSSL(new SSLOptions().SetCertificateCollection(_certCollection))
            .WithQueryOptions(
                new QueryOptions()
                    .SetConsistencyLevel(ConsistencyLevel.LocalQuorum)
                    .SetSerialConsistencyLevel(ConsistencyLevel.LocalSerial))
```

```
            .Build();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Loads the contents of a JSON file into a list of movies to be
    /// added to the Apache Cassandra table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="movieFileName">The full path to the JSON file.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of movie objects.</returns>
    public List<Movie> ImportMoviesFromJson(string movieFileName, int numToImport =
0)
    {
        if (!File.Exists(movieFileName))
        {
            return null!;
        }

        using var sr = new StreamReader(movieFileName);
        string json = sr.ReadToEnd();

        var allMovies = JsonConvert.DeserializeObject<List<Movie>>(json);

        // If numToImport = 0, return all movies in the collection.
        if (numToImport == 0)
        {
            // Now return the entire list of movies.
            return allMovies;
        }
        else
        {
            // Now return the first numToImport entries.
            return allMovies.GetRange(0, numToImport);
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Insert movies into the movie table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="movieTableName">The Amazon Keyspaces table.</param>
    /// <param name="movieFilePath">The path to the resource file containing
    /// movie data to insert into the table.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> InsertIntoMovieTable(string keyspaceName, string
 movieTableName, string movieFilePath, int numToImport = 20)
    {
        // Get some movie data from the movies.json file
        var movies = ImportMoviesFromJson(movieFilePath, numToImport);

        var session = _cluster.Connect(keyspaceName);

        string insertCql;

        RowSet rs;

        // Now we insert the numToImport movies into the table.
        foreach (var movie in movies)
        {
            // Escape single quote characters in the plot.
            insertCql = $"INSERT INTO {keyspaceName}.{movieTableName}
 (title, year, release_date, plot) values($${movie.Title}$$, {movie.Year},
 '{movie.Info.Release_Date.ToString("yyyy-MM-dd")}', $${movie.Info.Plot}$$)";
            rs = await session.ExecuteAsync(new SimpleStatement(insertCql));
        }

        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Gets all of the movies in the movies table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of row objects containing movie data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Row>> GetMovies(string keyspaceName, string tableName)
    {
        var session = _cluster.Connect();
        RowSet rs;
        try
        {
            rs = await session.ExecuteAsync(new SimpleStatement($"SELECT * FROM
 {keyspaceName}.{tableName}"));

            // Extract the row data from the returned RowSet.
            var rows = rs.GetRows().ToList();
            return rows;
        }
```

```
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return null!;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Mark a movie in the movie table as watched.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
    /// <param name="title">The title of the movie to mark as watched.</param>
    /// <param name="year">The year the movie was released.</param>
    /// <returns>A set of rows containing the changed data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Row>> MarkMovieAsWatched(string keyspaceName, string
 tableName, string title, int year)
    {
        var session = _cluster.Connect();
        string updateCql = $"UPDATE {keyspaceName}.{tableName} SET watched=true
 WHERE title = $${title}$$ AND year = {year};";
        var rs = await session.ExecuteAsync(new SimpleStatement(updateCql));
        var rows = rs.GetRows().ToList();
        return rows;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve the movies in the movies table where watched is true.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of row objects containing information about movies
    /// where watched is true.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Row>> GetWatchedMovies(string keyspaceName, string
 tableName)
    {
        var session = _cluster.Connect();
        RowSet rs;
        try
        {
            rs = await session.ExecuteAsync(new SimpleStatement($"SELECT title,
 year, plot FROM {keyspaceName}.{tableName} WHERE watched = true ALLOW FILTERING"));

            // Extract the row data from the returned RowSet.
```

```
            var rows = rs.GetRows().ToList();
            return rows;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return null!;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateKeyspace
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteKeyspace
  - DeleteTable
  - GetKeyspace
  - GetTable
  - ListKeyspaces
  - ListTables
  - RestoreTable
  - UpdateTable

Actions

`CreateKeyspace`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeyspace`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new keyspace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The name for the new keyspace.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the new keyspace.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateKeyspace(string keyspaceName)
    {
        var response =
            await _amazonKeyspaces.CreateKeyspaceAsync(
                new CreateKeyspaceRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
        return response.ResourceArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyspace in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTable`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon Keyspaces table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace where the table will be created.</
param>
    /// <param name="schema">The schema for the new table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the new table.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the new table.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateTable(string keyspaceName, SchemaDefinition
 schema, string tableName)
    {
        var request = new CreateTableRequest
```

```
        {
            KeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            SchemaDefinition = schema,
            TableName = tableName,
            PointInTimeRecovery = new PointInTimeRecovery { Status =
PointInTimeRecoveryStatus.ENABLED }
        };

        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.CreateTableAsync(request);
        return response.ResourceArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteKeyspace`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteKeyspace`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an existing keyspace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName"></param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteKeyspace(string keyspaceName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.DeleteKeyspaceAsync(
            new DeleteKeyspaceRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyspace in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Amazon Keyspaces table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTable(string keyspaceName, string tableName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.DeleteTableAsync(
            new DeleteTableRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName, TableName =
tableName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetKeyspace`

The following code example shows how to use `GetKeyspace`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Get data about a keyspace.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="keyspaceName">The name of the keyspace.</param>
/// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the keyspace.</returns>
public async Task<string> GetKeyspace(string keyspaceName)
{
    var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.GetKeyspaceAsync(
        new GetKeyspaceRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
    return response.ResourceArn;
}
```

- For API details, see GetKeyspace in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetTable`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTable`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Get information about an Amazon Keyspaces table.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the Amazon Keyspaces table.</param>
    /// <returns>The response containing data about the table.</returns>
    public async Task<GetTableResponse> GetTable(string keyspaceName, string
tableName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.GetTableAsync(
            new GetTableRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName, TableName =
tableName });
        return response;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListKeyspaces`

The following code example shows how to use `ListKeyspaces`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Lists all keyspaces for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task ListKeyspaces()
    {
        var paginator = _amazonKeyspaces.Paginators.ListKeyspaces(new
ListKeyspacesRequest());

        Console.WriteLine("{0, -30}\t{1}", "Keyspace name", "Keyspace ARN");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', Console.WindowWidth));
        await foreach (var keyspace in paginator.Keyspaces)
        {

Console.WriteLine($"{keyspace.KeyspaceName,-30}\t{keyspace.ResourceArn}");
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListTables`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTables`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Lists the Amazon Keyspaces tables in a keyspace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The name of the keyspace.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of TableSummary objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TableSummary>> ListTables(string keyspaceName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.ListTablesAsync(new ListTablesRequest
{ KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
        response.Tables.ForEach(table =>
        {

Console.WriteLine($"{table.KeyspaceName}\t{table.TableName}\t{table.ResourceArn}");
        });

        return response.Tables;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`RestoreTable`

The following code example shows how to use `RestoreTable`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Restores the specified table to the specified point in time.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to restore.</param>
    /// <param name="timestamp">The time to which the table will be restored.</
param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the restored table.</returns>
    public async Task<string> RestoreTable(string keyspaceName, string tableName,
 string restoredTableName, DateTime timestamp)
    {
        var request = new RestoreTableRequest
        {
            RestoreTimestamp = timestamp,
            SourceKeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            SourceTableName = tableName,
            TargetKeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            TargetTableName = restoredTableName
        };

        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.RestoreTableAsync(request);
        return response.RestoredTableARN;
    }
```

- For API details, see RestoreTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`UpdateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateTable`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Updates the movie table to add a boolean column named watched.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
/// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to change.</param>
/// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the updated table.</returns>
public async Task<string> UpdateTable(string keyspaceName, string tableName)
{
    var newColumn = new ColumnDefinition { Name = "watched", Type = "boolean" };
    var request = new UpdateTableRequest
    {
        KeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
        TableName = tableName,
        AddColumns = new List<ColumnDefinition> { newColumn }
    };
    var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.UpdateTableAsync(request);
    return response.ResourceArn;
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Kinesis examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Kinesis.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Serverless examples

Actions

`AddTagsToStream`

The following code example shows how to use `AddTagsToStream`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Kinesis;
using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to apply key/value pairs to an Amazon Kinesis
/// stream.
/// </summary>
public class TagStream
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();
```

```
            string streamName = "AmazonKinesisStream";
            var tags = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                { "Project", "Sample Kinesis Project" },
                { "Application", "Sample Kinesis App" },
            };

            var success = await ApplyTagsToStreamAsync(client, streamName, tags);

            if (success)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Taggs successfully added to {streamName}.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Tags were not added to the stream.");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Applies the set of tags to the named Kinesis stream.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Kinesis client.</param>
        /// <param name="streamName">The name of the Kinesis stream to which
        /// the tags will be attached.</param>
        /// <param name="tags">A sictionary containing key/value pairs which
        /// will be used to create the Kinesis tags.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value which represents the success or failure
        /// of AddTagsToStreamAsync.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> ApplyTagsToStreamAsync(
            IAmazonKinesis client,
            string streamName,
            Dictionary<string, string> tags)
        {
            var request = new AddTagsToStreamRequest
            {
                StreamName = streamName,
                Tags = tags,
            };

            var response = await client.AddTagsToStreamAsync(request);

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see AddTagsToStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateStream`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateStream`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Kinesis;
    using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to create a new Amazon Kinesis stream.
    /// </summary>
    public class CreateStream
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();

            string streamName = "AmazonKinesisStream";
            int shardCount = 1;

            var success = await CreateNewStreamAsync(client, streamName,
shardCount);
            if (success)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"The stream, {streamName} successfully
created.");
            }
```

```
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates a new Kinesis stream.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Kinesis client.</param>
        /// <param name="streamName">The name for the new stream.</param>
        /// <param name="shardCount">The number of shards the new stream will
        /// use. The throughput of the stream is a function of the number of
        /// shards; more shards are required for greater provisioned
        /// throughput.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating whether the stream was created.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> CreateNewStreamAsync(IAmazonKinesis client,
 string streamName, int shardCount)
        {
            var request = new CreateStreamRequest
            {
                StreamName = streamName,
                ShardCount = shardCount,
            };

            var response = await client.CreateStreamAsync(request);

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteStream`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteStream`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Kinesis;
    using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to delete an Amazon Kinesis stream.
    /// </summary>
    public class DeleteStream
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();
            string streamName = "AmazonKinesisStream";

            var success = await DeleteStreamAsync(client, streamName);

            if (success)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Stream, {streamName} successfully deleted.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Stream not deleted.");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes a Kinesis stream.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Kinesis client object.</param>
        /// <param name="streamName">The name of the string to delete.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value representing the success of the operation.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteStreamAsync(IAmazonKinesis client,
 string streamName)
        {
            // If EnforceConsumerDeletion is true, any consumers
            // of this stream will also be deleted. If it is set
            // to false and this stream has any consumers, the
            // call will fail with a ResourceInUseException.
            var request = new DeleteStreamRequest
            {
```

```
                StreamName = streamName,
                EnforceConsumerDeletion = true,
            };

            var response = await client.DeleteStreamAsync(request);

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeregisterStreamConsumer`

The following code example shows how to use `DeregisterStreamConsumer`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Kinesis;
    using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to deregister a consumer from an Amazon Kinesis stream.
    /// </summary>
    public class DeregisterConsumer
    {
        public static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
            IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();

            string streamARN = "arn:aws:kinesis:us-west-2:000000000000:stream/
AmazonKinesisStream";
```

```
            string consumerName = "CONSUMER_NAME";
            string consumerARN = "arn:aws:kinesis:us-west-2:000000000000:stream/
AmazonKinesisStream/consumer/CONSUMER_NAME:000000000000";

            var success = await DeregisterConsumerAsync(client, streamARN,
 consumerARN, consumerName);

            if (success)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{consumerName} successfully deregistered.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{consumerName} was not successfully
 deregistered.");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Deregisters a consumer from a Kinesis stream.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Kinesis client object.</param>
        /// <param name="streamARN">The ARN of a Kinesis stream.</param>
        /// <param name="consumerARN">The ARN of the consumer.</param>
        /// <param name="consumerName">The name of the consumer.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value representing the success of the operation.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeregisterConsumerAsync(
            IAmazonKinesis client,
            string streamARN,
            string consumerARN,
            string consumerName)
        {
            var request = new DeregisterStreamConsumerRequest
            {
                StreamARN = streamARN,
                ConsumerARN = consumerARN,
                ConsumerName = consumerName,
            };

            var response = await client.DeregisterStreamConsumerAsync(request);

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see DeregisterStreamConsumer in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListStreamConsumers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListStreamConsumers`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Kinesis;
    using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// List the consumers of an Amazon Kinesis stream.
    /// </summary>
    public class ListConsumers
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();

            string streamARN = "arn:aws:kinesis:us-east-2:000000000000:stream/
AmazonKinesisStream";
            int maxResults = 10;

            var consumers = await ListConsumersAsync(client, streamARN, maxResults);

            if (consumers.Count > 0)
            {
```

```
                consumers
                    .ForEach(c => Console.WriteLine($"Name: {c.ConsumerName} ARN:
 {c.ConsumerARN}"));
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("No consumers found.");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve a list of the consumers for a Kinesis stream.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Kinesis client object.</param>
        /// <param name="streamARN">The ARN of the stream for which we want to
        /// retrieve a list of clients.</param>
        /// <param name="maxResults">The maximum number of results to return.</
param>
        /// <returns>A list of Consumer objects.</returns>
        public static async Task<List<Consumer>> ListConsumersAsync(IAmazonKinesis
 client, string streamARN, int maxResults)
        {
            var request = new ListStreamConsumersRequest
            {
                StreamARN = streamARN,
                MaxResults = maxResults,
            };

            var response = await client.ListStreamConsumersAsync(request);

            return response.Consumers;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListStreamConsumers in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListStreams`

The following code example shows how to use `ListStreams`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Kinesis;
using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Retrieves and displays a list of existing Amazon Kinesis streams.
/// </summary>
public class ListStreams
{
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();
        var response = await client.ListStreamsAsync(new ListStreamsRequest());

        List<string> streamNames = response.StreamNames;

        if (streamNames.Count > 0)
        {
            streamNames
                .ForEach(s => Console.WriteLine($"Stream name: {s}"));
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("No streams were found.");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListStreams in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListTagsForStream`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTagsForStream`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Kinesis;
    using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to list the tags that have been attached to an Amazon Kinesis
    /// stream.
    /// </summary>
    public class ListTags
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();
            string streamName = "AmazonKinesisStream";

            await ListTagsAsync(client, streamName);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// List the tags attached to a Kinesis stream.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Kinesis client object.</param>
        /// <param name="streamName">The name of the Kinesis stream for which you
        /// wish to display tags.</param>
        public static async Task ListTagsAsync(IAmazonKinesis client, string
streamName)
        {
            var request = new ListTagsForStreamRequest
            {
```

```
                StreamName = streamName,
                Limit = 10,
            };

            var response = await client.ListTagsForStreamAsync(request);
            DisplayTags(response.Tags);

            while (response.HasMoreTags)
            {
                request.ExclusiveStartTagKey = response.Tags[response.Tags.Count -
1].Key;
                response = await client.ListTagsForStreamAsync(request);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays the items in a list of Kinesis tags.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tags">A list of the Tag objects to be displayed.</param>
        public static void DisplayTags(List<Tag> tags)
        {
            tags
                .ForEach(t => Console.WriteLine($"Key: {t.Key} Value: {t.Value}"));
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`RegisterStreamConsumer`

The following code example shows how to use `RegisterStreamConsumer`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Kinesis;
    using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to register a consumer to an Amazon Kinesis
    /// stream.
    /// </summary>
    public class RegisterConsumer
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();
            string consumerName = "NEW_CONSUMER_NAME";
            string streamARN = "arn:aws:kinesis:us-east-2:000000000000:stream/
AmazonKinesisStream";

            var consumer = await RegisterConsumerAsync(client, consumerName,
 streamARN);

            if (consumer is not null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{consumer.ConsumerName}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Registers the consumer to a Kinesis stream.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Kinesis client object.</param>
        /// <param name="consumerName">A string representing the consumer.</param>
        /// <param name="streamARN">The ARN of the stream.</param>
        /// <returns>A Consumer object that contains information about the
 consumer.</returns>
        public static async Task<Consumer> RegisterConsumerAsync(IAmazonKinesis
 client, string consumerName, string streamARN)
        {
            var request = new RegisterStreamConsumerRequest
            {
                ConsumerName = consumerName,
                StreamARN = streamARN,
            };
```

```
            var response = await client.RegisterStreamConsumerAsync(request);
            return response.Consumer;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RegisterStreamConsumer in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a Kinesis stream. The function retrieves the Kinesis payload, decodes from Base64, and logs the record contents.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.KinesisEvents;
using AWS.Lambda.Powertools.Logging;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace KinesisIntegrationSampleCode;
```

```
public class Function
{
    // Powertools Logger requires an environment variables against your function
    // POWERTOOLS_SERVICE_NAME
    [Logging(LogEvent = true)]
    public async Task FunctionHandler(KinesisEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        if (evnt.Records.Count == 0)
        {
            Logger.LogInformation("Empty Kinesis Event received");
            return;
        }

        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                Logger.LogInformation($"Processed Event with EventId:
 {record.EventId}");
                string data = await GetRecordDataAsync(record.Kinesis, context);
                Logger.LogInformation($"Data: {data}");
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Logger.LogError($"An error occurred {ex.Message}");
                throw;
            }
        }
        Logger.LogInformation($"Successfully processed {evnt.Records.Count}
 records.");
    }

    private async Task<string> GetRecordDataAsync(KinesisEvent.Record record,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        byte[] bytes = record.Data.ToArray();
        string data = Encoding.UTF8.GetString(bytes);
        await Task.CompletedTask; //Placeholder for actual async work
        return data;
    }
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a Kinesis stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text;
using System.Text.Json.Serialization;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.KinesisEvents;
using AWS.Lambda.Powertools.Logging;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace KinesisIntegration;

public class Function
{
    // Powertools Logger requires an environment variables against your function
    // POWERTOOLS_SERVICE_NAME
    [Logging(LogEvent = true)]
    public async Task<StreamsEventResponse> FunctionHandler(KinesisEvent evnt,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        if (evnt.Records.Count == 0)
        {
            Logger.LogInformation("Empty Kinesis Event received");
```

```
            return new StreamsEventResponse();
        }

        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                Logger.LogInformation($"Processed Event with EventId:
{record.EventId}");
                string data = await GetRecordDataAsync(record.Kinesis, context);
                Logger.LogInformation($"Data: {data}");
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Logger.LogError($"An error occurred {ex.Message}");
                /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
immediately.
                   Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this
failed item onwards. */
                return new StreamsEventResponse
                {
                    BatchItemFailures = new
List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure>
                    {
                        new StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure { ItemIdentifier =
record.Kinesis.SequenceNumber }
                    }
                };
            }
        }
        Logger.LogInformation($"Successfully processed {evnt.Records.Count}
records.");
        return new StreamsEventResponse();
    }

    private async Task<string> GetRecordDataAsync(KinesisEvent.Record record,
ILambdaContext context)
    {
        byte[] bytes = record.Data.ToArray();
        string data = Encoding.UTF8.GetString(bytes);
        await Task.CompletedTask; //Placeholder for actual async work
        return data;
    }
```

```
}

public class StreamsEventResponse
{
    [JsonPropertyName("batchItemFailures")]
    public IList<BatchItemFailure> BatchItemFailures { get; set; }
    public class BatchItemFailure
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("itemIdentifier")]
        public string ItemIdentifier { get; set; }
    }
}
```

AWS KMS examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with AWS KMS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAlias`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Creates an alias for an AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key.
/// </summary>
public class CreateAlias
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();

        // The alias name must start with alias/ and can be
        // up to 256 alphanumeric characters long.
        var aliasName = "alias/ExampleAlias";

        // The value supplied as the TargetKeyId can be either
        // the key ID or key Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
        // AWS KMS key.
        var keyId = "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab";

        var request = new CreateAliasRequest
        {
            AliasName = aliasName,
            TargetKeyId = keyId,
        };

        var response = await client.CreateAliasAsync(request);

        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Alias, {aliasName}, successfully created.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Could not create alias.");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAlias in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateGrant`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateGrant`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();

            // The identity that is given permission to perform the operations
            // specified in the grant.
            var grantee = "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/ExampleRole";

            // The identifier of the AWS KMS key to which the grant applies. You
            // can use the key ID or the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the KMS key.
            var keyId = "7c9eccc2-38cb-4c4f-9db3-766ee8dd3ad4";

            var request = new CreateGrantRequest
            {
                GranteePrincipal = grantee,
                KeyId = keyId,

                // A list of operations that the grant allows.
                Operations = new List<string>
                {
                    "Encrypt",
                    "Decrypt",
                },
            };

            var response = await client.CreateGrantAsync(request);
```

```
            string grantId = response.GrantId; // The unique identifier of the
grant.
            string grantToken = response.GrantToken; // The grant token.

            Console.WriteLine($"Id: {grantId}, Token: {grantToken}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateGrant in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKey`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to create a new AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS)
/// key.
/// </summary>
public class CreateKey
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // Note that if you need to create a Key in an AWS Region
        // other than the Region defined for the default user, you need to
        // pass the Region to the client constructor.
        var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();
```

```
            // The call to CreateKeyAsync will create a symmetrical AWS KMS
            // key. For more information about symmetrical and asymmetrical
            // keys, see:
            //
            // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/kms/latest/developerguide/symm-asymm-
choose.html
            var response = await client.CreateKeyAsync(new CreateKeyRequest());

            // The KeyMetadata object contains information about the new AWS KMS
 key.
            KeyMetadata keyMetadata = response.KeyMetadata;

            if (keyMetadata is not null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"KMS Key: {keyMetadata.KeyId} was successfully
 created.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Could not create KMS Key.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKey in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeKey`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
```

```
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
    using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about an AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key.
    /// You can supply either the key Id or the key Amazon Resource Name (ARN)
    /// to the DescribeKeyRequest KeyId property.
    /// </summary>
    public class DescribeKey
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var keyId = "7c9eccc2-38cb-4c4f-9db3-766ee8dd3ad4";
            var request = new DescribeKeyRequest
            {
                KeyId = keyId,
            };

            var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();

            var response = await client.DescribeKeyAsync(request);
            var metadata = response.KeyMetadata;

            Console.WriteLine($"{metadata.KeyId} created on:
{metadata.CreationDate}");
            Console.WriteLine($"State: {metadata.KeyState}");
            Console.WriteLine($"{metadata.Description}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeKey in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DisableKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableKey`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Disable an AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key and then retrieve
/// the key's status to show that it has been disabled.
/// </summary>
public class DisableKey
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();

        // The identifier of the AWS KMS key to disable. You can use the
        // key Id or the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS KMS key.
        var keyId = "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab";

        var request = new DisableKeyRequest
        {
            KeyId = keyId,
        };

        var response = await client.DisableKeyAsync(request);

        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            // Retrieve information about the key to show that it has now
            // been disabled.
            var describeResponse = await client.DescribeKeyAsync(new
DescribeKeyRequest
            {
                KeyId = keyId,
```

```
                });
                Console.WriteLine($"{describeResponse.KeyMetadata.KeyId} - state:
{describeResponse.KeyMetadata.KeyState}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DisableKey in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`EnableKey`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableKey`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Enable an AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key.
/// </summary>
public class EnableKey
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();

        // The identifier of the AWS KMS key to enable. You can use the
        // key Id or the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS KMS key.
        var keyId = "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab";
```

```
            var request = new EnableKeyRequest
            {
                KeyId = keyId,
            };

            var response = await client.EnableKeyAsync(request);
            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                // Retrieve information about the key to show that it has now
                // been enabled.
                var describeResponse = await client.DescribeKeyAsync(new
DescribeKeyRequest
                {
                    KeyId = keyId,
                });
                Console.WriteLine($"{describeResponse.KeyMetadata.KeyId} - state:
{describeResponse.KeyMetadata.KeyState}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see EnableKey in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListAliases`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAliases`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;
```

```
   /// <summary>
   /// List the AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) aliases that have been defined
for
   /// the keys in the same AWS Region as the default user. If you want to list
   /// the aliases in a different Region, pass the Region to the client
   /// constructor.
   /// </summary>
   public class ListAliases
   {
       public static async Task Main()
       {
           var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();
           var request = new ListAliasesRequest();
           var response = new ListAliasesResponse();

           do
           {
               response = await client.ListAliasesAsync(request);

               response.Aliases.ForEach(alias =>
               {
                   Console.WriteLine($"Created: {alias.CreationDate} Last Update:
{alias.LastUpdatedDate} Name: {alias.AliasName}");
               });

               request.Marker = response.NextMarker;
           }
           while (response.Truncated);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see ListAliases in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListGrants`

The following code example shows how to use `ListGrants`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   using System;
   using System.Threading.Tasks;
   using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
   using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

   /// <summary>
   /// List the AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) grants that are associated
with
   /// a specific key.
   /// </summary>
   public class ListGrants
   {
       public static async Task Main()
       {
           // The identifier of the AWS KMS key to disable. You can use the
           // key Id or the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS KMS key.
           var keyId = "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab";
           var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();
           var request = new ListGrantsRequest
           {
               KeyId = keyId,
           };

           var response = new ListGrantsResponse();

           do
           {
               response = await client.ListGrantsAsync(request);

               response.Grants.ForEach(grant =>
               {
                   Console.WriteLine($"{grant.GrantId}");
               });
```

```
                request.Marker = response.NextMarker;
            }
            while (response.Truncated);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListGrants in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListKeys`

The following code example shows how to use `ListKeys`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

/// <summary>
/// List the AWS Key Managements Service (AWS KMS) keys for the AWS Region
/// of the default user. To list keys in another AWS Region, supply the Region
/// as a parameter to the client constructor.
/// </summary>
public class ListKeys
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();
        var request = new ListKeysRequest();
        var response = new ListKeysResponse();

        do
        {
```

```
                response = await client.ListKeysAsync(request);

                response.Keys.ForEach(key =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"ID: {key.KeyId}, {key.KeyArn}");
                });

                // Set the Marker property when response.Truncated is true
                // in order to get the next keys.
                request.Marker = response.NextMarker;
            }
            while (response.Truncated);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListKeys in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Lambda examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Lambda.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

AWS community contributions are examples that were created and are maintained by multiple teams across AWS. To provide feedback, use the mechanism provided in the linked repositories.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Get started
- Basics

- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples
- AWS community contributions

Get started

Hello Lambda

The following code example shows how to get started using Lambda.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace LambdaActions;

using Amazon.Lambda;

public class HelloLambda
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var lambdaClient = new AmazonLambdaClient();

        Console.WriteLine("Hello AWS Lambda");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's get started with AWS Lambda by listing your
 existing Lambda functions:");

        var response = await lambdaClient.ListFunctionsAsync();
        response.Functions.ForEach(function =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{function.FunctionName}\t{function.Description}");
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an IAM role and Lambda function, then upload handler code.
- Invoke the function with a single parameter and get results.
- Update the function code and configure with an environment variable.
- Invoke the function with new parameters and get results. Display the returned execution log.
- List the functions for your account, then clean up resources.

For more information, see Create a Lambda function with the console.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create methods that perform Lambda actions.

```
namespace LambdaActions;

using Amazon.Lambda;
using Amazon.Lambda.Model;

/// <summary>
/// A class that implements AWS Lambda methods.
/// </summary>
public class LambdaWrapper
{
```

```
    private readonly IAmazonLambda _lambdaService;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the LambdaWrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="lambdaService">An initialized Lambda service client.</param>
    public LambdaWrapper(IAmazonLambda lambdaService)
    {
        _lambdaService = lambdaService;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the function.</param>
    /// <param name="s3Bucket">The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
    /// bucket where the zip file containing the code is located.</param>
    /// <param name="s3Key">The Amazon S3 key of the zip file.</param>
    /// <param name="role">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role with the
    /// appropriate Lambda permissions.</param>
    /// <param name="handler">The name of the handler function.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the newly created
    /// Lambda function.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateLambdaFunctionAsync(
        string functionName,
        string s3Bucket,
        string s3Key,
        string role,
        string handler)
    {
        // Defines the location for the function code.
        // S3Bucket - The S3 bucket where the file containing
        //            the source code is stored.
        // S3Key    - The name of the file containing the code.
        var functionCode = new FunctionCode
        {
            S3Bucket = s3Bucket,
            S3Key = s3Key,
        };

        var createFunctionRequest = new CreateFunctionRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Description = "Created by the Lambda .NET API",
```

```
            Code = functionCode,
            Handler = handler,
            Runtime = Runtime.Dotnet6,
            Role = role,
        };

        var reponse = await
_lambdaService.CreateFunctionAsync(createFunctionRequest);
        return reponse.FunctionArn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an AWS Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function to
    /// delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteFunctionAsync(string functionName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteFunctionRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
        };

        var response = await _lambdaService.DeleteFunctionAsync(request);

        // A return value of NoContent means that the request was processed.
        // In this case, the function was deleted, and the return value
        // is intentionally blank.
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.NoContent;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Gets information about a Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function for
    /// which to retrieve information.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task<FunctionConfiguration> GetFunctionAsync(string functionName)
    {
        var functionRequest = new GetFunctionRequest
        {
```

```
            FunctionName = functionName,
        };

        var response = await _lambdaService.GetFunctionAsync(functionRequest);
        return response.Configuration;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Invoke a Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function to
    /// invoke.</param
    /// <param name="parameters">The parameter values that will be passed to the
function.</param>
    /// <returns>A System Threading Task.</returns>
    public async Task<string> InvokeFunctionAsync(
        string functionName,
        string parameters)
    {
        var payload = parameters;
        var request = new InvokeRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Payload = payload,
        };

        var response = await _lambdaService.InvokeAsync(request);
        MemoryStream stream = response.Payload;
        string returnValue = System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetString(stream.ToArray());
        return returnValue;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of Lambda functions.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of FunctionConfiguration objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<FunctionConfiguration>> ListFunctionsAsync()
    {
        var functionList = new List<FunctionConfiguration>();

        var functionPaginator =
            _lambdaService.Paginators.ListFunctions(new ListFunctionsRequest());
```

```
        await foreach (var function in functionPaginator.Functions)
        {
            functionList.Add(function);
        }

        return functionList;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Update an existing Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function to update.</
param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket where the zip file containing
    /// the Lambda function code is stored.</param>
    /// <param name="key">The key name of the source code file.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task UpdateFunctionCodeAsync(
        string functionName,
        string bucketName,
        string key)
    {
        var functionCodeRequest = new UpdateFunctionCodeRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Publish = true,
            S3Bucket = bucketName,
            S3Key = key,
        };

        var response = await
 _lambdaService.UpdateFunctionCodeAsync(functionCodeRequest);
        Console.WriteLine($"The Function was last modified at
 {response.LastModified}.");
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Update the code of a Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the function to update.</param>
    /// <param name="functionHandler">The code that performs the function's
 actions.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="environmentVariables">A dictionary of environment variables.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> UpdateFunctionConfigurationAsync(
        string functionName,
        string functionHandler,
        Dictionary<string, string> environmentVariables)
    {
        var request = new UpdateFunctionConfigurationRequest
        {
            Handler = functionHandler,
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Environment = new Amazon.Lambda.Model.Environment { Variables =
 environmentVariables },
        };

        var response = await
 _lambdaService.UpdateFunctionConfigurationAsync(request);

        Console.WriteLine(response.LastModified);

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


}
```

Create a function that runs the scenario.

```
global using System.Threading.Tasks;
global using Amazon.IdentityManagement;
global using Amazon.Lambda;
global using LambdaActions;
global using LambdaScenarioCommon;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;
```

```
using Amazon.Lambda.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;

namespace LambdaBasics;

public class LambdaBasics
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonLambda>()
            .AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
            .AddTransient<LambdaWrapper>()
            .AddTransient<LambdaRoleWrapper>()
            .AddTransient<UIWrapper>()
        )
        .Build();

        var configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
            true) // Optionally load local settings.
        .Build();


        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<LambdaBasics>();

        var lambdaWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<LambdaWrapper>();
        var lambdaRoleWrapper =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<LambdaRoleWrapper>();
        var uiWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<UIWrapper>();

        string functionName = configuration["FunctionName"]!;
```

```
        string roleName = configuration["RoleName"]!;
        string policyDocument = "{" +
            " \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
            " \"Statement\": [ " +
            "    {" +
            "        \"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
            "        \"Principal\": {" +
            "            \"Service\": \"lambda.amazonaws.com\" " +
            "    }," +
            "        \"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\" " +
            "    }" +
            "]" +
        "}";

        var incrementHandler = configuration["IncrementHandler"];
        var calculatorHandler = configuration["CalculatorHandler"];
        var bucketName = configuration["BucketName"];
        var incrementKey = configuration["IncrementKey"];
        var calculatorKey = configuration["CalculatorKey"];
        var policyArn = configuration["PolicyArn"];

        uiWrapper.DisplayLambdaBasicsOverview();

        // Create the policy to use with the AWS Lambda functions and then attach
the
        // policy to a new role.
        var roleArn = await lambdaRoleWrapper.CreateLambdaRoleAsync(roleName,
policyDocument);

        Console.WriteLine("Waiting for role to become active.");
        uiWrapper.WaitABit(15, "Wait until the role is active before trying to use
it.");

        // Attach the appropriate AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role
policy to the new role.
        var success = await lambdaRoleWrapper.AttachLambdaRolePolicyAsync(policyArn,
roleName);
        uiWrapper.WaitABit(10, "Allow time for the IAM policy to be attached to the
role.");

        // Create the Lambda function using a zip file stored in an Amazon Simple
Storage Service
        // (Amazon S3) bucket.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Create Lambda Function");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating the AWS Lambda function: {functionName}.");
        var lambdaArn = await lambdaWrapper.CreateLambdaFunctionAsync(
            functionName,
            bucketName,
            incrementKey,
            roleArn,
            incrementHandler);

        Console.WriteLine("Waiting for the new function to be available.");
        Console.WriteLine($"The AWS Lambda ARN is {lambdaArn}");

        // Get the Lambda function.
        Console.WriteLine($"Getting the {functionName} AWS Lambda function.");
        FunctionConfiguration config;
        do
        {
            config = await lambdaWrapper.GetFunctionAsync(functionName);
            Console.Write(".");
        }
        while (config.State != State.Active);

        Console.WriteLine($"\nThe function, {functionName} has been created.");
        Console.WriteLine($"The runtime of this Lambda function is
{config.Runtime}.");

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        // List the Lambda functions.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Listing all Lambda functions.");
        var functions = await lambdaWrapper.ListFunctionsAsync();
        DisplayFunctionList(functions);

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Invoke increment function");
        Console.WriteLine("Now that it has been created, invoke the Lambda increment
function.");
        string? value;
        do
        {
            Console.Write("Enter a value to increment: ");
            value = Console.ReadLine();
        }
        while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(value));

        string functionParameters = "{" +
```

```
            "\"action\": \"increment\", " +
            "\"x\": \"" + value + "\"" +
        "}";
        var answer = await lambdaWrapper.InvokeFunctionAsync(functionName,
functionParameters);
        Console.WriteLine($"{value} + 1 = {answer}.");

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Update function");
        Console.WriteLine("Now update the Lambda function code.");
        await lambdaWrapper.UpdateFunctionCodeAsync(functionName, bucketName,
calculatorKey);

        do
        {
            config = await lambdaWrapper.GetFunctionAsync(functionName);
            Console.Write(".");
        }
        while (config.LastUpdateStatus == LastUpdateStatus.InProgress);

        await lambdaWrapper.UpdateFunctionConfigurationAsync(
            functionName,
            calculatorHandler,
            new Dictionary<string, string> { { "LOG_LEVEL", "DEBUG" } });

        do
        {
            config = await lambdaWrapper.GetFunctionAsync(functionName);
            Console.Write(".");
        }
        while (config.LastUpdateStatus == LastUpdateStatus.InProgress);

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Call updated function");
        Console.WriteLine("Now call the updated function...");

        bool done = false;

        do
        {
            string? opSelected;

            Console.WriteLine("Select the operation to perform:");
            Console.WriteLine("\t1. add");
            Console.WriteLine("\t2. subtract");
            Console.WriteLine("\t3. multiply");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("\t4. divide");
            Console.WriteLine("\tOr enter \"q\" to quit.");
            Console.WriteLine("Enter the number (1, 2, 3, 4, or q) of the operation
you want to perform: ");
            do
            {
                Console.Write("Your choice? ");
                opSelected = Console.ReadLine();
            }
            while (opSelected == string.Empty);

            var operation = (opSelected) switch
            {
                "1" => "add",
                "2" => "subtract",
                "3" => "multiply",
                "4" => "divide",
                "q" => "quit",
                _ => "add",
            };

            if (operation == "quit")
            {
                done = true;
            }
            else
            {
                // Get two numbers and an action from the user.
                value = string.Empty;
                do
                {
                    Console.Write("Enter the first value: ");
                    value = Console.ReadLine();
                }
                while (value == string.Empty);

                string? value2;
                do
                {
                    Console.Write("Enter a second value: ");
                    value2 = Console.ReadLine();
                }
                while (value2 == string.Empty);
```

```
                functionParameters = "{" +
                    "\"action\": \"" + operation + "\", " +
                    "\"x\": \"" + value + "\"," +
                    "\"y\": \"" + value2 + "\"" +
                "}";

                answer = await lambdaWrapper.InvokeFunctionAsync(functionName,
functionParameters);
                Console.WriteLine($"The answer when we {operation} the two numbers
is: {answer}.");
            }

            uiWrapper.PressEnter();
        } while (!done);

        // Delete the function created earlier.

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Clean up resources");
        // Detach the IAM policy from the IAM role.
        Console.WriteLine("First detach the IAM policy from the role.");
        success = await lambdaRoleWrapper.DetachLambdaRolePolicyAsync(policyArn,
roleName);
        uiWrapper.WaitABit(15, "Let's wait for the policy to be fully detached from
the role.");

        Console.WriteLine("Delete the AWS Lambda function.");
        success = await lambdaWrapper.DeleteFunctionAsync(functionName);
        if (success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The {functionName} function was deleted.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Could not remove the function {functionName}");
        }

        // Now delete the IAM role created for use with the functions
        // created by the application.
        Console.WriteLine("Now we can delete the role that we created.");
        success = await lambdaRoleWrapper.DeleteLambdaRoleAsync(roleName);
        if (success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The role has been successfully removed.");
        }
```

```
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Couldn't delete the role.");
        }

        Console.WriteLine("The Lambda Scenario is now complete.");
        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        // Displays a formatted list of existing functions returned by the
        // LambdaMethods.ListFunctions.
        void DisplayFunctionList(List<FunctionConfiguration> functions)
        {
            functions.ForEach(functionConfig =>
            {

 Console.WriteLine($"{functionConfig.FunctionName}\t{functionConfig.Description}");
            });
        }
    }
}


namespace LambdaActions;

using Amazon.IdentityManagement;
using Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model;

public class LambdaRoleWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonIdentityManagementService _lambdaRoleService;

    public LambdaRoleWrapper(IAmazonIdentityManagementService lambdaRoleService)
    {
        _lambdaRoleService = lambdaRoleService;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Attach an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role policy to the
    /// IAM role to be assumed by the AWS Lambda functions created for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the IAM policy.</
param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to attach the IAM policy
 to.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AttachLambdaRolePolicyAsync(string policyArn, string
 roleName)
    {
        var response = await _lambdaRoleService.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
 AttachRolePolicyRequest { PolicyArn = policyArn, RoleName = roleName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to create.</param>
    /// <param name="policyDocument">The policy document for the new IAM role.</
param>
    /// <returns>A string representing the ARN for newly created role.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateLambdaRoleAsync(string roleName, string
 policyDocument)
    {
        var request = new CreateRoleRequest
        {
            AssumeRolePolicyDocument = policyDocument,
            RoleName = roleName,
        };

        var response = await _lambdaRoleService.CreateRoleAsync(request);
        return response.Role.Arn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteLambdaRoleAsync(string roleName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteRoleRequest
        {
            RoleName = roleName,
        };

        var response = await _lambdaRoleService.DeleteRoleAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

```
    public async Task<bool> DetachLambdaRolePolicyAsync(string policyArn, string
 roleName)
    {
        var response = await _lambdaRoleService.DetachRolePolicyAsync(new
 DetachRolePolicyRequest { PolicyArn = policyArn, RoleName = roleName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
}


namespace LambdaScenarioCommon;

public class UIWrapper
{
    public readonly string SepBar = new('-', Console.WindowWidth);

    /// <summary>
    /// Show information about the AWS Lambda Basics scenario.
    /// </summary>
    public void DisplayLambdaBasicsOverview()
    {
        Console.Clear();

        DisplayTitle("Welcome to AWS Lambda Basics");
        Console.WriteLine("This example application does the following:");
        Console.WriteLine("\t1. Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
 role that will be assumed by the functions we create.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t2. Attaches an IAM role policy that has Lambda
 permissions.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t3. Creates a Lambda function that increments the value
 passed to it.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t4. Calls the increment function and passes a value.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t5. Updates the code so that the function is a simple
 calculator.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t6. Calls the calculator function with the values
 entered.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t7. Deletes the Lambda function.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t7. Detaches the IAM role policy.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t8. Deletes the IAM role.");
        PressEnter();
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Display a message and wait until the user presses enter.
    /// </summary>
    public void PressEnter()
    {
        Console.Write("\nPress <Enter> to continue. ");
        _ = Console.ReadLine();
        Console.WriteLine();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Pad a string with spaces to center it on the console display.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strToCenter">The string to be centered.</param>
    /// <returns>The padded string.</returns>
    public string CenterString(string strToCenter)
    {
        var padAmount = (Console.WindowWidth - strToCenter.Length) / 2;
        var leftPad = new string(' ', padAmount);
        return $"{leftPad}{strToCenter}";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a line of hyphens, the centered text of the title and another
    /// line of hyphens.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strTitle">The string to be displayed.</param>
    public void DisplayTitle(string strTitle)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
        Console.WriteLine(CenterString(strTitle));
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a countdown and wait for a number of seconds.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="numSeconds">The number of seconds to wait.</param>
    public void WaitABit(int numSeconds, string msg)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(msg);

        // Wait for the requested number of seconds.
        for (int i = numSeconds; i > 0; i--)
        {
```

```
            System.Threading.Thread.Sleep(1000);
            Console.Write($"{i}...");
        }

        PressEnter();
    }
}
```

Define a Lambda handler that increments a number.

```
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace LambdaIncrement;

public class Function
{

    /// <summary>
    /// A simple function increments the integer parameter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="input">A JSON string containing an action, which must be
    /// "increment" and a string representing the value to increment.</param>
    /// <param name="context">The context object passed by Lambda containing
    /// information about invocation, function, and execution environment.</param>
    /// <returns>A string representing the incremented value of the parameter.</
returns>
    public int FunctionHandler(Dictionary<string, string> input, ILambdaContext
 context)
    {
        if (input["action"] == "increment")
        {
            int inputValue = Convert.ToInt32(input["x"]);
            return inputValue + 1;
        }
        else
        {
```

```
            return 0;
        }
    }
}
```

Define a second Lambda handler that performs arithmetic operations.

```
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace LambdaCalculator;

public class Function
{

    /// <summary>
    /// A simple function that takes two number in string format and performs
    /// the requested arithmetic function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="input">JSON data containing an action, and x and y values.
    /// Valid actions include: add, subtract, multiply, and divide.</param>
    /// <param name="context">The context object passed by Lambda containing
    /// information about invocation, function, and execution environment.</param>
    /// <returns>A string representing the results of the calculation.</returns>
    public int FunctionHandler(Dictionary<string, string> input, ILambdaContext
 context)
    {
        var action = input["action"];
        int x = Convert.ToInt32(input["x"]);
        int y = Convert.ToInt32(input["y"]);
        int result;
        switch (action)
        {
            case "add":
                result = x + y;
                break;
            case "subtract":
```

```
                result = x - y;
                break;
            case "multiply":
                result = x * y;
                break;
            case "divide":
                if (y == 0)
                {
                    Console.Error.WriteLine("Divide by zero error.");
                    result = 0;
                }
                else
                    result = x / y;
                break;
            default:
                Console.Error.WriteLine($"{action} is not a valid operation.");
                result = 0;
                break;
        }
        return result;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode
  - UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Actions

`CreateFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFunction`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Creates a new Lambda function.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="functionName">The name of the function.</param>
/// <param name="s3Bucket">The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
/// bucket where the zip file containing the code is located.</param>
/// <param name="s3Key">The Amazon S3 key of the zip file.</param>
/// <param name="role">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role with the
/// appropriate Lambda permissions.</param>
/// <param name="handler">The name of the handler function.</param>
/// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the newly created
/// Lambda function.</returns>
public async Task<string> CreateLambdaFunctionAsync(
    string functionName,
    string s3Bucket,
    string s3Key,
    string role,
    string handler)
{
    // Defines the location for the function code.
    // S3Bucket - The S3 bucket where the file containing
    //            the source code is stored.
    // S3Key    - The name of the file containing the code.
    var functionCode = new FunctionCode
    {
        S3Bucket = s3Bucket,
        S3Key = s3Key,
    };

    var createFunctionRequest = new CreateFunctionRequest
    {
        FunctionName = functionName,
        Description = "Created by the Lambda .NET API",
        Code = functionCode,
```

```
            Handler = handler,
            Runtime = Runtime.Dotnet6,
            Role = role,
        };

        var reponse = await
_lambdaService.CreateFunctionAsync(createFunctionRequest);
        return reponse.FunctionArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFunction`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an AWS Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function to
    /// delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteFunctionAsync(string functionName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteFunctionRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
        };

        var response = await _lambdaService.DeleteFunctionAsync(request);

        // A return value of NoContent means that the request was processed.
```

```
        // In this case, the function was deleted, and the return value
        // is intentionally blank.
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.NoContent;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `GetFunction`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Gets information about a Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function for
    /// which to retrieve information.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task<FunctionConfiguration> GetFunctionAsync(string functionName)
    {
        var functionRequest = new GetFunctionRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
        };

        var response = await _lambdaService.GetFunctionAsync(functionRequest);
        return response.Configuration;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Invoke

The following code example shows how to use `Invoke`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Invoke a Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function to
    /// invoke.</param
    /// <param name="parameters">The parameter values that will be passed to the
function.</param>
    /// <returns>A System Threading Task.</returns>
    public async Task<string> InvokeFunctionAsync(
        string functionName,
        string parameters)
    {
        var payload = parameters;
        var request = new InvokeRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Payload = payload,
        };

        var response = await _lambdaService.InvokeAsync(request);
        MemoryStream stream = response.Payload;
        string returnValue = System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetString(stream.ToArray());
        return returnValue;
    }
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListFunctions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFunctions`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Get a list of Lambda functions.
/// </summary>
/// <returns>A list of FunctionConfiguration objects.</returns>
public async Task<List<FunctionConfiguration>> ListFunctionsAsync()
{
    var functionList = new List<FunctionConfiguration>();

    var functionPaginator =
        _lambdaService.Paginators.ListFunctions(new ListFunctionsRequest());
    await foreach (var function in functionPaginator.Functions)
    {
        functionList.Add(function);
    }

    return functionList;
}
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`UpdateFunctionCode`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFunctionCode`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update an existing Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function to update.</
param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket where the zip file containing
    /// the Lambda function code is stored.</param>
    /// <param name="key">The key name of the source code file.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task UpdateFunctionCodeAsync(
        string functionName,
        string bucketName,
        string key)
    {
        var functionCodeRequest = new UpdateFunctionCodeRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Publish = true,
            S3Bucket = bucketName,
            S3Key = key,
        };

        var response = await
 _lambdaService.UpdateFunctionCodeAsync(functionCodeRequest);
        Console.WriteLine($"The Function was last modified at
 {response.LastModified}.");
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

UpdateFunctionConfiguration

The following code example shows how to use UpdateFunctionConfiguration.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update the code of a Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the function to update.</param>
    /// <param name="functionHandler">The code that performs the function's
 actions.</param>
    /// <param name="environmentVariables">A dictionary of environment variables.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> UpdateFunctionConfigurationAsync(
        string functionName,
        string functionHandler,
        Dictionary<string, string> environmentVariables)
    {
        var request = new UpdateFunctionConfigurationRequest
        {
            Handler = functionHandler,
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Environment = new Amazon.Lambda.Model.Environment { Variables =
 environmentVariables },
        };

        var response = await
 _lambdaService.UpdateFunctionConfigurationAsync(request);

        Console.WriteLine(response.LastModified);

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for .NET

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various

languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Transform data with S3 Object Lambda

The following code example shows how to transform data for your application with S3 Object Lambda.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to add custom code to standard S3 GET requests to modify the requested object retrieved from S3 so that the object suit the needs of the requesting client or application.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Lambda
- Amazon S3

Serverless examples

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that connects to an RDS database. The function makes a simple database request and returns the result.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using .NET.

```
using System.Data;
using System.Text.Json;
using Amazon.Lambda.APIGatewayEvents;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using MySql.Data.MySqlClient;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace aws_rds;

public class InputModel
{
    public string key1 { get; set; }
    public string key2 { get; set; }
}

public class Function
{
    /// <summary>
    // Handles the Lambda function execution for connecting to RDS using IAM
 authentication.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="input">The input event data passed to the Lambda function</
param>
    /// <param name="context">The Lambda execution context that provides runtime
 information</param>
    /// <returns>A response object containing the execution result</returns>

    public async Task<APIGatewayProxyResponse>
 FunctionHandler(APIGatewayProxyRequest request, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        // Sample Input: {"body": "{\"key1\":\"20\", \"key2\":\"25\"}"}
        var input = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<InputModel>(request.Body);

        /// Obtain authentication token
        var authToken = RDSAuthTokenGenerator.GenerateAuthToken(
            Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_ENDPOINT"),
            Convert.ToInt32(Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_PORT")),
            Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_USERNAME")
        );

        /// Build the Connection String with the Token
        string connectionString =
 $"Server={Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_ENDPOINT")};" +

 $"Port={Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_PORT")};" +

 $"Uid={Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_USERNAME")};" +
                                 $"Pwd={authToken};";


        try
        {
            await using var connection = new MySqlConnection(connectionString);
            await connection.OpenAsync();

            const string sql = "SELECT @param1 + @param2 AS Sum";

            await using var command = new MySqlCommand(sql, connection);
            command.Parameters.AddWithValue("@param1", int.Parse(input.key1 ??
 "0"));
            command.Parameters.AddWithValue("@param2", int.Parse(input.key2 ??
 "0"));

            await using var reader = await command.ExecuteReaderAsync();
            if (await reader.ReadAsync())
```

```
            {
                int result = reader.GetInt32("Sum");

                //Sample Response: {"statusCode":200,"body":"{\"message\":\"The sum
 is: 45\"}","isBase64Encoded":false}
                return new APIGatewayProxyResponse
                {
                    StatusCode = 200,
                    Body = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new { message = $"The sum is:
 {result}" })
                };
            }

        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
        }

        return new APIGatewayProxyResponse
        {
            StatusCode = 500,
            Body = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new { error = "Internal server error" })
        };
    }
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a Kinesis stream. The function retrieves the Kinesis payload, decodes from Base64, and logs the record contents.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.KinesisEvents;
using AWS.Lambda.Powertools.Logging;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace KinesisIntegrationSampleCode;

public class Function
{
    // Powertools Logger requires an environment variables against your function
    // POWERTOOLS_SERVICE_NAME
    [Logging(LogEvent = true)]
    public async Task FunctionHandler(KinesisEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        if (evnt.Records.Count == 0)
        {
            Logger.LogInformation("Empty Kinesis Event received");
            return;
        }

        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                Logger.LogInformation($"Processed Event with EventId:
 {record.EventId}");
                string data = await GetRecordDataAsync(record.Kinesis, context);
                Logger.LogInformation($"Data: {data}");
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Logger.LogError($"An error occurred {ex.Message}");
                throw;
            }
```

```
        }
        Logger.LogInformation($"Successfully processed {evnt.Records.Count}
 records.");
    }

    private async Task<string> GetRecordDataAsync(KinesisEvent.Record record,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        byte[] bytes = record.Data.ToArray();
        string data = Encoding.UTF8.GetString(bytes);
        await Task.CompletedTask; //Placeholder for actual async work
        return data;
    }
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DynamoDB stream. The function retrieves the DynamoDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.DynamoDBEvents;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
```

```
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace AWSLambda_DDB;

public class Function
{
    public void FunctionHandler(DynamoDBEvent dynamoEvent, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Beginning to process
 {dynamoEvent.Records.Count} records...");

        foreach (var record in dynamoEvent.Records)
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Event ID: {record.EventID}");
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Event Name: {record.EventName}");

            context.Logger.LogInformation(JsonSerializer.Serialize(record));
        }

        context.Logger.LogInformation("Stream processing complete.");
    }
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DocumentDB change stream. The function retrieves the DocumentDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using .NET.

```
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using System.Text.Json;
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Text.Json.Serialization;
//Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted into
 a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace LambdaDocDb;

public class Function
{

     /// <summary>
    /// Lambda function entry point to process Amazon DocumentDB events.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="event">The Amazon DocumentDB event.</param>
    /// <param name="context">The Lambda context object.</param>
    /// <returns>A string to indicate successful processing.</returns>
    public string FunctionHandler(Event evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {

        foreach (var record in evnt.Events)
        {
            ProcessDocumentDBEvent(record, context);
        }

        return "OK";
    }

     private void ProcessDocumentDBEvent(DocumentDBEventRecord record,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {

        var eventData = record.Event;
        var operationType = eventData.OperationType;
        var databaseName = eventData.Ns.Db;
        var collectionName = eventData.Ns.Coll;
        var fullDocument = JsonSerializer.Serialize(eventData.FullDocument, new
 JsonSerializerOptions { WriteIndented = true });
```

```
        context.Logger.LogLine($"Operation type: {operationType}");
        context.Logger.LogLine($"Database: {databaseName}");
        context.Logger.LogLine($"Collection: {collectionName}");
        context.Logger.LogLine($"Full document:\n{fullDocument}");
    }



    public class Event
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("eventSourceArn")]
        public string EventSourceArn { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("events")]
        public List<DocumentDBEventRecord> Events { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("eventSource")]
        public string EventSource { get; set; }
    }

    public class DocumentDBEventRecord
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("event")]
        public EventData Event { get; set; }
    }

    public class EventData
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("_id")]
        public IdData Id { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("clusterTime")]
        public ClusterTime ClusterTime { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("documentKey")]
        public DocumentKey DocumentKey { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("fullDocument")]
        public Dictionary<string, object> FullDocument { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("ns")]
        public Namespace Ns { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("operationType")]
```

```
        public string OperationType { get; set; }
    }

    public class IdData
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("_data")]
        public string Data { get; set; }
    }

    public class ClusterTime
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("$timestamp")]
        public Timestamp Timestamp { get; set; }
    }

    public class Timestamp
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("t")]
        public long T { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("i")]
        public int I { get; set; }
    }

    public class DocumentKey
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("_id")]
        public Id Id { get; set; }
    }

    public class Id
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("$oid")]
        public string Oid { get; set; }
    }

    public class Namespace
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("db")]
        public string Db { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("coll")]
        public string Coll { get; set; }
    }
```

```
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from an Amazon MSK cluster. The function retrieves the MSK payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using .NET.

```
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.KafkaEvents;


// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace MSKLambda;

public class Function
{


    /// <param name="input">The event for the Lambda function handler to process.</
param>
    /// <param name="context">The ILambdaContext that provides methods for logging
 and describing the Lambda environment.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    public void FunctionHandler(KafkaEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
```

```
    {

        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Key:" + record.Key);
            foreach (var eventRecord in record.Value)
            {
                var valueBytes = eventRecord.Value.ToArray();
                var valueText = Encoding.UTF8.GetString(valueBytes);

                Console.WriteLine("Message:" + valueText);
            }
        }
    }


}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by uploading an object to an S3 bucket. The function retrieves the S3 bucket name and object key from the event parameter and calls the Amazon S3 API to retrieve and log the content type of the object.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.S3;
```

```
using System;
using Amazon.Lambda.S3Events;
using System.Web;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace S3Integration
{
    public class Function
    {
        private static AmazonS3Client _s3Client;
        public Function() : this(null)
        {
        }

        internal Function(AmazonS3Client s3Client)
        {
            _s3Client = s3Client ?? new AmazonS3Client();
        }

        public async Task<string> Handler(S3Event evt, ILambdaContext context)
        {
            try
            {
                if (evt.Records.Count <= 0)
                {
                    context.Logger.LogLine("Empty S3 Event received");
                    return string.Empty;
                }

                var bucket = evt.Records[0].S3.Bucket.Name;
                var key = HttpUtility.UrlDecode(evt.Records[0].S3.Object.Key);

                context.Logger.LogLine($"Request is for {bucket} and {key}");

                var objectResult = await _s3Client.GetObjectAsync(bucket, key);

                context.Logger.LogLine($"Returning {objectResult.Key}");

                return objectResult.Key;
            }
```

```
            catch (Exception e)
            {
                context.Logger.LogLine($"Error processing request - {e.Message}");

                return string.Empty;
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SNS topic. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.SNSEvents;


// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace SnsIntegration;

public class Function
{
```

```
    public async Task FunctionHandler(SNSEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            await ProcessRecordAsync(record, context);
        }
        context.Logger.LogInformation("done");
    }

    private async Task ProcessRecordAsync(SNSEvent.SNSRecord record, ILambdaContext
 context)
    {
        try
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Processed record {record.Sns.Message}");

            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
            await Task.CompletedTask;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            //You can use Dead Letter Queue to handle failures. By configuring a
 Lambda DLQ.
            context.Logger.LogError($"An error occurred");
            throw;
        }
    }
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SQS queue. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.SQSEvents;


// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace SqsIntegrationSampleCode
{
    public async Task FunctionHandler(SQSEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        foreach (var message in evnt.Records)
        {
            await ProcessMessageAsync(message, context);
        }

        context.Logger.LogInformation("done");
    }

    private async Task ProcessMessageAsync(SQSEvent.SQSMessage message,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        try
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Processed message {message.Body}");

            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
            await Task.CompletedTask;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            //You can use Dead Letter Queue to handle failures. By configuring a
 Lambda DLQ.
            context.Logger.LogError($"An error occurred");
            throw;
        }

    }
```

```
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a Kinesis stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text;
using System.Text.Json.Serialization;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.KinesisEvents;
using AWS.Lambda.Powertools.Logging;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace KinesisIntegration;

public class Function
{
    // Powertools Logger requires an environment variables against your function
    // POWERTOOLS_SERVICE_NAME
    [Logging(LogEvent = true)]
    public async Task<StreamsEventResponse> FunctionHandler(KinesisEvent evnt,
 ILambdaContext context)
```

```
    {
        if (evnt.Records.Count == 0)
        {
            Logger.LogInformation("Empty Kinesis Event received");
            return new StreamsEventResponse();
        }

        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                Logger.LogInformation($"Processed Event with EventId:
{record.EventId}");
                string data = await GetRecordDataAsync(record.Kinesis, context);
                Logger.LogInformation($"Data: {data}");
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Logger.LogError($"An error occurred {ex.Message}");
                /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
immediately.
                   Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this
failed item onwards. */
                return new StreamsEventResponse
                {
                    BatchItemFailures = new
List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure>
                    {
                        new StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure { ItemIdentifier =
record.Kinesis.SequenceNumber }
                    }
                };
            }
        }
        Logger.LogInformation($"Successfully processed {evnt.Records.Count}
records.");
        return new StreamsEventResponse();
    }

    private async Task<string> GetRecordDataAsync(KinesisEvent.Record record,
ILambdaContext context)
    {
        byte[] bytes = record.Data.ToArray();
```

```
        string data = Encoding.UTF8.GetString(bytes);
        await Task.CompletedTask; //Placeholder for actual async work
        return data;
    }
}

public class StreamsEventResponse
{
    [JsonPropertyName("batchItemFailures")]
    public IList<BatchItemFailure> BatchItemFailures { get; set; }
    public class BatchItemFailure
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("itemIdentifier")]
        public string ItemIdentifier { get; set; }
    }
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a DynamoDB stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.DynamoDBEvents;
```

```
// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace AWSLambda_DDB;

public class Function
{
    public StreamsEventResponse FunctionHandler(DynamoDBEvent dynamoEvent,
 ILambdaContext context)

    {
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Beginning to process
 {dynamoEvent.Records.Count} records...");
        List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure>();
        StreamsEventResponse streamsEventResponse = new StreamsEventResponse();

        foreach (var record in dynamoEvent.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                var sequenceNumber = record.Dynamodb.SequenceNumber;
                context.Logger.LogInformation(sequenceNumber);
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                context.Logger.LogError(ex.Message);
                batchItemFailures.Add(new StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure()
 { ItemIdentifier = record.Dynamodb.SequenceNumber });
            }
        }

        if (batchItemFailures.Count > 0)
        {
            streamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailures = batchItemFailures;
        }

        context.Logger.LogInformation("Stream processing complete.");
        return streamsEventResponse;
    }
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from an SQS queue. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.SQSEvents;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali
namespace sqsSample;

public class Function
{
    public async Task<SQSBatchResponse> FunctionHandler(SQSEvent evnt,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        List<SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 List<SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure>();
        foreach(var message in evnt.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                //process your message
                await ProcessMessageAsync(message, context);
            }
            catch (System.Exception)
```

```
            {
                //Add failed message identifier to the batchItemFailures list
                batchItemFailures.Add(new
 SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure{ItemIdentifier=message.MessageId});
            }
        }
        return new SQSBatchResponse(batchItemFailures);
    }

    private async Task ProcessMessageAsync(SQSEvent.SQSMessage message,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        if (String.IsNullOrEmpty(message.Body))
        {
            throw new Exception("No Body in SQS Message.");
        }
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Processed message {message.Body}");
        // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
        await Task.CompletedTask;
    }
}
```

AWS community contributions

Build and test a serverless application

The following code example shows how to build and test a serverless application using API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB

SDK for .NET

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the .NET SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

MediaConvert examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with MediaConvert.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Get started
- Actions

Get started

Hello MediaConvert

The following code example shows how to get started using AWS Elemental MediaConvert.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.MediaConvert;
using Amazon.MediaConvert.Model;

namespace MediaConvertActions;

public static class HelloMediaConvert
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Create the client using the default profile.
        var mediaConvertClient = new AmazonMediaConvertClient();
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"Hello AWS Elemental MediaConvert! Your MediaConvert Jobs
are:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get some MediaConvert jobs.
        var response = await mediaConvertClient.ListJobsAsync(
            new ListJobsRequest()
            {
                MaxResults = 10
            }
            );

        foreach (var job in response.Jobs)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tJob: {job.Id} status {job.Status}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEndpoints in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Actions

`CreateJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set up the file locations, client, and wrapper.

```
        // MediaConvert role Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
        // For information on creating this role, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/mediaconvert/latest/ug/creating-the-iam-role-
in-mediaconvert-configured.html.
        var mediaConvertRole = _configuration["mediaConvertRoleARN"];

        // Include the file input and output locations in settings.json or
 settings.local.json.
        var fileInput = _configuration["fileInput"];
        var fileOutput = _configuration["fileOutput"];

        AmazonMediaConvertClient mcClient = new AmazonMediaConvertClient();

        var wrapper = new MediaConvertWrapper(mcClient);
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating job for input file {fileInput}.");
        var jobId = await wrapper.CreateJob(mediaConvertRole!, fileInput!,
 fileOutput!);
        Console.WriteLine($"Created job with Job ID: {jobId}");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

Create the job using the wrapper method and return the job ID.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a job to convert a media file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="mediaConvertRole">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the media
 convert role, as specified here:
    /// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/mediaconvert/latest/ug/creating-the-iam-role-in-
mediaconvert-configured.html</param>
    /// <param name="fileInput">The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 location of the input media file.</param>
    /// <param name="fileOutput">The Amazon S3 location for the output media file.</
param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the new job.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateJob(string mediaConvertRole, string fileInput,
        string fileOutput)
    {
        CreateJobRequest createJobRequest = new CreateJobRequest
```

```
        {
            Role = mediaConvertRole
        };

        createJobRequest.UserMetadata.Add("Customer", "Amazon");

        JobSettings jobSettings = new JobSettings
        {
            AdAvailOffset = 0,
            TimecodeConfig = new TimecodeConfig
            {
                Source = TimecodeSource.EMBEDDED
            }
        };
        createJobRequest.Settings = jobSettings;

        #region OutputGroup

        OutputGroup ofg = new OutputGroup
        {
            Name = "File Group",
            OutputGroupSettings = new OutputGroupSettings
            {
                Type = OutputGroupType.FILE_GROUP_SETTINGS,
                FileGroupSettings = new FileGroupSettings
                {
                    Destination = fileOutput
                }
            }
        };

        Output output = new Output
        {
            NameModifier = "_1"
        };

        #region VideoDescription

        VideoDescription vdes = new VideoDescription
        {
            ScalingBehavior = ScalingBehavior.DEFAULT,
            TimecodeInsertion = VideoTimecodeInsertion.DISABLED,
            AntiAlias = AntiAlias.ENABLED,
            Sharpness = 50,
```

```
            AfdSignaling = AfdSignaling.NONE,
            DropFrameTimecode = DropFrameTimecode.ENABLED,
            RespondToAfd = RespondToAfd.NONE,
            ColorMetadata = ColorMetadata.INSERT,
            CodecSettings = new VideoCodecSettings
            {
                Codec = VideoCodec.H_264
            }
        };
        output.VideoDescription = vdes;

        H264Settings h264 = new H264Settings
        {
            InterlaceMode = H264InterlaceMode.PROGRESSIVE,
            NumberReferenceFrames = 3,
            Syntax = H264Syntax.DEFAULT,
            Softness = 0,
            GopClosedCadence = 1,
            GopSize = 90,
            Slices = 1,
            GopBReference = H264GopBReference.DISABLED,
            SlowPal = H264SlowPal.DISABLED,
            SpatialAdaptiveQuantization = H264SpatialAdaptiveQuantization.ENABLED,
            TemporalAdaptiveQuantization = H264TemporalAdaptiveQuantization.ENABLED,
            FlickerAdaptiveQuantization = H264FlickerAdaptiveQuantization.DISABLED,
            EntropyEncoding = H264EntropyEncoding.CABAC,
            Bitrate = 5000000,
            FramerateControl = H264FramerateControl.SPECIFIED,
            RateControlMode = H264RateControlMode.CBR,
            CodecProfile = H264CodecProfile.MAIN,
            Telecine = H264Telecine.NONE,
            MinIInterval = 0,
            AdaptiveQuantization = H264AdaptiveQuantization.HIGH,
            CodecLevel = H264CodecLevel.AUTO,
            FieldEncoding = H264FieldEncoding.PAFF,
            SceneChangeDetect = H264SceneChangeDetect.ENABLED,
            QualityTuningLevel = H264QualityTuningLevel.SINGLE_PASS,
            FramerateConversionAlgorithm =
                H264FramerateConversionAlgorithm.DUPLICATE_DROP,
            UnregisteredSeiTimecode = H264UnregisteredSeiTimecode.DISABLED,
            GopSizeUnits = H264GopSizeUnits.FRAMES,
            ParControl = H264ParControl.SPECIFIED,
            NumberBFramesBetweenReferenceFrames = 2,
            RepeatPps = H264RepeatPps.DISABLED,
```

```
            FramerateNumerator = 30,
            FramerateDenominator = 1,
            ParNumerator = 1,
            ParDenominator = 1
        };
        output.VideoDescription.CodecSettings.H264Settings = h264;

        #endregion VideoDescription

        #region AudioDescription

        AudioDescription ades = new AudioDescription
        {
            LanguageCodeControl = AudioLanguageCodeControl.FOLLOW_INPUT,
            // This name matches one specified in the following Inputs.
            AudioSourceName = "Audio Selector 1",
            CodecSettings = new AudioCodecSettings
            {
                Codec = AudioCodec.AAC
            }
        };

        AacSettings aac = new AacSettings
        {
            AudioDescriptionBroadcasterMix =
AacAudioDescriptionBroadcasterMix.NORMAL,
            RateControlMode = AacRateControlMode.CBR,
            CodecProfile = AacCodecProfile.LC,
            CodingMode = AacCodingMode.CODING_MODE_2_0,
            RawFormat = AacRawFormat.NONE,
            SampleRate = 48000,
            Specification = AacSpecification.MPEG4,
            Bitrate = 64000
        };
        ades.CodecSettings.AacSettings = aac;
        output.AudioDescriptions.Add(ades);

        #endregion AudioDescription

        #region Mp4 Container

        output.ContainerSettings = new ContainerSettings
        {
            Container = ContainerType.MP4
```

```
        };
        Mp4Settings mp4 = new Mp4Settings
        {
            CslgAtom = Mp4CslgAtom.INCLUDE,
            FreeSpaceBox = Mp4FreeSpaceBox.EXCLUDE,
            MoovPlacement = Mp4MoovPlacement.PROGRESSIVE_DOWNLOAD
        };
        output.ContainerSettings.Mp4Settings = mp4;

        #endregion Mp4 Container

        ofg.Outputs.Add(output);
        createJobRequest.Settings.OutputGroups.Add(ofg);

        #endregion OutputGroup

        #region Input

        Input input = new Input
        {
            FilterEnable = InputFilterEnable.AUTO,
            PsiControl = InputPsiControl.USE_PSI,
            FilterStrength = 0,
            DeblockFilter = InputDeblockFilter.DISABLED,
            DenoiseFilter = InputDenoiseFilter.DISABLED,
            TimecodeSource = InputTimecodeSource.EMBEDDED,
            FileInput = fileInput
        };

        AudioSelector audsel = new AudioSelector
        {
            Offset = 0,
            DefaultSelection = AudioDefaultSelection.NOT_DEFAULT,
            ProgramSelection = 1,
            SelectorType = AudioSelectorType.TRACK
        };
        audsel.Tracks.Add(1);
        input.AudioSelectors.Add("Audio Selector 1", audsel);

        input.VideoSelector = new VideoSelector
        {
            ColorSpace = ColorSpace.FOLLOW
        };
```

```
        createJobRequest.Settings.Inputs.Add(input);

        #endregion Input

        CreateJobResponse createJobResponse =
            await _amazonMediaConvert.CreateJobAsync(createJobRequest);

        var jobId = createJobResponse.Job.Id;

        return jobId;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetJob`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set up the file locations, client, and wrapper.

```
        // MediaConvert role Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
        // For information on creating this role, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/mediaconvert/latest/ug/creating-the-iam-role-
in-mediaconvert-configured.html.
        var mediaConvertRole = _configuration["mediaConvertRoleARN"];

        // Include the file input and output locations in settings.json or
 settings.local.json.
        var fileInput = _configuration["fileInput"];
        var fileOutput = _configuration["fileOutput"];
```

```
        AmazonMediaConvertClient mcClient = new AmazonMediaConvertClient();

        var wrapper = new MediaConvertWrapper(mcClient);
```

Get a job by its ID.

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Getting job information for Job ID {jobId}");
        var job = await wrapper.GetJobById(jobId);
        Console.WriteLine($"Job {job.Id} created on {job.CreatedAt:d} has status
{job.Status}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the job information for a job by its ID.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobId">The ID of the job.</param>
    /// <returns>The Job object.</returns>
    public async Task<Job> GetJobById(string jobId)
    {
        var jobResponse = await _amazonMediaConvert.GetJobAsync(
                new GetJobRequest
                {
                    Id = jobId
                });

        return jobResponse.Job;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

ListJobs

The following code example shows how to use `ListJobs`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set up the file locations, client, and wrapper.

```
        // MediaConvert role Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
        // For information on creating this role, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/mediaconvert/latest/ug/creating-the-iam-role-
in-mediaconvert-configured.html.
        var mediaConvertRole = _configuration["mediaConvertRoleARN"];

        // Include the file input and output locations in settings.json or
 settings.local.json.
        var fileInput = _configuration["fileInput"];
        var fileOutput = _configuration["fileOutput"];

        AmazonMediaConvertClient mcClient = new AmazonMediaConvertClient();

        var wrapper = new MediaConvertWrapper(mcClient);
```

List the jobs with a particular status.

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Listing all complete jobs.");
        var completeJobs = await wrapper.ListAllJobsByStatus(JobStatus.COMPLETE);
        completeJobs.ForEach(j =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Job {j.Id} created on {j.CreatedAt:d} has status
 {j.Status}.");
        });
```

List the jobs using a paginator.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// List all of the jobs with a particular status using a paginator.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="status">The status to use when listing jobs.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of jobs matching the status.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Job>> ListAllJobsByStatus(JobStatus? status = null)
    {
        var returnedJobs = new List<Job>();

        var paginatedJobs = _amazonMediaConvert.Paginators.ListJobs(
                new ListJobsRequest
                {
                    Status = status
                });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var job in paginatedJobs.Jobs)
        {
            returnedJobs.Add(job);
        }

        return returnedJobs;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon MSK examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon MSK.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from an Amazon MSK cluster. The function retrieves the MSK payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using .NET.

```
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.KafkaEvents;


// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace MSKLambda;

public class Function
{


    /// <param name="input">The event for the Lambda function handler to process.</
param>
    /// <param name="context">The ILambdaContext that provides methods for logging
 and describing the Lambda environment.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    public void FunctionHandler(KafkaEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {
```

```
        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Key:" + record.Key);
            foreach (var eventRecord in record.Value)
            {
                var valueBytes = eventRecord.Value.ToArray();
                var valueText = Encoding.UTF8.GetString(valueBytes);

                Console.WriteLine("Message:" + valueText);
            }
        }
    }


}
```

Organizations examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Organizations.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AttachPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachPolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to attach an AWS Organizations policy to an organization,
/// an organizational unit, or an account.
/// </summary>
public class AttachPolicy
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes the Organizations client object and then calls the
    /// AttachPolicyAsync method to attach the policy to the root
    /// organization.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();
        var policyId = "p-00000000";
        var targetId = "r-0000";

        var request = new AttachPolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyId = policyId,
            TargetId = targetId,
        };

        var response = await client.AttachPolicyAsync(request);

        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully attached Policy ID {policyId} to
Target ID: {targetId}.");
```

```
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Was not successful in attaching the policy.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AttachPolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateAccount`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccount`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Creates a new AWS Organizations account.
/// </summary>
public class CreateAccount
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes an Organizations client object and uses it to create
    /// the new account with the name specified in accountName.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();
        var accountName = "ExampleAccount";
```

```
            var email = "someone@example.com";

            var request = new CreateAccountRequest
            {
                AccountName = accountName,
                Email = email,
            };

            var response = await client.CreateAccountAsync(request);
            var status = response.CreateAccountStatus;

            Console.WriteLine($"The staus of {status.AccountName} is
{status.State}.");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateAccount in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateOrganization`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateOrganization`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Creates an organization in AWS Organizations.
/// </summary>
public class CreateOrganization
{
```

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Creates an Organizations client object and then uses it to create
        /// a new organization with the default user as the administrator, and
        /// then displays information about the new organization.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

            var response = await client.CreateOrganizationAsync(new
CreateOrganizationRequest
            {
                FeatureSet = "ALL",
            });

            Organization newOrg = response.Organization;

            Console.WriteLine($"Organization: {newOrg.Id} Main Accoount:
{newOrg.MasterAccountId}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateOrganization in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateOrganizationalUnit`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateOrganizationalUnit`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new organizational unit in AWS Organizations.
    /// </summary>
    public class CreateOrganizationalUnit
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// Initializes an Organizations client object and then uses it to call
        /// the CreateOrganizationalUnit method. If the call succeeds, it
        /// displays information about the new organizational unit.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // Create the client object using the default account.
            IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

            var orgUnitName = "ProductDevelopmentUnit";

            var request = new CreateOrganizationalUnitRequest
            {
                Name = orgUnitName,
                ParentId = "r-0000",
            };

            var response = await client.CreateOrganizationalUnitAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created organizational unit:
{orgUnitName}.");
                Console.WriteLine($"Organizational unit {orgUnitName} Details");
                Console.WriteLine($"ARN: {response.OrganizationalUnit.Arn} Id:
{response.OrganizationalUnit.Id}");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Could not create new organizational unit.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateOrganizationalUnit in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreatePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Organizations;
    using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new AWS Organizations Policy.
    /// </summary>
    public class CreatePolicy
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// Initializes the AWS Organizations client object, uses it to
        /// create a new Organizations Policy, and then displays information
        /// about the newly created Policy.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();
            var policyContent = "{" +
                "   \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                " \"Statement\" : [{" +
                    " \"Action\" : [\"s3:*\"]," +
                    " \"Effect\" : \"Allow\"," +
                    " \"Resource\" : \"*\"" +
                "}]" +
            "}";

            try
            {
                var response = await client.CreatePolicyAsync(new
CreatePolicyRequest
```

```
                {
                    Content = policyContent,
                    Description = "Enables admins of attached accounts to delegate
all Amazon S3 permissions",
                    Name = "AllowAllS3Actions",
                    Type = "SERVICE_CONTROL_POLICY",
                });

                Policy policy = response.Policy;
                Console.WriteLine($"{policy.PolicySummary.Name} has the following
content: {policy.Content}");
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteOrganization`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteOrganization`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to delete an existing organization using the AWS
```

```
    /// Organizations Service.
    /// </summary>
    public class DeleteOrganization
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// Initializes the Organizations client and then calls
        /// DeleteOrganizationAsync to delete the organization.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // Create the client object using the default account.
            IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

            var response = await client.DeleteOrganizationAsync(new
DeleteOrganizationRequest());

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Successfully deleted organization.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Could not delete organization.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteOrganization in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteOrganizationalUnit`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteOrganizationalUnit`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to delete an existing AWS Organizations organizational unit.
/// </summary>
public class DeleteOrganizationalUnit
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes the Organizations client object and calls
    /// DeleteOrganizationalUnitAsync to delete the organizational unit
    /// with the selected ID.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // Create the client object using the default account.
        IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

        var orgUnitId = "ou-0000-00000000";

        var request = new DeleteOrganizationalUnitRequest
        {
            OrganizationalUnitId = orgUnitId,
        };

        var response = await client.DeleteOrganizationalUnitAsync(request);

        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted the organizational unit
with ID: {orgUnitId}.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Could not delete the organizational unit with
ID: {orgUnitId}.");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteOrganizationalUnit in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeletePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Deletes an existing AWS Organizations policy.
/// </summary>
public class DeletePolicy
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes the Organizations client object and then uses it to
    /// delete the policy with the specified policyId.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // Create the client object using the default account.
        IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

        var policyId = "p-00000000";

        var request = new DeletePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyId = policyId,
        };

        var response = await client.DeletePolicyAsync(request);
```

```
            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted Policy: {policyId}.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Could not delete Policy: {policyId}.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DetachPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DetachPolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to detach a policy from an AWS Organizations organization,
/// organizational unit, or account.
/// </summary>
public class DetachPolicy
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes the Organizations client object and uses it to call
    /// DetachPolicyAsync to detach the policy.
    /// </summary>
```

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // Create the client object using the default account.
            IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

            var policyId = "p-00000000";
            var targetId = "r-0000";

            var request = new DetachPolicyRequest
            {
                PolicyId = policyId,
                TargetId = targetId,
            };

            var response = await client.DetachPolicyAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully detached policy with Policy Id:
{policyId}.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Could not detach the policy.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetachPolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListAccounts`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAccounts`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the AWS Organizations service to list the accounts associated
/// with the default account.
/// </summary>
public class ListAccounts
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates the Organizations client and then calls its
    /// ListAccountsAsync method.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // Create the client object using the default account.
        IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

        var request = new ListAccountsRequest
        {
            MaxResults = 5,
        };

        var response = new ListAccountsResponse();
        try
        {
            do
            {
                response = await client.ListAccountsAsync(request);
                response.Accounts.ForEach(a => DisplayAccounts(a));
                if (response.NextToken is not null)
                {
                    request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
                }
            }
            while (response.NextToken is not null);
        }
        catch (AWSOrganizationsNotInUseException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
```

```
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays information about an Organizations account.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="account">An Organizations account for which to display
        /// information on the console.</param>
        private static void DisplayAccounts(Account account)
        {
            string accountInfo = $"{account.Id} {account.Name}\t{account.Status}";

            Console.WriteLine(accountInfo);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListAccounts in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListOrganizationalUnitsForParent`

The following code example shows how to use `ListOrganizationalUnitsForParent`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Organizations;
    using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Lists the AWS Organizations organizational units that belong to an
    /// organization.
    /// </summary>
    public class ListOrganizationalUnitsForParent
    {
```

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Initializes the Organizations client object and then uses it to
        /// call the ListOrganizationalUnitsForParentAsync method to retrieve
        /// the list of organizational units.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // Create the client object using the default account.
            IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

            var parentId = "r-0000";

            var request = new ListOrganizationalUnitsForParentRequest
            {
                ParentId = parentId,
                MaxResults = 5,
            };

            var response = new ListOrganizationalUnitsForParentResponse();
            try
            {
                do
                {
                    response = await
client.ListOrganizationalUnitsForParentAsync(request);
                    response.OrganizationalUnits.ForEach(u =>
DisplayOrganizationalUnit(u));
                    if (response.NextToken is not null)
                    {
                        request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
                    }
                }
                while (response.NextToken is not null);
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays information about an Organizations organizational unit.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="unit">The OrganizationalUnit for which to display
```

```
        /// information.</param>
        public static void DisplayOrganizationalUnit(OrganizationalUnit unit)
        {
            string accountInfo = $"{unit.Id} {unit.Name}\t{unit.Arn}";

            Console.WriteLine(accountInfo);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListOrganizationalUnitsForParent in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListPolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListPolicies`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Organizations;
    using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to list the AWS Organizations policies associated with an
    /// organization.
    /// </summary>
    public class ListPolicies
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// Initializes an Organizations client object, and then calls its
        /// ListPoliciesAsync method.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
```

```
            // Create the client object using the default account.
            IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

            // The value for the Filter parameter is required and must must be
            // one of the following:
            //     AISERVICES_OPT_OUT_POLICY
            //     BACKUP_POLICY
            //     SERVICE_CONTROL_POLICY
            //     TAG_POLICY
            var request = new ListPoliciesRequest
            {
                Filter = "SERVICE_CONTROL_POLICY",
                MaxResults = 5,
            };

            var response = new ListPoliciesResponse();
            try
            {
                do
                {
                    response = await client.ListPoliciesAsync(request);
                    response.Policies.ForEach(p => DisplayPolicies(p));
                    if (response.NextToken is not null)
                    {
                        request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
                    }
                }
                while (response.NextToken is not null);
            }
            catch (AWSOrganizationsNotInUseException ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays information about the Organizations policies associated
        /// with an organization.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="policy">An Organizations policy summary to display
        /// information on the console.</param>
        private static void DisplayPolicies(PolicySummary policy)
        {
            string policyInfo = $"{policy.Id} {policy.Name}\t{policy.Description}";
```

```
            Console.WriteLine(policyInfo);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Partner Central examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Partner Central.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateOpportunity`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateOpportunity`.

SDK for .NET

Create an opportunity.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// PDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

using System;
using Newtonsoft.Json;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.Runtime;
using Amazon.PartnerCentralSelling;
```

```
using Amazon.PartnerCentralSelling.Model;

namespace AWSExample
{
    class Program
    {
        static readonly string catalogToUse = "AWS";
        static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Initialize credentials from .aws/credentials file
            var credentials = new
 Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement.SharedCredentialsFile();
            if (credentials.TryGetProfile("default", out var profile))
            {
                AWSCredentials awsCredentials =
 profile.GetAWSCredentials(credentials);

                var client = new AmazonPartnerCentralSellingClient(awsCredentials);

                var request = new CreateOpportunityRequest
                {
                    Catalog = catalogToUse,
                    Origin = "Partner Referral",
                    Customer = new Customer
                    {
                        Account = new Account
                        {
                            Address = new Address
                            {
                                CountryCode = "US",
                                PostalCode = "99502",
                                StateOrRegion = "Alaska"
                            },
                            CompanyName = "TestCompanyName",
                            Duns = "123456789",
                            WebsiteUrl = "www.test.io",
                            Industry = "Automotive"
                        },
                        Contacts = new List<Contact>
                        {
                            new Contact
                            {
                                Email = "test@test.io",
                                FirstName = "John  ",
```

```
                                LastName = "Doe",
                                Phone = "+14444444444",
                                BusinessTitle = "test title"
                            }
                        }
                    },
                    LifeCycle = new LifeCycle
                    {
                        ReviewStatus = "Submitted",
                        TargetCloseDate = "2024-12-30"
                    },
                    Marketing = new Marketing
                    {
                        Source = "None"
                    },
                    OpportunityType = "Net New Business",
                    PrimaryNeedsFromAws = new List<string> { "Co-Sell -
Architectural Validation" },
                    Project = new Project
                    {
                        Title = "Moin Test UUID",
                        CustomerBusinessProblem = "Sandbox is not working as
expected",
                        CustomerUseCase = "AI Machine Learning and Analytics",
                        DeliveryModels = new List<string> { "SaaS or PaaS" },
                        ExpectedCustomerSpend = new List<ExpectedCustomerSpend>
                        {
                            new ExpectedCustomerSpend
                            {
                                Amount = "2000.0",
                                CurrencyCode = "USD",
                                Frequency = "Monthly",
                                TargetCompany = "Ibexlabs"
                            }
                        },
                        SalesActivities = new List<string> { "Initialized
discussions with customer" }
                    }
                };

                try
                {
                    var response = await client.CreateOpportunityAsync(request);
                    Console.WriteLine(response.HttpStatusCode);
```

```
                    string formattedJson = JsonConvert.SerializeObject(response,
 Formatting.Indented);
                    Console.WriteLine(formattedJson);
                }
                catch (ValidationException ex)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Validation error: " + ex.Message);
                }
                catch (AmazonPartnerCentralSellingException e)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Failed:");
                    Console.WriteLine(e.RequestId);
                    Console.WriteLine(e.ErrorCode);
                    Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
                }
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Profile not found.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateOpportunity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetOpportunity`

The following code example shows how to use `GetOpportunity`.

SDK for .NET

Get an opportunity.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// PDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

using System;
using Newtonsoft.Json;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.Runtime;
using Amazon.PartnerCentralSelling;
using Amazon.PartnerCentralSelling.Model;
```

```
namespace AWSExample
{
    class Program
    {
        static readonly string catalogToUse = "AWS";
        static readonly string identifier = "O1111111";
        static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Initialize credentials from .aws/credentials file
            var credentials = new
 Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement.SharedCredentialsFile();
            if (credentials.TryGetProfile("default", out var profile))
            {
                AWSCredentials awsCredentials =
 profile.GetAWSCredentials(credentials);

                var client = new AmazonPartnerCentralSellingClient(awsCredentials);

                var request = new GetOpportunityRequest
                {
                    Catalog = catalogToUse,
                    Identifier = identifier
                };

                try {
                    var response = await client.GetOpportunityAsync(request);
                    Console.WriteLine(response.HttpStatusCode);
                    string formattedJson = JsonConvert.SerializeObject(response,
 Formatting.Indented);
                    Console.WriteLine(formattedJson);
                } catch(ValidationException ex) {
                    Console.WriteLine("Validation error: " + ex.Message);
                } catch (AmazonPartnerCentralSellingException e) {
                    Console.WriteLine("Failed:");
                    Console.WriteLine(e.RequestId);
                    Console.WriteLine(e.ErrorCode);
                    Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
                }
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Profile not found.");
            }
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetOpportunity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListOpportunities`

The following code example shows how to use `ListOpportunities`.

SDK for .NET

List opportunities.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// PDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

using System;
using Newtonsoft.Json;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.Runtime;
using Amazon.PartnerCentralSelling;
using Amazon.PartnerCentralSelling.Model;

namespace AWSExample
{
    class Program
    {
        static readonly string catalogToUse = "Sandbox";
        static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Initialize credentials from .aws/credentials file
            var credentials = new
 Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement.SharedCredentialsFile();
            if (credentials.TryGetProfile("default", out var profile))
            {
                AWSCredentials awsCredentials =
 profile.GetAWSCredentials(credentials);

                //var config = new AmazonPartnerCentralSellingConfig()
                //{
```

```
                //    ServiceURL = "https://partnercentral-selling.us-
east-1.api.aws",
                //};
                //var client = new AmazonPartnerCentralSellingClient(awsCredentials,
 config);
                var client = new AmazonPartnerCentralSellingClient(awsCredentials);
                var request = new ListOpportunitiesRequest
                {
                    Catalog = catalogToUse,
                    MaxResults = 2
                };

                try {
                    var response = await client.ListOpportunitiesAsync(request);
                    Console.WriteLine(response.HttpStatusCode);
                    foreach (var opportunity in response.OpportunitySummaries)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine("Opportunity id: " + opportunity.Id);
                    }
                    string formattedJson =
 JsonConvert.SerializeObject(response.OpportunitySummaries, Formatting.Indented);
                    Console.WriteLine(formattedJson);
                } catch(ValidationException ex) {
                    Console.WriteLine("Validation error: " + ex.Message);
                } catch (AmazonPartnerCentralSellingException e) {
                    Console.WriteLine("Failed:");
                    Console.WriteLine(e.RequestId);
                    Console.WriteLine(e.ErrorCode);
                    Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
                }
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Profile not found.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListOpportunities in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon Pinpoint examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon Pinpoint.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`SendMessages`

The following code example shows how to use `SendMessages`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send an email message.

```
using Amazon;
using Amazon.Pinpoint;
using Amazon.Pinpoint.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;

namespace SendEmailMessage;

public class SendEmailMainClass
{
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
```

```
    {
        var configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
        .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
        .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
        .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
            true) // Optionally load local settings.
        .Build();

        // The AWS Region that you want to use to send the email. For a list of
        // AWS Regions where the Amazon Pinpoint API is available, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/apireference/
        string region = "us-east-1";

        // The "From" address. This address has to be verified in Amazon Pinpoint
        // in the region you're using to send email.
        string senderAddress = configuration["SenderAddress"]!;

        // The address on the "To" line. If your Amazon Pinpoint account is in
        // the sandbox, this address also has to be verified.
        string toAddress = configuration["ToAddress"]!;

        // The Amazon Pinpoint project/application ID to use when you send this
message.
        // Make sure that the SMS channel is enabled for the project or application
        // that you choose.
        string appId = configuration["AppId"]!;

        try
        {
            await SendEmailMessage(region, appId, toAddress, senderAddress);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The message wasn't sent. Error message: " +
ex.Message);
        }
    }

    public static async Task<MessageResponse> SendEmailMessage(
        string region, string appId, string toAddress, string senderAddress)
    {
        var client = new
AmazonPinpointClient(RegionEndpoint.GetBySystemName(region));
```

```
        // The subject line of the email.
        string subject = "Amazon Pinpoint Email test";

        // The body of the email for recipients whose email clients don't
        // support HTML content.
        string textBody = @"Amazon Pinpoint Email Test (.NET)"
                          + "\n---------------------------------"
                          + "\nThis email was sent using the Amazon Pinpoint API
 using the AWS SDK for .NET.";

        // The body of the email for recipients whose email clients support
        // HTML content.
        string htmlBody = @"<html>"
                          + "\n<head></head>"
                          + "\n<body>"
                          + "\n  <h1>Amazon Pinpoint Email Test (AWS SDK for .NET)</
h1>"
                          + "\n  <p>This email was sent using the "
                          + "\n    <a href='https://aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/'>Amazon
 Pinpoint</a> API "
                          + "\n    using the <a href='https://aws.amazon.com/sdk-
for-net/'>AWS SDK for .NET</a>"
                          + "\n  </p>"
                          + "\n</body>"
                          + "\n</html>";

        // The character encoding the you want to use for the subject line and
        // message body of the email.
        string charset = "UTF-8";

        var sendRequest = new SendMessagesRequest
        {
            ApplicationId = appId,
            MessageRequest = new MessageRequest
            {
                Addresses = new Dictionary<string, AddressConfiguration>
                {
                    {
                        toAddress,
                        new AddressConfiguration
                        {
                            ChannelType = ChannelType.EMAIL
                        }
                    }
```

```
                },
                MessageConfiguration = new DirectMessageConfiguration
                {
                    EmailMessage = new EmailMessage
                    {
                        FromAddress = senderAddress,
                        SimpleEmail = new SimpleEmail
                        {
                            HtmlPart = new SimpleEmailPart
                            {
                                Charset = charset,
                                Data = htmlBody
                            },
                            TextPart = new SimpleEmailPart
                            {
                                Charset = charset,
                                Data = textBody
                            },
                            Subject = new SimpleEmailPart
                            {
                                Charset = charset,
                                Data = subject
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        };
        Console.WriteLine("Sending message...");
        SendMessagesResponse response = await client.SendMessagesAsync(sendRequest);
        Console.WriteLine("Message sent!");
        return response.MessageResponse;
    }
}
```

Send an SMS message.

```
using Amazon;
using Amazon.Pinpoint;
using Amazon.Pinpoint.Model;
```

```
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;

namespace SendSmsMessage;

public class SendSmsMessageMainClass
{
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        // The AWS Region that you want to use to send the message. For a list of
        // AWS Regions where the Amazon Pinpoint API is available, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/apireference/
        string region = "us-east-1";

        // The phone number or short code to send the message from. The phone number
        // or short code that you specify has to be associated with your Amazon
 Pinpoint
        // account. For best results, specify long codes in E.164 format.
        string originationNumber = configuration["OriginationNumber"]!;

        // The recipient's phone number.  For best results, you should specify the
        // phone number in E.164 format.
        string destinationNumber = configuration["DestinationNumber"]!;

        // The Pinpoint project/ application ID to use when you send this message.
        // Make sure that the SMS channel is enabled for the project or application
        // that you choose.
        string appId = configuration["AppId"]!;

        // The type of SMS message that you want to send. If you plan to send
        // time-sensitive content, specify TRANSACTIONAL. If you plan to send
        // marketing-related content, specify PROMOTIONAL.
        MessageType messageType = MessageType.TRANSACTIONAL;

        // The registered keyword associated with the originating short code.
        string? registeredKeyword = configuration["RegisteredKeyword"];

        // The sender ID to use when sending the message. Support for sender ID
```

```
        // varies by country or region. For more information, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/userguide/channels-sms-
countries.html
        string? senderId = configuration["SenderId"];

        try
        {
            var response = await SendSmsMessage(region, appId, destinationNumber,
                originationNumber, registeredKeyword, senderId, messageType);
            Console.WriteLine($"Message sent to
 {response.MessageResponse.Result.Count} recipient(s).");
            foreach (var messageResultValue in
                     response.MessageResponse.Result.Select(r => r.Value))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{messageResultValue.MessageId} Status:
 {messageResultValue.DeliveryStatus}");
            }
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The message wasn't sent. Error message: " +
 ex.Message);
        }
    }

    public static async Task<SendMessagesResponse> SendSmsMessage(
        string region, string appId, string destinationNumber, string
 originationNumber,
        string? keyword, string? senderId, MessageType messageType)
    {

        // The content of the SMS message.
        string message = "This message was sent through Amazon Pinpoint using" +
                         " the AWS SDK for .NET. Reply STOP to opt out.";


        var client = new
 AmazonPinpointClient(RegionEndpoint.GetBySystemName(region));

        SendMessagesRequest sendRequest = new SendMessagesRequest
        {
            ApplicationId = appId,
            MessageRequest = new MessageRequest
            {
```

```
                Addresses =
                    new Dictionary<string, AddressConfiguration>
                    {
                        {
                            destinationNumber,
                            new AddressConfiguration { ChannelType =
 ChannelType.SMS }
                        }
                    },
                MessageConfiguration = new DirectMessageConfiguration
                {
                    SMSMessage = new SMSMessage
                    {
                        Body = message,
                        MessageType = MessageType.TRANSACTIONAL,
                        OriginationNumber = originationNumber,
                        SenderId = senderId,
                        Keyword = keyword
                    }
                }
            }
        };
        SendMessagesResponse response = await client.SendMessagesAsync(sendRequest);
        return response;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SendMessages in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon Polly examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon Polly.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`DeleteLexicon`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteLexicon`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Polly;
using Amazon.Polly.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Deletes an existing Amazon Polly lexicon using the AWS SDK for .NET.
/// </summary>
public class DeleteLexicon
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string lexiconName = "SampleLexicon";

        var client = new AmazonPollyClient();

        var success = await DeletePollyLexiconAsync(client, lexiconName);

        if (success)
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted {lexiconName}.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Could not delete {lexiconName}.");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes the named Amazon Polly lexicon.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon Polly client object.</param>
        /// <param name="lexiconName">The name of the Amazon Polly lexicon to
        /// delete.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the operation.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeletePollyLexiconAsync(
            AmazonPollyClient client,
            string lexiconName)
        {
            var deleteLexiconRequest = new DeleteLexiconRequest()
            {
                Name = lexiconName,
            };

            var response = await client.DeleteLexiconAsync(deleteLexiconRequest);

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteLexicon in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeVoices`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeVoices`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Polly;
using Amazon.Polly.Model;

public class DescribeVoices
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonPollyClient();

        var allVoicesRequest = new DescribeVoicesRequest();
        var enUsVoicesRequest = new DescribeVoicesRequest()
        {
            LanguageCode = "en-US",
        };

        try
        {
            string nextToken;
            do
            {
                var allVoicesResponse = await
client.DescribeVoicesAsync(allVoicesRequest);
                nextToken = allVoicesResponse.NextToken;
                allVoicesRequest.NextToken = nextToken;

                Console.WriteLine("\nAll voices: ");
                allVoicesResponse.Voices.ForEach(voice =>
                {
                    DisplayVoiceInfo(voice);
                });
            }
            while (nextToken is not null);
```

```
                do
                {
                    var enUsVoicesResponse = await
client.DescribeVoicesAsync(enUsVoicesRequest);
                    nextToken = enUsVoicesResponse.NextToken;
                    enUsVoicesRequest.NextToken = nextToken;

                    Console.WriteLine("\nen-US voices: ");
                    enUsVoicesResponse.Voices.ForEach(voice =>
                    {
                        DisplayVoiceInfo(voice);
                    });
                }
                while (nextToken is not null);
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Exception caught: " + ex.Message);
            }
        }

        public static void DisplayVoiceInfo(Voice voice)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($" Name: {voice.Name}\tGender:
{voice.Gender}\tLanguageName: {voice.LanguageName}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeVoices in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetLexicon`

The following code example shows how to use `GetLexicon`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Polly;
using Amazon.Polly.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Retrieves information about a specific Amazon Polly lexicon.
/// </summary>
public class GetLexicon
{
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        string lexiconName = "SampleLexicon";

        var client = new AmazonPollyClient();

        await GetPollyLexiconAsync(client, lexiconName);
    }

    public static async Task GetPollyLexiconAsync(AmazonPollyClient client,
string lexiconName)
    {
        var getLexiconRequest = new GetLexiconRequest()
        {
            Name = lexiconName,
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await client.GetLexiconAsync(getLexiconRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"Lexicon:\n Name: {response.Lexicon.Name}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Content: {response.Lexicon.Content}");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Error: " + ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetLexicon in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListLexicons`

The following code example shows how to use `ListLexicons`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Polly;
using Amazon.Polly.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Lists the Amazon Polly lexicons that have been defined. By default,
/// lists the lexicons that are defined in the same AWS Region as the default
/// user. To view Amazon Polly lexicons that are defined in a different AWS
/// Region, supply it as a parameter to the Amazon Polly constructor.
/// </summary>
public class ListLexicons
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonPollyClient();
        var request = new ListLexiconsRequest();

        try
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine("All voices: ");

                do
                {
                    var response = await client.ListLexiconsAsync(request);
                    request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

                    response.Lexicons.ForEach(lexicon =>
                    {
                        var attributes = lexicon.Attributes;
                        Console.WriteLine($"Name: {lexicon.Name}");
                        Console.WriteLine($"\tAlphabet: {attributes.Alphabet}");
                        Console.WriteLine($"\tLanguageCode:
{attributes.LanguageCode}");
                        Console.WriteLine($"\tLastModified:
{attributes.LastModified}");
                        Console.WriteLine($"\tLexemesCount:
{attributes.LexemesCount}");
                        Console.WriteLine($"\tLexiconArn: {attributes.LexiconArn}");
                        Console.WriteLine($"\tSize: {attributes.Size}");
                    });
                }
                while (request.NextToken is not null);
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListLexicons in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

PutLexicon

The following code example shows how to use `PutLexicon`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Polly;
    using Amazon.Polly.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new Amazon Polly lexicon using the AWS SDK for .NET.
    /// </summary>
    public class PutLexicon
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string lexiconContent = "<?xml version=\"1.0\" encoding=\"UTF-8\"?>" +
                "<lexicon version=\"1.0\" xmlns=\"http://www.w3.org/2005/01/
pronunciation-lexicon\" xmlns:xsi=\"http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance\" " +
                "xsi:schemaLocation=\"http://www.w3.org/2005/01/pronunciation-
lexicon http://www.w3.org/TR/2007/CR-pronunciation-lexicon-20071212/pls.xsd\" " +
                "alphabet=\"ipa\" xml:lang=\"en-US\">" +
                "<lexeme><grapheme>test1</grapheme><alias>test2</alias></lexeme>" +
                "</lexicon>";
            string lexiconName = "SampleLexicon";

            var client = new AmazonPollyClient();
            var putLexiconRequest = new PutLexiconRequest()
            {
                Name = lexiconName,
                Content = lexiconContent,
            };

            try
            {
                var response = await client.PutLexiconAsync(putLexiconRequest);
                if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
                {
```

```
                    Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created Lexicon:
{lexiconName}.");
                }
                else
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Could not create Lexicon: {lexiconName}.");
                }
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Exception caught: " + ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutLexicon in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`SynthesizeSpeech`

The following code example shows how to use `SynthesizeSpeech`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Polly;
using Amazon.Polly.Model;

public class SynthesizeSpeech
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string outputFileName = "speech.mp3";
```

```
            string text = "Twas brillig, and the slithy toves did gyre and gimbol in
the wabe";

            var client = new AmazonPollyClient();
            var response = await PollySynthesizeSpeech(client, text);

            WriteSpeechToStream(response.AudioStream, outputFileName);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Calls the Amazon Polly SynthesizeSpeechAsync method to convert text
        /// to speech.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The Amazon Polly client object used to connect
        /// to the Amazon Polly service.</param>
        /// <param name="text">The text to convert to speech.</param>
        /// <returns>A SynthesizeSpeechResponse object that includes an AudioStream
        /// object with the converted text.</returns>
        private static async Task<SynthesizeSpeechResponse>
PollySynthesizeSpeech(IAmazonPolly client, string text)
        {
            var synthesizeSpeechRequest = new SynthesizeSpeechRequest()
            {
                OutputFormat = OutputFormat.Mp3,
                VoiceId = VoiceId.Joanna,
                Text = text,
            };

            var synthesizeSpeechResponse =
                await client.SynthesizeSpeechAsync(synthesizeSpeechRequest);

            return synthesizeSpeechResponse;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Writes the AudioStream returned from the call to
        /// SynthesizeSpeechAsync to a file in MP3 format.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="audioStream">The AudioStream returned from the
        /// call to the SynthesizeSpeechAsync method.</param>
        /// <param name="outputFileName">The full path to the file in which to
        /// save the audio stream.</param>
        private static void WriteSpeechToStream(Stream audioStream, string
outputFileName)
```

```
        {
            var outputStream = new FileStream(
                outputFileName,
                FileMode.Create,
                FileAccess.Write);
            byte[] buffer = new byte[2 * 1024];
            int readBytes;

            while ((readBytes = audioStream.Read(buffer, 0, 2 * 1024)) > 0)
            {
                outputStream.Write(buffer, 0, readBytes);
            }

            // Flushes the buffer to avoid losing the last second or so of
            // the synthesized text.
            outputStream.Flush();
            Console.WriteLine($"Saved {outputFileName} to disk.");
        }
    }
```

Synthesize speech from text using speech marks with Amazon Polly using an AWS SDK.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.IO;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Polly;
    using Amazon.Polly.Model;

    public class SynthesizeSpeechMarks
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var client = new AmazonPollyClient();
            string outputFileName = "speechMarks.json";

            var synthesizeSpeechRequest = new SynthesizeSpeechRequest()
            {
                OutputFormat = OutputFormat.Json,
                SpeechMarkTypes = new List<string>
                {
```

```
                    SpeechMarkType.Viseme,
                    SpeechMarkType.Word,
                },
                VoiceId = VoiceId.Joanna,
                Text = "This is a sample text to be synthesized.",
            };

            try
            {
                using (var outputStream = new FileStream(outputFileName,
FileMode.Create, FileAccess.Write))
                {
                    var synthesizeSpeechResponse = await
client.SynthesizeSpeechAsync(synthesizeSpeechRequest);
                    var buffer = new byte[2 * 1024];
                    int readBytes;

                    var inputStream = synthesizeSpeechResponse.AudioStream;
                    while ((readBytes = inputStream.Read(buffer, 0, 2 * 1024)) > 0)
                    {
                        outputStream.Write(buffer, 0, readBytes);
                    }
                }
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SynthesizeSpeech in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for .NET

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Amazon RDS examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon RDS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Get started
- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Get started

Hello Amazon RDS

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon RDS.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.RDS;
using Amazon.RDS.Model;

namespace RDSActions;

public static class HelloRds
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var rdsClient = new AmazonRDSClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon RDS! Following are some of your DB
 instances:");
        Console.WriteLine();
```

```
        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get the first twenty DB instances.
        var response = await rdsClient.DescribeDBInstancesAsync(
            new DescribeDBInstancesRequest()
            {
                MaxRecords = 20 // Must be between 20 and 100.
            });

        foreach (var instance in response.DBInstances)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDB name: {instance.DBName}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tArn: {instance.DBInstanceArn}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tIdentifier: {instance.DBInstanceIdentifier}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a custom DB parameter group and set parameter values.
- Create a DB instance that's configured to use the parameter group. The DB instance also contains a database.
- Take a snapshot of the instance.
- Delete the instance and parameter group.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
/// <summary>
/// Scenario for RDS DB instance example.
/// </summary>
public class RDSInstanceScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This .NET example performs the following tasks:
    1.  Returns a list of the available DB engine families using the
 DescribeDBEngineVersionsAsync method.
    2.  Selects an engine family and creates a custom DB parameter group using the
 CreateDBParameterGroupAsync method.
    3.  Gets the parameter groups using the DescribeDBParameterGroupsAsync method.
    4.  Gets parameters in the group using the DescribeDBParameters method.
    5.  Parses and displays parameters in the group.
    6.  Modifies both the auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment
 parameters
        using the ModifyDBParameterGroupAsync method.
    7.  Gets and displays the updated parameters using the DescribeDBParameters
 method with a source of "user".
    8.  Gets a list of allowed engine versions using the
 DescribeDBEngineVersionsAsync method.
    9.  Displays and selects from a list of micro instance classes available for the
 selected engine and version.
    10. Creates an RDS DB instance that contains a MySql database and uses the
 parameter group
        using the CreateDBInstanceAsync method.
    11. Waits for DB instance to be ready using the DescribeDBInstancesAsync method.
    12. Prints out the connection endpoint string for the new DB instance.
    13. Creates a snapshot of the DB instance using the CreateDBSnapshotAsync
 method.
    14. Waits for DB snapshot to be ready using the DescribeDBSnapshots method.
    15. Deletes the DB instance using the DeleteDBInstanceAsync method.
    16. Waits for DB instance to be deleted using the DescribeDbInstances method.
    17. Deletes the parameter group using the DeleteDBParameterGroupAsync.
    */

    private static readonly string sepBar = new('-', 80);
    private static RDSWrapper rdsWrapper = null!;
```

```
    private static ILogger logger = null!;
    private static readonly string engine = "mysql";
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon RDS service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonRDS>()
                    .AddTransient<RDSWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
        {
            builder.AddConsole();
        }).CreateLogger<RDSInstanceScenario>();

        rdsWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<RDSWrapper>();

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Welcome to the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) DB
instance scenario example.");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);

        try
        {
            var parameterGroupFamily = await ChooseParameterGroupFamily();

            var parameterGroup = await CreateDbParameterGroup(parameterGroupFamily);

            var parameters = await
DescribeParametersInGroup(parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName,
                new List<string> { "auto_increment_offset",
"auto_increment_increment" });

            await ModifyParameters(parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName, parameters);

            await DescribeUserSourceParameters(parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName);
```

```
            var engineVersionChoice = await
ChooseDbEngineVersion(parameterGroupFamily);

            var instanceChoice = await ChooseDbInstanceClass(engine,
engineVersionChoice.EngineVersion);

            var newInstanceIdentifier = "Example-Instance-" + DateTime.Now.Ticks;

            var newInstance = await CreateRdsNewInstance(parameterGroup, engine,
engineVersionChoice.EngineVersion,
                instanceChoice.DBInstanceClass, newInstanceIdentifier);
            if (newInstance != null)
            {
                DisplayConnectionString(newInstance);

                await CreateSnapshot(newInstance);

                await DeleteRdsInstance(newInstance);
            }

            await DeleteParameterGroup(parameterGroup);

            Console.WriteLine("Scenario complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem executing the scenario.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Choose the RDS DB parameter group family from a list of available options.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The selected parameter group family.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> ChooseParameterGroupFamily()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // 1. Get a list of available engines.
        var engines = await rdsWrapper.DescribeDBEngineVersions(engine);

        Console.WriteLine("1. The following is a list of available DB parameter
group families:");
```

```
        int i = 1;
        var parameterGroupFamilies = engines.GroupBy(e =>
e.DBParameterGroupFamily).ToList();
        foreach (var parameterGroupFamily in parameterGroupFamilies)
        {
            // List the available parameter group families.
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\t{i}. Family: {parameterGroupFamily.Key}");
            i++;
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > parameterGroupFamilies.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Select an available DB parameter group family by
entering a number from the list above:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }
        var parameterGroupFamilyChoice = parameterGroupFamilies[choiceNumber - 1];
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return parameterGroupFamilyChoice.Key;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create and get information on a DB parameter group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupFamily">The DBParameterGroupFamily for the new
DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>The new DBParameterGroup.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBParameterGroup> CreateDbParameterGroup(string
dbParameterGroupFamily)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine($"2. Create new DB parameter group with family
{dbParameterGroupFamily}:");

        var parameterGroup = await rdsWrapper.CreateDBParameterGroup(
            "ExampleParameterGroup-" + DateTime.Now.Ticks,
            dbParameterGroupFamily, "New example parameter group");

        var groupInfo =
            await rdsWrapper.DescribeDBParameterGroups(parameterGroup
                .DBParameterGroupName);
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"3. New DB parameter group: \n\t{groupInfo[0].Description}, \n\tARN
{groupInfo[0].DBParameterGroupArn}");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return parameterGroup;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get and describe parameters from a DBParameterGroup.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">Name of the DBParameterGroup.</param>
    /// <param name="parameterNames">Optional specific names of parameters to
describe.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of requested parameters.</returns>
    public static async Task<List<Parameter>> DescribeParametersInGroup(string
parameterGroupName, List<string>? parameterNames = null)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine("4. Get some parameters from the group.");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);

        var parameters =
            await rdsWrapper.DescribeDBParameters(parameterGroupName);

        var matchingParameters =
            parameters.Where(p => parameterNames == null ||
parameterNames.Contains(p.ParameterName)).ToList();

        Console.WriteLine("5. Parameter information:");
        matchingParameters.ForEach(p =>
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\n\tParameter: {p.ParameterName}." +
                $"\n\tDescription: {p.Description}." +
                $"\n\tAllowed Values: {p.AllowedValues}." +
                $"\n\tValue: {p.ParameterValue}."));

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);

        return matchingParameters;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Modify a parameter from a DBParameterGroup.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">Name of the DBParameterGroup.</param>
    /// <param name="parameters">The parameters to modify.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task ModifyParameters(string parameterGroupName,
List<Parameter> parameters)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine("6. Modify some parameters in the group.");

        foreach (var p in parameters)
        {
            if (p.IsModifiable && p.DataType == "integer")
            {
                int newValue = 0;
                while (newValue == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"Enter a new value for {p.ParameterName} from the allowed
values {p.AllowedValues} ");

                    var choice = Console.ReadLine();
                    Int32.TryParse(choice, out newValue);
                }

                p.ParameterValue = newValue.ToString();
            }
        }

        await rdsWrapper.ModifyDBParameterGroup(parameterGroupName, parameters);

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the user source parameters in the group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">Name of the DBParameterGroup.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task DescribeUserSourceParameters(string parameterGroupName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine("7. Describe user source parameters in the group.");
```

```
        var parameters =
            await rdsWrapper.DescribeDBParameters(parameterGroupName, "user");


        parameters.ForEach(p =>
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\n\tParameter: {p.ParameterName}." +
                $"\n\tDescription: {p.Description}." +
                $"\n\tAllowed Values: {p.AllowedValues}." +
                $"\n\tValue: {p.ParameterValue}."));

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Choose a DB engine version.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupFamily">DB parameter group family for engine
choice.</param>
    /// <returns>The selected engine version.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBEngineVersion> ChooseDbEngineVersion(string
dbParameterGroupFamily)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Get a list of allowed engines.
        var allowedEngines =
            await rdsWrapper.DescribeDBEngineVersions(engine,
dbParameterGroupFamily);

        Console.WriteLine($"Available DB engine versions for parameter group family
{dbParameterGroupFamily}:");
        int i = 1;
        foreach (var version in allowedEngines)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\t{i}. Engine: {version.Engine} Version
{version.EngineVersion}.");
            i++;
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > allowedEngines.Count)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("8. Select an available DB engine version by entering
 a number from the list above:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }

        var engineChoice = allowedEngines[choiceNumber - 1];
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return engineChoice;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Choose a DB instance class for a particular engine and engine version.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">DB engine for DB instance choice.</param>
    /// <param name="engineVersion">DB engine version for DB instance choice.</
param>
    /// <returns>The selected orderable DB instance option.</returns>
    public static async Task<OrderableDBInstanceOption> ChooseDbInstanceClass(string
 engine, string engineVersion)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Get a list of allowed DB instance classes.
        var allowedInstances =
            await rdsWrapper.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(engine,
 engineVersion);

        Console.WriteLine($"8. Available micro DB instance classes for engine
 {engine} and version {engineVersion}:");
        int i = 1;

        // Filter to micro instances for this example.
        allowedInstances = allowedInstances
            .Where(i => i.DBInstanceClass.Contains("micro")).ToList();

        foreach (var instance in allowedInstances)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\t{i}. Instance class: {instance.DBInstanceClass} (storage type
 {instance.StorageType})");
            i++;
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
```

```
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > allowedInstances.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("9. Select an available DB instance class by entering
 a number from the list above:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }

        var instanceChoice = allowedInstances[choiceNumber - 1];
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return instanceChoice;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new RDS DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroup">Parameter group to use for the DB instance.</
param>
    /// <param name="engineName">Engine to use for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="engineVersion">Engine version to use for the DB instance.</
param>
    /// <param name="instanceClass">Instance class to use for the DB instance.</
param>
    /// <param name="instanceIdentifier">Instance identifier to use for the DB
 instance.</param>
    /// <returns>The new DB instance.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBInstance?> CreateRdsNewInstance(DBParameterGroup
 parameterGroup,
        string engineName, string engineVersion, string instanceClass, string
 instanceIdentifier)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine($"10. Create a new DB instance with identifier
 {instanceIdentifier}.");
        bool isInstanceReady = false;
        DBInstance newInstance;
        var instances = await rdsWrapper.DescribeDBInstances();
        isInstanceReady = instances.FirstOrDefault(i =>
            i.DBInstanceIdentifier == instanceIdentifier)?.DBInstanceStatus ==
 "available";

        if (isInstanceReady)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Instance already created.");
```

```
            newInstance = instances.First(i => i.DBInstanceIdentifier ==
instanceIdentifier);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Please enter an admin user name:");
            var username = Console.ReadLine();

            Console.WriteLine("Please enter an admin password:");
            var password = Console.ReadLine();

            newInstance = await rdsWrapper.CreateDBInstance(
                "ExampleInstance",
                instanceIdentifier,
                parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName,
                engineName,
                engineVersion,
                instanceClass,
                20,
                username,
                password
            );

            // 11. Wait for the DB instance to be ready.

            Console.WriteLine("11. Waiting for DB instance to be ready...");
            while (!isInstanceReady)
            {
                instances = await
rdsWrapper.DescribeDBInstances(instanceIdentifier);
                isInstanceReady = instances.FirstOrDefault()?.DBInstanceStatus ==
"available";
                newInstance = instances.First();
                Thread.Sleep(30000);
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return newInstance;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a connection string for an RDS DB instance.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="instance">The DB instance to use to get a connection string.</
param>
    public static void DisplayConnectionString(DBInstance instance)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Display the connection string.
        Console.WriteLine("12. New DB instance connection string: ");
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"\n{engine} -h {instance.Endpoint.Address} -P {instance.Endpoint.Port}
 "
            + $"-u {instance.MasterUsername} -p [YOUR PASSWORD]\n");

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a snapshot from an RDS DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instance">DB instance to use when creating a snapshot.</param>
    /// <returns>The snapshot object.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBSnapshot> CreateSnapshot(DBInstance instance)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Create a snapshot.
        Console.WriteLine($"13. Creating snapshot from DB instance
 {instance.DBInstanceIdentifier}.");
        var snapshot = await
 rdsWrapper.CreateDBSnapshot(instance.DBInstanceIdentifier, "ExampleSnapshot-" +
 DateTime.Now.Ticks);

        // Wait for the snapshot to be available
        bool isSnapshotReady = false;

        Console.WriteLine($"14. Waiting for snapshot to be ready...");
        while (!isSnapshotReady)
        {
            var snapshots = await
 rdsWrapper.DescribeDBSnapshots(instance.DBInstanceIdentifier);
            isSnapshotReady = snapshots.FirstOrDefault()?.Status == "available";
            snapshot = snapshots.First();
            Thread.Sleep(30000);
        }

        Console.WriteLine(
```

```
            $"Snapshot {snapshot.DBSnapshotIdentifier} status is
{snapshot.Status}.");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return snapshot;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an RDS DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instance">The DB instance to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task DeleteRdsInstance(DBInstance newInstance)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Delete the DB instance.
        Console.WriteLine($"15. Delete the DB instance
{newInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier}.");
        await rdsWrapper.DeleteDBInstance(newInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier);

        // Wait for the DB instance to delete.
        Console.WriteLine($"16. Waiting for the DB instance to delete...");
        bool isInstanceDeleted = false;

        while (!isInstanceDeleted)
        {
            var instance = await rdsWrapper.DescribeDBInstances();
            isInstanceDeleted = instance.All(i => i.DBInstanceIdentifier !=
newInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier);
            Thread.Sleep(30000);
        }

        Console.WriteLine("DB instance deleted.");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a DB parameter group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroup">The parameter group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task DeleteParameterGroup(DBParameterGroup parameterGroup)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Delete the parameter group.
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"17. Delete the DB parameter group
 {parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName}.");
        await
 rdsWrapper.DeleteDBParameterGroup(parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName);

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    }
```

Wrapper methods used by the scenario for DB instance actions.

```


/// <summary>
/// Wrapper methods to use Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) with DB
 instance operations.
/// </summary>
public partial class RDSWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonRDS _amazonRDS;
    public RDSWrapper(IAmazonRDS amazonRDS)
    {
        _amazonRDS = amazonRDS;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of DB engine versions for a particular DB engine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">Name of the engine.</param>
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupFamily">Optional parameter group family name.</
param>
    /// <returns>List of DBEngineVersions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBEngineVersion>> DescribeDBEngineVersions(string engine,
        string dbParameterGroupFamily = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBEngineVersionsAsync(
            new DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest()
            {
                Engine = engine,
                DBParameterGroupFamily = dbParameterGroupFamily
            });
        return response.DBEngineVersions;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of orderable DB instance options for a specific
    /// engine and engine version.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">Name of the engine.</param>
    /// <param name="engineVersion">Version of the engine.</param>
    /// <returns>List of OrderableDBInstanceOptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<OrderableDBInstanceOption>>
DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(string engine, string engineVersion)
    {
        // Use a paginator to get a list of DB instance options.
        var results = new List<OrderableDBInstanceOption>();
        var paginateInstanceOptions =
_amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(
            new DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsRequest()
            {
                Engine = engine,
                EngineVersion = engineVersion,
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var instanceOptions in
paginateInstanceOptions.OrderableDBInstanceOptions)
        {
            results.Add(instanceOptions);
        }
        return results;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Returns a list of DB instances.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">Optional name of a specific DB
instance.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DB instances.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBInstance>> DescribeDBInstances(string
dbInstanceIdentifier = null)
    {
        var results = new List<DBInstance>();
        var instancesPaginator = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBInstances(
```

```
            new DescribeDBInstancesRequest
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var instances in instancesPaginator.DBInstances)
        {
            results.Add(instances);
        }
        return results;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Create an RDS DB instance with a particular set of properties. Use the
action DescribeDBInstancesAsync
    /// to determine when the DB instance is ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">Name for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">DB parameter group to associate with the
instance.</param>
    /// <param name="dbEngine">The engine for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="dbEngineVersion">Version for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="instanceClass">Class for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="allocatedStorage">The amount of storage in gibibytes (GiB) to
allocate to the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="adminName">Admin user name.</param>
    /// <param name="adminPassword">Admin user password.</param>
    /// <returns>DB instance object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBInstance> CreateDBInstance(string dbName, string
dbInstanceIdentifier,
        string parameterGroupName, string dbEngine, string dbEngineVersion,
        string instanceClass, int allocatedStorage, string adminName, string
adminPassword)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBInstanceAsync(
            new CreateDBInstanceRequest()
            {
                DBName = dbName,
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier,
                DBParameterGroupName = parameterGroupName,
                Engine = dbEngine,
```

```
                EngineVersion = dbEngineVersion,
                DBInstanceClass = instanceClass,
                AllocatedStorage = allocatedStorage,
                MasterUsername = adminName,
                MasterUserPassword = adminPassword
            });

        return response.DBInstance;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a particular DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>DB instance object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBInstance> DeleteDBInstance(string dbInstanceIdentifier)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBInstanceAsync(
            new DeleteDBInstanceRequest()
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier,
                SkipFinalSnapshot = true,
                DeleteAutomatedBackups = true
            });

        return response.DBInstance;
    }
```

Wrapper methods used by the scenario for DB parameter groups.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper methods to use Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) with
 parameter groups.
/// </summary>
public partial class RDSWrapper
{

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Get descriptions of DB parameter groups.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Optional name of the DB parameter group to describe.</
param>
    /// <returns>The list of DB parameter group descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBParameterGroup>> DescribeDBParameterGroups(string name
 = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBParameterGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeDBParameterGroupsRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name
            });
        return response.DBParameterGroups;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new DB parameter group. Use the action
 DescribeDBParameterGroupsAsync
    /// to determine when the DB parameter group is ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Name of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="family">Family of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="description">Description of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>The new DB parameter group.</returns>
    public async Task<DBParameterGroup> CreateDBParameterGroup(
        string name, string family, string description)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBParameterGroupAsync(
            new CreateDBParameterGroupRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name,
                DBParameterGroupFamily = family,
                Description = description
            });
        return response.DBParameterGroup;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Update a DB parameter group. Use the action DescribeDBParameterGroupsAsync
```

```
    /// to determine when the DB parameter group is ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Name of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="parameters">List of parameters. Maximum of 20 per request.</
param>
    /// <returns>The updated DB parameter group name.</returns>
    public async Task<string> ModifyDBParameterGroup(
        string name, List<Parameter> parameters)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.ModifyDBParameterGroupAsync(
            new ModifyDBParameterGroupRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name,
                Parameters = parameters,
            });
        return response.DBParameterGroupName;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a DB parameter group. The group cannot be a default DB parameter
 group
    /// or be associated with any DB instances.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Name of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteDBParameterGroup(string name)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBParameterGroupAsync(
            new DeleteDBParameterGroupRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name,
            });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of DB parameters from a specific parameter group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupName">Name of a specific DB parameter group.</
param>
```

```
    /// <param name="source">Optional source for selecting parameters.</param>
    /// <returns>List of parameter values.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Parameter>> DescribeDBParameters(string
 dbParameterGroupName, string source = null)
    {
        var results = new List<Parameter>();
        var paginateParameters = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBParameters(
            new DescribeDBParametersRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = dbParameterGroupName,
                Source = source
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var parameters in paginateParameters.Parameters)
        {
            results.Add(parameters);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

Wrapper methods used by the scenario for DB snapshot actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper methods to use Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) with
 snapshots.
/// </summary>
public partial class RDSWrapper
{

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a snapshot of a DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <param name="snapshotIdentifier">Identifier for the snapshot.</param>
    /// <returns>DB snapshot object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBSnapshot> CreateDBSnapshot(string dbInstanceIdentifier,
 string snapshotIdentifier)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBSnapshotAsync(
            new CreateDBSnapshotRequest()
```

```
            {
                DBSnapshotIdentifier = snapshotIdentifier,
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
            });

        return response.DBSnapshot;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Return a list of DB snapshots for a particular DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DB snapshots.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBSnapshot>> DescribeDBSnapshots(string
 dbInstanceIdentifier)
    {
        var results = new List<DBSnapshot>();
        var snapshotsPaginator = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBSnapshots(
            new DescribeDBSnapshotsRequest()
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
            });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var snapshots in snapshotsPaginator.DBSnapshots)
        {
            results.Add(snapshots);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateDBInstance
  - CreateDBParameterGroup
  - CreateDBSnapshot
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DeleteDBParameterGroup

- DescribeDBEngineVersions
- DescribeDBInstances
- DescribeDBParameterGroups
- DescribeDBParameters
- DescribeDBSnapshots
- DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
- ModifyDBParameterGroup

Actions

`CreateDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBInstance`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Create an RDS DB instance with a particular set of properties. Use the
action DescribeDBInstancesAsync
   /// to determine when the DB instance is ready to use.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="dbName">Name for the DB instance.</param>
   /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
   /// <param name="parameterGroupName">DB parameter group to associate with the
instance.</param>
   /// <param name="dbEngine">The engine for the DB instance.</param>
   /// <param name="dbEngineVersion">Version for the DB instance.</param>
   /// <param name="instanceClass">Class for the DB instance.</param>
   /// <param name="allocatedStorage">The amount of storage in gibibytes (GiB) to
allocate to the DB instance.</param>
   /// <param name="adminName">Admin user name.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="adminPassword">Admin user password.</param>
    /// <returns>DB instance object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBInstance> CreateDBInstance(string dbName, string
dbInstanceIdentifier,
        string parameterGroupName, string dbEngine, string dbEngineVersion,
        string instanceClass, int allocatedStorage, string adminName, string
adminPassword)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBInstanceAsync(
            new CreateDBInstanceRequest()
            {
                DBName = dbName,
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier,
                DBParameterGroupName = parameterGroupName,
                Engine = dbEngine,
                EngineVersion = dbEngineVersion,
                DBInstanceClass = instanceClass,
                AllocatedStorage = allocatedStorage,
                MasterUsername = adminName,
                MasterUserPassword = adminPassword
            });

        return response.DBInstance;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateDBParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBParameterGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new DB parameter group. Use the action
DescribeDBParameterGroupsAsync
    /// to determine when the DB parameter group is ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Name of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="family">Family of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="description">Description of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>The new DB parameter group.</returns>
    public async Task<DBParameterGroup> CreateDBParameterGroup(
        string name, string family, string description)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBParameterGroupAsync(
            new CreateDBParameterGroupRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name,
                DBParameterGroupFamily = family,
                Description = description
            });
        return response.DBParameterGroup;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateDBSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBSnapshot`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a snapshot of a DB instance.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <param name="snapshotIdentifier">Identifier for the snapshot.</param>
    /// <returns>DB snapshot object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBSnapshot> CreateDBSnapshot(string dbInstanceIdentifier,
 string snapshotIdentifier)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBSnapshotAsync(
            new CreateDBSnapshotRequest()
            {
                DBSnapshotIdentifier = snapshotIdentifier,
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
            });

        return response.DBSnapshot;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBSnapshot in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBInstance`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a particular DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>DB instance object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBInstance> DeleteDBInstance(string dbInstanceIdentifier)
    {
```

```
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBInstanceAsync(
            new DeleteDBInstanceRequest()
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier,
                SkipFinalSnapshot = true,
                DeleteAutomatedBackups = true
            });

        return response.DBInstance;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteDBParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBParameterGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a DB parameter group. The group cannot be a default DB parameter
group
    /// or be associated with any DB instances.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Name of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteDBParameterGroup(string name)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBParameterGroupAsync(
            new DeleteDBParameterGroupRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name,
```

```
            });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeDBEngineVersions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBEngineVersions`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of DB engine versions for a particular DB engine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">Name of the engine.</param>
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupFamily">Optional parameter group family name.</
param>
    /// <returns>List of DBEngineVersions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBEngineVersion>> DescribeDBEngineVersions(string engine,
        string dbParameterGroupFamily = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBEngineVersionsAsync(
            new DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest()
            {
                Engine = engine,
                DBParameterGroupFamily = dbParameterGroupFamily
            });
        return response.DBEngineVersions;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeDBInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBInstances`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Returns a list of DB instances.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">Optional name of a specific DB
instance.</param>
   /// <returns>List of DB instances.</returns>
   public async Task<List<DBInstance>> DescribeDBInstances(string
dbInstanceIdentifier = null)
   {
       var results = new List<DBInstance>();
       var instancesPaginator = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBInstances(
           new DescribeDBInstancesRequest
           {
               DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
           });
       // Get the entire list using the paginator.
       await foreach (var instances in instancesPaginator.DBInstances)
       {
           results.Add(instances);
       }
       return results;
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeDBParameterGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBParameterGroups`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get descriptions of DB parameter groups.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Optional name of the DB parameter group to describe.</
param>
    /// <returns>The list of DB parameter group descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBParameterGroup>> DescribeDBParameterGroups(string name
 = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBParameterGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeDBParameterGroupsRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name
            });
        return response.DBParameterGroups;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeDBParameters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBParameters`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of DB parameters from a specific parameter group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupName">Name of a specific DB parameter group.</
param>
    /// <param name="source">Optional source for selecting parameters.</param>
    /// <returns>List of parameter values.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Parameter>> DescribeDBParameters(string
 dbParameterGroupName, string source = null)
    {
        var results = new List<Parameter>();
        var paginateParameters = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBParameters(
            new DescribeDBParametersRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = dbParameterGroupName,
                Source = source
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var parameters in paginateParameters.Parameters)
        {
            results.Add(parameters);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameters in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeDBSnapshots`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBSnapshots`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Return a list of DB snapshots for a particular DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DB snapshots.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBSnapshot>> DescribeDBSnapshots(string
dbInstanceIdentifier)
    {
        var results = new List<DBSnapshot>();
        var snapshotsPaginator = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBSnapshots(
            new DescribeDBSnapshotsRequest()
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
            });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var snapshots in snapshotsPaginator.DBSnapshots)
        {
            results.Add(snapshots);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBSnapshots in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Get a list of orderable DB instance options for a specific
   /// engine and engine version.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="engine">Name of the engine.</param>
   /// <param name="engineVersion">Version of the engine.</param>
   /// <returns>List of OrderableDBInstanceOptions.</returns>
   public async Task<List<OrderableDBInstanceOption>>
DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(string engine, string engineVersion)
   {
       // Use a paginator to get a list of DB instance options.
       var results = new List<OrderableDBInstanceOption>();
       var paginateInstanceOptions =
_amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(
           new DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsRequest()
           {
               Engine = engine,
               EngineVersion = engineVersion,
           });
       // Get the entire list using the paginator.
       await foreach (var instanceOptions in
paginateInstanceOptions.OrderableDBInstanceOptions)
       {
           results.Add(instanceOptions);
       }
       return results;
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

ModifyDBParameterGroup

The following code example shows how to use ModifyDBParameterGroup.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update a DB parameter group. Use the action DescribeDBParameterGroupsAsync
    /// to determine when the DB parameter group is ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Name of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="parameters">List of parameters. Maximum of 20 per request.</
param>
    /// <returns>The updated DB parameter group name.</returns>
    public async Task<string> ModifyDBParameterGroup(
        string name, List<Parameter> parameters)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.ModifyDBParameterGroupAsync(
            new ModifyDBParameterGroupRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name,
                Parameters = parameters,
            });
        return response.DBParameterGroupName;
    }
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses a front end built with React.js to interact with a RESTful .NET backend.

- Integrate a React web application with AWS services.
- List, add, update, and delete items in an Aurora table.
- Send an email report of filtered work items using Amazon SES.
- Deploy and manage example resources with the included AWS CloudFormation script.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Serverless examples

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that connects to an RDS database. The function makes a simple database request and returns the result.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using .NET.

```
using System.Data;
using System.Text.Json;
using Amazon.Lambda.APIGatewayEvents;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using MySql.Data.MySqlClient;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace aws_rds;

public class InputModel
{
    public string key1 { get; set; }
    public string key2 { get; set; }
}

public class Function
{
    /// <summary>
    // Handles the Lambda function execution for connecting to RDS using IAM
 authentication.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="input">The input event data passed to the Lambda function</
param>
    /// <param name="context">The Lambda execution context that provides runtime
 information</param>
    /// <returns>A response object containing the execution result</returns>

    public async Task<APIGatewayProxyResponse>
 FunctionHandler(APIGatewayProxyRequest request, ILambdaContext context)
```

```
    {
        // Sample Input: {"body": "{\"key1\":\"20\", \"key2\":\"25\"}"}
        var input = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<InputModel>(request.Body);

        /// Obtain authentication token
        var authToken = RDSAuthTokenGenerator.GenerateAuthToken(
            Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_ENDPOINT"),
            Convert.ToInt32(Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_PORT")),
            Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_USERNAME")
        );

        /// Build the Connection String with the Token
        string connectionString =
$"Server={Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_ENDPOINT")};" +

$"Port={Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_PORT")};" +

$"Uid={Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_USERNAME")};" +
                                $"Pwd={authToken};";


        try
        {
            await using var connection = new MySqlConnection(connectionString);
            await connection.OpenAsync();

            const string sql = "SELECT @param1 + @param2 AS Sum";

            await using var command = new MySqlCommand(sql, connection);
            command.Parameters.AddWithValue("@param1", int.Parse(input.key1 ??
"0"));
            command.Parameters.AddWithValue("@param2", int.Parse(input.key2 ??
"0"));

            await using var reader = await command.ExecuteReaderAsync();
            if (await reader.ReadAsync())
            {
                int result = reader.GetInt32("Sum");

                //Sample Response: {"statusCode":200,"body":"{\"message\":\"The sum
is: 45\"}","isBase64Encoded":false}
                return new APIGatewayProxyResponse
                {
                    StatusCode = 200,
```

```
                    Body = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new { message = $"The sum is:
 {result}" })
                };
            }

        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
        }

        return new APIGatewayProxyResponse
        {
            StatusCode = 500,
            Body = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new { error = "Internal server error" })
        };
    }
}
```

Amazon RDS Data Service examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon RDS Data Service.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses a front end built with React.js to interact with a RESTful .NET backend.

- Integrate a React web application with AWS services.
- List, add, update, and delete items in an Aurora table.
- Send an email report of filtered work items using Amazon SES.
- Deploy and manage example resources with the included AWS CloudFormation script.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Amazon Rekognition examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon Rekognition.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CompareFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `CompareFaces`.

For more information, see Comparing faces in images.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to compare faces in two images.
/// </summary>
public class CompareFaces
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        float similarityThreshold = 70F;
        string sourceImage = "source.jpg";
        string targetImage = "target.jpg";

        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();
```

```
            Amazon.Rekognition.Model.Image imageSource = new
Amazon.Rekognition.Model.Image();

            try
            {
                using FileStream fs = new FileStream(sourceImage, FileMode.Open,
FileAccess.Read);
                byte[] data = new byte[fs.Length];
                fs.Read(data, 0, (int)fs.Length);
                imageSource.Bytes = new MemoryStream(data);
            }
            catch (Exception)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Failed to load source image: {sourceImage}");
                return;
            }

            Amazon.Rekognition.Model.Image imageTarget = new
Amazon.Rekognition.Model.Image();

            try
            {
                using FileStream fs = new FileStream(targetImage, FileMode.Open,
FileAccess.Read);
                byte[] data = new byte[fs.Length];
                data = new byte[fs.Length];
                fs.Read(data, 0, (int)fs.Length);
                imageTarget.Bytes = new MemoryStream(data);
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Failed to load target image: {targetImage}");
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                return;
            }

            var compareFacesRequest = new CompareFacesRequest
            {
                SourceImage = imageSource,
                TargetImage = imageTarget,
                SimilarityThreshold = similarityThreshold,
            };
```

```
            // Call operation
            var compareFacesResponse = await
rekognitionClient.CompareFacesAsync(compareFacesRequest);

            // Display results
            compareFacesResponse.FaceMatches.ForEach(match =>
            {
                ComparedFace face = match.Face;
                BoundingBox position = face.BoundingBox;
                Console.WriteLine($"Face at {position.Left} {position.Top} matches
with {match.Similarity}% confidence.");
            });

            Console.WriteLine($"Found {compareFacesResponse.UnmatchedFaces.Count}
face(s) that did not match.");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CompareFaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCollection`.

For more information, see Creating a collection.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
```

```
    /// Uses Amazon Rekognition to create a collection to which you can add
    /// faces using the IndexFaces operation.
    /// </summary>
    public class CreateCollection
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            string collectionId = "MyCollection";
            Console.WriteLine("Creating collection: " + collectionId);

            var createCollectionRequest = new CreateCollectionRequest
            {
                CollectionId = collectionId,
            };

            CreateCollectionResponse createCollectionResponse = await
rekognitionClient.CreateCollectionAsync(createCollectionRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"CollectionArn :
{createCollectionResponse.CollectionArn}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Status code :
{createCollectionResponse.StatusCode}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateCollection in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCollection`.

For more information, see Deleting a collection.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Rekognition;
    using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to delete an existing collection.
    /// </summary>
    public class DeleteCollection
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            string collectionId = "MyCollection";
            Console.WriteLine("Deleting collection: " + collectionId);

            var deleteCollectionRequest = new DeleteCollectionRequest()
            {
                CollectionId = collectionId,
            };

            var deleteCollectionResponse = await
rekognitionClient.DeleteCollectionAsync(deleteCollectionRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"{collectionId}:
{deleteCollectionResponse.StatusCode}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteCollection in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFaces`.

For more information, see Deleting faces from a collection.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to delete one or more faces from
/// a Rekognition collection.
/// </summary>
public class DeleteFaces
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string collectionId = "MyCollection";
        var faces = new List<string> { "xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" };

        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        var deleteFacesRequest = new DeleteFacesRequest()
        {
            CollectionId = collectionId,
            FaceIds = faces,
        };

        DeleteFacesResponse deleteFacesResponse = await
rekognitionClient.DeleteFacesAsync(deleteFacesRequest);
        deleteFacesResponse.DeletedFaces.ForEach(face =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"FaceID: {face}");
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteFaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCollection`.

For more information, see Describing a collection.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to describe the contents of a
/// collection.
/// </summary>
public class DescribeCollection
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        string collectionId = "MyCollection";
        Console.WriteLine($"Describing collection: {collectionId}");

        var describeCollectionRequest = new DescribeCollectionRequest()
        {
            CollectionId = collectionId,
        };
```

```
            var describeCollectionResponse = await
rekognitionClient.DescribeCollectionAsync(describeCollectionRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"Collection ARN:
{describeCollectionResponse.CollectionARN}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Face count:
{describeCollectionResponse.FaceCount}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Face model version:
{describeCollectionResponse.FaceModelVersion}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Created:
{describeCollectionResponse.CreationTimestamp}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeCollection in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DetectFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectFaces`.

For more information, see Detecting faces in an image.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to detect faces within an image
/// stored in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/// </summary>
public class DetectFaces
```

```
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string photo = "input.jpg";
            string bucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";

            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            var detectFacesRequest = new DetectFacesRequest()
            {
                Image = new Image()
                {
                    S3Object = new S3Object()
                    {
                        Name = photo,
                        Bucket = bucket,
                    },
                },

                // Attributes can be "ALL" or "DEFAULT".
                // "DEFAULT": BoundingBox, Confidence, Landmarks, Pose, and Quality.
                // "ALL": See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdkfornet/v3/apidocs/
items/Rekognition/TFaceDetail.html
                Attributes = new List<string>() { "ALL" },
            };

            try
            {
                DetectFacesResponse detectFacesResponse = await
 rekognitionClient.DetectFacesAsync(detectFacesRequest);
                bool hasAll = detectFacesRequest.Attributes.Contains("ALL");
                foreach (FaceDetail face in detectFacesResponse.FaceDetails)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"BoundingBox: top={face.BoundingBox.Left}
 left={face.BoundingBox.Top} width={face.BoundingBox.Width}
 height={face.BoundingBox.Height}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Confidence: {face.Confidence}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Landmarks: {face.Landmarks.Count}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Pose: pitch={face.Pose.Pitch}
 roll={face.Pose.Roll} yaw={face.Pose.Yaw}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Brightness:
 {face.Quality.Brightness}\tSharpness: {face.Quality.Sharpness}");

                    if (hasAll)
```

```
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"Estimated age is between
{face.AgeRange.Low} and {face.AgeRange.High} years old.");
                    }
                }
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

Display bounding box information for all faces in an image.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Drawing;
    using System.IO;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Rekognition;
    using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to display the details of the
    /// bounding boxes around the faces detected in an image.
    /// </summary>
    public class ImageOrientationBoundingBox
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string photo = @"D:\Development\AWS-Examples\Rekognition\target.jpg"; //
"photo.jpg";

            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            var image = new Amazon.Rekognition.Model.Image();
            try
            {
                using var fs = new FileStream(photo, FileMode.Open,
FileAccess.Read);
```

```
                byte[] data = null;
                data = new byte[fs.Length];
                fs.Read(data, 0, (int)fs.Length);
                image.Bytes = new MemoryStream(data);
            }
            catch (Exception)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Failed to load file " + photo);
                return;
            }

            int height;
            int width;

            // Used to extract original photo width/height
            using (var imageBitmap = new Bitmap(photo))
            {
                height = imageBitmap.Height;
                width = imageBitmap.Width;
            }

            Console.WriteLine("Image Information:");
            Console.WriteLine(photo);
            Console.WriteLine("Image Height: " + height);
            Console.WriteLine("Image Width: " + width);

            try
            {
                var detectFacesRequest = new DetectFacesRequest()
                {
                    Image = image,
                    Attributes = new List<string>() { "ALL" },
                };

                DetectFacesResponse detectFacesResponse = await
rekognitionClient.DetectFacesAsync(detectFacesRequest);
                detectFacesResponse.FaceDetails.ForEach(face =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Face:");
                    ShowBoundingBoxPositions(
                        height,
                        width,
                        face.BoundingBox,
                        detectFacesResponse.OrientationCorrection);
```

```
                    Console.WriteLine($"BoundingBox: top={face.BoundingBox.Left}
 left={face.BoundingBox.Top} width={face.BoundingBox.Width}
 height={face.BoundingBox.Height}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"The detected face is estimated to be between
 {face.AgeRange.Low} and {face.AgeRange.High} years old.\n");
                });
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Display the bounding box information for an image.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="imageHeight">The height of the image.</param>
        /// <param name="imageWidth">The width of the image.</param>
        /// <param name="box">The bounding box for a face found within the image.</
param>
        /// <param name="rotation">The rotation of the face's bounding box.</param>
        public static void ShowBoundingBoxPositions(int imageHeight, int imageWidth,
 BoundingBox box, string rotation)
        {
            float left;
            float top;

            if (rotation == null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("No estimated orientation. Check Exif data.");
                return;
            }

            // Calculate face position based on image orientation.
            switch (rotation)
            {
                case "ROTATE_0":
                    left = imageWidth * box.Left;
                    top = imageHeight * box.Top;
                    break;
                case "ROTATE_90":
                    left = imageHeight * (1 - (box.Top + box.Height));
                    top = imageWidth * box.Left;
```

```
                    break;
                case "ROTATE_180":
                    left = imageWidth - (imageWidth * (box.Left + box.Width));
                    top = imageHeight * (1 - (box.Top + box.Height));
                    break;
                case "ROTATE_270":
                    left = imageHeight * box.Top;
                    top = imageWidth * (1 - box.Left - box.Width);
                    break;
                default:
                    Console.WriteLine("No estimated orientation information. Check
Exif data.");
                    return;
            }

            // Display face location information.
            Console.WriteLine($"Left: {left}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Top: {top}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Face Width: {imageWidth * box.Width}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Face Height: {imageHeight * box.Height}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectFaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DetectLabels`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectLabels`.

For more information, see Detecting labels in an image.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
```

```
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to detect labels within an image
/// stored in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/// </summary>
public class DetectLabels
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string photo = "del_river_02092020_01.jpg"; // "input.jpg";
        string bucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"; // "bucket";

        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        var detectlabelsRequest = new DetectLabelsRequest
        {
            Image = new Image()
            {
                S3Object = new S3Object()
                {
                    Name = photo,
                    Bucket = bucket,
                },
            },
            MaxLabels = 10,
            MinConfidence = 75F,
        };

        try
        {
            DetectLabelsResponse detectLabelsResponse = await
rekognitionClient.DetectLabelsAsync(detectlabelsRequest);
            Console.WriteLine("Detected labels for " + photo);
            foreach (Label label in detectLabelsResponse.Labels)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Name: {label.Name} Confidence:
{label.Confidence}");
            }
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
```

```
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

Detect labels in an image file stored on your computer.

```
    using System;
    using System.IO;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Rekognition;
    using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to detect labels within an image
    /// stored locally.
    /// </summary>
    public class DetectLabelsLocalFile
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string photo = "input.jpg";

            var image = new Amazon.Rekognition.Model.Image();
            try
            {
                using var fs = new FileStream(photo, FileMode.Open,
FileAccess.Read);
                byte[] data = null;
                data = new byte[fs.Length];
                fs.Read(data, 0, (int)fs.Length);
                image.Bytes = new MemoryStream(data);
            }
            catch (Exception)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Failed to load file " + photo);
                return;
            }

            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();
```

```
            var detectlabelsRequest = new DetectLabelsRequest
            {
                Image = image,
                MaxLabels = 10,
                MinConfidence = 77F,
            };

            try
            {
                DetectLabelsResponse detectLabelsResponse = await
rekognitionClient.DetectLabelsAsync(detectlabelsRequest);
                Console.WriteLine($"Detected labels for {photo}");
                foreach (Label label in detectLabelsResponse.Labels)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"{label.Name}: {label.Confidence}");
                }
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectLabels in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DetectModerationLabels`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectModerationLabels`.

For more information, see Detecting inappropriate images.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to detect unsafe content in a
/// JPEG or PNG format image.
/// </summary>
public class DetectModerationLabels
{
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        string photo = "input.jpg";
        string bucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";

        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        var detectModerationLabelsRequest = new DetectModerationLabelsRequest()
        {
            Image = new Image()
            {
                S3Object = new S3Object()
                {
                    Name = photo,
                    Bucket = bucket,
                },
            },
            MinConfidence = 60F,
        };

        try
        {
            var detectModerationLabelsResponse = await
rekognitionClient.DetectModerationLabelsAsync(detectModerationLabelsRequest);
            Console.WriteLine("Detected labels for " + photo);
            foreach (ModerationLabel label in
detectModerationLabelsResponse.ModerationLabels)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Label: {label.Name}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Confidence: {label.Confidence}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Parent: {label.ParentName}");
            }
```

```
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectModerationLabels in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DetectText`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectText`.

For more information, see Detecting text in an image.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to detect text in an image. The
/// example was created using the AWS SDK for .NET version 3.7 and .NET
/// Core 5.0.
/// </summary>
public class DetectText
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string photo = "Dad_photographer.jpg"; // "input.jpg";
        string bucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"; // "bucket";
```

```
            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            var detectTextRequest = new DetectTextRequest()
            {
                Image = new Image()
                {
                    S3Object = new S3Object()
                    {
                        Name = photo,
                        Bucket = bucket,
                    },
                },
            };

            try
            {
                DetectTextResponse detectTextResponse = await
rekognitionClient.DetectTextAsync(detectTextRequest);
                Console.WriteLine($"Detected lines and words for {photo}");
                detectTextResponse.TextDetections.ForEach(text =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Detected: {text.DetectedText}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Confidence: {text.Confidence}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Id : {text.Id}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Parent Id: {text.ParentId}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Type: {text.Type}");
                });
            }
            catch (Exception e)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectText in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetCelebrityInfo`

The following code example shows how to use `GetCelebrityInfo`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition to retrieve information about the
/// celebrity identified by the supplied celebrity Id.
/// </summary>
public class CelebrityInfo
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string celebId = "nnnnnnnn";

        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        var celebrityInfoRequest = new GetCelebrityInfoRequest
        {
            Id = celebId,
        };

        Console.WriteLine($"Getting information for celebrity: {celebId}");

        var celebrityInfoResponse = await
rekognitionClient.GetCelebrityInfoAsync(celebrityInfoRequest);

        // Display celebrity information.
        Console.WriteLine($"celebrity name: {celebrityInfoResponse.Name}");
        Console.WriteLine("Further information (if available):");
        celebrityInfoResponse.Urls.ForEach(url =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine(url);
        });
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetCelebrityInfo in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`IndexFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `IndexFaces`.

For more information, see Adding faces to a collection.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to detect faces in an image
/// that has been uploaded to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
/// bucket and then adds the information to a collection.
/// </summary>
public class AddFaces
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string collectionId = "MyCollection2";
        string bucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        string photo = "input.jpg";

        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();
```

```
            var image = new Image
            {
                S3Object = new S3Object
                {
                    Bucket = bucket,
                    Name = photo,
                },
            };

            var indexFacesRequest = new IndexFacesRequest
            {
                Image = image,
                CollectionId = collectionId,
                ExternalImageId = photo,
                DetectionAttributes = new List<string>() { "ALL" },
            };

            IndexFacesResponse indexFacesResponse = await
rekognitionClient.IndexFacesAsync(indexFacesRequest);

            Console.WriteLine($"{photo} added");
            foreach (FaceRecord faceRecord in indexFacesResponse.FaceRecords)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Face detected: Faceid is
{faceRecord.Face.FaceId}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see IndexFaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListCollections`

The following code example shows how to use `ListCollections`.

For more information, see Listing collections.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses Amazon Rekognition to list the collection IDs in the
/// current account.
/// </summary>
public class ListCollections
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        Console.WriteLine("Listing collections");
        int limit = 10;

        var listCollectionsRequest = new ListCollectionsRequest
        {
            MaxResults = limit,
        };

        var listCollectionsResponse = new ListCollectionsResponse();

        do
        {
            if (listCollectionsResponse is not null)
            {
                listCollectionsRequest.NextToken =
listCollectionsResponse.NextToken;
            }
```

```
                listCollectionsResponse = await
rekognitionClient.ListCollectionsAsync(listCollectionsRequest);

                listCollectionsResponse.CollectionIds.ForEach(id =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(id);
                });
            }
            while (listCollectionsResponse.NextToken is not null);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListCollections in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFaces`.

For more information, see Listing faces in a collection.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to retrieve the list of faces
/// stored in a collection.
/// </summary>
public class ListFaces
{
```

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string collectionId = "MyCollection2";

            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            var listFacesResponse = new ListFacesResponse();
            Console.WriteLine($"Faces in collection {collectionId}");

            var listFacesRequest = new ListFacesRequest
            {
                CollectionId = collectionId,
                MaxResults = 1,
            };

            do
            {
                listFacesResponse = await
rekognitionClient.ListFacesAsync(listFacesRequest);
                listFacesResponse.Faces.ForEach(face =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(face.FaceId);
                });

                listFacesRequest.NextToken = listFacesResponse.NextToken;
            }
            while (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(listFacesResponse.NextToken));
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListFaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`RecognizeCelebrities`

The following code example shows how to use `RecognizeCelebrities`.

For more information, see Recognizing celebrities in an image.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition to identify celebrities in a photo.
/// </summary>
public class CelebritiesInImage
{
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        string photo = "moviestars.jpg";

        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        var recognizeCelebritiesRequest = new RecognizeCelebritiesRequest();

        var img = new Amazon.Rekognition.Model.Image();
        byte[] data = null;
        try
        {
            using var fs = new FileStream(photo, FileMode.Open,
FileAccess.Read);
            data = new byte[fs.Length];
            fs.Read(data, 0, (int)fs.Length);
        }
        catch (Exception)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Failed to load file {photo}");
            return;
        }
```

```
            img.Bytes = new MemoryStream(data);
            recognizeCelebritiesRequest.Image = img;

            Console.WriteLine($"Looking for celebrities in image {photo}\n");

            var recognizeCelebritiesResponse = await
rekognitionClient.RecognizeCelebritiesAsync(recognizeCelebritiesRequest);

            Console.WriteLine($"{recognizeCelebritiesResponse.CelebrityFaces.Count}
celebrity(s) were recognized.\n");
            recognizeCelebritiesResponse.CelebrityFaces.ForEach(celeb =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Celebrity recognized: {celeb.Name}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Celebrity ID: {celeb.Id}");
                BoundingBox boundingBox = celeb.Face.BoundingBox;
                Console.WriteLine($"position: {boundingBox.Left}
{boundingBox.Top}");
                Console.WriteLine("Further information (if available):");
                celeb.Urls.ForEach(url =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(url);
                });
            });


Console.WriteLine($"{recognizeCelebritiesResponse.UnrecognizedFaces.Count} face(s)
were unrecognized.");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RecognizeCelebrities in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`SearchFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `SearchFaces`.

For more information, see Searching for a face (face ID).

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to find faces in an image that
/// match the face Id provided in the method request.
/// </summary>
public class SearchFacesMatchingId
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string collectionId = "MyCollection";
        string faceId = "xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx";

        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        // Search collection for faces matching the face id.
        var searchFacesRequest = new SearchFacesRequest
        {
            CollectionId = collectionId,
            FaceId = faceId,
            FaceMatchThreshold = 70F,
            MaxFaces = 2,
        };

        SearchFacesResponse searchFacesResponse = await
rekognitionClient.SearchFacesAsync(searchFacesRequest);

        Console.WriteLine("Face matching faceId " + faceId);

        Console.WriteLine("Matche(s): ");
        searchFacesResponse.FaceMatches.ForEach(face =>
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"FaceId: {face.Face.FaceId} Similarity:
{face.Similarity}");
            });
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SearchFaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`SearchFacesByImage`

The following code example shows how to use `SearchFacesByImage`.

For more information, see Searching for a face (image).

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to search for images matching those
/// in a collection.
/// </summary>
public class SearchFacesMatchingImage
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string collectionId = "MyCollection";
        string bucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        string photo = "input.jpg";
```

```
            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            // Get an image object from S3 bucket.
            var image = new Image()
            {
                S3Object = new S3Object()
                {
                    Bucket = bucket,
                    Name = photo,
                },
            };

            var searchFacesByImageRequest = new SearchFacesByImageRequest()
            {
                CollectionId = collectionId,
                Image = image,
                FaceMatchThreshold = 70F,
                MaxFaces = 2,
            };

            SearchFacesByImageResponse searchFacesByImageResponse = await
rekognitionClient.SearchFacesByImageAsync(searchFacesByImageRequest);

            Console.WriteLine("Faces matching largest face in image from " + photo);
            searchFacesByImageResponse.FaceMatches.ForEach(face =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"FaceId: {face.Face.FaceId}, Similarity:
{face.Similarity}");
            });
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SearchFacesByImage in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Detect objects in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect objects by category in images.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition .NET API to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Route 53 domain registration examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Route 53 domain registration.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Get started
- Basics
- Actions

Get started

Hello Route 53 domain registration

The following code example shows how to get started using Route 53 domain registration.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public static class HelloRoute53Domains
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Use the AWS .NET Core Setup package to set up dependency injection for
 the Amazon Route 53 domain registration service.
```

```
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default profile.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonRoute53Domains>()
            ).Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        var route53Client =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonRoute53Domains>();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        var response = await route53Client.ListPricesAsync(new ListPricesRequest
{ Tld = "com" });
        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon Route 53 Domains! Following are prices
for .com domain operations:");
        var comPrices = response.Prices.FirstOrDefault();
        if (comPrices != null)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tRegistration: {comPrices.RegistrationPrice?.Price}
{comPrices.RegistrationPrice?.Currency}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tRenewal: {comPrices.RenewalPrice?.Price}
{comPrices.RenewalPrice?.Currency}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPrices in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- List current domains, and list operations in the past year.
- View billing for the past year, and view prices for domain types.
- Get domain suggestions.
- Check domain availability and transferability.
- Optionally, request a domain registration.

- Get an operation detail.
- Optionally, get a domain detail.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
public static class Route53DomainScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This .NET example performs the following tasks:
        1. List current domains.
        2. List operations in the past year.
        3. View billing for the account in the past year.
        4. View prices for domain types.
        5. Get domain suggestions.
        6. Check domain availability.
        7. Check domain transferability.
        8. Optionally, request a domain registration.
        9. Get an operation detail.
       10. Optionally, get a domain detail.
   */

    private static Route53Wrapper _route53Wrapper = null!;
    private static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
```

```
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
                    .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonRoute53Domains>()
                .AddTransient<Route53Wrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();

        var logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
        {
            builder.AddConsole();
        }).CreateLogger(typeof(Route53DomainScenario));

        _route53Wrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<Route53Wrapper>();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon Route 53 domains example
scenario.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        try
        {
            await ListDomains();
            await ListOperations();
            await ListBillingRecords();
            await ListPrices();
            await ListDomainSuggestions();
            await CheckDomainAvailability();
            await CheckDomainTransferability();
            var operationId = await RequestDomainRegistration();
            await GetOperationalDetail(operationId);
            await GetDomainDetails();
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
```

```
            logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem executing the scenario.");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("The Amazon Route 53 domains example scenario is
complete.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List account registered domains.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListDomains()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"1. List account domains.");
        var domains = await _route53Wrapper.ListDomains();
        for (int i = 0; i < domains.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {domains[i].DomainName}");
        }

        if (!domains.Any())
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\tNo domains found in this account.");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List domain operations in the past year.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListOperations()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"2. List account domain operations in the past year.");
        var operations = await _route53Wrapper.ListOperations(
            DateTime.Today.AddYears(-1));
        for (int i = 0; i < operations.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tOperation Id: {operations[i].OperationId}");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"\tStatus: {operations[i].Status}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDate: {operations[i].SubmittedDate}");
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List billing in the past year.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListBillingRecords()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"3. View billing for the account in the past year.");
        var billingRecords = await _route53Wrapper.ViewBilling(
            DateTime.Today.AddYears(-1),
            DateTime.Today);
        for (int i = 0; i < billingRecords.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tBill Date:
{billingRecords[i].BillDate.ToShortDateString()}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tOperation: {billingRecords[i].Operation}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tPrice: {billingRecords[i].Price}");
        }
        if (!billingRecords.Any())
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\tNo billing records found in this account for the
past year.");
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List prices for a few domain types.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListPrices()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"4. View prices for domain types.");
        var domainTypes = new List<string> { "net", "com", "org", "co" };

        var prices = await _route53Wrapper.ListPrices(domainTypes);
        foreach (var pr in prices)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tName: {pr.Name}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tRegistration: {pr.RegistrationPrice?.Price}
{pr.RegistrationPrice?.Currency}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tRenewal: {pr.RenewalPrice?.Price}
{pr.RenewalPrice?.Currency}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tTransfer: {pr.TransferPrice?.Price}
{pr.TransferPrice?.Currency}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tChange Ownership: {pr.ChangeOwnershipPrice?.Price}
{pr.ChangeOwnershipPrice?.Currency}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tRestoration: {pr.RestorationPrice?.Price}
{pr.RestorationPrice?.Currency}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List domain suggestions for a domain name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListDomainSuggestions()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"5. Get domain suggestions.");
        string? domainName = null;
        while (domainName == null || string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(domainName))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Enter a domain name to get available domain
suggestions.");
            domainName = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        var suggestions = await _route53Wrapper.GetDomainSuggestions(domainName,
true, 5);
        foreach (var suggestion in suggestions)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tSuggestion Name: {suggestion.DomainName}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tAvailability: {suggestion.Availability}");
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Check availability for a domain name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CheckDomainAvailability()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"6. Check domain availability.");
        string? domainName = null;
        while (domainName == null || string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(domainName))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Enter a domain name to check domain availability.");
            domainName = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        var availability = await
_route53Wrapper.CheckDomainAvailability(domainName);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tAvailability: {availability}");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Check transferability for a domain name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CheckDomainTransferability()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"7. Check domain transferability.");
        string? domainName = null;
        while (domainName == null || string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(domainName))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Enter a domain name to check domain
transferability.");
            domainName = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        var transferability = await
_route53Wrapper.CheckDomainTransferability(domainName);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tTransferability: {transferability}");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Check transferability for a domain name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task<string?> RequestDomainRegistration()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"8. Optionally, request a domain registration.");

        Console.WriteLine($"\tNote: This example uses domain request settings in
 settings.json.");
        Console.WriteLine($"\tTo change the domain registration settings, set the
 values in that file.");
        Console.WriteLine($"\tRemember, registering an actual domain will incur an
 account billing cost.");
        Console.WriteLine($"\tWould you like to begin a domain registration? (y/
n)");
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        if (ynResponse != null && ynResponse.Equals("y",
 StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase))
        {
            string domainName = _configuration["DomainName"];
            ContactDetail contact = new ContactDetail();
            contact.CountryCode =
 CountryCode.FindValue(_configuration["Contact:CountryCode"]);
            contact.ContactType =
 ContactType.FindValue(_configuration["Contact:ContactType"]);

            _configuration.GetSection("Contact").Bind(contact);

            var operationId = await _route53Wrapper.RegisterDomain(
                domainName,
                Convert.ToBoolean(_configuration["AutoRenew"]),
                Convert.ToInt32(_configuration["DurationInYears"]),
                contact);
            if (operationId != null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"\tRegistration requested. Operation Id: {operationId}");
            }

            return operationId;
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
        return null;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get details for an operation.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task GetOperationalDetail(string? operationId)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"9. Get an operation detail.");

        var operationDetails =
            await _route53Wrapper.GetOperationDetail(operationId);

        Console.WriteLine(operationDetails);

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Optionally, get details for a registered domain.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task<string?> GetDomainDetails()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"10. Get details on a domain.");

        Console.WriteLine($"\tNote: you must have a registered domain to get
details.");
        Console.WriteLine($"\tWould you like to get domain details? (y/n)");
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        if (ynResponse != null && ynResponse.Equals("y",
StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase))
        {
            string? domainName = null;
            while (domainName == null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\tEnter a domain name to get details.");
                domainName = Console.ReadLine();
            }

            var domainDetails = await _route53Wrapper.GetDomainDetail(domainName);
```

```
            Console.WriteLine(domainDetails);
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return null;
    }
}
```

Wrapper methods used by the scenario for Route 53 domain registration actions.

```
public class Route53Wrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonRoute53Domains _amazonRoute53Domains;
    private readonly ILogger<Route53Wrapper> _logger;
    public Route53Wrapper(IAmazonRoute53Domains amazonRoute53Domains,
 ILogger<Route53Wrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonRoute53Domains = amazonRoute53Domains;
        _logger = logger;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List prices for domain type operations.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domainTypes">Domain types to include in the results.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of domain prices.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DomainPrice>> ListPrices(List<string> domainTypes)
    {
        var results = new List<DomainPrice>();
        var paginatePrices = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ListPrices(new
 ListPricesRequest());
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var prices in paginatePrices.Prices)
        {
            results.Add(prices);
        }
        return results.Where(p => domainTypes.Contains(p.Name)).ToList();
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Check the availability of a domain name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domain">The domain to check for availability.</param>
    /// <returns>An availability result string.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CheckDomainAvailability(string domain)
    {
        var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.CheckDomainAvailabilityAsync(
            new CheckDomainAvailabilityRequest
            {
                DomainName = domain
            }
        );
        return result.Availability.Value;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Check the transferability of a domain name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domain">The domain to check for transferability.</param>
    /// <returns>A transferability result string.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CheckDomainTransferability(string domain)
    {
        var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.CheckDomainTransferabilityAsync(
            new CheckDomainTransferabilityRequest
            {
                DomainName = domain
            }
        );
        return result.Transferability.Transferable.Value;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of suggestions for a given domain.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domain">The domain to check for suggestions.</param>
    /// <param name="onlyAvailable">If true, only returns available domains.</param>
    /// <param name="suggestionCount">The number of suggestions to return. Defaults
 to the max of 50.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of domain suggestions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DomainSuggestion>> GetDomainSuggestions(string domain,
 bool onlyAvailable, int suggestionCount = 50)
```

```
    {
        var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.GetDomainSuggestionsAsync(
            new GetDomainSuggestionsRequest
            {
                DomainName = domain,
                OnlyAvailable = onlyAvailable,
                SuggestionCount = suggestionCount
            }
        );
        return result.SuggestionsList;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get details for a domain action operation.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="operationId">The operational Id.</param>
    /// <returns>A string describing the operational details.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetOperationDetail(string? operationId)
    {
        if (operationId == null)
            return "Unable to get operational details because ID is null.";
        try
        {
            var operationDetails =
                await _amazonRoute53Domains.GetOperationDetailAsync(
                    new GetOperationDetailRequest
                    {
                        OperationId = operationId
                    }
                );

            var details = $"\tOperation {operationId}:\n" +
                          $"\tFor domain {operationDetails.DomainName} on
{operationDetails.SubmittedDate.ToShortDateString()}.\n" +
                          $"\tMessage is {operationDetails.Message}.\n" +
                          $"\tStatus is {operationDetails.Status}.\n";

            return details;
        }
        catch (AmazonRoute53DomainsException ex)
        {
            return $"Unable to get operation details. Here's why: {ex.Message}.";
        }
```

```
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Initiate a domain registration request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contact">Contact details.</param>
    /// <param name="domainName">The domain name to register.</param>
    /// <param name="autoRenew">True if the domain should automatically renew.</
param>
    /// <param name="duration">The duration in years for the domain registration.</
param>
    /// <returns>The operation Id.</returns>
    public async Task<string?> RegisterDomain(string domainName, bool autoRenew, int
 duration, ContactDetail contact)
    {
        // This example uses the same contact information for admin, registrant, and
 tech contacts.
        try
        {
            var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.RegisterDomainAsync(
                new RegisterDomainRequest()
                {
                    AdminContact = contact,
                    RegistrantContact = contact,
                    TechContact = contact,
                    DomainName = domainName,
                    AutoRenew = autoRenew,
                    DurationInYears = duration,
                    PrivacyProtectAdminContact = false,
                    PrivacyProtectRegistrantContact = false,
                    PrivacyProtectTechContact = false
                }
            );
            return result.OperationId;
        }
        catch (InvalidInputException)
        {
            _logger.LogInformation($"Unable to request registration for domain
 {domainName}");
            return null;
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// View billing records for the account between a start and end date.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="startDate">The start date for billing results.</param>
    /// <param name="endDate">The end date for billing results.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of billing records.</returns>
    public async Task<List<BillingRecord>> ViewBilling(DateTime startDate, DateTime
endDate)
    {
        var results = new List<BillingRecord>();
        var paginateBilling = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ViewBilling(
            new ViewBillingRequest()
            {
                Start = startDate,
                End = endDate
            });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var billingRecords in paginateBilling.BillingRecords)
        {
            results.Add(billingRecords);
        }
        return results;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List the domains for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A collection of domain summary records.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DomainSummary>> ListDomains()
    {
        var results = new List<DomainSummary>();
        var paginateDomains = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ListDomains(
            new ListDomainsRequest());

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var domain in paginateDomains.Domains)
        {
            results.Add(domain);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List operations for the account that are submitted after a specified date.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A collection of operation summary records.</returns>
    public async Task<List<OperationSummary>> ListOperations(DateTime
 submittedSince)
    {
        var results = new List<OperationSummary>();
        var paginateOperations = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ListOperations(
            new ListOperationsRequest()
            {
                SubmittedSince = submittedSince
            });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var operations in paginateOperations.Operations)
        {
            results.Add(operations);
        }
        return results;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get details for a domain.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A string with detail information about the domain.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetDomainDetail(string domainName)
    {
        try
        {
            var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.GetDomainDetailAsync(
                new GetDomainDetailRequest()
                {
                    DomainName = domainName
                });
            var details = $"\tDomain {domainName}:\n" +
                          $"\tCreated on {result.CreationDate.ToShortDateString()}.
\n" +
                          $"\tAdmin contact is {result.AdminContact.Email}.\n" +
                          $"\tAuto-renew is {result.AutoRenew}.\n";
```

```
            return details;
        }
        catch (InvalidInputException)
        {
            return $"Domain {domainName} was not found in your account.";
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CheckDomainAvailability
  - CheckDomainTransferability
  - GetDomainDetail
  - GetDomainSuggestions
  - GetOperationDetail
  - ListDomains
  - ListOperations
  - ListPrices
  - RegisterDomain
  - ViewBilling

Actions

`CheckDomainAvailability`

The following code example shows how to use `CheckDomainAvailability`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Check the availability of a domain name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domain">The domain to check for availability.</param>
    /// <returns>An availability result string.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CheckDomainAvailability(string domain)
    {
        var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.CheckDomainAvailabilityAsync(
            new CheckDomainAvailabilityRequest
            {
                DomainName = domain
            }
        );
        return result.Availability.Value;
    }
```

- For API details, see CheckDomainAvailability in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CheckDomainTransferability`

The following code example shows how to use `CheckDomainTransferability`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Check the transferability of a domain name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domain">The domain to check for transferability.</param>
    /// <returns>A transferability result string.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CheckDomainTransferability(string domain)
    {
        var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.CheckDomainTransferabilityAsync(
            new CheckDomainTransferabilityRequest
```

```
            {
                DomainName = domain
            }
        );
        return result.Transferability.Transferable.Value;
    }
```

- For API details, see CheckDomainTransferability in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetDomainDetail`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDomainDetail`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get details for a domain.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A string with detail information about the domain.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetDomainDetail(string domainName)
    {
        try
        {
            var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.GetDomainDetailAsync(
                new GetDomainDetailRequest()
                {
                    DomainName = domainName
                });
            var details = $"\tDomain {domainName}:\n" +
                          $"\tCreated on {result.CreationDate.ToShortDateString()}.
\n" +
                          $"\tAdmin contact is {result.AdminContact.Email}.\n" +
                          $"\tAuto-renew is {result.AutoRenew}.\n";
```

```
            return details;
        }
        catch (InvalidInputException)
        {
            return $"Domain {domainName} was not found in your account.";
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetDomainDetail in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetDomainSuggestions`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDomainSuggestions`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of suggestions for a given domain.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domain">The domain to check for suggestions.</param>
    /// <param name="onlyAvailable">If true, only returns available domains.</param>
    /// <param name="suggestionCount">The number of suggestions to return. Defaults
to the max of 50.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of domain suggestions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DomainSuggestion>> GetDomainSuggestions(string domain,
bool onlyAvailable, int suggestionCount = 50)
    {
        var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.GetDomainSuggestionsAsync(
            new GetDomainSuggestionsRequest
            {
                DomainName = domain,
                OnlyAvailable = onlyAvailable,
```

```
                SuggestionCount = suggestionCount
            }
        );
        return result.SuggestionsList;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetDomainSuggestions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetOperationDetail`

The following code example shows how to use `GetOperationDetail`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get details for a domain action operation.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="operationId">The operational Id.</param>
    /// <returns>A string describing the operational details.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetOperationDetail(string? operationId)
    {
        if (operationId == null)
            return "Unable to get operational details because ID is null.";
        try
        {
            var operationDetails =
                await _amazonRoute53Domains.GetOperationDetailAsync(
                    new GetOperationDetailRequest
                    {
                        OperationId = operationId
                    }
                );

            var details = $"\tOperation {operationId}:\n" +
```

```
                            $"\tFor domain {operationDetails.DomainName} on
{operationDetails.SubmittedDate.ToShortDateString()}.\n" +
                            $"\tMessage is {operationDetails.Message}.\n" +
                            $"\tStatus is {operationDetails.Status}.\n";

            return details;
        }
        catch (AmazonRoute53DomainsException ex)
        {
            return $"Unable to get operation details. Here's why: {ex.Message}.";
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetOperationDetail in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListDomains`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDomains`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List the domains for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A collection of domain summary records.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DomainSummary>> ListDomains()
    {
        var results = new List<DomainSummary>();
        var paginateDomains = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ListDomains(
            new ListDomainsRequest());

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var domain in paginateDomains.Domains)
        {
```

```
            results.Add(domain);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListDomains in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListOperations`

The following code example shows how to use `ListOperations`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List operations for the account that are submitted after a specified date.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A collection of operation summary records.</returns>
    public async Task<List<OperationSummary>> ListOperations(DateTime
submittedSince)
    {
        var results = new List<OperationSummary>();
        var paginateOperations = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ListOperations(
            new ListOperationsRequest()
            {
                SubmittedSince = submittedSince
            });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var operations in paginateOperations.Operations)
        {
            results.Add(operations);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListOperations in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListPrices`

The following code example shows how to use `ListPrices`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List prices for domain type operations.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domainTypes">Domain types to include in the results.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of domain prices.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DomainPrice>> ListPrices(List<string> domainTypes)
    {
        var results = new List<DomainPrice>();
        var paginatePrices = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ListPrices(new
ListPricesRequest());
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var prices in paginatePrices.Prices)
        {
            results.Add(prices);
        }
        return results.Where(p => domainTypes.Contains(p.Name)).ToList();
    }
```

- For API details, see ListPrices in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`RegisterDomain`

The following code example shows how to use `RegisterDomain`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Initiate a domain registration request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contact">Contact details.</param>
    /// <param name="domainName">The domain name to register.</param>
    /// <param name="autoRenew">True if the domain should automatically renew.</
param>
    /// <param name="duration">The duration in years for the domain registration.</
param>
    /// <returns>The operation Id.</returns>
    public async Task<string?> RegisterDomain(string domainName, bool autoRenew, int
 duration, ContactDetail contact)
    {
        // This example uses the same contact information for admin, registrant, and
 tech contacts.
        try
        {
            var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.RegisterDomainAsync(
                new RegisterDomainRequest()
                {
                    AdminContact = contact,
                    RegistrantContact = contact,
                    TechContact = contact,
                    DomainName = domainName,
                    AutoRenew = autoRenew,
                    DurationInYears = duration,
                    PrivacyProtectAdminContact = false,
                    PrivacyProtectRegistrantContact = false,
                    PrivacyProtectTechContact = false
                }
            );
            return result.OperationId;
        }
```

```
        catch (InvalidInputException)
        {
            _logger.LogInformation($"Unable to request registration for domain
{domainName}");
            return null;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RegisterDomain in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ViewBilling`

The following code example shows how to use `ViewBilling`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// View billing records for the account between a start and end date.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="startDate">The start date for billing results.</param>
    /// <param name="endDate">The end date for billing results.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of billing records.</returns>
    public async Task<List<BillingRecord>> ViewBilling(DateTime startDate, DateTime
endDate)
    {
        var results = new List<BillingRecord>();
        var paginateBilling = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ViewBilling(
            new ViewBillingRequest()
            {
                Start = startDate,
                End = endDate
            });
```

```
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var billingRecords in paginateBilling.BillingRecords)
        {
            results.Add(billingRecords);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see ViewBilling in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon S3 examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon S3.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Actions

`CopyObject`

The following code example shows how to use `CopyObject`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Copy an object using a conditional request.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Copies an object from one Amazon S3 bucket to another with a conditional
 request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sourceKey">The key of the source object to copy.</param>
    /// <param name="destKey">The key of the destination object.</param>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The source bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="destBucket">The destination bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionType">The type of condition to apply, e.g.
 'CopySourceIfMatch', 'CopySourceIfNoneMatch', 'CopySourceIfModifiedSince',
 'CopySourceIfUnmodifiedSince'.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionDateValue">The value to use for the condition for
 dates.</param>
    /// <param name="etagConditionalValue">The value to use for the condition for
 etags.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the conditional copy is successful, False otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> CopyObjectConditional(string sourceKey, string destKey,
 string sourceBucket, string destBucket,
        S3ConditionType conditionType, DateTime? conditionDateValue = null, string?
 etagConditionalValue = null)
    {
        try
        {
            var copyObjectRequest = new CopyObjectRequest
            {
                DestinationBucket = destBucket,
                DestinationKey = destKey,
                SourceBucket = sourceBucket,
                SourceKey = sourceKey
            };

            switch (conditionType)
```

```
            {
                case S3ConditionType.IfMatch:
                    copyObjectRequest.ETagToMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfNoneMatch:
                    copyObjectRequest.ETagToNotMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfModifiedSince:
                    copyObjectRequest.ModifiedSinceDateUtc =
conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfUnmodifiedSince:
                    copyObjectRequest.UnmodifiedSinceDateUtc =
conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                default:
                    throw new ArgumentOutOfRangeException(nameof(conditionType),
conditionType, null);
            }

            await _amazonS3.CopyObjectAsync(copyObjectRequest);
            _logger.LogInformation($"Conditional copy successful for key {destKey}
in bucket {destBucket}.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "PreconditionFailed")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional copy failed: Precondition failed");
            }
            else if (e.ErrorCode == "304")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional copy failed: Object not modified");
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Unexpected error: {e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateBucket`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a bucket with object lock enabled.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon S3 bucket with object lock actions.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to create.</param>
    /// <param name="enableObjectLock">True to enable object lock on the bucket.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateBucketWithObjectLock(string bucketName, bool
 enableObjectLock)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"\tCreating bucket {bucketName} with object lock
 {enableObjectLock}.");
        try
        {
            var request = new PutBucketRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                UseClientRegion = true,
                ObjectLockEnabledForBucket = enableObjectLock,
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutBucketAsync(request);

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
```

```
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error creating bucket: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteBucketCors`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucketCors`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes a CORS configuration from an Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used
        /// to delete the CORS configuration from the bucket.</param>
        private static async Task DeleteCORSConfigurationAsync(AmazonS3Client
client)
        {
            DeleteCORSConfigurationRequest request = new
DeleteCORSConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = BucketName,
            };
            await client.DeleteCORSConfigurationAsync(request);
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketCors in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteBucketLifecycle`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucketLifecycle`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// This method removes the Lifecycle configuration from the named
        /// S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The S3 client object used to call
        /// the RemoveLifecycleConfigAsync method.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the name of the
        /// S3 bucket from which the configuration will be removed.</param>
        public static async Task RemoveLifecycleConfigAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName)
        {
            var request = new DeleteLifecycleConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
            };
            await client.DeleteLifecycleConfigurationAsync(request);
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketLifecycle in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteObject`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObject`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an object in a non-versioned S3 bucket.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to delete an object from a non-versioned Amazon
/// Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/// </summary>
public class DeleteObject
{
    /// <summary>
    /// The Main method initializes the necessary variables and then calls
    /// the DeleteObjectNonVersionedBucketAsync method to delete the object
    /// named by the keyName parameter.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        const string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        const string keyName = "testfile.txt";

        // If the Amazon S3 bucket is located in an AWS Region other than the
        // Region of the default account, define the AWS Region for the
        // Amazon S3 bucket in your call to the AmazonS3Client constructor.
        // For example RegionEndpoint.USWest2.
        IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();
        await DeleteObjectNonVersionedBucketAsync(client, bucketName, keyName);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// The DeleteObjectNonVersionedBucketAsync takes care of deleting the
    /// desired object from the named bucket.
    /// </summary>
```

```
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Amazon S3 client used to delete
        /// an object from an Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket from which the
        /// object will be deleted.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The name of the object to delete.</param>
        public static async Task DeleteObjectNonVersionedBucketAsync(IAmazonS3
 client, string bucketName, string keyName)
        {
            try
            {
                var deleteObjectRequest = new DeleteObjectRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                };

                Console.WriteLine($"Deleting object: {keyName}");
                await client.DeleteObjectAsync(deleteObjectRequest);
                Console.WriteLine($"Object: {keyName} deleted from {bucketName}.");
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error encountered on server.
 Message:'{ex.Message}' when deleting an object.");
            }
        }
    }
```

Delete an object in a versioned S3 bucket.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example creates an object in an Amazon Simple Storage Service
    /// (Amazon S3) bucket and then deletes the object version that was
    /// created.
    /// </summary>
    public class DeleteObjectVersion
```

```
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
            string keyName = "verstioned-object.txt";

            // If the AWS Region of the default user is different from the AWS
            // Region of the Amazon S3 bucket, pass the AWS Region of the
            // bucket region to the Amazon S3 client object's constructor.
            // Define it like this:
            //      RegionEndpoint bucketRegion = RegionEndpoint.USWest2;
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();

            await CreateAndDeleteObjectVersionAsync(client, bucketName, keyName);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method creates and then deletes a versioned object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
        /// create and delete the object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the
        /// object will be created and deleted.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The key name of the object to create.</param>
        public static async Task CreateAndDeleteObjectVersionAsync(IAmazonS3 client,
string bucketName, string keyName)
        {
            try
            {
                // Add a sample object.
                string versionID = await PutAnObject(client, bucketName, keyName);

                // Delete the object by specifying an object key and a version ID.
                DeleteObjectRequest request = new DeleteObjectRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                    VersionId = versionID,
                };

                Console.WriteLine("Deleting an object");
                await client.DeleteObjectAsync(request);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method is used to create the temporary Amazon S3 object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 object which will be used
        /// to create the temporary Amazon S3 object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the
 object
        /// will be created.</param>
        /// <param name="objectKey">The name of the Amazon S3 object co create.</
param>
        /// <returns>The Version ID of the created object.</returns>
        public static async Task<string> PutAnObject(IAmazonS3 client, string
 bucketName, string objectKey)
        {
            PutObjectRequest request = new PutObjectRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
                ContentBody = "This is the content body!",
            };

            PutObjectResponse response = await client.PutObjectAsync(request);
            return response.VersionId;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteObjects`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObjects`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete multiple objects in a non-versioned S3 bucket.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to delete multiple objects from an Amazon Simple
/// Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/// </summary>
public class DeleteMultipleObjects
{
    /// <summary>
    /// The Main method initializes the Amazon S3 client and the name of
    /// the bucket and then passes those values to MultiObjectDeleteAsync.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        const string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";

        // If the Amazon S3 bucket from which you wish to delete objects is not
        // located in the same AWS Region as the default user, define the
        // AWS Region for the Amazon S3 bucket as a parameter to the client
        // constructor.
        IAmazonS3 s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();

        await MultiObjectDeleteAsync(s3Client, bucketName);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// This method uses the passed Amazon S3 client to first create and then
    /// delete three files from the named bucket.
    /// </summary>
```

```
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// Amazon S3 methods.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where objects
        /// will be created and then deleted.</param>
        public static async Task MultiObjectDeleteAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName)
        {
            // Create three sample objects which we will then delete.
            var keysAndVersions = await PutObjectsAsync(client, 3, bucketName);

            // Now perform the multi-object delete, passing the key names and
            // version IDs. Since we are working with a non-versioned bucket,
            // the object keys collection includes null version IDs.
            DeleteObjectsRequest multiObjectDeleteRequest = new DeleteObjectsRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Objects = keysAndVersions,
            };

            // You can add a specific object key to the delete request using the
            // AddKey method of the multiObjectDeleteRequest.
            try
            {
                DeleteObjectsResponse response = await
client.DeleteObjectsAsync(multiObjectDeleteRequest);
                Console.WriteLine("Successfully deleted all the {0} items",
response.DeletedObjects.Count);
            }
            catch (DeleteObjectsException e)
            {
                PrintDeletionErrorStatus(e);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Prints the list of errors raised by the call to DeleteObjectsAsync.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="ex">A collection of exceptions returned by the call to
        /// DeleteObjectsAsync.</param>
        public static void PrintDeletionErrorStatus(DeleteObjectsException ex)
        {
            DeleteObjectsResponse errorResponse = ex.Response;
            Console.WriteLine("x {0}", errorResponse.DeletedObjects.Count);
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted
 {errorResponse.DeletedObjects.Count}.");
            Console.WriteLine($"No. of objects failed to delete =
 {errorResponse.DeleteErrors.Count}");

            Console.WriteLine("Printing error data...");
            foreach (DeleteError deleteError in errorResponse.DeleteErrors)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Object Key:
 {deleteError.Key}\t{deleteError.Code}\t{deleteError.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method creates simple text file objects that can be used in
        /// the delete method.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The Amazon S3 client used to call PutObjectAsync.</
param>
        /// <param name="number">The number of objects to create.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket where the objects
        /// will be created.</param>
        /// <returns>A list of keys (object keys) and versions that the calling
        /// method will use to delete the newly created files.</returns>
        public static async Task<List<KeyVersion>> PutObjectsAsync(IAmazonS3 client,
 int number, string bucketName)
        {
            List<KeyVersion> keys = new List<KeyVersion>();
            for (int i = 0; i < number; i++)
            {
                string key = "ExampleObject-" + new System.Random().Next();
                PutObjectRequest request = new PutObjectRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = key,
                    ContentBody = "This is the content body!",
                };

                PutObjectResponse response = await client.PutObjectAsync(request);

                // For non-versioned bucket operations, we only need the
                // object key.
                KeyVersion keyVersion = new KeyVersion
```

```
                {
                    Key = key,
                };
                keys.Add(keyVersion);
            }

            return keys;
        }
    }
```

Delete multiple objects in a versioned S3 bucket.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to delete objects in a version-enabled Amazon
    /// Simple StorageService (Amazon S3) bucket.
    /// </summary>
    public class DeleteMultipleObjects
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";

            // If the AWS Region for your Amazon S3 bucket is different from
            // the AWS Region of the default user, define the AWS Region for
            // the Amazon S3 bucket and pass it to the client constructor
            // like this:
            // RegionEndpoint bucketRegion = RegionEndpoint.USWest2;
            IAmazonS3 s3Client;

            s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();
            await DeleteMultipleObjectsFromVersionedBucketAsync(s3Client,
bucketName);
        }

        /// <summary>
```

```
        /// This method removes multiple versions and objects from a
        /// version-enabled Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// DeleteObjectVersionsAsync, DeleteObjectsAsync, and
        /// RemoveDeleteMarkersAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket from which to delete
        /// objects.</param>
        public static async Task
DeleteMultipleObjectsFromVersionedBucketAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string bucketName)
        {
            // Delete objects (specifying object version in the request).
            await DeleteObjectVersionsAsync(client, bucketName);

            // Delete objects (without specifying object version in the request).
            var deletedObjects = await DeleteObjectsAsync(client, bucketName);

            // Additional exercise - remove the delete markers Amazon S3 returned
from
            // the preceding response. This results in the objects reappearing
            // in the bucket (you can verify the appearance/disappearance of
            // objects in the console).
            await RemoveDeleteMarkersAsync(client, bucketName, deletedObjects);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates and then deletes non-versioned Amazon S3 objects and then
deletes
        /// them again. The method returns a list of the Amazon S3 objects deleted.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// PubObjectsAsync and NonVersionedDeleteAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket where the objects
        /// will be created and then deleted.</param>
        /// <returns>A list of DeletedObjects.</returns>
        public static async Task<List<DeletedObject>> DeleteObjectsAsync(IAmazonS3
client, string bucketName)
        {
            // Upload the sample objects.
            var keysAndVersions2 = await PutObjectsAsync(client, bucketName, 3);

            // Delete objects using only keys. Amazon S3 creates a delete marker and
```

```
            // returns its version ID in the response.
            List<DeletedObject> deletedObjects = await
NonVersionedDeleteAsync(client, bucketName, keysAndVersions2);
            return deletedObjects;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method creates several temporary objects and then deletes them.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The S3 client.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">Name of the bucket.</param>
        /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
        public static async Task DeleteObjectVersionsAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName)
        {
            // Upload the sample objects.
            var keysAndVersions1 = await PutObjectsAsync(client, bucketName, 3);

            // Delete the specific object versions.
            await VersionedDeleteAsync(client, bucketName, keysAndVersions1);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays the list of information about deleted files to the console.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="e">Error information from the delete process.</param>
        private static void DisplayDeletionErrors(DeleteObjectsException e)
        {
            var errorResponse = e.Response;
            Console.WriteLine($"No. of objects successfully deleted =
{errorResponse.DeletedObjects.Count}");
            Console.WriteLine($"No. of objects failed to delete =
{errorResponse.DeleteErrors.Count}");
            Console.WriteLine("Printing error data...");
            foreach (var deleteError in errorResponse.DeleteErrors)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Object Key:
{deleteError.Key}\t{deleteError.Code}\t{deleteError.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Delete multiple objects from a version-enabled bucket.
        /// </summary>
```

```
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
 call
        /// DeleteObjectVersionsAsync, DeleteObjectsAsync, and
        /// RemoveDeleteMarkersAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket from which to delete
        /// objects.</param>
        /// <param name="keys">A list of key names for the objects to delete.</
param>
        private static async Task VersionedDeleteAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
 bucketName, List<KeyVersion> keys)
        {
            var multiObjectDeleteRequest = new DeleteObjectsRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Objects = keys, // This includes the object keys and specific
 version IDs.
            };

            try
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Executing VersionedDelete...");
                DeleteObjectsResponse response = await
 client.DeleteObjectsAsync(multiObjectDeleteRequest);
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted all the
 {response.DeletedObjects.Count} items");
            }
            catch (DeleteObjectsException ex)
            {
                DisplayDeletionErrors(ex);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes multiple objects from a non-versioned Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
 call
        /// DeleteObjectVersionsAsync, DeleteObjectsAsync, and
        /// RemoveDeleteMarkersAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket from which to delete
        /// objects.</param>
        /// <param name="keys">A list of key names for the objects to delete.</
param>
        /// <returns>A list of the deleted objects.</returns>
```

```
        private static async Task<List<DeletedObject>>
NonVersionedDeleteAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string bucketName, List<KeyVersion> keys)
        {
            // Create a request that includes only the object key names.
            DeleteObjectsRequest multiObjectDeleteRequest = new
DeleteObjectsRequest();
            multiObjectDeleteRequest.BucketName = bucketName;

            foreach (var key in keys)
            {
                multiObjectDeleteRequest.AddKey(key.Key);
            }

            // Execute DeleteObjectsAsync.
            // The DeleteObjectsAsync method adds a delete marker for each
            // object deleted. You can verify that the objects were removed
            // using the Amazon S3 console.
            DeleteObjectsResponse response;
            try
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Executing NonVersionedDelete...");
                response = await
client.DeleteObjectsAsync(multiObjectDeleteRequest);
                Console.WriteLine("Successfully deleted all the {0} items",
response.DeletedObjects.Count);
            }
            catch (DeleteObjectsException ex)
            {
                DisplayDeletionErrors(ex);
                throw; // Some deletions failed. Investigate before continuing.
            }

            // This response contains the DeletedObjects list which we use to delete
the delete markers.
            return response.DeletedObjects;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes the markers left after deleting the temporary objects.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// DeleteObjectVersionsAsync, DeleteObjectsAsync, and
        /// RemoveDeleteMarkersAsync.</param>
```

```
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket from which to delete
        /// objects.</param>
        /// <param name="deletedObjects">A list of the objects that were deleted.</
param>
        private static async Task RemoveDeleteMarkersAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
 bucketName, List<DeletedObject> deletedObjects)
        {
            var keyVersionList = new List<KeyVersion>();

            foreach (var deletedObject in deletedObjects)
            {
                KeyVersion keyVersion = new KeyVersion
                {
                    Key = deletedObject.Key,
                    VersionId = deletedObject.DeleteMarkerVersionId,
                };
                keyVersionList.Add(keyVersion);
            }

            // Create another request to delete the delete markers.
            var multiObjectDeleteRequest = new DeleteObjectsRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Objects = keyVersionList,
            };

            // Now, delete the delete marker to bring your objects back to the
 bucket.
            try
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Removing the delete markers .....");
                var deleteObjectResponse = await
 client.DeleteObjectsAsync(multiObjectDeleteRequest);
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted the
 {deleteObjectResponse.DeletedObjects.Count} delete markers");
            }
            catch (DeleteObjectsException ex)
            {
                DisplayDeletionErrors(ex);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
```

```
        /// Create temporary Amazon S3 objects to show how object deletion wors in
an
        /// Amazon S3 bucket with versioning enabled.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// PutObjectAsync to create temporary objects for the example.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the name of the S3
        /// bucket where we will create the temporary objects.</param>
        /// <param name="number">The number of temporary objects to create.</param>
        /// <returns>A list of the KeyVersion objects.</returns>
        private static async Task<List<KeyVersion>> PutObjectsAsync(IAmazonS3
client, string bucketName, int number)
        {
            var keys = new List<KeyVersion>();

            for (var i = 0; i < number; i++)
            {
                string key = "ObjectToDelete-" + new System.Random().Next();
                PutObjectRequest request = new PutObjectRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = key,
                    ContentBody = "This is the content body!",
                };

                var response = await client.PutObjectAsync(request);
                KeyVersion keyVersion = new KeyVersion
                {
                    Key = key,
                    VersionId = response.VersionId,
                };

                keys.Add(keyVersion);
            }

            return keys;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

GetBucketAcl

The following code example shows how to use GetBucketAcl.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Get the access control list (ACL) for the new bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized client object used to get the
        /// access control list (ACL) of the bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="newBucketName">The name of the newly created bucket.</
param>
        /// <returns>An S3AccessControlList.</returns>
        public static async Task<S3AccessControlList> GetACLForBucketAsync(IAmazonS3
 client, string newBucketName)
        {
            // Retrieve bucket ACL to show that the ACL was properly applied to
            // the new bucket.
            GetACLResponse getACLResponse = await client.GetACLAsync(new
 GetACLRequest
            {
                BucketName = newBucketName,
            });

            return getACLResponse.AccessControlList;
        }
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

GetBucketCors

The following code example shows how to use GetBucketCors.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve the CORS configuration applied to the Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used
        /// to retrieve the CORS configuration.</param>
        /// <returns>The created CORS configuration object.</returns>
        private static async Task<CORSConfiguration>
RetrieveCORSConfigurationAsync(AmazonS3Client client)
        {
            GetCORSConfigurationRequest request = new GetCORSConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = BucketName,
            };
            var response = await client.GetCORSConfigurationAsync(request);
            var configuration = response.Configuration;
            PrintCORSRules(configuration);
            return configuration;
        }
```

- For API details, see GetBucketCors in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetBucketEncryption`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketEncryption`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get and print the encryption settings of a bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">Name of the bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task GetEncryptionSettings(string bucketName)
    {
        // Check and print the bucket encryption settings.
        Console.WriteLine($"Getting encryption settings for bucket {bucketName}.");

        try
        {
            var settings =
                await _s3Client.GetBucketEncryptionAsync(
                    new GetBucketEncryptionRequest() { BucketName = bucketName });

            foreach (var encryptionSettings in
settings?.ServerSideEncryptionConfiguration?.ServerSideEncryptionRules!)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"\tAlgorithm:
{encryptionSettings.ServerSideEncryptionByDefault.ServerSideEncryptionAlgorithm}");
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"\tKey:
{encryptionSettings.ServerSideEncryptionByDefault.ServerSideEncryptionKeyManagementServiceK
            }
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(ex.ErrorCode == "InvalidBucketName"
                ? $"Bucket {bucketName} was not found."
                : $"Unable to get bucket encryption for bucket {bucketName},
{ex.Message}");
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see GetBucketEncryption in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetBucketLifecycleConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketLifecycleConfiguration`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Returns a configuration object for the supplied bucket name.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The S3 client object used to call
        /// the GetLifecycleConfigurationAsync method.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the S3 bucket for which a
        /// configuration will be created.</param>
        /// <returns>Returns a new LifecycleConfiguration object.</returns>
        public static async Task<LifecycleConfiguration>
RetrieveLifecycleConfigAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string bucketName)
        {
            var request = new GetLifecycleConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
            };
            var response = await client.GetLifecycleConfigurationAsync(request);
            var configuration = response.Configuration;
            return configuration;
        }
```

- For API details, see GetBucketLifecycleConfiguration in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetBucketWebsite`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketWebsite`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
                // Get the website configuration.
                GetBucketWebsiteRequest getRequest = new GetBucketWebsiteRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                };
                GetBucketWebsiteResponse getResponse = await
client.GetBucketWebsiteAsync(getRequest);
                Console.WriteLine($"Index document:
{getResponse.WebsiteConfiguration.IndexDocumentSuffix}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Error document:
{getResponse.WebsiteConfiguration.ErrorDocument}");
```

- For API details, see GetBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetObject`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObject`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get an object using a conditional request.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieves an object from Amazon S3 with a conditional request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to retrieve.</param>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The source bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionType">The type of condition: 'IfMatch', 'IfNoneMatch',
 'IfModifiedSince', 'IfUnmodifiedSince'.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionDateValue">The value to use for the condition for
 dates.</param>
    /// <param name="etagConditionalValue">The value to use for the condition for
 etags.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the conditional read is successful, False otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> GetObjectConditional(string objectKey, string
 sourceBucket,
        S3ConditionType conditionType, DateTime? conditionDateValue = null, string?
 etagConditionalValue = null)
    {
        try
        {
            var getObjectRequest = new GetObjectRequest
            {
                BucketName = sourceBucket,
                Key = objectKey
            };

            switch (conditionType)
            {
                case S3ConditionType.IfMatch:
                    getObjectRequest.EtagToMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfNoneMatch:
                    getObjectRequest.EtagToNotMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfModifiedSince:
                    getObjectRequest.ModifiedSinceDateUtc =
 conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfUnmodifiedSince:
                    getObjectRequest.UnmodifiedSinceDateUtc =
 conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                default:
```

```
                    throw new ArgumentOutOfRangeException(nameof(conditionType),
conditionType, null);
            }

            var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectAsync(getObjectRequest);
            var sampleBytes = new byte[20];
            await response.ResponseStream.ReadAsync(sampleBytes, 0, 20);
            _logger.LogInformation($"Conditional read successful. Here are the first
20 bytes of the object:\n{System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetString(sampleBytes)}");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "PreconditionFailed")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional read failed: Precondition failed");
            }
            else if (e.ErrorCode == "NotModified")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional read failed: Object not modified");
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Unexpected error: {e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

GetObjectLegalHold

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectLegalHold`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the legal hold details for an S3 object.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The object key.</param>
    /// <returns>The object legal hold details.</returns>
    public async Task<ObjectLockLegalHold> GetObjectLegalHold(string bucketName,
        string objectKey)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetObjectLegalHoldRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectLegalHoldAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tObject legal hold for {objectKey} in {bucketName}:
" +
                                $"\n\tStatus: {response.LegalHold.Status}");
            return response.LegalHold;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to fetch legal hold: '{ex.Message}'");
            return new ObjectLockLegalHold();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

GetObjectLockConfiguration

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectLockConfiguration`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Get the object lock configuration details for an S3 bucket.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket to get details.</param>
   /// <returns>The bucket's object lock configuration details.</returns>
   public async Task<ObjectLockConfiguration>
GetBucketObjectLockConfiguration(string bucketName)
   {
       try
       {
           var request = new GetObjectLockConfigurationRequest()
           {
               BucketName = bucketName
           };

           var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectLockConfigurationAsync(request);
           Console.WriteLine($"\tBucket object lock config for {bucketName} in
{bucketName}: " +
                             $"\n\tEnabled:
{response.ObjectLockConfiguration.ObjectLockEnabled}" +
                             $"\n\tRule:
{response.ObjectLockConfiguration.Rule?.DefaultRetention}");

           return response.ObjectLockConfiguration;
       }
       catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
       {
           Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to fetch object lock config:
'{ex.Message}'");
           return new ObjectLockConfiguration();
       }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetObjectRetention`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectRetention`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the retention period for an S3 object.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The object key.</param>
    /// <returns>The object retention details.</returns>
    public async Task<ObjectLockRetention> GetObjectRetention(string bucketName,
        string objectKey)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetObjectRetentionRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectRetentionAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tObject retention for {objectKey} in {bucketName}:
" +
                                $"\n\t{response.Retention.Mode} until
{response.Retention.RetainUntilDate:d}.");
            return response.Retention;
        }
```

```
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to fetch object lock retention:
 '{ex.Message}'");
            return new ObjectLockRetention();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObjectRetention in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListBuckets`

The following code example shows how to use `ListBuckets`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace ListBucketsExample
{
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example uses the AWS SDK for .NET to list the Amazon Simple Storage
    /// Service (Amazon S3) buckets belonging to the default account.
    /// </summary>
    public class ListBuckets
    {
        private static IAmazonS3 _s3Client;

        /// <summary>
        /// Get a list of the buckets owned by the default user.
```

```
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Amazon S3 client object.</param>
        /// <returns>The response from the ListingBuckets call that contains a
        /// list of the buckets owned by the default user.</returns>
        public static async Task<ListBucketsResponse> GetBuckets(IAmazonS3 client)
        {
            return await client.ListBucketsAsync();
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method lists the name and creation date for the buckets in
        /// the passed List of S3 buckets.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="bucketList">A List of S3 bucket objects.</param>
        public static void DisplayBucketList(List<S3Bucket> bucketList)
        {
            bucketList
                .ForEach(b => Console.WriteLine($"Bucket name: {b.BucketName},
 created on: {b.CreationDate}"));
        }

        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // The client uses the AWS Region of the default user.
            // If the Region where the buckets were created is different,
            // pass the Region to the client constructor. For example:
            // _s3Client = new AmazonS3Client(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);
            _s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();
            var response = await GetBuckets(_s3Client);
            DisplayBucketList(response.Buckets);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListObjectVersions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListObjectVersions`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example lists the versions of the objects in a version enabled
    /// Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
    /// </summary>
    public class ListObjectVersions
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";

            // If the AWS Region where your bucket is defined is different from
            // the AWS Region where the Amazon S3 bucket is defined, pass the
 constant
            // for the AWS Region to the client constructor like this:
            //      var client = new AmazonS3Client(RegionEndpoint.USWest2);
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();
            await GetObjectListWithAllVersionsAsync(client, bucketName);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method lists all versions of the objects within an Amazon S3
        /// version enabled bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized client object used to call
        /// ListVersionsAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the version enabled Amazon S3
 bucket
        /// for which you want to list the versions of the contained objects.</
param>
```

```
        public static async Task GetObjectListWithAllVersionsAsync(IAmazonS3 client,
string bucketName)
        {
            try
            {
                // When you instantiate the ListVersionRequest, you can
                // optionally specify a key name prefix in the request
                // if you want a list of object versions of a specific object.

                // For this example we set a small limit in MaxKeys to return
                // a small list of versions.
                ListVersionsRequest request = new ListVersionsRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    MaxKeys = 2,
                };

                do
                {
                    ListVersionsResponse response = await
client.ListVersionsAsync(request);

                    // Process response.
                    foreach (S3ObjectVersion entry in response.Versions)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"key: {entry.Key} size: {entry.Size}");
                    }

                    // If response is truncated, set the marker to get the next
                    // set of keys.
                    if (response.IsTruncated)
                    {
                        request.KeyMarker = response.NextKeyMarker;
                        request.VersionIdMarker = response.NextVersionIdMarker;
                    }
                    else
                    {
                        request = null;
                    }
                }
                while (request != null);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
```

```
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: '{ex.Message}'");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListObjectVersions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListObjectsV2`

The following code example shows how to use `ListObjectsV2`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List objects with a paginator.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// The following example lists objects in an Amazon Simple Storage
/// Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/// </summary>
public class ListObjectsPaginator
{
    private const string BucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";

    public static async Task Main()
    {
        IAmazonS3 s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();

        Console.WriteLine($"Listing the objects contained in {BucketName}:\n");
```

```
            await ListingObjectsAsync(s3Client, BucketName);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method uses a paginator to retrieve the list of objects in an
        /// an Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An Amazon S3 client object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the S3 bucket whose objects
        /// you want to list.</param>
        public static async Task ListingObjectsAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName)
        {
            var listObjectsV2Paginator = client.Paginators.ListObjectsV2(new
ListObjectsV2Request
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
            });

            await foreach (var response in listObjectsV2Paginator.Responses)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"HttpStatusCode: {response.HttpStatusCode}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Number of Keys: {response.KeyCount}");
                foreach (var entry in response.S3Objects)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Key = {entry.Key} Size = {entry.Size}");
                }
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutBucketAccelerateConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketAccelerateConfiguration`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) Transfer Acceleration is a
/// bucket-level feature that enables you to perform faster data transfers
/// to Amazon S3. This example shows how to configure Transfer
/// Acceleration.
/// </summary>
public class TransferAcceleration
{
    /// <summary>
    /// The main method initializes the client object and sets the
    /// Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket name before
    /// calling EnableAccelerationAsync.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();
        const string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";

        await EnableAccelerationAsync(s3Client, bucketName);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// This method sets the configuration to enable transfer acceleration
    /// for the bucket referred to in the bucketName parameter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="client">An Amazon S3 client used to enable the
    /// acceleration on an Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket for which the
    /// method will be enabling acceleration.</param>
```

```
        private static async Task EnableAccelerationAsync(AmazonS3Client client,
string bucketName)
        {
            try
            {
                var putRequest = new PutBucketAccelerateConfigurationRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    AccelerateConfiguration = new AccelerateConfiguration
                    {
                        Status = BucketAccelerateStatus.Enabled,
                    },
                };
                await client.PutBucketAccelerateConfigurationAsync(putRequest);

                var getRequest = new GetBucketAccelerateConfigurationRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                };
                var response = await
client.GetBucketAccelerateConfigurationAsync(getRequest);

                Console.WriteLine($"Acceleration state = '{response.Status}' ");
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error occurred. Message:'{ex.Message}' when
setting transfer acceleration");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketAccelerateConfiguration in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutBucketAcl`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketAcl`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Creates an Amazon S3 bucket with an ACL to control access to the
        /// bucket and the objects stored in it.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized client object used to create
        /// an Amazon S3 bucket, with an ACL applied to the bucket.
        /// </param>
        /// <param name="region">The AWS Region where the bucket will be created.</
param>
        /// <param name="newBucketName">The name of the bucket to create.</param>
        /// <returns>A boolean value indicating success or failure.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> CreateBucketUseCannedACLAsync(IAmazonS3
 client, S3Region region, string newBucketName)
        {
            try
            {
                // Create a new Amazon S3 bucket with Canned ACL.
                var putBucketRequest = new PutBucketRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = newBucketName,
                    BucketRegion = region,
                    CannedACL = S3CannedACL.LogDeliveryWrite,
                };

                PutBucketResponse putBucketResponse = await
 client.PutBucketAsync(putBucketRequest);

                return putBucketResponse.HttpStatusCode ==
 System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Amazon S3 error: {ex.Message}");
```

```
            }

            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutBucketCors`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketCors`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Add CORS configuration to the Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used
        /// to apply the CORS configuration to an Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="configuration">The CORS configuration to apply.</param>
        private static async Task PutCORSConfigurationAsync(AmazonS3Client client,
CORSConfiguration configuration)
        {
            PutCORSConfigurationRequest request = new PutCORSConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = BucketName,
                Configuration = configuration,
            };

            _ = await client.PutCORSConfigurationAsync(request);
        }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketCors in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutBucketEncryption`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketEncryption`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Set the bucket server side encryption to use AWSKMS with a customer-managed
key id.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="bucketName">Name of the bucket.</param>
   /// <param name="kmsKeyId">The Id of the KMS Key.</param>
   /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
   public static async Task<bool> SetBucketServerSideEncryption(string bucketName,
string kmsKeyId)
   {
       var serverSideEncryptionByDefault = new ServerSideEncryptionConfiguration
       {
           ServerSideEncryptionRules = new List<ServerSideEncryptionRule>
           {
               new ServerSideEncryptionRule
               {
                   ServerSideEncryptionByDefault = new
ServerSideEncryptionByDefault
                   {
                       ServerSideEncryptionAlgorithm =
ServerSideEncryptionMethod.AWSKMS,
                       ServerSideEncryptionKeyManagementServiceKeyId = kmsKeyId
                   }
               }
           }
       };
       try
       {
```

```
            var encryptionResponse = await _s3Client.PutBucketEncryptionAsync(new
PutBucketEncryptionRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                ServerSideEncryptionConfiguration = serverSideEncryptionByDefault,
            });

            return encryptionResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(ex.ErrorCode == "AccessDenied"
                ? $"This account does not have permission to set encryption on
{bucketName}, please try again."
                : $"Unable to set bucket encryption for bucket {bucketName},
{ex.Message}");
        }
        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketEncryption in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Adds lifecycle configuration information to the S3 bucket named in
        /// the bucketName parameter.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The S3 client used to call the
        /// PutLifecycleConfigurationAsync method.</param>
```

```
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the S3 bucket to
        /// which configuration information will be added.</param>
        /// <param name="configuration">A LifecycleConfiguration object that
        /// will be applied to the S3 bucket.</param>
        public static async Task AddExampleLifecycleConfigAsync(IAmazonS3 client,
 string bucketName, LifecycleConfiguration configuration)
        {
            var request = new PutLifecycleConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Configuration = configuration,
            };
            var response = await client.PutLifecycleConfigurationAsync(request);
        }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutBucketLogging`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketLogging`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to enable logging on an Amazon Simple Storage
/// Service (Amazon S3) bucket. You need to have two Amazon S3 buckets for
/// this example. The first is the bucket for which you wish to enable
```

```
    /// logging, and the second is the location where you want to store the
    /// logs.
    /// </summary>
    public class ServerAccessLogging
    {
        private static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;

        public static async Task Main()
        {
            LoadConfig();

            string bucketName = _configuration["BucketName"];
            string logBucketName = _configuration["LogBucketName"];
            string logObjectKeyPrefix = _configuration["LogObjectKeyPrefix"];
            string accountId = _configuration["AccountId"];

            // If the AWS Region defined for your default user is different
            // from the Region where your Amazon S3 bucket is located,
            // pass the Region name to the Amazon S3 client object's constructor.
            // For example: RegionEndpoint.USWest2 or RegionEndpoint.USEast2.
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();

            try
            {
                // Update bucket policy for target bucket to allow delivery of logs
to it.
                await SetBucketPolicyToAllowLogDelivery(
                    client,
                    bucketName,
                    logBucketName,
                    logObjectKeyPrefix,
                    accountId);

                // Enable logging on the source bucket.
                await EnableLoggingAsync(
                    client,
                    bucketName,
                    logBucketName,
                    logObjectKeyPrefix);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {e.Message}");
            }
```

```
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method grants appropriate permissions for logging to the
        /// Amazon S3 bucket where the logs will be stored.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client which will be used
        /// to apply the bucket policy.</param>
        /// <param name="sourceBucketName">The name of the source bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="logBucketName">The name of the bucket where logging
        /// information will be stored.</param>
        /// <param name="logPrefix">The logging prefix where the logs should be
delivered.</param>
        /// <param name="accountId">The account id of the account where the source
bucket exists.</param>
        /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
        public static async Task SetBucketPolicyToAllowLogDelivery(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string sourceBucketName,
            string logBucketName,
            string logPrefix,
            string accountId)
        {
            var resourceArn = @"""arn:aws:s3:::" + logBucketName + "/" + logPrefix +
@"*""";

            var newPolicy = @"{
                                ""Statement"":[{
                                ""Sid"": ""S3ServerAccessLogsPolicy"",
                                ""Effect"": ""Allow"",
                                ""Principal"": { ""Service"":
""logging.s3.amazonaws.com"" },
                                ""Action"": [""s3:PutObject""],
                                ""Resource"": [" + resourceArn + @"],
                                ""Condition"": {
                                ""ArnLike"": { ""aws:SourceArn"": ""arn:aws:s3:::" +
sourceBucketName + @""" },
                                ""StringEquals"": { ""aws:SourceAccount"": """ +
accountId + @""" }
                                        }
                                    }]
                                }";
            Console.WriteLine($"The policy to apply to bucket {logBucketName} to
enable logging:");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine(newPolicy);

            PutBucketPolicyRequest putRequest = new PutBucketPolicyRequest
            {
                BucketName = logBucketName,
                Policy = newPolicy,
            };
            await client.PutBucketPolicyAsync(putRequest);
            Console.WriteLine("Policy applied.");
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method enables logging for an Amazon S3 bucket. Logs will be stored
        /// in the bucket you selected for logging. Selected prefix
        /// will be prepended to each log object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client which will be used
        /// to configure and apply logging to the selected Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket for which you
        /// wish to enable logging.</param>
        /// <param name="logBucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where
logging
        /// information will be stored.</param>
        /// <param name="logObjectKeyPrefix">The prefix to prepend to each
        /// object key.</param>
        /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
        public static async Task EnableLoggingAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string logBucketName,
            string logObjectKeyPrefix)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Enabling logging for bucket {bucketName}.");
            var loggingConfig = new S3BucketLoggingConfig
            {
                TargetBucketName = logBucketName,
                TargetPrefix = logObjectKeyPrefix,
            };

            var putBucketLoggingRequest = new PutBucketLoggingRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                LoggingConfig = loggingConfig,
            };
```

```
            await client.PutBucketLoggingAsync(putBucketLoggingRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"Logging enabled.");
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Loads configuration from settings files.
        /// </summary>
        public static void LoadConfig()
        {
            _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
                .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
                .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
                .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json", true) // Optionally, load local
settings.
                .Build();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketLogging in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutBucketNotificationConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketNotificationConfiguration`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to enable notifications for an Amazon Simple
```

```
    /// Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
    /// </summary>
    public class EnableNotifications
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            const string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket1";
            const string snsTopic = "arn:aws:sns:us-east-2:0123456789ab:bucket-
notify";
            const string sqsQueue = "arn:aws:sqs:us-
east-2:0123456789ab:Example_Queue";

            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client(Amazon.RegionEndpoint.USEast2);
            await EnableNotificationAsync(client, bucketName, snsTopic, sqsQueue);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method makes the call to the PutBucketNotificationAsync method.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Amazon S3 client used to call
        /// the PutBucketNotificationAsync method.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket for which
        /// notifications will be turned on.</param>
        /// <param name="snsTopic">The ARN for the Amazon Simple Notification
        /// Service (Amazon SNS) topic associated with the S3 bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="sqsQueue">The ARN of the Amazon Simple Queue Service
        /// (Amazon SQS) queue to which notifications will be pushed.</param>
        public static async Task EnableNotificationAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string snsTopic,
            string sqsQueue)
        {
            try
            {
                // The bucket for which we are setting up notifications.
                var request = new PutBucketNotificationRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                };

                // Defines the topic to use when sending a notification.
                var topicConfig = new TopicConfiguration()
                {
```

```
                    Events = new List<EventType> { EventType.ObjectCreatedCopy },
                    Topic = snsTopic,
                };
                request.TopicConfigurations = new List<TopicConfiguration>
                {
                    topicConfig,
                };
                request.QueueConfigurations = new List<QueueConfiguration>
                {
                    new QueueConfiguration()
                    {
                        Events = new List<EventType> { EventType.ObjectCreatedPut },
                        Queue = sqsQueue,
                    },
                };

                // Now apply the notification settings to the bucket.
                PutBucketNotificationResponse response = await
client.PutBucketNotificationAsync(request);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketNotificationConfiguration in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutBucketWebsite`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketWebsite`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
                // Put the website configuration.
                PutBucketWebsiteRequest putRequest = new PutBucketWebsiteRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    WebsiteConfiguration = new WebsiteConfiguration()
                    {
                        IndexDocumentSuffix = indexDocumentSuffix,
                        ErrorDocument = errorDocument,
                    },
                };
                PutBucketWebsiteResponse response = await
client.PutBucketWebsiteAsync(putRequest);
```

- For API details, see PutBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutObject`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObject`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Upload an object with server-side encryption.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to upload an object to an Amazon Simple Storage
    /// Service (Amazon S3) bucket with server-side encryption enabled.
    /// </summary>
    public class ServerSideEncryption
```

```
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
            string keyName = "samplefile.txt";

            // If the AWS Region defined for your default user is different
            // from the Region where your Amazon S3 bucket is located,
            // pass the Region name to the Amazon S3 client object's constructor.
            // For example: RegionEndpoint.USWest2.
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();

            await WritingAnObjectAsync(client, bucketName, keyName);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Upload a sample object include a setting for encryption.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
        /// to upload a file and apply server-side encryption.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the
        /// encrypted object will reside.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The name for the object that you want to
        /// create in the supplied bucket.</param>
        public static async Task WritingAnObjectAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName, string keyName)
        {
            try
            {
                var putRequest = new PutObjectRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                    ContentBody = "sample text",
                    ServerSideEncryptionMethod = ServerSideEncryptionMethod.AES256,
                };

                var putResponse = await client.PutObjectAsync(putRequest);

                // Determine the encryption state of an object.
                GetObjectMetadataRequest metadataRequest = new
GetObjectMetadataRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
```

```
                    Key = keyName,
                };
                GetObjectMetadataResponse response = await
 client.GetObjectMetadataAsync(metadataRequest);
                ServerSideEncryptionMethod objectEncryption =
 response.ServerSideEncryptionMethod;

                Console.WriteLine($"Encryption method used: {0}",
 objectEncryption.ToString());
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: '{ex.Message}' when writing an object");
            }
        }
    }
```

Put an object using a conditional request.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Uploads an object to Amazon S3 with a conditional request. Prevents
 overwrite using an IfNoneMatch condition for the object key.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to upload.</param>
    /// <param name="bucket">The source bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="content">The content to upload as a string.</param>
    /// <returns>The ETag if the conditional write is successful, empty otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<string> PutObjectConditional(string objectKey, string bucket,
 string content)
    {
        try
        {
            var putObjectRequest = new PutObjectRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucket,
                Key = objectKey,
                ContentBody = content,
                IfNoneMatch = "*"
            };
```

```
            var putResult = await _amazonS3.PutObjectAsync(putObjectRequest);
            _logger.LogInformation($"Conditional write successful for key
{objectKey} in bucket {bucket}.");
            return putResult.ETag;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "PreconditionFailed")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional write failed: Precondition failed");
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Unexpected error: {e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
            return string.Empty;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutObjectLegalHold`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObjectLegalHold`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Set or modify a legal hold on an object in an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="holdStatus">The On or Off status for the legal hold.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ModifyObjectLegalHold(string bucketName,
        string objectKey, ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus holdStatus)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new PutObjectLegalHoldRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
                LegalHold = new ObjectLockLegalHold()
                {
                    Status = holdStatus
                }
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectLegalHoldAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tModified legal hold for {objectKey} in
{bucketName}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tError modifying legal hold: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutObjectLockConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObjectLockConfiguration`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set the object lock configuration of a bucket.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Enable object lock on an existing bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to modify.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> EnableObjectLockOnBucket(string bucketName)
    {
        try
        {
            // First, enable Versioning on the bucket.
            await _amazonS3.PutBucketVersioningAsync(new
PutBucketVersioningRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                VersioningConfig = new S3BucketVersioningConfig()
                {
                    EnableMfaDelete = false,
                    Status = VersionStatus.Enabled
                }
            });

            var request = new PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                ObjectLockConfiguration = new ObjectLockConfiguration()
                {
                    ObjectLockEnabled = new ObjectLockEnabled("Enabled"),
                },
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectLockConfigurationAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded an object lock policy to bucket
{bucketName}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error modifying object lock: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

Set the default retention period of a bucket.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Set or modify a retention period on an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket to modify.</param>
    /// <param name="retention">The retention mode.</param>
    /// <param name="retainUntilDate">The date for retention until.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ModifyBucketDefaultRetention(string bucketName, bool
enableObjectLock, ObjectLockRetentionMode retention, DateTime retainUntilDate)
    {
        var enabledString = enableObjectLock ? "Enabled" : "Disabled";
        var timeDifference = retainUntilDate.Subtract(DateTime.Now);
        try
        {
            // First, enable Versioning on the bucket.
            await _amazonS3.PutBucketVersioningAsync(new
PutBucketVersioningRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                VersioningConfig = new S3BucketVersioningConfig()
                {
                    EnableMfaDelete = false,
                    Status = VersionStatus.Enabled
                }
            });

            var request = new PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                ObjectLockConfiguration = new ObjectLockConfiguration()
                {
                    ObjectLockEnabled = new ObjectLockEnabled(enabledString),
                    Rule = new ObjectLockRule()
                    {
                        DefaultRetention = new DefaultRetention()
                        {
                            Mode = retention,
                            Days = timeDifference.Days // Can be specified in days
or years but not both.
```

```
                        }
                    }
                }
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectLockConfigurationAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded a default retention to bucket
{bucketName}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tError modifying object lock: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutObjectRetention`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObjectRetention`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Set or modify a retention period on an object in an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="retention">The retention mode.</param>
    /// <param name="retainUntilDate">The date retention expires.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ModifyObjectRetentionPeriod(string bucketName,
```

```
        string objectKey, ObjectLockRetentionMode retention, DateTime
retainUntilDate)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new PutObjectRetentionRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
                Retention = new ObjectLockRetention()
                {
                    Mode = retention,
                    RetainUntilDate = retainUntilDate
                }
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectRetentionAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tSet retention for {objectKey} in {bucketName}
until {retainUntilDate:d}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tError modifying retention period:
'{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutObjectRetention in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`RestoreObject`

The following code example shows how to use `RestoreObject`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to restore an archived object in an Amazon
    /// Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
    /// </summary>
    public class RestoreArchivedObject
    {
        public static void Main()
        {
            string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
            string objectKey = "archived-object.txt";

            // Specify your bucket region (an example region is shown).
            RegionEndpoint bucketRegion = RegionEndpoint.USWest2;

            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client(bucketRegion);
            RestoreObjectAsync(client, bucketName, objectKey).Wait();
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method restores an archived object from an Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// RestoreObjectAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the name of the
        /// bucket where the object was located before it was archived.</param>
        /// <param name="objectKey">A string representing the name of the
        /// archived object to restore.</param>
        public static async Task RestoreObjectAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName, string objectKey)
        {
            try
            {
                var restoreRequest = new RestoreObjectRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = objectKey,
```

```
                    Days = 2,
                };
                RestoreObjectResponse response = await
client.RestoreObjectAsync(restoreRequest);

                // Check the status of the restoration.
                await CheckRestorationStatusAsync(client, bucketName, objectKey);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception amazonS3Exception)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {amazonS3Exception.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method retrieves the status of the object's restoration.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// GetObjectMetadataAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the name of the Amazon
        /// S3 bucket which contains the archived object.</param>
        /// <param name="objectKey">A string representing the name of the
        /// archived object you want to restore.</param>
        public static async Task CheckRestorationStatusAsync(IAmazonS3 client,
string bucketName, string objectKey)
        {
            GetObjectMetadataRequest metadataRequest = new
GetObjectMetadataRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
            };

            GetObjectMetadataResponse response = await
client.GetObjectMetadataAsync(metadataRequest);

            var restStatus = response.RestoreInProgress ? "in-progress" : "finished
or failed";
            Console.WriteLine($"Restoration status: {restStatus}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RestoreObject in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a presigned URL

The following code example shows how to create a presigned URL for Amazon S3 and upload an object.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Generate a presigned URL that can perform an Amazon S3 action for a limited time.

```
using System;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

public class GenPresignedUrl
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        const string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        const string objectKey = "sample.txt";

        // Specify how long the presigned URL lasts, in hours
        const double timeoutDuration = 12;

        // Specify the AWS Region of your Amazon S3 bucket. If it is
        // different from the Region defined for the default user,
        // pass the Region to the constructor for the client. For
        // example: new AmazonS3Client(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);
```

```
            // If using the Region us-east-1, and server-side encryption with AWS
 KMS, you must specify Signature Version 4.
            // Region us-east-1 defaults to Signature Version 2 unless explicitly
 set to Version 4 as shown below.
            // For more details, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/
userguide/UsingAWSSDK.html#specify-signature-version
            // and https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdkfornet/v3/apidocs/items/Amazon/
TAWSConfigsS3.html
            AWSConfigsS3.UseSignatureVersion4 = true;
            IAmazonS3 s3Client = new AmazonS3Client(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

            string urlString = GeneratePresignedURL(s3Client, bucketName, objectKey,
 timeoutDuration);
            Console.WriteLine($"The generated URL is: {urlString}.");
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Generate a presigned URL that can be used to access the file named
        /// in the objectKey parameter for the amount of time specified in the
        /// duration parameter.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized S3 client object used to call
        /// the GetPresignedUrl method.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the S3 bucket containing the
        /// object for which to create the presigned URL.</param>
        /// <param name="objectKey">The name of the object to access with the
        /// presigned URL.</param>
        /// <param name="duration">The length of time for which the presigned
        /// URL will be valid.</param>
        /// <returns>A string representing the generated presigned URL.</returns>
        public static string GeneratePresignedURL(IAmazonS3 client, string
 bucketName, string objectKey, double duration)
        {
            string urlString = string.Empty;
            try
            {
                var request = new GetPreSignedUrlRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = objectKey,
                    Expires = DateTime.UtcNow.AddHours(duration),
                };
                urlString = client.GetPreSignedURL(request);
            }
```

```
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error:'{ex.Message}'");
            }

            return urlString;
        }
    }
```

Generate a presigned URL and perform an upload using that URL.

```
    using System;
    using System.IO;
    using System.Net.Http;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to upload an object to an Amazon Simple Storage
    /// Service (Amazon S3) bucket using a presigned URL. The code first
    /// creates a presigned URL and then uses it to upload an object to an
    /// Amazon S3 bucket using that URL.
    /// </summary>
    public class UploadUsingPresignedURL
    {
        private static HttpClient httpClient = new HttpClient();

        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
            string keyName = "samplefile.txt";
            string filePath = $"source\\{keyName}";

            // Specify how long the signed URL will be valid in hours.
            double timeoutDuration = 12;

            // Specify the AWS Region of your Amazon S3 bucket. If it is
            // different from the Region defined for the default user,
            // pass the Region to the constructor for the client. For
```

```
            // example: new AmazonS3Client(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

            // If using the Region us-east-1, and server-side encryption with AWS
 KMS, you must specify Signature Version 4.
            // Region us-east-1 defaults to Signature Version 2 unless explicitly
 set to Version 4 as shown below.
            // For more details, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/
userguide/UsingAWSSDK.html#specify-signature-version
            // and https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdkfornet/v3/apidocs/items/Amazon/
TAWSConfigsS3.html
            AWSConfigsS3.UseSignatureVersion4 = true;
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

            var url = GeneratePreSignedURL(client, bucketName, keyName,
 timeoutDuration);
            var success = await UploadObject(filePath, url);

            if (success)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Upload succeeded.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Upload failed.");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Uploads an object to an Amazon S3 bucket using the presigned URL passed
 in
        /// the url parameter.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="filePath">The path (including file name) to the local
        /// file you want to upload.</param>
        /// <param name="url">The presigned URL that will be used to upload the
        /// file to the Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success or failure of the
        /// operation, based on the HttpWebResponse.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UploadObject(string filePath, string url)
        {
            using var streamContent = new StreamContent(
                new FileStream(filePath, FileMode.Open, FileAccess.Read));

            var response = await httpClient.PutAsync(url, streamContent);
```

```
            return response.IsSuccessStatusCode;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Generates a presigned URL which will be used to upload an object to
        /// an Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
 call
        /// GetPreSignedURL.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket to which the
        /// presigned URL will point.</param>
        /// <param name="objectKey">The name of the file that will be uploaded.</
param>
        /// <param name="duration">How long (in hours) the presigned URL will
        /// be valid.</param>
        /// <returns>The generated URL.</returns>
        public static string GeneratePreSignedURL(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string objectKey,
            double duration)
        {
            var request = new GetPreSignedUrlRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
                Verb = HttpVerb.PUT,
                Expires = DateTime.UtcNow.AddHours(duration),
            };

            string url = client.GetPreSignedURL(request);
            return url;
        }
    }
```

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Detect objects in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect objects by category in images.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition .NET API to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Get started with encryption

The following code example shows how to get started with encryption for Amazon S3 objects.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Security.Cryptography;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to apply client encryption to an object in an
/// Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/// </summary>
public class SSEClientEncryption
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        string keyName = "exampleobject.txt";
        string copyTargetKeyName = "examplecopy.txt";

        // If the AWS Region defined for your default user is different
        // from the Region where your Amazon S3 bucket is located,
        // pass the Region name to the Amazon S3 client object's constructor.
        // For example: RegionEndpoint.USWest2.
        IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();

        try
        {
            // Create an encryption key.
            Aes aesEncryption = Aes.Create();
            aesEncryption.KeySize = 256;
            aesEncryption.GenerateKey();
```

```
                string base64Key = Convert.ToBase64String(aesEncryption.Key);

                // Upload the object.
                PutObjectRequest putObjectRequest = await UploadObjectAsync(client,
 bucketName, keyName, base64Key);

                // Download the object and verify that its contents match what you
 uploaded.
                await DownloadObjectAsync(client, bucketName, keyName, base64Key,
 putObjectRequest);

                // Get object metadata and verify that the object uses AES-256
 encryption.
                await GetObjectMetadataAsync(client, bucketName, keyName,
 base64Key);

                // Copy both the source and target objects using server-side
 encryption with
                // an encryption key.
                await CopyObjectAsync(client, bucketName, keyName,
 copyTargetKeyName, aesEncryption, base64Key);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Uploads an object to an Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
 call
        /// PutObjectAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket to which the
        /// object will be uploaded.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The name of the object to upload to the Amazon S3
        /// bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="base64Key">The encryption key.</param>
        /// <returns>The PutObjectRequest object for use by DownloadObjectAsync.</
returns>
        public static async Task<PutObjectRequest> UploadObjectAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
```

```
            string keyName,
            string base64Key)
        {
            PutObjectRequest putObjectRequest = new PutObjectRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = keyName,
                ContentBody = "sample text",
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod =
 ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256,
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerProvidedKey = base64Key,
            };
            PutObjectResponse putObjectResponse = await
 client.PutObjectAsync(putObjectRequest);
            return putObjectRequest;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Downloads an encrypted object from an Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
 call
        /// GetObjectAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the
 object
        /// is located.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The name of the Amazon S3 object to download.</
param>
        /// <param name="base64Key">The encryption key used to encrypt the
        /// object.</param>
        /// <param name="putObjectRequest">The PutObjectRequest used to upload
        /// the object.</param>
        public static async Task DownloadObjectAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string keyName,
            string base64Key,
            PutObjectRequest putObjectRequest)
        {
            GetObjectRequest getObjectRequest = new GetObjectRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = keyName,
```

```
                // Provide encryption information for the object stored in Amazon
S3.
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod =
ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256,
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerProvidedKey = base64Key,
            };

            using (GetObjectResponse getResponse = await
client.GetObjectAsync(getObjectRequest))
            using (StreamReader reader = new
StreamReader(getResponse.ResponseStream))
            {
                string content = reader.ReadToEnd();
                if (string.Compare(putObjectRequest.ContentBody, content) == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Object content is same as we uploaded");
                }
                else
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Error...Object content is not same.");
                }

                if (getResponse.ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod ==
ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Object encryption method is AES256, same as
we set");
                }
                else
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Error...Object encryption method is not the
same as AES256 we set");
                }
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves the metadata associated with an Amazon S3 object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used
        /// to call GetObjectMetadataAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket containing the
        /// object for which we want to retrieve metadata.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The name of the object for which we wish to
```

```
        /// retrieve the metadata.</param>
        /// <param name="base64Key">The encryption key associated with the
        /// object.</param>
        public static async Task GetObjectMetadataAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string keyName,
            string base64Key)
        {
            GetObjectMetadataRequest getObjectMetadataRequest = new
GetObjectMetadataRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = keyName,

                // The object stored in Amazon S3 is encrypted, so provide the
necessary encryption information.
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod =
ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256,
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerProvidedKey = base64Key,
            };

            GetObjectMetadataResponse getObjectMetadataResponse = await
client.GetObjectMetadataAsync(getObjectMetadataRequest);
            Console.WriteLine("The object metadata show encryption method used is:
{0}", getObjectMetadataResponse.ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Copies an encrypted object from one Amazon S3 bucket to another.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// CopyObjectAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket containing the object
        /// to copy.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The name of the object to copy.</param>
        /// <param name="copyTargetKeyName">The Amazon S3 bucket to which the object
        /// will be copied.</param>
        /// <param name="aesEncryption">The encryption type to use.</param>
        /// <param name="base64Key">The encryption key to use.</param>
        public static async Task CopyObjectAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
```

```
            string keyName,
            string copyTargetKeyName,
            Aes aesEncryption,
            string base64Key)
        {
            aesEncryption.GenerateKey();
            string copyBase64Key = Convert.ToBase64String(aesEncryption.Key);

            CopyObjectRequest copyRequest = new CopyObjectRequest
            {
                SourceBucket = bucketName,
                SourceKey = keyName,
                DestinationBucket = bucketName,
                DestinationKey = copyTargetKeyName,

                // Information about the source object's encryption.
                CopySourceServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod =
ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256,
                CopySourceServerSideEncryptionCustomerProvidedKey = base64Key,

                // Information about the target object's encryption.
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod =
ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256,
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerProvidedKey = copyBase64Key,
            };
            await client.CopyObjectAsync(copyRequest);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - GetObject
  - GetObjectMetadata

Get started with tags

The following code example shows how to get started with tags for Amazon S3 objects.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to work with tags in Amazon Simple Storage
/// Service (Amazon S3) objects.
/// </summary>
public class ObjectTag
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        string keyName = "newobject.txt";
        string filePath = @"*** file path ***";

        // Specify your bucket region (an example region is shown).
        RegionEndpoint bucketRegion = RegionEndpoint.USWest2;

        var client = new AmazonS3Client(bucketRegion);
        await PutObjectsWithTagsAsync(client, bucketName, keyName, filePath);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// This method uploads an object with tags. It then shows the tag
    /// values, changes the tags, and shows the new tags.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="client">The Initialized Amazon S3 client object used
    /// to call the methods to create and change an objects tags.</param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the name of the
    /// bucket where the object will be stored.</param>
```

```
        /// <param name="keyName">A string representing the key name of the
        /// object to be tagged.</param>
        /// <param name="filePath">The directory location and file name of the
        /// object to be uploaded to the Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
        public static async Task PutObjectsWithTagsAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName, string keyName, string filePath)
        {
            try
            {
                // Create an object with tags.
                var putRequest = new PutObjectRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                    FilePath = filePath,
                    TagSet = new List<Tag>
                    {
                        new Tag { Key = "Keyx1", Value = "Value1" },
                        new Tag { Key = "Keyx2", Value = "Value2" },
                    },
                };

                PutObjectResponse response = await
client.PutObjectAsync(putRequest);

                // Now retrieve the new object's tags.
                GetObjectTaggingRequest getTagsRequest = new
GetObjectTaggingRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                };

                GetObjectTaggingResponse objectTags = await
client.GetObjectTaggingAsync(getTagsRequest);

                // Display the tag values.
                objectTags.Tagging
                    .ForEach(t => Console.WriteLine($"Key: {t.Key}, Value:
{t.Value}"));

                Tagging newTagSet = new Tagging()
                {
                    TagSet = new List<Tag>
```

```
                    {
                        new Tag { Key = "Key3", Value = "Value3" },
                        new Tag { Key = "Key4", Value = "Value4" },
                    },
                };

                PutObjectTaggingRequest putObjTagsRequest = new
PutObjectTaggingRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                    Tagging = newTagSet,
                };

                PutObjectTaggingResponse response2 = await
client.PutObjectTaggingAsync(putObjTagsRequest);

                // Retrieve the tags again and show the values.
                GetObjectTaggingRequest getTagsRequest2 = new
GetObjectTaggingRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                };
                GetObjectTaggingResponse objectTags2 = await
client.GetObjectTaggingAsync(getTagsRequest2);

                objectTags2.Tagging
                    .ForEach(t => Console.WriteLine($"Key: {t.Key}, Value:
{t.Value}"));
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                        $"Error: '{ex.Message}'");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObjectTagging in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Lock Amazon S3 objects

The following code example shows how to work with S3 object lock features.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon S3 object lock features.

```
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;

namespace S3ObjectLockScenario;

public static class S3ObjectLockWorkflow
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This .NET example performs the following tasks:
        1. Create test Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3) buckets with different
 lock policies.
        2. Upload sample objects to each bucket.
        3. Set some Legal Hold and Retention Periods on objects and buckets.
        4. Investigate lock policies by viewing settings or attempting to delete or
 overwrite objects.
        5. Clean up objects and buckets.
   */

    public static S3ActionsWrapper _s3ActionsWrapper = null!;
```

```
    public static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;
    private static string _resourcePrefix = null!;
    private static string noLockBucketName = null!;
    private static string lockEnabledBucketName = null!;
    private static string retentionAfterCreationBucketName = null!;
    private static List<string> bucketNames = new List<string>();
    private static List<string> fileNames = new List<string>();

    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonS3>()
                    .AddTransient<S3ActionsWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();

        ConfigurationSetup();

        ServicesSetup(host);

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3)
Object Locking Feature Scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Setup(true);

            await DemoActionChoices();
```

```
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Cleaning up resources.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Cleanup(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Amazon S3 Object Locking Scenario is complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem: {ex.Message}");
            await Cleanup(true);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _s3ActionsWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<S3ActionsWrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Any setup operations needed.
    /// </summary>
    public static void ConfigurationSetup()
    {
        _resourcePrefix = _configuration["resourcePrefix"] ?? "dotnet-example";

        noLockBucketName = _resourcePrefix + "-no-lock";
        lockEnabledBucketName = _resourcePrefix + "-lock-enabled";
        retentionAfterCreationBucketName = _resourcePrefix + "-retention-after-
creation";

        bucketNames.Add(noLockBucketName);
        bucketNames.Add(lockEnabledBucketName);
        bucketNames.Add(retentionAfterCreationBucketName);
    }
```

```
    // <summary>
    /// Deploy necessary resources for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Setup(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nFor this scenario, we will use the AWS SDK for .NET to create several
S3\n" +
            "buckets and files to demonstrate working with S3 locking features.\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you are ready to start.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("\nS3 buckets can be created either with or without object
lock enabled.");
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CreateBucketWithObjectLock(noLockBucketName, false);
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CreateBucketWithObjectLock(lockEnabledBucketName,
true);
        await
_s3ActionsWrapper.CreateBucketWithObjectLock(retentionAfterCreationBucketName,
false);

        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("\nA bucket can be configured to use object locking with a
default retention period.");
        await
_s3ActionsWrapper.ModifyBucketDefaultRetention(retentionAfterCreationBucketName,
true,
            ObjectLockRetentionMode.Governance, DateTime.UtcNow.AddDays(1));

        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("\nObject lock policies can also be added to existing
buckets.");
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.EnableObjectLockOnBucket(lockEnabledBucketName);
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        // Upload some files to the buckets.
        Console.WriteLine("\nNow let's add some test files:");
        var fileName = _configuration["exampleFileName"] ?? "exampleFile.txt";
        int fileCount = 2;
        // Create the file if it does not already exist.
        if (!File.Exists(fileName))
        {
            await using StreamWriter sw = File.CreateText(fileName);
            await sw.WriteLineAsync(
                "This is a sample file for uploading to a bucket.");
        }

        foreach (var bucketName in bucketNames)
        {
            for (int i = 0; i < fileCount; i++)
            {
                var numberedFileName = Path.GetFileNameWithoutExtension(fileName) +
i + Path.GetExtension(fileName);
                fileNames.Add(numberedFileName);
                await _s3ActionsWrapper.UploadFileAsync(bucketName,
numberedFileName, fileName);
            }
        }
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        if (!interactive)
            return true;
        Console.WriteLine("\nNow we can set some object lock policies on individual
files:");
        foreach (var bucketName in bucketNames)
        {
            for (int i = 0; i < fileNames.Count; i++)
            {
                // No modifications to the objects in the first bucket.
                if (bucketName != bucketNames[0])
                {
                    var exampleFileName = fileNames[i];
```

```
                    switch (i)
                    {
                        case 0:
                            {
                                var question =
                                    $"\nWould you like to add a legal hold to
{exampleFileName} in {bucketName}? (y/n)";
                                if (GetYesNoResponse(question))
                                {
                                    // Set a legal hold.
                                    await
_s3ActionsWrapper.ModifyObjectLegalHold(bucketName, exampleFileName,
ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus.On);

                                }
                                break;
                            }
                        case 1:
                            {
                                var question =
                                    $"\nWould you like to add a 1 day Governance
retention period to {exampleFileName} in {bucketName}? (y/n)" +
                                    "\nReminder: Only a user with the
s3:BypassGovernanceRetention permission will be able to delete this file or its
bucket until the retention period has expired.";
                                if (GetYesNoResponse(question))
                                {
                                    // Set a Governance mode retention period for 1
day.
                                    await
_s3ActionsWrapper.ModifyObjectRetentionPeriod(
                                        bucketName, exampleFileName,
                                        ObjectLockRetentionMode.Governance,
                                        DateTime.UtcNow.AddDays(1));
                                }
                                break;
                            }
                    }
                }
            }
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }
```

```
    // <summary>
    /// List all of the current buckets and objects.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of buckets and objects.</returns>
    public static async Task<List<S3ObjectVersion>> ListBucketsAndObjects(bool
interactive)
    {
        var allObjects = new List<S3ObjectVersion>();
        foreach (var bucketName in bucketNames)
        {
            var objectsInBucket = await
_s3ActionsWrapper.ListBucketObjectsAndVersions(bucketName);
            foreach (var objectKey in objectsInBucket.Versions)
            {
                allObjects.Add(objectKey);
            }
        }

        if (interactive)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\nCurrent buckets and objects:\n");
            int i = 0;
            foreach (var bucketObject in allObjects)
            {
                i++;
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"{i}: {bucketObject.Key} \n\tBucket:
{bucketObject.BucketName}\n\tVersion: {bucketObject.VersionId}");
            }
        }

        return allObjects;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Present the user with the demo action choices.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> DemoActionChoices()
    {
        var choices = new string[]{
            "List all files in buckets.",
```

```
            "Attempt to delete a file.",
            "Attempt to delete a file with retention period bypass.",
            "Attempt to overwrite a file.",
            "View the object and bucket retention settings for a file.",
            "View the legal hold settings for a file.",
            "Finish the scenario."};

        var choice = 0;
        // Keep asking the user until they choose to move on.
        while (choice != 6)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            choice = GetChoiceResponse(
                "\nExplore the S3 locking features by selecting one of the following
choices:"
                , choices);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            switch (choice)
            {
                case 0:
                    {
                        await ListBucketsAndObjects(true);
                        break;
                    }
                case 1:
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine("\nEnter the number of the object to
delete:");
                        var allFiles = await ListBucketsAndObjects(true);
                        var fileChoice = GetChoiceResponse(null, allFiles.Select(f
=> f.Key).ToArray());
                        await
_s3ActionsWrapper.DeleteObjectFromBucket(allFiles[fileChoice].BucketName,
allFiles[fileChoice].Key, false, allFiles[fileChoice].VersionId);
                        break;
                    }
                case 2:
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine("\nEnter the number of the object to
delete:");
                        var allFiles = await ListBucketsAndObjects(true);
                        var fileChoice = GetChoiceResponse(null, allFiles.Select(f
=> f.Key).ToArray());
```

```
                        await
_s3ActionsWrapper.DeleteObjectFromBucket(allFiles[fileChoice].BucketName,
allFiles[fileChoice].Key, true, allFiles[fileChoice].VersionId);
                        break;
                    }
                case 3:
                    {
                        var allFiles = await ListBucketsAndObjects(true);
                        Console.WriteLine("\nEnter the number of the object to
overwrite:");
                        var fileChoice = GetChoiceResponse(null, allFiles.Select(f
=> f.Key).ToArray());
                        // Create the file if it does not already exist.
                        if (!File.Exists(allFiles[fileChoice].Key))
                        {
                            await using StreamWriter sw =
File.CreateText(allFiles[fileChoice].Key);
                            await sw.WriteLineAsync(
                                "This is a sample file for uploading to a bucket.");
                        }
                        await
_s3ActionsWrapper.UploadFileAsync(allFiles[fileChoice].BucketName,
allFiles[fileChoice].Key, allFiles[fileChoice].Key);
                        break;
                    }
                case 4:
                    {
                        var allFiles = await ListBucketsAndObjects(true);
                        Console.WriteLine("\nEnter the number of the object and
bucket to view:");
                        var fileChoice = GetChoiceResponse(null, allFiles.Select(f
=> f.Key).ToArray());
                        await
_s3ActionsWrapper.GetObjectRetention(allFiles[fileChoice].BucketName,
allFiles[fileChoice].Key);
                        await
_s3ActionsWrapper.GetBucketObjectLockConfiguration(allFiles[fileChoice].BucketName);
                        break;
                    }
                case 5:
                    {
                        var allFiles = await ListBucketsAndObjects(true);
                        Console.WriteLine("\nEnter the number of the object to
view:");
```

```
                        var fileChoice = GetChoiceResponse(null, allFiles.Select(f
=> f.Key).ToArray());
                        await
_s3ActionsWrapper.GetObjectLegalHold(allFiles[fileChoice].BucketName,
allFiles[fileChoice].Key);
                        break;
                    }
            }
        }
        return true;
    }

    // <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Cleanup(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse("Do you want to clean up all files and
buckets? (y/n) "))
        {
            // Remove all locks and delete all buckets and objects.
            var allFiles = await ListBucketsAndObjects(false);
            foreach (var fileInfo in allFiles)
            {
                // Check for a legal hold.
                var legalHold = await
_s3ActionsWrapper.GetObjectLegalHold(fileInfo.BucketName, fileInfo.Key);
                if (legalHold?.Status?.Value == ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus.On)
                {
                    await
_s3ActionsWrapper.ModifyObjectLegalHold(fileInfo.BucketName, fileInfo.Key,
ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus.Off);
                }

                // Check for a retention period.
                var retention = await
_s3ActionsWrapper.GetObjectRetention(fileInfo.BucketName, fileInfo.Key);
                var hasRetentionPeriod = retention?.Mode ==
ObjectLockRetentionMode.Governance && retention.RetainUntilDate >
DateTime.UtcNow.Date;
```

```
                await _s3ActionsWrapper.DeleteObjectFromBucket(fileInfo.BucketName,
fileInfo.Key, hasRetentionPeriod, fileInfo.VersionId);
            }

            foreach (var bucketName in bucketNames)
            {
                await _s3ActionsWrapper.DeleteBucketByName(bucketName);
            }

        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Ok, we'll leave the resources intact.\n" +
                "Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you might
incur unexpected charges."
            );
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        var response = ynResponse != null && ynResponse.Equals("y",
StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
        return response;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a choice response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <param name="choices">The choices to print on the console.</param>
    /// <returns>The index of the selected choice</returns>
    private static int GetChoiceResponse(string? question, string[] choices)
```

```
    {
        if (question != null)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(question);

            for (int i = 0; i < choices.Length; i++)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {choices[i]}");
            }
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > choices.Length)
        {
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }

        return choiceNumber - 1;
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for S3 functions.

```
using System.Net;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;

namespace S3ObjectLockScenario;

/// <summary>
/// Encapsulate the Amazon S3 operations.
/// </summary>
public class S3ActionsWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonS3 _amazonS3;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the S3ActionsWrapper.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="amazonS3">The injected S3 client.</param>
    public S3ActionsWrapper(IAmazonS3 amazonS3, IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonS3 = amazonS3;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon S3 bucket with object lock actions.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to create.</param>
    /// <param name="enableObjectLock">True to enable object lock on the bucket.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateBucketWithObjectLock(string bucketName, bool
 enableObjectLock)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"\tCreating bucket {bucketName} with object lock
 {enableObjectLock}.");
        try
        {
            var request = new PutBucketRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                UseClientRegion = true,
                ObjectLockEnabledForBucket = enableObjectLock,
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutBucketAsync(request);

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error creating bucket: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Enable object lock on an existing bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to modify.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> EnableObjectLockOnBucket(string bucketName)
```

```
    {
        try
        {
            // First, enable Versioning on the bucket.
            await _amazonS3.PutBucketVersioningAsync(new
PutBucketVersioningRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                VersioningConfig = new S3BucketVersioningConfig()
                {
                    EnableMfaDelete = false,
                    Status = VersionStatus.Enabled
                }
            });

            var request = new PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                ObjectLockConfiguration = new ObjectLockConfiguration()
                {
                    ObjectLockEnabled = new ObjectLockEnabled("Enabled"),
                },
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectLockConfigurationAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded an object lock policy to bucket
{bucketName}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error modifying object lock: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set or modify a retention period on an object in an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="retention">The retention mode.</param>
    /// <param name="retainUntilDate">The date retention expires.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> ModifyObjectRetentionPeriod(string bucketName,
        string objectKey, ObjectLockRetentionMode retention, DateTime
retainUntilDate)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new PutObjectRetentionRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
                Retention = new ObjectLockRetention()
                {
                    Mode = retention,
                    RetainUntilDate = retainUntilDate
                }
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectRetentionAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tSet retention for {objectKey} in {bucketName}
until {retainUntilDate:d}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tError modifying retention period:
'{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set or modify a retention period on an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket to modify.</param>
    /// <param name="retention">The retention mode.</param>
    /// <param name="retainUntilDate">The date for retention until.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ModifyBucketDefaultRetention(string bucketName, bool
enableObjectLock, ObjectLockRetentionMode retention, DateTime retainUntilDate)
    {
        var enabledString = enableObjectLock ? "Enabled" : "Disabled";
        var timeDifference = retainUntilDate.Subtract(DateTime.Now);
        try
        {
```

```
            // First, enable Versioning on the bucket.
            await _amazonS3.PutBucketVersioningAsync(new
PutBucketVersioningRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                VersioningConfig = new S3BucketVersioningConfig()
                {
                    EnableMfaDelete = false,
                    Status = VersionStatus.Enabled
                }
            });

            var request = new PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                ObjectLockConfiguration = new ObjectLockConfiguration()
                {
                    ObjectLockEnabled = new ObjectLockEnabled(enabledString),
                    Rule = new ObjectLockRule()
                    {
                        DefaultRetention = new DefaultRetention()
                        {
                            Mode = retention,
                            Days = timeDifference.Days // Can be specified in days
or years but not both.
                        }
                    }
                }
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectLockConfigurationAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded a default retention to bucket
{bucketName}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tError modifying object lock: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the retention period for an S3 object.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The object key.</param>
    /// <returns>The object retention details.</returns>
    public async Task<ObjectLockRetention> GetObjectRetention(string bucketName,
        string objectKey)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetObjectRetentionRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectRetentionAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tObject retention for {objectKey} in {bucketName}:
" +
                              $"\n\t{response.Retention.Mode} until
{response.Retention.RetainUntilDate:d}.");
            return response.Retention;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to fetch object lock retention:
'{ex.Message}'");
            return new ObjectLockRetention();
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set or modify a legal hold on an object in an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="holdStatus">The On or Off status for the legal hold.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ModifyObjectLegalHold(string bucketName,
        string objectKey, ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus holdStatus)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new PutObjectLegalHoldRequest()
            {
```

```
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
                LegalHold = new ObjectLockLegalHold()
                {
                    Status = holdStatus
                }
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectLegalHoldAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tModified legal hold for {objectKey} in
{bucketName}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tError modifying legal hold: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the legal hold details for an S3 object.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The object key.</param>
    /// <returns>The object legal hold details.</returns>
    public async Task<ObjectLockLegalHold> GetObjectLegalHold(string bucketName,
        string objectKey)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetObjectLegalHoldRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectLegalHoldAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tObject legal hold for {objectKey} in {bucketName}:
" +
                              $"\n\tStatus: {response.LegalHold.Status}");
            return response.LegalHold;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to fetch legal hold: '{ex.Message}'");
            return new ObjectLockLegalHold();
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the object lock configuration details for an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket to get details.</param>
    /// <returns>The bucket's object lock configuration details.</returns>
    public async Task<ObjectLockConfiguration>
GetBucketObjectLockConfiguration(string bucketName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetObjectLockConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectLockConfigurationAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tBucket object lock config for {bucketName} in
{bucketName}: " +
                              $"\n\tEnabled:
{response.ObjectLockConfiguration.ObjectLockEnabled}" +
                              $"\n\tRule:
{response.ObjectLockConfiguration.Rule?.DefaultRetention}");

            return response.ObjectLockConfiguration;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to fetch object lock config:
'{ex.Message}'");
            return new ObjectLockConfiguration();
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Upload a file from the local computer to an Amazon S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket to use.</param>
    /// <param name="objectName">The object to upload.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="filePath">The path, including file name, of the object to
upload.</param>
    /// <returns>True if success.<returns>
    public async Task<bool> UploadFileAsync(string bucketName, string objectName,
string filePath)
    {
        var request = new PutObjectRequest
        {
            BucketName = bucketName,
            Key = objectName,
            FilePath = filePath,
            ChecksumAlgorithm = ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA256
        };

        var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectAsync(request);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tSuccessfully uploaded {objectName} to
{bucketName}.");
            return true;
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tCould not upload {objectName} to {bucketName}.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List bucket objects and versions.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket to use.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of objects and versions.</returns>
    public async Task<ListVersionsResponse> ListBucketObjectsAndVersions(string
bucketName)
    {
        var request = new ListVersionsRequest()
        {
            BucketName = bucketName
        };

        var response = await _amazonS3.ListVersionsAsync(request);
        return response;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an object from a specific bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket to use.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="hasRetention">True if the object has retention settings.</
param>
    /// <param name="versionId">Optional versionId.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteObjectFromBucket(string bucketName, string
 objectKey, bool hasRetention, string? versionId = null)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteObjectRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
                VersionId = versionId,
            };
            if (hasRetention)
            {
                // Set the BypassGovernanceRetention header
                // if the file has retention settings.
                request.BypassGovernanceRetention = true;
            }
            await _amazonS3.DeleteObjectAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"Deleted {objectKey} in {bucketName}.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to delete object {objectKey} in bucket
 {bucketName}: " + ex.Message);
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a specific bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket to use.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="versionId">Optional versionId.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteBucketByName(string bucketName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteBucketRequest() { BucketName = bucketName, };
            var response = await _amazonS3.DeleteBucketAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDelete for {bucketName} complete.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to delete bucket {bucketName}: " +
 ex.Message);
            return false;
        }

    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - GetObjectLegalHold
  - GetObjectLockConfiguration
  - GetObjectRetention
  - PutObjectLegalHold
  - PutObjectLockConfiguration
  - PutObjectRetention

Make conditional requests

The following code example shows how to add preconditions to Amazon S3 requests.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon S3 conditional request features.

```
using Amazon.S3;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;

namespace S3ConditionalRequestsScenario;

public static class S3ConditionalRequestsScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This example demonstrates the use of conditional requests for S3 operations.
    You can use conditional requests to add preconditions to S3 read requests to
 return or copy
    an object based on its Entity tag (ETag), or last modified date.
    You can use a conditional write requests to prevent overwrites by ensuring
    there is no existing object with the same key.
   */

    public static S3ActionsWrapper _s3ActionsWrapper = null!;
    public static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;
    public static string _resourcePrefix = null!;
    public static string _sourceBucketName = null!;
    public static string _destinationBucketName = null!;
    public static string _sampleObjectKey = null!;
    public static string _sampleObjectEtag = null!;
    public static bool _interactive = true;
```

```
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonS3>()
                    .AddTransient<S3ActionsWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3)
Conditional Requests Feature Scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            ConfigurationSetup();
            _sampleObjectEtag = await Setup(_sourceBucketName,
_destinationBucketName, _sampleObjectKey);

            await DisplayDemoChoices(_sourceBucketName, _destinationBucketName,
_sampleObjectKey, _sampleObjectEtag, 0);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Cleaning up resources.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Cleanup(true);
```

```
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Amazon S3 Conditional Requests Feature Scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem: {ex.Message}");
            await CleanupScenario(_sourceBucketName, _destinationBucketName);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _s3ActionsWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<S3ActionsWrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Any setup operations needed.
    /// </summary>
    public static void ConfigurationSetup()
    {
        _resourcePrefix = _configuration["resourcePrefix"] ?? "dotnet-example";

        _sourceBucketName = _resourcePrefix + "-source";
        _destinationBucketName = _resourcePrefix + "-dest";
        _sampleObjectKey = _resourcePrefix + "-sample-object.txt";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Sets up the scenario by creating a source and destination bucket, and
uploading a test file to the source bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The name of the source bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="destBucket">The name of the destination bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The name of the test file to add to the source
bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>The ETag of the uploaded test file.</returns>
```

```
    public static async Task<string> Setup(string sourceBucket, string destBucket,
 string objectKey)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nFor this scenario, we will use the AWS SDK for .NET to create several
 S3\n" +
            "buckets and files to demonstrate working with S3 conditional requests.
\n" +
            "This example demonstrates the use of conditional requests for S3
 operations.\r\n" +
            "You can use conditional requests to add preconditions to S3 read
 requests to return or copy\r\n" +
            "an object based on its Entity tag (ETag), or last modified date. \r\n"
 +
            "You can use a conditional write requests to prevent overwrites by
 ensuring \r\n" +
            "there is no existing object with the same key. \r\n\r\n" +
            "This example will allow you to perform conditional reads\r\n" +
            "and writes that will succeed or fail based on your selected options.\r
\n\r\n" +
            "Sample buckets and a sample object will be created as part of the
 example.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you are ready to start.");
        if (_interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CreateBucketWithName(sourceBucket);
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CreateBucketWithName(destBucket);

        var eTag = await _s3ActionsWrapper.PutObjectConditional(objectKey,
 sourceBucket,
            "Test file content.");

        return eTag;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Cleans up the scenario by deleting the source and destination buckets.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The name of the source bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="destBucket">The name of the destination bucket.</param>
    public static async Task CleanupScenario(string sourceBucket, string destBucket)
```

```
    {
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CleanupBucketByName(sourceBucket);
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CleanupBucketByName(destBucket);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Displays a list of the objects in the test buckets.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The name of the source bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="destBucket">The name of the destination bucket.</param>
    public static async Task DisplayBuckets(string sourceBucket, string destBucket)
    {
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.ListBucketContentsByName(sourceBucket);
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.ListBucketContentsByName(destBucket);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Displays the menu of conditional request options for the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The name of the source bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="destBucket">The name of the destination bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the test object in the source bucket.</
param>
    /// <param name="etag">The ETag of the test object in the source bucket.</param>
    public static async Task DisplayDemoChoices(string sourceBucket, string
 destBucket, string objectKey, string etag, int defaultChoice)
    {
        var actions = new[]
        {
            "Print a list of bucket items.",
            "Perform a conditional read.",
            "Perform a conditional copy.",
            "Perform a conditional write.",
            "Clean up and exit."
        };

        var conditions = new[]
        {
            "If-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should succeed.",
            "If-None-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should fail.",
            "If-Modified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
 succeed.",
            "If-Unmodified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
 fail."
```

```
        };

        var conditionTypes = new[]
        {
            S3ConditionType.IfMatch,
            S3ConditionType.IfNoneMatch,
            S3ConditionType.IfModifiedSince,
            S3ConditionType.IfUnmodifiedSince,
        };

        var yesterdayDate = DateTime.UtcNow.AddDays(-1);

        int choice;
        while ((choice = GetChoiceResponse("\nExplore the S3 conditional request
features by selecting one of the following choices:", actions, defaultChoice)) !=
4)
        {
            switch (choice)
            {
                case 0:
                    Console.WriteLine("Listing the objects and buckets.");
                    await DisplayBuckets(sourceBucket, destBucket);
                    break;
                case 1:
                    int conditionTypeIndex = GetChoiceResponse("Perform a
conditional read:", conditions, 1);
                    if (conditionTypeIndex == 0 || conditionTypeIndex == 1)
                    {
                        await _s3ActionsWrapper.GetObjectConditional(objectKey,
sourceBucket, conditionTypes[conditionTypeIndex], null, _sampleObjectEtag);
                    }
                    else if (conditionTypeIndex == 2 || conditionTypeIndex == 3)
                    {
                        await _s3ActionsWrapper.GetObjectConditional(objectKey,
sourceBucket, conditionTypes[conditionTypeIndex], yesterdayDate);
                    }
                    break;
                case 2:
                    int copyConditionTypeIndex = GetChoiceResponse("Perform a
conditional copy:", conditions, 1);
                    string destKey = GetStringResponse("Enter an object key:",
"sampleObjectKey");
                    if (copyConditionTypeIndex == 0 || copyConditionTypeIndex == 1)
                    {
```

```
                        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CopyObjectConditional(objectKey,
destKey, sourceBucket, destBucket, conditionTypes[copyConditionTypeIndex], null,
etag);
                    }
                    else if (copyConditionTypeIndex == 2 || copyConditionTypeIndex
== 3)
                    {
                        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CopyObjectConditional(objectKey,
destKey, sourceBucket, destBucket, conditionTypes[copyConditionTypeIndex],
yesterdayDate);
                    }
                    break;
                case 3:
                    Console.WriteLine("Perform a conditional write using IfNoneMatch
condition on the object key.");
                    Console.WriteLine("If the key is a duplicate, the write will
fail.");
                    string newObjectKey = GetStringResponse("Enter an object key:",
"newObjectKey");
                    await _s3ActionsWrapper.PutObjectConditional(newObjectKey,
sourceBucket, "Conditional write example data.");
                    break;
            }

            if (!_interactive)
            {
                break;
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine("Proceeding to cleanup.");
    }

    // <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Cleanup(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse("Do you want to clean up all files and
buckets? (y/n) "))
```

```
        {
            await _s3ActionsWrapper.CleanUpBucketByName(_sourceBucketName);
            await _s3ActionsWrapper.CleanUpBucketByName(_destinationBucketName);

        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Ok, we'll leave the resources intact.\n" +
                "Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you might
incur unexpected charges."
            );
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        var response = ynResponse != null && ynResponse.Equals("y",
StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
        return response;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a choice response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <param name="choices">The choices to print on the console.</param>
    /// <returns>The index of the selected choice</returns>
    private static int GetChoiceResponse(string? question, string[] choices, int
defaultChoice)
    {
        if (question != null)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(question);
```

```
            for (int i = 0; i < choices.Length; i++)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {choices[i]}");
            }
        }

        if (!_interactive)
            return defaultChoice;

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > choices.Length)
        {
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }

        return choiceNumber - 1;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get a string response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question to print.</param>
    /// <param name="defaultAnswer">A default answer to use when not interactive.</
param>
    /// <returns>The string response.</returns>
    public static string GetStringResponse(string? question, string defaultAnswer)
    {
        string? answer = "";
        if (_interactive)
        {
            do
            {
                Console.WriteLine(question);
                answer = Console.ReadLine();
            } while (string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(answer));
        }
        else
        {
            answer = defaultAnswer;
        }

        return answer;
```

```
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for S3 functions.

```
using System.Net;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;

namespace S3ConditionalRequestsScenario;

/// <summary>
/// Encapsulate the Amazon S3 operations.
/// </summary>
public class S3ActionsWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonS3 _amazonS3;
    private readonly ILogger<S3ActionsWrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the S3ActionsWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonS3">The injected S3 client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The class logger.</param>
    public S3ActionsWrapper(IAmazonS3 amazonS3, ILogger<S3ActionsWrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonS3 = amazonS3;
        _logger = logger;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieves an object from Amazon S3 with a conditional request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to retrieve.</param>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The source bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionType">The type of condition: 'IfMatch', 'IfNoneMatch',
 'IfModifiedSince', 'IfUnmodifiedSince'.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionDateValue">The value to use for the condition for
 dates.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="etagConditionalValue">The value to use for the condition for
 etags.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the conditional read is successful, False otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> GetObjectConditional(string objectKey, string
 sourceBucket,
        S3ConditionType conditionType, DateTime? conditionDateValue = null, string?
 etagConditionalValue = null)
    {
        try
        {
            var getObjectRequest = new GetObjectRequest
            {
                BucketName = sourceBucket,
                Key = objectKey
            };

            switch (conditionType)
            {
                case S3ConditionType.IfMatch:
                    getObjectRequest.EtagToMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfNoneMatch:
                    getObjectRequest.EtagToNotMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfModifiedSince:
                    getObjectRequest.ModifiedSinceDateUtc =
 conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfUnmodifiedSince:
                    getObjectRequest.UnmodifiedSinceDateUtc =
 conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                default:
                    throw new ArgumentOutOfRangeException(nameof(conditionType),
 conditionType, null);
            }

            var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectAsync(getObjectRequest);
            var sampleBytes = new byte[20];
            await response.ResponseStream.ReadAsync(sampleBytes, 0, 20);
            _logger.LogInformation($"Conditional read successful. Here are the first
 20 bytes of the object:\n{System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetString(sampleBytes)}");
            return true;
```

```
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "PreconditionFailed")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional read failed: Precondition failed");
            }
            else if (e.ErrorCode == "NotModified")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional read failed: Object not modified");
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Unexpected error: {e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Uploads an object to Amazon S3 with a conditional request. Prevents
 overwrite using an IfNoneMatch condition for the object key.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to upload.</param>
    /// <param name="bucket">The source bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="content">The content to upload as a string.</param>
    /// <returns>The ETag if the conditional write is successful, empty otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<string> PutObjectConditional(string objectKey, string bucket,
 string content)
    {
        try
        {
            var putObjectRequest = new PutObjectRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucket,
                Key = objectKey,
                ContentBody = content,
                IfNoneMatch = "*"
            };

            var putResult = await _amazonS3.PutObjectAsync(putObjectRequest);
```

```
            _logger.LogInformation($"Conditional write successful for key
 {objectKey} in bucket {bucket}.");
            return putResult.ETag;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "PreconditionFailed")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional write failed: Precondition failed");
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Unexpected error: {e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
            return string.Empty;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Copies an object from one Amazon S3 bucket to another with a conditional
 request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sourceKey">The key of the source object to copy.</param>
    /// <param name="destKey">The key of the destination object.</param>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The source bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="destBucket">The destination bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionType">The type of condition to apply, e.g.
 'CopySourceIfMatch', 'CopySourceIfNoneMatch', 'CopySourceIfModifiedSince',
 'CopySourceIfUnmodifiedSince'.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionDateValue">The value to use for the condition for
 dates.</param>
    /// <param name="etagConditionalValue">The value to use for the condition for
 etags.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the conditional copy is successful, False otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> CopyObjectConditional(string sourceKey, string destKey,
 string sourceBucket, string destBucket,
        S3ConditionType conditionType, DateTime? conditionDateValue = null, string?
 etagConditionalValue = null)
    {
        try
        {
            var copyObjectRequest = new CopyObjectRequest
```

```
            {
                DestinationBucket = destBucket,
                DestinationKey = destKey,
                SourceBucket = sourceBucket,
                SourceKey = sourceKey
            };

            switch (conditionType)
            {
                case S3ConditionType.IfMatch:
                    copyObjectRequest.ETagToMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfNoneMatch:
                    copyObjectRequest.ETagToNotMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfModifiedSince:
                    copyObjectRequest.ModifiedSinceDateUtc =
conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfUnmodifiedSince:
                    copyObjectRequest.UnmodifiedSinceDateUtc =
conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                default:
                    throw new ArgumentOutOfRangeException(nameof(conditionType),
conditionType, null);
            }

            await _amazonS3.CopyObjectAsync(copyObjectRequest);
            _logger.LogInformation($"Conditional copy successful for key {destKey}
in bucket {destBucket}.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "PreconditionFailed")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional copy failed: Precondition failed");
            }
            else if (e.ErrorCode == "304")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional copy failed: Object not modified");
            }
            else
```

```
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Unexpected error: {e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon S3 bucket with a specified name and check that the
bucket is ready.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to create.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateBucketWithName(string bucketName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"\tCreating bucket {bucketName}.");
        try
        {
            var request = new PutBucketRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                UseClientRegion = true
            };

            await _amazonS3.PutBucketAsync(request);
            var bucketReady = false;
            var retries = 5;
            while (!bucketReady && retries > 0)
            {
                Thread.Sleep(5000);
                bucketReady = await
Amazon.S3.Util.AmazonS3Util.DoesS3BucketExistV2Async(_amazonS3, bucketName);
                retries--;
            }

            return bucketReady;
        }
        catch (BucketAlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Bucket already exists: '{ex.Message}'");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error creating bucket: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Cleans up objects and deletes the bucket by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CleanupBucketByName(string bucketName)
    {
        try
        {
            var listObjectsResponse = await _amazonS3.ListObjectsV2Async(new
ListObjectsV2Request { BucketName = bucketName });
            foreach (var obj in listObjectsResponse.S3Objects)
            {
                await _amazonS3.DeleteObjectAsync(new DeleteObjectRequest
{ BucketName = bucketName, Key = obj.Key });
            }
            await _amazonS3.DeleteBucketAsync(new DeleteBucketRequest { BucketName =
bucketName });
            Console.WriteLine($"Cleaned up bucket: {bucketName}.");
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "NoSuchBucket")
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Bucket {bucketName} does not exist, skipping
cleanup.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error deleting bucket: {e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List the contents of the bucket with their ETag.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task<List<S3Object>> ListBucketContentsByName(string bucketName)
    {
        var results = new List<S3Object>();
        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t Items in bucket {bucketName}");
            var listObjectsResponse = await _amazonS3.ListObjectsV2Async(new
ListObjectsV2Request { BucketName = bucketName });
            if (listObjectsResponse.S3Objects.Count == 0)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("\t\tNo objects found.");
            }
            else
            {
                foreach (var obj in listObjectsResponse.S3Objects)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"\t\t object: {obj.Key} ETag {obj.ETag}");
                }
            }
            results = listObjectsResponse.S3Objects;

        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "NoSuchBucket")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Bucket {bucketName} does not exist.");
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Error listing bucket and objects:
{e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
        }

        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an object from a specific bucket.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket to use.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteObjectFromBucket(string bucketName, string
objectKey)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteObjectRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey
            };
            await _amazonS3.DeleteObjectAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"Deleted {objectKey} in {bucketName}.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to delete object {objectKey} in bucket
{bucketName}: " + ex.Message);
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a specific bucket by deleting the objects and then the bucket itself.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket to use.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="versionId">Optional versionId.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CleanUpBucketByName(string bucketName)
    {
        try
        {
            var allFiles = await ListBucketContentsByName(bucketName);

            foreach (var fileInfo in allFiles)
            {
                await DeleteObjectFromBucket(fileInfo.BucketName, fileInfo.Key);
            }

            var request = new DeleteBucketRequest() { BucketName = bucketName, };
```

```
            var response = await _amazonS3.DeleteBucketAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDelete for {bucketName} complete.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to delete bucket {bucketName}: " +
 ex.Message);
            return false;
        }

    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - GetObject
  - PutObject

Manage access control lists (ACLs)

The following code example shows how to manage access control lists (ACLs) for Amazon S3 buckets.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to manage Amazon Simple Storage Service
    /// (Amazon S3) access control lists (ACLs) to control Amazon S3 bucket
    /// access.
    /// </summary>
    public class ManageACLs
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket1";
            string newBucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket2";
            string keyName = "sample-object.txt";
            string emailAddress = "someone@example.com";

            // If the AWS Region where your bucket is located is different from
            // the Region defined for the default user, pass the Amazon S3 bucket's
            // name to the client constructor. It should look like this:
            // RegionEndpoint bucketRegion = RegionEndpoint.USEast1;
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();

            await TestBucketObjectACLsAsync(client, bucketName, newBucketName,
keyName, emailAddress);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates a new Amazon S3 bucket with a canned ACL, then retrieves the ACL
        /// information and then adds a new ACL to one of the objects in the
        /// Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// methods to create a bucket, get an ACL, and add a different ACL to
        /// one of the objects.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the original Amazon S3
        /// bucket name.</param>
        /// <param name="newBucketName">A string representing the name of the
        /// new bucket that will be created.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">A string representing the key name of an Amazon S3
        /// object for which we will change the ACL.</param>
        /// <param name="emailAddress">A string representing the email address
        /// belonging to the person to whom access to the Amazon S3 bucket will be
        /// granted.</param>
        public static async Task TestBucketObjectACLsAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
```

```
            string bucketName,
            string newBucketName,
            string keyName,
            string emailAddress)
        {
            try
            {
                // Create a new Amazon S3 bucket and specify canned ACL.
                var success = await CreateBucketWithCannedACLAsync(client,
 newBucketName);

                // Get the ACL on a bucket.
                await GetBucketACLAsync(client, bucketName);

                // Add (replace) the ACL on an object in a bucket.
                await AddACLToExistingObjectAsync(client, bucketName, keyName,
 emailAddress);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception amazonS3Exception)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Exception: {amazonS3Exception.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates a new Amazon S3 bucket with a canned ACL attached.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized client object used to call
        /// PutBucketAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="newBucketName">A string representing the name of the
        /// new Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
        /// <returns>Returns a boolean value indicating success or failure.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> CreateBucketWithCannedACLAsync(IAmazonS3
 client, string newBucketName)
        {
            var request = new PutBucketRequest()
            {
                BucketName = newBucketName,
                BucketRegion = S3Region.EUWest1,

                // Add a canned ACL.
                CannedACL = S3CannedACL.LogDeliveryWrite,
            };
```

```
            var response = await client.PutBucketAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }


        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves the ACL associated with the Amazon S3 bucket name in the
        /// bucketName parameter.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized client object used to call
        /// PutBucketAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket for which we want to get
 the
        /// ACL list.</param>
        /// <returns>Returns an S3AccessControlList returned from the call to
        /// GetACLAsync.</returns>
        public static async Task<S3AccessControlList> GetBucketACLAsync(IAmazonS3
 client, string bucketName)
        {
            GetACLResponse response = await client.GetACLAsync(new GetACLRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
            });

            return response.AccessControlList;
        }



        /// <summary>
        /// Adds a new ACL to an existing object in the Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized client object used to call
        /// PutBucketAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the name of the Amazon S3
        /// bucket containing the object to which we want to apply a new ACL.</
param>
        /// <param name="keyName">A string representing the name of the object
        /// to which we want to apply the new ACL.</param>
        /// <param name="emailAddress">The email address of the person to whom
        /// we will be applying to whom access will be granted.</param>
        public static async Task AddACLToExistingObjectAsync(IAmazonS3 client,
 string bucketName, string keyName, string emailAddress)
```

```
        {
            // Retrieve the ACL for an object.
            GetACLResponse aclResponse = await client.GetACLAsync(new GetACLRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = keyName,
            });

            S3AccessControlList acl = aclResponse.AccessControlList;

            // Retrieve the owner.
            Owner owner = acl.Owner;

            // Clear existing grants.
            acl.Grants.Clear();

            // Add a grant to reset the owner's full permission
            // (the previous clear statement removed all permissions).
            var fullControlGrant = new S3Grant
            {
                Grantee = new S3Grantee { CanonicalUser = acl.Owner.Id },
            };
            acl.AddGrant(fullControlGrant.Grantee, S3Permission.FULL_CONTROL);

            // Specify email to identify grantee for granting permissions.
            var grantUsingEmail = new S3Grant
            {
                Grantee = new S3Grantee { EmailAddress = emailAddress },
                Permission = S3Permission.WRITE_ACP,
            };

            // Specify log delivery group as grantee.
            var grantLogDeliveryGroup = new S3Grant
            {
                Grantee = new S3Grantee { URI = "http://acs.amazonaws.com/groups/s3/
LogDelivery" },
                Permission = S3Permission.WRITE,
            };

            // Create a new ACL.
            var newAcl = new S3AccessControlList
            {
                Grants = new List<S3Grant> { grantUsingEmail,
 grantLogDeliveryGroup },
```

```
                Owner = owner,
            };

            // Set the new ACL. We're throwing away the response here.
            _ = await client.PutACLAsync(new PutACLRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = keyName,
                AccessControlList = newAcl,
            });
        }

    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - GetBucketAcl
  - GetObjectAcl
  - PutBucketAcl
  - PutObjectAcl

Perform a multipart copy

The following code example shows how to perform a multipart copy of an Amazon S3 object.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to perform a multi-part copy from one Amazon
    /// Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket to another.
    /// </summary>
    public class MPUapiCopyObj
    {
        private const string SourceBucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket1";
        private const string TargetBucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket2";
        private const string SourceObjectKey = "example.mov";
        private const string TargetObjectKey = "copied_video_file.mov";

        /// <summary>
        /// This method starts the multi-part upload.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();
            Console.WriteLine("Copying object...");
            await MPUCopyObjectAsync(s3Client);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method uses the passed client object to perform a multipart
        /// copy operation.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An Amazon S3 client object that will be used
        /// to perform the copy.</param>
        public static async Task MPUCopyObjectAsync(AmazonS3Client client)
        {
            // Create a list to store the copy part responses.
            var copyResponses = new List<CopyPartResponse>();

            // Setup information required to initiate the multipart upload.
            var initiateRequest = new InitiateMultipartUploadRequest
            {
                BucketName = TargetBucket,
                Key = TargetObjectKey,
            };

            // Initiate the upload.
            InitiateMultipartUploadResponse initResponse =
                await client.InitiateMultipartUploadAsync(initiateRequest);

            // Save the upload ID.
```

```
            string uploadId = initResponse.UploadId;

            try
            {
                // Get the size of the object.
                var metadataRequest = new GetObjectMetadataRequest
                {
                    BucketName = SourceBucket,
                    Key = SourceObjectKey,
                };

                GetObjectMetadataResponse metadataResponse =
                    await client.GetObjectMetadataAsync(metadataRequest);
                var objectSize = metadataResponse.ContentLength; // Length in bytes.

                // Copy the parts.
                var partSize = 5 * (long)Math.Pow(2, 20); // Part size is 5 MB.

                long bytePosition = 0;
                for (int i = 1; bytePosition < objectSize; i++)
                {
                    var copyRequest = new CopyPartRequest
                    {
                        DestinationBucket = TargetBucket,
                        DestinationKey = TargetObjectKey,
                        SourceBucket = SourceBucket,
                        SourceKey = SourceObjectKey,
                        UploadId = uploadId,
                        FirstByte = bytePosition,
                        LastByte = bytePosition + partSize - 1 >= objectSize ?
objectSize - 1 : bytePosition + partSize - 1,
                        PartNumber = i,
                    };

                    copyResponses.Add(await client.CopyPartAsync(copyRequest));

                    bytePosition += partSize;
                }

                // Set up to complete the copy.
                var completeRequest = new CompleteMultipartUploadRequest
                {
                    BucketName = TargetBucket,
                    Key = TargetObjectKey,
```

```
                    UploadId = initResponse.UploadId,
                };
                completeRequest.AddPartETags(copyResponses);

                // Complete the copy.
                CompleteMultipartUploadResponse completeUploadResponse =
                    await client.CompleteMultipartUploadAsync(completeRequest);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error encountered on server.
Message:'{e.Message}' when writing an object");
            }
            catch (Exception e)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Unknown encountered on server.
Message:'{e.Message}' when writing an object");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CompleteMultipartUpload
  - CreateMultipartUpload
  - GetObjectMetadata
  - UploadPartCopy

Transform data with S3 Object Lambda

The following code example shows how to transform data for your application with S3 Object Lambda.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to add custom code to standard S3 GET requests to modify the requested object retrieved from S3 so that the object suit the needs of the requesting client or application.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Lambda
- Amazon S3

Upload or download large files

The following code example shows how to upload or download large files to and from Amazon S3.

For more information, see Uploading an object using multipart upload.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Call functions that transfer files to and from an S3 bucket using the Amazon S3 TransferUtility.

```
global using System.Text;
global using Amazon.S3;
global using Amazon.S3.Model;
global using Amazon.S3.Transfer;
global using TransferUtilityBasics;



// This Amazon S3 client uses the default user credentials
// defined for this computer.
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;

IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();
var transferUtil = new TransferUtility(client);
IConfiguration _configuration;

_configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
    .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
    .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from JSON file.
    .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
        true) // Optionally load local settings.
```

```
    .Build();

// Edit the values in settings.json to use an S3 bucket and files that
// exist on your AWS account and on the local computer where you
// run this scenario.
var bucketName = _configuration["BucketName"];
var localPath =
 $"{Environment.GetFolderPath(Environment.SpecialFolder.ApplicationData)}\
\TransferFolder";

DisplayInstructions();

PressEnter();

Console.WriteLine();

// Upload a single file to an S3 bucket.
DisplayTitle("Upload a single file");

var fileToUpload = _configuration["FileToUpload"];
Console.WriteLine($"Uploading {fileToUpload} to the S3 bucket, {bucketName}.");

var success = await TransferMethods.UploadSingleFileAsync(transferUtil, bucketName,
 fileToUpload, localPath);
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Successfully uploaded the file, {fileToUpload} to
 {bucketName}.");
}

PressEnter();

// Upload a local directory to an S3 bucket.
DisplayTitle("Upload all files from a local directory");
Console.WriteLine("Upload all the files in a local folder to an S3 bucket.");
const string keyPrefix = "UploadFolder";
var uploadPath = $"{localPath}\\UploadFolder";

Console.WriteLine($"Uploading the files in {uploadPath} to {bucketName}");
DisplayTitle($"{uploadPath} files");
DisplayLocalFiles(uploadPath);
Console.WriteLine();

PressEnter();
```

```
success = await TransferMethods.UploadFullDirectoryAsync(transferUtil, bucketName,
 keyPrefix, uploadPath);
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Successfully uploaded the files in {uploadPath} to
 {bucketName}.");
    Console.WriteLine($"{bucketName} currently contains the following files:");
    await DisplayBucketFiles(client, bucketName, keyPrefix);
    Console.WriteLine();
}

PressEnter();

// Download a single file from an S3 bucket.
DisplayTitle("Download a single file");
Console.WriteLine("Now we will download a single file from an S3 bucket.");

var keyName = _configuration["FileToDownload"];

Console.WriteLine($"Downloading {keyName} from {bucketName}.");

success = await TransferMethods.DownloadSingleFileAsync(transferUtil, bucketName,
 keyName, localPath);
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine("$Successfully downloaded the file, {keyName} from
 {bucketName}.");
}

PressEnter();

// Download the contents of a directory from an S3 bucket.
DisplayTitle("Download the contents of an S3 bucket");
var s3Path = _configuration["S3Path"];
var downloadPath = $"{localPath}\\{s3Path}";

Console.WriteLine($"Downloading the contents of {bucketName}\\{s3Path}");
Console.WriteLine($"{bucketName}\\{s3Path} contains the following files:");
await DisplayBucketFiles(client, bucketName, s3Path);
Console.WriteLine();

success = await TransferMethods.DownloadS3DirectoryAsync(transferUtil, bucketName,
 s3Path, downloadPath);
```

```
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Downloaded the files in {bucketName} to {downloadPath}.");
    Console.WriteLine($"{downloadPath} now contains the following files:");
    DisplayLocalFiles(downloadPath);
}

Console.WriteLine("\nThe TransferUtility Basics application has completed.");
PressEnter();

// Displays the title for a section of the scenario.
static void DisplayTitle(string titleText)
{
    var sepBar = new string('-', Console.WindowWidth);

    Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    Console.WriteLine(CenterText(titleText));
    Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
}

// Displays a description of the actions to be performed by the scenario.
static void DisplayInstructions()
{
    var sepBar = new string('-', Console.WindowWidth);

    DisplayTitle("Amazon S3 Transfer Utility Basics");
    Console.WriteLine("This program shows how to use the Amazon S3 Transfer
 Utility.");
    Console.WriteLine("It performs the following actions:");
    Console.WriteLine("\t1. Upload a single object to an S3 bucket.");
    Console.WriteLine("\t2. Upload an entire directory from the local computer to an
\n\t  S3 bucket.");
    Console.WriteLine("\t3. Download a single object from an S3 bucket.");
    Console.WriteLine("\t4. Download the objects in an S3 bucket to a local
 directory.");
    Console.WriteLine($"\n{sepBar}");
}

// Pauses the scenario.
static void PressEnter()
{
    Console.WriteLine("Press <Enter> to continue.");
    _ = Console.ReadLine();
    Console.WriteLine("\n");
```

```
}

// Returns the string textToCenter, padded on the left with spaces
// that center the text on the console display.
static string CenterText(string textToCenter)
{
    var centeredText = new StringBuilder();
    var screenWidth = Console.WindowWidth;
    centeredText.Append(new string(' ', (int)(screenWidth - textToCenter.Length) /
 2));
    centeredText.Append(textToCenter);
    return centeredText.ToString();
}

// Displays a list of file names included in the specified path.
static void DisplayLocalFiles(string localPath)
{
    var fileList = Directory.GetFiles(localPath);
    if (fileList.Length > 0)
    {
        foreach (var fileName in fileList)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(fileName);
        }
    }
}

// Displays a list of the files in the specified S3 bucket and prefix.
static async Task DisplayBucketFiles(IAmazonS3 client, string bucketName, string
 s3Path)
{
    ListObjectsV2Request request = new()
    {
        BucketName = bucketName,
        Prefix = s3Path,
        MaxKeys = 5,
    };

    var response = new ListObjectsV2Response();

    do
    {
        response = await client.ListObjectsV2Async(request);
```

```
        response.S3Objects
            .ForEach(obj => Console.WriteLine($"{obj.Key}"));

        // If the response is truncated, set the request ContinuationToken
        // from the NextContinuationToken property of the response.
        request.ContinuationToken = response.NextContinuationToken;
    } while (response.IsTruncated);
}
```

Upload a single file.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Uploads a single file from the local computer to an S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="transferUtil">The transfer initialized TransferUtility
        /// object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the S3 bucket where the file
        /// will be stored.</param>
        /// <param name="fileName">The name of the file to upload.</param>
        /// <param name="localPath">The local path where the file is stored.</param>
        /// <returns>A boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UploadSingleFileAsync(
            TransferUtility transferUtil,
            string bucketName,
            string fileName,
            string localPath)
        {
            if (File.Exists($"{localPath}\\{fileName}"))
            {
                try
                {
                    await transferUtil.UploadAsync(new TransferUtilityUploadRequest
                    {
                        BucketName = bucketName,
                        Key = fileName,
                        FilePath = $"{localPath}\\{fileName}",
                    });

                    return true;
                }
```

```
                catch (AmazonS3Exception s3Ex)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Could not upload {fileName} from {localPath}
 because:");
                    Console.WriteLine(s3Ex.Message);
                    return false;
                }
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{fileName} does not exist in {localPath}");
                return false;
            }
        }
```

Upload an entire local directory.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Uploads all the files in a local directory to a directory in an S3
        /// bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="transferUtil">The transfer initialized TransferUtility
        /// object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the S3 bucket where the files
        /// will be stored.</param>
        /// <param name="keyPrefix">The key prefix is the S3 directory where
        /// the files will be stored.</param>
        /// <param name="localPath">The local directory that contains the files
        /// to be uploaded.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value representing the success of the action.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UploadFullDirectoryAsync(
            TransferUtility transferUtil,
            string bucketName,
            string keyPrefix,
            string localPath)
        {
            if (Directory.Exists(localPath))
            {
                try
                {
```

```
                    await transferUtil.UploadDirectoryAsync(new
TransferUtilityUploadDirectoryRequest
                    {
                        BucketName = bucketName,
                        KeyPrefix = keyPrefix,
                        Directory = localPath,
                    });

                    return true;
                }
                catch (AmazonS3Exception s3Ex)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Can't upload the contents of {localPath}
because:");
                    Console.WriteLine(s3Ex?.Message);
                    return false;
                }
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"The directory {localPath} does not exist.");
                return false;
            }
        }
```

Download a single file.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Download a single file from an S3 bucket to the local computer.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="transferUtil">The transfer initialized TransferUtility
        /// object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the S3 bucket containing the
        /// file to download.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The name of the file to download.</param>
        /// <param name="localPath">The path on the local computer where the
        /// downloaded file will be saved.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the results of the action.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DownloadSingleFileAsync(
        TransferUtility transferUtil,
```

```
            string bucketName,
            string keyName,
            string localPath)
        {
            await transferUtil.DownloadAsync(new TransferUtilityDownloadRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = keyName,
                FilePath = $"{localPath}\\{keyName}",
            });

            return (File.Exists($"{localPath}\\{keyName}"));
        }
```

Download contents of an S3 bucket.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Downloads the contents of a directory in an S3 bucket to a
        /// directory on the local computer.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="transferUtil">The transfer initialized TransferUtility
        /// object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket containing the files to download.</
param>
        /// <param name="s3Path">The S3 directory where the files are located.</
param>
        /// <param name="localPath">The local path to which the files will be
        /// saved.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value representing the success of the action.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DownloadS3DirectoryAsync(
            TransferUtility transferUtil,
            string bucketName,
            string s3Path,
            string localPath)
        {
            int fileCount = 0;

            // If the directory doesn't exist, it will be created.
            if (Directory.Exists(s3Path))
```

```
            {
                var files = Directory.GetFiles(localPath);
                fileCount = files.Length;
            }

            await transferUtil.DownloadDirectoryAsync(new
TransferUtilityDownloadDirectoryRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                LocalDirectory = localPath,
                S3Directory = s3Path,
            });

            if (Directory.Exists(localPath))
            {
                var files = Directory.GetFiles(localPath);
                if (files.Length > fileCount)
                {
                    return true;
                }

                // No change in the number of files. Assume
                // the download failed.
                return false;
            }

            // The local directory doesn't exist. No files
            // were downloaded.
            return false;
        }
```

Track the progress of an upload using the TransferUtility.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Transfer;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to track the progress of a multipart upload
    /// using the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) TransferUtility to
```

```
    /// upload to an Amazon S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    public class TrackMPUUsingHighLevelAPI
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
            string keyName = "sample_pic.png";
            string path = "filepath/directory/";
            string filePath = $"{path}{keyName}";

            // If the AWS Region defined for your default user is different
            // from the Region where your Amazon S3 bucket is located,
            // pass the Region name to the Amazon S3 client object's constructor.
            // For example: RegionEndpoint.USWest2 or RegionEndpoint.USEast2.
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();

            await TrackMPUAsync(client, bucketName, filePath, keyName);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Starts an Amazon S3 multipart upload and assigns an event handler to
        /// track the progress of the upload.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
        /// perform the multipart upload.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to which to upload
        /// the file.</param>
        /// <param name="filePath">The path, including the file name of the
        /// file to be uploaded to the Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The file name to be used in the
        /// destination Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
        public static async Task TrackMPUAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string filePath,
            string keyName)
        {
            try
            {
                var fileTransferUtility = new TransferUtility(client);

                // Use TransferUtilityUploadRequest to configure options.
                // In this example we subscribe to an event.
```

```
                var uploadRequest =
                    new TransferUtilityUploadRequest
                    {
                        BucketName = bucketName,
                        FilePath = filePath,
                        Key = keyName,
                    };

                uploadRequest.UploadProgressEvent +=
                    new EventHandler<UploadProgressArgs>(
                        UploadRequest_UploadPartProgressEvent);

                await fileTransferUtility.UploadAsync(uploadRequest);
                Console.WriteLine("Upload completed");
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error:: {ex.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Event handler to check the progress of the multipart upload.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="sender">The object that raised the event.</param>
        /// <param name="e">The object that contains multipart upload
        /// information.</param>
        public static void UploadRequest_UploadPartProgressEvent(object sender,
UploadProgressArgs e)
        {
            // Process event.
            Console.WriteLine($"{e.TransferredBytes}/{e.TotalBytes}");
        }
    }
```

Upload an object with encryption.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.IO;
    using System.Security.Cryptography;
```

```
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) low level API to
/// perform a multipart upload to an Amazon S3 bucket.
/// </summary>
public class SSECLowLevelMPUcopyObject
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string existingBucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        string sourceKeyName = "sample_file.txt";
        string targetKeyName = "sample_file_copy.txt";
        string filePath = $"sample\\{targetKeyName}";

        // If the AWS Region defined for your default user is different
        // from the Region where your Amazon S3 bucket is located,
        // pass the Region name to the Amazon S3 client object's constructor.
        // For example: RegionEndpoint.USEast1.
        IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();

        // Create the encryption key.
        var base64Key = CreateEncryptionKey();

        await CreateSampleObjUsingClientEncryptionKeyAsync(
            client,
            existingBucketName,
            sourceKeyName,
            filePath,
            base64Key);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates the encryption key to use with the multipart upload.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A string containing the base64-encoded key for encrypting
    /// the multipart upload.</returns>
    public static string CreateEncryptionKey()
    {
        Aes aesEncryption = Aes.Create();
        aesEncryption.KeySize = 256;
        aesEncryption.GenerateKey();
```

```
            string base64Key = Convert.ToBase64String(aesEncryption.Key);
            return base64Key;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates and uploads an object using a multipart upload.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 object used to
        /// initialize and perform the multipart upload.</param>
        /// <param name="existingBucketName">The name of the bucket to which
        /// the object will be uploaded.</param>
        /// <param name="sourceKeyName">The source object name.</param>
        /// <param name="filePath">The location of the source object.</param>
        /// <param name="base64Key">The encryption key to use with the upload.</
param>
        public static async Task CreateSampleObjUsingClientEncryptionKeyAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string existingBucketName,
            string sourceKeyName,
            string filePath,
            string base64Key)
        {
            List<UploadPartResponse> uploadResponses = new
 List<UploadPartResponse>();

            InitiateMultipartUploadRequest initiateRequest = new
 InitiateMultipartUploadRequest
            {
                BucketName = existingBucketName,
                Key = sourceKeyName,
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod =
 ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256,
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerProvidedKey = base64Key,
            };

            InitiateMultipartUploadResponse initResponse =
               await client.InitiateMultipartUploadAsync(initiateRequest);

            long contentLength = new FileInfo(filePath).Length;
            long partSize = 5 * (long)Math.Pow(2, 20); // 5 MB

            try
            {
                long filePosition = 0;
```

```
                for (int i = 1; filePosition < contentLength; i++)
                {
                    UploadPartRequest uploadRequest = new UploadPartRequest
                    {
                        BucketName = existingBucketName,
                        Key = sourceKeyName,
                        UploadId = initResponse.UploadId,
                        PartNumber = i,
                        PartSize = partSize,
                        FilePosition = filePosition,
                        FilePath = filePath,
                        ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod =
ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256,
                        ServerSideEncryptionCustomerProvidedKey = base64Key,
                    };

                    // Upload part and add response to our list.
                    uploadResponses.Add(await
client.UploadPartAsync(uploadRequest));

                    filePosition += partSize;
                }

                CompleteMultipartUploadRequest completeRequest = new
CompleteMultipartUploadRequest
                {
                    BucketName = existingBucketName,
                    Key = sourceKeyName,
                    UploadId = initResponse.UploadId,
                };
                completeRequest.AddPartETags(uploadResponses);

                CompleteMultipartUploadResponse completeUploadResponse =
                    await client.CompleteMultipartUploadAsync(completeRequest);
            }
            catch (Exception exception)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Exception occurred: {exception.Message}");

                // If there was an error, abort the multipart upload.
                AbortMultipartUploadRequest abortMPURequest = new
AbortMultipartUploadRequest
                {
                    BucketName = existingBucketName,
```

```
                    Key = sourceKeyName,
                    UploadId = initResponse.UploadId,
                };

                await client.AbortMultipartUploadAsync(abortMPURequest);
            }
        }
    }
```

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by uploading an object to an S3 bucket. The function retrieves the S3 bucket name and object key from the event parameter and calls the Amazon S3 API to retrieve and log the content type of the object.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.S3;
using System;
using Amazon.Lambda.S3Events;
using System.Web;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
```

```
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace S3Integration
{
    public class Function
    {
        private static AmazonS3Client _s3Client;
        public Function() : this(null)
        {
        }

        internal Function(AmazonS3Client s3Client)
        {
            _s3Client = s3Client ?? new AmazonS3Client();
        }

        public async Task<string> Handler(S3Event evt, ILambdaContext context)
        {
            try
            {
                if (evt.Records.Count <= 0)
                {
                    context.Logger.LogLine("Empty S3 Event received");
                    return string.Empty;
                }

                var bucket = evt.Records[0].S3.Bucket.Name;
                var key = HttpUtility.UrlDecode(evt.Records[0].S3.Object.Key);

                context.Logger.LogLine($"Request is for {bucket} and {key}");

                var objectResult = await _s3Client.GetObjectAsync(bucket, key);

                context.Logger.LogLine($"Returning {objectResult.Key}");

                return objectResult.Key;
            }
            catch (Exception e)
            {
                context.Logger.LogLine($"Error processing request - {e.Message}");

                return string.Empty;
            }
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

SageMaker AI examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with SageMaker AI.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Get started
- Actions
- Scenarios

Get started

Hello SageMaker AI

The following code example shows how to get started using SageMaker AI.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.SageMaker;
using Amazon.SageMaker.Model;

namespace SageMakerActions;

public static class HelloSageMaker
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var sageMakerClient = new AmazonSageMakerClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon SageMaker! Let's list some of your notebook
 instances:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get the first five notebook instances.
        var response = await sageMakerClient.ListNotebookInstancesAsync(
            new ListNotebookInstancesRequest()
            {
                MaxResults = 5
            });

        if (!response.NotebookInstances.Any())
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No notebook instances found.");
            Console.WriteLine("See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sagemaker/latest/dg/
howitworks-create-ws.html to create one.");
        }

        foreach (var notebookInstance in response.NotebookInstances)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tInstance:
 {notebookInstance.NotebookInstanceName}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tArn: {notebookInstance.NotebookInstanceArn}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tCreation Date:
 {notebookInstance.CreationTime.ToShortDateString()}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListNotebookInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Actions

`CreatePipeline`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePipeline`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Create a pipeline from a JSON definition, or update it if the pipeline
already exists.
   /// </summary>
   /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the pipeline.</returns>
   public async Task<string> SetupPipeline(string pipelineJson, string roleArn,
string name, string description, string displayName)
   {
       try
       {
           var updateResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.UpdatePipelineAsync(
               new UpdatePipelineRequest()
               {
                   PipelineDefinition = pipelineJson,
                   PipelineDescription = description,
                   PipelineDisplayName = displayName,
                   PipelineName = name,
                   RoleArn = roleArn
               });
           return updateResponse.PipelineArn;
       }
       catch (Amazon.SageMaker.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
       {
           var createResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.CreatePipelineAsync(
               new CreatePipelineRequest()
               {
                   PipelineDefinition = pipelineJson,
                   PipelineDescription = description,
```

```
                    PipelineDisplayName = displayName,
                    PipelineName = name,
                    RoleArn = roleArn
                });

            return createResponse.PipelineArn;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreatePipeline in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeletePipeline`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePipeline`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a SageMaker pipeline by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="pipelineName">The name of the pipeline to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the pipeline.</returns>
    public async Task<string> DeletePipelineByName(string pipelineName)
    {
        var deleteResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.DeletePipelineAsync(
            new DeletePipelineRequest()
            {
                PipelineName = pipelineName
            });

        return deleteResponse.PipelineArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeletePipeline in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribePipelineExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribePipelineExecution`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Check the status of a run.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="pipelineExecutionArn">The ARN.</param>
    /// <returns>The status of the pipeline.</returns>
    public async Task<PipelineExecutionStatus> CheckPipelineExecutionStatus(string
pipelineExecutionArn)
    {
        var describeResponse = await
_amazonSageMaker.DescribePipelineExecutionAsync(
            new DescribePipelineExecutionRequest()
            {
                PipelineExecutionArn = pipelineExecutionArn
            });

        return describeResponse.PipelineExecutionStatus;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribePipelineExecution in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`StartPipelineExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `StartPipelineExecution`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Run a pipeline with input and output file locations.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL for the queue to use for pipeline
callbacks.</param>
    /// <param name="inputLocationUrl">The input location in Amazon Simple Storage
Service (Amazon S3).</param>
    /// <param name="outputLocationUrl">The output location in Amazon S3.</param>
    /// <param name="pipelineName">The name of the pipeline.</param>
    /// <param name="executionRoleArn">The ARN of the role.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the pipeline run.</returns>
    public async Task<string> ExecutePipeline(
        string queueUrl,
        string inputLocationUrl,
        string outputLocationUrl,
        string pipelineName,
        string executionRoleArn)
    {
        var inputConfig = new VectorEnrichmentJobInputConfig()
        {
            DataSourceConfig = new()
            {
                S3Data = new VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data()
                {
                    S3Uri = inputLocationUrl
                }
            },
            DocumentType = VectorEnrichmentJobDocumentType.CSV
        };

        var exportConfig = new ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig()
        {
            S3Data = new VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data()
            {
```

```
                S3Uri = outputLocationUrl
            }
        };

        var jobConfig = new VectorEnrichmentJobConfig()
        {
            ReverseGeocodingConfig = new ReverseGeocodingConfig()
            {
                XAttributeName = "Longitude",
                YAttributeName = "Latitude"
            }
        };

#pragma warning disable SageMaker1002 // Property value does not match required
 pattern is allowed here to match the pipeline definition.
        var startExecutionResponse = await
 _amazonSageMaker.StartPipelineExecutionAsync(
            new StartPipelineExecutionRequest()
            {
                PipelineName = pipelineName,
                PipelineExecutionDisplayName = pipelineName + "-example-execution",
                PipelineParameters = new List<Parameter>()
                {
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_execution_role", Value =
 executionRoleArn },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_queue_url", Value =
 queueUrl },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_vej_input_config", Value =
 JsonSerializer.Serialize(inputConfig) },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_vej_export_config", Value =
 JsonSerializer.Serialize(exportConfig) },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_step_1_vej_config", Value =
 JsonSerializer.Serialize(jobConfig) }
                }
            });
#pragma warning restore SageMaker1002
        return startExecutionResponse.PipelineExecutionArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see StartPipelineExecution in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

UpdatePipeline

The following code example shows how to use UpdatePipeline.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a pipeline from a JSON definition, or update it if the pipeline
 already exists.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the pipeline.</returns>
    public async Task<string> SetupPipeline(string pipelineJson, string roleArn,
 string name, string description, string displayName)
    {
        try
        {
            var updateResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.UpdatePipelineAsync(
                new UpdatePipelineRequest()
                {
                    PipelineDefinition = pipelineJson,
                    PipelineDescription = description,
                    PipelineDisplayName = displayName,
                    PipelineName = name,
                    RoleArn = roleArn
                });
            return updateResponse.PipelineArn;
        }
        catch (Amazon.SageMaker.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            var createResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.CreatePipelineAsync(
                new CreatePipelineRequest()
                {
                    PipelineDefinition = pipelineJson,
                    PipelineDescription = description,
                    PipelineDisplayName = displayName,
                    PipelineName = name,
                    RoleArn = roleArn
```

```
                });

            return createResponse.PipelineArn;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdatePipeline in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Get started with geospatial jobs and pipelines

The following code example shows how to:

- Set up resources for a pipeline.
- Set up a pipeline that executes a geospatial job.
- Start a pipeline execution.
- Monitor the status of the execution.
- View the output of the pipeline.
- Clean up resources.

For more information, see Create and run SageMaker pipelines using AWS SDKs on Community.aws.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps SageMaker AI operations.

```
using System.Text.Json;
using Amazon.SageMaker;
using Amazon.SageMaker.Model;
```

```
using Amazon.SageMakerGeospatial;
using Amazon.SageMakerGeospatial.Model;

namespace SageMakerActions;

/// <summary>
/// Wrapper class for Amazon SageMaker actions and logic.
/// </summary>
public class SageMakerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSageMaker _amazonSageMaker;
    public SageMakerWrapper(IAmazonSageMaker amazonSageMaker)
    {
        _amazonSageMaker = amazonSageMaker;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a pipeline from a JSON definition, or update it if the pipeline
 already exists.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the pipeline.</returns>
    public async Task<string> SetupPipeline(string pipelineJson, string roleArn,
 string name, string description, string displayName)
    {
        try
        {
            var updateResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.UpdatePipelineAsync(
                new UpdatePipelineRequest()
                {
                    PipelineDefinition = pipelineJson,
                    PipelineDescription = description,
                    PipelineDisplayName = displayName,
                    PipelineName = name,
                    RoleArn = roleArn
                });
            return updateResponse.PipelineArn;
        }
        catch (Amazon.SageMaker.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            var createResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.CreatePipelineAsync(
                new CreatePipelineRequest()
                {
                    PipelineDefinition = pipelineJson,
                    PipelineDescription = description,
```

```
                    PipelineDisplayName = displayName,
                    PipelineName = name,
                    RoleArn = roleArn
                });

            return createResponse.PipelineArn;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Run a pipeline with input and output file locations.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL for the queue to use for pipeline
callbacks.</param>
    /// <param name="inputLocationUrl">The input location in Amazon Simple Storage
Service (Amazon S3).</param>
    /// <param name="outputLocationUrl">The output location in Amazon S3.</param>
    /// <param name="pipelineName">The name of the pipeline.</param>
    /// <param name="executionRoleArn">The ARN of the role.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the pipeline run.</returns>
    public async Task<string> ExecutePipeline(
        string queueUrl,
        string inputLocationUrl,
        string outputLocationUrl,
        string pipelineName,
        string executionRoleArn)
    {
        var inputConfig = new VectorEnrichmentJobInputConfig()
        {
            DataSourceConfig = new()
            {
                S3Data = new VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data()
                {
                    S3Uri = inputLocationUrl
                }
            },
            DocumentType = VectorEnrichmentJobDocumentType.CSV
        };

        var exportConfig = new ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig()
        {
            S3Data = new VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data()
            {
                S3Uri = outputLocationUrl
```

```
            }
        };

        var jobConfig = new VectorEnrichmentJobConfig()
        {
            ReverseGeocodingConfig = new ReverseGeocodingConfig()
            {
                XAttributeName = "Longitude",
                YAttributeName = "Latitude"
            }
        };

#pragma warning disable SageMaker1002 // Property value does not match required
 pattern is allowed here to match the pipeline definition.
        var startExecutionResponse = await
 _amazonSageMaker.StartPipelineExecutionAsync(
            new StartPipelineExecutionRequest()
            {
                PipelineName = pipelineName,
                PipelineExecutionDisplayName = pipelineName + "-example-execution",
                PipelineParameters = new List<Parameter>()
                {
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_execution_role", Value =
 executionRoleArn },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_queue_url", Value =
 queueUrl },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_vej_input_config", Value =
 JsonSerializer.Serialize(inputConfig) },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_vej_export_config", Value =
 JsonSerializer.Serialize(exportConfig) },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_step_1_vej_config", Value =
 JsonSerializer.Serialize(jobConfig) }
                }
            });
#pragma warning restore SageMaker1002
        return startExecutionResponse.PipelineExecutionArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Check the status of a run.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="pipelineExecutionArn">The ARN.</param>
    /// <returns>The status of the pipeline.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<PipelineExecutionStatus> CheckPipelineExecutionStatus(string
 pipelineExecutionArn)
    {
        var describeResponse = await
 _amazonSageMaker.DescribePipelineExecutionAsync(
            new DescribePipelineExecutionRequest()
            {
                PipelineExecutionArn = pipelineExecutionArn
            });

        return describeResponse.PipelineExecutionStatus;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a SageMaker pipeline by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="pipelineName">The name of the pipeline to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the pipeline.</returns>
    public async Task<string> DeletePipelineByName(string pipelineName)
    {
        var deleteResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.DeletePipelineAsync(
            new DeletePipelineRequest()
            {
                PipelineName = pipelineName
            });

        return deleteResponse.PipelineArn;
    }
}
```

Create a function that handles callbacks from the SageMaker AI pipeline.

```
using System.Text.Json;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.SQSEvents;
using Amazon.SageMaker;
using Amazon.SageMaker.Model;
using Amazon.SageMakerGeospatial;
using Amazon.SageMakerGeospatial.Model;
```

```
// Assembly attribute to enable the AWS Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace SageMakerLambda;

/// <summary>
/// The AWS Lambda function handler for the Amazon SageMaker pipeline.
/// </summary>
public class SageMakerLambdaFunction
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Default constructor. This constructor is used by AWS Lambda to construct the
 instance. When invoked in a Lambda environment
    /// the AWS credentials will come from the AWS Identity and Access Management
 (IAM) role associated with the function. The AWS Region will be set to the
    /// Region that the Lambda function is running in.
    /// </summary>
    public SageMakerLambdaFunction()
    {
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// The AWS Lambda function handler that processes events from the SageMaker
 pipeline and starts a job or export.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="request">The custom SageMaker pipeline request object.</param>
    /// <param name="context">The Lambda context.</param>
    /// <returns>The dictionary of output parameters.</returns>
    public async Task<Dictionary<string, string>> FunctionHandler(PipelineRequest
 request, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        var geoSpatialClient = new AmazonSageMakerGeospatialClient();
        var sageMakerClient = new AmazonSageMakerClient();
        var responseDictionary = new Dictionary<string, string>();
        context.Logger.LogInformation("Function handler started with request: " +
 JsonSerializer.Serialize(request));
        if (request.Records != null && request.Records.Any())
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation("Records found, this is a queue event.
 Processing the queue records.");
            foreach (var message in request.Records)
            {
```

```
                await ProcessMessageAsync(message, context, geoSpatialClient,
sageMakerClient);
            }
        }
        else if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(request.vej_export_config))
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation("Export configuration found, this is an
export. Start the Vector Enrichment Job (VEJ) export.");

            var outputConfig =
                JsonSerializer.Deserialize<ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig>(
                    request.vej_export_config);

            var exportResponse = await
geoSpatialClient.ExportVectorEnrichmentJobAsync(
                new ExportVectorEnrichmentJobRequest()
                {
                    Arn = request.vej_arn,
                    ExecutionRoleArn = request.Role,
                    OutputConfig = outputConfig
                });
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Export response:
{JsonSerializer.Serialize(exportResponse)}");
            responseDictionary = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                { "export_eoj_status", exportResponse.ExportStatus.ToString() },
                { "vej_arn", exportResponse.Arn }
            };
        }
        else if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(request.vej_name))
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation("Vector Enrichment Job name found,
starting the job.");
            var inputConfig =
                JsonSerializer.Deserialize<VectorEnrichmentJobInputConfig>(
                    request.vej_input_config);

            var jobConfig =
                JsonSerializer.Deserialize<VectorEnrichmentJobConfig>(
                    request.vej_config);

            var jobResponse = await geoSpatialClient.StartVectorEnrichmentJobAsync(
                new StartVectorEnrichmentJobRequest()
                {
```

```
                    ExecutionRoleArn = request.Role,
                    InputConfig = inputConfig,
                    Name = request.vej_name,
                    JobConfig = jobConfig

                });
            context.Logger.LogInformation("Job response: " +
JsonSerializer.Serialize(jobResponse));
            responseDictionary = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                { "vej_arn", jobResponse.Arn },
                { "statusCode", jobResponse.HttpStatusCode.ToString() }
            };
        }
        return responseDictionary;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Process a queue message and check the status of a SageMaker job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="message">The queue message.</param>
    /// <param name="context">The Lambda context.</param>
    /// <param name="geoClient">The SageMaker GeoSpatial client.</param>
    /// <param name="sageMakerClient">The SageMaker client.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private async Task ProcessMessageAsync(SQSEvent.SQSMessage message,
ILambdaContext context,
        AmazonSageMakerGeospatialClient geoClient, AmazonSageMakerClient
sageMakerClient)
    {
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Processed message {message.Body}");

        // Get information about the SageMaker job.
        var payload = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<QueuePayload>(message.Body);
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Payload token {payload!.token}");
        var token = payload.token;

        if (payload.arguments.ContainsKey("vej_arn"))
        {
            // Use the job ARN and the token to get the job status.
            var job_arn = payload.arguments["vej_arn"];
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Token: {token}, arn {job_arn}");

            var jobInfo = geoClient.GetVectorEnrichmentJobAsync(
```

```
                new GetVectorEnrichmentJobRequest()
                {
                    Arn = job_arn
                });
            context.Logger.LogInformation("Job info: " +
 JsonSerializer.Serialize(jobInfo));
            if (jobInfo.Result.Status == VectorEnrichmentJobStatus.COMPLETED)
            {
                context.Logger.LogInformation($"Status completed, resuming
 pipeline...");
                await sageMakerClient.SendPipelineExecutionStepSuccessAsync(
                    new SendPipelineExecutionStepSuccessRequest()
                    {
                        CallbackToken = token,
                        OutputParameters = new List<OutputParameter>()
                        {
                            new OutputParameter()
                                { Name = "export_status", Value =
 jobInfo.Result.Status }
                        }
                    });
            }
            else if (jobInfo.Result.Status == VectorEnrichmentJobStatus.FAILED)
            {
                context.Logger.LogInformation($"Status failed, stopping
 pipeline...");
                await sageMakerClient.SendPipelineExecutionStepFailureAsync(
                    new SendPipelineExecutionStepFailureRequest()
                    {
                        CallbackToken = token,
                        FailureReason = jobInfo.Result.ErrorDetails.ErrorMessage
                    });
            }
            else if (jobInfo.Result.Status == VectorEnrichmentJobStatus.IN_PROGRESS)
            {
                // Put this message back in the queue to reprocess later.
                context.Logger.LogInformation(
                    $"Status still in progress, check back later.");
                throw new("Job still running.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
public static class PipelineWorkflow
{
    public static IAmazonIdentityManagementService _iamClient = null!;
    public static SageMakerWrapper _sageMakerWrapper = null!;
    public static IAmazonSQS _sqsClient = null!;
    public static IAmazonS3 _s3Client = null!;
    public static IAmazonLambda _lambdaClient = null!;
    public static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;

    public static string lambdaFunctionName = "SageMakerExampleFunction";
    public static string sageMakerRoleName = "SageMakerExampleRole";
    public static string lambdaRoleName = "SageMakerExampleLambdaRole";

    private static string[] lambdaRolePolicies = null!;
    private static string[] sageMakerRolePolicies = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var options = new AWSOptions() { Region = RegionEndpoint.USWest2 };
        // Set up dependency injection for the AWS service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>(options)
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>(options)
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSageMaker>(options)
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSageMakerGeospatial>(options)
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSQS>(options)
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonS3>(options)
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonLambda>(options)
                    .AddTransient<SageMakerWrapper>()
        )
        .Build();

        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
```

```
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);
        string queueUrl = "";
        string queueName = _configuration["queueName"];
        string bucketName = _configuration["bucketName"];
        var pipelineName = _configuration["pipelineName"];

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Welcome to the Amazon SageMaker pipeline example scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(
                "\nThis example scenario will guide you through setting up and
running an" +
                "\nAmazon SageMaker pipeline. The pipeline uses an AWS Lambda
function and an" +
                "\nAmazon SQS Queue. It runs a vector enrichment reverse geocode job
to" +
                "\nreverse geocode addresses in an input file and store the results
in an export file.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine(
                "First, we will set up the roles, functions, and queue needed by the
SageMaker pipeline.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            var lambdaRoleArn = await CreateLambdaRole();
            var sageMakerRoleArn = await CreateSageMakerRole();
            var functionArn = await SetupLambda(lambdaRoleArn, true);
            queueUrl = await SetupQueue(queueName);
            await SetupBucket(bucketName);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Now we can create and run our pipeline.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
            await SetupPipeline(sageMakerRoleArn, functionArn, pipelineName);
            var executionArn = await ExecutePipeline(queueUrl, sageMakerRoleArn,
 pipelineName, bucketName);
            await WaitForPipelineExecution(executionArn);

            await GetOutputResults(bucketName);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("The pipeline has completed. To view the pipeline and
 runs " +
                              "in SageMaker Studio, follow these instructions:" +
                              "\nhttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/sagemaker/latest/dg/
pipelines-studio.html");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Finally, let's clean up our resources.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            await CleanupResources(true, queueUrl, pipelineName, bucketName);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("SageMaker pipeline scenario is complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
 {ex.Message}");
            await CleanupResources(true, queueUrl, pipelineName, bucketName);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _sageMakerWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SageMakerWrapper>();
        _iamClient =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>();
```

```
        _sqsClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonSQS>();
        _s3Client = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonS3>();
        _lambdaClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonLambda>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up AWS Lambda, either by updating an existing function or creating a new
function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The role Amazon Resource Name (ARN) to use for the
Lambda function.</param>
    /// <param name="askUser">True to ask the user before updating.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the function.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> SetupLambda(string roleArn, bool askUser)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Setting up the Lambda function for the pipeline.");
        var handlerName =
"SageMakerLambda::SageMakerLambda.SageMakerLambdaFunction::FunctionHandler";
        var functionArn = "";
        try
        {
            var functionInfo = await _lambdaClient.GetFunctionAsync(new
GetFunctionRequest()
            {
                FunctionName = lambdaFunctionName
            });

            var updateFunction = true;
            if (askUser)
            {
                updateFunction = GetYesNoResponse(
                    $"\tThe Lambda function {lambdaFunctionName} already exists, do
you want to update it?");
            }

            if (updateFunction)
            {
                // Update the Lambda function.
                using var zipMemoryStream = new MemoryStream(await
File.ReadAllBytesAsync("SageMakerLambda.zip"));
                await _lambdaClient.UpdateFunctionCodeAsync(
                    new UpdateFunctionCodeRequest()
                    {
```

```
                        FunctionName = lambdaFunctionName,
                        ZipFile = zipMemoryStream,
                    });
            }

            functionArn = functionInfo.Configuration.FunctionArn;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tThe Lambda function {lambdaFunctionName} was not
found, creating the new function.");

            // Create the function if it does not already exist.
            using var zipMemoryStream = new MemoryStream(await
File.ReadAllBytesAsync("SageMakerLambda.zip"));
            var createResult = await _lambdaClient.CreateFunctionAsync(
                new CreateFunctionRequest()
                {
                    FunctionName = lambdaFunctionName,
                    Runtime = Runtime.Dotnet6,
                    Description = "SageMaker example function.",
                    Code = new FunctionCode()
                    {
                        ZipFile = zipMemoryStream
                    },
                    Handler = handlerName,
                    Role = roleArn,
                    Timeout = 30
                });

            functionArn = createResult.FunctionArn;
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"\tLambda ready with ARN {functionArn}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return functionArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a role to be used by AWS Lambda. Does not create the role if it
already exists.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The role ARN.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> CreateLambdaRole()
```

```
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        lambdaRolePolicies = new string[]{
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSageMakerFullAccess",
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSQSFullAccess",
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/" +
 "AmazonSageMakerGeospatialFullAccess",
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/" +
 "AmazonSageMakerServiceCatalogProductsLambdaServiceRolePolicy",
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/" +
 "AWSLambdaSQSQueueExecutionRole"
        };

        var roleArn = await GetRoleArnIfExists(lambdaRoleName);
        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(roleArn))
        {
            return roleArn;
        }

        Console.WriteLine("\tCreating a role to for AWS Lambda to use.");

        var assumeRolePolicy = "{" +
                               "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                               "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                    "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                    "\"Principal\": {" +
                                        $"\"Service\": [" +
                                            "\"sagemaker.amazonaws.com\"," +
                                            "\"sagemaker-geospatial.amazonaws.com
\"," +
                                            "\"lambda.amazonaws.com\"," +
                                            "\"s3.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                        "]" +
                                    "}," +
                                    "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                               "}]" +
                           "}";

        var roleResult = await _iamClient!.CreateRoleAsync(
            new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRolePolicy,
                Path = "/",
```

```
                RoleName = lambdaRoleName
            });
        foreach (var policy in lambdaRolePolicies)
        {
            await _iamClient.AttachRolePolicyAsync(
                new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
                {
                    PolicyArn = policy,
                    RoleName = lambdaRoleName
                });
        }

        // Allow time for the role to be ready.
        Thread.Sleep(10000);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tRole ready with ARN {roleResult.Role.Arn}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return roleResult.Role.Arn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create a role to be used by SageMaker.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The role Amazon Resource Name (ARN).</returns>
    public static async Task<string> CreateSageMakerRole()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        sageMakerRolePolicies = new string[]{
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSageMakerFullAccess",
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSageMakerGeospatialFullAccess",
        };

        var roleArn = await GetRoleArnIfExists(sageMakerRoleName);
        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(roleArn))
        {
            return roleArn;
        }

        Console.WriteLine("\tCreating a role to use with SageMaker.");

        var assumeRolePolicy = "{" +
                                        "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
```

```
                                        "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                            "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                            "\"Principal\": {" +
                                                $"\"Service\": [" +
                                                    "\"sagemaker.amazonaws.com\"," +
                                                    "\"sagemaker-
geospatial.amazonaws.com\"," +
                                                    "\"lambda.amazonaws.com\"," +
                                                    "\"s3.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                                "]" +
                                            "}," +
                                            "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                                        "}]" +
                                    "}";

        var roleResult = await _iamClient!.CreateRoleAsync(
            new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRolePolicy,
                Path = "/",
                RoleName = sageMakerRoleName
            });

        foreach (var policy in sageMakerRolePolicies)
        {
            await _iamClient.AttachRolePolicyAsync(
                new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
                {
                    PolicyArn = policy,
                    RoleName = sageMakerRoleName
                });
        }

        // Allow time for the role to be ready.
        Thread.Sleep(10000);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tRole ready with ARN {roleResult.Role.Arn}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return roleResult.Role.Arn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the SQS queue to use with the pipeline.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueName">The name for the queue.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The URL for the queue.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> SetupQueue(string queueName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Setting up queue {queueName}.");

        try
        {
            var queueInfo = await _sqsClient.GetQueueUrlAsync(new
GetQueueUrlRequest()
            { QueueName = queueName });
            return queueInfo.QueueUrl;
        }
        catch (QueueDoesNotExistException)
        {
            var attrs = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                {
                    QueueAttributeName.DelaySeconds,
                    "5"
                },
                {
                    QueueAttributeName.ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds,
                    "5"
                },
                {
                    QueueAttributeName.VisibilityTimeout,
                    "300"
                },
            };

            var request = new CreateQueueRequest
            {
                Attributes = attrs,
                QueueName = queueName,
            };

            var response = await _sqsClient.CreateQueueAsync(request);
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
            await ConnectLambda(response.QueueUrl);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tQueue ready with Url {response.QueueUrl}.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            return response.QueueUrl;
        }
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Connect the queue to the Lambda function as an event source.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL for the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task ConnectLambda(string queueUrl)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Connecting the Lambda function and queue for the
pipeline.");

        var queueAttributes = await _sqsClient.GetQueueAttributesAsync(
            new GetQueueAttributesRequest() { QueueUrl = queueUrl, AttributeNames =
new List<string>() { "All" } });
        var queueArn = queueAttributes.QueueARN;

        var eventSource = await _lambdaClient.ListEventSourceMappingsAsync(
             new ListEventSourceMappingsRequest()
             {
                 FunctionName = lambdaFunctionName
             });

        if (!eventSource.EventSourceMappings.Any())
        {
            // Only add the event source mapping if it does not already exist.
            await _lambdaClient.CreateEventSourceMappingAsync(
                new CreateEventSourceMappingRequest()
                {
                    EventSourceArn = queueArn,
                    FunctionName = lambdaFunctionName,
                    Enabled = true
                });
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the bucket to use for pipeline input and output.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name for the bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
```

```
    public static async Task SetupBucket(string bucketName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Setting up bucket {bucketName}.");

        var bucketExists = await
 Amazon.S3.Util.AmazonS3Util.DoesS3BucketExistV2Async(_s3Client,
            bucketName);

        if (!bucketExists)
        {
            await _s3Client.PutBucketAsync(new PutBucketRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                BucketRegion = S3Region.USWest2
            });

            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            await _s3Client.PutObjectAsync(new PutObjectRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = "samplefiles/latlongtest.csv",
                FilePath = "latlongtest.csv"
            });
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"\tBucket {bucketName} ready.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display some results from the output directory.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name for the bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> GetOutputResults(string bucketName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Getting output results {bucketName}.");
        string outputKey = "";
        Thread.Sleep(15000);
        var outputFiles = await _s3Client.ListObjectsAsync(
              new ListObjectsRequest()
```

```
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Prefix = "outputfiles/"
                });

        if (outputFiles.S3Objects.Any())
        {
            var sampleOutput = outputFiles.S3Objects.OrderBy(s =>
 s.LastModified).Last();
            Console.WriteLine($"\tOutput file: {sampleOutput.Key}");
            var outputSampleResponse = await _s3Client.GetObjectAsync(
                new GetObjectRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = sampleOutput.Key
                });
            outputKey = sampleOutput.Key;
            StreamReader reader = new
 StreamReader(outputSampleResponse.ResponseStream);
            await reader.ReadLineAsync();
            Console.WriteLine("\tOutput file contents: \n");
            for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++)
            {
                if (!reader.EndOfStream)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("\t" + await reader.ReadLineAsync());
                }
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return outputKey;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a pipeline from the example pipeline JSON
    /// that includes the Lambda, callback, processing, and export jobs.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The ARN of the role for the pipeline.</param>
    /// <param name="functionArn">The ARN of the Lambda function for the pipeline.</
param>
    /// <param name="pipelineName">The name for the pipeline.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the pipeline.</returns>
```

```
    public static async Task<string> SetupPipeline(string roleArn, string
functionArn, string pipelineName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Setting up the pipeline.");

        var pipelineJson = await File.ReadAllTextAsync("GeoSpatialPipeline.json");

        // Add the correct function ARN instead of the placeholder.
        pipelineJson = pipelineJson.Replace("*FUNCTION_ARN*", functionArn);

        var pipelineArn = await _sageMakerWrapper.SetupPipeline(pipelineJson,
roleArn, pipelineName,
            "sdk example pipeline", pipelineName);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tPipeline set up with ARN {pipelineArn}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return pipelineArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Start a pipeline run with job configurations.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL for the queue used in the pipeline.</param>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The ARN of the role.</param>
    /// <param name="pipelineName">The name of the pipeline.</param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>The pipeline run ARN.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> ExecutePipeline(
        string queueUrl,
        string roleArn,
        string pipelineName,
        string bucketName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Starting pipeline execution.");

        var input = $"s3://{bucketName}/samplefiles/latlongtest.csv";
        var output = $"s3://{bucketName}/outputfiles/";

        var executionARN =
            await _sageMakerWrapper.ExecutePipeline(queueUrl, input, output,
                pipelineName, roleArn);
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"\tRun started with ARN {executionARN}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return executionARN;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait for a pipeline run to complete.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="executionArn">The pipeline run ARN.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task WaitForPipelineExecution(string executionArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Waiting for pipeline to finish.");

        PipelineExecutionStatus status;
        do
        {
            status = await
_sageMakerWrapper.CheckPipelineExecutionStatus(executionArn);
            Thread.Sleep(30000);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tStatus is {status}.");
        } while (status == PipelineExecutionStatus.Executing);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tPipeline finished with status {status}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="askUser">True to ask the user for cleanup.</param>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue to clean up.</param>
    /// <param name="pipelineName">The name of the pipeline.</param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> CleanupResources(
        bool askUser,
        string queueUrl,
        string pipelineName,
        string bucketName)
    {
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Clean up resources.");

        if (!askUser || GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete pipeline {pipelineName}? (y/
n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting pipeline.");
            // Delete the pipeline.
            await _sageMakerWrapper.DeletePipelineByName(pipelineName);
        }

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(queueUrl) && (!askUser ||
 GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete queue {queueUrl}? (y/n)")))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting queue.");
            // Delete the queue.
            await _sqsClient.DeleteQueueAsync(new DeleteQueueRequest(queueUrl));
        }

        if (!askUser || GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete Amazon S3 bucket {bucketName}?
 (y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting bucket.");
            // Delete all objects in the bucket.
            var deleteList = await _s3Client.ListObjectsV2Async(new
 ListObjectsV2Request()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName
            });
            if (deleteList.KeyCount > 0)
            {
                await _s3Client.DeleteObjectsAsync(new DeleteObjectsRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Objects = deleteList.S3Objects
                        .Select(o => new KeyVersion { Key = o.Key }).ToList()
                });
            }

            // Now delete the bucket.
            await _s3Client.DeleteBucketAsync(new DeleteBucketRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName
            });
```

```
        }

        if (!askUser || GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete lambda {lambdaFunctionName}? (y/
n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting lambda function.");

            await _lambdaClient.DeleteFunctionAsync(new DeleteFunctionRequest()
            {
                FunctionName = lambdaFunctionName
            });
        }

        if (!askUser || GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete role {lambdaRoleName}? (y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDetaching policies and deleting role.");

            foreach (var policy in lambdaRolePolicies)
            {
                await _iamClient!.DetachRolePolicyAsync(new
 DetachRolePolicyRequest()
                {
                    RoleName = lambdaRoleName,
                    PolicyArn = policy
                });
            }

            await _iamClient!.DeleteRoleAsync(new DeleteRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = lambdaRoleName
            });
        }

        if (!askUser || GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete role {sageMakerRoleName}? (y/
n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDetaching policies and deleting role.");

            foreach (var policy in sageMakerRolePolicies)
            {
                await _iamClient!.DetachRolePolicyAsync(new
 DetachRolePolicyRequest()
                {
                    RoleName = sageMakerRoleName,
```

```
                    PolicyArn = policy
                });
            }

            await _iamClient!.DeleteRoleAsync(new DeleteRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = sageMakerRoleName
            });
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a role's ARN if it already exists.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the AWS Identity and Access Management
 (IAM) Role to look for.</param>
    /// <returns>The role ARN if it exists, otherwise an empty string.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> GetRoleArnIfExists(string roleName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"Checking for role named {roleName}.");

        try
        {
            var existingRole = await _iamClient.GetRoleAsync(new GetRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = lambdaRoleName
            });
            return existingRole.Role.Arn;
        }
        catch (NoSuchEntityException)
        {
            return string.Empty;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
```

```
    {
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        var response = ynResponse != null &&
                       ynResponse.Equals("y",
                           StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
        return response;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreatePipeline
  - DeletePipeline
  - DescribePipelineExecution
  - StartPipelineExecution
  - UpdatePipeline

Secrets Manager examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Secrets Manager.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`GetSecretValue`

The following code example shows how to use `GetSecretValue`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.SecretsManager;
using Amazon.SecretsManager.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example uses the Amazon Web Service Secrets Manager to retrieve
/// the secret value for the provided secret name.
/// </summary>
public class GetSecretValue
{
    /// <summary>
    /// The main method initializes the necessary values and then calls
    /// the GetSecretAsync and DecodeString methods to get the decoded
    /// secret value for the secret named in secretName.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string secretName = "<<{{MySecretName}}>>";
        string secret;

        IAmazonSecretsManager client = new AmazonSecretsManagerClient();

        var response = await GetSecretAsync(client, secretName);

        if (response is not null)
        {
            secret = DecodeString(response);

            if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(secret))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"The decoded secret value is: {secret}.");
            }
```

```
                else
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("No secret value was returned.");
                }
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves the secret value given the name of the secret to
        /// retrieve.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The client object used to retrieve the secret
        /// value for the given secret name.</param>
        /// <param name="secretName">The name of the secret value to retrieve.</
param>
        /// <returns>The GetSecretValueReponse object returned by
        /// GetSecretValueAsync.</returns>
        public static async Task<GetSecretValueResponse> GetSecretAsync(
            IAmazonSecretsManager client,
            string secretName)
        {
            GetSecretValueRequest request = new GetSecretValueRequest()
            {
                SecretId = secretName,
                VersionStage = "AWSCURRENT", // VersionStage defaults to AWSCURRENT
 if unspecified.
            };

            GetSecretValueResponse response = null;

            // For the sake of simplicity, this example handles only the most
            // general SecretsManager exception.
            try
            {
                response = await client.GetSecretValueAsync(request);
            }
            catch (AmazonSecretsManagerException e)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {e.Message}");
            }

            return response;
        }
```

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Decodes the secret returned by the call to GetSecretValueAsync and
        /// returns it to the calling program.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="response">A GetSecretValueResponse object containing
        /// the requested secret value returned by GetSecretValueAsync.</param>
        /// <returns>A string representing the decoded secret value.</returns>
        public static string DecodeString(GetSecretValueResponse response)
        {
            // Decrypts secret using the associated AWS Key Management Service
            // Customer Master Key (CMK.) Depending on whether the secret is a
            // string or binary value, one of these fields will be populated.
            if (response.SecretString is not null)
            {
                var secret = response.SecretString;
                return secret;
            }
            else if (response.SecretBinary is not null)
            {
                var memoryStream = response.SecretBinary;
                StreamReader reader = new StreamReader(memoryStream);
                string decodedBinarySecret =
System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetString(Convert.FromBase64String(reader.ReadToEnd()));
                return decodedBinarySecret;
            }
            else
            {
                return string.Empty;
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetSecretValue in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon SES examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon SES.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTemplate`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an email template.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Name of the template.</param>
    /// <param name="subject">Email subject.</param>
    /// <param name="text">Email body text.</param>
    /// <param name="html">Email HTML body text.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateEmailTemplateAsync(string name, string subject,
string text,
        string html)
    {
```

```
        var success = false;
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.CreateTemplateAsync(
                new CreateTemplateRequest
                {
                    Template = new Template
                    {
                        TemplateName = name,
                        SubjectPart = subject,
                        TextPart = text,
                        HtmlPart = html
                    }
                });
            success = response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("CreateEmailTemplateAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return success;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTemplate in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteIdentity`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an email identity.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="identityEmail">The identity email to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteIdentityAsync(string identityEmail)
    {
        var success = false;
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.DeleteIdentityAsync(
                new DeleteIdentityRequest
                {
                    Identity = identityEmail
                });
            success = response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("DeleteIdentityAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return success;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteIdentity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTemplate`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an email template.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">Name of the template.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteEmailTemplateAsync(string templateName)
    {
        var success = false;
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.DeleteTemplateAsync(
                new DeleteTemplateRequest
                {
                    TemplateName = templateName
                });
            success = response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("DeleteEmailTemplateAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return success;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTemplate in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetIdentityVerificationAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetIdentityVerificationAttributes`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get identity verification status for an email.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The verification status of the email.</returns>
    public async Task<VerificationStatus> GetIdentityStatusAsync(string email)
    {
        var result = VerificationStatus.TemporaryFailure;
        try
        {
            var response =
                await
_amazonSimpleEmailService.GetIdentityVerificationAttributesAsync(
                    new GetIdentityVerificationAttributesRequest
                    {
                        Identities = new List<string> { email }
                    });

            if (response.VerificationAttributes.ContainsKey(email))
                result = response.VerificationAttributes[email].VerificationStatus;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("GetIdentityStatusAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetIdentityVerificationAttributes in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetSendQuota`

The following code example shows how to use `GetSendQuota`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information on the current account's send quota.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The send quota response data.</returns>
    public async Task<GetSendQuotaResponse> GetSendQuotaAsync()
    {
        var result = new GetSendQuotaResponse();
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.GetSendQuotaAsync(
                new GetSendQuotaRequest());
            result = response;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("GetSendQuotaAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetSendQuota in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListIdentities`

The following code example shows how to use `ListIdentities`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the identities of a specified type for the current account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="identityType">IdentityType to list.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of identities.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> ListIdentitiesAsync(IdentityType identityType)
    {
        var result = new List<string>();
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.ListIdentitiesAsync(
                new ListIdentitiesRequest
                {
                    IdentityType = identityType
                });
            result = response.Identities;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("ListIdentitiesAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListIdentities in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListTemplates`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTemplates`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List email templates for the current account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of template metadata.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TemplateMetadata>> ListEmailTemplatesAsync()
    {
        var result = new List<TemplateMetadata>();
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.ListTemplatesAsync(
                new ListTemplatesRequest());
            result = response.TemplatesMetadata;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("ListEmailTemplatesAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTemplates in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`SendEmail`

The following code example shows how to use `SendEmail`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
///  Send an email by using Amazon SES.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="toAddresses">List of recipients.</param>
/// <param name="ccAddresses">List of cc recipients.</param>
/// <param name="bccAddresses">List of bcc recipients.</param>
/// <param name="bodyHtml">Body of the email in HTML.</param>
/// <param name="bodyText">Body of the email in plain text.</param>
/// <param name="subject">Subject line of the email.</param>
/// <param name="senderAddress">From address.</param>
/// <returns>The messageId of the email.</returns>
public async Task<string> SendEmailAsync(List<string> toAddresses,
    List<string> ccAddresses, List<string> bccAddresses,
    string bodyHtml, string bodyText, string subject, string senderAddress)
{
    var messageId = "";
    try
    {
        var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.SendEmailAsync(
            new SendEmailRequest
            {
                Destination = new Destination
                {
                    BccAddresses = bccAddresses,
                    CcAddresses = ccAddresses,
                    ToAddresses = toAddresses
                },
                Message = new Message
                {
                    Body = new Body
                    {
                        Html = new Content
                        {
```

```
                                Charset = "UTF-8",
                                Data = bodyHtml
                            },
                            Text = new Content
                            {
                                Charset = "UTF-8",
                                Data = bodyText
                            }
                        },
                        Subject = new Content
                        {
                            Charset = "UTF-8",
                            Data = subject
                        }
                    },
                    Source = senderAddress
                });
            messageId = response.MessageId;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("SendEmailAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return messageId;
    }
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`SendTemplatedEmail`

The following code example shows how to use `SendTemplatedEmail`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Send an email using a template.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sender">Address of the sender.</param>
    /// <param name="recipients">Addresses of the recipients.</param>
    /// <param name="templateName">Name of the email template.</param>
    /// <param name="templateDataObject">Data for the email template.</param>
    /// <returns>The messageId of the email.</returns>
    public async Task<string> SendTemplateEmailAsync(string sender, List<string>
recipients,
        string templateName, object templateDataObject)
    {
        var messageId = "";
        try
        {
            // Template data should be serialized JSON from either a class or a
dynamic object.
            var templateData = JsonSerializer.Serialize(templateDataObject);

            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.SendTemplatedEmailAsync(
                new SendTemplatedEmailRequest
                {
                    Source = sender,
                    Destination = new Destination
                    {
                        ToAddresses = recipients
                    },
                    Template = templateName,
                    TemplateData = templateData
                });
            messageId = response.MessageId;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("SendTemplateEmailAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return messageId;
    }
```

- For API details, see SendTemplatedEmail in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`VerifyEmailIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `VerifyEmailIdentity`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Starts verification of an email identity. This request sends an email
    /// from Amazon SES to the specified email address. To complete
    /// verification, follow the instructions in the email.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="recipientEmailAddress">Email address to verify.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> VerifyEmailIdentityAsync(string recipientEmailAddress)
    {
        var success = false;
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.VerifyEmailIdentityAsync(
                new VerifyEmailIdentityRequest
                {
                    EmailAddress = recipientEmailAddress
                });

            success = response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("VerifyEmailIdentityAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return success;
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see VerifyEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a web application to track DynamoDB data

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon DynamoDB table and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the Amazon DynamoDB .NET API to create a dynamic web application that tracks DynamoDB work data.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SES

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses a front end built with React.js to interact with a RESTful .NET backend.

- Integrate a React web application with AWS services.
- List, add, update, and delete items in an Aurora table.
- Send an email report of filtered work items using Amazon SES.

- Deploy and manage example resources with the included AWS CloudFormation script.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Detect objects in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect objects by category in images.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition .NET API to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Amazon SES API v2 examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon SES API v2.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateContact`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateContact`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Creates a contact and adds it to the specified contact list.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="emailAddress">The email address of the contact.</param>
   /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list.</param>
   /// <returns>The response from the CreateContact operation.</returns>
   public async Task<bool> CreateContactAsync(string emailAddress, string
contactListName)
   {
       var request = new CreateContactRequest
       {
           EmailAddress = emailAddress,
           ContactListName = contactListName
       };

       try
```

```
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateContactAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact with email address {emailAddress} already
exists in the contact list {contactListName}.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return true;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} does not
exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the contact:
{ex.Message}");
        }
        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateContact in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateContactList`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateContactList`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a contact list with the specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateContactListAsync(string contactListName)
    {
        var request = new CreateContactListRequest
        {
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateContactListAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact list with name {contactListName} already
exists.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return true;
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The limit for contact lists has been exceeded.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
```

```
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the contact list:
{ex.Message}");
        }
        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateContactList in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateEmailIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateEmailIdentity`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an email identity (email address or domain) and starts the
verification process.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="emailIdentity">The email address or domain to create and
verify.</param>
    /// <returns>The response from the CreateEmailIdentity operation.</returns>
    public async Task<CreateEmailIdentityResponse> CreateEmailIdentityAsync(string
emailIdentity)
    {
        var request = new CreateEmailIdentityRequest
        {
            EmailIdentity = emailIdentity
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateEmailIdentityAsync(request);
```

```
            return response;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Email identity {emailIdentity} already exists.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (ConcurrentModificationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} is being modified
by another operation or thread.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The limit for email identities has been exceeded.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} does not
exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the email identity:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateEmailTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateEmailTemplate`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an email template with the specified content.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the email template.</param>
    /// <param name="subject">The subject of the email template.</param>
    /// <param name="htmlContent">The HTML content of the email template.</param>
    /// <param name="textContent">The text content of the email template.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateEmailTemplateAsync(string templateName, string
subject, string htmlContent, string textContent)
    {
        var request = new CreateEmailTemplateRequest
        {
            TemplateName = templateName,
            TemplateContent = new EmailTemplateContent
            {
                Subject = subject,
                Html = htmlContent,
                Text = textContent
            }
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateEmailTemplateAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Email template with name {templateName} already
exists.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The limit for email templates has been exceeded.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the email template:
{ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateEmailTemplate in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteContactList`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteContactList`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes a contact list and all contacts within it.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list to delete.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteContactListAsync(string contactListName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteContactListRequest
        {
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.DeleteContactListAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (ConcurrentModificationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} is being modified
 by another operation or thread.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} does not
 exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
 later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting the contact list:
 {ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteContactList in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteEmailIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteEmailIdentity`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an email identity (email address or domain).
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="emailIdentity">The email address or domain to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteEmailIdentityAsync(string emailIdentity)
    {
        var request = new DeleteEmailIdentityRequest
        {
            EmailIdentity = emailIdentity
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.DeleteEmailIdentityAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (ConcurrentModificationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} is being modified
by another operation or thread.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} does not
exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
```

```
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting the email identity:
{ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteEmailTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteEmailTemplate`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an email template.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the email template to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteEmailTemplateAsync(string templateName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteEmailTemplateRequest
        {
            TemplateName = templateName
        };
```

```
        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.DeleteEmailTemplateAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email template {templateName} does not exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting the email template:
{ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteEmailTemplate in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListContacts`

The following code example shows how to use `ListContacts`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Lists the contacts in the specified contact list.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of contacts response from the ListContacts operation.</
returns>
    public async Task<List<Contact>> ListContactsAsync(string contactListName)
    {
        var request = new ListContactsRequest
        {
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.ListContactsAsync(request);
            return response.Contacts;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} does not
 exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
 later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while listing the contacts:
 {ex.Message}");
        }

        return new List<Contact>();
    }
```

- For API details, see ListContacts in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

SendEmail

The following code example shows how to use SendEmail.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Sends an email with the specified content and options.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="fromEmailAddress">The email address to send the email from.</
param>
    /// <param name="toEmailAddresses">The email addresses to send the email to.</
param>
    /// <param name="subject">The subject of the email.</param>
    /// <param name="htmlContent">The HTML content of the email.</param>
    /// <param name="textContent">The text content of the email.</param>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the email template to use
 (optional).</param>
    /// <param name="templateData">The data to replace placeholders in the email
 template (optional).</param>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list for unsubscribe
 functionality (optional).</param>
    /// <returns>The MessageId response from the SendEmail operation.</returns>
    public async Task<string> SendEmailAsync(string fromEmailAddress, List<string>
 toEmailAddresses, string? subject,
        string? htmlContent, string? textContent, string? templateName = null,
 string? templateData = null, string? contactListName = null)
    {
        var request = new SendEmailRequest
        {
            FromEmailAddress = fromEmailAddress
        };

        if (toEmailAddresses.Any())
        {
            request.Destination = new Destination { ToAddresses =
 toEmailAddresses };
```

```
        }

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(templateName))
        {
            request.Content = new EmailContent()
            {
                Template = new Template
                {
                    TemplateName = templateName,
                    TemplateData = templateData
                }
            };
        }
        else
        {
            request.Content = new EmailContent
            {
                Simple = new Message
                {
                    Subject = new Content { Data = subject },
                    Body = new Body
                    {
                        Html = new Content { Data = htmlContent },
                        Text = new Content { Data = textContent }
                    }
                }
            };
        }

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(contactListName))
        {
            request.ListManagementOptions = new ListManagementOptions
            {
                ContactListName = contactListName
            };
        }

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.SendEmailAsync(request);
            return response.MessageId;
        }
        catch (AccountSuspendedException ex)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("The account's ability to send email has been
permanently restricted.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (MailFromDomainNotVerifiedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The sending domain is not verified.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (MessageRejectedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The message content is invalid.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (SendingPausedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The account's ability to send email is currently
paused.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while sending the email:
{ex.Message}");
        }

        return string.Empty;
    }
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Newsletter scenario

The following code example shows how to run the Amazon SES API v2 newsletter scenario.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the scenario.

```
using System.Diagnostics;
using System.Text.RegularExpressions;
using Amazon.SimpleEmailV2;
using Amazon.SimpleEmailV2.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;

namespace Sesv2Scenario;

public static class NewsletterWorkflow
{
    /*
      This scenario demonstrates how to use the Amazon Simple Email Service (SES) v2
 to send a coupon newsletter to a list of subscribers.
      The scenario performs the following tasks:

      1. Prepare the application:
         - Create a verified email identity for sending and replying to emails.
         - Create a contact list to store the subscribers' email addresses.
         - Create an email template for the coupon newsletter.

      2. Gather subscriber email addresses:
         - Prompt the user for a base email address.
         - Create 3 variants of the email address using subaddress extensions (e.g.,
 user+ses-weekly-newsletter-1@example.com).
         - Add each variant as a contact to the contact list.
         - Send a welcome email to each new contact.

      3. Send the coupon newsletter:
         - Retrieve the list of contacts from the contact list.
```

```
        - Send the coupon newsletter using the email template to each contact.

     4. Monitor and review:
        - Provide instructions for the user to review the sending activity and
metrics in the AWS console.

     5. Clean up resources:
        - Delete the contact list (which also deletes all contacts within it).
        - Delete the email template.
        - Optionally delete the verified email identity.

   */

   public static SESv2Wrapper _sesv2Wrapper;
   public static string? _baseEmailAddress = null;
   public static string? _verifiedEmail = null;
   private static string _contactListName = "weekly-coupons-newsletter";
   private static string _templateName = "weekly-coupons";
   private static string _subject = "Weekly Coupons Newsletter";
   private static string _htmlContentFile = "coupon-newsletter.html";
   private static string _textContentFile = "coupon-newsletter.txt";
   private static string _htmlWelcomeFile = "welcome.html";
   private static string _textWelcomeFile = "welcome.txt";
   private static string _couponsDataFile = "sample_coupons.json";

   // Relative location of the resources folder.
   private static string _resourcesFilePathLocation = "../../../../resources/";

   public static async Task Main(string[] args)
   {
       // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
       using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
           .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
               logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                   .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                   .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
           .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
               services.AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleEmailServiceV2>()
                   .AddTransient<SESv2Wrapper>()
           )
           .Build();

       ServicesSetup(host);
```

```
        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon SES v2 Coupon Newsletter
Scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine("This scenario demonstrates how to use the Amazon
Simple Email Service (SES) v2 " +
                              "\r\nto send a coupon newsletter to a list of
subscribers.");

            // Prepare the application.
            var emailIdentity = await PrepareApplication();

            // Gather subscriber email addresses.
            await GatherSubscriberEmailAddresses(emailIdentity);

            // Send the coupon newsletter.
            await SendCouponNewsletter(emailIdentity);

            // Monitor and review.
            MonitorAndReview(true);

            // Clean up resources.
            await Cleanup(emailIdentity, true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Amazon SES v2 Coupon Newsletter scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred: {ex.Message}");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
```

```
    {
        _sesv2Wrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SESv2Wrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the resources for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The email address of the verified identity.</returns>
    public static async Task<string?> PrepareApplication()
    {
        var htmlContent = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(_resourcesFilePathLocation +
_htmlContentFile);
        var textContent = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(_resourcesFilePathLocation +
_textContentFile);

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("1. In this step, we will prepare the application:" +
                          "\r\n  - Create a verified email identity for sending and
replying to emails." +
                          "\r\n  - Create a contact list to store the subscribers'
email addresses." +
                          "\r\n  - Create an email template for the coupon
newsletter.\r\n");

        // Prompt the user for a verified email address.
        while (!IsEmail(_verifiedEmail))
        {
            Console.Write("Enter a verified email address or an email to verify: ");
            _verifiedEmail = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        try
        {
            // Create an email identity and start the verification process.
            await _sesv2Wrapper.CreateEmailIdentityAsync(_verifiedEmail);
            Console.WriteLine($"Identity {_verifiedEmail} created.");
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Identity {_verifiedEmail} already exists.");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error creating email identity: {ex.Message}");
```

```
        }

        // Create a contact list.
        try
        {
            await _sesv2Wrapper.CreateContactListAsync(_contactListName);
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact list {_contactListName} created.");
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact list {_contactListName} already exists.");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error creating contact list: {ex.Message}");
        }

        // Create an email template.
        try
        {
            await _sesv2Wrapper.CreateEmailTemplateAsync(_templateName, _subject,
htmlContent, textContent);
            Console.WriteLine($"Email template {_templateName} created.");
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Email template {_templateName} already exists.");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error creating email template: {ex.Message}");
        }

        return _verifiedEmail;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Generate subscriber addresses and send welcome emails.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="fromEmailAddress">The verified email address from
PrepareApplication.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> GatherSubscriberEmailAddresses(string
fromEmailAddress)
```

```
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("2. In Step 2, we will gather subscriber email addresses:"
 +
                          "\r\n  - Prompt the user for a base email address." +
                          "\r\n  - Create 3 variants of the email address using
 subaddress extensions (e.g., user+ses-weekly-newsletter-1@example.com)." +
                          "\r\n  - Add each variant as a contact to the contact
 list." +
                          "\r\n  - Send a welcome email to each new contact.\r\n");

        // Prompt the user for a base email address.
        while (!IsEmail(_baseEmailAddress))
        {
            Console.Write("Enter a base email address (e.g., user@example.com): ");
            _baseEmailAddress = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        // Create 3 variants of the email address using +ses-weekly-newsletter-1,
 +ses-weekly-newsletter-2, etc.
        var baseEmailAddressParts = _baseEmailAddress!.Split("@");
        for (int i = 1; i <= 3; i++)
        {
            string emailAddress = $"{baseEmailAddressParts[0]}+ses-weekly-
newsletter-{i}@{baseEmailAddressParts[1]}";

            try
            {
                // Create a contact with the email address in the contact list.
                await _sesv2Wrapper.CreateContactAsync(emailAddress,
 _contactListName);
                Console.WriteLine($"Contact {emailAddress} added to the
 {_contactListName} contact list.");
            }
            catch (AlreadyExistsException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Contact {emailAddress} already exists in the
 {_contactListName} contact list.");
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error creating contact {emailAddress}:
 {ex.Message}");
                return false;
```

```
            }

            // Send a welcome email to the new contact.
            try
            {
                string subject = "Welcome to the Weekly Coupons Newsletter";
                string htmlContent = await
File.ReadAllTextAsync(_resourcesFilePathLocation + _htmlWelcomeFile);
                string textContent = await
File.ReadAllTextAsync(_resourcesFilePathLocation + _textWelcomeFile);

                await _sesv2Wrapper.SendEmailAsync(fromEmailAddress, new
List<string> { emailAddress }, subject, htmlContent, textContent);
                Console.WriteLine($"Welcome email sent to {emailAddress}.");
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error sending welcome email to {emailAddress}:
{ex.Message}");
                return false;
            }

            // Wait 2 seconds before sending the next email (if the account is in
the SES Sandbox).
            await Task.Delay(2000);
        }

        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    ///  Send the coupon newsletter to the subscribers in the contact list.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="fromEmailAddress">The verified email address from
PrepareApplication.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> SendCouponNewsletter(string fromEmailAddress)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("3. In this step, we will send the coupon newsletter:" +
                          "\r\n  - Retrieve the list of contacts from the contact
list." +
                          "\r\n  - Send the coupon newsletter using the email
template to each contact.\r\n");
```

```
        // Retrieve the list of contacts from the contact list.
        var contacts = await _sesv2Wrapper.ListContactsAsync(_contactListName);
        if (!contacts.Any())
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No contacts found in the {_contactListName} contact
list.");
            return false;
        }

        // Load the coupon data from the sample_coupons.json file.
        string couponsData = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(_resourcesFilePathLocation
+ _couponsDataFile);

        // Send the coupon newsletter to each contact using the email template.
        try
        {
            foreach (var contact in contacts)
            {
                // To use the Contact List for list management, send to only one
address at a time.
                await _sesv2Wrapper.SendEmailAsync(fromEmailAddress,
                    new List<string> { contact.EmailAddress },
                    null, null, null, _templateName, couponsData, _contactListName);
            }

            Console.WriteLine($"Coupon newsletter sent to contact list
{_contactListName}.");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error sending coupon newsletter to contact list
{_contactListName}: {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }

        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Provide instructions for monitoring sending activity and metrics.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run in interactive mode.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static bool MonitorAndReview(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("4. In step 4, we will monitor and review:" +
                          "\r\n  - Provide instructions for the user to review the
sending activity and metrics in the AWS console.\r\n");

        Console.WriteLine("Review your sending activity using the SES Homepage in
the AWS console.");
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter to open the SES Homepage in your default
browser...");
        if (interactive)
        {
            Console.ReadLine();
            try
            {
                // Open the SES Homepage in the default browser.
                Process.Start(new ProcessStartInfo
                {
                    FileName = "https://console.aws.amazon.com/ses/home",
                    UseShellExecute = true
                });
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error opening the SES Homepage: {ex.Message}");
                return false;
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine("Review the sending activity and email metrics, then press
Enter to continue...");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources used in the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="verifiedEmailAddress">The verified email address from
PrepareApplication.</param>
    /// <param name="interactive">True if interactive.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Cleanup(string verifiedEmailAddress, bool
 interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("5. Finally, we clean up resources:" +
                          "\r\n  - Delete the contact list (which also deletes all
 contacts within it)." +
                          "\r\n  - Delete the email template." +
                          "\r\n  - Optionally delete the verified email identity.\r
\n");

        Console.WriteLine("Cleaning up resources...");

        // Delete the contact list (this also deletes all contacts in the list).
        try
        {
            await _sesv2Wrapper.DeleteContactListAsync(_contactListName);
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact list {_contactListName} deleted.");
        }
        catch (NotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact list {_contactListName} not found.");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error deleting contact list {_contactListName}:
 {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }

        // Delete the email template.
        try
        {
            await _sesv2Wrapper.DeleteEmailTemplateAsync(_templateName);
            Console.WriteLine($"Email template {_templateName} deleted.");
        }
        catch (NotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Email template {_templateName} not found.");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Error deleting email template {_templateName}:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }

        // Ask the user if they want to delete the email identity.
        var deleteIdentity = !interactive ||
            GetYesNoResponse(
                $"Do you want to delete the email identity {verifiedEmailAddress}?
(y/n) ");
        if (deleteIdentity)
        {
            try
            {
                await _sesv2Wrapper.DeleteEmailIdentityAsync(verifiedEmailAddress);
                Console.WriteLine($"Email identity {verifiedEmailAddress}
deleted.");
            }
            catch (NotFoundException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Email identity {verifiedEmailAddress} not found.");
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Error deleting email identity {verifiedEmailAddress}:
{ex.Message}");
                return false;
            }
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"Skipping deletion of email identity {verifiedEmailAddress}.");
        }

        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        var response = ynResponse != null && ynResponse.Equals("y",
 StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
        return response;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Simple check to verify a string is an email address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="email">The string to verify.</param>
    /// <returns>True if a valid email.</returns>
    private static bool IsEmail(string? email)
    {
        if (string.IsNullOrEmpty(email))
            return false;
        return Regex.IsMatch(email, @"^[^@\s]+@[^@\s]+\.[^@\s]+$",
 RegexOptions.IgnoreCase);
    }
}
```

Wrapper for service operations.

```
using System.Net;
using Amazon.SimpleEmailV2;
using Amazon.SimpleEmailV2.Model;

namespace Sesv2Scenario;

/// <summary>
/// Wrapper class for Amazon Simple Email Service (SES) v2 operations.
/// </summary>
public class SESv2Wrapper
{

    private readonly IAmazonSimpleEmailServiceV2 _sesClient;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the SESv2Wrapper.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sesClient">The injected SES v2 client.</param>
    public SESv2Wrapper(IAmazonSimpleEmailServiceV2 sesClient)
    {
        _sesClient = sesClient;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a contact and adds it to the specified contact list.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="emailAddress">The email address of the contact.</param>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list.</param>
    /// <returns>The response from the CreateContact operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateContactAsync(string emailAddress, string
 contactListName)
    {
        var request = new CreateContactRequest
        {
            EmailAddress = emailAddress,
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateContactAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact with email address {emailAddress} already
 exists in the contact list {contactListName}.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return true;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} does not
 exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
 later.");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the contact:
{ex.Message}");
        }
        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a contact list with the specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateContactListAsync(string contactListName)
    {
        var request = new CreateContactListRequest
        {
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateContactListAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact list with name {contactListName} already
exists.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return true;
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The limit for contact lists has been exceeded.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
```

```
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the contact list:
{ex.Message}");
        }
        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an email identity (email address or domain) and starts the
verification process.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="emailIdentity">The email address or domain to create and
verify.</param>
    /// <returns>The response from the CreateEmailIdentity operation.</returns>
    public async Task<CreateEmailIdentityResponse> CreateEmailIdentityAsync(string
emailIdentity)
    {
        var request = new CreateEmailIdentityRequest
        {
            EmailIdentity = emailIdentity
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateEmailIdentityAsync(request);
            return response;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Email identity {emailIdentity} already exists.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (ConcurrentModificationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} is being modified
by another operation or thread.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException ex)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("The limit for email identities has been exceeded.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} does not
exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the email identity:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an email template with the specified content.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the email template.</param>
    /// <param name="subject">The subject of the email template.</param>
    /// <param name="htmlContent">The HTML content of the email template.</param>
    /// <param name="textContent">The text content of the email template.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateEmailTemplateAsync(string templateName, string
subject, string htmlContent, string textContent)
    {
        var request = new CreateEmailTemplateRequest
        {
            TemplateName = templateName,
            TemplateContent = new EmailTemplateContent
            {
                Subject = subject,
                Html = htmlContent,
```

```
                Text = textContent
            }
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateEmailTemplateAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Email template with name {templateName} already
 exists.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The limit for email templates has been exceeded.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
 later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the email template:
 {ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes a contact list and all contacts within it.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list to delete.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteContactListAsync(string contactListName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteContactListRequest
```

```
        {
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.DeleteContactListAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (ConcurrentModificationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} is being modified
by another operation or thread.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} does not
exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting the contact list:
{ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an email identity (email address or domain).
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="emailIdentity">The email address or domain to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteEmailIdentityAsync(string emailIdentity)
    {
        var request = new DeleteEmailIdentityRequest
```

```
        {
            EmailIdentity = emailIdentity
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.DeleteEmailIdentityAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (ConcurrentModificationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} is being modified
by another operation or thread.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} does not
exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting the email identity:
{ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an email template.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the email template to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteEmailTemplateAsync(string templateName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteEmailTemplateRequest
```

```
        {
            TemplateName = templateName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.DeleteEmailTemplateAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email template {templateName} does not exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
 later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting the email template:
 {ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Lists the contacts in the specified contact list.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of contacts response from the ListContacts operation.</
returns>
    public async Task<List<Contact>> ListContactsAsync(string contactListName)
    {
        var request = new ListContactsRequest
        {
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };

        try
        {
```

```
            var response = await _sesClient.ListContactsAsync(request);
            return response.Contacts;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} does not
 exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
 later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while listing the contacts:
 {ex.Message}");
        }

        return new List<Contact>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Sends an email with the specified content and options.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="fromEmailAddress">The email address to send the email from.</
param>
    /// <param name="toEmailAddresses">The email addresses to send the email to.</
param>
    /// <param name="subject">The subject of the email.</param>
    /// <param name="htmlContent">The HTML content of the email.</param>
    /// <param name="textContent">The text content of the email.</param>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the email template to use
 (optional).</param>
    /// <param name="templateData">The data to replace placeholders in the email
 template (optional).</param>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list for unsubscribe
 functionality (optional).</param>
    /// <returns>The MessageId response from the SendEmail operation.</returns>
    public async Task<string> SendEmailAsync(string fromEmailAddress, List<string>
 toEmailAddresses, string? subject,
```

```
        string? htmlContent, string? textContent, string? templateName = null,
string? templateData = null, string? contactListName = null)
    {
        var request = new SendEmailRequest
        {
            FromEmailAddress = fromEmailAddress
        };

        if (toEmailAddresses.Any())
        {
            request.Destination = new Destination { ToAddresses =
toEmailAddresses };
        }

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(templateName))
        {
            request.Content = new EmailContent()
            {
                Template = new Template
                {
                    TemplateName = templateName,
                    TemplateData = templateData
                }
            };
        }
        else
        {
            request.Content = new EmailContent
            {
                Simple = new Message
                {
                    Subject = new Content { Data = subject },
                    Body = new Body
                    {
                        Html = new Content { Data = htmlContent },
                        Text = new Content { Data = textContent }
                    }
                }
            };
        }

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(contactListName))
        {
            request.ListManagementOptions = new ListManagementOptions
```

```
            {
                ContactListName = contactListName
            };
        }

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.SendEmailAsync(request);
            return response.MessageId;
        }
        catch (AccountSuspendedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The account's ability to send email has been
permanently restricted.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (MailFromDomainNotVerifiedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The sending domain is not verified.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (MessageRejectedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The message content is invalid.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (SendingPausedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The account's ability to send email is currently
paused.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while sending the email:
{ex.Message}");
        }
```

```
        return string.Empty;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateContact
  - CreateContactList
  - CreateEmailIdentity
  - CreateEmailTemplate
  - DeleteContactList
  - DeleteEmailIdentity
  - DeleteEmailTemplate
  - ListContacts
  - SendEmail.simple
  - SendEmail.template

Amazon SNS examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon SNS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Get started
- Actions
- Scenarios

- Serverless examples

Get started

Hello Amazon SNS

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon SNS.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

namespace SNSActions;

public static class HelloSNS
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var snsClient = new AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon SNS! Following are some of your topics:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get a list of topics.
        var response = await snsClient.ListTopicsAsync(
            new ListTopicsRequest());

        foreach (var topic in response.Topics)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tTopic ARN: {topic.TopicArn}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Actions

`CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut`

The following code example shows how to use `CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to use the Amazon Simple Notification Service
    /// (Amazon SNS) to check whether a phone number has been opted out.
    /// </summary>
    public class IsPhoneNumOptedOut
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string phoneNumber = "+15551112222";

            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client = new
AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();

            await CheckIfOptedOutAsync(client, phoneNumber);
        }
```

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Checks to see if the supplied phone number has been opted out.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon SNS Client object used
        /// to check if the phone number has been opted out.</param>
        /// <param name="phoneNumber">A string representing the phone number
        /// to check.</param>
        public static async Task
CheckIfOptedOutAsync(IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client, string phoneNumber)
        {
            var request = new CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOutRequest
            {
                PhoneNumber = phoneNumber,
            };

            try
            {
                var response = await
client.CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOutAsync(request);

                if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
                {
                    string optOutStatus = response.IsOptedOut ? "opted out" : "not
opted out.";
                    Console.WriteLine($"The phone number: {phoneNumber} is
{optOutStatus}");
                }
            }
            catch (AuthorizationErrorException ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{ex.Message}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTopic`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a topic with a specific name.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to use Amazon Simple Notification Service
    /// (Amazon SNS) to add a new Amazon SNS topic.
    /// </summary>
    public class CreateSNSTopic
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string topicName = "ExampleSNSTopic";

            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client = new
AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();

            var topicArn = await CreateSNSTopicAsync(client, topicName);
            Console.WriteLine($"New topic ARN: {topicArn}");
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates a new SNS topic using the supplied topic name.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized SNS client object used to
        /// create the new topic.</param>
        /// <param name="topicName">A string representing the topic name.</param>
        /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created topic.</returns>
        public static async Task<string>
CreateSNSTopicAsync(IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client, string topicName)
        {
            var request = new CreateTopicRequest
```

```
            {
                Name = topicName,
            };

            var response = await client.CreateTopicAsync(request);

            return response.TopicArn;
        }
    }
```

Create a new topic with a name and specific FIFO and de-duplication attributes.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new topic with a name and specific FIFO and de-duplication
 attributes.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicName">The name for the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoTopic">True to use a FIFO topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useContentBasedDeduplication">True to use content-based de-
duplication.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new topic.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateTopicWithName(string topicName, bool
 useFifoTopic, bool useContentBasedDeduplication)
    {
        var createTopicRequest = new CreateTopicRequest()
        {
            Name = topicName,
        };

        if (useFifoTopic)
        {
            // Update the name if it is not correct for a FIFO topic.
            if (!topicName.EndsWith(".fifo"))
            {
                createTopicRequest.Name = topicName + ".fifo";
            }

            // Add the attributes from the method parameters.
            createTopicRequest.Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                { "FifoTopic", "true" }
```

```
            };
            if (useContentBasedDeduplication)
            {
                createTopicRequest.Attributes.Add("ContentBasedDeduplication",
"true");
            }
        }

        var createResponse = await
_amazonSNSClient.CreateTopicAsync(createTopicRequest);
        return createResponse.TopicArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTopic`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete a topic by its topic ARN.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a topic by its topic ARN.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTopicByArn(string topicArn)
    {
        var deleteResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.DeleteTopicAsync(
            new DeleteTopicRequest()
            {
                TopicArn = topicArn
```

```
            });
        return deleteResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetTopicAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTopicAttributes`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to retrieve the attributes of an Amazon Simple
    /// Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.
    /// </summary>
    public class GetTopicAttributes
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string topicArn = "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:000000000000:ExampleSNSTopic";
            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client = new
AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();

            var attributes = await GetTopicAttributesAsync(client, topicArn);
            DisplayTopicAttributes(attributes);
        }

        /// <summary>
```

```
        /// Given the ARN of the Amazon SNS topic, this method retrieves the topic
        /// attributes.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon SNS client object used
        /// to retrieve the attributes for the Amazon SNS topic.</param>
        /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic for which to retrieve
        /// the attributes.</param>
        /// <returns>A Dictionary of topic attributes.</returns>
        public static async Task<Dictionary<string, string>>
GetTopicAttributesAsync(
            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client,
            string topicArn)
        {
            var response = await client.GetTopicAttributesAsync(topicArn);

            return response.Attributes;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method displays the attributes for an Amazon SNS topic.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="topicAttributes">A Dictionary containing the
        /// attributes for an Amazon SNS topic.</param>
        public static void DisplayTopicAttributes(Dictionary<string, string>
topicAttributes)
        {
            foreach (KeyValuePair<string, string> entry in topicAttributes)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{entry.Key}: {entry.Value}\n");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListSubscriptions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSubscriptions`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   using System;
   using System.Collections.Generic;
   using System.Threading.Tasks;
   using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
   using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

   /// <summary>
   /// This example will retrieve a list of the existing Amazon Simple
   /// Notification Service (Amazon SNS) subscriptions.
   /// </summary>
   public class ListSubscriptions
   {
       public static async Task Main()
       {
           IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client = new
AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();

           Console.WriteLine("Enter a topic ARN to list subscriptions for a
specific topic, " +
                             "or press Enter to list subscriptions for all
topics.");
           var topicArn = Console.ReadLine();
           Console.WriteLine();

           var subscriptions = await GetSubscriptionsListAsync(client, topicArn);

           DisplaySubscriptionList(subscriptions);
       }

       /// <summary>
       /// Gets a list of the existing Amazon SNS subscriptions, optionally by
specifying a topic ARN.
       /// </summary>
       /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon SNS client object used
```

```
        /// to obtain the list of subscriptions.</param>
        /// <param name="topicArn">The optional ARN of a specific topic. Defaults to
 null.</param>
        /// <returns>A list containing information about each subscription.</
returns>
        public static async Task<List<Subscription>>
 GetSubscriptionsListAsync(IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client, string topicArn
 = null)
        {
            var results = new List<Subscription>();

            if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(topicArn))
            {
                var paginateByTopic = client.Paginators.ListSubscriptionsByTopic(
                    new ListSubscriptionsByTopicRequest()
                    {
                        TopicArn = topicArn,
                    });

                // Get the entire list using the paginator.
                await foreach (var subscription in paginateByTopic.Subscriptions)
                {
                    results.Add(subscription);
                }
            }
            else
            {
                var paginateAllSubscriptions =
 client.Paginators.ListSubscriptions(new ListSubscriptionsRequest());

                // Get the entire list using the paginator.
                await foreach (var subscription in
 paginateAllSubscriptions.Subscriptions)
                {
                    results.Add(subscription);
                }
            }

            return results;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Display a list of Amazon SNS subscription information.
        /// </summary>
```

```
        /// <param name="subscriptionList">A list containing details for existing
        /// Amazon SNS subscriptions.</param>
        public static void DisplaySubscriptionList(List<Subscription>
subscriptionList)
        {
            foreach (var subscription in subscriptionList)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Owner: {subscription.Owner}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Subscription ARN:
{subscription.SubscriptionArn}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Topic ARN: {subscription.TopicArn}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Endpoint: {subscription.Endpoint}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Protocol: {subscription.Protocol}");
                Console.WriteLine();
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListSubscriptions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListTopics`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTopics`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Lists the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
```

```
    /// topics for the current account.
    /// </summary>
    public class ListSNSTopics
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client = new
AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();

            await GetTopicListAsync(client);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves the list of Amazon SNS topics in groups of up to 100
        /// topics.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon SNS client object used
        /// to retrieve the list of topics.</param>
        public static async Task GetTopicListAsync(IAmazonSimpleNotificationService
client)
        {
            // If there are more than 100 Amazon SNS topics, the call to
            // ListTopicsAsync will return a value to pass to the
            // method to retrieve the next 100 (or less) topics.
            string nextToken = string.Empty;

            do
            {
                var response = await client.ListTopicsAsync(nextToken);
                DisplayTopicsList(response.Topics);
                nextToken = response.NextToken;
            }
            while (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(nextToken));
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays the list of Amazon SNS Topic ARNs.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="topicList">The list of Topic ARNs.</param>
        public static void DisplayTopicsList(List<Topic> topicList)
        {
            foreach (var topic in topicList)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{topic.TopicArn}");
```

```
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`Publish`

The following code example shows how to use `Publish`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Publish a message to a topic.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example publishes a message to an Amazon Simple Notification
    /// Service (Amazon SNS) topic.
    /// </summary>
    public class PublishToSNSTopic
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string topicArn = "arn:aws:sns:us-east-2:000000000000:ExampleSNSTopic";
            string messageText = "This is an example message to publish to the
ExampleSNSTopic.";

            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client = new
AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();
```

```
            await PublishToTopicAsync(client, topicArn, messageText);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Publishes a message to an Amazon SNS topic.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized client object used to publish
        /// to the Amazon SNS topic.</param>
        /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
        /// <param name="messageText">The text of the message.</param>
        public static async Task PublishToTopicAsync(
            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client,
            string topicArn,
            string messageText)
        {
            var request = new PublishRequest
            {
                TopicArn = topicArn,
                Message = messageText,
            };

            var response = await client.PublishAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully published message ID:
{response.MessageId}");
        }
    }
```

Publish a message to a topic with group, duplication, and attribute options.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Publish messages using user settings.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task PublishMessages()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Now we can publish messages.");

        var keepSendingMessages = true;
        string? deduplicationId = null;
        string? toneAttribute = null;
```

```
        while (keepSendingMessages)
        {
            Console.WriteLine();
            var message = GetUserResponse("Enter a message to publish.", "This is a
sample message");

            if (_useFifoTopic)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Because you are using a FIFO topic, you must set
a message group ID." +
                                  "\r\nAll messages within the same group will be
received in the order " +
                                  "they were published.");

                Console.WriteLine();
                var messageGroupId = GetUserResponse("Enter a message group ID for
this message:", "1");

                if (!_useContentBasedDeduplication)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Because you are not using content-based
deduplication, " +
                                      "you must enter a deduplication ID.");

                    Console.WriteLine("Enter a deduplication ID for this message.");
                    deduplicationId = GetUserResponse("Enter a deduplication ID for
this message.", "1");
                }

                if (GetYesNoResponse("Add an attribute to this message?"))
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Enter a number for an attribute.");
                    for (int i = 0; i < _tones.Length; i++)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {_tones[i]}");
                    }

                    var selection = GetUserResponse("", "1");
                    int.TryParse(selection, out var selectionNumber);

                    if (selectionNumber > 0 && selectionNumber < _tones.Length)
                    {
                        toneAttribute = _tones[selectionNumber - 1];
                    }
```

```
                }

                var messageID = await SnsWrapper.PublishToTopicWithAttribute(
                    _topicArn, message, "tone", toneAttribute, deduplicationId,
 messageGroupId);

                Console.WriteLine($"Message published with id {messageID}.");
            }

            keepSendingMessages = GetYesNoResponse("Send another message?", false);
        }
    }
```

Apply the user's selections to the publish action.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Publish a message to a topic with an attribute and optional deduplication
 and group IDs.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="message">The message to publish.</param>
    /// <param name="attributeName">The optional attribute for the message.</param>
    /// <param name="attributeValue">The optional attribute value for the message.</
param>
    /// <param name="deduplicationId">The optional deduplication ID for the
 message.</param>
    /// <param name="groupId">The optional group ID for the message.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the message published.</returns>
    public async Task<string> PublishToTopicWithAttribute(
        string topicArn,
        string message,
        string? attributeName = null,
        string? attributeValue = null,
        string? deduplicationId = null,
        string? groupId = null)
    {
        var publishRequest = new PublishRequest()
        {
            TopicArn = topicArn,
            Message = message,
            MessageDeduplicationId = deduplicationId,
            MessageGroupId = groupId
```

```
        };

        if (attributeValue != null)
        {
            // Add the string attribute if it exists.
            publishRequest.MessageAttributes =
                new Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue>
                {
                    { attributeName!, new MessageAttributeValue() { StringValue =
attributeValue, DataType = "String"} }
                };
        }

        var publishResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.PublishAsync(publishRequest);
        return publishResponse.MessageId;
    }
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`Subscribe`

The following code example shows how to use `Subscribe`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe an email address to a topic.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Creates a new subscription to a topic.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon SNS client object, used
        /// to create an Amazon SNS subscription.</param>
        /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic to subscribe to.</param>
```

```
        /// <returns>A SubscribeResponse object which includes the subscription
        /// ARN for the new subscription.</returns>
        public static async Task<SubscribeResponse> TopicSubscribeAsync(
            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client,
            string topicArn)
        {
            SubscribeRequest request = new SubscribeRequest()
            {
                TopicArn = topicArn,
                ReturnSubscriptionArn = true,
                Protocol = "email",
                Endpoint = "recipient@example.com",
            };

            var response = await client.SubscribeAsync(request);

            return response;
        }
```

Subscribe a queue to a topic with optional filters.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Subscribe a queue to a topic with optional filters.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoTopic">The optional filtering policy for the
subscription.</param>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new subscription.</returns>
    public async Task<string> SubscribeTopicWithFilter(string topicArn, string?
filterPolicy, string queueArn)
    {
        var subscribeRequest = new SubscribeRequest()
        {
            TopicArn = topicArn,
            Protocol = "sqs",
            Endpoint = queueArn
        };

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(filterPolicy))
        {
```

```
            subscribeRequest.Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
{ { "FilterPolicy", filterPolicy } };
        }

        var subscribeResponse = await
_amazonSNSClient.SubscribeAsync(subscribeRequest);
        return subscribeResponse.SubscriptionArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`Unsubscribe`

The following code example shows how to use `Unsubscribe`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Unsubscribe from a topic by a subscription ARN.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Unsubscribe from a topic by a subscription ARN.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="subscriptionArn">The ARN of the subscription.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> UnsubscribeByArn(string subscriptionArn)
    {
        var unsubscribeResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.UnsubscribeAsync(
            new UnsubscribeRequest()
            {
                SubscriptionArn = subscriptionArn
            });
        return unsubscribeResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see Unsubscribe in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Building an Amazon SNS application

The following code example shows how to create an application that has subscription and publish functionality and translates messages.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the Amazon Simple Notification Service .NET API to create a web application that has subscription and publish functionality. In addition, this example application also translates messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon SNS
- Amazon Translate

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB

- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Publish an SMS text message

The following code example shows how to publish SMS messages using Amazon SNS.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace SNSMessageExample
{
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

    public class SNSMessage
    {
        private AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient snsClient;

        /// <summary>
        /// Initializes a new instance of the <see cref="SNSMessage"/> class.
        /// Constructs a new SNSMessage object initializing the Amazon Simple
        /// Notification Service (Amazon SNS) client using the supplied
        /// Region endpoint.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="regionEndpoint">The Amazon Region endpoint to use in
        /// sending test messages with this object.</param>
        public SNSMessage(RegionEndpoint regionEndpoint)
        {
            snsClient = new AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient(regionEndpoint);
```

```
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Sends the SMS message passed in the text parameter to the phone number
        /// in phoneNum.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="phoneNum">The ten-digit phone number to which the text
        /// message will be sent.</param>
        /// <param name="text">The text of the message to send.</param>
        /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
        public async Task SendTextMessageAsync(string phoneNum, string text)
        {
            if (string.IsNullOrEmpty(phoneNum) || string.IsNullOrEmpty(text))
            {
                return;
            }

            // Now actually send the message.
            var request = new PublishRequest
            {
                Message = text,
                PhoneNumber = phoneNum,
            };

            try
            {
                var response = await snsClient.PublishAsync(request);
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error sending message: {ex}");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Publish messages to queues

The following code example shows how to:

- Create topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).
- Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
- Publish messages to the topic.
- Poll the queues for messages received.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
/// <summary>
/// Console application to run a feature scenario for topics and queues.
/// </summary>
public static class TopicsAndQueues
{
    private static bool _useFifoTopic = false;
    private static bool _useContentBasedDeduplication = false;
    private static string _topicName = null!;
    private static string _topicArn = null!;

    private static readonly int _queueCount = 2;
    private static readonly string[] _queueUrls = new string[_queueCount];
    private static readonly string[] _subscriptionArns = new string[_queueCount];
    private static readonly string[] _tones = { "cheerful", "funny", "serious",
 "sincere" };
    public static SNSWrapper SnsWrapper { get; set; } = null!;
    public static SQSWrapper SqsWrapper { get; set; } = null!;
    public static bool UseConsole { get; set; } = true;
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon EventBridge.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
```

```
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonSQS>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleNotificationService>()
                    .AddTransient<SNSWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<SQSWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);
        PrintDescription();

        await RunScenario();

    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        SnsWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SNSWrapper>();
        SqsWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SQSWrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Run the scenario for working with topics and queues.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> RunScenario()
    {
        try
        {
            await SetupTopic();

            await SetupQueues();

            await PublishMessages();

            foreach (var queueUrl in _queueUrls)
            {
                var messages = await PollForMessages(queueUrl);
                if (messages.Any())
```

```
                {
                    await DeleteMessages(queueUrl, messages);
                }
            }
            await CleanupResources();

            Console.WriteLine("Messaging with topics and queues scenario is
complete.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            await CleanupResources();
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Print a description for the tasks in the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static void PrintDescription()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Welcome to messaging with topics and queues.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"In this scenario, you will create an SNS topic and
subscribe {_queueCount} SQS queues to the topic." +
                          $"\r\nYou can select from several options for configuring
the topic and the subscriptions for the 2 queues." +
                          $"\r\nYou can then post to the topic and see the results
in the queues.\r\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the SNS topic to be used with the queues.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> SetupTopic()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-
Out)." +
                          $"\r\nFIFO topics deliver messages in order and support
 deduplication and message filtering." +
                          $"\r\nYou can then post to the topic and see the results
 in the queues.\r\n");

        _useFifoTopic = GetYesNoResponse("Would you like to work with FIFO
 topics?");

        if (_useFifoTopic)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            _topicName = GetUserResponse("Enter a name for your SNS topic: ",
 "example-topic");
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must be appended to
 the topic name.\r\n");

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"Because you have chosen a FIFO topic, deduplication
 is supported." +
                              $"\r\nDeduplication IDs are either set in the message
 or automatically generated " +
                              $"\r\nfrom content using a hash function.\r\n" +
                              $"\r\nIf a message is successfully published to an SNS
 FIFO topic, any message " +
                              $"\r\npublished and determined to have the same
 deduplication ID, " +
                              $"\r\nwithin the five-minute deduplication interval,
 is accepted but not delivered.\r\n" +
                              $"\r\nFor more information about deduplication, " +
                              $"\r\nsee https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/
fifo-message-dedup.html.");

            _useContentBasedDeduplication = GetYesNoResponse("Use content-based
 deduplication instead of entering a deduplication ID?");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
```

```
        _topicArn = await SnsWrapper.CreateTopicWithName(_topicName, _useFifoTopic,
_useContentBasedDeduplication);

        Console.WriteLine($"Your new topic with the name {_topicName}" +
                          $"\r\nand Amazon Resource Name (ARN) {_topicArn}" +
                          $"\r\nhas been created.\r\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return _topicArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the queues.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task SetupQueues()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Now you will create {_queueCount} Amazon Simple Queue
Service (Amazon SQS) queues to subscribe to the topic.");

        // Repeat this section for each queue.
        for (int i = 0; i < _queueCount; i++)
        {
            var queueName = GetUserResponse("Enter a name for an Amazon SQS queue:
", $"example-queue-{i}");
            if (_useFifoTopic)
            {
                // Only explain this once.
                if (i == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        "Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must be
appended to the queue name.");
                }

                var queueUrl = await SqsWrapper.CreateQueueWithName(queueName,
_useFifoTopic);

                _queueUrls[i] = queueUrl;

                Console.WriteLine($"Your new queue with the name {queueName}" +
                                  $"\r\nand queue URL {queueUrl}" +
                                  $"\r\nhas been created.\r\n");
```

```
                if (i == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"The queue URL is used to retrieve the queue ARN,\r\n" +
                        $"which is used to create a subscription.");
                    Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
                }

                var queueArn = await SqsWrapper.GetQueueArnByUrl(queueUrl);

                if (i == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"An AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy must be
attached to an SQS queue, enabling it to receive\r\n" +
                        $"messages from an SNS topic");
                }

                await SqsWrapper.SetQueuePolicyForTopic(queueArn, _topicArn,
queueUrl);

                await SetupFilters(i, queueArn, queueName);
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up filters with user options for a queue.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueCount">The number of this queue.</param>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="queueName">The name of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public static async Task SetupFilters(int queueCount, string queueArn, string
queueName)
    {
        if (_useFifoTopic)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            // Only explain this once.
            if (queueCount == 0)
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    "Subscriptions to a FIFO topic can have filters." +
                    "If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the
 filtered messages " +
                    "will be received in the queue.");

                Console.WriteLine(
                    "For information about message filtering, " +
                    "see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-message-
filtering.html");

                Console.WriteLine(
                    "For this example, you can filter messages by a" +
                    "TONE attribute.");
            }

            var useFilter = GetYesNoResponse($"Filter messages for {queueName}'s
 subscription to the topic?");

            string? filterPolicy = null;
            if (useFilter)
            {
                filterPolicy = CreateFilterPolicy();
            }
            var subscriptionArn = await
 SnsWrapper.SubscribeTopicWithFilter(_topicArn, filterPolicy,
                queueArn);
            _subscriptionArns[queueCount] = subscriptionArn;

            Console.WriteLine(
                $"The queue {queueName} has been subscribed to the topic
 {_topicName} " +
                $"with the subscription ARN {subscriptionArn}");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Use user input to create a filter policy for a subscription.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The serialized filter policy.</returns>
    public static string CreateFilterPolicy()
    {
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"You can filter messages by one or more of the following" +
            $"TONE attributes.");

        List<string> filterSelections = new List<string>();

        var selectionNumber = 0;
        do
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"Enter a number to add a TONE filter, or enter 0 to stop adding
 filters.");
            for (int i = 0; i < _tones.Length; i++)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {_tones[i]}");
            }

            var selection = GetUserResponse("", filterSelections.Any() ? "0" : "1");
            int.TryParse(selection, out selectionNumber);
            if (selectionNumber > 0 && !
filterSelections.Contains(_tones[selectionNumber - 1]))
            {
                filterSelections.Add(_tones[selectionNumber - 1]);
            }
        } while (selectionNumber != 0);

        var filters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>
        {
            { "tone", filterSelections }
        };
        string filterPolicy = JsonSerializer.Serialize(filters);
        return filterPolicy;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Publish messages using user settings.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task PublishMessages()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Now we can publish messages.");

        var keepSendingMessages = true;
```

```
        string? deduplicationId = null;
        string? toneAttribute = null;
        while (keepSendingMessages)
        {
            Console.WriteLine();
            var message = GetUserResponse("Enter a message to publish.", "This is a
sample message");

            if (_useFifoTopic)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Because you are using a FIFO topic, you must set
a message group ID." +
                                  "\r\nAll messages within the same group will be
received in the order " +
                                  "they were published.");

                Console.WriteLine();
                var messageGroupId = GetUserResponse("Enter a message group ID for
this message:", "1");

                if (!_useContentBasedDeduplication)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Because you are not using content-based
deduplication, " +
                                      "you must enter a deduplication ID.");

                    Console.WriteLine("Enter a deduplication ID for this message.");
                    deduplicationId = GetUserResponse("Enter a deduplication ID for
this message.", "1");
                }

                if (GetYesNoResponse("Add an attribute to this message?"))
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Enter a number for an attribute.");
                    for (int i = 0; i < _tones.Length; i++)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {_tones[i]}");
                    }

                    var selection = GetUserResponse("", "1");
                    int.TryParse(selection, out var selectionNumber);

                    if (selectionNumber > 0 && selectionNumber < _tones.Length)
                    {
```

```
                        toneAttribute = _tones[selectionNumber - 1];
                    }
                }

                var messageID = await SnsWrapper.PublishToTopicWithAttribute(
                    _topicArn, message, "tone", toneAttribute, deduplicationId,
messageGroupId);

                Console.WriteLine($"Message published with id {messageID}.");
            }

            keepSendingMessages = GetYesNoResponse("Send another message?", false);
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Poll for the published messages to see the results of the user's choices.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<List<Message>> PollForMessages(string queueUrl)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Now the SQS queue at {queueUrl} will be polled to
retrieve the messages." +
                          "\r\nPress any key to continue.");
        if (UseConsole)
        {
            Console.ReadLine();
        }

        var moreMessages = true;
        var messages = new List<Message>();
        while (moreMessages)
        {
            var newMessages = await SqsWrapper.ReceiveMessagesByUrl(queueUrl, 10);

            moreMessages = newMessages.Any();
            if (moreMessages)
            {
                messages.AddRange(newMessages);
            }
        }
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"{messages.Count} message(s) were received by the queue
at {queueUrl}.");

        foreach (var message in messages)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\tMessage:" +
                              $"\n\t{message.Body}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return messages;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the message using handles in a batch.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task DeleteMessages(string queueUrl, List<Message> messages)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Now we can delete the messages in this queue in a
batch.");
        await SqsWrapper.DeleteMessageBatchByUrl(queueUrl, messages);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CleanupResources()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Clean up resources.");

        try
        {
            foreach (var queueUrl in _queueUrls)
            {
                if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(queueUrl))
                {
                    var deleteQueue =
                        GetYesNoResponse($"Delete queue with url {queueUrl}?");
                    if (deleteQueue)
```

```
                    {
                        await SqsWrapper.DeleteQueueByUrl(queueUrl);
                    }
                }
            }

            foreach (var subscriptionArn in _subscriptionArns)
            {
                if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(subscriptionArn))
                {
                    await SnsWrapper.UnsubscribeByArn(subscriptionArn);
                }
            }

            var deleteTopic = GetYesNoResponse($"Delete topic {_topicName}?");
            if (deleteTopic)
            {
                await SnsWrapper.DeleteTopicByArn(_topicArn);
            }
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Unable to clean up resources. Here's why:
{ex.Message}.");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <param name="defaultAnswer">Optional default answer to use.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question, bool defaultAnswer = true)
    {
        if (UseConsole)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(question);
            var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
            var response = ynResponse != null &&
                           ynResponse.Equals("y",
                               StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
```

```
            return response;
        }
        // If not using the console, use the default.
        return defaultAnswer;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a string response from the user through the console.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <param name="defaultAnswer">Optional default answer to use.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static string GetUserResponse(string question, string defaultAnswer)
    {
        if (UseConsole)
        {
            var response = "";
            while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(response))
            {
                Console.WriteLine(question);
                response = Console.ReadLine();
            }
            return response;
        }
        // If not using the console, use the default.
        return defaultAnswer;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Amazon SQS operations.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper for Amazon Simple Queue Service (SQS) operations.
/// </summary>
public class SQSWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSQS _amazonSQSClient;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Amazon SQS wrapper.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="amazonSQS">The injected Amazon SQS client.</param>
    public SQSWrapper(IAmazonSQS amazonSQS)
    {
        _amazonSQSClient = amazonSQS;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a queue with a specific name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueName">The name for the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoQueue">True to use a FIFO queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The url for the queue.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateQueueWithName(string queueName, bool
useFifoQueue)
    {
        int maxMessage = 256 * 1024;
        var queueAttributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
        {
            {
                QueueAttributeName.MaximumMessageSize,
                maxMessage.ToString()
            }
        };

        var createQueueRequest = new CreateQueueRequest()
        {
            QueueName = queueName,
            Attributes = queueAttributes
        };

        if (useFifoQueue)
        {
            // Update the name if it is not correct for a FIFO queue.
            if (!queueName.EndsWith(".fifo"))
            {
                createQueueRequest.QueueName = queueName + ".fifo";
            }

            // Add an attribute for a FIFO queue.
            createQueueRequest.Attributes.Add(
                QueueAttributeName.FifoQueue, "true");
        }

        var createResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.CreateQueueAsync(
```

```
            new CreateQueueRequest()
            {
                QueueName = queueName
            });
        return createResponse.QueueUrl;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the ARN for a queue from its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the queue.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetQueueArnByUrl(string queueUrl)
    {
        var getAttributesRequest = new GetQueueAttributesRequest()
        {
            QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            AttributeNames = new List<string>() { QueueAttributeName.QueueArn }
        };

        var getAttributesResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.GetQueueAttributesAsync(
            getAttributesRequest);

        return getAttributesResponse.QueueARN;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set the policy attribute of a queue for a topic.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url for the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> SetQueuePolicyForTopic(string queueArn, string topicArn,
string queueUrl)
    {
        var queuePolicy = "{" +
                                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                     "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                     "\"Principal\": {" +
                                         $"\"Service\": " +
                                             "\"sns.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                            "}," +
```

```
                                        "\"Action\": \"sqs:SendMessage\"," +
                                        $"\"Resource\": \"{queueArn}\"," +
                                         "\"Condition\": {" +
                                              "\"ArnEquals\": {" +
                                                   $"\"aws:SourceArn\": \"{topicArn}\""
 +
                                                    "}" +
                                            "}" +
                                   "}]" +
                              "}";
        var attributesResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.SetQueueAttributesAsync(
            new SetQueueAttributesRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>() { { "Policy",
 queuePolicy } }
            });
        return attributesResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Receive messages from a queue by its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of messages.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Message>> ReceiveMessagesByUrl(string queueUrl, int
 maxMessages)
    {
        // Setting WaitTimeSeconds to non-zero enables long polling.
        // For information about long polling, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSSimpleQueueService/latest/
SQSDeveloperGuide/sqs-short-and-long-polling.html
        var messageResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.ReceiveMessageAsync(
            new ReceiveMessageRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                MaxNumberOfMessages = maxMessages,
                WaitTimeSeconds = 1
            });
        return messageResponse.Messages;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a batch of messages from a queue by its url.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteMessageBatchByUrl(string queueUrl, List<Message>
 messages)
    {
        var deleteRequest = new DeleteMessageBatchRequest()
        {
            QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            Entries = new List<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry>()
        };
        foreach (var message in messages)
        {
            deleteRequest.Entries.Add(new DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry()
            {
                ReceiptHandle = message.ReceiptHandle,
                Id = message.MessageId
            });
        }

        var deleteResponse = await
 _amazonSQSClient.DeleteMessageBatchAsync(deleteRequest);

        return deleteResponse.Failed.Any();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a queue by its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteQueueByUrl(string queueUrl)
    {
        var deleteResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.DeleteQueueAsync(
            new DeleteQueueRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl
            });
        return deleteResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Amazon SNS operations.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper for Amazon Simple Notification Service (SNS) operations.
/// </summary>
public class SNSWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleNotificationService _amazonSNSClient;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Amazon SNS wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSQS">The injected Amazon SNS client.</param>
    public SNSWrapper(IAmazonSimpleNotificationService amazonSNS)
    {
        _amazonSNSClient = amazonSNS;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new topic with a name and specific FIFO and de-duplication
 attributes.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicName">The name for the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoTopic">True to use a FIFO topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useContentBasedDeduplication">True to use content-based de-
duplication.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new topic.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateTopicWithName(string topicName, bool
 useFifoTopic, bool useContentBasedDeduplication)
    {
        var createTopicRequest = new CreateTopicRequest()
        {
            Name = topicName,
        };

        if (useFifoTopic)
        {
            // Update the name if it is not correct for a FIFO topic.
            if (!topicName.EndsWith(".fifo"))
            {
                createTopicRequest.Name = topicName + ".fifo";
            }
```

```
            // Add the attributes from the method parameters.
            createTopicRequest.Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                { "FifoTopic", "true" }
            };
            if (useContentBasedDeduplication)
            {
                createTopicRequest.Attributes.Add("ContentBasedDeduplication",
"true");
            }
        }

        var createResponse = await
_amazonSNSClient.CreateTopicAsync(createTopicRequest);
        return createResponse.TopicArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Subscribe a queue to a topic with optional filters.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoTopic">The optional filtering policy for the
subscription.</param>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new subscription.</returns>
    public async Task<string> SubscribeTopicWithFilter(string topicArn, string?
filterPolicy, string queueArn)
    {
        var subscribeRequest = new SubscribeRequest()
        {
            TopicArn = topicArn,
            Protocol = "sqs",
            Endpoint = queueArn
        };

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(filterPolicy))
        {
            subscribeRequest.Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
{ { "FilterPolicy", filterPolicy } };
        }

        var subscribeResponse = await
_amazonSNSClient.SubscribeAsync(subscribeRequest);
        return subscribeResponse.SubscriptionArn;
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Publish a message to a topic with an attribute and optional deduplication
 and group IDs.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="message">The message to publish.</param>
    /// <param name="attributeName">The optional attribute for the message.</param>
    /// <param name="attributeValue">The optional attribute value for the message.</
param>
    /// <param name="deduplicationId">The optional deduplication ID for the
 message.</param>
    /// <param name="groupId">The optional group ID for the message.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the message published.</returns>
    public async Task<string> PublishToTopicWithAttribute(
        string topicArn,
        string message,
        string? attributeName = null,
        string? attributeValue = null,
        string? deduplicationId = null,
        string? groupId = null)
    {
        var publishRequest = new PublishRequest()
        {
            TopicArn = topicArn,
            Message = message,
            MessageDeduplicationId = deduplicationId,
            MessageGroupId = groupId
        };

        if (attributeValue != null)
        {
            // Add the string attribute if it exists.
            publishRequest.MessageAttributes =
                new Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue>
                {
                    { attributeName!, new MessageAttributeValue() { StringValue =
 attributeValue, DataType = "String"} }
                };
        }

        var publishResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.PublishAsync(publishRequest);
        return publishResponse.MessageId;
```

```
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Unsubscribe from a topic by a subscription ARN.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="subscriptionArn">The ARN of the subscription.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> UnsubscribeByArn(string subscriptionArn)
    {
        var unsubscribeResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.UnsubscribeAsync(
            new UnsubscribeRequest()
            {
                SubscriptionArn = subscriptionArn
            });
        return unsubscribeResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a topic by its topic ARN.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTopicByArn(string topicArn)
    {
        var deleteResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.DeleteTopicAsync(
            new DeleteTopicRequest()
            {
                TopicArn = topicArn
            });
        return deleteResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic

- GetQueueAttributes
- Publish
- ReceiveMessage
- SetQueueAttributes
- Subscribe
- Unsubscribe

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SNS topic. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.SNSEvents;


// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace SnsIntegration;
```

```
public class Function
{
    public async Task FunctionHandler(SNSEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            await ProcessRecordAsync(record, context);
        }
        context.Logger.LogInformation("done");
    }

    private async Task ProcessRecordAsync(SNSEvent.SNSRecord record, ILambdaContext
 context)
    {
        try
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Processed record {record.Sns.Message}");

            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
            await Task.CompletedTask;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            //You can use Dead Letter Queue to handle failures. By configuring a
 Lambda DLQ.
            context.Logger.LogError($"An error occurred");
            throw;
        }
    }
}
```

Amazon SQS examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon SQS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Get started
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Get started

Hello Amazon SQS

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon SQS.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.SQS;
using Amazon.SQS.Model;

namespace SQSActions;

public static class HelloSQS
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var sqsClient = new AmazonSQSClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon SQS! Following are some of your queues:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
```

```
        // Let's get the first five queues.
        var response = await sqsClient.ListQueuesAsync(
            new ListQueuesRequest()
            {
                MaxResults = 5
            });

        foreach (var queue in response.QueueUrls)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tQueue Url: {queue}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Actions

`CreateQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateQueue`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a queue with a specific name.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a queue with a specific name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueName">The name for the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoQueue">True to use a FIFO queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The url for the queue.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateQueueWithName(string queueName, bool
 useFifoQueue)
```

```
    {
        int maxMessage = 256 * 1024;
        var queueAttributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
        {
            {
                QueueAttributeName.MaximumMessageSize,
                maxMessage.ToString()
            }
        };

        var createQueueRequest = new CreateQueueRequest()
        {
            QueueName = queueName,
            Attributes = queueAttributes
        };

        if (useFifoQueue)
        {
            // Update the name if it is not correct for a FIFO queue.
            if (!queueName.EndsWith(".fifo"))
            {
                createQueueRequest.QueueName = queueName + ".fifo";
            }

            // Add an attribute for a FIFO queue.
            createQueueRequest.Attributes.Add(
                QueueAttributeName.FifoQueue, "true");
        }

        var createResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.CreateQueueAsync(
            new CreateQueueRequest()
            {
                QueueName = queueName
            });
        return createResponse.QueueUrl;
    }
```

Create an Amazon SQS queue and send a message to it.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
```

```
    using Amazon;
    using Amazon.SQS;
    using Amazon.SQS.Model;

    public class CreateSendExample
    {
        // Specify your AWS Region (an example Region is shown).
        private static readonly string QueueName = "Example_Queue";
        private static readonly RegionEndpoint ServiceRegion =
 RegionEndpoint.USWest2;
        private static IAmazonSQS client;

        public static async Task Main()
        {
            client = new AmazonSQSClient(ServiceRegion);
            var createQueueResponse = await CreateQueue(client, QueueName);

            string queueUrl = createQueueResponse.QueueUrl;

            Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue> messageAttributes = new
 Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue>
            {
                { "Title",   new MessageAttributeValue { DataType = "String",
 StringValue = "The Whistler" } },
                { "Author",  new MessageAttributeValue { DataType = "String",
 StringValue = "John Grisham" } },
                { "WeeksOn", new MessageAttributeValue { DataType = "Number",
 StringValue = "6" } },
            };

            string messageBody = "Information about current NY Times fiction
 bestseller for week of 12/11/2016.";

            var sendMsgResponse = await SendMessage(client, queueUrl, messageBody,
 messageAttributes);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates a new Amazon SQS queue using the queue name passed to it
        /// in queueName.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An SQS client object used to send the message.</
param>
        /// <param name="queueName">A string representing the name of the queue
```

```
        /// to create.</param>
        /// <returns>A CreateQueueResponse that contains information about the
        /// newly created queue.</returns>
        public static async Task<CreateQueueResponse> CreateQueue(IAmazonSQS client,
 string queueName)
        {
            var request = new CreateQueueRequest
            {
                QueueName = queueName,
                Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
                {
                    { "DelaySeconds", "60" },
                    { "MessageRetentionPeriod", "86400" },
                },
            };

            var response = await client.CreateQueueAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"Created a queue with URL : {response.QueueUrl}");

            return response;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Sends a message to an SQS queue.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An SQS client object used to send the message.</
param>
        /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue to which to send the
        /// message.</param>
        /// <param name="messageBody">A string representing the body of the
        /// message to be sent to the queue.</param>
        /// <param name="messageAttributes">Attributes for the message to be
        /// sent to the queue.</param>
        /// <returns>A SendMessageResponse object that contains information
        /// about the message that was sent.</returns>
        public static async Task<SendMessageResponse> SendMessage(
            IAmazonSQS client,
            string queueUrl,
            string messageBody,
            Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue> messageAttributes)
        {
            var sendMessageRequest = new SendMessageRequest
            {
                DelaySeconds = 10,
```

```
                MessageAttributes = messageAttributes,
                MessageBody = messageBody,
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            };

            var response = await client.SendMessageAsync(sendMessageRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"Sent a message with id : {response.MessageId}");

            return response;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMessage`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Receive a message from an Amazon SQS queue and then delete the message.

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // If the AWS Region you want to use is different from
            // the AWS Region defined for the default user, supply
            // the specify your AWS Region to the client constructor.
            var client = new AmazonSQSClient();
            string queueName = "Example_Queue";

            var queueUrl = await GetQueueUrl(client, queueName);
            Console.WriteLine($"The SQS queue's URL is {queueUrl}");

            var response = await ReceiveAndDeleteMessage(client, queueUrl);
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Message: {response.Messages[0]}");
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve the queue URL for the queue named in the queueName
        /// property using the client object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The Amazon SQS client used to retrieve the
        /// queue URL.</param>
        /// <param name="queueName">A string representing  name of the queue
        /// for which to retrieve the URL.</param>
        /// <returns>The URL of the queue.</returns>
        public static async Task<string> GetQueueUrl(IAmazonSQS client, string
queueName)
        {
            var request = new GetQueueUrlRequest
            {
                QueueName = queueName,
            };

            GetQueueUrlResponse response = await client.GetQueueUrlAsync(request);
            return response.QueueUrl;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves the message from the quque at the URL passed in the
        /// queueURL parameters using the client.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The SQS client used to retrieve a message.</param>
        /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue from which to retrieve
        /// a message.</param>
        /// <returns>The response from the call to ReceiveMessageAsync.</returns>
        public static async Task<ReceiveMessageResponse>
ReceiveAndDeleteMessage(IAmazonSQS client, string queueUrl)
        {
            // Receive a single message from the queue.
            var receiveMessageRequest = new ReceiveMessageRequest
            {
                AttributeNames = { "SentTimestamp" },
                MaxNumberOfMessages = 1,
                MessageAttributeNames = { "All" },
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                VisibilityTimeout = 0,
```

```
                WaitTimeSeconds = 0,
            };

            var receiveMessageResponse = await
client.ReceiveMessageAsync(receiveMessageRequest);

            // Delete the received message from the queue.
            var deleteMessageRequest = new DeleteMessageRequest
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                ReceiptHandle = receiveMessageResponse.Messages[0].ReceiptHandle,
            };

            await client.DeleteMessageAsync(deleteMessageRequest);

            return receiveMessageResponse;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessage in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteMessageBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMessageBatch`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a batch of messages from a queue by its url.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteMessageBatchByUrl(string queueUrl, List<Message>
messages)
```

```
    {
        var deleteRequest = new DeleteMessageBatchRequest()
        {
            QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            Entries = new List<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry>()
        };
        foreach (var message in messages)
        {
            deleteRequest.Entries.Add(new DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry()
            {
                ReceiptHandle = message.ReceiptHandle,
                Id = message.MessageId
            });
        }

        var deleteResponse = await
_amazonSQSClient.DeleteMessageBatchAsync(deleteRequest);

        return deleteResponse.Failed.Any();
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessageBatch in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteQueue`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete a queue by using its URL.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a queue by its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteQueueByUrl(string queueUrl)
    {
        var deleteResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.DeleteQueueAsync(
            new DeleteQueueRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl
            });
        return deleteResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetQueueAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetQueueAttributes`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the ARN for a queue from its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the queue.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetQueueArnByUrl(string queueUrl)
    {
        var getAttributesRequest = new GetQueueAttributesRequest()
        {
            QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            AttributeNames = new List<string>() { QueueAttributeName.QueueArn }
        };

        var getAttributesResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.GetQueueAttributesAsync(
            getAttributesRequest);
```

```
        return getAttributesResponse.QueueARN;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetQueueUrl`

The following code example shows how to use `GetQueueUrl`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.SQS;
    using Amazon.SQS.Model;

    public class GetQueueUrl
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// Initializes the Amazon SQS client object and then calls the
        /// GetQueueUrlAsync method to retrieve the URL of an Amazon SQS
        /// queue.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // If the Amazon SQS message queue is not in the same AWS Region as your
            // default user, you need to provide the AWS Region as a parameter to
the
            // client constructor.
            var client = new AmazonSQSClient();

            string queueName = "New-Example-Queue";

            try
```

```
            {
                var response = await client.GetQueueUrlAsync(queueName);

                if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"The URL for {queueName} is:
{response.QueueUrl}");
                }
            }
            catch (QueueDoesNotExistException ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                Console.WriteLine($"The queue {queueName} was not found.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetQueueUrl in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ReceiveMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `ReceiveMessage`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Receive messages from a queue by using its URL.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Receive messages from a queue by its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of messages.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Message>> ReceiveMessagesByUrl(string queueUrl, int
maxMessages)
```

```
    {
        // Setting WaitTimeSeconds to non-zero enables long polling.
        // For information about long polling, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSSimpleQueueService/latest/
SQSDeveloperGuide/sqs-short-and-long-polling.html
        var messageResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.ReceiveMessageAsync(
            new ReceiveMessageRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                MaxNumberOfMessages = maxMessages,
                WaitTimeSeconds = 1
            });
        return messageResponse.Messages;
    }
```

Receive a message from an Amazon SQS queue, and then delete the message.

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // If the AWS Region you want to use is different from
            // the AWS Region defined for the default user, supply
            // the specify your AWS Region to the client constructor.
            var client = new AmazonSQSClient();
            string queueName = "Example_Queue";

            var queueUrl = await GetQueueUrl(client, queueName);
            Console.WriteLine($"The SQS queue's URL is {queueUrl}");

            var response = await ReceiveAndDeleteMessage(client, queueUrl);

            Console.WriteLine($"Message: {response.Messages[0]}");
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve the queue URL for the queue named in the queueName
        /// property using the client object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The Amazon SQS client used to retrieve the
        /// queue URL.</param>
        /// <param name="queueName">A string representing  name of the queue
        /// for which to retrieve the URL.</param>
        /// <returns>The URL of the queue.</returns>
```

```
        public static async Task<string> GetQueueUrl(IAmazonSQS client, string
queueName)
        {
            var request = new GetQueueUrlRequest
            {
                QueueName = queueName,
            };

            GetQueueUrlResponse response = await client.GetQueueUrlAsync(request);
            return response.QueueUrl;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves the message from the quque at the URL passed in the
        /// queueURL parameters using the client.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The SQS client used to retrieve a message.</param>
        /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue from which to retrieve
        /// a message.</param>
        /// <returns>The response from the call to ReceiveMessageAsync.</returns>
        public static async Task<ReceiveMessageResponse>
ReceiveAndDeleteMessage(IAmazonSQS client, string queueUrl)
        {
            // Receive a single message from the queue.
            var receiveMessageRequest = new ReceiveMessageRequest
            {
                AttributeNames = { "SentTimestamp" },
                MaxNumberOfMessages = 1,
                MessageAttributeNames = { "All" },
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                VisibilityTimeout = 0,
                WaitTimeSeconds = 0,
            };

            var receiveMessageResponse = await
client.ReceiveMessageAsync(receiveMessageRequest);

            // Delete the received message from the queue.
            var deleteMessageRequest = new DeleteMessageRequest
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                ReceiptHandle = receiveMessageResponse.Messages[0].ReceiptHandle,
            };
```

```
            await client.DeleteMessageAsync(deleteMessageRequest);

            return receiveMessageResponse;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

SendMessage

The following code example shows how to use SendMessage.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an Amazon SQS queue and send a message to it.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon;
    using Amazon.SQS;
    using Amazon.SQS.Model;

    public class CreateSendExample
    {
        // Specify your AWS Region (an example Region is shown).
        private static readonly string QueueName = "Example_Queue";
        private static readonly RegionEndpoint ServiceRegion =
RegionEndpoint.USWest2;
        private static IAmazonSQS client;

        public static async Task Main()
        {
            client = new AmazonSQSClient(ServiceRegion);
```

```
            var createQueueResponse = await CreateQueue(client, QueueName);

            string queueUrl = createQueueResponse.QueueUrl;

            Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue> messageAttributes = new
 Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue>
            {
                { "Title",   new MessageAttributeValue { DataType = "String",
 StringValue = "The Whistler" } },
                { "Author",  new MessageAttributeValue { DataType = "String",
 StringValue = "John Grisham" } },
                { "WeeksOn", new MessageAttributeValue { DataType = "Number",
 StringValue = "6" } },
            };

            string messageBody = "Information about current NY Times fiction
 bestseller for week of 12/11/2016.";

            var sendMsgResponse = await SendMessage(client, queueUrl, messageBody,
 messageAttributes);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates a new Amazon SQS queue using the queue name passed to it
        /// in queueName.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An SQS client object used to send the message.</
param>
        /// <param name="queueName">A string representing the name of the queue
        /// to create.</param>
        /// <returns>A CreateQueueResponse that contains information about the
        /// newly created queue.</returns>
        public static async Task<CreateQueueResponse> CreateQueue(IAmazonSQS client,
 string queueName)
        {
            var request = new CreateQueueRequest
            {
                QueueName = queueName,
                Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
                {
                    { "DelaySeconds", "60" },
                    { "MessageRetentionPeriod", "86400" },
                },
            };
```

```
            var response = await client.CreateQueueAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"Created a queue with URL : {response.QueueUrl}");

            return response;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Sends a message to an SQS queue.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An SQS client object used to send the message.</
param>
        /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue to which to send the
        /// message.</param>
        /// <param name="messageBody">A string representing the body of the
        /// message to be sent to the queue.</param>
        /// <param name="messageAttributes">Attributes for the message to be
        /// sent to the queue.</param>
        /// <returns>A SendMessageResponse object that contains information
        /// about the message that was sent.</returns>
        public static async Task<SendMessageResponse> SendMessage(
            IAmazonSQS client,
            string queueUrl,
            string messageBody,
            Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue> messageAttributes)
        {
            var sendMessageRequest = new SendMessageRequest
            {
                DelaySeconds = 10,
                MessageAttributes = messageAttributes,
                MessageBody = messageBody,
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            };

            var response = await client.SendMessageAsync(sendMessageRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"Sent a message with id : {response.MessageId}");

            return response;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`SetQueueAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `SetQueueAttributes`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set the policy attribute of a queue for a topic.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Set the policy attribute of a queue for a topic.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url for the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> SetQueuePolicyForTopic(string queueArn, string topicArn,
string queueUrl)
    {
        var queuePolicy = "{" +
                                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                     "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                     "\"Principal\": {" +
                                         $"\"Service\": " +
                                             "\"sns.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                            "}," +
                                     "\"Action\": \"sqs:SendMessage\"," +
                                     $"\"Resource\": \"{queueArn}\"," +
                                      "\"Condition\": {" +
                                           "\"ArnEquals\": {" +
                                                $"\"aws:SourceArn\": \"{topicArn}\""
+
                                            "}" +
                                        "}" +
                                "}]" +
                            "}";
        var attributesResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.SetQueueAttributesAsync(
```

```
            new SetQueueAttributesRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>() { { "Policy",
queuePolicy } }
            });
        return attributesResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see SetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Publish messages to queues

The following code example shows how to:

- Create topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).
- Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
- Publish messages to the topic.
- Poll the queues for messages received.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
/// <summary>
/// Console application to run a feature scenario for topics and queues.
/// </summary>
public static class TopicsAndQueues
{
    private static bool _useFifoTopic = false;
    private static bool _useContentBasedDeduplication = false;
```

```
    private static string _topicName = null!;
    private static string _topicArn = null!;

    private static readonly int _queueCount = 2;
    private static readonly string[] _queueUrls = new string[_queueCount];
    private static readonly string[] _subscriptionArns = new string[_queueCount];
    private static readonly string[] _tones = { "cheerful", "funny", "serious",
"sincere" };
    public static SNSWrapper SnsWrapper { get; set; } = null!;
    public static SQSWrapper SqsWrapper { get; set; } = null!;
    public static bool UseConsole { get; set; } = true;
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon EventBridge.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonSQS>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleNotificationService>()
                    .AddTransient<SNSWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<SQSWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);
        PrintDescription();

        await RunScenario();

    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        SnsWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SNSWrapper>();
        SqsWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SQSWrapper>();
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Run the scenario for working with topics and queues.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> RunScenario()
    {
        try
        {
            await SetupTopic();

            await SetupQueues();

            await PublishMessages();

            foreach (var queueUrl in _queueUrls)
            {
                var messages = await PollForMessages(queueUrl);
                if (messages.Any())
                {
                    await DeleteMessages(queueUrl, messages);
                }
            }
            await CleanupResources();

            Console.WriteLine("Messaging with topics and queues scenario is
complete.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            await CleanupResources();
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Print a description for the tasks in the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
```

```
    private static void PrintDescription()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Welcome to messaging with topics and queues.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"In this scenario, you will create an SNS topic and
 subscribe {_queueCount} SQS queues to the topic." +
                          $"\r\nYou can select from several options for configuring
 the topic and the subscriptions for the 2 queues." +
                          $"\r\nYou can then post to the topic and see the results
 in the queues.\r\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the SNS topic to be used with the queues.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> SetupTopic()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-
Out)." +
                          $"\r\nFIFO topics deliver messages in order and support
 deduplication and message filtering." +
                          $"\r\nYou can then post to the topic and see the results
 in the queues.\r\n");

        _useFifoTopic = GetYesNoResponse("Would you like to work with FIFO
 topics?");

        if (_useFifoTopic)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            _topicName = GetUserResponse("Enter a name for your SNS topic: ",
 "example-topic");
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must be appended to
 the topic name.\r\n");

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Because you have chosen a FIFO topic, deduplication
 is supported." +
                              $"\r\nDeduplication IDs are either set in the message
 or automatically generated " +
                              $"\r\nfrom content using a hash function.\r\n" +
                              $"\r\nIf a message is successfully published to an SNS
 FIFO topic, any message " +
                              $"\r\npublished and determined to have the same
 deduplication ID, " +
                              $"\r\nwithin the five-minute deduplication interval,
 is accepted but not delivered.\r\n" +
                              $"\r\nFor more information about deduplication, " +
                              $"\r\nsee https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/
fifo-message-dedup.html.");

            _useContentBasedDeduplication = GetYesNoResponse("Use content-based
 deduplication instead of entering a deduplication ID?");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }

        _topicArn = await SnsWrapper.CreateTopicWithName(_topicName, _useFifoTopic,
 _useContentBasedDeduplication);

        Console.WriteLine($"Your new topic with the name {_topicName}" +
                          $"\r\nand Amazon Resource Name (ARN) {_topicArn}" +
                          $"\r\nhas been created.\r\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return _topicArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the queues.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task SetupQueues()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Now you will create {_queueCount} Amazon Simple Queue
 Service (Amazon SQS) queues to subscribe to the topic.");

        // Repeat this section for each queue.
        for (int i = 0; i < _queueCount; i++)
        {
```

```
            var queueName = GetUserResponse("Enter a name for an Amazon SQS queue:
", $"example-queue-{i}");
            if (_useFifoTopic)
            {
                // Only explain this once.
                if (i == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        "Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must be
appended to the queue name.");
                }

                var queueUrl = await SqsWrapper.CreateQueueWithName(queueName,
_useFifoTopic);

                _queueUrls[i] = queueUrl;

                Console.WriteLine($"Your new queue with the name {queueName}" +
                                  $"\r\nand queue URL {queueUrl}" +
                                  $"\r\nhas been created.\r\n");

                if (i == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"The queue URL is used to retrieve the queue ARN,\r\n" +
                        $"which is used to create a subscription.");
                    Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
                }

                var queueArn = await SqsWrapper.GetQueueArnByUrl(queueUrl);

                if (i == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"An AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy must be
attached to an SQS queue, enabling it to receive\r\n" +
                        $"messages from an SNS topic");
                }

                await SqsWrapper.SetQueuePolicyForTopic(queueArn, _topicArn,
queueUrl);

                await SetupFilters(i, queueArn, queueName);
            }
```

```
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up filters with user options for a queue.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueCount">The number of this queue.</param>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="queueName">The name of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public static async Task SetupFilters(int queueCount, string queueArn, string
 queueName)
    {
        if (_useFifoTopic)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            // Only explain this once.
            if (queueCount == 0)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    "Subscriptions to a FIFO topic can have filters." +
                    "If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the
 filtered messages " +
                    "will be received in the queue.");

                Console.WriteLine(
                    "For information about message filtering, " +
                    "see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-message-
filtering.html");

                Console.WriteLine(
                    "For this example, you can filter messages by a" +
                    "TONE attribute.");
            }

            var useFilter = GetYesNoResponse($"Filter messages for {queueName}'s
 subscription to the topic?");

            string? filterPolicy = null;
            if (useFilter)
            {
                filterPolicy = CreateFilterPolicy();
```

```
            }
            var subscriptionArn = await
 SnsWrapper.SubscribeTopicWithFilter(_topicArn, filterPolicy,
                queueArn);
            _subscriptionArns[queueCount] = subscriptionArn;

            Console.WriteLine(
                $"The queue {queueName} has been subscribed to the topic
 {_topicName} " +
                $"with the subscription ARN {subscriptionArn}");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Use user input to create a filter policy for a subscription.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The serialized filter policy.</returns>
    public static string CreateFilterPolicy()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"You can filter messages by one or more of the following" +
            $"TONE attributes.");

        List<string> filterSelections = new List<string>();

        var selectionNumber = 0;
        do
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"Enter a number to add a TONE filter, or enter 0 to stop adding
 filters.");
            for (int i = 0; i < _tones.Length; i++)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {_tones[i]}");
            }

            var selection = GetUserResponse("", filterSelections.Any() ? "0" : "1");
            int.TryParse(selection, out selectionNumber);
            if (selectionNumber > 0 && !
filterSelections.Contains(_tones[selectionNumber - 1]))
            {
                filterSelections.Add(_tones[selectionNumber - 1]);
```

```
            }
        } while (selectionNumber != 0);

        var filters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>
        {
            { "tone", filterSelections }
        };
        string filterPolicy = JsonSerializer.Serialize(filters);
        return filterPolicy;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Publish messages using user settings.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task PublishMessages()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Now we can publish messages.");

        var keepSendingMessages = true;
        string? deduplicationId = null;
        string? toneAttribute = null;
        while (keepSendingMessages)
        {
            Console.WriteLine();
            var message = GetUserResponse("Enter a message to publish.", "This is a
sample message");

            if (_useFifoTopic)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Because you are using a FIFO topic, you must set
a message group ID." +
                                  "\r\nAll messages within the same group will be
received in the order " +
                                  "they were published.");

                Console.WriteLine();
                var messageGroupId = GetUserResponse("Enter a message group ID for
this message:", "1");

                if (!_useContentBasedDeduplication)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Because you are not using content-based
deduplication, " +
```

```
                                        "you must enter a deduplication ID.");

                    Console.WriteLine("Enter a deduplication ID for this message.");
                    deduplicationId = GetUserResponse("Enter a deduplication ID for
this message.", "1");
                }

                if (GetYesNoResponse("Add an attribute to this message?"))
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Enter a number for an attribute.");
                    for (int i = 0; i < _tones.Length; i++)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {_tones[i]}");
                    }

                    var selection = GetUserResponse("", "1");
                    int.TryParse(selection, out var selectionNumber);

                    if (selectionNumber > 0 && selectionNumber < _tones.Length)
                    {
                        toneAttribute = _tones[selectionNumber - 1];
                    }
                }

                var messageID = await SnsWrapper.PublishToTopicWithAttribute(
                    _topicArn, message, "tone", toneAttribute, deduplicationId,
messageGroupId);

                Console.WriteLine($"Message published with id {messageID}.");
            }

            keepSendingMessages = GetYesNoResponse("Send another message?", false);
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Poll for the published messages to see the results of the user's choices.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<List<Message>> PollForMessages(string queueUrl)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Now the SQS queue at {queueUrl} will be polled to
retrieve the messages." +
```

```
                            "\r\nPress any key to continue.");
        if (UseConsole)
        {
            Console.ReadLine();
        }

        var moreMessages = true;
        var messages = new List<Message>();
        while (moreMessages)
        {
            var newMessages = await SqsWrapper.ReceiveMessagesByUrl(queueUrl, 10);

            moreMessages = newMessages.Any();
            if (moreMessages)
            {
                messages.AddRange(newMessages);
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"{messages.Count} message(s) were received by the queue
at {queueUrl}.");

        foreach (var message in messages)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\tMessage:" +
                              $"\n\t{message.Body}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return messages;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the message using handles in a batch.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task DeleteMessages(string queueUrl, List<Message> messages)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Now we can delete the messages in this queue in a
batch.");
        await SqsWrapper.DeleteMessageBatchByUrl(queueUrl, messages);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CleanupResources()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Clean up resources.");

        try
        {
            foreach (var queueUrl in _queueUrls)
            {
                if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(queueUrl))
                {
                    var deleteQueue =
                        GetYesNoResponse($"Delete queue with url {queueUrl}?");
                    if (deleteQueue)
                    {
                        await SqsWrapper.DeleteQueueByUrl(queueUrl);
                    }
                }
            }

            foreach (var subscriptionArn in _subscriptionArns)
            {
                if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(subscriptionArn))
                {
                    await SnsWrapper.UnsubscribeByArn(subscriptionArn);
                }
            }

            var deleteTopic = GetYesNoResponse($"Delete topic {_topicName}?");
            if (deleteTopic)
            {
                await SnsWrapper.DeleteTopicByArn(_topicArn);
            }
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Unable to clean up resources. Here's why:
{ex.Message}.");
        }
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <param name="defaultAnswer">Optional default answer to use.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question, bool defaultAnswer = true)
    {
        if (UseConsole)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(question);
            var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
            var response = ynResponse != null &&
                           ynResponse.Equals("y",
                               StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
            return response;
        }
        // If not using the console, use the default.
        return defaultAnswer;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a string response from the user through the console.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <param name="defaultAnswer">Optional default answer to use.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static string GetUserResponse(string question, string defaultAnswer)
    {
        if (UseConsole)
        {
            var response = "";
            while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(response))
            {
                Console.WriteLine(question);
                response = Console.ReadLine();
            }
            return response;
        }
        // If not using the console, use the default.
```

```
        return defaultAnswer;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Amazon SQS operations.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper for Amazon Simple Queue Service (SQS) operations.
/// </summary>
public class SQSWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSQS _amazonSQSClient;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Amazon SQS wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSQS">The injected Amazon SQS client.</param>
    public SQSWrapper(IAmazonSQS amazonSQS)
    {
        _amazonSQSClient = amazonSQS;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a queue with a specific name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueName">The name for the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoQueue">True to use a FIFO queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The url for the queue.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateQueueWithName(string queueName, bool
 useFifoQueue)
    {
        int maxMessage = 256 * 1024;
        var queueAttributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
        {
            {
                QueueAttributeName.MaximumMessageSize,
                maxMessage.ToString()
            }
        };

        var createQueueRequest = new CreateQueueRequest()
```

```
        {
            QueueName = queueName,
            Attributes = queueAttributes
        };

        if (useFifoQueue)
        {
            // Update the name if it is not correct for a FIFO queue.
            if (!queueName.EndsWith(".fifo"))
            {
                createQueueRequest.QueueName = queueName + ".fifo";
            }

            // Add an attribute for a FIFO queue.
            createQueueRequest.Attributes.Add(
                QueueAttributeName.FifoQueue, "true");
        }

        var createResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.CreateQueueAsync(
            new CreateQueueRequest()
            {
                QueueName = queueName
            });
        return createResponse.QueueUrl;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the ARN for a queue from its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the queue.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetQueueArnByUrl(string queueUrl)
    {
        var getAttributesRequest = new GetQueueAttributesRequest()
        {
            QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            AttributeNames = new List<string>() { QueueAttributeName.QueueArn }
        };

        var getAttributesResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.GetQueueAttributesAsync(
            getAttributesRequest);

        return getAttributesResponse.QueueARN;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Set the policy attribute of a queue for a topic.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url for the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> SetQueuePolicyForTopic(string queueArn, string topicArn,
string queueUrl)
    {
        var queuePolicy = "{" +
                                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                     "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                     "\"Principal\": {" +
                                         $"\"Service\": " +
                                             "\"sns.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                            "}," +
                                     "\"Action\": \"sqs:SendMessage\"," +
                                     $"\"Resource\": \"{queueArn}\"," +
                                      "\"Condition\": {" +
                                           "\"ArnEquals\": {" +
                                                $"\"aws:SourceArn\": \"{topicArn}\""
+
                                            "}" +
                                        "}" +
                                "}]" +
                            "}";
        var attributesResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.SetQueueAttributesAsync(
            new SetQueueAttributesRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>() { { "Policy",
queuePolicy } }
            });
        return attributesResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Receive messages from a queue by its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of messages.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<List<Message>> ReceiveMessagesByUrl(string queueUrl, int
 maxMessages)
    {
        // Setting WaitTimeSeconds to non-zero enables long polling.
        // For information about long polling, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSSimpleQueueService/latest/
SQSDeveloperGuide/sqs-short-and-long-polling.html
        var messageResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.ReceiveMessageAsync(
            new ReceiveMessageRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                MaxNumberOfMessages = maxMessages,
                WaitTimeSeconds = 1
            });
        return messageResponse.Messages;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a batch of messages from a queue by its url.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteMessageBatchByUrl(string queueUrl, List<Message>
 messages)
    {
        var deleteRequest = new DeleteMessageBatchRequest()
        {
            QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            Entries = new List<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry>()
        };
        foreach (var message in messages)
        {
            deleteRequest.Entries.Add(new DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry()
            {
                ReceiptHandle = message.ReceiptHandle,
                Id = message.MessageId
            });
        }

        var deleteResponse = await
 _amazonSQSClient.DeleteMessageBatchAsync(deleteRequest);

        return deleteResponse.Failed.Any();
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a queue by its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteQueueByUrl(string queueUrl)
    {
        var deleteResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.DeleteQueueAsync(
            new DeleteQueueRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl
            });
        return deleteResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Amazon SNS operations.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper for Amazon Simple Notification Service (SNS) operations.
/// </summary>
public class SNSWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleNotificationService _amazonSNSClient;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Amazon SNS wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSQS">The injected Amazon SNS client.</param>
    public SNSWrapper(IAmazonSimpleNotificationService amazonSNS)
    {
        _amazonSNSClient = amazonSNS;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new topic with a name and specific FIFO and de-duplication
 attributes.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicName">The name for the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoTopic">True to use a FIFO topic.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="useContentBasedDeduplication">True to use content-based de-
duplication.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new topic.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateTopicWithName(string topicName, bool
 useFifoTopic, bool useContentBasedDeduplication)
    {
        var createTopicRequest = new CreateTopicRequest()
        {
            Name = topicName,
        };

        if (useFifoTopic)
        {
            // Update the name if it is not correct for a FIFO topic.
            if (!topicName.EndsWith(".fifo"))
            {
                createTopicRequest.Name = topicName + ".fifo";
            }

            // Add the attributes from the method parameters.
            createTopicRequest.Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                { "FifoTopic", "true" }
            };
            if (useContentBasedDeduplication)
            {
                createTopicRequest.Attributes.Add("ContentBasedDeduplication",
 "true");
            }
        }

        var createResponse = await
 _amazonSNSClient.CreateTopicAsync(createTopicRequest);
        return createResponse.TopicArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Subscribe a queue to a topic with optional filters.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoTopic">The optional filtering policy for the
 subscription.</param>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new subscription.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<string> SubscribeTopicWithFilter(string topicArn, string?
 filterPolicy, string queueArn)
    {
        var subscribeRequest = new SubscribeRequest()
        {
            TopicArn = topicArn,
            Protocol = "sqs",
            Endpoint = queueArn
        };

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(filterPolicy))
        {
            subscribeRequest.Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
 { { "FilterPolicy", filterPolicy } };
        }

        var subscribeResponse = await
 _amazonSNSClient.SubscribeAsync(subscribeRequest);
        return subscribeResponse.SubscriptionArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Publish a message to a topic with an attribute and optional deduplication
 and group IDs.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="message">The message to publish.</param>
    /// <param name="attributeName">The optional attribute for the message.</param>
    /// <param name="attributeValue">The optional attribute value for the message.</
param>
    /// <param name="deduplicationId">The optional deduplication ID for the
 message.</param>
    /// <param name="groupId">The optional group ID for the message.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the message published.</returns>
    public async Task<string> PublishToTopicWithAttribute(
        string topicArn,
        string message,
        string? attributeName = null,
        string? attributeValue = null,
        string? deduplicationId = null,
        string? groupId = null)
    {
        var publishRequest = new PublishRequest()
        {
```

```
            TopicArn = topicArn,
            Message = message,
            MessageDeduplicationId = deduplicationId,
            MessageGroupId = groupId
        };

        if (attributeValue != null)
        {
            // Add the string attribute if it exists.
            publishRequest.MessageAttributes =
                new Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue>
                {
                    { attributeName!, new MessageAttributeValue() { StringValue =
attributeValue, DataType = "String"} }
                };
        }

        var publishResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.PublishAsync(publishRequest);
        return publishResponse.MessageId;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Unsubscribe from a topic by a subscription ARN.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="subscriptionArn">The ARN of the subscription.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> UnsubscribeByArn(string subscriptionArn)
    {
        var unsubscribeResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.UnsubscribeAsync(
            new UnsubscribeRequest()
            {
                SubscriptionArn = subscriptionArn
            });
        return unsubscribeResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a topic by its topic ARN.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTopicByArn(string topicArn)
    {
```

```
        var deleteResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.DeleteTopicAsync(
            new DeleteTopicRequest()
            {
                TopicArn = topicArn
            });
        return deleteResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

Use the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET with Amazon SQS

The following code example shows how to create applications that publish and receive Amazon SQS messages using the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET.

SDK for .NET

Provides a tutorial for the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET. The tutorial creates a web application that allows the user to publish an Amazon SQS message and a command-line application that receives the message.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full tutorial in the AWS SDK for .NET Developer Guide and the example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon SQS

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SQS queue. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.SQSEvents;


// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace SqsIntegrationSampleCode
{
    public async Task FunctionHandler(SQSEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        foreach (var message in evnt.Records)
        {
            await ProcessMessageAsync(message, context);
        }
```

```
        context.Logger.LogInformation("done");
    }

    private async Task ProcessMessageAsync(SQSEvent.SQSMessage message,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        try
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Processed message {message.Body}");

            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
            await Task.CompletedTask;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            //You can use Dead Letter Queue to handle failures. By configuring a
 Lambda DLQ.
            context.Logger.LogError($"An error occurred");
            throw;
        }

    }
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from an SQS queue. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.SQSEvents;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali
namespace sqsSample;

public class Function
{
    public async Task<SQSBatchResponse> FunctionHandler(SQSEvent evnt,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        List<SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 List<SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure>();
        foreach(var message in evnt.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                //process your message
                await ProcessMessageAsync(message, context);
            }
            catch (System.Exception)
            {
                //Add failed message identifier to the batchItemFailures list
                batchItemFailures.Add(new
 SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure{ItemIdentifier=message.MessageId});
            }
        }
        return new SQSBatchResponse(batchItemFailures);
    }

    private async Task ProcessMessageAsync(SQSEvent.SQSMessage message,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        if (String.IsNullOrEmpty(message.Body))
        {
            throw new Exception("No Body in SQS Message.");
        }
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Processed message {message.Body}");
```

```
        // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
        await Task.CompletedTask;
    }
}
```

Step Functions examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Step Functions.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Get started
- Basics
- Actions

Get started

Hello Step Functions

The following code example shows how to get started using Step Functions.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace StepFunctionsActions;

using Amazon.StepFunctions;
using Amazon.StepFunctions.Model;

public class HelloStepFunctions
{
    static async Task Main()
    {
        var stepFunctionsClient = new AmazonStepFunctionsClient();

        Console.Clear();
        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to AWS Step Functions");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's list up to 10 of your state machines:");
        var stateMachineListRequest = new ListStateMachinesRequest { MaxResults =
 10 };

        // Get information for up to 10 Step Functions state machines.
        var response = await
 stepFunctionsClient.ListStateMachinesAsync(stateMachineListRequest);

        if (response.StateMachines.Count > 0)
        {
            response.StateMachines.ForEach(stateMachine =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"State Machine Name: {stateMachine.Name}\tAmazon
 Resource Name (ARN): {stateMachine.StateMachineArn}");
            });
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\tNo state machines were found.");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an activity.
- Create a state machine from an Amazon States Language definition that contains the previously created activity as a step.
- Run the state machine and respond to the activity with user input.
- Get the final status and output after the run completes, then clean up resources.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
global using System.Text.Json;
global using Amazon.StepFunctions;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;
global using StepFunctionsActions;
global using LogLevel = Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.LogLevel;



using Amazon.IdentityManagement;
using Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model;
using Amazon.StepFunctions.Model;

namespace StepFunctionsBasics;
```

```
public class StepFunctionsBasics
{
    private static ILogger _logger = null!;
    private static IConfigurationRoot _configuration = null!;
    private static IAmazonIdentityManagementService _iamService = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for AWS Step Functions.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonStepFunctions>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
                    .AddTransient<StepFunctionsWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        _logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<StepFunctionsBasics>();

        // Load configuration settings.
        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        var activityName = _configuration["ActivityName"];
        var stateMachineName = _configuration["StateMachineName"];

        var roleName = _configuration["RoleName"];
        var repoBaseDir = _configuration["RepoBaseDir"];
        var jsonFilePath = _configuration["JsonFilePath"];
        var jsonFileName = _configuration["JsonFileName"];

        var uiMethods = new UiMethods();
```

```
        var stepFunctionsWrapper =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<StepFunctionsWrapper>();

        _iamService =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>();

        // Load definition for the state machine from a JSON file.
        var stateDefinitionJson = File.ReadAllText($"{repoBaseDir}{jsonFilePath}
{jsonFileName}");

        Console.Clear();
        uiMethods.DisplayOverview();
        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Create activity");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's start by creating an activity.");
        string activityArn;
        string stateMachineArn;

        // Check to see if the activity already exists.
        var activityList = await stepFunctionsWrapper.ListActivitiesAsync();
        var existingActivity = activityList.FirstOrDefault(activity => activity.Name
 == activityName);
        if (existingActivity is not null)
        {
            activityArn = existingActivity.ActivityArn;
            Console.WriteLine($"Activity, {activityName}, already exists.");
        }
        else
        {
            activityArn = await stepFunctionsWrapper.CreateActivity(activityName);
        }

        // Swap the placeholder in the JSON file with the Amazon Resource Name (ARN)
        // of the recently created activity.
        var stateDefinition =
 stateDefinitionJson.Replace("{{DOC_EXAMPLE_ACTIVITY_ARN}}", activityArn);

        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Create state machine");
        Console.WriteLine("Now we'll create a state machine.");

        // Find or create an IAM role that can be assumed by Step Functions.
        var role = await GetOrCreateStateMachineRole(roleName);
```

```
        // See if the state machine already exists.
        var stateMachineList = await stepFunctionsWrapper.ListStateMachinesAsync();
        var existingStateMachine =
            stateMachineList.FirstOrDefault(stateMachine => stateMachine.Name ==
stateMachineName);
        if (existingStateMachine is not null)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"State machine, {stateMachineName}, already
exists.");
            stateMachineArn = existingStateMachine.StateMachineArn;
        }
        else
        {
            // Create the state machine.
            stateMachineArn =
                await stepFunctionsWrapper.CreateStateMachine(stateMachineName,
stateDefinition, role.Arn);
            uiMethods.PressEnter();
        }

        Console.WriteLine("The state machine has been created.");
        var describeStateMachineResponse = await
stepFunctionsWrapper.DescribeStateMachineAsync(stateMachineArn);


Console.WriteLine($"{describeStateMachineResponse.Name}\t{describeStateMachineResponse.Stat
        Console.WriteLine($"Current status: {describeStateMachineResponse.Status}");
        Console.WriteLine($"Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role assumed by the
state machine: {describeStateMachineResponse.RoleArn}");

        var userName = string.Empty;
        Console.Write("Before we start the state machine, tell me what should
ChatSFN call you? ");
        userName = Console.ReadLine();

        // Keep asking until the user enters a string value.
        while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(userName))
        {
            Console.Write("Enter your name: ");
            userName = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        var executionJson = @"{""name"": """ + userName + @"""}";
```

```
        // Start the state machine execution.
        Console.WriteLine("Now we'll start execution of the state machine.");
        var executionArn = await
stepFunctionsWrapper.StartExecutionAsync(executionJson, stateMachineArn);
        Console.WriteLine("State machine started.");

        Console.WriteLine($"Thank you, {userName}. Now let's get started...");
        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("ChatSFN");

        var isDone = false;
        var response = new GetActivityTaskResponse();
        var taskToken = string.Empty;
        var userChoice = string.Empty;

        while (!isDone)
        {
            response = await stepFunctionsWrapper.GetActivityTaskAsync(activityArn,
"MvpWorker");
            taskToken = response.TaskToken;

            // Parse the returned JSON string.
            var taskJsonResponse = JsonDocument.Parse(response.Input);
            var taskJsonObject = taskJsonResponse.RootElement;
            var message = taskJsonObject.GetProperty("message").GetString();
            var actions =
taskJsonObject.GetProperty("actions").EnumerateArray().Select(x =>
x.ToString()).ToList();
            Console.WriteLine($"\n{message}\n");

            // Prompt the user for another choice.
            Console.WriteLine("ChatSFN: What would you like me to do?");
            actions.ForEach(action => Console.WriteLine($"\t{action}"));
            Console.Write($"\n{userName}, tell me your choice: ");
            userChoice = Console.ReadLine();
            if (userChoice?.ToLower() == "done")
            {
                isDone = true;
            }

            Console.WriteLine($"You have selected: {userChoice}");
            var jsonResponse = @"{""action"": """ + userChoice + @"""}";
```

```
            await stepFunctionsWrapper.SendTaskSuccessAsync(taskToken,
jsonResponse);
        }

        await stepFunctionsWrapper.StopExecution(executionArn);
        Console.WriteLine("Now we will wait for the execution to stop.");
        DescribeExecutionResponse executionResponse;
        do
        {
            executionResponse = await
stepFunctionsWrapper.DescribeExecutionAsync(executionArn);
        } while (executionResponse.Status == ExecutionStatus.RUNNING);

        Console.WriteLine("State machine stopped.");
        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("State machine executions");
        Console.WriteLine("Now let's take a look at the execution values for the
state machine.");

        // List the executions.
        var executions = await
stepFunctionsWrapper.ListExecutionsAsync(stateMachineArn);

        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Step function execution values");
        executions.ForEach(execution =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{execution.Name}\t{execution.StartDate} to
{execution.StopDate}");
        });

        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        // Now delete the state machine and the activity.
        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Clean up resources");
        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the state machine...");

        await stepFunctionsWrapper.DeleteStateMachine(stateMachineArn);
        Console.WriteLine("State machine deleted.");

        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the activity...");
        await stepFunctionsWrapper.DeleteActivity(activityArn);
        Console.WriteLine("Activity deleted.");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("The Amazon Step Functions scenario is now complete.");
    }

    static async Task<Role> GetOrCreateStateMachineRole(string roleName)
    {
        // Define the policy document for the role.
        var stateMachineRolePolicy = @"{
         ""Version"": ""2012-10-17"",
        ""Statement"": [{
            ""Sid"": """",
            ""Effect"": ""Allow"",
            ""Principal"": {
                ""Service"": ""states.amazonaws.com""},
            ""Action"": ""sts:AssumeRole""}]}";

        var role = new Role();
        var roleExists = false;

        try
        {
            var getRoleResponse = await _iamService.GetRoleAsync(new GetRoleRequest
{ RoleName = roleName });
            roleExists = true;
            role = getRoleResponse.Role;
        }
        catch (NoSuchEntityException)
        {
            // The role doesn't exist. Create it.
            Console.WriteLine($"Role, {roleName} doesn't exist. Creating it...");
        }

        if (!roleExists)
        {
            var request = new CreateRoleRequest
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = stateMachineRolePolicy,
            };

            var createRoleResponse = await _iamService.CreateRoleAsync(request);
            role = createRoleResponse.Role;
        }

        return role;
```

```
    }
}


namespace StepFunctionsBasics;

/// <summary>
/// Some useful methods to make screen display easier.
/// </summary>
public class UiMethods
{
    private readonly string _sepBar = new('-', Console.WindowWidth);

    /// <summary>
    /// Show information about the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    public void DisplayOverview()
    {
        Console.Clear();
        DisplayTitle("Welcome to the AWS Step Functions Demo");

        Console.WriteLine("This example application will do the following:");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 1. Create an activity.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 2. Create a state machine.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 3. Start an execution.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 4. Run the worker, then stop it.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 5. List executions.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 6. Clean up the resources created for the example.");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a message and wait until the user presses enter.
    /// </summary>
    public void PressEnter()
    {
        Console.Write("\nPress <Enter> to continue.");
        _ = Console.ReadLine();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Pad a string with spaces to center it on the console display.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strToCenter"></param>
    /// <returns></returns>
```

```
    private string CenterString(string strToCenter)
    {
        var padAmount = (Console.WindowWidth - strToCenter.Length) / 2;
        var leftPad = new string(' ', padAmount);
        return $"{leftPad}{strToCenter}";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a line of hyphens, the centered text of the title, and another
    /// line of hyphens.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strTitle">The string to be displayed.</param>
    public void DisplayTitle(string strTitle)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(_sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine(CenterString(strTitle));
        Console.WriteLine(_sepBar);
    }
}
```

Define a class that wraps state machine and activity actions.

```
namespace StepFunctionsActions;

using Amazon.StepFunctions;
using Amazon.StepFunctions.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Wrapper that performs AWS Step Functions actions.
/// </summary>
public class StepFunctionsWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonStepFunctions _amazonStepFunctions;

    /// <summary>
    /// The constructor for the StepFunctionsWrapper. Initializes the
    /// client object passed to it.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonStepFunctions">An initialized Step Functions client
 object.</param>
```

```
    public StepFunctionsWrapper(IAmazonStepFunctions amazonStepFunctions)
    {
        _amazonStepFunctions = amazonStepFunctions;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a Step Functions activity using the supplied name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="activityName">The name for the new Step Functions activity.</
param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the new activity.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateActivity(string activityName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.CreateActivityAsync(new
 CreateActivityRequest { Name = activityName });
        return response.ActivityArn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create a Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stateMachineName">Name for the new Step Functions state
    /// machine.</param>
    /// <param name="definition">A JSON string that defines the Step Functions
    /// state machine.</param>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateStateMachine(string stateMachineName, string
 definition, string roleArn)
    {
        var request = new CreateStateMachineRequest
        {
            Name = stateMachineName,
            Definition = definition,
            RoleArn = roleArn
        };

        var response =
            await _amazonStepFunctions.CreateStateMachineAsync(request);
        return response.StateMachineArn;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a Step Machine activity.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="activityArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of
    /// the activity.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteActivity(string activityArn)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DeleteActivityAsync(new
DeleteActivityRequest { ActivityArn = activityArn });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// state machine.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteStateMachine(string stateMachineArn)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DeleteStateMachineAsync(new
DeleteStateMachineRequest
        { StateMachineArn = stateMachineArn });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about the specified Step Functions execution.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="executionArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions execution.</param>
    /// <returns>The API response returned by the API.</returns>
    public async Task<DescribeExecutionResponse> DescribeExecutionAsync(string
executionArn)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DescribeExecutionAsync(new
DescribeExecutionRequest { ExecutionArn = executionArn });
        return response;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about the specified Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="StateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions state machine to retrieve.</param>
    /// <returns>Information about the specified Step Functions state machine.</
returns>
    public async Task<DescribeStateMachineResponse> DescribeStateMachineAsync(string
 StateMachineArn)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DescribeStateMachineAsync(new
 DescribeStateMachineRequest { StateMachineArn = StateMachineArn });
        return response;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve a task with the specified Step Functions activity
    /// with the specified Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="activityArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of
    /// the Step Functions activity.</param>
    /// <param name="workerName">The name of the Step Functions worker.</param>
    /// <returns>The response from the Step Functions activity.</returns>
    public async Task<GetActivityTaskResponse> GetActivityTaskAsync(string
 activityArn, string workerName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.GetActivityTaskAsync(new
 GetActivityTaskRequest
        { ActivityArn = activityArn, WorkerName = workerName });
        return response;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List the Step Functions activities for the current account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of ActivityListItems.</returns>
    public async Task<List<ActivityListItem>> ListActivitiesAsync()
    {
        var request = new ListActivitiesRequest();
        var activities = new List<ActivityListItem>();

        do
```

```
        {
            var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.ListActivitiesAsync(request);

            if (response.NextToken is not null)
            {
                request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
            }

            activities.AddRange(response.Activities);
        }
        while (request.NextToken is not null);

        return activities;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about executions of a Step Functions
    /// state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions state machine.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of ExecutionListItem objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<ExecutionListItem>> ListExecutionsAsync(string
stateMachineArn)
    {
        var executions = new List<ExecutionListItem>();
        ListExecutionsResponse response;
        var request = new ListExecutionsRequest { StateMachineArn =
stateMachineArn };

        do
        {
            response = await _amazonStepFunctions.ListExecutionsAsync(request);
            executions.AddRange(response.Executions);
            if (response.NextToken is not null)
            {
                request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
            }
        } while (response.NextToken is not null);

        return executions;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve a list of Step Functions state machines.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of StateMachineListItem objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<StateMachineListItem>> ListStateMachinesAsync()
    {
        var stateMachines = new List<StateMachineListItem>();
        var listStateMachinesPaginator =
            _amazonStepFunctions.Paginators.ListStateMachines(new
 ListStateMachinesRequest());

        await foreach (var response in listStateMachinesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            stateMachines.AddRange(response.StateMachines);
        }

        return stateMachines;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Indicate that the Step Functions task, indicated by the
    /// task token, has completed successfully.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="taskToken">Identifies the task.</param>
    /// <param name="taskResponse">The response received from executing the task.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> SendTaskSuccessAsync(string taskToken, string
 taskResponse)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.SendTaskSuccessAsync(new
 SendTaskSuccessRequest
        { TaskToken = taskToken, Output = taskResponse });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Start execution of an AWS Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="executionName">The name to use for the execution.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="executionJson">The JSON string to pass for execution.</param>
    /// <param name="stateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions state machine.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Step Functions
    /// execution.</returns>
    public async Task<string> StartExecutionAsync(string executionJson, string
 stateMachineArn)
    {
        var executionRequest = new StartExecutionRequest
        {
            Input = executionJson,
            StateMachineArn = stateMachineArn
        };

        var response = await
 _amazonStepFunctions.StartExecutionAsync(executionRequest);
        return response.ExecutionArn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Stop execution of a Step Functions workflow.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="executionArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of
    /// the Step Functions execution to stop.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> StopExecution(string executionArn)
    {
        var response =
            await _amazonStepFunctions.StopExecutionAsync(new StopExecutionRequest
 { ExecutionArn = executionArn });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateActivity
  - CreateStateMachine

- DeleteActivity
- DeleteStateMachine
- DescribeExecution
- DescribeStateMachine
- GetActivityTask
- ListActivities
- ListStateMachines
- SendTaskSuccess
- StartExecution
- StopExecution

Actions

`CreateActivity`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateActivity`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a Step Functions activity using the supplied name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="activityName">The name for the new Step Functions activity.</
param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the new activity.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateActivity(string activityName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.CreateActivityAsync(new
 CreateActivityRequest { Name = activityName });
        return response.ActivityArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateActivity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateStateMachine`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateStateMachine`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stateMachineName">Name for the new Step Functions state
    /// machine.</param>
    /// <param name="definition">A JSON string that defines the Step Functions
    /// state machine.</param>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateStateMachine(string stateMachineName, string
definition, string roleArn)
    {
        var request = new CreateStateMachineRequest
        {
            Name = stateMachineName,
            Definition = definition,
            RoleArn = roleArn
        };

        var response =
            await _amazonStepFunctions.CreateStateMachineAsync(request);
        return response.StateMachineArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateStateMachine in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteActivity`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteActivity`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a Step Machine activity.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="activityArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of
    /// the activity.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteActivity(string activityArn)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DeleteActivityAsync(new
DeleteActivityRequest { ActivityArn = activityArn });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteActivity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteStateMachine`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteStateMachine`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// state machine.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteStateMachine(string stateMachineArn)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DeleteStateMachineAsync(new
DeleteStateMachineRequest
        { StateMachineArn = stateMachineArn });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteStateMachine in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeExecution`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about the specified Step Functions execution.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="executionArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions execution.</param>
    /// <returns>The API response returned by the API.</returns>
    public async Task<DescribeExecutionResponse> DescribeExecutionAsync(string
 executionArn)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DescribeExecutionAsync(new
 DescribeExecutionRequest { ExecutionArn = executionArn });
        return response;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeExecution in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeStateMachine`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeStateMachine`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about the specified Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="StateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions state machine to retrieve.</param>
    /// <returns>Information about the specified Step Functions state machine.</
returns>
    public async Task<DescribeStateMachineResponse> DescribeStateMachineAsync(string
 StateMachineArn)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DescribeStateMachineAsync(new
 DescribeStateMachineRequest { StateMachineArn = StateMachineArn });
        return response;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeStateMachine in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetActivityTask`

The following code example shows how to use `GetActivityTask`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve a task with the specified Step Functions activity
    /// with the specified Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="activityArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of
    /// the Step Functions activity.</param>
    /// <param name="workerName">The name of the Step Functions worker.</param>
    /// <returns>The response from the Step Functions activity.</returns>
    public async Task<GetActivityTaskResponse> GetActivityTaskAsync(string
activityArn, string workerName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.GetActivityTaskAsync(new
GetActivityTaskRequest
        { ActivityArn = activityArn, WorkerName = workerName });
        return response;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetActivityTask in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListActivities`

The following code example shows how to use `ListActivities`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// List the Step Functions activities for the current account.
/// </summary>
/// <returns>A list of ActivityListItems.</returns>
public async Task<List<ActivityListItem>> ListActivitiesAsync()
{
    var request = new ListActivitiesRequest();
    var activities = new List<ActivityListItem>();

    do
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.ListActivitiesAsync(request);

        if (response.NextToken is not null)
        {
            request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
        }

        activities.AddRange(response.Activities);
    }
    while (request.NextToken is not null);

    return activities;
}
```

- For API details, see ListActivities in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListExecutions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListExecutions`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about executions of a Step Functions
    /// state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions state machine.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of ExecutionListItem objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<ExecutionListItem>> ListExecutionsAsync(string
stateMachineArn)
    {
        var executions = new List<ExecutionListItem>();
        ListExecutionsResponse response;
        var request = new ListExecutionsRequest { StateMachineArn =
stateMachineArn };

        do
        {
            response = await _amazonStepFunctions.ListExecutionsAsync(request);
            executions.AddRange(response.Executions);
            if (response.NextToken is not null)
            {
                request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
            }
        } while (response.NextToken is not null);

        return executions;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListExecutions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

ListStateMachines

The following code example shows how to use ListStateMachines.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve a list of Step Functions state machines.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of StateMachineListItem objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<StateMachineListItem>> ListStateMachinesAsync()
    {
        var stateMachines = new List<StateMachineListItem>();
        var listStateMachinesPaginator =
            _amazonStepFunctions.Paginators.ListStateMachines(new
ListStateMachinesRequest());

        await foreach (var response in listStateMachinesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            stateMachines.AddRange(response.StateMachines);
        }

        return stateMachines;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

SendTaskSuccess

The following code example shows how to use SendTaskSuccess.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Indicate that the Step Functions task, indicated by the
    /// task token, has completed successfully.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="taskToken">Identifies the task.</param>
    /// <param name="taskResponse">The response received from executing the task.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> SendTaskSuccessAsync(string taskToken, string
 taskResponse)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.SendTaskSuccessAsync(new
 SendTaskSuccessRequest
        { TaskToken = taskToken, Output = taskResponse });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see SendTaskSuccess in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`StartExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `StartExecution`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Start execution of an AWS Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="executionName">The name to use for the execution.</param>
    /// <param name="executionJson">The JSON string to pass for execution.</param>
    /// <param name="stateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions state machine.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Step Functions
    /// execution.</returns>
    public async Task<string> StartExecutionAsync(string executionJson, string
stateMachineArn)
    {
        var executionRequest = new StartExecutionRequest
        {
            Input = executionJson,
            StateMachineArn = stateMachineArn
        };

        var response = await
_amazonStepFunctions.StartExecutionAsync(executionRequest);
        return response.ExecutionArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see StartExecution in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

AWS STS examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with AWS STS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AssumeRole`

The following code example shows how to use `AssumeRole`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.SecurityToken;
using Amazon.SecurityToken.Model;

namespace AssumeRoleExample
{
    class AssumeRole
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// This example shows how to use the AWS Security Token
        /// Service (AWS STS) to assume an IAM role.
        ///
        /// NOTE: It is important that the role that will be assumed has a
        /// trust relationship with the account that will assume the role.
        ///
        /// Before you run the example, you need to create the role you want to
        /// assume and have it trust the IAM account that will assume that role.
        ///
        /// See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/
id_roles_create.html
        /// for help in working with roles.
        /// </summary>

        // A region property may be used if the profile or credentials loaded do not
 specify a region,
        // or to use a specific region.
```

```
        private static readonly RegionEndpoint REGION = RegionEndpoint.USWest2;

        static async Task Main()
        {
            // Create the SecurityToken client and then display the identity of the
            // default user.
            var roleArnToAssume = "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/testAssumeRole";

            var client = new
 Amazon.SecurityToken.AmazonSecurityTokenServiceClient(REGION);

            // Get and display the information about the identity of the default
 user.
            var callerIdRequest = new GetCallerIdentityRequest();
            var caller = await client.GetCallerIdentityAsync(callerIdRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"Original Caller: {caller.Arn}");

            // Create the request to use with the AssumeRoleAsync call.
            var assumeRoleReq = new AssumeRoleRequest()
            {
                DurationSeconds = 1600,
                RoleSessionName = "Session1",
                RoleArn = roleArnToAssume
            };

            var assumeRoleRes = await client.AssumeRoleAsync(assumeRoleReq);

            // Now create a new client based on the credentials of the caller
 assuming the role.
            var client2 = new AmazonSecurityTokenServiceClient(credentials:
 assumeRoleRes.Credentials, REGION);

            // Get and display information about the caller that has assumed the
 defined role.
            var caller2 = await client2.GetCallerIdentityAsync(callerIdRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"AssumedRole Caller: {caller2.Arn}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Support examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Support.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Get started
- Basics
- Actions

Get started

Hello Support

The following code example shows how to get started using Support.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.AWSSupport;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;

public static class HelloSupport
```

```
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Use the AWS .NET Core Setup package to set up dependency injection for
 the AWS Support service.
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default profile.
        // You must have one of the following AWS Support plans: Business,
 Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise. Otherwise, an exception will be thrown.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonAWSSupport>()
            ).Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        var supportClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonAWSSupport>();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        var response = await supportClient.DescribeServicesAsync();
        Console.WriteLine($"\tHello AWS Support! There are {response.Services.Count}
 services available.");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Get and display available services and severity levels for cases.
- Create a support case using a selected service, category, and severity level.
- Get and display a list of open cases for the current day.
- Add an attachment set and a communication to the new case.
- Describe the new attachment and communication for the case.
- Resolve the case.
- Get and display a list of resolved cases for the current day.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
/// <summary>
/// Hello AWS Support example.
/// </summary>
public static class SupportCaseScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
    To use the AWS Support API, you must have one of the following AWS Support
 plans: Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise.

    This .NET example performs the following tasks:
    1.  Get and display services. Select a service from the list.
    2.  Select a category from the selected service.
    3.  Get and display severity levels and select a severity level from the list.
    4.  Create a support case using the selected service, category, and severity
 level.
    5.  Get and display a list of open support cases for the current day.
    6.  Create an attachment set with a sample text file to add to the case.
    7.  Add a communication with the attachment to the support case.
    8.  List the communications of the support case.
    9.  Describe the attachment set.
    10. Resolve the support case.
    11. Get a list of resolved cases for the current day.
   */

    private static SupportWrapper _supportWrapper = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the AWS Support service.
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default profile.
```

```
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonAWSSupport>(new AWSOptions() { Profile
= "default" })
                    .AddTransient<SupportWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        var logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
        {
            builder.AddConsole();
        }).CreateLogger(typeof(SupportCaseScenario));

        _supportWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SupportWrapper>();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the AWS Support case example scenario.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        try
        {
            var apiSupported = await _supportWrapper.VerifySubscription();
            if (!apiSupported)
            {
                logger.LogError("You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or
Enterprise Support " +
                                "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease
upgrade your subscription to run these examples.");
                return;
            }

            var service = await DisplayAndSelectServices();

            var category = DisplayAndSelectCategories(service);

            var severityLevel = await DisplayAndSelectSeverity();

            var caseId = await CreateSupportCase(service, category, severityLevel);
```

```
            await DescribeTodayOpenCases();

            var attachmentSetId = await CreateAttachmentSet();

            await AddCommunicationToCase(attachmentSetId, caseId);

            var attachmentId = await ListCommunicationsForCase(caseId);

            await DescribeCaseAttachment(attachmentId);

            await ResolveCase(caseId);

            await DescribeTodayResolvedCases();

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("AWS Support case example scenario complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem executing the scenario.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List some available services from AWS Support, and select a service for the
example.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The selected service.</returns>
    private static async Task<Service> DisplayAndSelectServices()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        var services = await _supportWrapper.DescribeServices();
        Console.WriteLine($"AWS Support client returned {services.Count}
services.");

        Console.WriteLine($"1. Displaying first 10 services:");
        for (int i = 0; i < 10 && i < services.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {services[i].Name}");
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > services.Count)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Select an example support service by entering a number from the
preceding list:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return services[choiceNumber - 1];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List the available categories for a service and select a category for the
example.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="service">Service to use for displaying categories.</param>
    /// <returns>The selected category.</returns>
    private static Category DisplayAndSelectCategories(Service service)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine($"2. Available support categories for Service
\"{service.Name}\":");
        for (int i = 0; i < service.Categories.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {service.Categories[i].Name}");
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > service.Categories.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Select an example support category by entering a number from the
preceding list:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return service.Categories[choiceNumber - 1];
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List available severity levels from AWS Support, and select a level for the
example.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The selected severity level.</returns>
    private static async Task<SeverityLevel> DisplayAndSelectSeverity()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        var severityLevels = await _supportWrapper.DescribeSeverityLevels();

        Console.WriteLine($"3. Get and display available severity levels:");
        for (int i = 0; i < 10 && i < severityLevels.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {severityLevels[i].Name}");
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > severityLevels.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Select an example severity level by entering a number from the
preceding list:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return severityLevels[choiceNumber - 1];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an example support case.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="service">Service to use for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="category">Category to use for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="severity">Severity to use for the new case.</param>
    /// <returns>The caseId of the new support case.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> CreateSupportCase(Service service,
        Category category, SeverityLevel severity)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"4. Create an example support case" +
                          $" with the following settings:" +
```

```
                            $" \n\tService: {service.Name}, Category: {category.Name}
" +
                            $"and Severity Level: {severity.Name}.");
        var caseId = await _supportWrapper.CreateCase(service.Code, category.Code,
severity.Code,
            "Example case for testing, ignore.", "This is my example support
case.");

        Console.WriteLine($"\tNew case created with ID {caseId}");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return caseId;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List open cases for the current day.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task DescribeTodayOpenCases()
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"5. List the open support cases for the current day.");
        // Describe the cases. If it is empty, try again and allow time for the new
case to appear.
        List<CaseDetails> currentOpenCases = null!;
        while (currentOpenCases == null || currentOpenCases.Count == 0)
        {
            Thread.Sleep(1000);
            currentOpenCases = await _supportWrapper.DescribeCases(
                new List<string>(),
                null,
                false,
                false,
                DateTime.UtcNow.Date,
                DateTime.UtcNow);
        }

        foreach (var openCase in currentOpenCases)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tCase: {openCase.CaseId} created
{openCase.TimeCreated}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an attachment set for a support case.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The attachment set id.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> CreateAttachmentSet()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"6. Create an attachment set for a support case.");
        var fileName = "example_attachment.txt";

        // Create the file if it does not already exist.
        if (!File.Exists(fileName))
        {
            await using StreamWriter sw = File.CreateText(fileName);
            await sw.WriteLineAsync(
                "This is a sample file for attachment to a support case.");
        }

        await using var ms = new MemoryStream(await
 File.ReadAllBytesAsync(fileName));

        var attachmentSetId = await _supportWrapper.AddAttachmentToSet(
            ms,
            fileName);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tNew attachment set created with id: \n
\t{attachmentSetId.Substring(0, 65)}...");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return attachmentSetId;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an attachment set and communication to a case.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="attachmentSetId">Id of the attachment set.</param>
    /// <param name="caseId">Id of the case to receive the attachment set.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task AddCommunicationToCase(string attachmentSetId, string
 caseId)
    {
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"7. Add attachment set and communication to {caseId}.");

        await _supportWrapper.AddCommunicationToCase(
            caseId,
            "This is an example communication added to a support case.",
            attachmentSetId);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tNew attachment set and communication added to
{caseId}");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List the communications for a case.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseId">Id of the case to describe.</param>
    /// <returns>An attachment id.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> ListCommunicationsForCase(string caseId)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"8. List communications for case {caseId}.");

        var communications = await _supportWrapper.DescribeCommunications(caseId);
        var attachmentId = "";
        foreach (var communication in communications)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\tCommunication created on: {communication.TimeCreated} has
{communication.AttachmentSet.Count} attachments.");
            if (communication.AttachmentSet.Any())
            {
                attachmentId = communication.AttachmentSet.First().AttachmentId;
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return attachmentId;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe an attachment by id.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="attachmentId">Id of the attachment to describe.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task DescribeCaseAttachment(string attachmentId)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"9. Describe the attachment set.");

        var attachment = await _supportWrapper.DescribeAttachment(attachmentId);
        var data = Encoding.ASCII.GetString(attachment.Data.ToArray());
        Console.WriteLine($"\tAttachment includes {attachment.FileName} with data:
\n\t{data}");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Resolve the support case.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseId">Id of the case to resolve.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ResolveCase(string caseId)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"10. Resolve case {caseId}.");

        var status = await _supportWrapper.ResolveCase(caseId);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tCase {caseId} has final status {status}");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List resolved cases for the current day.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    private static async Task DescribeTodayResolvedCases()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"11. List the resolved support cases for the current
day.");
        var currentCases = await _supportWrapper.DescribeCases(
            new List<string>(),
            null,
            false,
```

```
            true,
            DateTime.UtcNow.Date,
            DateTime.UtcNow);

        foreach (var currentCase in currentCases)
        {
            if (currentCase.Status == "resolved")
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"\tCase: {currentCase.CaseId}: status {currentCase.Status}");
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }
}
```

Wrapper methods used by the scenario for Support actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper methods to use AWS Support for working with support cases.
/// </summary>
public class SupportWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonAWSSupport _amazonSupport;
    public SupportWrapper(IAmazonAWSSupport amazonSupport)
    {
        _amazonSupport = amazonSupport;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get the descriptions of AWS services.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Optional language for services.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean (“ko”)
 are supported.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of AWS service descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Service>> DescribeServices(string language = "en")
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.DescribeServicesAsync(
```

```
            new DescribeServicesRequest()
            {
                Language = language
            });
        return response.Services;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Get the descriptions of support severity levels.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Optional language for severity levels.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean (“ko”)
are supported.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of support severity levels.</returns>
    public async Task<List<SeverityLevel>> DescribeSeverityLevels(string language =
"en")
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.DescribeSeverityLevelsAsync(
            new DescribeSeverityLevelsRequest()
            {
                Language = language
            });
        return response.SeverityLevels;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new support case.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="serviceCode">Service code for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="categoryCode">Category for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="severityCode">Severity code for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="subject">Subject of the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="body">Body text of the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="language">Optional language support for your case.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean (“ko”)
are supported.</param>
    /// <param name="attachmentSetId">Optional Id for an attachment set for the new
case.</param>
    /// <param name="issueType">Optional issue type for the new case. Options are
"customer-service" or "technical".</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The caseId of the new support case.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateCase(string serviceCode, string categoryCode,
string severityCode, string subject,
        string body, string language = "en", string? attachmentSetId = null, string
issueType = "customer-service")
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.CreateCaseAsync(
            new CreateCaseRequest()
            {
                ServiceCode = serviceCode,
                CategoryCode = categoryCode,
                SeverityCode = severityCode,
                Subject = subject,
                Language = language,
                AttachmentSetId = attachmentSetId,
                IssueType = issueType,
                CommunicationBody = body
            });
        return response.CaseId;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Add an attachment to a set, or create a new attachment set if one does not
exist.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="data">The data for the attachment.</param>
    /// <param name="fileName">The file name for the attachment.</param>
    /// <param name="attachmentSetId">Optional setId for the attachment. Creates a
new attachment set if empty.</param>
    /// <returns>The setId of the attachment.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AddAttachmentToSet(MemoryStream data, string fileName,
string? attachmentSetId = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.AddAttachmentsToSetAsync(
            new AddAttachmentsToSetRequest
            {
                AttachmentSetId = attachmentSetId,
                Attachments = new List<Attachment>
                {
                    new Attachment
                    {
                        Data = data,
```

```
                        FileName = fileName
                    }
                }
            });
        return response.AttachmentSetId;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Get description of a specific attachment.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="attachmentId">Id of the attachment, usually fetched by
 describing the communications of a case.</param>
    /// <returns>The attachment object.</returns>
    public async Task<Attachment> DescribeAttachment(string attachmentId)
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.DescribeAttachmentAsync(
            new DescribeAttachmentRequest()
            {
                AttachmentId = attachmentId
            });
        return response.Attachment;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Add communication to a case, including optional attachment set ID and CC
 email addresses.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseId">Id for the support case.</param>
    /// <param name="body">Body text of the communication.</param>
    /// <param name="attachmentSetId">Optional Id for an attachment set.</param>
    /// <param name="ccEmailAddresses">Optional list of CC email addresses.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AddCommunicationToCase(string caseId, string body,
        string? attachmentSetId = null, List<string>? ccEmailAddresses = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.AddCommunicationToCaseAsync(
            new AddCommunicationToCaseRequest()
            {
                CaseId = caseId,
                CommunicationBody = body,
```

```
                AttachmentSetId = attachmentSetId,
                CcEmailAddresses = ccEmailAddresses
            });
        return response.Result;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the communications for a case, optionally with a date filter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseId">The ID of the support case.</param>
    /// <param name="afterTime">The optional start date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <param name="beforeTime">The optional end date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <returns>The list of communications for the case.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Communication>> DescribeCommunications(string caseId,
 DateTime? afterTime = null, DateTime? beforeTime = null)
    {
        var results = new List<Communication>();
        var paginateCommunications =
 _amazonSupport.Paginators.DescribeCommunications(
            new DescribeCommunicationsRequest()
            {
                CaseId = caseId,
                AfterTime = afterTime?.ToString("s"),
                BeforeTime = beforeTime?.ToString("s")
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var communications in paginateCommunications.Communications)
        {
            results.Add(communications);
        }
        return results;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Get case details for a list of case ids, optionally with date filters.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseIds">The list of case IDs.</param>
    /// <param name="displayId">Optional display ID.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="includeCommunication">True to include communication. Defaults
 to true.</param>
    /// <param name="includeResolvedCases">True to include resolved cases. Defaults
 to false.</param>
    /// <param name="afterTime">The optional start date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <param name="beforeTime">The optional end date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <param name="language">Optional language support for your case.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean (“ko”)
 are supported.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of CaseDetails.</returns>
    public async Task<List<CaseDetails>> DescribeCases(List<string> caseIds, string?
 displayId = null, bool includeCommunication = true,
        bool includeResolvedCases = false, DateTime? afterTime = null, DateTime?
 beforeTime = null,
        string language = "en")
    {
        var results = new List<CaseDetails>();
        var paginateCases = _amazonSupport.Paginators.DescribeCases(
            new DescribeCasesRequest()
            {
                CaseIdList = caseIds,
                DisplayId = displayId,
                IncludeCommunications = includeCommunication,
                IncludeResolvedCases = includeResolvedCases,
                AfterTime = afterTime?.ToString("s"),
                BeforeTime = beforeTime?.ToString("s"),
                Language = language
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var cases in paginateCases.Cases)
        {
            results.Add(cases);
        }
        return results;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Resolve a support case by caseId.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseId">Id for the support case.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The final status of the case after resolving.</returns>
    public async Task<string> ResolveCase(string caseId)
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.ResolveCaseAsync(
            new ResolveCaseRequest()
            {
                CaseId = caseId
            });
        return response.FinalCaseStatus;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Verify the support level for AWS Support API access.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if the subscription level supports API access.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> VerifySubscription()
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSupport.DescribeServicesAsync(
                new DescribeServicesRequest()
                {
                    Language = "en"
                });
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (Amazon.AWSSupport.AmazonAWSSupportException ex)
        {
            if (ex.ErrorCode == "SubscriptionRequiredException")
            {
                return false;
            }
            else throw;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AddAttachmentsToSet
  - AddCommunicationToCase

- CreateCase
- DescribeAttachment
- DescribeCases
- DescribeCommunications
- DescribeServices
- DescribeSeverityLevels
- ResolveCase

Actions

`AddAttachmentsToSet`

The following code example shows how to use `AddAttachmentsToSet`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Add an attachment to a set, or create a new attachment set if one does not
exist.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="data">The data for the attachment.</param>
   /// <param name="fileName">The file name for the attachment.</param>
   /// <param name="attachmentSetId">Optional setId for the attachment. Creates a
new attachment set if empty.</param>
   /// <returns>The setId of the attachment.</returns>
   public async Task<string> AddAttachmentToSet(MemoryStream data, string fileName,
string? attachmentSetId = null)
   {
       var response = await _amazonSupport.AddAttachmentsToSetAsync(
           new AddAttachmentsToSetRequest
           {
```

```
                AttachmentSetId = attachmentSetId,
                Attachments = new List<Attachment>
                {
                    new Attachment
                    {
                        Data = data,
                        FileName = fileName
                    }
                }
            });
        return response.AttachmentSetId;
    }
```

- For API details, see AddAttachmentsToSet in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`AddCommunicationToCase`

The following code example shows how to use `AddCommunicationToCase`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Add communication to a case, including optional attachment set ID and CC
email addresses.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseId">Id for the support case.</param>
    /// <param name="body">Body text of the communication.</param>
    /// <param name="attachmentSetId">Optional Id for an attachment set.</param>
    /// <param name="ccEmailAddresses">Optional list of CC email addresses.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AddCommunicationToCase(string caseId, string body,
        string? attachmentSetId = null, List<string>? ccEmailAddresses = null)
```

```
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.AddCommunicationToCaseAsync(
            new AddCommunicationToCaseRequest()
            {
                CaseId = caseId,
                CommunicationBody = body,
                AttachmentSetId = attachmentSetId,
                CcEmailAddresses = ccEmailAddresses
            });
        return response.Result;
    }
```

- For API details, see AddCommunicationToCase in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateCase`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCase`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new support case.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="serviceCode">Service code for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="categoryCode">Category for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="severityCode">Severity code for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="subject">Subject of the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="body">Body text of the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="language">Optional language support for your case.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean (“ko”)
are supported.</param>
    /// <param name="attachmentSetId">Optional Id for an attachment set for the new
case.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="issueType">Optional issue type for the new case. Options are
"customer-service" or "technical".</param>
    /// <returns>The caseId of the new support case.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateCase(string serviceCode, string categoryCode,
string severityCode, string subject,
        string body, string language = "en", string? attachmentSetId = null, string
issueType = "customer-service")
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.CreateCaseAsync(
            new CreateCaseRequest()
            {
                ServiceCode = serviceCode,
                CategoryCode = categoryCode,
                SeverityCode = severityCode,
                Subject = subject,
                Language = language,
                AttachmentSetId = attachmentSetId,
                IssueType = issueType,
                CommunicationBody = body
            });
        return response.CaseId;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateCase in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeAttachment`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAttachment`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Get description of a specific attachment.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="attachmentId">Id of the attachment, usually fetched by
describing the communications of a case.</param>
    /// <returns>The attachment object.</returns>
    public async Task<Attachment> DescribeAttachment(string attachmentId)
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.DescribeAttachmentAsync(
            new DescribeAttachmentRequest()
            {
                AttachmentId = attachmentId
            });
        return response.Attachment;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAttachment in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeCases`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCases`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get case details for a list of case ids, optionally with date filters.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseIds">The list of case IDs.</param>
    /// <param name="displayId">Optional display ID.</param>
    /// <param name="includeCommunication">True to include communication. Defaults
to true.</param>
    /// <param name="includeResolvedCases">True to include resolved cases. Defaults
to false.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="afterTime">The optional start date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <param name="beforeTime">The optional end date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <param name="language">Optional language support for your case.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean (“ko”)
 are supported.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of CaseDetails.</returns>
    public async Task<List<CaseDetails>> DescribeCases(List<string> caseIds, string?
 displayId = null, bool includeCommunication = true,
        bool includeResolvedCases = false, DateTime? afterTime = null, DateTime?
 beforeTime = null,
        string language = "en")
    {
        var results = new List<CaseDetails>();
        var paginateCases = _amazonSupport.Paginators.DescribeCases(
            new DescribeCasesRequest()
            {
                CaseIdList = caseIds,
                DisplayId = displayId,
                IncludeCommunications = includeCommunication,
                IncludeResolvedCases = includeResolvedCases,
                AfterTime = afterTime?.ToString("s"),
                BeforeTime = beforeTime?.ToString("s"),
                Language = language
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var cases in paginateCases.Cases)
        {
            results.Add(cases);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeCases in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

DescribeCommunications

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCommunications`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the communications for a case, optionally with a date filter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseId">The ID of the support case.</param>
    /// <param name="afterTime">The optional start date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <param name="beforeTime">The optional end date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <returns>The list of communications for the case.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Communication>> DescribeCommunications(string caseId,
 DateTime? afterTime = null, DateTime? beforeTime = null)
    {
        var results = new List<Communication>();
        var paginateCommunications =
 _amazonSupport.Paginators.DescribeCommunications(
            new DescribeCommunicationsRequest()
            {
                CaseId = caseId,
                AfterTime = afterTime?.ToString("s"),
                BeforeTime = beforeTime?.ToString("s")
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var communications in paginateCommunications.Communications)
        {
            results.Add(communications);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeCommunications in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeServices`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeServices`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the descriptions of AWS services.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Optional language for services.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean (“ko”)
are supported.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of AWS service descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Service>> DescribeServices(string language = "en")
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.DescribeServicesAsync(
            new DescribeServicesRequest()
            {
                Language = language
            });
        return response.Services;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeSeverityLevels`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSeverityLevels`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the descriptions of support severity levels.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Optional language for severity levels.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean (“ko”)
are supported.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of support severity levels.</returns>
    public async Task<List<SeverityLevel>> DescribeSeverityLevels(string language =
"en")
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.DescribeSeverityLevelsAsync(
            new DescribeSeverityLevelsRequest()
            {
                Language = language
            });
        return response.SeverityLevels;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSeverityLevels in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ResolveCase`

The following code example shows how to use `ResolveCase`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Resolve a support case by caseId.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="caseId">Id for the support case.</param>
/// <returns>The final status of the case after resolving.</returns>
public async Task<string> ResolveCase(string caseId)
{
    var response = await _amazonSupport.ResolveCaseAsync(
        new ResolveCaseRequest()
        {
            CaseId = caseId
        });
    return response.FinalCaseStatus;
}
```

- For API details, see ResolveCase in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon Textract examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon Textract.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for .NET

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Amazon Transcribe examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon Transcribe.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateVocabulary`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateVocabulary`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a custom vocabulary using a list of phrases. Custom vocabularies
    /// improve transcription accuracy for one or more specific words.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="languageCode">The language code of the vocabulary.</param>
    /// <param name="phrases">Phrases to use in the vocabulary.</param>
    /// <param name="vocabularyName">Name for the vocabulary.</param>
    /// <returns>The state of the custom vocabulary.</returns>
    public async Task<VocabularyState> CreateCustomVocabulary(LanguageCode
languageCode,
        List<string> phrases, string vocabularyName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.CreateVocabularyAsync(
            new CreateVocabularyRequest
            {
                LanguageCode = languageCode,
```

```
                Phrases = phrases,
                VocabularyName = vocabularyName
            });
        return response.VocabularyState;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateVocabulary in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a medical transcription job. Also deletes the transcript associated
 with the job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">Name of the medical transcription job to delete.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJob(string jobName)
    {
        var response = await
 _amazonTranscribeService.DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJobAsync(
            new DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJobRequest()
            {
                MedicalTranscriptionJobName = jobName
            });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteTranscriptionJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTranscriptionJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a transcription job. Also deletes the transcript associated with the
job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">Name of the transcription job to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTranscriptionJob(string jobName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.DeleteTranscriptionJobAsync(
            new DeleteTranscriptionJobRequest()
            {
                TranscriptionJobName = jobName
            });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteVocabulary`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteVocabulary`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Delete an existing custom vocabulary.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="vocabularyName">Name of the vocabulary to delete.</param>
/// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
public async Task<bool> DeleteCustomVocabulary(string vocabularyName)
{
    var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.DeleteVocabularyAsync(
        new DeleteVocabularyRequest
        {
            VocabularyName = vocabularyName
        });
    return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteVocabulary in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetTranscriptionJob`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTranscriptionJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get details about a transcription job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">A unique name for the transcription job.</param>
    /// <returns>A TranscriptionJob instance with information on the requested
job.</returns>
    public async Task<TranscriptionJob> GetTranscriptionJob(string jobName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.GetTranscriptionJobAsync(
            new GetTranscriptionJobRequest()
            {
                TranscriptionJobName = jobName
            });
        return response.TranscriptionJob;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetVocabulary`

The following code example shows how to use `GetVocabulary`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about a custom vocabulary.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vocabularyName">Name of the vocabulary.</param>
    /// <returns>The state of the custom vocabulary.</returns>
    public async Task<VocabularyState> GetCustomVocabulary(string vocabularyName)
    {
```

```
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.GetVocabularyAsync(
            new GetVocabularyRequest()
            {
                VocabularyName = vocabularyName
            });
        return response.VocabularyState;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetVocabulary in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListMedicalTranscriptionJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListMedicalTranscriptionJobs`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List medical transcription jobs, optionally with a name filter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobNameContains">Optional name filter for the medical
transcription jobs.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of summaries about medical transcription jobs.</returns>
    public async Task<List<MedicalTranscriptionJobSummary>>
ListMedicalTranscriptionJobs(
        string? jobNameContains = null)
    {
        var response = await
_amazonTranscribeService.ListMedicalTranscriptionJobsAsync(
            new ListMedicalTranscriptionJobsRequest()
            {
                JobNameContains = jobNameContains
            });
```

```
        return response.MedicalTranscriptionJobSummaries;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListMedicalTranscriptionJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListTranscriptionJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTranscriptionJobs`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List transcription jobs, optionally with a name filter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobNameContains">Optional name filter for the transcription
jobs.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of transcription job summaries.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TranscriptionJobSummary>> ListTranscriptionJobs(string?
jobNameContains = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.ListTranscriptionJobsAsync(
            new ListTranscriptionJobsRequest()
            {
                JobNameContains = jobNameContains
            });
        return response.TranscriptionJobSummaries;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTranscriptionJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListVocabularies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListVocabularies`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List custom vocabularies for the current account. Optionally specify a name
    /// filter and a specific state to filter the vocabularies list.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="nameContains">Optional string the vocabulary name must
contain.</param>
    /// <param name="stateEquals">Optional state of the vocabulary.</param>
    /// <returns>List of information about the vocabularies.</returns>
    public async Task<List<VocabularyInfo>> ListCustomVocabularies(string?
nameContains = null,
        VocabularyState? stateEquals = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.ListVocabulariesAsync(
            new ListVocabulariesRequest()
            {
                NameContains = nameContains,
                StateEquals = stateEquals
            });
        return response.Vocabularies;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListVocabularies in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`StartMedicalTranscriptionJob`

The following code example shows how to use `StartMedicalTranscriptionJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Start a medical transcription job for a media file. This method returns
    /// as soon as the job is started.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">A unique name for the medical transcription job.</
param>
    /// <param name="mediaFileUri">The URI of the media file, typically an Amazon S3
 location.</param>
    /// <param name="mediaFormat">The format of the media file.</param>
    /// <param name="outputBucketName">Location for the output, typically an Amazon
 S3 location.</param>
    /// <param name="transcriptionType">Conversation or dictation transcription
 type.</param>
    /// <returns>A MedicalTransactionJob instance with information on the new job.</
returns>
    public async Task<MedicalTranscriptionJob> StartMedicalTranscriptionJob(
        string jobName, string mediaFileUri,
        MediaFormat mediaFormat, string outputBucketName,
 Amazon.TranscribeService.Type transcriptionType)
    {
        var response = await
 _amazonTranscribeService.StartMedicalTranscriptionJobAsync(
            new StartMedicalTranscriptionJobRequest()
            {
                MedicalTranscriptionJobName = jobName,
                Media = new Media()
                {
                    MediaFileUri = mediaFileUri
                },
                MediaFormat = mediaFormat,
                LanguageCode =
                    LanguageCode
```

```
                        .EnUS, // The value must be en-US for medical
 transcriptions.
                OutputBucketName = outputBucketName,
                OutputKey =
                    jobName, // The value is a key used to fetch the output of the
 transcription.
                Specialty = Specialty.PRIMARYCARE, // The value PRIMARYCARE must be
 set.
                Type = transcriptionType
            });
        return response.MedicalTranscriptionJob;
    }
```

- For API details, see StartMedicalTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`StartTranscriptionJob`

The following code example shows how to use `StartTranscriptionJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Start a transcription job for a media file. This method returns
    /// as soon as the job is started.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">A unique name for the transcription job.</param>
    /// <param name="mediaFileUri">The URI of the media file, typically an Amazon S3
 location.</param>
    /// <param name="mediaFormat">The format of the media file.</param>
    /// <param name="languageCode">The language code of the media file, such as en-
US.</param>
    /// <param name="vocabularyName">Optional name of a custom vocabulary.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>A TranscriptionJob instance with information on the new job.</
returns>
    public async Task<TranscriptionJob> StartTranscriptionJob(string jobName, string
 mediaFileUri,
        MediaFormat mediaFormat, LanguageCode languageCode, string? vocabularyName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.StartTranscriptionJobAsync(
            new StartTranscriptionJobRequest()
            {
                TranscriptionJobName = jobName,
                Media = new Media()
                {
                    MediaFileUri = mediaFileUri
                },
                MediaFormat = mediaFormat,
                LanguageCode = languageCode,
                Settings = vocabularyName != null ? new Settings()
                {
                    VocabularyName = vocabularyName
                } : null
            });
        return response.TranscriptionJob;
    }
```

- For API details, see StartTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`UpdateVocabulary`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateVocabulary`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Update a custom vocabulary with new values. Update overwrites all existing
information.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="languageCode">The language code of the vocabulary.</param>
    /// <param name="phrases">Phrases to use in the vocabulary.</param>
    /// <param name="vocabularyName">Name for the vocabulary.</param>
    /// <returns>The state of the custom vocabulary.</returns>
    public async Task<VocabularyState> UpdateCustomVocabulary(LanguageCode
languageCode,
        List<string> phrases, string vocabularyName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.UpdateVocabularyAsync(
            new UpdateVocabularyRequest()
            {
                LanguageCode = languageCode,
                Phrases = phrases,
                VocabularyName = vocabularyName
            });
        return response.VocabularyState;
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateVocabulary in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon Translate examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon Translate.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

- Scenarios

Actions

`DescribeTextTranslationJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTextTranslationJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Translate;
using Amazon.Translate.Model;

/// <summary>
/// The following example shows how to retrieve the details of
/// a text translation job using Amazon Translate.
/// </summary>
public class DescribeTextTranslation
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonTranslateClient();

        // The Job Id is generated when the text translation job is started
        // with a call to the StartTextTranslationJob method.
        var jobId = "1234567890abcdef01234567890abcde";

        var request = new DescribeTextTranslationJobRequest
        {
            JobId = jobId,
        };

        var jobProperties = await DescribeTranslationJobAsync(client, request);
```

```
            DisplayTranslationJobDetails(jobProperties);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve information about an Amazon Translate text translation job.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon Translate client object.</
param>
        /// <param name="request">The DescribeTextTranslationJobRequest object.</
param>
        /// <returns>The TextTranslationJobProperties object containing
        /// information about the text translation job..</returns>
        public static async Task<TextTranslationJobProperties>
 DescribeTranslationJobAsync(
            AmazonTranslateClient client,
            DescribeTextTranslationJobRequest request)
        {
            var response = await client.DescribeTextTranslationJobAsync(request);
            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                return response.TextTranslationJobProperties;
            }
            else
            {
                return null;
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays the properties of the text translation job.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="jobProperties">The properties of the text translation
        /// job returned by the call to DescribeTextTranslationJobAsync.</param>
        public static void DisplayTranslationJobDetails(TextTranslationJobProperties
 jobProperties)
        {
            if (jobProperties is null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("No text translation job properties found.");
                return;
            }

            // Display the details of the text translation job.
            Console.WriteLine($"{jobProperties.JobId}: {jobProperties.JobName}");
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeTextTranslationJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListTextTranslationJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTextTranslationJobs`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Translate;
using Amazon.Translate.Model;

/// <summary>
/// List Amazon Translate translation jobs, along with details about each job.
/// </summary>
public class ListTranslationJobs
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonTranslateClient();
        var filter = new TextTranslationJobFilter
        {
            JobStatus = "COMPLETED",
        };

        var request = new ListTextTranslationJobsRequest
        {
            MaxResults = 10,
            Filter = filter,
```

```
            };

            await ListJobsAsync(client, request);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// List Amazon Translate text translation jobs.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon Translate client object.</
param>
        /// <param name="request">An Amazon Translate
        /// ListTextTranslationJobsRequest object detailing which text
        /// translation jobs are of interest.</param>
        public static async Task ListJobsAsync(
            AmazonTranslateClient client,
            ListTextTranslationJobsRequest request)
        {
            ListTextTranslationJobsResponse response;

            do
            {
                response = await client.ListTextTranslationJobsAsync(request);

 ShowTranslationJobDetails(response.TextTranslationJobPropertiesList);

                request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
            }
            while (response.NextToken is not null);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// List existing translation job details.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="properties">A list of Amazon Translate text
        /// translation jobs.</param>
        public static void
 ShowTranslationJobDetails(List<TextTranslationJobProperties> properties)
        {
            properties.ForEach(prop =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{prop.JobId}: {prop.JobName}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Status: {prop.JobStatus}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Submitted time: {prop.SubmittedTime}");
            });
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTextTranslationJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`StartTextTranslationJob`

The following code example shows how to use `StartTextTranslationJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Translate;
using Amazon.Translate.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to use Amazon Translate to process the files in
/// an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The translated results
/// will also be stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.
/// </summary>
public class BatchTranslate
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var contentType = "text/plain";

        // Set this variable to an S3 bucket location with a folder."
        // Input files must be in a folder and not at the bucket root."
        var s3InputUri = "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket1/FOLDER/";
        var s3OutputUri = "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket2/";
```

```
            // This role must have permissions to read the source bucket and to read
 and
            // write to the destination bucket where the translated text will be
 stored.
            var dataAccessRoleArn = "arn:aws:iam::0123456789ab:role/
S3TranslateRole";

            var client = new AmazonTranslateClient();

            var inputConfig = new InputDataConfig
            {
                ContentType = contentType,
                S3Uri = s3InputUri,
            };

            var outputConfig = new OutputDataConfig
            {
                S3Uri = s3OutputUri,
            };

            var request = new StartTextTranslationJobRequest
            {
                JobName = "ExampleTranslationJob",
                DataAccessRoleArn = dataAccessRoleArn,
                InputDataConfig = inputConfig,
                OutputDataConfig = outputConfig,
                SourceLanguageCode = "en",
                TargetLanguageCodes = new List<string> { "fr" },
            };

            var response = await StartTextTranslationAsync(client, request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{response.JobId}: {response.JobStatus}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Start the Amazon Translate text translation job.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized AmazonTranslateClient object.</
param>
        /// <param name="request">The request object that includes details such
```

```
        /// as source and destination bucket names and the IAM Role that will
        /// be used to access the buckets.</param>
        /// <returns>The StartTextTranslationResponse object that includes the
        /// details of the request response.</returns>
        public static async Task<StartTextTranslationJobResponse>
StartTextTranslationAsync(AmazonTranslateClient client,
StartTextTranslationJobRequest request)
        {
            var response = await client.StartTextTranslationJobAsync(request);
            return response;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see StartTextTranslationJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`StopTextTranslationJob`

The following code example shows how to use `StopTextTranslationJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Translate;
    using Amazon.Translate.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to stop a running Amazon Translation Service text translation
    /// job.
    /// </summary>
    public class StopTextTranslationJob
    {
        public static async Task Main()
```

```
        {
            var client = new AmazonTranslateClient();
            var jobId = "1234567890abcdef01234567890abcde";

            var request = new StopTextTranslationJobRequest
            {
                JobId = jobId,
            };

            await StopTranslationJobAsync(client, request);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Sends a request to stop a text translation job.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">Initialized AmazonTrnslateClient object.</param>
        /// <param name="request">The request object to be passed to the
        /// StopTextJobAsync method.</param>
        public static async Task StopTranslationJobAsync(
            AmazonTranslateClient client,
            StopTextTranslationJobRequest request)
        {
            var response = await client.StopTextTranslationJobAsync(request);
            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{response.JobId} as status:
{response.JobStatus}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see StopTextTranslationJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`TranslateText`

The following code example shows how to use `TranslateText`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Transfer;
using Amazon.Translate;
using Amazon.Translate.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Take text from a file stored a Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
/// object and translate it using the Amazon Transfer Service.
/// </summary>
public class TranslateText
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // If the region you want to use is different from the region
        // defined for the default user, supply it as a parameter to the
        // Amazon Translate client object constructor.
        var client = new AmazonTranslateClient();

        // Set the source language to "auto" to request Amazon Translate to
        // automatically detect te language of the source text.

        // You can get a list of the languages supposed by Amazon Translate
        // in the Amazon Translate Developer's Guide here:
        //      https://docs.aws.amazon.com/translate/latest/dg/what-is.html
        string srcLang = "en"; // English.
        string destLang = "fr"; // French.

        // The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket where the
        // source text file is stored.
        string srcBucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        string srcTextFile = "source.txt";
```

```
            var srcText = await GetSourceTextAsync(srcBucket, srcTextFile);
            var destText = await TranslatingTextAsync(client, srcLang, destLang,
srcText);

            ShowText(srcText, destText);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Use the Amazon S3 TransferUtility to retrieve the text to translate
        /// from an object in an S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="srcBucket">The name of the S3 bucket where the
        /// text is stored.
        /// </param>
        /// <param name="srcTextFile">The key of the S3 object that
        /// contains the text to translate.</param>
        /// <returns>A string representing the source text.</returns>
        public static async Task<string> GetSourceTextAsync(string srcBucket, string
srcTextFile)
        {
            string srcText = string.Empty;

            var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();
            TransferUtility utility = new TransferUtility(s3Client);

            using var stream = await utility.OpenStreamAsync(srcBucket,
srcTextFile);

            StreamReader file = new System.IO.StreamReader(stream);

            srcText = file.ReadToEnd();
            return srcText;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Use the Amazon Translate Service to translate the document from the
        /// source language to the specified destination language.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The Amazon Translate Service client used to
        /// perform the translation.</param>
        /// <param name="srcLang">The language of the source text.</param>
        /// <param name="destLang">The destination language for the translated
        /// text.</param>
```

```
        /// <param name="text">A string representing the text to ranslate.</param>
        /// <returns>The text that has been translated to the destination
        /// language.</returns>
        public static async Task<string> TranslatingTextAsync(AmazonTranslateClient
 client, string srcLang, string destLang, string text)
        {
            var request = new TranslateTextRequest
            {
                SourceLanguageCode = srcLang,
                TargetLanguageCode = destLang,
                Text = text,
            };

            var response = await client.TranslateTextAsync(request);

            return response.TranslatedText;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Show the original text followed by the translated text.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="srcText">The original text to be translated.</param>
        /// <param name="destText">The translated text.</param>
        public static void ShowText(string srcText, string destText)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Source text:");
            Console.WriteLine(srcText);
            Console.WriteLine();
            Console.WriteLine("Translated text:");
            Console.WriteLine(destText);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see TranslateText in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Building an Amazon SNS application

The following code example shows how to create an application that has subscription and publish functionality and translates messages.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the Amazon Simple Notification Service .NET API to create a web application that has subscription and publish functionality. In addition, this example application also translates messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon SNS
- Amazon Translate

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for .NET

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Security for this AWS Product or Service

Cloud security at Amazon Web Services (AWS) is the highest priority. As an AWS customer, you benefit from a data center and network architecture that is built to meet the requirements of the most security-sensitive organizations. Security is a shared responsibility between AWS and you. The Shared Responsibility Model describes this as Security of the Cloud and Security in the Cloud.

Security of the Cloud – AWS is responsible for protecting the infrastructure that runs all of the services offered in the AWS Cloud and providing you with services that you can use securely. Our security responsibility is the highest priority at AWS, and the effectiveness of our security is regularly tested and verified by third-party auditors as part of the AWS Compliance Programs.

Security in the Cloud – Your responsibility is determined by the AWS service you are using, and other factors including the sensitivity of your data, your organization's requirements, and applicable laws and regulations.

This AWS product or service follows the shared responsibility model through the specific Amazon Web Services (AWS) services it supports. For AWS service security information, see the AWS service security documentation page and AWS services that are in scope of AWS compliance efforts by compliance program.

Topics

- Data protection in this AWS Product or Service
- Identity and Access Management
- Compliance Validation for this AWS Product or Service
- Resilience for this AWS Product or Service
- Infrastructure Security for this AWS Product or Service
- Enforcing a minimum TLS version in the AWS SDK for .NET
- Amazon S3 Encryption Client Migration (V1 to V2)
- Amazon S3 Encryption Client Migration (V2 to V4)

Data protection in this AWS Product or Service

The AWS shared responsibility model applies to data protection in this AWS product or service. As described in this model, AWS is responsible for protecting the global infrastructure that runs all of the AWS Cloud. You are responsible for maintaining control over your content that is hosted on this

infrastructure. You are also responsible for the security configuration and management tasks for the AWS services that you use. For more information about data privacy, see Data Privacy FAQ. For information about data protection in Europe, see the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) Center.

For data protection purposes, we recommend that you protect AWS account credentials and set up individual users with AWS IAM Identity Center or AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM). That way, each user is given only the permissions necessary to fulfill their job duties. We also recommend that you secure your data in the following ways:

- Use multi-factor authentication (MFA) with each account.
- Use SSL/TLS to communicate with AWS resources. We require TLS 1.2 and recommend TLS 1.3.
- Set up API and user activity logging with AWS CloudTrail. For information about using CloudTrail trails to capture AWS activities, see Working with CloudTrail trails in the *AWS CloudTrail User Guide*.
- Use AWS encryption solutions, along with all default security controls within AWS services.
- Use advanced managed security services such as Amazon Macie, which assists in discovering and securing sensitive data that is stored in Amazon S3.
- If you require FIPS 140-3 validated cryptographic modules when accessing AWS through a command line interface or an API, use a FIPS endpoint. For more information about the available FIPS endpoints, see Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) 140-3.

We strongly recommend that you never put confidential or sensitive information, such as your customers' email addresses, into tags or free-form text fields such as a **Name** field. This includes when you work with this AWS product or service or other AWS services using the console, API, AWS CLI, or AWS SDKs. Any data that you enter into tags or free-form text fields used for names may be used for billing or diagnostic logs. If you provide a URL to an external server, we strongly recommend that you do not include credentials information in the URL to validate your request to that server.

Identity and Access Management

AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) is an AWS service that helps an administrator securely control access to AWS resources. IAM administrators control who can be *authenticated* (signed in) and *authorized* (have permissions) to use AWS resources. IAM is an AWS service that you can use with no additional charge.

Topics

- Audience
- Authenticating with identities
- Managing access using policies
- How AWS services work with IAM
- Troubleshooting AWS identity and access

Audience

How you use AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) differs, depending on the work that you do in AWS.

Service user – If you use AWS services to do your job, then your administrator provides you with the credentials and permissions that you need. As you use more AWS features to do your work, you might need additional permissions. Understanding how access is managed can help you request the right permissions from your administrator. If you cannot access a feature in AWS, see Troubleshooting AWS identity and access or the user guide of the AWS service you are using.

Service administrator – If you're in charge of AWS resources at your company, you probably have full access to AWS. It's your job to determine which AWS features and resources your service users should access. You must then submit requests to your IAM administrator to change the permissions of your service users. Review the information on this page to understand the basic concepts of IAM. To learn more about how your company can use IAM with AWS, see the user guide of the AWS service you are using.

IAM administrator – If you're an IAM administrator, you might want to learn details about how you can write policies to manage access to AWS. To view example AWS identity-based policies that you can use in IAM, see the user guide of the AWS service you are using.

Authenticating with identities

Authentication is how you sign in to AWS using your identity credentials. You must be authenticated as the AWS account root user, an IAM user, or by assuming an IAM role.

You can sign in as a federated identity using credentials from an identity source like AWS IAM Identity Center (IAM Identity Center), single sign-on authentication, or Google/Facebook

credentials. For more information about signing in, see How to sign in to your AWS account in the *AWS Sign-In User Guide*.

For programmatic access, AWS provides an SDK and CLI to cryptographically sign requests. For more information, see AWS Signature Version 4 for API requests in the *IAM User Guide*.

AWS account root user

When you create an AWS account, you begin with one sign-in identity called the AWS account *root user* that has complete access to all AWS services and resources. We strongly recommend that you don't use the root user for everyday tasks. For tasks that require root user credentials, see Tasks that require root user credentials in the *IAM User Guide*.

Federated identity

As a best practice, require human users to use federation with an identity provider to access AWS services using temporary credentials.

A *federated identity* is a user from your enterprise directory, web identity provider, or Directory Service that accesses AWS services using credentials from an identity source. Federated identities assume roles that provide temporary credentials.

For centralized access management, we recommend AWS IAM Identity Center. For more information, see What is IAM Identity Center? in the *AWS IAM Identity Center User Guide*.

IAM users and groups

An *IAM user* is an identity with specific permissions for a single person or application. We recommend using temporary credentials instead of IAM users with long-term credentials. For more information, see Require human users to use federation with an identity provider to access AWS using temporary credentials in the *IAM User Guide*.

An *IAM group* specifies a collection of IAM users and makes permissions easier to manage for large sets of users. For more information, see Use cases for IAM users in the *IAM User Guide*.

IAM roles

An *IAM role* is an identity with specific permissions that provides temporary credentials. You can assume a role by switching from a user to an IAM role (console) or by calling an AWS CLI or AWS API operation. For more information, see Methods to assume a role in the *IAM User Guide*.

IAM roles are useful for federated user access, temporary IAM user permissions, cross-account access, cross-service access, and applications running on Amazon EC2. For more information, see Cross account resource access in IAM in the *IAM User Guide*.

Managing access using policies

You control access in AWS by creating policies and attaching them to AWS identities or resources. A policy defines permissions when associated with an identity or resource. AWS evaluates these policies when a principal makes a request. Most policies are stored in AWS as JSON documents. For more information about JSON policy documents, see Overview of JSON policies in the *IAM User Guide*.

Using policies, administrators specify who has access to what by defining which **principal** can perform **actions** on what **resources**, and under what **conditions**.

By default, users and roles have no permissions. An IAM administrator creates IAM policies and adds them to roles, which users can then assume. IAM policies define permissions regardless of the method used to perform the operation.

Identity-based policies

Identity-based policies are JSON permissions policy documents that you attach to an identity (user, group, or role). These policies control what actions identities can perform, on which resources, and under what conditions. To learn how to create an identity-based policy, see Define custom IAM permissions with customer managed policies in the *IAM User Guide*.

Identity-based policies can be *inline policies* (embedded directly into a single identity) or *managed policies* (standalone policies attached to multiple identities). To learn how to choose between managed and inline policies, see Choose between managed policies and inline policies in the *IAM User Guide*.

Resource-based policies

Resource-based policies are JSON policy documents that you attach to a resource. Examples include IAM *role trust policies* and Amazon S3 *bucket policies*. In services that support resource-based policies, service administrators can use them to control access to a specific resource. You must specify a principal in a resource-based policy.

Resource-based policies are inline policies that are located in that service. You can't use AWS managed policies from IAM in a resource-based policy.

Access control lists (ACLs)

Access control lists (ACLs) control which principals (account members, users, or roles) have permissions to access a resource. ACLs are similar to resource-based policies, although they do not use the JSON policy document format.

Amazon S3, AWS WAF, and Amazon VPC are examples of services that support ACLs. To learn more about ACLs, see Access control list (ACL) overview in the *Amazon Simple Storage Service Developer Guide*.

Other policy types

AWS supports additional policy types that can set the maximum permissions granted by more common policy types:

- **Permissions boundaries** – Set the maximum permissions that an identity-based policy can grant to an IAM entity. For more information, see Permissions boundaries for IAM entities in the *IAM User Guide*.
- **Service control policies (SCPs)** – Specify the maximum permissions for an organization or organizational unit in AWS Organizations. For more information, see Service control policies in the *AWS Organizations User Guide*.
- **Resource control policies (RCPs)** – Set the maximum available permissions for resources in your accounts. For more information, see Resource control policies (RCPs) in the *AWS Organizations User Guide*.
- **Session policies** – Advanced policies passed as a parameter when creating a temporary session for a role or federated user. For more information, see Session policies in the *IAM User Guide*.

Multiple policy types

When multiple types of policies apply to a request, the resulting permissions are more complicated to understand. To learn how AWS determines whether to allow a request when multiple policy types are involved, see Policy evaluation logic in the *IAM User Guide*.

How AWS services work with IAM

To get a high-level view of how AWS services work with most IAM features, see AWS services that work with IAM in the *IAM User Guide*.

To learn how to use a specific AWS service with IAM, see the security section of the relevant service's User Guide.

Troubleshooting AWS identity and access

Use the following information to help you diagnose and fix common issues that you might encounter when working with AWS and IAM.

Topics

- I am not authorized to perform an action in AWS
- I am not authorized to perform iam:PassRole
- I want to allow people outside of my AWS account to access my AWS resources

I am not authorized to perform an action in AWS

If you receive an error that you're not authorized to perform an action, your policies must be updated to allow you to perform the action.

The following example error occurs when the `mateojackson` IAM user tries to use the console to view details about a fictional *`my-example-widget`* resource but doesn't have the fictional `awes:`*`GetWidget`* permissions.

```
User: arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/mateojackson is not authorized to perform:
 awes:GetWidget on resource: my-example-widget
```

In this case, the policy for the `mateojackson` user must be updated to allow access to the *`my-example-widget`* resource by using the `awes:`*`GetWidget`* action.

If you need help, contact your AWS administrator. Your administrator is the person who provided you with your sign-in credentials.

I am not authorized to perform iam:PassRole

If you receive an error that you're not authorized to perform the `iam:PassRole` action, your policies must be updated to allow you to pass a role to AWS.

Some AWS services allow you to pass an existing role to that service instead of creating a new service role or service-linked role. To do this, you must have permissions to pass the role to the service.

The following example error occurs when an IAM user named `marymajor` tries to use the console to perform an action in AWS. However, the action requires the service to have permissions that are granted by a service role. Mary does not have permissions to pass the role to the service.

```
User: arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/marymajor is not authorized to perform:
 iam:PassRole
```

In this case, Mary's policies must be updated to allow her to perform the `iam:PassRole` action.

If you need help, contact your AWS administrator. Your administrator is the person who provided you with your sign-in credentials.

I want to allow people outside of my AWS account to access my AWS resources

You can create a role that users in other accounts or people outside of your organization can use to access your resources. You can specify who is trusted to assume the role. For services that support resource-based policies or access control lists (ACLs), you can use those policies to grant people access to your resources.

To learn more, consult the following:

- To learn whether AWS supports these features, see How AWS services work with IAM.
- To learn how to provide access to your resources across AWS accounts that you own, see Providing access to an IAM user in another AWS account that you own in the *IAM User Guide*.
- To learn how to provide access to your resources to third-party AWS accounts, see Providing access to AWS accounts owned by third parties in the *IAM User Guide*.
- To learn how to provide access through identity federation, see Providing access to externally authenticated users (identity federation) in the *IAM User Guide*.
- To learn the difference between using roles and resource-based policies for cross-account access, see Cross account resource access in IAM in the *IAM User Guide*.

Compliance Validation for this AWS Product or Service

Our new AWS sign-up experience is not designed for regulated workloads. If you're using our new AWS sign-up experience, but you want to use AWS for regulated workloads, you can sign up for AWS (advanced) or activate advanced features for your AWS environment.

To learn whether an AWS service is within the scope of specific compliance programs, see AWS services in Scope by Compliance Program and choose the compliance program that you are interested in. For general information, see AWS Compliance Programs.

You can download third-party audit reports using AWS Artifact. For more information, see Downloading Reports in AWS Artifact.

Your compliance responsibility when using AWS services is determined by the sensitivity of your data, your company's compliance objectives, and applicable laws and regulations. For more information about your compliance responsibility when using AWS services, see AWS Security Documentation.

This AWS product or service follows the shared responsibility model through the specific Amazon Web Services (AWS) services it supports. For AWS service security information, see the AWS service security documentation page and AWS services that are in scope of AWS compliance efforts by compliance program.

Resilience for this AWS Product or Service

The AWS global infrastructure is built around AWS Regions and Availability Zones.

AWS Regions provide multiple physically separated and isolated Availability Zones, which are connected with low-latency, high-throughput, and highly redundant networking.

With Availability Zones, you can design and operate applications and databases that automatically fail over between zones without interruption. Availability Zones are more highly available, fault tolerant, and scalable than traditional single or multiple data center infrastructures.

For more information about AWS Regions and Availability Zones, see AWS Global Infrastructure.

This AWS product or service follows the shared responsibility model through the specific Amazon Web Services (AWS) services it supports. For AWS service security information, see the AWS service security documentation page and AWS services that are in scope of AWS compliance efforts by compliance program.

Infrastructure Security for this AWS Product or Service

This AWS product or service uses managed services, and therefore is protected by the AWS global network security. For information about AWS security services and how AWS protects

infrastructure, see AWS Cloud Security. To design your AWS environment using the best practices for infrastructure security, see Infrastructure Protection in *Security Pillar AWS Well-Architected Framework*.

You use AWS published API calls to access this AWS Product or Service through the network. Clients must support the following:

- Transport Layer Security (TLS). We require TLS 1.2 and recommend TLS 1.3.
- Cipher suites with perfect forward secrecy (PFS) such as DHE (Ephemeral Diffie-Hellman) or ECDHE (Elliptic Curve Ephemeral Diffie-Hellman). Most modern systems such as Java 7 and later support these modes.

Additionally, requests must be signed by using an access key ID and a secret access key that is associated with an IAM principal. Or you can use the AWS Security Token Service (AWS STS) to generate temporary security credentials to sign requests.

This AWS product or service follows the shared responsibility model through the specific Amazon Web Services (AWS) services it supports. For AWS service security information, see the AWS service security documentation page and AWS services that are in scope of AWS compliance efforts by compliance program.

Enforcing a minimum TLS version in the AWS SDK for .NET

To increase security when communicating with AWS services, you should configure the AWS SDK for .NET to use TLS 1.2 or later.

The AWS SDK for .NET uses the underlying .NET runtime to determine which security protocol to use. By default, current versions of .NET use the latest configured protocol that the operating system supports. Your application can override this SDK behavior, but it's *not recommended* to do so.

.NET Core

By default, .NET Core uses the latest configured protocol that the operating system supports. The AWS SDK for .NET doesn't provide a mechanism to override this.

If you're using a .NET Core version earlier than 2.1, we *strongly* recommend you upgrade your .NET Core version.

See the following for information specific to each operating system.

Windows

Modern distributions of Windows have TLS 1.2 support enabled by default. If you're running on Windows 7 SP1 or Windows Server 2008 R2 SP1, you need to ensure that TLS 1.2 support is enabled in the registry, as described at https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/windows-server/security/tls/tls-registry-settings#tls-12. If you're running an earlier distribution, you must upgrade your operating system. For information about TLS 1.3 support in Windows, check the latest Microsoft documentation for the minimum required client or server versions.

macOS

If you're running .NET Core 2.1 or later, TLS 1.2 is enabled by default. TLS 1.2 is supported by OS X Mavericks v10.9 or later. .NET Core version 2.1 and later require newer versions of macOS, as described at https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/install/windows?tabs=net80&pivots=os-macos.

If you're using .NET Core 1.0, .NET Core uses OpenSSL on macOS, a dependency that must be installed separately. OpenSSL added support for TLS 1.2 in version 1.0.1, and added support for TLS 1.3 in version 1.1.1.

Linux

.NET Core on Linux requires OpenSSL, which comes bundled with many Linux distributions. But it can also be installed separately. OpenSSL added support for TLS 1.2 in version 1.0.1, and added support for TLS 1.3 in version 1.1.1. If you're using a modern version of .NET Core (2.1 or later) and have installed a package manager, it's likely that a more modern version of OpenSSL was installed for you.

To be sure, you can run **`openssl version`** in a terminal and verify that the version is later than 1.0.1.

.NET Framework

If you're running a modern version of .NET Framework (4.7 or later) and a modern version of Windows (at least Windows 8 for clients, Windows Server 2012 or later for servers), TLS 1.2 is enabled and used by default.

If you're using a .NET Framework runtime that doesn't use the operating system settings (.NET Framework 3.5 through 4.5.2), the AWS SDK for .NET will attempt to add support for TLS 1.1 and

TLS 1.2 to the supported protocols. If you're using .NET Framework 3.5, this will be successful only if the appropriate hot patch is installed, as follows:

- Windows 10 version 1511 and Windows Server 2016 – KB3156421
- Windows 8.1 and Windows Server 2012 R2 – KB3154520
- Windows Server 2012 – KB3154519
- Windows 7 SP1 and Server 2008 R2 SP1 – KB3154518

> **Warning**
>
> Starting August 15th, 2024, the AWS SDK for .NET will end support for .NET Framework 3.5 and will change the minimum .NET Framework version to 4.7.2. For more information, see the blog post Important changes coming for .NET Framework 3.5 and 4.5 targets of the AWS SDK for .NET.

If your application is running on a newer .NET Framework on Windows 7 SP1 or Windows Server 2008 R2 SP1, you need to ensure that TLS 1.2 support is enabled in the registry, as described at https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/windows-server/security/tls/tls-registry-settings#tls-12. Newer versions of Windows have it enabled by default.

For detailed best practices for using TLS with .NET Framework, see the Microsoft article at https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/framework/network-programming/tls.

AWS Tools for PowerShell

AWS Tools for PowerShell use the AWS SDK for .NET for all calls to AWS services. The behavior of your environment depends on the version of Windows PowerShell you're running, as follows.

Windows PowerShell 2.0 through 5.x

Windows PowerShell 2.0 through 5.x run on .NET Framework. You can verify which .NET runtime (2.0 or 4.0) is being used by PowerShell by using the following command.

```
$PSVersionTable.CLRVersion
```

- When using .NET Runtime 2.0, follow the instructions provided earlier regarding the AWS SDK for .NET and .NET Framework 3.5.

> **Warning**
>
> Starting August 15th, 2024, the AWS SDK for .NET will end support for .NET Framework 3.5 and will change the minimum .NET Framework version to 4.7.2. For more information, see the blog post Important changes coming for .NET Framework 3.5 and 4.5 targets of the AWS SDK for .NET.

- When using .NET Runtime 4.0, follow the instructions provided earlier regarding the AWS SDK for .NET and .NET Framework 4+.

Windows PowerShell 6.0

Windows PowerShell 6.0 and newer run on .NET Core. You can verify which version of .NET Core is being used by running the following command.

```
[System.Reflection.Assembly]::GetEntryAssembly().GetCustomAttributes([System.Runtime.Versioning
 $true).FrameworkName
```

Follow the instructions provided earlier regarding the AWS SDK for .NET and the relevant version of .NET Core.

Xamarin

For Xamarin, see the directions at https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/xamarin/cross-platform/app-fundamentals/transport-layer-security. In summary:

For Android

- Requires Android 5.0 or later.
- **Project Properties**, **Android Options**: HttpClient implementation must be set to **Android** and the SSL/TLS implementation set to **Native TLS 1.2+**.

For iOS

- Requires iOS 7 or later.
- **Project Properties**, **iOS Build**: HttpClient implementation must be set to **NSUrlSession**.

For macOS

- Requires macOS 10.9 or later.
- **Project Options**, **Build**, **Mac Build**: HttpClient implementation must be set to **NSUrlSession**.

Unity

You must use Unity 2018.2 or later, and use the .NET 4.x Equivalent scripting runtime. You can set this in **Project Settings**, **Configuration**, **Player**, as described at https://docs.unity3d.com/2019.1/Documentation/Manual/ScriptingRuntimeUpgrade.html. The .NET 4.x Equivalent scripting runtime enables TLS 1.2 support to all Unity platforms running Mono or IL2CPP.

Browser (for Blazor WebAssembly)

WebAssembly runs in the browser instead of on the server, and uses the browser for handling HTTP traffic. Therefore, TLS support is determined by browser support.

Blazor WebAssembly, in preview for ASP.NET Core 3.1, is supported only in browsers that support WebAssembly, as described at https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/blazor/supported-platforms. All mainstream browsers supported TLS 1.2 before supporting WebAssembly. If this is the case for your browser, then if your app runs, it can communicate over TLS 1.2.

See your browser's documentation for more information and verification.

Amazon S3 Encryption Client Migration (V1 to V2)

> **Note**
>
> If you are using V2 and want to migrate to V4, see Amazon S3 Encryption Client Migration (V2 to V4).

This topic shows how to migrate your applications from Version 1 (V1) of the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) encryption client to Version 2 (V2), and ensure application availability throughout the migration process.

Objects that are encrypted with the V2 client can't be decrypted with the V1 client. In order to ease migration to the new client without having to re-encrypt all objects at once, a "V1-transitional" client has been provided. This client can *decrypt* both V1- and V2-encrypted objects, but *encrypts*

objects only in V1-compatible format. The V2 client can *decrypt* both V1- and V2-encrypted objects (when enabled for V1 objects), but *encrypts* objects only in V2-compatible format.

Migration Overview

This migration happens in three phases. These phases are introduced here and described in detail later. Each phase must be completed for *all* clients that use shared objects before the next phase is started.

1. **Update existing clients to V1-transitional clients to read new formats.** First, update your applications to take a dependency on the V1-transitional client instead of the V1 client. The V1-transitional client enables your existing code to decrypt objects written by the new V2 clients and objects written in V1-compatible format.

   > **Note**
   >
   > The V1-transitional client is provided for migration purposes only. Proceed to upgrading to the V2 client after moving to the V1-transitional client.

2. **Migrate V1-transitional clients to V2 clients to write new formats.** Next, replace all V1-transitional clients in your applications with V2 clients, and set the security profile to `V2AndLegacy`. Setting this security profile on V2 clients enables those clients to decrypt objects that were encrypted in V1-compatible format.
3. **Update V2 clients to no longer read V1 formats.** Finally, after all clients have been migrated to V2 and all objects have been encrypted or re-encrypted in V2-compatible format, set the V2 security profile to `V2` instead of `V2AndLegacy`. This prevents the decryption of objects that are in V1-compatible format.

Update Existing Clients to V1-transitional Clients to Read New Formats

The V2 encryption client uses encryption algorithms that older versions of the client don't support. The first step in the migration is to update your V1 decryption clients so that they can read the new format.

The V1-transitional client enables your applications to decrypt both V1- and V2-encrypted objects. This client is a part of the Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption NuGet package. Perform the following steps on each of your applications to use the V1-transitional client.

1. Take a new dependency on the Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption package. If your project depends directly on the **AWSSDK.S3** or **AWSSDK.KeyManagementService** packages, you must either update those dependencies or remove them so that their updated versions will be pulled in with this new package.
2. Change the appropriate `using` statement from `Amazon.S3.Encryption` to `Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption`, as follows:

```
// using Amazon.S3.Encryption;
  using Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption;
```

3. Rebuild and redeploy your application.

The V1-transitional client is fully API-compatible with the V1 client, so no other code changes are required.

Migrate V1-transitional Clients to V2 Clients to Write New Formats

The V2 client is a part of the Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption NuGet package. It enables your applications to decrypt both V1- and V2-encrypted objects (if configured to do so), but encrypts objects only in V2-compatible format.

After updating your existing clients to read the new encryption format, you can proceed to safely update your applications to the V2 encryption and decryption clients. Perform the following steps on each of your applications to use the V2 client:

1. Change `EncryptionMaterials` to `EncryptionMaterialsV2`.
   a. When using KMS:
      i. Provide a KMS key ID.
      ii. Declare the encryption method that you are using; that is, `KmsType.KmsContext`.
      iii. Provide an encryption context to KMS to associate with this data key. You can send an empty dictionary (Amazon encryption context will still be merged in), but providing additional context is encouraged.
   b. When using user-provided key wrap methods (symmetric or asymmetric encryption):
      i. Provide an AES or an RSA instance that contains the encryption materials.

   ii. Declare which encryption algorithm to use; that is, `SymmetricAlgorithmType.AesGcm` or `AsymmetricAlgorithmType.RsaOaepSha1`.

2. Change `AmazonS3CryptoConfiguration` to `AmazonS3CryptoConfigurationV2` with the `SecurityProfile` property set to `SecurityProfile.V2AndLegacy`.
3. Change `AmazonS3EncryptionClient` to `AmazonS3EncryptionClientV2`. This client takes the newly converted `AmazonS3CryptoConfigurationV2` and `EncryptionMaterialsV2` objects from the previous steps.

Example: KMS to KMS+Context

Pre-migration

```
using System.Security.Cryptography;
using Amazon.S3.Encryption;

var encryptionMaterial = new
 EncryptionMaterials("1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab");
var configuration = new AmazonS3CryptoConfiguration()
{
    StorageMode = CryptoStorageMode.ObjectMetadata
};
var encryptionClient = new AmazonS3EncryptionClient(configuration, encryptionMaterial);
```

Post-migration

```
using System.Security.Cryptography;
using Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption;
using Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption.Primitives;

var encryptionContext = new Dictionary<string, string>();
var encryptionMaterial = new
 EncryptionMaterialsV2("1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab", KmsType.KmsContext,
 encryptionContext);
var configuration = new AmazonS3CryptoConfigurationV2(SecurityProfile.V2AndLegacy)
{
    StorageMode = CryptoStorageMode.ObjectMetadata
};
var encryptionClient = new AmazonS3EncryptionClientV2(configuration,
 encryptionMaterial);
```

Example: Symmetric Algorithm (AES-CBC to AES-GCM Key Wrap)

`StorageMode` can be either `ObjectMetadata` or `InstructionFile`.

Pre-migration

```
using System.Security.Cryptography;
using Amazon.S3.Encryption;

var symmetricAlgorithm = Aes.Create();
var encryptionMaterial = new EncryptionMaterials(symmetricAlgorithm);
var configuration = new AmazonS3CryptoConfiguration()
{
    StorageMode = CryptoStorageMode.ObjectMetadata
};
var encryptionClient = new AmazonS3EncryptionClient(configuration, encryptionMaterial);
```

Post-migration

```
using System.Security.Cryptography;
using Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption;
using Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption.Primitives;

var symmetricAlgorithm = Aes.Create();
var encryptionMaterial = new EncryptionMaterialsV2(symmetricAlgorithm,
 SymmetricAlgorithmType.AesGcm);
var configuration = new AmazonS3CryptoConfigurationV2(SecurityProfile.V2AndLegacy)
{
    StorageMode = CryptoStorageMode.ObjectMetadata
};
var encryptionClient = new AmazonS3EncryptionClientV2(configuration,
 encryptionMaterial);
```

> **Note**
>
> When decrypting with AES-GCM, read the entire object to the end before you start using the decrypted data. This is to verify that the object hasn't been modified since it was encrypted.

Example: Asymmetric Algorithm (RSA to RSA-OAEP-SHA1 Key Wrap)

`StorageMode` can be either `ObjectMetadata` or `InstructionFile`.

Pre-migration

```
using System.Security.Cryptography;
using Amazon.S3.Encryption;

var asymmetricAlgorithm = RSA.Create();
var encryptionMaterial = new EncryptionMaterials(asymmetricAlgorithm);
var configuration = new AmazonS3CryptoConfiguration()
{
    StorageMode = CryptoStorageMode.ObjectMetadata
};
var encryptionClient = new AmazonS3EncryptionClient(configuration, encryptionMaterial);
```

Post-migration

```
using System.Security.Cryptography;
using Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption;
using Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption.Primitives;

var asymmetricAlgorithm = RSA.Create();
var encryptionMaterial = new EncryptionMaterialsV2(asymmetricAlgorithm,
 AsymmetricAlgorithmType.RsaOaepSha1);
var configuration = new AmazonS3CryptoConfigurationV2(SecurityProfile.V2AndLegacy)
{
    StorageMode = CryptoStorageMode.ObjectMetadata
};
var encryptionClient = new AmazonS3EncryptionClientV2(configuration,
 encryptionMaterial);
```

Update V2 Clients to No Longer Read V1 Formats

Eventually, all objects will have been encrypted or re-encrypted using a V2 client. *After this conversion is complete*, you can disable V1 compatibility in the V2 clients by setting the `SecurityProfile` property to `SecurityProfile.V2`, as shown in the following snippet.

```
//var configuration = new AmazonS3CryptoConfigurationV2(SecurityProfile.V2AndLegacy);
var configuration = new AmazonS3CryptoConfigurationV2(SecurityProfile.V2);
```

Amazon S3 Encryption Client Migration (V2 to V4)

> **Note**
>
> If you are using V1 and want to migrate to V4, you must first migrate to V2. See Amazon S3 Encryption Client Migration (V1 to V2).

This topic shows how to migrate your applications from Version 2 (V2) of the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) encryption client to Version 4 (V4), and ensure application availability throughout the migration process. V4 uses AES-GCM with key commitment for content encryption and introduces Commitment Policies to enhance security against key substitution attacks.

The V4 client is available in the Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption NuGet package.

> **Important**
>
> **Breaking Changes:** V4 clients configured with `REQUIRE_ENCRYPT_REQUIRE_DECRYPT` policy cannot decrypt objects encrypted with V1 or V2 clients. Only the latest V2 clients can decrypt V4-encrypted objects with key commitment. Before moving to the `REQUIRE_ENCRYPT_REQUIRE_DECRYPT` policy, you must re-encrypt all your existing data using V4 clients with key commitment enabled.

Understanding V4 Concepts

V4 uses AES-GCM with key commitment for content encryption and introduces key security concepts that enhance the protection of your encrypted data:

Commitment Policy

Commitment Policy controls how the encryption client handles key commitment during encryption and decryption operations. V4 supports three commitment policies:

`FORBID_ENCRYPT_ALLOW_DECRYPT`

Encryption: Without commitment

Decryption: Allows non-committing objects

Security: Does not enforce commitment and may allow tampering

Compatibility: All V2 and V4 implementations can read objects encrypted with this policy

`REQUIRE_ENCRYPT_ALLOW_DECRYPT`

Encryption: With key commitment

Decryption: Allows both committing and non-committing objects

Security: New objects are protected against key substitution attacks, old objects still readable

Compatibility: Only V4 supports this policy

`REQUIRE_ENCRYPT_REQUIRE_DECRYPT`(Default for V4)

Encryption: With key commitment

Decryption: Only committing objects

Security: Full commitment enforcement for maximum security

Compatibility: Only V4 supports this policy

AES GCM with Key Commitment

V4 uses AES-GCM with key commitment for content encryption, which provides enhanced security:

- *Tampering Protection:* It protects against key substitution attacks by cryptographically binding the key to the encrypted data.
- *Version Compatibility:* Objects encrypted with key commitment can only be decrypted by V4 clients and newer versions.

> **Warning**
>
> Before enabling key commitment encryption in production, ensure that all applications that need to decrypt your objects have been upgraded to V4 or newer as V2 client is being deprecated.

Update Existing Clients to Read V4 Formats

The V4 encryption client uses encryption algorithms that older versions of the client don't support. The first step in the migration is to update your V2 clients so that they can read the new V4 format.

Update NuGet Package Dependencies

Update your applications to use the latest version of the Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption NuGet package that includes V4 support. Perform the following steps on each of your applications:

1. Update to the latest Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption package. If your project depends directly on the **AWSSDK.S3** or **AWSSDK.KeyManagementService** packages, you must either update those dependencies or remove them so that their updated versions will be pulled in with this new package.
2. Ensure your `using` statements reference the correct namespace:

   ```
   using Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption;
   using Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption.Primitives;
   ```

3. Rebuild and redeploy your application.

Your existing V2 clients will continue to work with the updated package and will be able to decrypt objects encrypted by V4 clients (depending on the commitment policy used).

Build and Deploy Applications

After updating your NuGet package dependencies:

1. Build your application to ensure all dependencies are resolved correctly.
2. Test your application in a development environment to verify that existing functionality continues to work.
3. Deploy the updated application to your production environment.

This update enables your existing V2 clients to decrypt objects that will be encrypted by V4 clients, ensuring compatibility during the migration process.

Migrate to V4 Clients

After updating your existing clients to read the new encryption format, you can proceed to safely update your applications to use V4 encryption and decryption clients. The V4 client provides enhanced security through key commitment while maintaining compatibility with existing encrypted objects.

4-Step Migration Process

The migration from V2 to V4 follows a structured 4-step process to ensure compatibility and security. Each step represents a specific configuration that should be deployed across all your applications before proceeding to the next step.

1. **Step 0: V2 Client (Starting Point)** - Your existing V2 implementation
2. **Step 1: V4 with V2 Compatibility** - Migrate to V4 client while maintaining V2-compatible encryption behavior
3. **Step 2: V4 with Key Commitment Writes** - Start encrypting with key commitment while allowing decryption of legacy objects
4. **Step 3: V4 with Full Enforcement** - Require key commitment for both encryption and decryption

Step 0: V2 Client (Starting Point)

This represents your existing V2 client configuration. This step demonstrates the starting state before migration.

```
using Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption;
using Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption.Primitives;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

// Step 0: V2 Client - Starting configuration
var encryptionContext = new Dictionary<string, string>();
var encryptionMaterial = new EncryptionMaterialsV2(kmsKeyId, KmsType.KmsContext,
 encryptionContext);

#pragma warning disable 0618
var configuration = new AmazonS3CryptoConfigurationV2(SecurityProfile.V2);
#pragma warning enable 0618
```

```
var encryptionClient = new AmazonS3EncryptionClientV2(configuration,
 encryptionMaterial);

// Use the client for PutObject and GetObject operations
await encryptionClient.PutObjectAsync(new PutObjectRequest
{
    BucketName = bucket,
    Key = objectKey,
    ContentBody = content
});
```

Step 1: V4 with V2 Compatibility

Migrate to the V4 client while maintaining identical behavior to V2. This step uses `FORBID_ENCRYPT_ALLOW_DECRYPT` policy to encrypt without commitment and allow decryption of all objects.

```
using Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption;
using Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption.Primitives;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

// Step 1: V4 Client with V2 compatibility
var encryptionContext = new Dictionary<string, string>();
var encryptionMaterial = new EncryptionMaterialsV4(kmsKeyId, KmsType.KmsContext,
 encryptionContext);

var configuration = new AmazonS3CryptoConfigurationV4(
    SecurityProfile.V4,
    CommitmentPolicy.FORBID_ENCRYPT_ALLOW_DECRYPT,
    ContentEncryptionAlgorithm.AesGcm);

var encryptionClient = new AmazonS3EncryptionClientV4(configuration,
 encryptionMaterial);

// Use the client for PutObject and GetObject operations
await encryptionClient.PutObjectAsync(new PutObjectRequest
{
    BucketName = bucket,
    Key = objectKey,
    ContentBody = content
});
```

Behavior: Encrypts without commitment, can decrypt both committing and non-committing objects. Identical to V2 behavior.

Step 2: V4 with Key Commitment Writes

Start encrypting with key commitment while maintaining backward compatibility for decryption. This step uses `REQUIRE_ENCRYPT_ALLOW_DECRYPT` policy.

> **Warning**
>
> Before deploying Step 2, ensure all readers have been updated to Step 1 or later to handle key commitment encryption.

```
using Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption;
using Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption.Primitives;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

// Step 2: V4 Client with key commitment writes
var encryptionContext = new Dictionary<string, string>();
var encryptionMaterial = new EncryptionMaterialsV4(kmsKeyId, KmsType.KmsContext,
 encryptionContext);

var configuration = new AmazonS3CryptoConfigurationV4(
    SecurityProfile.V4,
    CommitmentPolicy.REQUIRE_ENCRYPT_ALLOW_DECRYPT,
    ContentEncryptionAlgorithm.AesGcmWithCommitment);

var encryptionClient = new AmazonS3EncryptionClientV4(configuration,
 encryptionMaterial);

// Use the client for PutObject and GetObject operations
await encryptionClient.PutObjectAsync(new PutObjectRequest
{
    BucketName = bucket,
    Key = objectKey,
    ContentBody = content
});
```

Behavior: Encrypts with commitment, can decrypt both committing and non-committing objects. New objects are protected against key substitution attacks.

Step 3: V4 with Full Enforcement

Require key commitment for both encryption and decryption. This step uses `REQUIRE_ENCRYPT_REQUIRE_DECRYPT` policy for maximum security.

> **Warning**
>
> Before deploying Step 3, ensure all objects in your system have been re-encrypted with key commitment (Step 2). This step will fail to decrypt objects encrypted without commitment.

```
using Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption;
using Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption.Primitives;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

// Step 3: V4 Client with full key commitment enforcement
var encryptionContext = new Dictionary<string, string>();
var encryptionMaterial = new EncryptionMaterialsV4(kmsKeyId, KmsType.KmsContext,
 encryptionContext);

var configuration = new AmazonS3CryptoConfigurationV4(
    SecurityProfile.V4,
    CommitmentPolicy.REQUIRE_ENCRYPT_REQUIRE_DECRYPT,
    ContentEncryptionAlgorithm.AesGcmWithCommitment);

var encryptionClient = new AmazonS3EncryptionClientV4(configuration,
 encryptionMaterial);

// Use the client for PutObject and GetObject operations
await encryptionClient.PutObjectAsync(new PutObjectRequest
{
    BucketName = bucket,
    Key = objectKey,
    ContentBody = content
});
```

Behavior: Encrypts with commitment, only decrypts objects encrypted with commitment. Maximum security against key substitution attacks.

Additional Configuration Examples

This section provides additional examples for configuring V4 clients with different options during migration.

Enabling Legacy Support

To enable V4 clients to read objects encrypted by V1 and V2 clients, configure the client with a commitment policy that allows legacy decryption:

```
using Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption;
using Amazon.Extensions.S3.Encryption.Primitives;

// Configure V4 client to read V1/V2 objects
var configuration = new
 AmazonS3CryptoConfigurationV4(CommitmentPolicy.REQUIRE_ENCRYPT_ALLOW_DECRYPT)
{
    StorageMode = CryptoStorageMode.ObjectMetadata
};

// This configuration allows:
// - Encryption: With commitment (secure)
// - Decryption: Both V2 (non-committing) and V4 (committing) objects
```

Use this configuration during migration when you need to decrypt objects encrypted by older clients while ensuring new objects are encrypted with enhanced security.

Configuring Storage Method

V4 supports two storage methods for encryption metadata. Choose the method that best fits your use case:

Object Metadata (Default)

```
var configuration = new
 AmazonS3CryptoConfigurationV4(CommitmentPolicy.REQUIRE_ENCRYPT_ALLOW_DECRYPT)
{
    StorageMode = CryptoStorageMode.ObjectMetadata
};
// Encryption metadata is stored in S3 object metadata
```

Instruction File

```
var configuration = new
 AmazonS3CryptoConfigurationV4(CommitmentPolicy.REQUIRE_ENCRYPT_ALLOW_DECRYPT)
{
    StorageMode = CryptoStorageMode.InstructionFile
};
// Encryption metadata is stored in a separate S3 object (instruction file)
```

Use `InstructionFile` when you need to preserve object metadata for other purposes or when working with objects that have metadata size limitations.

Configuring Commitment Policy

Choose the appropriate commitment policy based on your security requirements and migration phase:

Migration Phase (V2 Compatibility)

```
// For migration: encrypt without commitment, allow all decryption
var migrationConfig = new
 AmazonS3CryptoConfigurationV4(CommitmentPolicy.FORBID_ENCRYPT_ALLOW_DECRYPT);
```

Transition Phase (Recommended)

```
// For transition: encrypt with commitment, allow legacy decryption
var transitionConfig = new
 AmazonS3CryptoConfigurationV4(CommitmentPolicy.REQUIRE_ENCRYPT_ALLOW_DECRYPT);
```

Full Security Phase

```
// For maximum security: require commitment for both encryption and decryption
var secureConfig = new
 AmazonS3CryptoConfigurationV4(CommitmentPolicy.REQUIRE_ENCRYPT_REQUIRE_DECRYPT);
```

Start with `FORBID_ENCRYPT_ALLOW_DECRYPT` during initial migration, move to `REQUIRE_ENCRYPT_ALLOW_DECRYPT` for the transition phase, and finally use `REQUIRE_ENCRYPT_REQUIRE_DECRYPT` when all clients have been upgraded and all objects have been re-encrypted with commitment.

Special considerations for the AWS SDK for .NET

This section contains considerations for special cases where the normal configurations or procedures aren't appropriate or sufficient.

Topics

- Obtaining assemblies for the AWS SDK for .NET
- Accessing credentials and profiles in an application
- Special considerations for Unity support
- Special considerations for Xamarin support

Obtaining assemblies for the AWS SDK for .NET

This topic describes how you can obtain the AWSSDK assemblies and store them locally (or on premises) for use in your projects. This is **not** the recommended method for handling SDK references, but is required in some environments.

> **Note**
>
> The recommended method for handling SDK references is to download and install just the NuGet packages that each project needs. That method is described in Install AWSSDK packages with NuGet.

If you can't or aren't allowed to download and install NuGet packages on a per-project basis, the following options are available to you.

Download and extract ZIP files

(Remember that this isn't the recommended method for handling references to the AWS SDK for .NET.)

1. Download one of the following ZIP files:
   - aws-sdk-net8.0.zip - Assemblies that support .NET 8 and later.
   - aws-sdk-netcoreapp3.1.zip - Assemblies that support .NET Core 3.1 and later.

- aws-sdk-netstandard2.0.zip - Assemblies that support .NET Standard 2.0 and 2.1.
- aws-sdk-net45.zip - Assemblies that support .NET Framework 4.5 and later.
- aws-sdk-net35.zip - Assemblies that support .NET Framework 3.5.

> **Warning**
>
> Starting August 15th, 2024, the AWS SDK for .NET will end support for .NET Framework 3.5 and will change the minimum .NET Framework version to 4.7.2. For more information, see the blog post Important changes coming for .NET Framework 3.5 and 4.5 targets of the AWS SDK for .NET.

2. Extract the assemblies to some "download" folder on your file system; it doesn't matter where. Make note of this folder.
3. When you set up your project, you get the required assemblies from this folder, as described in Install AWSSDK assemblies without NuGet.

Accessing credentials and profiles in an application

The preferred method for using credentials is to allow the AWS SDK for .NET to find and retrieve them for you, as described in Credential and profile resolution.

However, you can also configure your application to actively retrieve profiles and credentials, and then explicitly use those credentials when creating an AWS service client.

To actively retrieve profiles and credentials, use classes from the Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement namespace.

- To find a profile in a file that uses the AWS credentials file format (either the shared AWS credentials file in its default location or a custom credentials file), use the SharedCredentialsFile class. Files in this format are sometimes simply called *credentials files* in this text for brevity.
- To find a profile in the SDK Store, use the NetSDKCredentialsFile class.
- To search in both a credentials file and the SDK Store, depending on the configuration of a class property, use the CredentialProfileStoreChain class.

  You can use this class to find profiles. You can also use this class to request AWS credentials directly instead of using the `AWSCredentialsFactory` class (described next).

- To retrieve or create various types of credentials from a profile, use the AWSCredentialsFactory class.

The following sections provide examples for these classes.

Examples for class CredentialProfileStoreChain

You can get credentials or profiles from the CredentialProfileStoreChain class by using the TryGetAWSCredentials or TryGetProfile methods. The `ProfilesLocation` property of the class determines the behavior of the methods, as follows:

- If `ProfilesLocation` is null or empty, search the SDK Store if the platform supports it, and then search the shared AWS credentials file in the default location.
- If the `ProfilesLocation` property contains a value, search the credentials file specified in the property.

Get credentials from the SDK Store or the shared AWS credentials file

This example shows you how to get credentials by using the `CredentialProfileStoreChain` class and then use the credentials to create an AmazonS3Client object. The credentials can come from the SDK Store or from the shared AWS credentials file at the default location.

This example also uses the Amazon.Runtime.AWSCredentials class.

```
var chain = new CredentialProfileStoreChain();
AWSCredentials awsCredentials;
if (chain.TryGetAWSCredentials("some_profile", out awsCredentials))
{
    // Use awsCredentials to create an Amazon S3 service client
    using (var client = new AmazonS3Client(awsCredentials))
    {
        var response = await client.ListBucketsAsync();
        Console.WriteLine($"Number of buckets: {response.Buckets.Count}");
    }
}
```

Get a profile from the SDK Store or the shared AWS credentials file

This example shows you how to get a profile by using the CredentialProfileStoreChain class. The credentials can come from the SDK Store or from the shared AWS credentials file at the default location.

This example also uses the CredentialProfile class.

```
var chain = new CredentialProfileStoreChain();
CredentialProfile basicProfile;
if (chain.TryGetProfile("basic_profile", out basicProfile))
{
    // Use basicProfile
}
```

Get credentials from a custom credentials file

This example shows you how to get credentials by using the CredentialProfileStoreChain class. The credentials come from a file that uses the AWS credentials file format but is at an alternate location.

This example also uses the Amazon.Runtime.AWSCredentials class.

```
var chain = new
    CredentialProfileStoreChain("c:\\Users\\sdkuser\\customCredentialsFile.ini");
AWSCredentials awsCredentials;
if (chain.TryGetAWSCredentials("basic_profile", out awsCredentials))
{
    // Use awsCredentials to create an AWS service client
}
```

Examples for classes SharedCredentialsFile and AWSCredentialsFactory

Create an AmazonS3Client by using the SharedCredentialsFile class

This examples shows you how to find a profile in the shared AWS credentials file, create AWS credentials from the profile, and then use the credentials to create an AmazonS3Client object. The example uses the SharedCredentialsFile class.

This example also uses the CredentialProfile class and the Amazon.Runtime.AWSCredentials class.

```
CredentialProfile basicProfile;
AWSCredentials awsCredentials;
var sharedFile = new SharedCredentialsFile();
if (sharedFile.TryGetProfile("basic_profile", out basicProfile) &&
    AWSCredentialsFactory.TryGetAWSCredentials(basicProfile, sharedFile, out
 awsCredentials))
{
    // use awsCredentials to create an Amazon S3 service client
    using (var client = new AmazonS3Client(awsCredentials, basicProfile.Region))
    {
        var response = await client.ListBucketsAsync();
        Console.WriteLine($"Number of buckets: {response.Buckets.Count}");
    }
}
```

> **Note**
>
> The NetSDKCredentialsFile class can be used in exactly the same way, except you would instantiate a new NetSDKCredentialsFile object instead of a SharedCredentialsFile object.

Special considerations for Unity support

When using the AWS SDK for .NET and .NET Standard 2.0 for your Unity application, your application must reference the AWS SDK for .NET assemblies (DLL files) directly rather than using NuGet. Given this requirement, the following are important actions you will need to perform.

- You need to obtain the AWS SDK for .NET assemblies and apply them to your project. For information about how to do this, see Download and extract ZIP files in the topic Obtaining AWSSDK assemblies.
- You need to include the following DLLs in your Unity project alongside the DLLs for **AWSSDK.Core** and the other AWS services you're using. Starting with version 3.5.109 of the AWS SDK for .NET, the .NET Standard ZIP file contains these additional DLLs.
  - Microsoft.Bcl.AsyncInterfaces.dll
  - System.Runtime.CompilerServices.Unsafe.dll
  - System.Threading.Tasks.Extensions.dll

- If you're using IL2CPP to build your Unity project, you must add a `link.xml` file to your Asset folder to prevent code stripping. The `link.xml` file must list all of the AWSSDK assemblies you are using, and each must include the `preserve="all"` attribute. The following snippet shows an example of this file.

```
<linker>
    <assembly fullname="AWSSDK.Core" preserve="all"/>
    <assembly fullname="AWSSDK.DynamoDBv2" preserve="all"/>
    <assembly fullname="AWSSDK.Lambda" preserve="all"/>
</linker>
```

> **Note**
>
> To read interesting background information related to this requirement, see the article at https://aws.amazon.com/blogs/developer/referencing-the-aws-sdk-for-net-standard-2-0-from-unity-xamarin-or-uwp/.

In addition to these special considerations, see What's changed for version 3.5 for information about migrating your Unity application to version 3.5 of the AWS SDK for .NET.

Special considerations for Xamarin support

Xamarin projects (new and existing) must target .NET Standard 2.0. See .NET Standard 2.0 Support in Xamarin.Forms and .NET implementation support.

Also see the information about Portable Class Library and Xamarin.

API reference for the AWS SDK for .NET

The AWS SDK for .NET provides an API that you can use to access AWS services. To see what classes and methods are available in the API, see the AWS SDK for .NET API Reference.

In addition to the general reference given above, each of the examples under the Code examples with guidance section contains references to the specific methods and classes that are used in that example.

About API reference versions

The API reference described earlier is for version 3.0 and later of the AWS SDK for .NET.

For information about migrating from older versions of the SDK, see Migrate your project

To find deprecated content for earlier versions of the SDK API reference, see the following item(s):

- AWS SDK for .NET API Reference V1 (deprecated)
- AWS SDK for .NET API Reference V2 (deprecated)

To view a deprecated AWS SDK for .NET API reference, you will need to extract it and configure a web browser. The instructions shown next are examples of how to do this. They are based on using the Google Chrome web browser on a Windows system. Adapt them to your specific web browser and operating system.

View the deprecated API Reference V1

1. Download the ZIP file for the deprecated AWS SDK for .NET API Reference V1. By default, the name of the ZIP file is `sdkfornet-api-ref_v1_deprecated.zip`. That name will be used throughout these instructions.
2. Place the ZIP file in a folder of your choice. For these instructions, the folder name is assumed to be `C:\work\temp\api-refs\V1`.
3. Right-click on the ZIP file and choose **Extract All**. Accept the default location, which is `C:\work\temp\api-refs\V1\sdkfornet-api-ref_v1` for these instructions.
4. Create a shortcut for Google Chrome in the `C:\work\temp\api-refs\V1` folder. Be careful not to move the original application.

5. In the properties of the new shortcut, set the following fields:

   - **Target**: `"<path to the Google Chrome application>" --disable-web-security --user-data-dir=C:\work\temp\api-refs\V1\data "C:\work\temp\api-refs\V1\sdkfornet-api-ref_v1\Index.html"`

     For the `--user-data-dir` argument, use a folder name that works for your environment. The folder doesn't have to exist.
   - **Start in**: `C:\work\temp\api-refs\V1`
6. Give the shortcut an appropriate name.
7. Open the shortcut to view the old API reference.

View the deprecated API Reference V2

1. Download the ZIP file for the deprecated AWS SDK for .NET API Reference V2. By default, the name of the ZIP file is `sdkfornet-api-ref_v2_deprecated.zip`. That name will be used throughout these instructions.
2. Place the ZIP file in a folder of your choice. For these instructions, the folder name is assumed to be `C:\work\temp\api-refs\V2`.
3. Right-click on the ZIP file and choose **Extract All**. Accept the default location, which is `C:\work\temp\api-refs\V2\sdkfornet-api-ref_v2` for these instructions.
4. Create a shortcut for Google Chrome in the `C:\work\temp\api-refs\V2` folder. Be careful not to move the original application.
5. In the properties of the new shortcut, set the following fields:

   - **Target**: `"<path to the Google Chrome application>" --disable-web-security --user-data-dir=C:\work\temp\api-refs\V2\data "C:\work\temp\api-refs\V2\sdkfornet-api-ref_v2\Index.html"`

     For the `--user-data-dir` argument, use a folder name that works for your environment. The folder doesn't have to exist.
   - **Start in**: `C:\work\temp\api-refs\V2`
6. Give the shortcut an appropriate name.
7. Open the shortcut to view the old API reference.

Document history

The following table describes the important changes since the last release of the *AWS SDK for .NET Developer Guide*. For notification about updates to this documentation, you can subscribe to an RSS feed.

Change	Description	Date
What's new	Added a note about version 2.0 of the AWS Deploy Tool for .NET CLI.	October 17, 2025
AWS OpsWorks	AWS OpsWorks has reached End of Life. It has been removed from the documentation.	September 16, 2025
What's new	End-of-support has been announced for V3 of the AWS SDK for .NET.	August 21, 2025
Message Processing Framework	The AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET has reached general availability!	May 5, 2025
What's new	Version 4 of the AWS SDK for .NET is generally available! For more information, see the AWS SDK for .NET (V4) Developer Guide, especially the topic for Migrating to version 4.	April 28, 2025
Retries and timeouts	Included information about per-method timeouts using `CancellationToken` for asynchronous method calls.	April 9, 2025

Integrating AWS with .NET Aspire in the AWS SDK for .NET	Included information about how AWS has been Integrated with .NET Aspire in the AWS SDK for .NET.	February 15, 2025
Observability	Announced the GA release for observability	February 10, 2025
What's new	Added information about new default behavior for integrity protection.	January 15, 2025
S3 Encryption Client V4 Migration	Added information about migrating from V2 to V4.	December 9, 2024
What's new	Added information about the fourth preview release of the AWS SDK for .NET version 4.	November 15, 2024
Observability	Added preview information about observability in the AWS SDK for .NET, which enables the gathering of telemetry data.	September 13, 2024
API reference for the AWS SDK for .NET	The AWS SDK for .NET API references for V1 and V2 have been deprecated. Information has been included about this deprecation and how to obtain and view the deprecated references.	September 4, 2024
What's new	Added information about the first preview release of the AWS SDK for .NET version 4.	August 16, 2024

What's new	Updated information about upcoming changes to .NET Framework support.	June 20, 2024
What's new	Added information about the preview release of the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET	March 28, 2024
What's new	Included information about support for .NET 8.	February 23, 2024
What's new	Included information about upcoming changes to .NET Framework support.	February 18, 2024
Obtaining AWSSDK assemblies	Included information about assemblies that support .NET 8 and later.	January 8, 2024
AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET	Included information about the Beta release of the Message Processing Framework.	December 10, 2023
Using Amazon DynamoDB NoSQL databases	Updated information about the document and object persistence programming models. It is now possible to prevent certain latency or deadlock conditions due to cold-start and thread-pool behaviors.	November 15, 2023
Included more IAM best practices updates	Updated guide to align with the IAM best practices . For more information, see Security best practices in IAM.	October 5, 2023

Obtaining AWSSDK assemblies	Removed information about installing the AWS SDK for .NET by using AWS Tools for Windows installer (that is, the MSI), which has been deprecated.	September 25, 2023
IAM best practices updates	Updated guide to align with the IAM best practices . For more information, see Security best practices in IAM.	July 18, 2023
Lambda Annotations	The AWS Lambda Annotations framework has been released for general availability.	July 17, 2023
What's new	Added information about the preview release of the Distributed Cache Provider for DynamoDB.	July 15, 2023
Table of contents	Updated table of contents to make code examples more easily discoverable.	June 8, 2023
Region resolution	Added information about how the SDK resolves a missing Region specification.	March 14, 2023
Support for the MSI	Added note about ending support for the AWS Tools for Windows installer.	March 6, 2023
Lambda Annotations (Preview)	Preview of the AWS Lambda Annotations framework.	September 22, 2022

Deploy applications to AWS	Moved main content to a GitHub Pages site: https://aws.github.io/aws-dotnet-deploy/	June 28, 2022
Retiring EC2-Classic	Added notes about retiring EC2-Classic.	April 13, 2022
Single sign-on with the AWS SDK for .NET	Added information about single sign-on (SSO) when using the AWS SDK for .NET.	March 17, 2022
Enforcing a minimum TLS version	Added information about TLS 1.3.	March 16, 2022
Work with AWS services	Included lists of the code examples that are available on GitHub.	February 28, 2022
Enabling SDK Metrics	Removed information about enabling SDK metrics, which has been deprecated.	January 20, 2022
Deploy applications to AWS	Added a reference to the AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio, which provides deployment functionality that is similar to the AWS Deploy Tool.	October 26, 2021
AWS SDK for .NET version 3 guide consolidation	The two AWS SDK for .NET version 3 developer guides, "V3" and "latest", have been consolidated into one guide under the "v3" URL.	August 18, 2021
Migrating from .NET Standard 1.3	Support for .NET Standard 1.3 on the AWS SDK for .NET has come to its end of life.	March 25, 2021

Deploy applications to AWS (preview)	Added preview information about the AWS Deploy Tool, which you can use to deploy an application from the .NET CLI.	March 15, 2021
Version 3.5 of the AWS SDK for .NET	Version 3.5 of the AWS SDK for .NET has been released.	August 25, 2020
Paginators	Added paginators to many service clients, which make pagination of API results more convenient.	August 24, 2020
Retries and timeouts	Added information about retry modes.	August 20, 2020
Using KMS keys for S3 encryption	Updated example to use version 2 of the S3 encryption client.	August 6, 2020
Migrating from .NET Standard 1.3	Added information about ending support for .NET Standard 1.3 at the end of 2020.	May 18, 2020
Quick start	Added a quick-start section with basic setup and tutorials to introduce the reader to the AWS SDK for .NET.	March 27, 2020
Enforcing TLS 1.2	Added information about how to enforce TLS 1.2 in the SDK.	March 10, 2020